

The Family



Volume II

Appendices

© 2004 Barmcan



Contents

Volume 11

Appendix A - Ancient Branches, 1

Britons, Franks, Hebrews, Scandinavian, Scythian, Sicambrian

Appendix B - Direct Ancestral Links to the Ancient Past, 19

Norman-English, Celtic-French, Anglo-Saxon, Mayflower, Hohenstauffen-English, Hebrew

Appendix C - Virginia Ligans, 51

Documents, Extended Families, "From Jackson to Vicksburg 1861-1865 - Memories of the War Between the States"

Appendix D - Scottish Clan Connections, 85

Member Clans of the Standing Council of Scottish Chiefs:

Bruce, Campbell, Drummond, Dunbar, Gordon, Graham, Hamilton, Hanna, Hay, Home, Keith, Ker, Leslie, Lindsay, Lyon, MacDonald, Montgomery, Murray, Ross, Scott, Sempill, Sinclair, Stuart of Bute, Sutherland, Wallace. The Armigerous Clans and Families of Scotland: Armstrong, Baillie, Douglas, Fleming, Hepburn, Livingston, Lundin, Muir, Seton, Somerville, Stewart (Royal), Stewart of Appin, Stewart of Atholl. Other Clan / Sept Connections: Angus, Barday, Galloway, Haye, Knights Templar (Dress/Hunting), Roslyn Chaple, Royal Stewart

Appendix E - Magna Charta Barons, 131

The Baronage of the Magna Charta & Biographies: William d'Albini (Aubigny), Roger Bigod, Hugh Bigod, Henry de Bohun, Richard de Clare, Gilbert de Clare, John FitzRobert, Robert FitzWalter, William de Fortibus, William de Hardell (Mayor of London), William de Huntingfield, William de Lanvallei, John de Lacie, William Malet, Geoffrey de Mandeville, William Marshall Jr., Roger de Montbegon, Richard de Montfichet, Roger de Mowbray, William de Mowbray, Saire de Quincy, Richard de Percy, Robert de Ross, Geoffrey de Say, Richard de Vere, Eustace de Vesey

Appendix F - Documents, 149

The Salic Law, Treaty at Aix, Statutes of William the Conqueror, Peace of the Land Established by Frederick Barbarossa, Laws of Richard I, The Magna Charta, Statute of Edward I, The Declaration of Arbroath, The Declaration of Arbroath in original Latin, Mayflower Compact, Will of William Ligon, Virginia Statutes at Large, Deeds Involving Ligans & Other Ancestors, Newspaper Account of Elizabeth Armstrong's 100th Birthday Celebration, Ragman Rolls

Appendix G - Historical Tidbits, 215

Tidbits, History of the Celts, Latin First Names Found in Old Documents, The Middle Ages, Early Knights of the Garter, Medieval Beginnings of Sheriffs, Ranks & Files in England, Scale of General Precedence in Scotland, Scale of Precedence for Ladies in Scotland, French Titles of Nobility, Old Irish Kingdoms & Clans, Old Baronies of Ireland

Appendix H - Diaries, 275

Queen Victoria, Celia Fiennes, Charles Cavendish Fulke Greville, John Halliday, Thomas Hearne, Francis Kilvert, Sir Walter Scott, Andre Hurault de Maise, Fanny Burney, John Evelyn

Appendix I - Highland Tales, 311

"The Young King of Easaibh Ruadh" - "The Tale of the Hoodie"

Appendix J - Origin of Names, 321

English, French, German, Irish, Scottish, Spanish, Welch, Other

Appendix K - History of Ancestral Castles, 325

United Kingdom, Austria, Belgium, Czech Republic, France, Germany, Hungary, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Russia, Spain, Switzerland, Syria

Appendix L - Notes on King Arthur, 417

Arthur, Lancelot, Great Men of Arthur's, Avalon's Location, Guinevere - Warrior Queen, The Sacred Tables of Arthur

Appendix M - Bloodline of the Holy Grail, 425

A Lecture by by Sir Laurence Gardner

Appendix N - Ancestral Popes & Saints, 447

Bibliography, 457

Index, 469

Appendix A

Ancient Branches



Berkeley Castle

Engraved by William Poole after a picture by John Burden

Britons

Aedd Mawr a Celtic Briton

Brydain a Celtic Briton

Cyrdon a Celtic Briton

Kwxyd a Celtic Briton

Enid a Celtic Briton

Dodion a Celtic Briton

Dyfnwal a Celtic Briton

Beli a Celtic Briton

Gwrgan a Celtic Briton

Cyhelyn a Celtic Briton

Siessilt a Celtic Briton

Dan a Celtic Briton

Morydd a Celtic Briton

Elidr a Celtic Briton

Ceraint a Celtic Briton

Cadell a Celtic Briton

Coel a Celtic Briton

Forrex a Celtic Briton

Kereni a Celtic Briton

Andrew a Celtic Briton

Wrien a Celtic Briton

Ithel a Celtic Briton

Clydawc a Celtic Briton

Elydno a Celtic Briton

Gwigust a Celtic Briton

Meric a Celtic Briton

Bleuddyd a Celtic Briton

Casho a Celtic Briton

Owen a Celtic Briton

Seissilt a Celtic Briton

Arthafel a Celtic Briton

Eidol a Celtic Briton

Rydon a Celtic Briton

Rytherch a Celtic Briton

Sawl a Celtic Briton

Pyr a Celtic Briton

Capoir (Kaxor) a Celt in Britain [108 BC -]

Manogan a Celt in Britain [172 BC -]

Heli (Beli) King of the Britons [151 BC - 72 BC]

Lud King of the Britons [132 BC - 62 BC]

Tenuantius (Tasciovanus) King of the Catuvellauni [102 BC - 26 BC]

Cunobelin (Cenvellin) King of the Trinovantes (Silures-Wales) [63 BC - 17 AD]

NOTE: Cunobelin became king of the Trinovantes in 26 BC, the most potent state of the Britons. He was a favorite of Augustus, greatly promoted the peace of Britain and much civilized his people. He sired eleven sons. His capital was centered at Camulodunum (Colchester).

Arviragus King of the Trinovantes (Silures) [15 BC - 74 AD] m. Venissa Julia of Rome, daughter of Claudius I Emperor of Rome and Messalina

Marius King of the Trinovantes (Silures) [64-125] m. Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus, daughter of Prasutagus of the Iceni and Boadicea Queen of the Iceni

NOTE: Queen Boadicea led a revolt of Iceni and Trinovantes (Britons of Essex and Suffolk) against the Romans. She was defeated by the Roman governor, Suetonius Paulinus, and poisoned herself to thwart capture and death by the Romans.

Coilus Old King Coel King of the Trinovantes [103-150]

Athildis Princess of the Trinovantes [125-170] m. Marcomir IV King of the Franks [102-149] son of Odomar King of the Franks (See FRANKS)

NOTE: The different Celts in Britain in the ancient days were the ancient race of the Irish in Ireland; the Picts in the north of Scotland (also called collectively "Caledonians" by the Romans); the Silures or ancient Welsh; the Scots in Dalriada from the Irish, c. 500 AD; the Britons of Strathclyde, a race of Celtic people strongly related to the Welsh both in customs and Celtic language; and at least a dozen different south and central British Celtic tribes that were, for the most part, thoroughly Romanised. When the Romans left Britain, the Angles and Saxons, who had been brought in as reinforcement troops and paid by the Roman legions, slowly merged forming a people we now call the Anglo-Saxons. They were a Germanic, war-like group of people who aggressively sought more and more land for themselves throughout the whole of the British mainland. Their constant wars against the native Celtic peoples forced the Scots to war on them and the Britons to seek haven in a new land, across the channel in an area of northwest France, now known as Brittany (from the name Britons). Brittany consists of the northwestern peninsula of France, nearly corresponding to the modern departments of Finistere, Cotes-du-Nord, Morbihan, Ille-et-Vilaine and Loire-Atlantique. [History of the Celts, by Robert Dunn]

~ ~ ~

Franks

Clodius II King of the Franks [37 BC - 20 AD] son of Francus King of the Franks (*see Sicambrians*)

Marcomir III King of the Franks [16 BC - 50 AD]

Clodemir III King of the Franks [2 AD - 63 AD]

Antenor IV King of the Franks [20-69]

Rathaerius King of the Franks [41-90]

NOTE: Rathaerius is mentioned in the records of the Roman Empire as the founder of Rotterdam.

Richemer I King of the Franks [60-115]

Odomir King of the Franks [80-129]

NOTE: Odomir is mentioned in the records of the Roman Empire as making a pact with Rome and the Gaulic tribes.

Marcomir IV King of the Franks [101-156] m. 129 **Athildis** [125-170] daughter of Coilus King of the Britons

NOTE: Through this marriage the blood of the ancient Roman houses of the Julii and Claudii, as well as the ancient Royal lines of the Silures, become mixed with the ancient Merovingian line. Coilus was the son of Marius, King of the British Silures, and Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus, daughter of Prasutagus of the Iceni and Boadicea Queen of the Iceni. Marius was the son of Arviragus, King of the Silures, and Venissa daughter of Cladius I Emperor of Rome.

Clodomir IV King of the Franks [118-166] m. **Hafilda Princess of Rugij**

Farabert King of the Franks [131-186]

Sunno King of the Franks [156-213]

NOTE: during Sunno's reign, the Franks had many wars with the Romans and Gaulic tribes.

Hilderic King of the Franks [175-253]

Bartherus King of the Franks [199-272]

Clodius III King of the Franks [217-298]

Walther King of the Franks [237-306]

Dagobert I King of the Franks [257-317]

Genebald I Duke of the East Franks [277-358]

Dagobert II Duke of the East Franks [300-379]

Clodius IV Duke of the East Franks [324-389]

Marcomir V Duke of the East Franks [347-404]

Pharamond King of All Franks [370-430] m. 394 **Argotta** [375-] daughter of Genebald Duke of the West Franks (*See MEROVINGIAN for continuation of line*)

NOTE: Under Pharamond's reign the Franks were united under one crown. He succeeded his father as Duke of the East Franks in 404, became King of the West Franks in 419, and King of Westphalia in 420. At his father-in-law's death in 419, Pharamond became Duke of the West Franks. Pharamond is the ancestor who has a clear documented line. Earlier rulers were documented from ancient records and annals referenced in church histories.

NOTE: Through the marriage of Jeanne de Mesmes with Jewin Jaspit in 1568, the Daspit de St Amand family may claim descent from the Merovingian line by connection with the Kings of Navarre, Counts of Bigorre, the de la Barthe lords of the Four Valleys, the Royal dynasties of Merovingian, Carolingian and Capetian Kings of France and the Exilarchs of Narbonne of the Royal House of David. The dynasties of France all descend from the Merovingian line traced back to the Cimmerian tribe on the Black Sea in the lands of Scythia. By legend the King (Euxim) of the Cimmerians was descended from the Royal line of Troy. It is from this line that the Merovingian dynasty has its source.

This genealogy was developed by Pere Anselm for the Regent of France and was augmented by genealogical research done later at the command of Napoleon I to determine descendants of the Merovingian royal house. [Contributed by Ray Oliver, Brian C. Tompsett's website]

~ ~ ~

Hebrews

This ancestry is controversial because it contains the possibility of Jesus' marriage to Mary Magdalene and their issue, and is presented here only as an hypothesis. For many generations rulers in Europe believed they were descendants of the Merovingian Priest Kings, who ruled, not governed, and who were descendants of this ancient Hebrew lineage, hence the term, Divine Right of Kings.

According to Judeo-Christian belief, Adam was the first man and Eve the first woman. The following genealogy is taken from the King James version of the Bible and other sources, including a translation of the Gospels from the ancient original Aramaic. It has been proposed by some genealogists that Adam was the progenitor of a lineage (House of Adam, for example) that lasted for about 1,000 years, rather than his actual life span, and which proposal applies to the descendants of Adam and Eve as well.

There are several dating systems indicating a time frame for the Old Testament genealogy: The Hebrew system, Septuagint Alexandrinus; Septuagint Vaticanus, and Samaritan Pentateuch (and probably more), which differ by as much 1,000 years or more. So, Old Testament dates have been eliminated in this genealogy.

It was common to skip some generations. The phrase "son of" can mean "descendant of." Matthew skipped generations between Zerubbabel and Joseph, listing only 10 generations, but Luke lists 19 in the same time period. Luke also mentions Cainan (the son of Arphaxad King of Arrapachtis, and grandson of Shem), but Cainan is not found in the Hebrew scriptures. Luke was going by the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Old Testament widely used in Jesus' time. In fact, most of the quotes throughout the New Testament that were taken from the Old Testament were from this Septuagint.

Adam m. Eve

Seth m. Azura

Enos m. Noam, daughter of Seth and Azura

Cainan m. Mualeleth, daughter of Enosh and Noam

Mahalaleel m. Dinah, daughter of Barakiel

Jared m. Baraka

Enoch the Initiated m. Edna, daughter of Daniel (son of Mahalaleel)

Mathusala Man of the Dart m. Edna, daughter of Azrial (son of Jared)

Lamech m. Betenos (Ashmua), daughter of Barakil (Baraki'il Elisha) (son of Enoch and Edna)

Noe (Noah) m. Emzara (Naamah Coba), daughter of Rake'el (son of Mathusala and Edna)

Sem m. Sedeqetelebab, daughter of Eliakim

Arphaxad King of Arrapachtis m. Rasueja, daughter of Elam (son of Shem and Sedeqetelebab)

Cainan

NOTE: Cainan is listed in Luke's Gospel, but omitted in the Old Testament (1 Chron. 1:1)

Sala of Chaldea m. **Mu'ak (Muak)** daughter of Kesed

Heber m. **'Azurad bint Nebrod**, daughter of Nebrod

Phaleg King of Babylon, m. **Lomna bint Sina'ar**, daughter of Sina'ar

Ragau King of Lagash of Palestine, died in Ur, Chaldea, m. **'Ora bat 'Ur**, daughter of 'Ur ben Kesed

Seruch King of Ur & Agade, m. **Melka**, daughter of Kaber

Nachor King of Ur & Agade, m. **Jaska ('Ijaska)**, daughter of Nestag of the Chaldees

Tharra King of Agade, of Ur, Chaldea, m1. **Maria**

Abram (Abraham), m1. **Sara (Sarha)**, daughter of Haran; m. (no marriage) **Agar the Egyptian**; m2. **Chettura**

Isaac m. **Rebecca bint Bethuel**, daughter of Bathuel the Syrian, of Syrian Mesopotamia

Jacob (Israel) of Haran, died in Egypt, m. **Leah bint Laban**, daughter of Laban ibn Bethuel and Adinah

Judah of Palestine, died in Egypt, m. **Tamar**, daughter of Ephraim

Perez of Hebron, Canaan, Palestine, died in Rameses, Goshen, Egypt

Hezron of Palestine, died at Caleb-Ephrathah, Goshen, Egypt, m. **Jephunneh of Hebron**, Canaan, Palestine, daughter of Pharez

Aram Prince of Israel of Rameses, Goshen, Egypt, died in Jerusalem

Aminadab

Nahshon the Israelite

Salmon the Israelite, m. **Rahab (Rachab)**

Boaz the Israelite, m. **Ruth of Moab**

Ovid the Ephrathite, m. **Ruth**

Jesse of Bethlehem, m. **Maachah Princess of Geshur**, daughter of Talmai King of Geshur

David King of Judah & Israel [1000 BC -] of Bethlehem, died in Jerusalem, m1. **Uriah**; m2. **Bathsheba (Bathshua)**, daughter of Ammiel (Eliam)

Solomon King of Israel, m. **Naamah Princess of the Ammonites**, daughter of Zelek

NOTE: Solomon built the Temple for the Ark of the Covenant of Yabweb.

Rehoboam King of Judah, m. (his cousin) **Macaah of Goshen**, daughter of Abishalom

Avija King of Judah, m. **Maacah**

Asa King of Judah, m. **Azubah Queen of Judea**, daughter of Shilhi

Jehoshaphat King of Judah

Joram King of Judah, m. **Athaliah bat Omri**, daughter of Omri King of Israel

Uzziah King of Judah, m. **Zibiah of Beersheba**

Jotham King of Judah, m. **Jehoaddin of Jerusalem**

Ahoz King of Judah, died in Lachish, m. **Jecolia (Jecoliah)** of Jerusalem; m. **Abijah of Israel**, daughter of Zechariah of Israel

Hezekiah King of Judah, m. **Hephzibah**

Mnasheh King of Judah, m. **Meshullemeth of Jotbah**, daughter of Haroz of Jotbah

Amon King of Judah, m. **Jedidah of Bozkath**, daughter of Adaiyah of Bozkath

Josiah King of Judah, m1. **Hamutal (Hamnutal) bat Jeremiah**, daughter of Jeremiah *the Prophet (see below)*;
m2. **Zebidah of Rumah**, daughter of Pediah of Rumah

Jachoniah King of Judah of Judah, died in Babylon, m. **Nehushta of Jerusalem**, daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem

Shealtiel Exilarch of Babylon, m. widowed daughter of Neri ha-David (See note under Nathan's line)

Zerubbabel of Babylon, died in Zion, Governor of Judea

Hananiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Jeshaiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Rephaiah ha-David

Arnan ha-David

Obadiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shecaniah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shemaiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Neariah ha-David

Hizkiah ha-David

[--?--]bat Hizkiah ha-David, m. **Akkub ha-David Exilarch of Babylon**, son of Elioenai ha-David (son of Neariah ha-David)

Johanen ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shephat ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Hanan (Anani) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon m. **[--?--] bat Abba Arikha**, daughter of Abba Arikha ben Aivu

Nathan I (Ukna) 'Ukba ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Nehemiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

'Uqba II ben Nehemiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Abba Mari ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Nathan II (Kahani I) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Zutra I ben Nathan ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Kahana II ben Zutra ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Huna VI ben Kahana ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Zutra ben Huna ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Huna (Ahunai) ben Zutra ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Kafnai (Hofnai) ben Huna ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Haninai (Haminai) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon, m. [-?--] bat Hananiah mi-Sura, daughter of Hananiah mi-Sura

Mustanai (Bustenai) ben Haninai ha-David [590-670] m1. Izdundad Sassanid Princess of Persia [640-] daughter of Yazdagird III Sassanid King of Persia; m2. Unknown

Hisdai Shahrijar ha-David

(Daughter) m. Natronai (Nafronai) ha-David, [-739] son of Nehemiah (Nechemiah) ben Haninai (son of Haninai ben Mustanai)

Havivai (Habibai) ha-David, m. Rolinde (Rolinda) d'Aquitaine (France), daughter of Norbert d'Aquitaine and Bertrade Princess of Laon

Gilbert de Rouergue m. Berthe

Fredelon de Rouergue m. Bertha d'Autun de Toulouse

Senegonde d'Autun de Toulouse [820-] m. Fulgaud (Foucaud) Comte de Rouergue [765-836] of Villefranche-de-Rouergue, Aveyron, Midi-Pyrenees, France, son of Sigisbert de Rouergue (See TOULOUSE)

~ ~ ~

Ham, son of Noah and Emzara, m. Ne-elatama

Canaan

Zibeon

Anah

Oholibamah m. Elon

Adah m. Esau (Edom) son of Isaac ibn Abraham and Rebekah bint Bethel

Idumea

(Unknown)

Antipas of Idumaea

Antipater *the Idumaeen*, Governor of Judea

Antipater (Antipatros) II, Procurator of Judea, m. **Cypros** *the Nabataean*

Herod I *the Great King of Judea* [73 BC - 4 BC] m. **Mariamne of Judea**, daughter of Alexander of Judea and Alexandra of Judea

Aristobulus (Aristobulos/Aristobolus) of Judea [-7 BC] m. **Berenice (Berenike)**, daughter of Castobanes (Lostobar/Costobarus) and Salome of Judea (daughter of Antipater II and Cypros *the Nabataean*)

Mariamne IV Arria m. **Titus Flavius II Sabinus**

Mariamne Caecina Arria m. **Gaius Calpurnius Piso** (*See ROMAN EMPIRE*)

~ ~ ~

Levi ibn Jacob, son of Jacob ibn Isaac and Leah bint Laban

Jochebed (Yocheved) ha-Levi, m. **Amram ha-Levi**, son of Koath ha-Levi

Moses (Mousos) Prince of Egypt, m. **Zipporah**

NOTE: Ordered to build the Ark of the covenant of God (Yabweh). He led the Israelites to Promised Land.

~ ~ ~

Aaron ha-Levi 1st High Priest of Israelites, son of Levi ibn Jacon and Leah bint Laban, m. **Elisheba**, daughter of Aminadab (Ammenadab)

Eleazar ben Aaron ha-Kohen, High Priest

Phineas (Phinehas) ben Eleazar ha-Kohen, High Priest

Abishuah (Abishua) ben Phinehas ha-Kohen, High Priest

Bukkai (Bukki) ben Abishua ha-Kohen, High Priest

Uzziah ben Bukkai ha-Kohen, High Priest

Zerahiah ben Ussiah ha-Kohen

Meraioth ben Zerahiah ha-Kohen

Amariah ben Meraioth ha-Kohen

Ahitub ben Amariah ha-Kohen

Zadok ben Ahilub ha-Kohen, High Priest

Hilkial ben Shallum ha-Koh

Ahimaaz ben Zadok ha-Kohen

Azariah ben Ahimaaz ha-Kohen

Johanon ben Azariah ha-Kohen

Azariah ben Johanon ha-Kohen, High Priest

Amariah ben Azariah ha-Kohen

Ahitub ben Amariah ha-Kohen, High Priest

Meraioth ha-Kohen

Zadok ha-Kohen, High Priest

Azariah (Shallum) ben Zadok ha-Kohen, High Priest

Hilkial ben Shallum ha-Kohen, High Priest

Jeremiah *the Prophet*

NOTE: Jeremiah fled Babylon to Ireland with his great-granddaughter, Tamar, and the Stone of Destiny.

Hamutal (Hamnutal) bat Jeremiah, m. **Josias (Josiah) ha-David King of Judah**

Zedekiah (Mattaniah) King of Judah

Tamar (Tephi) of Judah m. **Heremon 2nd Milesian Monarch of Ireland**, son of Gallamh (Milesius) King of Galacia (Spain) and Scota Tephi Princess of Egypt (*See IRISH*)

~ ~ ~

Zerah (Zehrah/Zarah) ibn Judah, son of Judah ibn Jacob and Tamar, m. **Electra** *the Pleiade*

Dara (Dardanus) King of Acadia, died in Egypt, m. **Batea of Teucri**

Erichthonius King of Acadia, m. **Astyoché of Acadia (Astvocho of Dardania)**

Tros (Trois) of Acadia, m. **Callirhoe**, daughter of Scamander *Xantus* Teucri and Idea

Ilus (Ilyus) King of Troy, m. **Eurydice (Eurydike)** of Troy, daughter of Adrastus of Troy

Laomedan King of Troy, m. **Placia (Strymo) of Troy**

Priamus High King of Troy, m. **Hecuba (Hecabe) of Phrygia**, daughter of Dymas King of Phrygia

Helenus of Troy King of the Scythians

Genger of the Scythians

Franco of the Scythians (Francus *the Trojan*)

Esdrón *the Trojan*

Gelio (Gelso/Zelis) *the Trojan*

Bosabiliano (Basabelian) I *the Trojan*

Plaserio (Plaserius) I *the Trojan*

Plesron

Eliacor *the Trojan*

Gaberiano (Zaberian) *the Trojan*

Plaserius II *the Trojan*

Atenor I *the Trojan King of Troy*

Priamus II **Trianus** *the Trojan*

Helenus II *the Trojan*

Plesron II *the Trojan*

Basabelian II *the Trojan*

Alexander *the Trojan King of Troy*

Priamus III **King of the Cimmerians**

Gentilanor (Gelmalor) **King of the Cimmerians**

Almadius (Almadion) **King of the Cimmerians**

Dilulius (Diluglio) I **King of the Cimmerians**

Helenus III **King of the Cimmerians**

Plaserius III **King of the Cimmerians**

Dilulius (Diluglio) II **King of the Cimmerians**

Marcomir **King of the Cimmerians**

Priamus IV **King of the Cimmerians**

Helenus IV **King of the Cimmerians**

Atenor I **King of the Cimmerians** (*See SICAMBRIAN for continuation of line*)

~ ~ ~

Nathan ha-David, son of David Ben Jesse King of Judah & Israel, and Bathsheba

Mattatha (Mathatha) ha-David

Menna (Menam) ha-David

Melea ha-David

Eliakim ha-David

Joham (Jona/Jonan) ha-David

Joseph ben Jonam ha-David

Judah (Judas) ben Joseph ha-David

Simeon ben Judah ha-David

Levi ben Simeon ha-David

Matthat (Mathat) ben Levi ha-David

Jorim ha-David

Eliazer (Eliezer) ben Jorim ha-David

Jesus (Jose/Joshua) ben Eliazer ha-David

Er (Her) ben Jesus ha-David

Elmandam (Helmadan/Elmodam) ha-David

Cosam (Cosan) ha-David

Addi ben Cosam ha-David

Melchi (Melki) ha-David

Neri ha-David m. a daughter of Jehoiachin

Shealtiel ha-David

NOTE: Neri's widowed daughter married Jechonias (Shealtiel's natural father) of the line of Solomon (see above). Their son, Pedaiah, married the widow of their other son, Shealtiel, who died childless. But according to Mosaic law, Pedaiah's name doesn't appear as the father of Zerubbabel. The law states that if a man dies childless, which Shealtiel did, his brother (in this case, Pedaiah) will impregnate his widow so that his brother's line can continue [Deut. 15: 5.6]. So, Zerubbabel ha-David is the legal son of Shealtiel ha-David, and the natural son of Pedaiah.

Zerubbabel of Babylon

Rhesa m. Shelomith

John ben Resa ha-David

Judah (Juda/Joda) ben Joanna ha-David

Joseph (Josech) ben Judah

Semel (Semei/Semein) ben Joseph ha-David

Mattathias (Mathathias) ben Semel ha-David m. a daughter of Simon ha-Kohen

Maath (Mahath) ha-David

Nagga (Nagge/Naggai) ben Maath ha-David

Esli (Hesli) ben Nagga ha-David

Naum (Nahum) ben Esli ha-David

Amos ben Naum ha-David

Mattathias (Mathathias) ben Amos ha-David

Joseph ben Mattathias ha-David

Janna (Janne/Jannai) ben Joseph ha-David

Melchi (Melki) ben Janna ha-David

Levi ben Melchi ha-David

Matthat (Mathat) ben Levi of Arimathea, m1. a daughter of **Eleazar**; m2. **Estha**

Heli ha-David [70 BC - 17 AD] m. **Anna**

NOTE: According to St. Augustine, Joseph was the carnal son of Jacob, levirate son of Heli, and according to the Gospel of St. Luke, Heli is the father of Joseph [Luke 3:23-38], but most scholars believe Luke was relating Mary's ancestral line. St. Matthew's Gospel agrees with St. Augustine's version.

Mary [26 BC -] m. **Joseph ha-David** [44 BC - 23 AD] son of Jacob ha-David

NOTE: Mary is Joseph's 2nd cousin, once removed. She had no brothers so was the heiress. Her husband, according to Jewish law, was reckoned among her father's family as his son. So Joseph was the natural son of Jacob, and the legal son of Heli.

Jesus (Yehoshua) the Nazarene [6 BC - 77 AD] died in Patmos, Greece, m. **Mary Magdalene** [3 - 63 AD] of Magdala, died in St. Baume, France, daughter of Syrios (Simon/Nicodemus) of Syria and Eucharia of Bethania

NOTE: Syrios' whole family was arrested and exiled to Gaul (France) by 37 AD.

Joseph Ram a-Theo (Josephes ha-David) [44 AD -] Bishop of Serras (Sarrazl/Sahr-Azzah)

Josue (Joshua) [80-] Bishop

Aminadab [120-] m. **Eurgen**, daughter of Lucius King of the Britons and Gwladys (daughter of Arviragus King of the Trinovantes, and Venissa Julia of Rome)

Cathelloris [160-203]

Manael [200-]

Titurel (Titire) [240-]

Boaz (Anfortas) [280-]

Frotmund (Frimutel) [340-] m. **Marcomir I Duke of East Franks** [347-404]

Pharamond King of All Franks [370-430] m. 394 **Argotta** [375-] daughter of Genebald Duke of the West Franks

NOTE: Under Pharamond's reign the Franks were united under one crown. He succeeded his father as Duke of the East Franks in 404, became King of the West Franks in 419, and King of Westphalia in 420. At his father-in-law's death in 419, Pharamond became Duke of the West Franks. Pharamond is the ancestor who has a clear documented line. Earlier rulers were documented from ancient records and annals referenced in church histories.

Frotmund [410-]

[--?--] Comte de Toulouse del Acqs [462-]

Vivianne I del Acqs [504-540] m. **Taliesin the Bard** [483-540] son of Lambord

Ygerina (Igraine/Ygrame) del Acqs [537-574] m. **Aedan Mac Gabran King of Dalriada** [537-608] son of Gabran Mac Domangart King of Dalriada and Lluan of Brecknock (*See DALRIADA for continuation of line*)

~ ~ ~

Viviane II del Acqs [534-] daughter of Taliesin *the Bard* and Vivianne I del Acqs, m. **Ban le Benoit**

Bors [559-]

Lionel [601-]

Alain of Brittany [649-]

Froamodus Count of Brittany [694-762]

Frodalus Count of Brittany [741-795] (*See BRITTANY for continuation of line*)

~ ~ ~

Avihud, son of Zerubbabel

Aliakim

Azor

Zadok

Achim

Eliud

Eleazar

Mathan m. Estha

Jacob ha-David

Joseph ha-David [44 BC - 23 AD] m. **Mary** [26 BC -] daughter of Heli ha-David

NOTE: According to St. Augustine, Joseph was the carnal son of Jacob, levirate son of Heli, which agrees with the Gospel of St. Matthew. In St. Luke's Gospel, Joseph is the son of Heli (See above).

Jesus (Yehoshua) the Nazarene (*See above*)

~ ~ ~

St. Joseph of Arimathea (James the Just ha-David) (Jesus' brother), son of Joseph ha-David and Mary, m. **Anna**

NOTE: Arimathea is a mistranslation of Rama-Theo, a title meaning "Crown Prince." In the Nazarene hierarchy, the Crown Prince always held the patriarchal title of "Joseph."

Anna (Enygeus) of Arimathea m. Mandubratius ap Lud of Britain, son of Lludd ap Beli Mawr King of the Britons

Boadicea Queen of the Iceni [45-62] m. **Prasutagus King of the Iceni** [-61]

Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus of the Iceni, m. **Marius King of the Trinovantes** (Silures in Wales) [64-125] son of Arviragus King of the Trinovantes and Venissa Julia of Rome (*See BRITONS*)

~ ~ ~

Scandinavian

Munion of Troy m. **Troan**, daughter of Priam of Troy and Hecuba

Tror (Thor) m. **Sibil (Sif)** *the Prophetess*

Loridi

Einridi

Vingethor

Vingener

Moda

Magi

Seskef (Sceaf)

Bedwig

Hwala

Hathra

Itermon

Heremod

Sceldwa (Skjold)

Beaw (Bjaf)

Taetwa

NOTE: Taetwa is not shown in the "Prose Edda," but appears in the "Anglo Saxon Chronicles."

Gaeta (Jat)

Godwulf (Gudolfr) [80-]

Finn [112-] of Asagargh (Asagard)

Freothelaf [142-] of Asagarth

Frithuwald (Bor) [190-] m. **Beltsea** [194-]

NOTE: Frithuwald is not shown in the "Prose Edda," but appears in the "Anglo Saxon Chronicles."

Woden (Odin) 1st **King of Scandinavia** [215-266] of Asagarth, died in Sweden, m. **Frigg (Frigida)** verch **Cadwalladr** [219-] daughter of Cadwalladr

NOTE: Asagarth (Asagard) or Asaland (Asabeim) was in Asia east of the Tanaskyisl River which flowed into the Black Sea and divided Europe and Asia. Upon Odin's conquest and peace with King Gylfi of Sweden, he built his dwelling in Logrinn (Lake Malar), Sweden, and built a large temple for blood offerings as per the custom of his people. He conquered all the land around and named it Sitgun, situated on the east side of the Upsala fjord. He died

in his bed. When near death, he marked himself with a spear point and dedicated to himself all the men who had died through weapons. He said he should now fare to the Godbeims and there welcome his friends. He was burned after his death; it was their belief that the higher the fire the more reek would reach the loftier bounds of Heaven.
[*“Heimskringla or the Lives of the Norse Kings,” by Snorre Sturlason*]

Baeldaeg Odinson [243-297] of Ancient Saxony, Northern Germany, m. Nanna [247-] of Scandinavia, daughter of Gewar I King of Norway
NOTE: *After his father’s conquest in Sweden, King Gylfi gave up his temple priestes’ dwelling places, and Baeldaeg received Breidablik.*

Brand of Scandinavia [271-328]

Frithugar (Frjodigar) [299-359] of Ancient Saxony (*See WEST SAXONS for continuation of line*)

NOTE: *Frithugar was also known as Trowinus Sleswicensium Perfectus of the Saxons.*

~ ~ ~

Scythian

Japhet (Japheth) [1352 BC -] son of Noah and Emzara, m. **Adataneses**, daughter of Eliakim (son of Methusaleh and Edna)

Baath (Baath) Heir of Scythia

Phoeniusa (Fenius) Farsaidh King of Scythia [-1800 BC] m. **Belait of Latium**, daughter of Latinus of Latium

NOTE: *Phoeniusa (Fenius) was king of Scythia when he invented letters. His overking, Ninus, ruled the Assyrian Empire, and being a wise man, and desirous of acquiring a knowledge of the various languages which not long before had confounded the builders of the Tower of Bable, employed able and learned men to go in search of knowledge; Fenius was one of these men. Returning sometime afterwards well skilled in this knowledge, Fenius erected a school in the valley of Senaar, near the City of Aeothena, in the 42nd year of the reign of Ninus, wherein having continued with his youngest son, Niulus, for 20 years, he returned home to his kingdom, which, at his death, he left to his eldest son, Nenuallus, leaving to Niulus no other patrimony than his learning, and the benefit of the school he had founded.*

Niulus (Nel) Nemnach Prince of Scythia, m. **Scota of Egypt**, daughter of Dinqueris Pharoah of Egypt

NOTE: *After his father’s return to Scythia, he continued some time at Aeothania, teaching the languages and other laudable sciences, until, upon report of his great learning, he was invited into Egypt by Pharaoh, the king who gave him the land of Campuss Eyrunt, near the Red Sea to inhabit and heal, so gave him his daughter Scota in marriage. Niulus employed Gaodhal (Gael) son of Eigbor, a learned and skillful man, to compose, or rather refine, the language called “Gaodh-ig” from the said Gaodhal, who composed and improved it, and for his sake also Niulus called his eldest son “Gaodhal.”*

Gaodhal (Gaedel/Gael) Glas

NOTE: *Gaodhal was the ancestor of the Clan na Gael, the children or descendants of Gaodhal. In his youth this Gaodhal was stung in the neck by a serpent, and was immediately brought to Moses, who, by laying the miraculous rod on the wounded place, cured him, and, in addition to this cure, he obtained a further blessing, which we enjoy to the present day--namely, that no venomous beast can live at any time where his posterity should inhabit, which privilege is verified in Candia, Getulea, and Ireland.*

Asruth (Esru) of Egypt, died in Crete

Sruth

NOTE: Soon after his father's death, Sruth was set upon by the Egyptians, actuated by their former animosities towards his predecessors, for having taken part with the Israelites against them, and which animosities had, until then, lain raked up in the embers, but which now broke out into a flame, to that degree that, after many battles and conflicts, wherein most of his colony lost their lives, Sruth was forced, with the few remaining, to depart the country, and after many traverses at sea, arrived at the Island of Crete, or Candia, where he died.

Heber (Eimher) Scutt

NOTE: after his father's death, and a year's stay at Crete, departed thence, leaving some of his people to inherit the island, and where some of their posterity likely remain, as the islands harbor no venomous serpents ever since. He and his people soon after arrived in Scythia, where his cousins, the posterity of Nenuallus (eldest son of Farsa), refusing to allot a place of habitation for him and his colony, they fought many battles, wherein Heber, being always the victor, at length forced the sovereignty from the reigning king, and settling himself and his colony in Scythia, they continued there for four generations. Heber Scutt was afterwards slain in battle, by Noemus, the son of the former king.

Beouman King of Scythia

Oghaman King of Scythia & Crete

Tait King of Scythia

Agnan

NOTE: Beouman, Oghaman and Tait were in constant war with the natives, so that after Tait's death, his son Agnan and his followers betook themselves to sea, wandering and coasting upon the Caspian for several years, in which time he died.

Lamhfionn

NOTE: Lamhfionn and his fleet remained at sea some time after his father's death, resting and refreshing themselves upon such islands as they met with. It was then that Cachear, their magician or Druid, foretold that there would be no end to their wanderings and travels, until they would arrive in the western island of Europe called Ireland, which was the place destined for their future and final abode, and that not only they but their posterity after three hundred years should arrive there. After many traverses of fortune at sea this little fleet arrived at last with their leader at Gothia or Gethulia, more recently Libya, where Carthage was afterwards built, and soon afterwards Lamhfionn died there.

Heber Glunfionn King of Getulia

NOTE: Heber's posterity continued in Getulia to the eighth generation, and were kings or rulers for one hundred and fifty years and upwards.

Agnan Fionn King of Getulia

Febric Glas King of Getulia

Nenuall Glas King of Gothland (near Black Sea)

Nuadh King of Getulia

Alladh King of Gothia

Arcadh King of Guelia

Deagh King of Gothia, King of the Gaels of Scythia

Brath King of Getulia

NOTE: Brath was born in Gothia. Remembering the Druid predictions, and his people having increased considerably during their abode in Getulia, he departed thence with a numerous fleet, to seek out the country destined for their final settlement by the prophecy of Cachear. After some time he landed on the coast of Spain, and by the strong hand settled himself and his colony in Galicia, in the north of that country.

Breoghan (Brigus) King of Galicia, Andalusia, Murcia, Castile & Portugal

NOTE: Breoghan was king of Galicia, Andalusia, Murcia, Castile, and Portugal, all of which he conquered. He built Breoghans Tower, or Brigantia, in Galicia, and the City of Braganza, in Portugal, called after himself. The kingdom of Castile was then called Brigia after him also.

Bile King of Galacia, Andalusia, Murcia, Castile & Portugal (See IRISH for continuation of line)

NOTE: All the notes on this lineage are from the website of the Ancient Kinsella Lineage.

~ ~ ~

Sicambrian

Atenor I King of the Cimmerians [483 BC - 443 BC]

Marcomir King of the Cimmerians [460 BC - 396 BC]

NOTE: Marcomir brought his people of the Cimmerians across the lands of the Danube into Gaul.

Atenor II King of the Sicambri [442 BC - 384 BC] m. **Cambra** [419 BC -]

Priamus King of the Sicambri [417 BC - 358 BC]

Helenus I King of the Sicambri [387 BC - 339 BC]

Diocles King of the Sicambri [360 BC - 300 BC]

NOTE: Diocles aided the Saxons in their war on the Goths.

Brassinus King of the Sicambri [339 BC - 287 BC] m. a daughter of King of the Orcadis, a tribe of ancient Norway

Clodomir I King of the Sicambri [290 BC - 232 BC]

Nicanor King of the Sicambri [275 BC - 198 BC]

Marcomir II King of the Sicambri [296 BC - 178 BC]

Clodius King of the Sicambri [189 BC - 159 BC] slain in battle

Atenor III King of the Sicambri [169 BC - 143 BC]

Clodomir II King of the Sicambri [149 BC - 123 BC]

Merodachus King of the Sicambri [128 BC - 95 BC]

Cassander King of the Sicambri [106 BC - 74 BC]

NOTE: Cassander was expelled from his kingdom by the Goths. He died in exile.

Antharius King of the Sicambri [80 BC- 37 BC] slain in battle with the Gauls

Francus King of the Franks [58 BC - 11 BC]

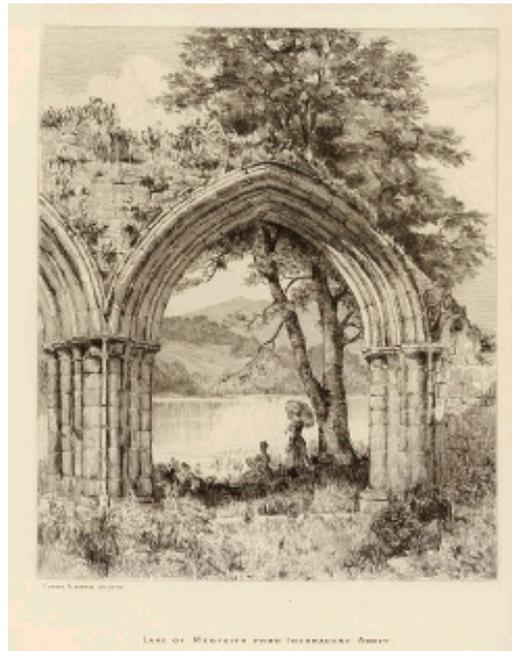
NOTE: Francus changed the name of his people to Franks. He also made a perpetual alliance with the Saxon and east German tribes. (See FRANKS for continuation of line)

NOTE: Through the marriage of Jeanne de Mesmes with Jewin Jaspit in 1568, the Daspit de St Amand family may claim descent from the Merovingian line by connection with the Kings of Navarre, Counts of Bigorre, the de la Barthe lords of the Four Valleys, the Royal dynasties of Merovingian, Carolingian and Capetian Kings of France and the Excilarchs of Narbonne of the Royal House of David. The dynasties of France all descend from the Merovingian line traced back to the Cimmerian tribe on the Black Sea in the lands of Scythia. By legend the King (Euxim) of the Cimmerians was descended from the Royal line of Troy. It is from this line that the Merovingian dynasty has its source. This genealogy was developed by Pere Anselm for the Regent of France and was augmented by genealogical research done later at the command of Napoleon I to determine descendants of the Merovingian royal house. [Contributed by Ray Oliver, Brian C. Tompsett's website]

~ ~ ~

Appendix B

Direct Ancestral Links to the Ancient Past



Lake of Menteith from Inchmahone Abbey
drawn and etched by Edward Slocombe, 1880.

Norman-English Ancestry

- Ragnvald *the Wise* Eysteinnsson Jarl of More** [840-890] son of Eystein Glumra Ivarsson Jarl of the Upplands & Asena Rognvaldsdottir, m. 858 **Ragnhild Hrolfsdottir** [840-] of Orkney Islands, daughter of Hrolf Nefia *Sea King*
- Rollo Rognvaldsson Duke of Normandy** [860-932] of Maer, Nord-Trondelag, Norway, m. 891 **Poppa de Bayeux** [872-938] of Evreux, Eure, Normandy, daughter of Berenger Comte de Bayeux and a daughter of Gervant de Rennes
- William Longsword Duke of Normandy** [891-942] of Rouen, Seine-Inferieure, Normandy, m1. 930 **Sprota de Senlis** [911-972] of Bretagne, daughter of Hubert Comte de Senlis
- Richard I *the Fearless* Duke of Normandy** [933-996] m. (mistress); m1. 959 **Gunnora de Crepon** [942-1031] of Arque, Seine-Inferieure, Normandy, daughter of Herbastus, Forester of Arque, and Gunnhild Olafsdottir
- Richard II *the Good* Duke of Normandy** [959-1026] m1. 998 **Judith of Brittany** [982-1017] of Rennes, Ille-et-Vilaine, Bretagne, daughter of Conan I Duke of Brittany, Comte de Rennes, and Ermengarde d'Anjou
- Robert I *the Devil* Duke of Normandy** [999-1035] m. (mistress) **Herleve (Arlette) de Falaise** [1003-1050] of Falaise, Calvados, Normandy, daughter of Fulbert de Falaise and Doda Princess of Scotland
- William I *the Conqueror* Duke of Normandy, King of England** [1027-1087] of Falaise, Calvados, Normandy, m. 1053 **Matilda (Maud) of Flanders** [1032-1083] daughter of Baudouin V Count of Flanders and Adele Princess of France
- Henry I *Beauclerc* King of England, Duke of Normandy** [1068-1135] m. (several mistresses); m. (mistress) **Isabel de Beaumont** [1098-1147] daughter of Robert I de Beaumont 1st Earl of Leicester and Isabel de Vermandois; m. (mistress) **Edith**; m. (mistress) **Nest verch Rhys Heiress of Carew** [1073-] daughter of Rhys ap Tewdwr King of Deheubarth and Gwladus verch Rhiwallon; m. (mistress) **Sibyl Corbet** [1092-1157] daughter of Sir Robert Corbet of Longden & Alcester; m. 1100 **Matilda (Edith) Princess of Scotland** [1079-1118] of Dunfermline, Fifeshire, daughter of Malcolm III *Caennmor* King of Scotland and St. Margaret Aetheling of Scotland
- Maud *the Empress* Princess of England** [1102-1167] of London (Matilda's daughter) m2. 1127 **Geoffrey IV Plantagenet Comte d'Anjou** [1113-1151] son of Foulques V Comte d'Anjou, King of Jerusalem, and Ermengarde (Erembourg) du Maine
- NOTE: The Plantagenet family name was originally just a nickname for Geoffrey. He many times wore a sprig with yellow flowers in his hat. The flower was named "genet" or "genistae" in the French of the times--thus his nickname was "Plant-a-Genet." Genet was supposedly a traditional flower of the Anjou family dating back to the time of Fulke the Great Count of Anjou 898-941 who was scourged (in order to atone for past sins) with broom twigs of the Genet while on pilgrimage in Jerusalem. Most people of the times had personal nicknames such as "Beauclerc," "Curt Mantel," "Longsbanks" and "Lackland," but Geoffrey's stuck and eventually became the family name. Geoffrey's immediate descendants were probably not known as the Plantagenet family at the time they lived, it was only later that the Plantagenet family name was applied to all descendants of Geoffrey.*
- Henry II *Curt Mantel* King of England** [1132-1189] of Le Mans, Maine, France, m. (mistress) **Ida de Toeni** [1155-] daughter of Ralph V de Toeni Lord of Flamstead and Margaret de Beaumont; m. 1152 **Eleanor of Aquitaine** [1123-1304] of Chateau de Belin-Beliet, Gironde, Aquitaine, France, daughter of William VIII Comte de Poitou, X Duke d'Aquitaine, and Eleanor de Chatelleraut
- John I *Lackland* King of England** [1166-1216] m. (mistress) Suzanne Plantagenet [1168-] daughter of Hamelin Plantagenet and Isabel de Warenne; m. (mistress) **Agatha de Ferrers** [1168-] of Ferrers,

Derbyshire, daughter of William I de Ferrers 3rd Earl of Derby and Sybil de Braose; m. 1200 **Isabella Taillefer d'Angouleme** [1188-1246] daughter of Aymer (Adhemar) Taillefer d'Angouleme and Alice de Courtenay

Henry III King of England [1207-1272] m1. 1236 **Eleanor of Provence** [1217-1291] of Aix-en-Provence, Bouches-du-Rhone, France, daughter of Raymond V Berenger Comte de Provence and Beatrice de Savoy

Edward I Longshanks King of England [1239-1307] m1. 1254 **Eleanor Princess of Castile** [1244-1290] of Burgos, Castile, Spain, daughter of Ferdinand III *the Saint* King of Leon & Castile, and Joan de Dammartin of Ponthieu; m2. 1299 **Marguerite Princess of France** [1279-1316] of Paris, Seine, Ile-de-France, daughter of Philip III *the Bold* King of France and Marie de Brabant

Joan of Acre Plantagenet [1272-1307] of Acre, Hazafon, Palestine, daughter of Edward I *Longshanks* and Eleanor of Castile, m. 1290 **Gilbert de Clare Earl of Gloucester & Hertford** [1243-1295] of Christ Church, Hampshire, son of Richard de Clare Earl of Gloucester & Hertford, and Maud de Lacy

Alianore de Clare [1292-1337] daughter of Gilbert de Clare and Joan *of Acre* Plantagenet, m. 1306 **Sir Hugh Baron le Despenser KB** [1286-1326] son of Hugh Baron le Despenser, Earl of Winchester, and Isabel de Beauchamp

Elizabeth Despenser [1322-1389] daughter of Sir Hugh le Despenser KB and Alianore de Clare, m. 1338 **Maurice IV the Valiant 4th Baron de Berkeley** [1330-1386] son of Thomas *the Rich* 3rd Baron de Berkeley and Margaret de Mortimer

Sir James de Berkeley Lord of Raglan [1354-1405] m. **Elizabeth Bluet Heiress of Raglan** [1358-1415] Ragland Castle, Usk, Monmouthshire, Wales, daughter of Sir John Bluet and Katherine Wogan

Sir James the Just 1st Baron Berkeley (of 1421 creation) [1394-1463] m3. **Isabel de Mowbray** [1386-1452] daughter of Sir Thomas de Mowbray KG 1st Duke of Norfolk and Elizabeth FitzAlan; m4. Joan Talbot [1423-] of Waterford, Ireland, daughter of Sir John Talbot KB 1st Earl of Shrewsbury and Maud Neville 6th Baroness Furnival

Maurice the Lawier 3rd Baron Berkeley [1435-1506] m. 1465 **Isabel Mead** [1444-1514] daughter of Philip Mead, Mayor of Bristol, and Isabel

Anne Berkeley [1474-1512] m. 1494 **Sir William Dennis** [1470-1534] of Dyrham, son of Sir Walter Dennis of Dyrham and Agnes Danvers

Eleanor Dennis [1515-1580] daughter of Sir William Dennis and Anne Berkeley, m. 1529 **William Lygon** [1512-1567] of Redgrove and Madresfield, Sheriff of Gloucester, son of Sir Richard II Lygon and Margaret Greville

Thomas Lygon [1543-1619] of Elkstone, Gloucestershire, m. **Frances Dennis** [1557-1626] daughter of Hugh Dennis of Pucklechurch, Gloucestershire, and Katherine Tyre

Thomas Lygon I [1577-1626] m. 1623 **Elizabeth Pratt** [1602-1631] of Stoke Parish, Coventry, Warwickshire, daughter of Dennis Pratt of Stoke Parish and Anne

Col. Thomas Lygon II [1623-1675] of Walsgrave-on-Sowe, Warwickshire, came to Jamestown, Henrico County, Virginia 1641, m. 1648 **Mary Harris** [1625-1704] of Henrico County, Virginia, daughter of Capt. Thomas Harris and Adria (Audry) Hoare

NOTE: Col. Thomas Lygon came to Virginia with his 2nd cousin Sir William Berkeley, who became the Royal Governor of Virginia. Their kinship stems from the marriage of Sir Henry Berkeley, (grandfather of Sir William) to Margaret Lygon, aunt of Thomas Lygon. Sir William was godfather of William Lygon, Thomas' son.

Thomas was appointed surveyor of Henrico County. He was a member of the House of Burgesses 1644-1645, Justice

in Charles City County 1657, and Burgess for Henrico County 1656. By 1644 he was a Lt. Colonel in the Indian Wars.

Maj. William Ligon [1650-1689] of Henrico County, m. 1680 **Mary Tanner** [1664-1699] of Henrico County, daughter of Joseph Tanner and Mary Browne

William Ligon II [1682-1764] of Henrico County, died in Amelia County, Virginia, m. 1703 **Elizabeth Batte** [1685-] of Prince George County, Virginia, daughter of Capt. Henry Batte and Mary Lound

Joseph Ligon [1704-1752] of Henrico County, m2. **Judith Stewart** [1704-1784] daughter of John Stewart and Michal Ballow

Capt. Joseph Ligon [1728-1780] of Henrico County & Antrim Parish, Halifax County, Virginia, m. 1754 **Judith Blackman** [1730-1780]

NOTE: Capt. Joseph Ligon was in the 36th Virginia Infantry.

Blackman Ligon [1757-1831] of Halifax County, Virginia, died in Greenville, South Carolina, m. 1782 **Elizabeth Townes** [1763-1842] of Amelia County, Virginia, daughter of William Townes and Ann Childers

NOTE: Blackman Ligon was a lieutenant in the Revolutionary War. He reportedly owned a hotel in Greenville.

William Blackman Ligon [1788-1863] of Virginia, died at China Grove, Pike County, Mississippi, m. 1820 **Eliza Lawn** [1803-1856] daughter of Buxton Guelph Lawn and Mary Dawson, and granddaughter of George III King of Great Britain and Ireland, and Hannah Lightfoot

Buxton Townes Ligon [1839-1894] of China Grove, Mississippi, died in Jackson, Mississippi, m. 1869 **Sarah Cornelia Barrett** [1846-1932] of Mississippi, died in Galveston, Texas

Kate Lawn Ligon [April 6, 1878 - January 12, 1961] of Jackson, Mississippi, died in Galveston, Texas, m. November 5, 1905 **William Bowman McGarvey** [June 26, 1875 - March 17, 1963] of Galveston, Texas, son of Capt. James Henry McGarvey and Anna Webb

Elnorah Katherine McGarvey [September 21, 1909 - July 1986] of Galveston, Texas, died in Valley Center, California, m. 1936 **William Ernest "Bill" Weitz** [August 30, 1908 - July 1990] of Sharon, Pennsylvania, died in Russellville, Hamblen County, Tennessee, son of George Ernest Weitz and Mary (Mame) Hanna

William Ernest Weitz Jr. [July 23, 1943 -] of Los Angeles, California, m1 1962 **Margaret Tiefenthaler** [1943-1997] of Vista, California; m2. 1989 **Kathryn Jeannine Funkhouser** [September 13, 1955 -]

Rainer Xenophanes Weitz [December 29, 1962 -] of Vista, California, m. 1998 **Joan Judge**

Hannah Rose Weitz [December 13, 2000 -]; and **Emma Katherine Weitz** [March 12, 2003 -]

~ ~ ~

Barrett Ligon Weitz [March 2, 1946 -] of Los Angeles, California, son of William Ernest Weitz and Elnorah Katherine McGarvey, m1. 1968 **Jeanette Mary Baillif** [July 15, 1950 -] of Minneapolis, Minnesota, daughter of Alfred Baillif and Shirley; m2. **Candace Davies Millard** [March 24, 1951 -] of San Bernardino, California, daughter of David Clifford Davies and Adelaide Mabel Parks

Sandra Lynn Weitz [October 19, 1970 -] (Jeanette Baillif's daughter) of Escondido, California, m. **David Phillip Young** [October 6, 1974 -]

Daniel Barrett Weitz [December 15, 1992 -]; and **Emily Mae Young** [March 23, 1996 -]; and **Elizabet**

Blanche Young [June 2, 1997 -]

~ ~ ~

Annette Catherine Weitz [February 21, 1973 -] of La Mesa, California, daughter of Barrett Ligon Weitz and Jeanette Mary Baillif, m. 1994 **James Lee Fowler** (July 7, 1973 -] son of Otis Fowler and Betty McCain

Taylor Scheherazade Marie Weitz Fowler [February 27, 1998 -]; and **Isabella Noelle Fowler** [December 2, 2002 -]

~ ~ ~

Mary Kathleen Weitz [March 6, 1978 -] of Phoenix, Arizona, daughter of Barrett Ligon Weitz and Jeanette Mary Baillif, met **Rusty Jackson**

Katherine (Kati) Amanda Jackson [April 30, 1999 -]

~ ~ ~

Lora Lee Weitz [March 14, 1938 -] of Los Angeles, California, daughter of William Ernest Weitz and Elnorah Katherine McGarvey, m1. August 24, 1956 **Rodger Vernon Cline** [January 5, 1938 - March 23, 1964] of Los Angeles, California, son of Marion Vernon Cline and Julia Ridgeley; m. 1974 **Robert Young Heller** [1939-] of Escondido, California, son of Joseph Heller and Laura Young

William Michael Cline [August 31- 1962 -] of Oceanside, California, m. June 26, 1982 in Jacumba, California, **Elizabeth Ann Tiffany** [March 20, 1964 -] of Ontario, California, daughter of Robert Hendry Tiffany and Marie Rita Plate

Robert Allen Cline [October 1, 1983 -] of San Diego, California, m. **Jennie [---]** of El Centro, California

Kimberly Michelle Cline [September 23, 2005 -] of El Centro, California

~ ~ ~

Michael Anthony Cline [June 28, 1986 -] of San Diego, California, son of William Michael Cline and Elizabeth Ann Tiffany

~ ~ ~

Catherine Anne Cline [May 29, 1960 -] daughter of Rodger Vernon Cline and Lora Lee Weitz, m1. October 8, 1977, **James Carlton Foy** [July 31, 1954 - June 7, 1999] of San Diego, California, son of James Edwin Foy and Barbara Joan Frantz; m. in June, 1982, **Miguel Estrada**, of Calexico, California; m2. 1988 **Karl-Heinz Kochishan** of Hanover, Germany, immigrated to New Orleans, Louisiana, relocated 1951 to San Diego, California, son of Stephan Koschieszchien of Romania and Victoria (ULN) of Russia

James Barrett Foy [April 14, 1978 -]; and **William Michael Estrada** [May 6, 1983 -]; and **Sarah Michelle Kochishan** [December 9, 1988 -]

~ ~ ~

Christopher Barrett (Heller) Cline [August 16, 1975 -] of El Centro, California, son of Robert Young Heller and Lora Lee Weitz, m. 1996 **Mary Ann Mitchell** [June 6, 1971 -] daughter of James Mitchell and Norma Alicia

Christopher James Cline [December 15, 1996 -]; and **Gabriela Alicia (Mitchell) Cline** [February 22, 1994]

~ ~ ~

Norman-Scots Ancestry

Richard I *the Fearless* Duke of Normandy [933-996] of Rouen, Seine-Inferieure, Normandy, m.
(concubine)

Godfrey FitzRichard Comte d'Eu [953-1015] of Brionne, m. **Hawise de Guines** [958-] daughter of Sigfried
the Dane Comte de Guines and Elisande (Elftrude) of Flanders

Gilbert FitzGodfrey Comte d'Eu & Brionne [980-1040] m. Constance d'Eu [1009-] daughter of William
Hieme Count d'Eu and Beatrice le Goz

Richard FitzGilbert 1st Earl de Clare [1035-1089] of Brionne, Eure, Normandy, died at Priory of St. Neot,
Cambridgeshire, England, m. 1054 **Rohese Giffard** [1036-1133] of Langueville, Normandy,
daughter of Walter I Giffard Seigneur de Longueville and Agnes Flatel

*NOTE: Richard FitzGilbert accompanied his cousin, William the Conqueror, to England and was granted 176
lordships, 95 of which were associated with the Honour (feudal unit of administration) of Clare, 38 in Surrey, 35 in
Essex, 3 in Cambridge, and other lordships in Wiltshire and Devonshire, and Tunbridge, Kent, the family seat.*

Gilbert FitzRichard de Clare Earl of Hertford [1066-1117] of Clare, Suffolk, m. **Adeliza de Clermont**
[1072-] of Clermont-en-Beauvais, Oise, Picardy, France, daughter of Hugh de Creil Count of
Clermont and Margaret de Roucy

Richard FitzGilbert de Clare Earl of Hertford [1090-1126] m. 1115 **Adeliza le Meschin**
[1098-1142] daughter of Ranulph le Meschin 3rd Earl of Chester and Lucia of Mercia

Roger de Clare Earl of Hertford [1116-1173] of Tunbridge Castle, Kent, m. 1153 **Maud de St. Hilary**
[1137-1193] of Burkenham, Norfolk, daughter of Sir James de St. Hilary of Dalling, and Aveline

Richard de Clare *Magna Charta Surety* Earl of Hertford [1158-1217] m. 1182 **Amice FitzRobert
Countess of Gloucester** [1160-1224] daughter of William FitzRobert 2nd Earl of Gloucester and
Hawise de Beaumont

Gilbert de Clare *Magna Charta Surety* Earl of Gloucester & Hertford [1180-1230] m. 1217 **Isabel
Marshal** [1200-1239] of Pembroke, Wales, daughter of William Marshal 4th Earl of Pembroke and
Isabel de Clare Countess of Pembroke

Isabel de Clare [1226-1264] daughter of Gilbert de Clare and Isabel Marshal, m. 1240 **Robert de Brus Lord
of Annandale** [1210-1295] of Annandale, Dumfriesshire, Scotland, son of Robert de Brus Baron of
Annandale and Isabella of Huntingdon

Robert 1st Baron de Bruce, Earl of Carrick [1243-1303] m. 1272 **Margaret (Marjory) Countess of
Carrick** [1252-1292] daughter of Neil Earl of Carrick, Regent of Scotland, and Margaret Stewart

Robert I *the Bruce* King of Scotland [1274-1329] of Turnberry Castle, Ayrshire, m1. 1295 **Isabel de Mar**
[1278-1302] of Kildrummy Castle, Aberdeenshire, Scotland, daughter of Sir Donald 6th Earl of Mar
and Helen verch Llewelyn; m2. 1302 Elizabeth de Burgh [1284-1327] daughter of Richard the Red
de Burgh and Margaret de Guines

Marjory Bruce of Scotland [1297-1315] of Dundonald Castle, Irvine, Ayrshire, m. 1315 **Walter Stewart 6th
High Steward of Scotland** [1292-1327] son of James Stewart 5th High Steward and Egidia (Jill) de
Burgh

Robert II Stewart King of Scotland [1315-1390] of Paisley Abbey, Renfrewshire, Scotland, m1. 1347
Elizabeth Mure [1320-1355] of Rowallan Castle, Kilmarnock, Ayrshire, daughter of Sir Adam Mure
and Joan Cunningham

Robert III (John) Stewart King of Scotland [1337-1406] m. (mistress); m1. 1367 **Annabella Drummond** [1355-1401] of Stobhall, Cargill, Perthshire, daughter of Sir John Drummond and Mary de Montfichet

James I Stewart King of Scotland [1394-1437] of Dumfeline, Fifeshire, m. 1423 **Joan Beaufort** [1408-1445] of Westminster, Middlesex, England, daughter of John *Fairborn* Beaufort KG Marquess of Somerset and Margaret de Holand

James II Stewart King of Scotland [1430-1460] of Holyrood Palace, Edinburgh, m. 1449 **Marie of Guelders** [1432-1463] of Grave, Noord-Brabant, Netherlands, daughter of Arnulf Duke of Guelders and Katharina of Kleve

James III Stewart King of Scotland [1451-1488] of Stirling, m. 1469 **Margaret of Denmark** [1456-1486] daughter of Christian I King of Denmark and Dorothea von Brandenburg

James IV Stewart King of Scotland [1472-1513] of Holyrood Abbey, m. 1503 **Margaret Tudor Princess of England** [1489-1541] daughter of Henry VII Tudor King of England and Elizabeth of York

James V Stewart King of Scotland [1512-1560] of Linlithgow Palace, m2. 1538 **Marie de Guise** [1515-1560] daughter of Claude Duke of Guise and Antoinette de Bourbon

Mary I Stewart Queen of Scotland [1542-1567] m. 1565 (her 1st cousin) **Henry Stewart Lord Darnley** [1545-1567] of Temple Newsham, Yorkshire, England, son of Matthew Stewart 4th Earl of Lennox and Margaret Douglas

James VI Stewart King of Scotland, I of England [1566-1625] m. 1589 **Anne of Denmark** [1574-1619] daughter of Frederik II King of Denmark

Elizabeth Stewart [1596-1662] m. 1613 **Frederick V Elector Palatine, King of Bohemia** [1596-1632] of Amberg, Bavaria, son of Frederick IV and Louisa Juliana (daughter of William Prince of Orange)

Sophie Princess Palatine Duchess of Brunswick-Luneberg-Calenberg (Hanover) [1630-1714] of m. 1658 **Ernst August Elector of Brunswick-Luneberg** [1624-1705] son of Georg Duke of Brunswick-Luneberg and Anna-Eleanor of Hessen-Darmstadt

George I (George Louis) King of Great Britain & Ireland [1660-1727] of Leineschloss, Osnabruck, Hanover, Germany, m. 1682 **Sophia Dorothea Princess of Brunswick-Celle** [1666-1726] daughter of Georg Wilhelm Duke of Brunswick-Celle and Eleonore Desmier d'Olbreuse

NOTE: George I was the first Hanoverian king of England and divided his time between Germany and England.

George II (George Augustus) King of Great Britain & Ireland [1683-1760] m. 1705 **Karoline Margravine of Brandenburg-Ansbach** [1682-1737] daughter of Johann Friedrich Margrave of Brandenburg-Ansbach and Eleonore Erdmuth Princess of Saxe-Eisenach

Frederick Lewis Prince of Wales [1706-1751] of Hanover, m. 1736 **Augusta Princess of Saxe-Gotha, Duchess of Saxony** [1719-1772] of Gotha, Germany, daughter of Friedrich II Duke of Saxe-Gotha-Altenburg and Magdalene Auguste Princesses of Anhalt-Zerbst

George III (George William Frederick) King of Great Britain & Ireland [1738-1820] of Norfolk House, St. James Square, London, m1. 1759 **Hannah Lightfoot** *the Fair Quakeress* [1730-1768] of London, daughter of Mathew Lightfoot and Mary Wheeler; m2. 1761 **Charlotte Sophie Duchess of Mecklenburg-Strelitz** [1744-1818] daughter of Karl Duke of Mecklenburg-Strelitz and Elisabeth Albertine Princess of Saxe-Hildburghausen

NOTE: There is considerable controversy over the marriage of George III and Hannah Lightfoot. Their marriage reportedly took place in Curzon Street Chapel, Mayfair, the marriage certificate signed by both George and Hannah. When George became king, the marriage was not recognized (because of Hannah's commoner status) and he was

pressured by his advisors into finding a more "suitable" wife. The marriage records mysteriously disappeared from the chapel but have recently come to light, along with Hannah's portrait depicting her in regal dress (painted by artist Joshua Reynolds, noted for his portraits of British and European aristocracy), and Hannah's will, in which she leaves the care of their two sons and daughter to their father, George III. The portrait of Hannah and her will reportedly have been locked away in the Tower of London for more than a century. Her will was signed "Hannah Regina." George III was the first Hanoverian King of England to speak English.

Buxton Guelf-Lawn [1760-1825] son of George III King of Great Britain & Ireland, and Hannah Lightfoot, m. 1781 **Mary Dawson** [1762-1820] granddaughter of the Lord Mayor of London

NOTE: There is a record of a William Dawson who came to America about 1760 from England, fleeing persecution as a Quaker; he may be a relative of Mary Dawson, the daughter-in-law of Hannah Lightfoot, who was known as the Fair Quakeress. Perhaps it is worth noting that Hannah may also have been persecuted because of her religious beliefs, because she conveniently disappeared from history completely. It would have been a bit much for the royal family or their advisors to admit that George III's first wife was not only considered a commoner, but a Quaker as well.

In answer to a query, the following communication was found at genforum.genealogy.com/lawn/:

Selma,

As to how Robert Lawn became Robert Layton, I shall quote from the family records prepared by my great grandfather, Dr. Thomas Layton:

It seems that Robert Lawn resided on the farm (run by Buxton Lawn, his father, and a Lord Faulkstone) or estate and that at the time of the event concerning which I am about to write, he was a young, but honourable boy. One season, after the crops were harvested, some young men, among whom was Robert Lawn ... were sent to a neighboring town or village to dispose of the products of the estate. After selling the crops, these young men began to gamble with the funds thus obtained and Robert Lawn, who was then quite young, although he took no part in the game, yet still remained with his companions who continued to play all night until they had completely squandered the funds received for the sale of the crops. When he found out what had occurred and realized the shameful conduct of his companions, Robert Lawn ... was so deeply mortified and ashamed that he did not return to the farm, and to his Father, but enlisted as a private in the army.

Buxton Lawn "bought" Robert out of the army, and took him back to his mother. Robert did not last long, however. He ran off and re-enlisted, this time under the name "Layton". Our family records claim that a Mrs. Layton was Robert Lawn's aunt, the sister of Buxton Lawn. Robert did not stay in the army long, and shortly thereafter left with a friend and sailed to New York under the name Layton which he maintained the rest of his life. The exact date of this is not at all clear.

The information you have about Robert Lawn Layton essentially conforms to the information we have, except that our records show two additional children of the marriage of Robert and Margaret Hewes: Robert Layton, Jr., born in New Orleans on August 25, 1827, and I believe died in Monroe, La. at an unknown date, and Maria Hewes L, born in New Orleans May 30, 1829, and died in New Orleans Sept. 4, 1832.

We do not have a great deal about Mary Dawson. Apparently her paternal grandfather was Lord Mayor of London. Her father apparently married a "waiting maid" to the Dawson family, which was apparently quite wealthy. The Dawson family strongly disapproved of this marriage, cut off the two, and Mary's parents became linen drapers. For some unknown reason, Mary's parents were not happy with her marriage to Buxton Lawn, and were estranged from her until shortly before she sailed to the United States.

When George III became incurably ill, his son By Queen Charlotte, the Prince of Wales became regent in 1810. Obviously the children of George by Charlotte were on bad terms with Buxton, who had a valid claim to the throne. When the Prince of Wales became regent, Buxton Lawn was fired as the private secretary of George III and no longer had access to the Court. We do not know whether it was out of fear or for what reason, but shortly thereafter, he left England for New York. Our records state: "Soon after directing his wife and children to meet him speedily in New York, something occurred which required Buxton Lawn's immediate return to England." Mary had already set sail for New York with some of their children, when Buxton sailed back to London. Buxton remained in England until his death. Mary remained in the United States the rest of her life.

Mary did not stay long in New York, but in about 1810, she joined her son Robert L Layton in New Orleans. Mary died in New Orleans in 1819.

The children who accompanied Mary to New York were Susan Lawn who died soon after her arrival in New York, Ann Lawn, married to a Mr. Stevens, Joseph Lawn who died in New Orleans in 1818, Mary Lawn who became Mrs. Porter and Eliza Lawn who became Mrs. Ligon.

I have nothing about Mary Lawn after the death of Mr. Porter. In fact, I did not know Mr. Porter's name until I received your message.

Our records indicate that possibly one of Mary Dawson's brothers emigrated to South Carolina. A newspaper

*article read by Dr. Thomas Layton indicated that a Judge Dawson died and left his estate to the heirs of Mary Dawson Lawn or of Catherine Rives. I have no other details than this.
I hope the above is helpful. – Ed Merritt*

Eliza Lawn [1803-1856] m. **Col. William Blackman Ligon** [1797-1858] of Pike County, Mississippi, son of Blackman Ligon and Elizabeth Townes (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Celtic - French Ancestry

Capoir (Kaxor) a Celt in Britain [198 BC -]

Manogan a Celt in Britain [172 BC -]

Heli (Beli) King of the Britons [151 BC - 72 BC]

Lud King of the Britons [132 BC - 62 BC]

Tenuantius (Tasciovanus) King of the Catuvellauni [102 BC - 26 BC]

Cunobelin (Cenvellin) King of the Trinovantes (Silures-Wales) [63 BC - 17 AD]

NOTE: Cunobelin became king of the Trinovantes in 26 BC, the most potent state of the Britons. He was a favorite of Augustus, greatly promoted the peace of Britain and much civilized his people. He sired eleven sons. His capital was centered at Camulodunum (Colchester).

Arviragus King of the Trinovantes (Silures) [15 BC - 74 AD] m. **Venissa Julia of Rome**, daughter of Claudius I Emperor of Rome and Valeria Messalina

Marius King of the Trinovantes (Silures) [64-125] m. **Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus**, daughter of Prasutagus of the Iceni and Boadicea Queen of the Iceni

NOTE: Boadicea, Queen of the Iceni, led a revolt of Iceni and Trinovantes (Britons of Essex and Suffolk) against the Romans. She was defeated by the Roman governor, Suetonius Paulinus, and poisoned herself to thwart capture and death by the Romans.

Croilus (Coel) King of the Trinovantes [103-150]

Athildis Princess of the Trinovantes [125-170] m. **Marcomir IV King of the Franks** [102-149] son of Odomar King of the Franks

Pharabert King of the Franks [141-186]

Sunno King of the Franks [156-213]

NOTE: during Sunno's reign, the Franks had many wars with the Romans and Gaulic tribes.

Hilderic King of the Franks [175-253]

Bertherus King of the Franks [205-272]

Clodius III King of the Franks [230-298]

Walther King of the Franks [252-306]

Dagobert I King of the Franks [275-317]

Genebald I Duke of the East Franks [296-358]

Dagobert II Duke of the East Franks [314-379]

Clodius IV Duke of the East Franks [332-389]

Marcomir V Duke of the East Franks [351-404]

Pharamond King of All Franks [370-430] m. 394 **Argotta** [375-] daughter of Genebald Duke of the West Franks

NOTE: Under Pharamond's reign the Franks were united under one crown. He succeeded his father as Duke of the East Franks in 404, became King of the West Franks in 419, and King of Westphalia in 420. At his father-in-law's death in 419, Pharamond became Duke of the West Franks. Pharamond is the ancestor who has a clear documented line. Earlier rulers were documented from ancient records and annals referenced in church histories.

Clodius Long Hair King of the Franks [389-445] m. **Basina of Thuringia** [389-] daughter of Widelphrus King of Thuringia

NOTE: The Merovingian Dynasty is generally considered to have begun with Clodius. Thuringia was a state in Germany near Bavaria. There were three sons recorded of this marriage: Merovius (Merovee), Sigemerus, and Albero who became Duke of Moselle, and was the ancestor of the Carolingian kings of France, the dukes of Bavaria, and the kings of Lorraine.

Sigmaerus Bishop of Auvergne [419-] m. a daughter of Tonantius Ferreolus, Praetorian Prefect of Gaul

Adelbert Prince of the South Franks [449-491]

Wambert Ferreolus Prince of Sigermerus Franks [470-] m. **Deuteria Gallo** [495-] daughter of Afranius Syagrius Gallo, Roman Consul

Blithilde Princess of Gaul [513-580] m. **Ansbertus, Gallo-Roman Senator** [500-] of Moselle, Lorraine, son of Tontantius II Ferreolus Duke of Moselle and Outeria of Moselle

Arnoldus Bishop of Metz [540-601] m. **Bertha de Heristal** [550-610] daughter of Charibert I King of Paris, and Ingoberge

Dode Clothilde de Heristal [583-650] m. 596 **St. Arnulf Bishop of Metz, Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia** [582-640] son of Bodegeisel II, Governor of Aquitaine, and Oda of Suevia

Ansgise (Ansigisel) of Metz [601-685] Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia, m. 634 **St. Begga of Landen** [613-694] daughter of Pepin I, Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia, and Itta of Landen

Pepin II [635-714] Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia, of Heristal, m. (concubine) **Alpaide** [654-689] of Aipois (Chalpaida), Austrasia

Charles Martel [689-741] Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia, of Heristal, m. 713 **Rotrou of Treves** [690-724] daughter of Leutwinus Bishop of Treves (St. Lievin) and Willigarde de Agilofinges of Bavaria

Pepin III the Short King of the Franks [714-768] m2 740 **Berthe of Laon** [725-783] of Laon, Aisne, Picardy, daughter of Canbert I Count of Laon, and Bertrada

NOTE: Pepin III seized the throne by deposing King Childeric III, confined the king to a monastery and ordered him shorn of his sacred long hair, a symbol of the true Merovingian kings. Childeric III died four years later, thus ending the Merovingian rule in France. To ensure his "legitimacy," Pepin III married a Merovingian princess, as did his son, Charlemagne.

Charlemagne I Carolus Magnus (Charles I) King of the Franks, Holy Roman Emperor [742-813] of Ingelheim, Rheinhessen, Hesse-Darmstadt, m1. Unknown; m2. (no marriage) **Himiltrude** [746-];

m3. 771 **Hildegarde of Swabia** [758-783] daughter of Gerold Count of Vinzgau, Duke of Allemania, and Emma of Allemania

Louis I *the Pious* King of France, Holy Roman Emperor, King of Germany, King of Aquitaine [778-840] of Chasseneuil, Lat-et-Garonne, Aquitaine, m2. 818 **Judith of Bavaria** [800-843] daughter of Welf (Guelph) III Duke of Bavaria and Edith (Hedwig) of Saxony

Charles II *the Bald* Holy Roman Emperor [823-877] m1. 842 **Ermentrude d'Orleans** [830-869] of Orleans, Loiret, Orleanais/Centre, France, daughter of Odo (Eudes) I Count of Orleans and Engeltrude of Paris

Judith Princess of France [846-870] m3. 863 **Baudouin I *Iron Arm* Count of Flanders** [837-879] son of Odoacer Count of Harlbec

Baudouin II *the Bald* Count of Flanders [865-918] m. 884 **Aelfthryth Princess of England** [872-929] of Wessex, daughter of Alfred *the Great* West Saxon King of England and Ealhswith of Mercia

Arnold I Count of Flanders [890-964] of Ghent (Belgium) m. 934 **Alix de Vermandois** [915-960] of Vermandois, Normandy, daughter of Herbert II Comte de Troyes & Vermandois, and Liegarde Princess of France

Baudouin III Count of Flanders [935-961] m. 961 **Mathilde (Maud) Billung of Saxony** [937-1008] daughter of Hermann Billung Duke of Saxony and Hildegardis

Arnold II Count of Flanders [961-987] m. 968 **Rosela of Italy** [962-1002] daughter of Berengarius II King of Italy, Marquis of Ivrea, and Willa of Tuscany

Baudouin IV *the Bearded* Count of Flanders [980-1036] m1. 1012 **Ogive of Luxembourg** [988-1029] daughter of Frederick I Count of Salm & Luxembourg, and Irmentrude of Gleiberg

Baudouin V Count of Flanders [1012-1067] m. 1028 **Adele (Aelis) Princess of France** [1009-1078] daughter of Robert II *the Pious* King of France and Constance of Provence

Matilda (Maud) of Flanders [1032-1183] daughter of Baudouin V Count of Flanders and Adele (Aelis) of France, m2. 1053 **William I *the Conqueror* King of England** [1027-1087] of Falais, Calvados, Normandy, son of Robert I Duke of Normandy and Herleve (Arlette) de Falaise (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Anglo-Saxon Ancestry

Ecgberht I King of Kent & Wessex [775-838] of Wessex, son of Eahlmund Under-King of Kent and a daughter of Aethelbert II King of Kent, m. **Raedburh de Carolingians** [774-] (sister of Charlemagne) of Aachen, Rheinland, Prussia, daughter of Pepin III *the Short* King of the Franks and Berthe of Laon

Aethelwulf King of Kent & Wessex [806-858] m. 830 **Osburh** [810-853] daughter of Oslac Ealdorman Royal Cupbearer

Alfred *the Great* West Saxon King of England [849-899] of Wantage, Berkshire, England, m. 868 **Ealhswith of Mercia** [849-905] of Gainsborough, Lincolnshire, England, daughter of Aethelred II Mucil Earl of Mercia and Eadburh Fadburn

Edward *the Elder* West Saxon King of England [875-924] m3. 919 **Eadgifu Meapham** [896-968]

daughter of Sigehelm I Earl of Kent and Elfrida

Edmund I *the Magnificent King of England* [920-946] m. **St. Algifu of England** [922-944] daughter of Sigehelm I Earl of Kent and Elfrida

Edgar I *the Peaceful King of England* [943-975] m1. **Aelfhryth (Elfrida)** [945-1000] of Lydford Castle, Devonshire, England, daughter of Ordgar Ealdorman of Devon

Aethelred II *the Unready King of England* [968-1016] m1. 985 **Alfaed Thoresdottir** [968-1002] daughter of Thored Gunnarsson

Edmund II *Ironsides King of England* [989-1016] m. 1015 **Ealgyth of Mercia** [990-] daughter of Aelfhryth of Mercia and Ealdgyth Morcarsdottir of Mercia

Edward *the Exile Aetheling Prince of England* [1016-1057] m. 1035 **Agatha of Hungary** [1020-1054] daughter of St. Stephen I King of Hungary and Gisela of Bavaria

St. Margaret Aetheling of Scotland [1045-1093] of Hungary, died at Edinburgh Castle, Scotland, m. 1068 **Malcolm III Caennmor King of the Scots** [1031-1093] of Atholl, Perthshire, Scotland, son of Duncan I MacCrinan King of Scotland and Sibyl Sywardsdottir of Northumbria

Matilda Princess of Scotland [1079-1118] daughter of Malcolm III *Caennmor* King of Scotland and St. Margaret Aetheling of Scotland, m. 1100 **Henry I Beauclerc King of England** [1068-1135] son of William I *the Conqueror* King of England, Duke of Normandy, and Matilda (Maud) of Flanders (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Mayflower Ancestry

George Soule [1590-1678] of Echington, died in Duxbury, Plymouth, Massachusetts, m. 1635 **Mary Beckett** [1602-1676] of London, daughter of Sylvester Beckett and Elizabeth Hill

NOTE: George Soule was orphaned when a fire destroyed his home in England. He was brought up by his brother, Robert Soule of Selter County He was a passenger on the "Mayflower," coming over as a teacher to Edward Winslow's children; was the 35th signer of The Mayflower Compact. His wife, Mary Beckett, was a passenger on the "Anne." George and Mary were married in Plymouth. George was a Plymouth volunteer for the Pequot War in 1637, and was Deputy General of the Duxbury Court 1645-1654. George Soule, Miles Standish and John Alden laid out the first town of Duxbury, Plymouth, Massachusetts.

Patience Soule [1648-1705] m. 1665 **John Haskell** [1640-1706] of Middleborough, Massachusetts, son of Roger Haskell and Elizabeth Hardy

John Haskell II [1670-1728] of Middleborough, Plymouth, Massachusetts, m. 1699 **Mary Squire** [1681-1753] of Cambridge, Middlesex, Massachusetts, daughter of John Squire and Sarah Francis

Squire Haskell [1706-1774] of Middleborough, Plymouth, Massachusetts, m. 1732 **Elizabeth Russell Chandler** [1709-1787] of Thompson, Windham, Connecticut

Sarah Haskell [1733-1773] of Killingly, Windham, Connecticut, m. 1750 **Jonathan Barrett** [1731-1803] of Killingly, died in Butternuts, Otsego County, New York, son of John Barrett and Dorothy Green Lynde

Jonathan Barrett II [1760-1839] m. 1786 **Elizabeth Hatch Murdock** [1763-1814] daughter of Maj. Thomas Murdock and Elizabeth Hatch

NOTE: Along with his father-in-law (Maj. Thomas Murdock) Jonathan Barrett II contributed land and money to the growth of Dartmouth College in New Hampshire.

Don Carlos Barrett [1788-1838] of Norwich, Vermont, died in Brazoria, Texas, m. 1810 in Natchez, Mississippi, **Lucy Walton** [1793-1866] daughter of Oliver Walton and Catherine Murdock

Oliver Perry Barrett [1811-1858] of Natchez, Hinds County, Mississippi, died in Jackson, Mississippi, m. 1833 **Sarah Cornelia Walton** [1819-1901] daughter of John Walton and Sarah McMillan

Sarah Cornelia Barrett [1846-1932] of Jackson, Mississippi, died in Galveston, Texas, m. 1869 **Buxton Townes Ligon** [1839-1894] of China Grove, Pike County, Mississippi, died in Jackson, Mississippi, son of William Blackman Ligon and Eliza Lawn (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Hohenstauffen - English Ancestry

Friedrich van Bueren [1025-] m. **Hildegard of Swabia** [1030-] daughter of Otto II Duke of Swabia

Friedrich I Duke of Swabia [1050-1105] m. 1089 **Agnes of Franconia** [1074-1143] daughter of Heinrich IV Holy Roman Emperor, King of Germany, and Bertha de Savoy

Friedrich II von Hohenstauffen Duke of Swabia [1090-1147] m1. **Judith Duchess of Bavaria** [1092-1129] daughter of Heinrich IX *the Black* Duke of Bavaria, I Duke of Saxony, and Wulfhilda (Ulfhild) Duchess of Saxony

Friedrich I Barbarossa Holy Roman Emperor, III Duke of Swabia, King of Germany [1122-1190] of Waiblingen, Germany, m. 1156 **Beatrix de Macon Comtesse de Bourgogne** [1143-1184] daughter of Rainald III Comte de Bourgogne & Macon, and Agatha de Lorraine

NOTE: Barbarossa led the 3rd Crusade but died enroute.

Philip von Hohenstauffen King of the Romans [1176-1208] son of Friedrich I *Barbarossa* Holy Roman Emperor and Beatrix de Macon, m. 1197 **Angelina Maria of Byzantium**

Maria von Hohenstauffen [1201-1235] m. 1215 **Henry II Duke of Brabant** [1207-1247] son of Henri I Duke of Brabant & Louvain, and Mathilde de Bourgogne

Mahaut (Maud) of Brabant [1217-1288] m1. **Robert I Comte d'Artois** [1216-1249] son of Louis VIII *the Lion* King of France and Blanche Princess of Castile

Blanche d'Artois Queen of Navarre [1248-1302] of Arras, Paris, France, m1. 1269 **Henry I King of Navarre** [1244-1274] son of Theobald I King of Navarre, Comte de Troyes, and Margaret de Foix; m2. 1276 Edmund Crouchback Plantagenet Earl of Lancaster [1244-1296] son of Henry III King of England and Eleanor of Provence

Jeanne Princess of Navarre [1271-1305] of Pamplona, m. 1284 **Philip IV the Fair King of France** [1268-1314] of Fontainebleau, Seine-et-Marne, Ile-de-France, son of Philip III *the Bold* King of France and Isabella Princess of Aragon

Isabella Princess of France [1292-1358] m. 1307 **Edward II King of England** [1284-1327] son of Edward I *Longshanks* King of England and Eleanor Princess of Castile (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Hebrew Ancestry

This ancestry is controversial because it contains the possibility of Jesus' marriage to Mary Magdalene and their issue, and is presented here only as an hypothesis. For many generations rulers in Europe believed they were descendants of the Merovingian Priest Kings, who ruled, not governed, and who were descendants of this ancient Hebrew lineage, hence the term, Divine Right of Kings.

According to Judeo-Christian belief, Adam was the first man and Eve the first woman. The following genealogy is taken from the King James version of the Bible and other sources, including a translation of the Gospels from the ancient original Aramaic. It has been proposed by some genealogists that Adam was the progenitor of a lineage (House of Adam, for example) that lasted for about 1,000 years, rather than his actual life span, and which proposal applies to the descendants of Adam and Eve as well.

There are several dating systems indicating a time frame for the Old Testament genealogy: The Hebrew system, Septuagint Alexandrinus; Septuagint Vaticanus, and Samaritan Pentateuch (and probably more), which differ by as much 1,000 years or more. So, Old Testament dates have been eliminated in this genealogy.

It was common to skip some generations. The phrase "son of" can mean "descendant of." Matthew skipped generations between Zerubbabel and Joseph, listing only 10 generations, but Luke lists 19 in the same time period. Luke also mentions Cainan (the son of Arphaxad King of Arrapachtis, and grandson of Shem), but Cainan is not found in the Hebrew scriptures. Luke was going by the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Old Testament widely used in Jesus' time. In fact, most of the quotes throughout the New Testament that were taken from the Old Testament were from this Septuagint.

Adam m. Eve

Seth m. Azura

Enos m. Noam, daughter of Seth and Azura

Cainan m. Mualeleth, daughter of Enosh and Noam

Mahalaleel m. Dinah, daughter of Barakiel

Jared m. Baraka

Enoch *the Initiated* m. **Edna**, daughter of Daniel (son of Mahalaleel)

Mathusala *Man of the Dart* m. **Edna**, daughter of Azrial (son of Jared)

Lamech m. Betenos (Ashmua), daughter of Barakil (Baraki'il Elisha) (son of Enoch and Edna)

Noe (Noah) m. Emzara (Naamah Coba), daughter of Rake'el (son of Mathusala and Edna)

Sem m. Sedeqetelebab, daughter of Eliakim

Arphaxad (Arfakhshadh/Arpachshad) King of Arrapachtis m. Rasueja, daughter of Elam (son of Shem and Sedeqetelebab)

Cainan

NOTE: Cainan is listed in Luke's Gospel, but omitted in the Old Testament (I Chron. 1:1)

Sala of Chaldea m. Mu'ak (Muak) daughter of Kesed

Heber m. 'Azurad bint Nebrod, daughter of Nebrod

Phaleg King of Babylon, m. Lomna bint Sina'ar, daughter of Sina'ar

Ragau King of Lagash of Palestine, died in Ur, Chaldea, m. **'Ora bat 'Ur**, daughter of 'Ur ben Kesed

Seruch King of Ur & Agade, m. **Melka**, daughter of Kaber

Nachor King of Ur & Agade, m. **Jaska ('Ijaska)**, daughter of Nestag of the Chaldees

Tharrha King of Agade, of Ur, Chaldea, m1. **Maria**

Abram (Abraham), m1. **Sara (Saraha)**, daughter of Haran; m. (no marriage) **Agar the Egyptian**; m2. **Chettura**

Isaac m. **Rebecca bint Bethuel**, daughter of Bathuel the Syrian, of Syrian Mesopotamia

Jacob (Israel) of Haran, died in Egypt, m. **Leah bint Laban**, daughter of Laban ibn Bethuel and Adinah

Judah of Palestine, died in Egypt, m. **Tamar**, daughter of Ephraim

Perez of Hebron, Canaan, Palestine, died in Rameses, Goshen, Egypt

Hezron of Palestine, died at Caleb-Ephrathah, Goshen, Egypt, m. **Jephunneh of Hebron**, Canaan, Palestine, daughter of Pharez

Aram Prince of Israel of Rameses, Goshen, Egypt, died in Jerusalem

Aminabad

Nahshon the Israelite

Salmon the Israelite, m. **Rahab (Rachab)**

Boaz the Israelite, m. **Ruth of Moab**

Ovid the Ephrathite, m. **Ruth**

Jesse of Bethlehem, m. **Maachah Princess of Geshur**, daughter of Talmai King of Geshur

David King of Judah & Israel [1000 BC -] of Bethlehem, died in Jerusalem, m1. **Uriah**; m2. **Bathsheba (Bathshua)**, daughter of Ammiel (Eliam)

Solomon King of Israel, m. **Naamah Princess of the Ammonites**, daughter of Zelek

NOTE: Solomon built the Temple for the Ark of the Covenant of Yahweh.

Rehoboam King of Judah, m. (his cousin) **Macaah of Goshen**, daughter of Abishalom

Avija King of Judah, m. **Maacah**

Asa King of Judah, m. **Azubah Queen of Judea**, daughter of Shilhi

Jehoshaphat King of Judah

Joram King of Judah, m. **Athaliah bat Omri**, daughter of Omri King of Israel

Uzziah King of Judah, m. **Zibiah of Beersheba**

Jotham King of Judah, m. **Jehoaddin of Jerusalem**

Ahoz King of Judah, died in Lachish, m. **Jecolia (Jecoliah)** of Jerusalem; m. **Abijah of Israel**, daughter of Zechariah of Israel

Hezekiah King of Judah, m. Hephzibah

Mnasheh King of Judah, m. Meshullemeth of Jotbah, daughter of Haroz of Jotbah

Amon King of Judah, m. Jedidah of Bozkath, daughter of Adaiyah of Bozkath

Josiah King of Judah, m1. Hamutal (Hamnutal) bat Jeremiah, daughter of Jeremiah *the Prophet (see below)*;
m2. **Zebidah of Rumah**, daughter of Pediah of Rumah

Jachoniah King of Judah of Judah, died in Babylon, m. **Nehushta of Jerusalem**, daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem

Shealtiel Exilarch of Babylon, m. widowed daughter of Neri ha-David (See note under Nathan's line)

Zerubbabel of Babylon, died in Zion, Governor of Judea

Hananiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Jeshaiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Rephaiah ha-David

Arnan ha-David

Obadiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shecaniah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shemaiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Neariah ha-David

Hezekiah ha-David

[-?--] bat Hezekiah ha-David, m. (1st cousin) **Akkub ha-David Exilarch of Babylon**, son of Elioenai ha-David (son of Neariah ha-David)

Johanen ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Shephat ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Hanan (Anani) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon m. **[-?--] bat Abba Arikha**, daughter of Abba Arikha ben Aivu

Nathan I (Ukna) 'Ukba ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Nehemiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

'Uqba II ben Nehemiah ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Abba Mari ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Nathan II (Kahani I) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Zutra I ben Nathan ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Kahana II ben Zutra ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Huna VI ben Kahana ha-David Exilarch of Babylon [-470]

Zutra ben Huna ha-David Exilarch of Babylon [-520]

Huna (Ahunai) ben Zutra ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Kafnai (Hofnai) ben Huna ha-David Exilarch of Babylon

Haninai (Haminai) ha-David Exilarch of Babylon, m. [?-] bat **Hananiah mi-Sura**, daughter of Hananiah mi-Sura

Mustanai (Bustenai) ben Haninai ha-David [590-670] m1. **Izdundad Sassanid Princess of Persia** [640-] daughter of Yazdagird III Sassanid King of Persia; m2. Unknown

Hisdai Shahrijar ha-David

(Daughter) m. Natronai (Nafronai) ha-David, [-739] son of Nehemiah (Nechemiah) ben Haninai (son of Haninai ben Mustanai)

Havivai (Habibai) ha-David, m. **Rolinde (Rolinda) d'Aquitaine** (France), daughter of Norbert d'Aquitaine and Bertrade Princess of Laon

Gilbert de Rouergue m. Berthe

Fredelon de Rouergue m. Bertha d'Autun de Toulouse

Senegonde d'Autun de Toulouse [820-] m. **Fulgaud (Foucaud) Comte de Rouergue** [765-836] of Villefranche-de-Rouergue, Aveyron, Midi-Pyrenees, France, son of Sigisbert de Rouergue

Raymond I Comte de Toulouse, Comte de Rouergue [797-864] m. **Bertha de Remy** [815-] of Reims, Marne, Champagne, daughter of Remigus (Rency) Comte de Reims and Arsende de Ponthieu

Eudes I Comte de Rouergue & Toulouse [828-918] m. **Gersinde d'Alby** [832-] daughter of Ermengaud Comte d'Alby

Raymond II Comte de Toulouse [857-923] m. **Guidenilde de Urgel** [878-] of Lerida, Spain, daughter of Wilfred I Count of Urgel & Barcelona, and Widnille of Flanders

Raymond III Pons Comte de Toulouse [895-950] m. **Garsende de Gascony** [895-947] daughter of Garcia Sanchez Count of Gascony and Aminiana d'Angouleme

Raymond IV Comte de Toulouse [916-975] m. **Guidinilde**

Raymond V Taillefer Comte de Toulouse [947-990] m. 972 **Adelaide d'Anjou** [942-1026] daughter of Foulques II *le Bon* Comte d'Anjou and Gerberga de Gatinais

William III Taillefer Comte de Toulouse [975-1037] m1. **Arsinde de Provence** [982-1014] daughter of William II Comte d'Arles & Provence, and Arsinde de Comminges; m2. **Emma Venaissin de Provence** [987-1063] daughter of Rotbaud III Venaissin Comte de Provence and Ermengarde

Pons III Comte de Toulouse [1015-1060] m. 1039 **Almonde (Almodis) de la Marche** [1015-1071] daughter of Bernard I Comte de la Marche and Amelie d'Aulnay

William IV Comte de Toulouse, Duke of Narbonne [1040-1093] m2. 1080 **Emma de Mortaigne** [1056-] daughter of Robert de Mortaigne Earl of Cornwall and Maud de Montgomery

Philippa de Toulouse [1081-1117] m. 1094 **William VII Comte de Poitou, IX Duke d'Aquitaine** [1071-1126] son of William VI Guy Comte de Poitou, VIII Duke d'Aquitaine, and Matilda de la Marche

William VIII Comte de Poitou, X Duke d'Aquitaine [1099-1137] m. 1121 **Eleanor de Chatelleraut** [1105-1130] daughter of Aimery I Vicomte de Chatelleraut and Dangereuse de l'Isle Bouchard

Eleanor of Aquitaine [1123-1204] m2. **Henry II *Curt Mantel* King of England** [1132-1189] of Le Mans, Maine, France, son of Geoffrey IV Plantagenet Comte d'Anjou and Maud *the Empress* Princess of England (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Ham, son of Noah and Emzara, m. **Ne-elatama**

Canaan

Zibeon

Anah

Oholibamah m. **Elon**

Adah m. **Esau (Edom)** son of Isaac ibn Abraham and Rebekah bint Bethel

Idumea

(Unknown)

Antipas of Idumaea

Antipater *the Idumaeen*, Governor of Judea

Antipater (Antipatros) II, Procurator of Judea, m. **Cypros *the Nabataean***

Herod I *the Great* King of Judea [73 BC - 4 BC] m. **Mariamne of Judea**, daughter of Alexander of Judea and Alexandra of Judea

Aristobulus (Aristobulos/Aristobolus) of Judea [-7 BC] m. **Berenice (Berenike)**, daughter of Castobanes (Lostobar/Costobarus) and Salome of Judea (daughter of Antipater II and Cypros *the Nabataean*)

Mariamne IV Arria m. **Titus Flavius II Sabinus**

Arrius Antonius Calpernius Piso m. **Procilla Servilia**

Pompeia Plotina Domitia Lucilla m. **Trajan Emperor of Rome** [-117] son of Marcus Cocceius Nerva Emperor of Rome

Domitia Lucilla Trajanus m. **Annius Verus**, son of Marcus Annius Verus and Rupilla Faustina

Marcus Aurelius Antonius Emperor of Rome [121-180] m. **Annia Galeria Faustina** [130-175] daughter of Antoninus Pius Emperor of Rome and Annia Galeria Faustina *the Elder*

Crispus Commodus Emperor of Rome [161-192] m. **Bruttia Crispina**, daughter of Marcus Aurelius Crispina

Claudia Crispina m. **Flavius Eutropious of the Gordiani** [220-] son of Titus Flavius

Flavius Valerius Constantius I (Chlorus) Emperor of Roman Empire [242-306] died in York, England, m. **St. Helena (Augusta) of the Cross** [248-328] daughter of Coilus II of Gloucester, England and Strada *the Fair* of Combria

Constantine *the Great* (Flavius Valerius Aurelius Constantinus) Emperor of Roman Empire [268-337]

m. **Flavia Marima Fausta** [288-326] daughter of Maximianus Hercules (of the Balkans) and Eutropia *the Syrian*

Flavius Julius Constantius II Emperor of Roman Empire [295-360] m. **Eusebia**

Macsen (Maximian) Wledig of Britain (Magnus Guletic Maximus) [330-388] m1. **Elen Llyddog verch Eudaf** [340-] of Wales, daughter of Eudaf *Hen* ap Einydd

Anwn Dynod ap Macsen King of Isle of Man & Dyfed [355-]

Tudwal ap Anwn King of Garth Madryn [371-]

Tewdrig ap Tudwal [387-]

Marchell verch Tewdrig [403-] m. **Anlach MacCormaic** [403-440] son of Cormac ap Rub

St. Brychan ap Anllach, Brecon King of Brycheiniog [419-450] of Eire (Ireland), died in Wales, m1. **Prawst verch Tudwal**, daughter of Tudwal ap Gwrfawr and Gratianna

Meleri verch Brychan [435-] m. **Ceredig ap Cunedag**, son of Cunedda Wledig ap Ederm King of North Wales and Gwawl verch Coel

Usai ap Ceredig [470-]

Serwyl ap Usai [501-]

Boddw ap Serwyl [541-]

Arthfoddw ap Boddw [581-]

Arthlwys ap Arthfoddw [621-]

Clydog ap Arthlwys [661-]

Seisyll ap Clydog [701-]

Arthen ap Seisyll [730-807]

Dyfnwallon ap Arthen [755-]

Meurig ap Dyfnwallon [780-]

Angharad verch Meurig [825-] m. **Rhodri Mawr (the Great) ap Merfyn King of Gwynedd** [789-878] of Caer Seiont, Carnarvonshire, son of Merfyn Frych ap Gwraid King of Powys and Epyllt verch Cynan

Cadell ap Rhodri Prince of Deheubarth [861-910] m. **Rheingar** [865-]

Hywel Ddu (the Good) ap Cadell King of Wales [887-950] of Dynevor Castle, Carmarthenshire, Wales, m. 904 **Elen verch Llywarch** [890-943] of Dyfed, daughter of Llywarch ap Hyfaidd King of Dyfed

Owain ap Hywel King of Deheubarth [913-989] m. **Angharad verch Llewelyn** [918-] daughter of Llewelyn ap Merfyn

Einion ap Owain [933-984] m. **Nesta of Devon** [934-]

Cadell ap Einion [964-] m. **Elinor verch Gwerystan** [980-] of Powys, daughter of Gwerystan ap Gwaithfoed Baron of Powys, and Nest verch Cadell

Tewdwr Mawr the Great ap Cadell King of South Wales [1000-]

Rhys ap Tewdwr King of Deheubarth [1035-1093] m. **Gwladus verch Rhiwallon** [1051-] daughter of Rhiwallon ap Cynfyn Prince of Powys

Nest verch Rhys Heiress of Carew [1073-] m. (mistress of) **Henry I Beauclerc King of England** [1068-1135] son of William I *the Conqueror* King of England and Matilda of Flanders (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Aaron ha-Levi 1st High Priest of Israelites, son of Levi ibn Jacon and Leah bint Laban, m. **Elisheba**, daughter of Aminadab (Ammenadab)

Eleazar ben Aaron ha-Kohen, High Priest

Phineas (Phinehas) ben Eleazar ha-Kohen, High Priest

Abishuah (Abishua) ben Phinehas ha-Kohen, High Priest

Bukkai (Bukki) ben Abishua ha-Kohen, High Priest

Uzziah ben Bukkai ha-Kohen, High Priest

Zerahiah ben Ussiah ha-Kohen

Meraioth ben Zerahiah ha-Kohen

Amariah ben Meraioth ha-Kohen

Ahitub ben Amariah ha-Kohen

Zadok ben Ahilub ha-Kohen, High Priest

Ahimaaz ben Zadok ha-Kohen

Azariah ben Ahimaaz ha-Kohen

Johanon ben Azariah ha-Kohen

Azariah ben Johanon ha-Kohen, High Priest

Amariah ben Azariah ha-Kohen

Ahitub ben Amariah ha-Kohen, High Priest

Meraioth ha-Kohen

Zadok ha-Kohen, High Priest

Azariah (Shallum) ben Zadok ha-Kohen, High Priest

Hilkial ben Shallum ha-Kohen, High Priest

Jeremiah the Prophet

NOTE: Jeremiah fled Babylon to Ireland with his great-granddaughter, Tamar, and the Stone of Destiny.

Hamutal (Hamnutal) bat Jeremiah mi-Libnah m. Josias (Josiah) ha-David King of Judah

Zedekiah (Mattaniah) King of Judah

Tamar (Tephi) of Judah m. Heremon 2nd Milesian Monarch of Ireland, son of Gallamh (Milesius) King of Galacia (Spain) and Scotia Tephi Princess of Egypt

NOTE: Tamar took with her the stone (or Scone—the pillow or rock used by Jacob when he had his famous dream), which today remains with her descendants, rulers of Great Britain and Ireland.

Eurialus (Irial, Iarel) Faidh 10th Milesian Monarch of Ireland buried at Magh Maugh

Eithrial 11th Monarch

NOTE: Eithrial was an educated man, wrote "History of the Gaels." During his reign the practice of agriculture was advanced. He was slain by Conmaol, son of Heber Fionn, at the Battle of Soirreans in Leinster.

Foll-Aich Prince of Ireland

Tigemmas 13th Monarch of Ireland

Enboath Prince of Ireland

NOTE: It was in this prince's lifetime that the kingdom was divided in two parts by a line drawn from Drogheda to Limerick.

Smiomghall Prince of Ireland

Fiacha Labhrainn 18th Monarch of Ireland

NOTE: He was called Labhrainn because during his reign the stream of Tubber Labhrainn began to flow.

Aongus Olmucach 20th Monarch of Ireland, died at Battle of Carman

NOTE: Aongus was named for having a breed of swine of a much larger size than any in Ireland, the words "oll" and "mucaa" meaning "great swine." He was a valiant, war-like prince. In his reign the Picts again refused to pay the tribute imposed on them 250 years before by Heremon, but Aongus went with a strong army into Alba and in thirty pitched battles overcame them and forced them to pay the required tribute.

Main Prince of Ireland

Rogheachach 22nd Monarch of Ireland [-1357 BC]

NOTE: It was during Rogheachach's reign that four-horse chariots were first used in Ireland.

Dein Prince of Ireland

In his time gentlemen and noblemen first wore gold chains around their necks as a sign of their birth.

Sioma (Saoghalach) 34th Monarch of Ireland

Olioll Aolcheoin Prince of Ireland

Gialchadh 37th Monarch of Ireland [-1013 BC]

Nuadhas Fionnfail 39th Monarch of Ireland [-961 BC]

Aedan Glas Prince of Ireland

Simeon Breac 44th Monarch of Ireland [-903 BC]

Simeon caused his predecessor to be torn asunder, but after a reign of 6 years, he met with a like death in 903 BC, by order of Duach Fionn, the son of the murdered king.

Muredach Bolgach 46th Monarch of Ireland [-892 BC]

Riacha [Feachus?] Tolgrach 55th Monarch of Ireland [-795 BC]

Duach Ladhrach 59th Monarch of Ireland [-737 BC]

NOTE: Duach was distinguished by the name Duach Lagrach by reason of his being so strict and basty in the execution of justice; he would not rest until the criminal was seized and tried for the offense. The word "lagrach" means speed and suddenness.

Eochaidh Buadhach Prince of Ireland

Ugaine Mor 66th Monarch of Ireland [-593 BC]

Laeghaire Lorc 68th Monarch of Ireland

Olioll Aine Prince of Ireland

Labhradh Longseach Prince of Ireland

Olioll Bracan Prince of Ireland

Aeneas Ollamh 73rd Monarch of Ireland

Breassal Prince of Ireland

Fergus Fortamhail 80th Monarch of Ireland [-384 BC]

NOTE: Fergus was known by that name because of his great body strength and bravery.

Felim Foruin Prince of Ireland

Crimthann Coscrach 85th Monarch of Ireland

Mogh-Art Prince of Ireland

Art Prince of Ireland

Allod (Olioll) Prince of Ireland

Nuadh Falaid Prince of Ireland

Fearach Foghla Prince of Ireland

Olioll Glas Prince of Ireland

Fiacha Fobrug Prince of Ireland

Breassal Breac Prince of Ireland

NOTE: Breassal had 2 sons between whom he divided his country. Lughaidh is described below. Conla was the ancestor of the kings, nobility and gentry of Ossory. He inherited the south part, from the River Barrow to the sea.

Lughaidh

NOTE: Lughaidh was the ancestor of the kings, nobility and gentry of Leinster. He inherited all the territories on the north side of the River Barrow, from Wicklow to Drogheda.

Sedna

NOTE: Sedna built the royal city of Rath Alinne (now Allen in County Kildare).

Nuadhas Neacht (Neass) 96th Monarch of Ireland

NOTE: the royal city of Naas is named after him.

Fergus Fairge

Ros

Fionn File, a poet

Conchobhar Abhraoidhruaidh 99th Monarch of Ireland

NOTE: His name comes from the fact that the hair of his eyebrows was red; the word "abrudhruadb" means "red eyebrows."

Mogh Corb

NOTE: About the time of Mogh Corb's birth, the common people rose up and overthrew their leaders (Milesian nobles perhaps). The leaders were mostly killed but some few made it to Scotland where they stayed for a number of years. Eventually they returned, supposedly after being asked back by the common people, because their land was now in chaos.

Cu Corb King of Leinster

Niadh Corb Prince of Leinster

Cormac Gealtach

Cormac was a great general. He led the Irish army into Scotland to assist the Picts and Scots against the Romans, who were commanded by Argicola. But the superior discipline of the Roman legions made it decisive in their favor. [Ancient Kinsella Lineage, kinsella.org/history/famline.htm]

Felim Fiorurglas

Cathair Mor Monarch of Ireland

Fiacha Baicheda [-220]

Breasal Bealach King of Leinster

Labhradh Na Leinster [390-]

Ennae Cinnsealaigh [410-] of Leinster, Ireland

Crimthann Cass King of Leinster [430-483] m. Mell of the Deisi [432-] of Munster, daughter of Errbran of the Deisi

NOTE: Crimthann was baptized by St. Patrick at Rathvilly c. 448, as was his son, Nathach..

Nathach King of Leinster [448-]

Eoghan (Owen) Caoch [479-] of Kinsale, County Cork, Ireland

Siollan [502-]

Faelan King of Leinster [540-]

Faolchu [581-]

Onchu [620-]

Aodh [660-]

Rudgal [700-747-]

Aodh [746-]

Diarmuid [786-]

Cairbre [828-876]

Cinaed King of Leinster [844-935] slain by the Danes of Loch Carmen

Ceallach [886-945] of Leinster, slain by Ossorians at Atheliath (Dublin)

Domnall (Donal) King of Leinster [915-974] slain by the Ossorians in 974

Diarmuid King of Leinster [948-997] m. **Aife Na Ossory** [965-] daughter of Gilla-Patrick King of Ossory and Eachraidh Ui Aeda Odha

Donoch Maol-na-mBo King of Leinster [979-]

Diarmuid 47th King of Leinster [995-1072] m. **Darbhforgal Ui Briain** [1009-1080] daughter of Donnchad Ua Briain King of Munster, and granddaughter of Brian Boromha

Diarmait Na Leinster was the 177th Milesian Monarch of Ireland. He was slain Feb. 23, 1072 at Odbba, near Navan.

Murchadh 50th King of Leinster [1025-1090] m. **Sadb MacBricc** [1032-] daughter of Muirchertach MacBricc King of the Deisi

NOTE: Murchadh (Murcha/Morough) invaded the Isle of Man in 1070, died in Dublin 1090.

Donnchadh (Donoch) MacMurchada King of Dublin, 56th King of Leinster [1050-1115] m. **Orlaith MacBranain** [1080-] daughter of Gilla-Michil MacBranain and Iuchdelb Hui Gairbita

Diarmuid (Dermod/Diarmait) naNGhall (Dermot MacMurrough) 58th King of Leinster [1100-1170] m2. **Mor O'Toole** [1114-1191] daughter of Muirchertach Ua Tuathail O'Toole and Inghin O'Byrne

NOTE: Diarmuid naNGhall became king of Leinster in 1135 and was deposed in 1166 by the monarch Roderich O'Connor, aided by Tiernon O'Ruarc, Prince of West Bretni. He sought refuge at King Henry's court and obtained permission to enlist the services of English subjects for a recovery of his kingdom. Diarmuid returned to Ireland in 1169 and succeeded in recovering part of his former territories and captured Dublin and other east coastal towns. To ally himself to King Henry further, he married his daughter, Aoife (Eve), to Richard "Strongbow" de Clare 2nd Earl of Pembroke.

Aoife (Eve) MacMurrough [1141-1186] m. 1171 **Richard Strongbow de Clare 2nd Earl of Pembroke** [1130-1176] of Tunbridge, Kent, son of Gilbert de Clare and Elizabeth de Beaumont

Isabel de Clare Countess of Pembroke [1172-1220] m. 1189 **William Marshal 4th Earl of Pembroke** [1146-1219] of Rockley, Marlborough, Wiltshire, England, son of John *the Marshal* FitzGilbert of Rockley and Sibyl de Salisbury

Isabel Marshal [1200-1239] daughter of William Marshal 4th Earl of Pembroke and Isabel de Clare Countess of Pembroke, m. 1217 **Gilbert de Clare *Magna Charta Surety* Earl of Gloucester & Hertford** [1180-1230] son of Richard de Clare Earl of Hertford and Amice FitzRobert Countess of Gloucester

Isabel de Clare [1226-1264] daughter of Gilbert de Clare and Isabel Marshal, m. 1240 **Robert de Brus Lord of Annandale** [1210-1295] of Annandale, Dumfriesshire, Scotland, son of Robert de Brus Baron of Annandale and Isabella of Huntingdon

Robert 1st Baron de Bruce, Earl of Carrick [1243-1303] m. 1272 **Margaret (Marjory) Countess of Carrick** [1252-1292] daughter of Neil Earl of Carrick, Regent of Scotland, and Margaret Stewart

Robert I *the Bruce* King of Scotland [1274-1329] of Turnberry Castle, Ayrshire, m1. 1295 **Isabel de Mar** [1278-1302] of Kildrummy Castle, Aberdeenshire, Scotland, daughter of Sir Donald 6th Earl of Mar and Helen verch Llewelyn; m2. 1302 **Elizabeth de Burgh** [1284-1327] daughter of Richard *the Red* de Burgh and Margaret de Guines

Marjory Bruce of Scotland [1297-1315] of Dundonald Castle, Irvine, Ayrshire, m. 1315 **Walter Stewart 6th High Steward of Scotland** [1292-1327] son of James Stewart 5th High Steward and Egidia (Jill) de Burgh (*See Norman-Scots Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Zerah (Zehrah/Zarah) ibn Judah [1751 BC - 1500 BC] son of Judah ibn Jacob and Tamar, m. **Electra *the Pleiade***

Dara (Dardanus) King of Acadia [-1414 BC] died in Egypt, m. **Batea of Teucri**

Erichthonius King of Acadia [-1386 BC] m. **Astyoche of Acadia (Astvocho of Dardania)**

Tros (Trois) of Acadia [-1330 BC] m. **Callirhoe**, daughter of Scamander *Xantus* Teucri and Idea

Ilus (Ilyus) King of Troy [-1282 BC] m. **Eurydice (Eurydike)** of Troy, daughter of Adrastus of Troy

Laomedan King of Troy [-1237 BC] m. **Placia (Strymo) of Troy**

Priamus High King of Troy [-1183 BC] m. **Hecuba (Hecabe) of Phrygia**, daughter of Dymas King of Phrygia

Helenus of Troy King of the Scythians

Genger of the Scythians

Franco of the Scythians (Francus *the Trojan*)

Esdron *the Trojan*

Gelio (Gelso/Zelis) *the Trojan*

Bosabiliano (Basabelian) I *the Trojan*

Plaserio (Plaserius) I *the Trojan*

Plesron

Eliacor the Trojan

Gaberiano (Zaberian) the Trojan

Plaserius II the Trojan

Atenor I the Trojan King of Troy

Priamus II Trianus the Trojan

Helenus II the Trojan

Plesron II the Trojan

Basabelian II the Trojan

Alexander the Trojan King of Troy

Priamus III King of the Cimmerians

Gentilanor (Gelmalor) King of the Cimmerians

Almadius (Almadion) King of the Cimmerians

Dilulius (Diluglio) I King of the Cimmerians

Helenus III King of the Cimmerians

Plaserius III King of the Cimmerians

Dilulius (Diluglio) II King of the Cimmerians

Marcomir King of the Cimmerians

Priamus IV King of the Cimmerians

Helenus IV King of the Cimmerians

Atenor I King of the Cimmerians [483 BC - 443 BC]

Marcomir King of the Cimmerians [460 BC - 396 BC]

NOTE: Marcomir brought his people of the Cimmerians across lands of the Danube into Gaul.

Atenor II King of the Sicambri [442 BC - 384 BC] m. Cambra [419 BC-]

Priamus King of the Sicambri [417 BC - 358 BC]

Helenus I King of the Sicambri [387 BC - 339 BC]

Diocles King of the Sicambri [360 BC- 300 BC]

NOTE: Diocles aided the Saxons in their war on the Goths.

Brassinus King of the Sicambri [339 BC - 287 BC] m. a daughter of King of the Orcadis, a tribe of ancient Norway

Clodomir I King of the Sicambri [290 BC - 232 BC]

Nicanor King of the Sicambri [275 BC - 198 BC]

Marcomir II King of the Sicambri [296 BC - 178 BC]

Clodius King of the Sicambri [189 BC - 159 BC] slain in battle

Atenor III King of the Sicambri [169 BC - 143 BC]

Clodomir II King of the Sicambri [149 BC - 123 BC]

Merodachus King of the Sicambri [128 BC - 95 BC]

Cassander King of the Sicambri [106 BC - 74 BC]

NOTE: Cassander was expelled from his kingdom by the Goths. He died in exile.

Antharius King of the Sicambri [80 BC- 37 BC] slain in battle with the Gauls

Francus King of the Franks [58 BC - 11 BC]

NOTE: Francus changed the name of his people to Franks. He also made a perpetual alliance with the Saxon and east German tribes.

Clodius II King of the Franks [37 BC - 20 AD]

Marcomir III King of the Franks [16 BC - 50 AD]

Clodemir III King of the Franks [2 AD - 63 AD]

Antenor IV King of the Franks [20-69]

Rathaerius King of the Franks [41-90]

NOTE: Rathaerius is mentioned in the records of the Roman Empire as the founder of Rotterdam.

Richemer I King of the Franks [60-115]

Odomir King of the Franks [80-129]

NOTE: Odomir is mentioned in the records of the Roman Empire as making a pact with Rome and the Gaulic tribes.

Marcomir IV King of the Franks [101-156] m. 129 **Athildis** [125-170] daughter of Coilus King of the Britons

NOTE: Through this marriage the blood of the ancient Roman houses of the Julii and Claudii, as well as the ancient Royal lines of the Silures, become mixed with the ancient Merovingian line. Coilus was the son of Marius, King of the British Silures, and Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus, daughter of Prasutagus of the Iceni and Boadicea Queen of the Iceni. Marius was the son of Arviragus, King of the Silures, and Venissa daughter of Claudius I Emperor of Rome. (See Roman-French Ancestry above)

~ ~ ~

Nathan ha-David, son of David Ben Jesse King of Judah & Israel, and Bathsheba

Mattatha (Mathatha) ha-David

Menna (Menam) ha-David

Melea ha-David
Eliakim ha-David
Joham (Jona/Jonan) ha-David
Joseph ben Jonam ha-David
Judah (Judas) ben Joseph ha-David
Simeon ben Judah ha-David
Levi ben Simeon ha-David
Matthat (Mathat) ben Levi ha-David
Jorim ha-David
Eliazer (Eliezer) ben Jorim ha-David
Jesus (Jose/Joshua) ben Eliazer ha-David
Er (Her) ben Jesus ha-David
Elmandam (Helmadan/Elmodam) ha-David
Cosam (Cosan) ha-David
Addi ben Cosam ha-David
Melchi (Melki) ha-David
Neri ha-David m. a daughter of Jehoiachin
Shealtiel ha-David
Zerubbabel ha-David
Resa (Rhesa) ha-David
Joanna (Joanan) ben Resa ha-David
Judah (Juda/Joda) ben Joanna ha-David
Joseph (Josech) ben Judah
Semel (Semei/Semein) ben Joseph ha-David
Mattathias (Mathathias) ben Semel ha-David m. a daughter of Simon ha-Kohen
Maath (Mahath) ha-David
Nagga (Nagge/Naggai) ben Maath ha-David
Esli (Hesli) ben Nagga ha-David
Naum (Nahum) ben Esli ha-David

Amos ben Naum ha-David

Mattathias (Mathathias) ben Amos ha-David

Joseph ben Mattathias ha-David

Janna (Janne/Jannai) ben Joseph ha-David

Melchi (Melki) ben Janna ha-David

Levi ben Melchi ha-David

Matthat (Mathat) ben Levi of Arimathea, m1. a daughter of **Eleazar**; m2. **Estha**

Heli ha-David [70 BC - 17 AD] m. **Anna**

NOTE: According to St. Augustine, Joseph was the carnal son of Jacob, levirate son of Heli, and according to the Gospel of St. Luke, Heli is the father of Joseph [Luke 3:23-38], but most scholars believe Luke was relating Mary's ancestral line. St. Matthew's Gospel agrees with St. Augustine's version.

Mary [26 BC -] m. **Joseph ha-David** [44 BC - 23 AD] son of Jacob ha-David

NOTE: Mary is Joseph's 2nd cousin, once removed. She had no brothers so was the heiress. Her husband, according to Jewish law, was reckoned among her father's family as his son. So Joseph was the natural son of Jacob, and the legal son of Heli.

Jesus (Yehoshua) the Nazarene [6 BC - 77 AD] died in Patmos, Greece, m. **Mary Magdalene** [3 - 63 AD] of Magdala, died in St. Baume, France, daughter of Syrios (Simon/Nicodemus) of Syria and Eucharia of Bethania

NOTE: Syrios' whole family was arrested and exiled to Gaul (France) by 37 AD.

Joseph Ram a-Theo (Josephes ha-David) [44 AD -] Bishop of Serras (Sarrazl/Sahr-Azzah)

Josue (Joshua) [80-] Bishop

Aminadab [120-] m. **Eurgen**, daughter of Lucius King of the Britons and Gwladys (daughter of Arviragus King of the Trinovantes, and Venissa Julia of Rome)

Cathelloris [160-203]

Manaël [200-]

Titurel (Titure) [240-]

Boaz (Anfortas) [280-]

Frotmund (Frimutel) [340-] m. **Marcomir I Duke of East Franks** [347-404]

Pharamond King of All Franks [370-430] m. 394 **Argotta** [375-] daughter of Genebald Duke of the West Franks

NOTE: Under Pharamond's reign the Franks were united under one crown. He succeeded his father as Duke of the East Franks in 404, became King of the West Franks in 419, and King of Westphalia in 420. At his father-in-law's death in 419, Pharamond became Duke of the West Franks. Pharamond is the ancestor who has a clear documented line. Earlier rulers were documented from ancient records and annals referenced in church histories.

Frotmund [410-]

[--?--] Comte de Toulouse del Acqs [462-]

Vivianne I del Acqs [504-540] m. **Taliesin** *the Bard* [483-540] son of Lambord

Viviane II del Acqs [534-] daughter of Taliesin *the Bard* and Vivianne I del Acqs, m. **Ban le Benoit Bors** [559-]

Lionel [601-]

Alain of Brittany [649-]

Froamidus Count of Brittany [694-762]

Frodalus Count of Brittany [741-795]

Nominoe Duke of Brittany [772-]

Erispoe Duke of Brittany [800-]

Judicael (Juhel) I Comte de Rennes [845-888] of Rennes, Ille-et-Vilaine, Bretagne, France

Berenger Comte de Rennes [875-930] m. a daughter of Berenger de Bayeux

Judicael (Juhel) II Berenger Comte de Rennes [910-970] m. **Gerberge**

Conan I Duke of Brittany, Comte de Rennes [950-992] m. 980 **Ermengarde d'Anjou** [963-992] daughter of Geoffrey I *Griseigneur* Comte d'Anjou and Adelaide de Vermandois

Geoffrey I Duke of Brittany [980-1008] m. 996 **Hawise of Normandy** [975-1033] of Rouen, Seine-Inferieure, daughter of Richard I *the Fearless* Duke of Normandy and mistress

Alan III Duke of Brittany [997-1040] m. 1027 **Berthe de Blois** [1015-1084] of Blois, Loir-et-Cher, Orleanais/Centre, France, daughter of Eudes II Comte de Champagne & Blois, and Ermengarde d'Auvergne

Hawise Heiress of Brittany [1033-1072] m. **Hoel of Cornouaille Duke of Brittany** [1040-1084] son of Alan Canhiart Comte de Comouaille and Judith of Nantes

Alan IV Fergent Duke of Brittany [1070-1119] of Nantes, Loire-Atlantique, Anjou/Pays-de la Loire, France, m. 1090 **Ermengarde d'Anjou** [1072-1147] daughter of Foulques IV *le Rechin* Comte d'Anjou and Hildegard de Baugency

Conan III le Gros Duke of Brittany [1091-1148] m. **Maud of England** [1091-] daughter of Henry I *Beauclerc* King of England and Nest verch Rhys Heiress of Carew (*See Norman-English Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Abuid, son of Rhesa ha-David and Shelomith

Eliacim (Aliakim)

Azar

Iadoe (Zadok)

Achim (Akim)

Eliud

Eleazar

Mathan m. Estha

Jacob ha-David

Joseph ha-David [44 BC - 23 AD] m. **Mary** [26 BC -] daughter of Heli ha-David

NOTE: Mary is Joseph's 2nd cousin, once removed. She had no brothers so was the heiress. Her husband, according to Jewish law, was reckoned among her father's family as his son. So Joseph was the natural son of Jacob, and the legal son of Heli.

St. Joseph of Arimathea (James the Just ha-David) (Jesus' brother), m. **Anna**

NOTE: Arimathea is a mistranslation of Rama-Theo, a title meaning Crown Prince. In the Nazarene hierarchy, the Crown Prince always held the patriarchal title of "Joseph."

Anna (Enygeus) of Arimathea m. Mandubratius ap Lud of Britain, son of Lludd ap Beli Mawr King of the Britons

Boadicea Queen of the Iceni [45-62] m. **Prasutagus King of the Iceni** [-61]

Julia (Victoria) verch Prasutagus of the Iceni, m. **Marius King of the Trinovantes** (Silures in Wales) [64-125] son of Arviragus King of the Trinovantes and Venissa Julia of Rome (*See Celtic-French Ancestry above*)

~ ~ ~

Appendix C

The Virginia Ligons



The Virginia Ligons of Madresfield/Warndon

The Virginia Lygons & Extended Families

William de Warren was a great grandson of William, Second Earl of Warren and his wife, Isabella de Vermandois, granddaughter of King Henry I of France (1010-1060).

His son, William de Bracy, was the Lord of Madresfield in 1250. He married Maud, the daughter of William de Warren. William was in ill health in 1282 but lived until 1289, when he died and was buried at Great Malvern. He was a descendant of Robert de Bracy, the companion in arms of William the Conqueror. They listed Robert as the owner of the manor "Warndon" in Worcestershire in the Domesday Book of 1086, a record of land ownership that exists still.

William's son, Robert de Bracy, fought against King Henry III at the Battle of Evesham in 1265. Evesham was only a few miles from Madresfield. Records mention Robert as a conservator of the peace and as a commissioner for Worcester in 1297 to 1310, and in Gloucester in 1313. In 1297 he was enrolled as a Knight of Essex, nonresident, for the defense of the coast. Robert was Knight for the shire of Worcester in 1300 to 1305 and was appointed to raise knights in Worcester for defense of the realm on 14 January 1300. These were probably for service against the Welsh or Scots against whom King Edward I was waging war. Eight deeds at Madresfield mentioned his name. Robert was a commissioner for raising the men of Worcester against the Scots on 5 August 1316. He was an overlord of Hanley Castle 20 June 1327 and an overlord in Salop 25 May 1335.

Robert's son William de Bracy was a knight for the shire of Worcester in 1338.

William's son, Robert de Bracy, was the Lord of Madresfield in 1345 and fought at the Battle of Crécy and the siege of Calais. He died before 1378.

William's son, also William de Bracy, went to Ireland with James Butler, Earl of Ormond on the King's service. He probably died about 1390 as his wife, Joan Bracy, held her first court for the manor of Madresfield that year.

And William's son, another William de Bracy, married Isabel. Their only child was Joan Bracy, perhaps named for her grandmother. On 20 January 1423, Joan (Bracy) Lygon inherited the manor of Warndon. In the 7th year of the reign of Henry VI (1428-29) William went to France to serve in the King's army. This was probably after Joan of Arc had captured Orleans and the English were marshaling their forces against her. William must have been dead before 6 February 1450 when Isabel demised the Manor of Madresfield to her grandson William Lygon. She reserved for her use the gatehouse with the upper and lower chambers and two attached chimneys. Isabel must have been about seventy years of age then and died soon afterwards.

Thomas Lygon [1425-1507]

"I was born not many years after England crowned a child King Henry VI. We were youths when England sought to expand her influence in France south of the Loire. Although English archers were superior to the French, our armies fell to the maiden of Domrémy, Joan of Arc. I was not yet 10 when flames consumed her earthly body.

"By my 20s I was married to Anne Gifford and we became the parents of Richard and Jane [Lygon Salwey]. When my older brother and heir to the Lygon estates, William Lygon, died about 1484, Madresfield fell to me. It would later belong to our son Richard.

"During the War of the Roses, I sided with the House of York. In recognition of my service during the terrible 20-year conflict, Edward IV granted me estates that he confiscated from our enemies.

"In 1477 I was a Member of Parliament. After Henry Tudor's marriage to the daughter of Edward IV united the houses of York and Lancaster, I continued to muster our Worcestershire troops in service to our king.

"Outliving Henry VI by 35 years, I died 10 April 1507 at a bit more than 80 years of age."

Historical background

August 1422 marked the end of the reign of Henry V. Disease, probably dysentery he contracted in the field, felled the monarch who united England against France. He left behind a brilliant empire that soon faded into a century of darkness. To the throne ascended a baby who, at the death of Charles VI two months later, they proclaimed King of France. Thomas Lygon, the second son of Thomas Lygon and Joan Bracy, was born about the same time as Henry VI and their lives would be intertwined.

Henry VI, both physically and mentally limited, was influenced by his protectors, the princes of the

House of Lancaster. Political intrigue, seemingly the perpetual state of English affairs, was no less apparent during Henry's reign. Tempers among the factions ran hot and treachery, malice, and vengeance were all about.

While both Henry VI and Thomas were young boys, England attempted to expand her influence in France south of the Loire. English archers could prevail against armies six times their number and Charles VII, who many considered the true French king, could find no way to defeat the Islanders. That is until St. Michael appointed a liberator. Undoubtedly both Henry and Thomas heard the reports of a supernatural maiden of the remote French hamlet of Domrémy, Joan of Arc. Joan's valor, compassion, and purity have not since been equaled. Henry and Thomas would have been about ten on 29 May 1431 when Joan of Arc, bound upon a pyramid of firewood called out her last word, "Jesus." An English soldier standing nearby said "We are lost. We have burned a saint." Indeed they were. Joan's influence and inspiration survived her and the French drove the English from the Continent.

At age twenty-three, it was time for Henry to marry. His Lancastrian allies matched him with Margaret, the daughter of René of Anjou. It was perhaps about this time that Thomas married Anne Gifford, the daughter of probably Nicholas Gifford. She seems to have brought the manor of "Bradwell" to her husband.

Their pride wounded by the loss of France, England settled into a period of grief and social upheaval. Roads were unsafe, the people were unrestful, and the country government lapsed into disorder and confusion. The House of Lancaster fell from favor and the House of York increasingly became a rival party. Richard, Duke of York, had a right to the crown, perhaps greater than that of Henry VI, whose grandfather Henry IV, had seized power in 1399. The "Yorkists," as some called them, predominated in the South and the Lancastrians, in the North. Elsewhere was a patchwork of sentiments. Records show that Thomas Ligon, living then in Worcester in the West of England, was a Yorkist. Historians call the thirty-year clash between the houses of York and Lancaster the Wars of the Roses.

In the spring of 1455 York and his nobles took to arms and marched to Saint Albans. Among them was Richard Neville, Earl of Warwick, later the leader of the Yorkists. Neville's wife was Ann Beauchamp, sole heiress of Henry Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, who they killed at Barnet Field fighting against the King Edward IV. The title, "Earl of Warwick," descended to Nevill. At Saint Albans they defeated the Lancastrians and captured the King.

Yet the Lancastrians rebounded and a tense reconciliation was arranged. In 1459 fighting broke out again when the royal army dispersed some armed Yorkists near Worcester, the seat of the Lignons. War began in earnest in July 1460. We do not know what role Thomas Ligon played in these early conflicts. Patent Rolls of 1461 show that Richard Neville, Earl of Warwick, John Beauchamp of Powyck, and Thomas Lygon gathered the men of Worcester to fight against the King's enemies. The phrase "to fight against the King's enemies" is peculiar. Yet by 1461, Warwick held the King captive and claimed to be acting in his name. That they listed Thomas with the Earl of Warwick shows he was probably a prominent figure in the war.

The Lancastrians killed Richard, Duke of York, at the Battle of Wakefield on 30 December 1460. His son Edward led York forces against the Lancastrians at the Battle of Towton on 2 February 1461. Thomas Ligon's companion-in-arms, the Earl of Warwick, took decisive action to motivate his men when the tide turned against them. He ordered his horse, his means of escape, brought forward. Before the entire army he ran it through, kissed the hilt of his sword, and declared that he would share the fate of the soldiers of the lowest rank.

Yorkists broke the Lancastrians and Edward became King Edward IV. It would be seven more years until all the Lancaster fortresses fell to Edward. The last succumbed in 1468 when Harlech, on the western sea, surrendered. A child of twelve survived the rigors of the seven-year siege. He was Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, and the grandson of Margaret de Beauchamp. They later would crown him King Henry VII.

Edward reigned until 1470 when Lancastrians drove him from England and returned Henry VI to the throne. Edward came back seven months later and records show he called upon Thomas Ligon and his Worcester forces to aid him. They defeated the Lancastrians at Barnet and Tewkesbury, regaining the crown for Edward. In 1472 perhaps in recognition of Thomas' service during these battles, Edward IV granted him lands that had belonged to the king's enemies. In 1477 Thomas Ligon was a Member of Parliament from Worcester.

Thomas Ligon continued to serve Edward IV and, later, accepted several commissions during the unsatisfactory reign of Richard III. In April 1484 when Richard's only son died, Henry Tudor, a descendant of Edward III and French royalty, became the obvious rival for the throne. When he married Elizabeth, the daughter of Edward IV, he united the houses of York and Lancaster. Richard, anticipating rebellion at every turn, ordered commissions of muster and array in all the counties. Records of 1484 show orders to Thomas Ligon to array the men of Worcester.

England, tired of the dynastic struggles of thirty years, looked to Henry Tudor for relief. Men of both York and Lancaster withdrew from the king and joined Henry in Brittany. Henry's kingship was inevitable. At the Battle of Bosworth Field in August 1484, Richard fought to the end. His dead body was bound across a horse and his crown, worn to the last, was placed on the head of Henry Tudor.

The fall of the House of York did not seem to diminish the fortunes of Thomas Lygon. King Henry VII sought his services in 1488 when Thomas was a commissioner of array in Worcester to oppose the rebellion in the North. Commissioner of array probably meant he called the troops to muster. Records of 1491 identify Thomas as custodian of the Castle of Gloucester. Custodian probably meant he was the sheriff. About 1496, when Henry was gathering men at Berwick Castle as defense against the Scots, he called on Lygon to array again the men of Worcester. Thomas remained a loyal supporter of the House of Lancaster until his death in 1507.

Richard Lygon [1465-1512]

“The eldest son of Thomas Lygon, I inherited all the Lygon estates. I was fortunate to marry Anne de Beauchamp, coheir of Sir Richard de Beauchamp of Powyck. When he died without male heirs about 1502, all the Beauchamp property became mine, too. I now owned manors at Madresfield, Warmedon, Bracy's Leigh, Holfast, and Farley. Warmedon near Worcester in Worcestershire, now known as Warndon, was built in 900.

“Anne and I were anticipating the birth of the first of our eight children about the same year Christopher Columbus discovered the New World.

“Because I outlived my father only a few years, not many family records have my name in them. I was serving as justice of the peace in Worcester in 1509 and 1510.

“I died 1 May 1512 at Madresfield and Anne, 22 July 1534.”

The children of Richard Lygon and Anne Beauchamp: Sir Richard Lygon (c.1490-1556). Thomas Lygon, John Lygon, Edward Lygon, George Lygon (-1593), William Lygon, Roger Lygon, and Michael Lygon (-c.1583)

Sir Richard Lygon [1490-1556]

“As my father explained, I was born about the time Columbus discovered the New World. By 1511 I married Margaret Greeville, the daughter of Sir William Greeville, a knight and justice of the court in 1510.

“I became Sir Richard Lygon 1 June 1533 at the coronation of Queen Anne Boleyn. By then the father of 9 and familiar with a woman being “in the family way,” I was not surprised when she gave birth 3 months later — to our future Queen Elizabeth.

“I was the sheriff of Gloucestershire 1534-5 and of Worcestershire in 1548-9. My son William learned to be a sheriff from me. Then a sheriff, like the famous Sheriff of Nottingham, collected taxes and rents for the crown. The word came from “shire reve,” one who collected revenue from a shire.

“Like my father, I was expected to round up soldiers in times of national emergency. For example, during the French War of 1544 when Henry VIII invaded France and captured Boulogne, I furnished 60 infantrymen.

“After Margaret died in 1542, I married Joan [identity unknown]. I was in my 60s when I died 20 March 1556/7.

Sir Richard was on a commission to collect a subsidy in Worcestershire in 1523. In 1535 Sir Richard was a justice of Great Malvern and in 1536 he furnished one hundred men to send against the Northern Rebels and personally attended Henry VIII. In 1545 was chief steward at Hundred Courts and chief steward of the King Court at Cheltenham.

The children of Sir Richard Lygon and Margaret Gre(e)vill: William Lygon (1512-1567), Henry Lygon (-1757), Ursula (Lygon) Andrews, Elizabeth (Lygon) Sheldon, Mary (Lygon) Mintridge, Susanna (Lygon) Savage, Barbara Lygon, John Lygon, and Ferdinand Lygon.

William Lygon (1512-1567)

“I was born in Gloucestershire, England, in 1512, and as a youth of just 17, married Eleanor Dennis.

A marriage contract bound our fathers to clothe us according to our degree. Like my father, I lived at Arle until I succeeded to the historic family estate of Madresfield. I was also the sheriff of Worcestershire, 1550-1 and 1560-1.

“England was a land of conspirators and two sons got caught up in the intrigue. Farnando teamed with Sir Henry Dudley to try to depose Queen Mary in 1556 and crown Elizabeth. Fortunately for him, Mary’s death 2 years later accomplished what they failed to do. Our son Ralph was implicated in a plot to put Mary, Queen of Scots, on the throne in 1572, and spent most of his life out of the country to avoid prosecution.

“Our daughters married well. Margaret was the wife of Sir Thomas Russell and one of their sons was an executor of the estate of William Shakespeare. Her second husband was Sir Henry Berkeley and among their prominent grandsons was Sir William Berkeley, Royal Governor of Virginia.

“Daughter Cecily and Edward Gorges were the parents of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, called “the father of colonization in America.” In 1639 King Charles I granted Gorges “a parte & portion of the cuntry of America, nowe commonly called or knowne by the name of New England.” Fort Gorges, Maine, carries his name today. Elizabeth married William Norwood and it was their grandson Henry Norwood who wrote the historic narrative, *A Voyage to Virginia*, in 1649.

“I died 29 September 1567 and was buried “in the high chancel” 2 October 1567. Eleanor, who survived me, was living at Arle in June 1568, and was still alive in 1579.”

William Lygon was listed among the loyalists of Lord Oliver Cromwell as preferred to serve Henry VIII in 1538 and was in the vanguard with ten foot soldiers when Henry invaded France and captured Boulogne in 1544. William was also a justice of the Hundreds Court of Cheltenham.

The children of William Lygon and Eleanor Dennis: Richard Lygon (-1584), Tomas Lygon (-1615), Ralph Lygon, Fernando Lygon, William Lygon, Hugh Lygon, Francis (Lygon) Bub, Margaret (Lygon) Russell Berkeley (-1617), Cicely (Lygon) Gorges Vivian, Katherine (Lygon) Foliot, and Elizabeth (Lygon) Norwood.

Thomas Lygon [1543-1619]

“I married Frances Dennis, the daughter of Hugh Dennis and Katherine Trye of Pucklechurch in Gloucestershire and a cousin of my mother, Eleanor Dennis. Because my older brother Richard inherited all the family estates, we lived at Elkstone in Gloucester where we reared eight children.

“Frances’ ancestors ruled England a total of 200 years: William the Conqueror (1066-1087), Henry I (1100-1135), Henry II (1154-1189), Henry III (1216-1272), John (1199-1216), and Edward I (1272-1307). She descended also from Henry I of France and Malcolm III of Scotland.

“In 1215 English barons had forced King John to sign the Magna Carta. Although the charter granted rights to the aristocracy only, it was a step forward in the development of constitutional government. Of 25 men, called sureties, who signed for the barons, Frances descended from 6.

“I died in 1615 and Frances left Wiltshire after 1622 and went to live with our son Thomas at Calouden. “Lame is my feet” is how she began her will. She was buried at the neighboring parish of Sowe 30 January 1624/5.”

The children of Thomas Lygon and Frances Dennis: Thomas Lygon [1577-1626], Francis Lygon, William Lygon, Richard Lygon [-1662], John Lygon, Katherine (Lygon) Gerrard, Joan Lygon, Alice (Lygon) Brokesby Berry

The will of Frances Lygon

Her will that was recorded 1 June 1625 is shown below. She named a son Garrett who historians omit.

Will of Frances Lygon

17 October 1622

Frances Lygon, now being at Merston Co. Wilts. Widow. Lame is my feet. Almost all I have to dispose of is an annual rent payable by Mr. Don Colton to whom by consent of my friends and children I have assigned my right in Elstone farm, during my years, for a yearly rent of £75, all which rent that shall be unpaid at my death, viz. of

every year's rent during time then to come to my two sons, Thomas and Richard Ligon, the whole £60 equally, excepting one-half year's rent and the other £15 amongst my son Garratts children at their father's pleasure except one-half year's rent. To my servant Elizabeth Cox 40/0, etc. for her great pains in the time of my lameness. To poor of this town or where I die 40/0. To poor prsh. of Elston what my son thinks necessary. To my son Lygon the whole half year's rent. My son Thomas Lygon to be exor. Written by my own weak hand. Witsn. Richard Lygon, Tho. Lygon.

Thomas Lygon [1577-1626]

“The son of Thomas Lygon and Frances Dennis, I was born in Gloucester about 1577 and so was 46 when I married Elizabeth Pratt at the parish church of Walsgrave-on-Sowe 18 August 1623. My 20-year-old bride was baptized at nearby Stoke-Biggin 10 October 1602, a daughter of Dennis Pratt of Stoke Parish, Coventry, Warwickshire, England, and his wife, Anne —.

“The Lygon and Dennis families were not of the same social standing and it is rumored that Elizabeth was my housekeeper or maidservant. Gossip only intensified when our first child was born five months after the wedding.

“I was a farmer of Stoke-by-Coventry where our 2 children were born: Thomas in January 1623/4 and Joan, April 1625. Both were infants when I died. After my burial at the church at Walsgrave-on-Sowe 20 December 1626, the court granted Elizabeth administration of my estate 16 February 1626/7. My widow survived me 5 years and was buried at Sowe 19 August 1631, at the age of 28.”

The children of Thomas Lygon and Elizabeth Pratt: Col. thomas Ligon [1623-1675], and Joan Lygon [1625-]. The will of Dennis Pratt left everything to his wife “to bring up the children” (will dated 21 July 1614).

Col. Thomas Ligon (1623-1675)

“I was baptized at Walsgrave-on-Sowe, Warwickshire, England, 11 January 1623/4. The grandson of a second son, I had little chance of inheriting titles, land, or fortune. King Charles I appointed my cousin William Berkeley the royal governor of Virginia and although I was just 16, I decided to join him in the New World.

“On 18 April 1644 Indians attacked our settlements, massacring about 300. I was then at the home of Sarah Woodson, wife of Dr. John Woodson whom the Indians killed. Using my 8-foot gun, I killed 3 Indians with the first shot, then 2 with the second. I fired a third time as they fled, killing 7 in all. This gun with “Ligon” still carved in the stock, is now at the Virginia Historical Society.

“Around 1648-50 I married Mary Harris, the daughter of Capt. Thomas Harris, and we were the parents of 7 children.

“Berkeley appointed me to represent him in many matters. Because colonial records for Henrico and Charles City counties were mostly destroyed, little evidence remains of my official acts.

“In 1656 I was a member of the House of Burgesses at Jamestown, where I was a member of “ye Committee for private Causes.” Maj. William Harris, my brother-in-law, was the other burgess representing Henrico County. I was a justice for Charles City County 1 August 1657, a militia colonel, and county surveyor from 1667 to my death in 1676.

“Mary survived me 29 years. Able to fend for herself, she never remarried. Like me, she was handy with a gun, earning a bounty for killing 2 wolves in 1678. She once got into a dispute with our son William. When she failed to evict him from her land, she left his heirs out of her will.”

The children of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris: Maj. William Ligon I [1650-1689], Johan (Ligon) Hancock [1563-1726], Col, Richard Ligon [1657-1724], Matthew Ligon [1659-1689], Hugh Ligon [1661-], Mary (Ligon) Farrar [1663-], and Thomas Ligon III [1665-1678].

Connection to the Berkeleys

Thomas' father, Thomas Lygon, had worked as an estate manager for the Berkeley family and Thomas Jr. was related to them in several ways: Margaret Ligon, the daughter of Thomas' great-grandfather William Lygon, married Sir Henry Berkeley, William Berkeley's grandfather; Thomas' great-grandmother Eleanor Dennis was

the granddaughter of Maurice Berkeley and the daughter of Anne Berkeley; Thomas' grandmother, Frances Dennis, was a descendant of Maurice Berkeley, Fourth Lord.

The following letter by William Berkeley indicates Thomas was his representative in various matters.

William Berkeley

Sir:

I shall desire you to send the account what tobbo you received the last yeare and what is behind, for I have given Mr. Price order to pay you what remains. I will not dispute whether the tobbo Mr. Ligon paid you for the two servants were part of this debt, but leave it to your selfe who can best Judge of itt, Sir if your boate comes downe I would desire to send the Salt-Sellers with itt. Pray present my service to your Lady.

Your humble servant.

William Berkeley.

Land transactions

Thomas established his home on land near Malvern Hills that he named for Malvern Hills in England near Madresfield Court where his ancestors lived. It would be the site of a prominent Civil War battle. We presume he continued to live here though they granted him land elsewhere in the Colony. On 5 April 1664 Ligon obtained a patent for 800 acres on Powells Creek for the transportation of sixteen persons from England to Virginia.

Two parcels of land on both sides of the James River in Henrico County amounting to 710 acres were assigned to Capt. William Farrar and Thomas Ligon in 1664. These men evidently did not occupy this land. They reported the 335-acre portion on the south side of the river deserted by 22 July 1671 and granted it to Henry Randolph. The governor assigned the 375-acre tract on the north side of the river to Francis Radford.

In 1668 Farrar and Ligon secured a patent to 300 acres south of the James River in the same vicinity. The property began at "Mount-my-Lady" ("Mount Malada," "Mount Malady").

In 1671 "Lieut. Col. Tho. Ligon" secured a patent to 387 acres in Henrico County on the north side of the Appomattox River. This land was next to that of Abraham Wood and ran to the "Appomattock Indian Towne." This was near present-day Petersburg. The grant was in consideration of having transported seven individuals to the Colony. Thomas sold this land to George Archer on 27 August 1673. This was either George Archer or his son.

On 28 September 1672, they granted Thomas 1,301 acres south of the James River for the importation of thirteen people and, on 18 March 1672/3, they granted Thomas 340 acres beside his land at "Mount-my-Lady" north of the Appomattox River for seven headrights. Typically the Land Office issued 50 acres of land for each headright. Ligon's 100 acres per headright in his 1,301-acre patent was in consideration of military service. Ligon did not settle the 1,301-acre tract and Charles Evans secured a patent to it in May 1706.

Military service

By 1669 court records of Henrico County were calling Thomas Ligon "Lieutenant Colonel." On 3 October 1670 "ORDERS OF A GRAND ASSEMBLE, Held at James Cittie" directed "Lt. LIGGON" be paid "tenn pound for his Service in the Westerne discovery," apparently for helping to quell an Indian uprising. The designation "Lieutenant Colonel," rather than "Lieutenant," was probably meant, because other earlier records use the title of "Colonel." His brother-in-law, Maj. William Harris, was commander of this exploration. The military title was more than honorary as summer generally meant battle with the Indians.

Appointed surveyor

Governor Berkeley appointed Thomas a surveyor of Henrico County, a lucrative position then. He would hold this office from before 1667 until his death. He even arranged for the office to pass to his son Richard Ligon though the boy was under age at the time of his father's death. A contract recorded 1 November 1679 after Thomas death evidences this. In it Mary Ligon made an agreement with her brother Maj. William Harris that he should have the "whole profits of the surveyor's place" until her eldest son should come of age and half the

profits after that. When she made this contract, her two oldest sons, Thomas and William, were already dead. Then her eldest son was Richard. Because of the size of Henrico County then, the Ligon's were responsible for surveying much of colonial Virginia along the James River.

Will and probate

Thomas Ligon made his will on 10 January 1675/6 and he was dead within two months. Governor Berkeley granted his widow Mary administration of the estate on 16 March 1675/6. Although the will is missing, references to it in later court proceedings show some aspects of it. In 1684 Mary produced the will when she sued her oldest son William to dispossess him from the Ligon land. The court decided that the will intended that the son and widow should be joint tenants during her lifetime. Apparently Mary never forgave her son for the dispute.

In 1687 Richard Ligon convinced the court that a particular phrase in the will of his father that Thomas Fitzherbert wrote was wrong, and the court agreed. Thomas bequeathed other land to his son Richard who left it to his son Matthew. On 1 September 1737, Matthew sold his inheritance to Henry Walthall of Henrico County.

Mary, the widow

In 1691 Mary Ligon divided her 200-acre portion of "Curles" on which she was living between her two surviving sons, Richard and Hugh Ligon. She would continue to live on the property until her death, collect rents from the tenants, and fell trees for fencing and firewood. The deed transferring ownership to her sons was long, intricate, and presumably designed to keep her land out of the hands of the heirs of her son William who had died two years earlier.

The will Mary made 18 March 1702/3, proved 1 February 1703/4 read as follows.

Will of Mary Ligon

18 March 1702/3

In the name of God, Amen:- I, Mary Ligon, of Henrico County, of Virginia, being weak of body but of perfect memory, praise to God, do Will, make and ordain this my last Will and Testament, in manner and form, as will follows:

Imprimis:- First I give and bequeath my soul to God, my Creator and Redeemer, my body to be buried at discretion of my daughter, Johanah Hancock, in sure and certain hope of a joyful resurrection, at ye last day,

Item I:- I give and bequeath to my son, Hugh Ligon, my household goods, and all my hogs he now hath in his possession.

Item II:- I give and bequeath to my son, Hugh Ligon, to him and his heirs forever, 100 acres of land, lying and being in the county aforesaid, known as the name of Curles, and adjoining the river, and the aforesaid land given to my son, Richard Ligon.

Item III:- I give and bequeath to my grandson, Thomas Farrar, my own bed and furniture belonging to it, two pair of sheets, four pewter dishes, half dozen plates, one chamber pot, one pewter tanker, two pewter porringers, one pewter basin, and my wedding ring, to be delivered to him on the day of his marriage, or at his beginning to keep house, or else when he shall arrive at the age of 21 years. But, if the Thomas Farrar depart this life before he comes to the age of 21 years, then the same is to remain into possession of my daughter, Johanah Hancock, in whose hands they are now.

Item IV:- I give and bequeath to my son-in-law, Thomas Farrar, my Indian boy, Robin, being in lieu of an Indian boy given to his wife, Mary Ligon, by her father, which Indian I desire that Thomas Farrar would be so pleased to give unto my grandson, Thomas Farrar Jr., to enjoy after me.

Item V:- I give and bequeath to my son, Richard Ligon, and my daughter, Johanah Hancock, my mare known by the name of Tiny.

Item VI:- I give and bequeath to my son, Hugh Ligon and to my daughter Johanah Hancock, all my sheep, to be equally divided between them.

Item VII:- My will is that whatever I have given or have bequeathed to any person that they may quickly and may peacefully possess and enjoy same without molestation or trouble.

Item VIII:- I do hereby will and constitute and ordain my son-in-law, Robert Hancock, and my daughter Johanah Hancock, full, whole, and sole executor and Executrix, of this my last Will and Testament.

Witness my hand and seal, this 18th. Day of March 1702/3.

Mary Ligon [Seal]

Abraham Womack, John Hatcher, and John Brown witnessed Mary execute her will.

Mary did not mention Thomas, William, and Matthew in her will because they were dead. Nor did she mention the heirs of William who were living. More specifically, she left an addendum to her will reminding her executors that it was her desire that her land would descend to her living male heirs, Richard and Hugh, and not to William's heirs. The court ignored her wishes. On 1 November 1706, Henrico County partitioned the land equally between her grandson Matthew Ligon, son of Richard, and William Ligon as heir of his brother Thomas Ligon, son of William Ligon.

Maj. William Ligon I [1650-1689]

"I was born in Henrico County about 1650 and was married to Mary Tanner by about 1675.

"I have to confess that I was very difficult. After my father died, Mother let me live on part of her land. Yet because I "acted to her prejudice," as she called it, in 1684 she tried to evict me. The justices examined Father's will and concluded that we were joint tenants during her lifetime. If we could not peaceably divide the land, the court would.

"Court records also reveal that I was accused of arranging the theft of a cow in 1678 and that I paid fines for "obstinately and violently" resisting arrest, for contempt of court, and for evading taxes by not mentioning I had 2 Indian servants. I had to put up a peace bond after that arrest episode.

"In June 1679 I was ordered to furnish three armed men to the Henrico County militia to respond to Indian threats.

"I died in 1689 after helping Mary rear 7 children, and for nearly 20 years, she remained a widow. She acquired land grants in her own name, bought and sold plantations, purchased a 1/2-acre lot in town, and sued my brother Hugh Ligon over some fine print in our father's will.

"In 1707 Mary married William Farrar who had just lost his wife, Priscilla Baugh. Just to show you how Mary could pick a husband, the record of her second marriage is revealed in a lawsuit Rev. George Robertson brought against Farrar for refusing to pay the 20-shilling fee for the wedding."

The children of Maj. William Ligon I and Mary Tanner: Thomas Ligon [-1705], William Ligon II [1682-1764], John Ligon, Joseph Ligon, Mary (Ligon) Anderson Rowlett, Lucretia Ligon [1689-], and Phoebe Ligon.

Court records

Several court records do confirm that William Ligon was independent and strong-willed. About 1678 he was fined four hundred pounds of tobacco and jailed because he did "obstinately & violently, resist & withstand, the Sheriff, & his deputy... to the great breach of his Majestyes peace." Bond for his release was posted by his brother Richard Ligon and by his brother-in-law Robert Hancock who married William's sister, Johan Ligon.

On 18 November 1678, Edward Hatcher told the Henrico County Court that Major Ligon had told him to steal a cow from a Mr. Tibbald and butcher it. Edward could not find the cow but heard later that Thomas Perrin and some others had taken the cow and butchered it, although he did not see it happen. They did not show the consequences of this deposition.

On 1 February 1682/3 William Ligon was fined two hundred pounds of tobacco for contempt of court by refusing to serve on a jury. On 18 October 1685 Thomas Cocks was granted a judgement against William for 616 pounds of tobacco due him. Four days later, on 22 October 1685, they brought William into court for failing to list two Indian servants on the tax rolls. He pretended he was not aware of their ages and argued that he should not be fined.

On 1 April 1679 William Ligon's mother-in-law conveyed property to her daughter and William that was to be disbursed for an Indian woman named Moll Waters.

On 1 April 1680 William gave his orphaned sister-in-law, Martha Tanner, the use of a mouse-colored mare with a foal. On 2 April 1683 William posted on the courthouse door, according to law, his intention of going to England. We do not know if he made the trip.

Will and probate

Maj. William Ligon prepared the will, shown below. He was dead by 1 August 1689.

Will of William Ligon

21 January 1688/9

In the name of God Amen. I Will:m Ligon being in a Sick condition doe make & ordain this my last will & testam:t in manner & form as followeth.

I give & bequeath my Soul to Almighty God who gave it hoping in his mercy to receive full & free pardon for all my sins. As for my estate I give as followeth.

Imps: I give to my sons Thomas & William the plantation I now dwell on to be equally divided between them & to their heirs for ever.

My part of ye Ashen Swamp that is that lyes about it I Give to my son John & his heirs for ever, I give my land that Joyns M.r Hancock's line to be equally divided between my son Joseph Ligon and Tho. Farrar, Jun. and to their heirs forever.

My land that lyes on the back of Curles Joyning on ye land wch formerly belonged to Solomon Knibb I give to be equally divided between my daughter Mary & ye Child my wife now goes with to them & their heirs for ever.

My desire is that my wife lives a widow till my Children comes to ye age of twenty one years they are to continue with her but if she marryes then they are to be at their own disposing at sixteen years of age.

I give to my sons each of them a gun to take their choice of them as they come of age.

All the rest of my estate I give to my dear & loving wife dureing her widowhood; But if she marryes, I give to half of it to be equally divided between my children. My wife to have the other half.

I desire Capt. Fran: Epes, Mr. Rob:t Hancock and John Worsham to see this my last will pformed.

William appointed three very prominent members of the Henrico community "to see this my last will performed." Francis Epes, Robert Hancock, and John Worsham.

Mary, the widow

Mary (Tanner) Ligon lived a widow many years after her husband and her name appeared in the records of Henrico County.

In 1691 Mary sued her brother-in-law Hugh Ligon. The background of the dispute was this. When her father-in-law, Thomas Ligon, died he left land to all of his sons and wrote in his will "... all the land that is above express'd that I have given my sons if in case they dye without heirs to return to ye next survivor [emphasis added]." Son Matthew Ligon left no heirs when he died in 1691. Hugh Ligon, the next younger son, considered he was the "ye next survivor" and took possession of the land. Yet traditionally the laws of primogeniture, by which the eldest son inherited land and titles, mandated possession by the eldest son. Mary's deceased husband was the eldest son and she argued her eldest son, Thomas Ligon, now owned the land.

Mary engaged the local attorney Edward Chilton to sue Hugh. But Hugh alleged that the will of Thomas Ligon submitted to the court contained errors and demanded the trial be deferred.

The court eventually agreed with Mary and "accordingly Order'd That the sherr:f of this County doe Putt [Thomas Ligon] ye sd [plaintiff] into t & peaceable possession thereof And that ye sd [defendant] be Ejected therefrom..." This did not end the controversy. Mary was soon back in court complaining that Hugh "doth comitt many trespasses thereon pretending that he Knoweth not the bounds wch he will not suffer to be laid out." The court ordered Hugh to pay for half the costs of surveying the disputed boundary.

The Henrico County court certified in 1691 that "Mrs Mary Ligon (ye younger)" was due 300 acres of land for the importation of six individuals, one of whom was William Ligon.

In 1692 Mary bought half-acre Lot 23 in a new town being created in Henrico County. The deed, which did not identify the name of the town, required her to build a home of at least twenty feet square within four months. We presume she lived there. The same year Mary bought 200 acres of land on Swift Creek in Bristol Parish, Henrico County and promptly sold it to her mother, then Mary Platt.

In 1694 Mary came into ownership of half her father's plantation "Baldwins." Five years later she added to her lands when she obtained a patent for 383 acres of land on Proctors Creek for the importation of eight persons.

Mary Ligon, "the younger of Bristol Parish, Henrico Co., spinster," gave "Baldwins" and the 383-acre patent to her son, William, in 1701. In return William relinquished his right to his father's plantation to his brother Thomas Ligon. Her objective was to head off a dispute between her two sons regarding the division of land left them by their father. Yet neither Mary nor William occupied the land and, on 20 October 1704, they regranted this land to Charles Evans.

In 1696 Mary Lygon, widow of William Lygon, assigned to her mother Mary Platt, then the widow of Gilbert Platt, 200 acres on Swift Creek.

William Ligon II [1682-1764]

"I was born in present-day Chesterfield County about 1682. My mother was Mary Tanner and my father, William Ligon who died when I was about 7 years of age. In 1694 my uncle Edward Haskins gave me a cow named Fortune that was at Mother's plantation called "Powells."

"I married Elizabeth Batte before 1704 when her grandparents, Henry and Ann Lound, gave us 258 acres. We were the parents of three: Sarah, William, and Joseph Ligon.

"In 1735-7 I assembled 900 acres on Sandy Creek in that part of Amelia County that became Prince Edward in 1754. We gave 600 acres to our son William, and the remaining 300 acres eventually went to Henry Ligon who married our daughter, Sarah.

"In 1745 Elizabeth and I sold our 130 acres at "Neck of Land," "reserving thirty feet square where the burying place is" and settled on 650 acres William gave us along Sandy Creek.

"I prepared my will in Prince Edward County 22 October 1759, but was evidently living with William in Amelia County when I died because they recorded my will there 27 September 1764. I owned 8 slaves at my death."

The children of William Ligon II and Elizabeth Batte: Sarah (Ligon) Ligon [-1785], William Ligon III [-1796], and Joseph Ligon [1704-1752].

Court proceedings suggest that William Ligon, like his father, was independent minded. In April 1713 Tarleton Woodson brought a complaint against William Ligon Jr. for blocking the road from Woodson's home to the ferry. Three months later the court ruled that "the two roads now into Neck of Land shall remain as Roads, the one going down the River, the other up the River, and John Worsham and Isham Epes, Gent. are desired to ascertain to both parties where the said Roads are." *John Worsham* was either John Worsham or his son. Twenty-two years later, on 1 January 1735/6, William sold Tarleton Woodson seven acres of land near the river. In May 1724 they accused William in court of having a "Negro" slave fish with a net on the Sabbath and sending his son to fetch twine from home to mend the fishnet. On 4 September 1720 in Henrico County, Mary, her sisters and their husbands agreed how to divide between them 1,200 acres of land in Prince George County, left to them in their father's will. A year later William and Elizabeth Ligon sold their 240-acre portion to Moses Beck for £15:10.

Land transactions On 1 November 1706 William Ligon of Henrico Parish and his uncle Richard Ligon of Bristol Parish agreed to divide between them a parcel of 200 acres, which had been left to Mary Harris Ligon by her father, Capt. Thomas Harris. This agreement settled several law suits. In the same agreement, Richard gave half his land to his son, Matthew Ligon.

In Colonial Virginia they often held land in *fee tail*. They could only pass such land down through the generations and not sell or encumber it. In contrast, they could convey land held *fee simple* to others. For example, William Ligon's grandfather, Capt. Thomas Harris, left a 200-acre portion of "Curles" to his eldest daughter, Mary Harris. When she died, she left the land to her son, Hugh Ligon. When Hugh died without heirs, the land reverted to his eldest brother, William Ligon Jr. Yet William did not want the land and William Randolph did. A procedure was available for them to exchange property with the approval of the governor. On 19 June 1730, William

petitioned the House of Burgesses to bring a bill to the floor approving the exchange of his land for land and property belonging to Randolph. The House did what most administrative bodies have done for centuries. They referred the petition to a committee. The next day the committee reported that Randolph's lands along with two "Negroes, Judith and Pompey," were sufficient for the exchange. A bill approving the exchange of title in the properties was read on the floor of the House on three consecutive days, passed, and signed by the governor. Randolph later, on 3 April 1735, sold 50 acres of this land to Tarleton Woodson for £50. Their deed related the succession of owners and acknowledged the *fee tail* "was cut off by virtue of an act of Assembly of Virginia & proceedings in England."

In 1731 William refused allow Henry Batte and Peter Baugh procession the boundaries of his land. Perhaps because his grandfather Thomas Ligon and his uncle Richard Ligon had been county surveyors and had established his boundaries to William's satisfaction. Henrico County taxed William Ligon on seven levies and 508 acres in 1736. William Ligon was still living in Henrico County 28 May 1744 when he demanded "pay for one day's attendance and for coming and returning forty-four miles" as a witness for his son William in defending a law suit brought by John Lewellin in the Amelia County Court.

Will and probate They returned an appraisement of the estate of William Ligon 25 September 1765 with a value of £436:9:6.

His will provided that after the death of Elizabeth, "Negro man Grimmy" was to go to granddaughter Mary Moseley, the wife of William Moseley and "Negro man Matthew" to granddaughter Martha Moseley, the wife of Matthew Moseley.

Capt. Joseph Ligon (c.1728-1780)

Capt. Joseph Ligon inherited land called "Rockdale," "Roxdale," or "Rochedale" from his father. This area is now known as Jones Neck. Joseph mortgaged this land for £120:16:8 on 25 November 1758 to James Deans of Chesterfield County.

Two years later, on 12 November 1760, Joseph repaid the mortgage with interest and the next day he sold the land to William Walthall of Chesterfield County for £1,200.

About 1754 Joseph married Judith —. When Chesterfield taxed Joseph on 2 tithables in 1756, they described him as "patroller."

Ligon later made his home in Halifax County. He was living there in December 1770 when he sold Thomas Scott Jr. 368 acres in Prince Edward County. Joseph owned land on the north side of the Dan River opposite Alexander Roberts. In 1769 the House of Burgesses approved the construction of a ferry there. In 1775 Joseph entered the army as lieutenant of the Halifax County Militia and was promoted to captain in 1777. On 16 November 1778, Joseph bought 100 acres in Halifax County from Henry Filmer Green for £100. He was considered wealthy for the times. He educated his sons and ensured that they all learned a trade. Except Obadiah, all of his sons left Virginia and moved west. Joseph wrote his will on 27 January 1779. He began, "I, Joseph Ligon, of the Parish of Antrim in the county of Halifax, being in perfect mind and memory, thanks be given unto God, whereof calling to mind the mortality of my body and knowing that it is appointed for all men once to die..." Joseph's son Blackman was in the army when Joseph wrote his will and he did not know whether Blackman was still living or would return from the Revolution. He left land on the west side of Wades Creek to Blackman if he returned alive from the war. Otherwise, it would go to Blackman's brother John Ligon. County clerk, George Carrington, recorded Joseph's will on 18 May 1780. In October 1780 the court clerk entered an inventory of his estate into the Halifax County court records. The total value was £34,972:12:0. Of this amount, nine slaves accounted for £21,700. In 1782 Halifax County listed Judith Ligon head of a family of five.

Her son Joseph Jr. had already moved out and was dwelling on neighboring land. Joseph and Judith had seven children. Joseph Jr. was guardian of his underage brothers and sisters and reported to the Halifax County court on their status until 1793.

Blackman Ligon [1757-1831]

Blackman Ligon married Elizabeth Townes [28 April 1763 - Oct. 1842] on 17 June (bond) 1782 in Halifax County, Virginia. She was the daughter of William Townes. Elizabeth's sister, Lucretia Townes, was the mother of Mary Ann Robertson who married Joseph Moseley. Her sister Mary Townes married William Pride. In 1782 Halifax County listed the newlywed Blackman *Legon* head of a household of three whites and five blacks. According to one source, Blackman owned and operated a store in Greenville after the war.

Lt. Blackman Ligon served under General Nathanael Greene in the battles of Brandywine and

Germantown. In 1790 for his service in the war, they granted him 300 acres in Greenville, South Carolina, where he moved. In 1808 Blackman sold to his brother Thomas Ligon land on the Dan River he inherited from his father.

Blackman and Elizabeth died in Greenville County, South Carolina.

Col. Richard Ligon [1657-1724]

Richard Ligon, the **son of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris**, was born about 1657 according to Henrico County court records. He succeeded his father as surveyor of Henrico County and his name appeared often in court records related to his surveying duties.

Richard was the surveyor of the 5,000-acre Huguenot settlement at Manakin Town, now in Powhatan County. This settlement was for the French refugees who came to Virginia in 1700. In 1680 Henrico County paid Richard 550 pounds of tobacco to survey a new town to be built at Varina.

About 1703 William Byrd and Dudley Digges complained about Richard's surveying and accused him of giving more land to several persons than their patents permitted them to have. They called him before the governor and the Council and suspended him. Richard was effectively out of business and attended two General Courts at his own expense trying to get his office back. The House of Burgesses concluded that losing his income for several months was sufficient punishment for Richard and returned him to his office in 1704.

Richard married Mary Worsham in Henrico County between 1678 and 1681. Mary was the daughter of William Worsham and his wife, Elizabeth. She was also the aunt of Elizabeth Worsham who married Thomas Ligon, Richard's nephew.

Richard in court

Horse racing was a popular sport in Colonial Virginia and there were several race tracks. Betting on races was frequent. Bettors would even take their disputes to court. Some courts would refuse to hear such disputes as they considered gaming unlawful. Other courts would resolve disputes if the bets involved money, were written out, did not damage other people's property, and were not destructive of public morality.

In July 1678 a horse belonging to Abraham Womack and ridden by Thomas Cocke was to run against a horse belonging to Richard Ligon and ridden by Joseph Tanner. Joseph was then a servant of Thomas Chamberlain, the husband of Elizabeth Stratton. The winner was to receive 300 pounds of tobacco. Abram Childers was the starter. The horses rushed from the starting line but Cocke's horse shied from the track after running four or five lengths. Cocke quickly reined him in and cried out, "This is not a fair start." Chamberlain shouted to Joseph Tanner to stop but he did not. When Joseph returned, he declared that the race began fairly and he had won. Childers agreed but the parties took the matter to court.

In 1708 Thomas Chamberlain sued Richard Ligon regarding the outcome of a race. The loser was to pay the other forty shillings and pay for the gallon of rum provided for the enjoyment of the spectators. Chamberlain's horse had won.

Courts were very rigid in how they upheld the terms of agreements. Here is a story that Richard Ligon and his sister Johan Hancock related for the court in 1683. Several men were at Abraham Womack's house after a day of horse racing. Edward Hatcher proposed to race his horse against that of Edward Martin. The winner would get the other's horse. All exclaimed loudly: "Done, done," except Richard Ligon who shouted, "Mr. Edward Hatcher, my horse shall not run any more today or tonight." Hatcher swore at Ligon and exclaimed that the horse was his, not Ligon's. He at once led the animal off to a pasture that served as a race track. Ligon caught up with Hatcher as he was mounting and said again, "Edward Hatcher, this is my horse, and he shall not run."

Seeing Ligon's determination, Hatcher turned to the judges and asked them not to hold him liable for the wager. Yet the judges refused to listen and watched as Edward Martin ran the race alone. They declared Martin the winner and awarded him Richard Ligon's horse. Ligon still refused to give up his horse and the dispute found its way to the courts. The court strictly held Hatcher to his verbal contract though the action of Ligon made it impossible for him to perform his part.

They would make bets also on games of tenpins and various trivial matters. Once, about 1690, Richard Ligon bet Thomas East £5 sterling that before the end of June of the same year he could not determine how many cubic quarter-inches were in a "one thousand-foot square solid." If they could not agree on the answer then they would refer the matter to Col. William Byrd I and John Pleasants, a prominent Quaker, whose decision would be final.

On 25 June East correctly reported that the answer to the problem was 110,592,000,000,000. Richard refused to honor the wager so Thomas took him to court. The written wager witnessed by Joseph Tanner, Henry Jordan, Samuel Oulson, and Edward Mosby was entered to the Henrico County court records. Both William Byrd and John Pleasants sent the court written depositions that Thomas' answer was correct. Richard did not appear

to defend himself. The court ordered a judgement against Ligon and directed the county sheriff to attach a sufficient portion of his estate to satisfy the judgement.

An attorney for Richard, John Everitt, then came to the court to argue that the wager also required Thomas determine how many cubic feet were in the "solid." Yet the court judged that Thomas had won the wager and ordered Richard to pay the £5 and pay court costs.

Richard's name often appeared in the Henrico County court records not related to his surveying duties. At various times he was a plaintiff, defendant, witness, and jurymen. Twice a grand jury indicted him for swearing, then a "breach of the Penall Laws."

In 1704 Richard was listed as holding 1,028 acres in Henrico County. He acquired some of this land by patents beginning in 1690. With Edward Hill, Hugh Ligon, and Samuel Newman, he secured a patent for 292 acres in Bristol Parish in April 1690. On 24 April 1703, this land was regranted to Henry Mayes. In October 1690 he, Samuel Tatum, and William Temple applied for a patent for 1,022 acres in Charles City County south of the Appomattox River on Warwick Swamp. Yet this patent was never issued. On 29 April 1693 Richard Ligon and James Aiken Jr. secured a patent for 285 acres on the head of Proctors Creek. In 1704 Ligon and Aiken divided this land and in 1717 Ligon sold Aiken 142 acres of his portion.

Ligon added to his Proctors Creek holdings with a 303-acre purchase from John Worsham and Francis Patram in June 1703 that he sold to John Curtis in 1707.

Richard, called the "Indian Fighter," passed away in 1724. Surviving court records show his executor and son, Matthew Ligon, presented Richard's will 2 March 1723/4 but the original will was destroyed along with other wills and deeds of Henrico County of this period. Abraham Womack Sr., Robert Elam, and John Knibb appraised Richard's estate for £30:3:3.

Children of Richard and Mary (Worsham) Ligon

_____ Matthew Ligon (c.1682-1764), the son of Richard Ligon and Mary Worsham, wed Elizabeth Anderson. She was sister of Matthew Anderson Jr. (will dated 25 Feb. 1717/8, recorded 19 June 1718) who left "one Indian boy" to his sister "Elizabeth Ligon." Matthew inherited from his father land that had belonged to his grandfather Thomas Ligon. He was living in Goochland County when he sold this tract to Henry Walthall Henrico County taxed Matthew Ligon on two levies and 250 acres in 1736. He lived in that part of Henrico that became Chesterfield County where they taxed him on five tithables there in 1756. Matthew had the unique appointment of seeing that the ballast of all ships and other vessels which come to Bermuda Hundred was unloaded and brought on shore. Matthew Ligon acquired land in Goochland County in an area that became Cumberland County in 1749 and later Powhatan County. Matthew and Richard Ligon together sold 297 acres on the south side of Swift Creek to Richard Grills for £14 in July 1710. In 1719 he and his brother Richard obtained a patent for 290 acres on the south side of Swift Creek. In October 1728 Matthew sold a 100-acre plantation on Swift Creek to William Pride. Matthew alone patented 300 acres near Fine Creek in 1723 and 800 more acres south of the James River in 1731. Matthew failed to settle the 300-acre tract and they issued a patent for this land to Francis Epes of Henrico County 13 October 1727. Matthew still wanted the land so, on 17 November 1729, he bought it from Epes for £20. Matthew sold this 300-acre land to his son Richard for £5 on 18 June 1742. In 1710 Matthew served one year as a constable of Henrico County before resigning. He was also a tobacco counter in 1724 and 1725 with Alexander Marshall. Alexander was married to Matthew's cousin Elizabeth Worsham. Matthew Ligon died in Cumberland County in 1764 (will dated 1 April 1764, recorded 24 Sept. 1764). He and Elizabeth were the parents of seven children.

_____ Richard Ligon married twice. We do not know the name of his first wife. Ligon lived in that part of Goochland County that became Cumberland County in 1749. In September 1743 the Goochland County court granted Richard a "license" to keep an ordinary at his home. On 25 February 1744/5, Richard bought 400 acres in Goochland from Francis Amos for £45. In 1749 the Cumberland County court ordered Matthew Ligon and James Ligon to work on a road Richard had surveyed. On 10 November 1756, Richard purchased his parent's 275-acre home plantation in Cumberland County for £80. From 1750 to 1772, Richard bought land in Cumberland County aggregating more than 1,900 acres. The largest purchase was on 25 April 1767 and was 1,000 acres from Thomas Mann Randolph. This was land Randolph's father, William Randolph, had bought from William Mayo. Richard had one son by his first wife. Richard Ligon's second wife was Anne Ward, the daughter of Joseph Ward and Sarah Stewart. By his second wife, Richard had five sons. Richard signed a petition in Powhatan County in 1777 renouncing allegiance to the king. Richard Ligon died in Powhatan County in 1779 (will dated 17 Jan. 1779, recorded 18 Feb. 1779), and devised more than 2,600 acres to his heirs. His estate inventory named thirty-five slaves The only child of Richard Ligon by his first wife.

William Ligon was under age when he married Frances Moseley, about 1762. On 19 February 1765, William bought 200 acres in Goochland and Albemarle Counties from Benjamin Johnson Jr. Johnson Sr. had patented this land on 11 April 1732. William died while still under age leaving two orphans. Thomas Pleasants,

of the Virginia Quaker family, “solemnly, sincerely affirms and declared” that William left no will because Quakers did not “Swear,” even in court. They later appointed the widow, Frances, administration of his estate and named William’s father the guardian of the two children. William’s widow, Frances, married second William Stratton Jr. of Powhatan County. In 1769 Richard Ligon, “guardian and next friend,” brought a suit on behalf of the two orphans against their mother, Frances, and her new husband William Stratton. It seems, before he died, William and his wife, Frances, agreed to sell Matthew Moseley, who was perhaps Frances’ father, some land in Chesterfield County for £464:10:0. Matthew would then sell a 300-acre tract of land in Cumberland County for £429:0:0 to William and Frances. Moseley had bought the Cumberland County land from William Mitchell Clay who bought it from his father, Henry Clay The land was part of a larger parcel granted to the elder Clay in 1725. Frances completed both transactions after William’s death and included the £35 difference in his estate. However, a law regarding the exchange of lands within an estate caused the jury to find in favor of the plaintiffs and they ordered that Frances pay her children £63:19:3½. The trial evidently lasted awhile because John Ligon, a witness for the defendants, was paid 150 pounds of tobacco for six days of attendance. Frances’ son, William Ligon, inherited the 300-acre Cumberland property when he became twenty-one. His mother and stepfather, William Stratton, were living on the land then and he sold it to them for £100. William Ligon served as a private in the Revolution. He was born 24 November 1762 and enlisted from Powhatan County. He was in Capt. Richard Crump’s Company three months, was an express rider three months, and once carried an express from General Lafayette to General Wayne. William served three months in Capt. Robert Hughes Company and was at the Battle of Guilford Courthouse. He spent another three months in Capt. Littleberry Mosby’s Company and was at the Battle of Petersburg. This patriot lived after the war in Cumberland County and Prince Edward County, Virginia, Wilson County, Tennessee, and was in Owen County, Tennessee, when he applied for his pension in 1832. William Ligon lived in both Cumberland and Prince Edward Counties. His last appearance in Prince Edward county records was in 1799 when he and his wife, Ann, sold Littleberry Davis 145 acres for £514.

William Ligon was the author of a mathematics book published in 1808. This is the cover page.

ARITHMETIC IMPROVED,
or
A SUMMARY SYSTEM
of
COMMON and DECIMAL ARITHMETIC
Collaterally and concisely combined in every rule; with the
operation of every question full and expressive.
Intended for the
American Tutor’s Guide;

also

As an Assistant to persons of every occupation
This system from the commencement, progressively exhibits an improvement of the modern and ancient method of calculation; for everything that is superfluous, is discarded; and many entirely recent rules, cases and necessary discriminations are introduced. The whole, though adapted to the easy instruction of youth, is nevertheless, concise and perspicuous; and may be comprehended by adults, who have been instructed in ancient arithmetic, without the expense of tuition.

By WILLIAM LIGON, Sen.
PRINCE EDWARD, VIRGINIA, 1808.

Children of Richard and Ann (Ward) Ligon

Joseph Ligon (24 Nov. 1759-1797) married Frances Netherland (15 Nov. 1763-) on 5 July (bond) 1780. Her father was John Netherland who died in Powhatan County (will dated 14 Aug. 1803, recorded 21 Sept. 1804). Their children were: Nancy Ann Ligon(7 Aug. 1781) married Nelson Crawford (9 Nov. 1776 -Dec. 1792) in 1806 and was the mother of three. He married second Betsy Anderson (30 Sept. 1778); Richard Ligon (20 Aug. 1784) died unmarried in Nelson County in 1816 (will dated 8 Sept. 1816, recorded 28 Oct. 1816) leaving his property to the three children of his sister Nancy Ann Crawford; John Ward Ligon (15 Nov. 1785); Seth Ward Ligon (28 Mar. 1789 - 3 Jan. 1791) died before his second birthday; Seth Ward Ligon (10 June 1791); Dr. Littleberry Netherland Ligon (22 May 1794 -1859) married Elizabeth Kimbrough (25 Feb. 1799 - 18 Aug. 1873) on 15 July 1819. Littleberry represented Nelson County in the Virginia House of Delegates (1841-42) and Nelson, Amherst,

and Albemarle Counties at the Convention of 1850-1851. He died in Nelson County (will dated 27 Mar. 1852, recorded 25 July 1859) leaving all of his estate to his wife during her lifetime and afterwards in equal parts to his two sons and four daughters; Elizabeth Ligon (22 May 1794) was a twin to Littleberry.

_____ John Ligon (- 20 June 1819 {1820}) married Martha — before 1780 and they had three children of whom we know nothing. He married second about 1784 Sally Saunders, the daughter of Samuel Hyde Saunders and his wife, Phyllis Dudley. Ligon was an ensign in the Powhatan County Militia. He signed a petition in Powhatan County in 1777 renouncing allegiance to the king. In 1783 Powhatan listed John Ligon head of a household of five whites and twenty-one slaves and listed the estate of John Ligon with eleven slaves. John and Sally had seven children.

_____ Thomas Ligon signed a petition in Powhatan County in 1777 renouncing allegiance to the king. He served during the Revolution first in Capt. Charles Fleming's Company. He enlisted 11 February 1778 and was later transferred to Col. William Heth's Company and Maj. Webb's Company. Although a muster roll for January 1779 said "Died January 11, 1779," payroll records show he died January 16. Thomas' father, perhaps induced by a premonition, rose on the seventeenth to amend his will to say "my son, Thomas, now being in the northward in service; if he should die, then his estate to..."

_____ Arthur Ligon.

Leonard Seth Ligon married Janette Mayo in Powhatan County 4 May (bond) 1789. See their family

~ ~ ~

James Ligon married **Judith Stewart** *who had previously been married to Joseph Ligon, the son of William Ligon and Elizabeth Batte*. In 1750 James' father conveyed 276 acres in Cumberland County to him "for his better support and advancement in this world. James died in 1764 (will dated 25 June 1764, recorded 24 Sept 1764). The court appointed Judith guardian to Mary Ligon 7 August 1767.

Mary Ligon married John Hylton. In her 1783-will, her mother called her daughter "Mary Hylton," left a legacy to a granddaughter Elizabeth Cooke Hylton, and appointed John Hylton an executor of her will. John Hylton was probably the son or nephew of another John Hylton of Chesterfield County, Virginia. The elder John Hylton was baptized 26 May 1719 in South Shields, county Durham, England. He was captain of the ship Charles and later was active in the mercantile business and served as a county justice. As John Hylton of Bermuda Hundred, he bought the 485-acre "Baldwins" property from Mary Ligon's half-brother Joseph Ligon Jr. for £550 in 1764. John Hylton did not identify his wife by name in his will yet land records show his wife as Elizabeth —.

The elder John Hylton died at his home in Bermuda Hundred, Chesterfield County in November 1773 (will dated 7 Nov. 1773, recorded 2 Feb. 1774). He left large tracts of land to his heirs and specifically mentioned "lower Ligon's" and "Baldwins." His executors included Charles Carter of "Corotoman," Francis Epes, of "Wintipock," John Archer, and Thomas Jefferson. Evidently his estate was fully mortgaged at his death and his heirs likely received nothing. John Hylton was enumerated with three blacks in Chesterfield County in 1783, although he was not on the list. The birth of one child is in The Douglas Register.

_____ James Ligon chose Leonard Ward his guardian 3 November 1769. He married first Sarah Holcomb on 19 February (bond) 1774. His bride was the daughter of Philip Holcomb of Prince Edward County. James' second wife was Mary Haskins, the daughter of Thomas Haskins. They were married 21 September (bond) 1778. In 1782 Prince Edward County listed James head of a family of five whites and sixteen slaves. Three years later they listed him in a household of just two whites. During the Revolution, James supplied 1,175 pounds of beef, 100 pounds of bacon, and 126 bushels of wheat to the Continental Army.

James and John Ligon inherited their father's "Round Island" plantation in Prince Edward County. In November 1764 John conveyed his 306-acre interest to James for £250 paid by Richard Ligon and Matthew Moseley, executors of the estate of James Ligon. In 1785 James sold 100 acres on Sandy River in Prince Edward County to David Holt. In 1804 two years after he wrote his will, James conveyed 596 acres on Sandy River to John T. Ligon.

James died in Prince Edward County (will dated 22 Jan. 1802, recorded 16 June 1806). He left his daughter Nancy seven "Negro" slaves and his son, Thomas, his Sandy River land.

Children of James and Sarah (Holcomb) Ligon: Sarah H. Ligon married Jeremiah Miller in Prince Edward County 9 August (bond) 1792.

Children of James and Mary (Haskins) Ligon: Nancy N. Ligon married George C. Friend in Prince Edward County 21 May (bond) 1800. He was likely George Cox Friend and she was likely Ann Nash Ligon; Thomas D. Ligon (27 Sept. 1780 -1811) married Martha Hughes Watkins on 18 September 1805. She was the daughter of Col. Thomas Watkins and Betsy Ann Venable. Thomas D. Ligon died before 24 June 1811 when Henry N. Watkins, administrator, delivered an inventory of thirty-one slaves and an appraisal of Ligon's estate to the Prince Edward County court house.

Martha married second Dr. Jack Vaughan of Prince Edward County in 1812. They were the parents of six children.

Children of Thomas D. and Martha Hughes (Watkins) Ligon: James D. Ligon (8 Feb. 1808 - 20 Feb. 1884) married Mary Morton Venable (11 Feb. 1811 - 11 Feb. 1851) in Prince Edward County 11 August 1830. His first wife, the mother of nine children, was the daughter of Richard Nathaniel Venable and Mary Morton. James married second Margaret Ann Venable on 4 November 1863. Her parents were Samuel Woodson Venable and Jane Reid. They had one child before Ligon's death in Prince Edward County (will dated 20 June 1880, recorded 17 Mar. 1884); Thomas Watkins Ligon (10 May 1810 - 12 Jan. 1881) graduated from Hampden-Sydney College and the University of Virginia (1831) and entered Yale Law School. Thomas began the practice of law in Maryland, member of the State house of representatives (1843) and the U.S. Congress (1845-49), and succeeded Enoch Louis Lowe as state governor (1854-58). Ligon married twice and had five children. His first wife was Sallie Dorsey, daughter of Col. Charles Dorsey and Mary Tolly Worthington. In 1854 he married second his sister-in-law, Mary Tolly Dorsey (June 1825 - Mar. 1899).

~ ~ ~

Matthew Ligon (1720-1764) received some property from his father in 1738. He married Susanna — before 1739. On 6 January 1758 Matthew Ligon Jr. with wife, Susanna, sold 200 acres that his father had inherited from Richard Ligon to John Hylton.

He and John Knibb were inspectors of tobacco at Bermuda Hundred, Chesterfield County. They petitioned the House of Burgesses in 1753 to up their salary from £20 yearly. Although a committee recommended a £5 increase, the full House voted it down.

~ ~ ~

Richard Ligon (1745-1820) married Mary Bagley in Amelia County 28 March (bond) 1765. On 24 August 1768, his father-in-law, George Bagley, sold Richard 200 acres in Amelia (now Nottoway) County for £40. This land was on the north side of Mallorys Creek. Richard married second Olive Jeter. On 30 August 1769, Richard conveyed to his son, William Ligon, via a deed of gift, "One Negro girl named Issey and her increase." In 1782 Amelia County listed Richard Ligon head of a household of eight whites and six blacks. Three years later he had a family of nine. Richard's land was in what later became Nottoway County and he paid taxes on 200 acres there in 1812. Richard died in Nottoway County (will dated 29 May 1816, recorded 14 May 1820).

Children of Richard and Mary (Bagley) Ligon: William Ligon (c.1766-1791) inherited from his Bagley grandfather £90 to be raised from the sale of "Negro woman Lucy & her increase" when he married or became twenty-one. He married Susanna Humphreys. In July 1790 George Snelling sold 120 acres on Cold Water Branch in Nottoway County to William Ligon for £100. Ligon died before 26 July 1791 when they inventoried his estate. His wife and father were estate administrators and his father became the guardian of this couple's only son, John Ligon (18 Nov. 1790 - 18 May 1859); Susan Ligon married — Lipscomb; James Ligon; Polly Ligon married — Dodd; Lucy Ligon married Daniel Walker; Martha Ligon married Brightwell Rather; Samuel Ligon was perhaps the Samuel Ligon who wed Lucy H. Drake in Amelia County 11 November (bond) 1809. His marriage bond described her as the daughter of William Drake; daughter Ligon married John Webb before 1816.

Children of Richard and Olive (Jeter) Ligon: Richard Ligon married Fanny McGehee in Prince Edward County 26 July (bond) 1809. Her father was Abraham McGehee — perhaps the Abraham McGehee who wed Judith Penick. Richard died in Wake County, North Carolina, (will recorded 17 Mar. 1815); Matthew Ligon (9 Jan. 1793 - 20 Aug. 1842) married Jane Hatchett in Nottoway County 20 February 1816. Matthew served during the War of 1812. He died in Henderson County, Kentucky (will dated 10 Aug. 1842); Green Ligon died in Nottoway County (will recorded 2 Dec. 1802). His will mentioned his father and brother Richard.

More cousins

Thomas Ligon (7 Feb. 1724/5) moved from Cumberland to Lunenburg (later Charlotte) County in 1755 when he bought 300 acres on Twittys Creek from William Jones. In 1782 Charlotte County listed "Thomas Leggon Sr." head of a household of five whites and six blacks. He and his wife, Ann —, had five children. Thomas Ligon Sr. was delinquent on his Charlotte County taxes for 1787, having moved to Kentucky.

Thomas Ligon married Frances Bumpas in Charlotte County 13 December (bond) 1780. Thomas died in Charlotte County (will dated 19 July 1799, recorded 7 April 1800). Both nominated executors, Paul Carrington and Joseph Ligon, renounced executorship.

Elizabeth Ligon married Sherwood Purson in Charlotte County 3 September (bond) 1770.

Mary Ligon married John Bridges in Charlotte County 5 May (bond) 1772.

Joseph Ligon married Mary Church, daughter of Richard Church, in 1778. He and his family later moved to Georgia. Mary died in Oglethorpe County in 1827 (will dated 24 July 1827, recorded 3 Sept. 1827).

James Ligon died in Clarke County, Georgia, in 1821 (will dated 17 Aug. 1813, recorded 6 Aug. 1821). His children are: Joseph Ligon was a minor in 1813; Robert Ligon (1793-1828) married Wilhelmina Fulwood, daughter of Maj. Robert Fulwood and his wife, Caroline Matilda Brinton. Their children: Louise Ligon married M. Tenney.; Edward Ligon married Eugenie Wood; Martha E. Ligon (-1867) married David Clopton (29 Sept. 1820 - 5 Feb. 1892).

Clopton graduated from Randolph- Macon College (1840) and began the practice of law in Griffin, Georgia, in 1841. They elected David Clopton to the Thirty-Sixth Congress (1859-61) as a Democrat and he resigned his seat when Alabama seceded from the Union. During the Civil War he fought in the 12th Alabama Infantry commanded by his brother-in-law, Robert F. Ligon. Clopton was a member of the Confederate Congress (1862-64) and after the war was elected to the state House of Representatives in 1878. He declined a second term and was appointed an associated justice of the Alabama Supreme Court.

Clopton later married second Mary F. (—) Chambers of Columbus, Georgia, and third Virginia (—) Clay, widow of Clement Claiborne Clay, son of Clement Comer Clay. Their children: Clotilda Ligon married Joseph Seymour; Laura Ligon married Robert Woodbridge.; Camilla Ligon died in infancy; Amanda Ligon married B. Gary; Robert Fulwood Ligon (23 Dec. 1823 - 11 Oct. 1901) attended school at the University of Georgia and practiced law in Tuskegee, Alabama, beginning in 1845. A captain during the Mexican War, he served in the Alabama House of Representatives (1849-50) and Senate (1861-64). During the War Between the States he was captain of Co. F., 12th Alabama Infantry Regiment and after the surrender resumed his practice. He ran unsuccessfully for governor in 1872 yet was lieutenant governor in 1874. Robert Ligon was a member of the Forty-fifth Congress (1877-79) but he was not re-nominated the next term. He retired from law, moved to Montgomery, and engaged in banking and as a planter. His wife was Emily Paine, daughter of Edward Courtney Paine and Sarah Drury. They had five children: Nancy Ligon; Eliza Ligon married — Paulett after 1813; Helena Ligon; Judith Ligon (29 Aug. 1797) married Wylie Yancey in Halifax County 20 September 1797.

Obedience Ligon married John Owen in Lunenburg County 11 March 1784.

Elizabeth Ligon (9 Dec. 1727).

William Ligon (1732- 9 Mar. 1828) married Elizabeth East (18 Feb. 1794), called “Edy.” In 1782 Cumberland County listed head of a household of nine whites. He owned no slaves. Ligon died in Cumberland County (will dated 9 Feb. 1828, recorded 26 May 1828). His wife was already dead and he left all of his property to his two younger daughters, neither of whom married.

Elijah Ligon (- 6 May 1828) married Judith Carter in Cumberland County 26 November (bond) 1789. In February 1814 Elijah bought 12½ acres in Cumberland County from John Bagby for £2.

Susannah Ligon (- 26 May 1841) married Hugh Robertson (9 Oct. 1750 - 8 May 1833) on 1 January 1787. A widower with three children, he served in the First Continental Artillery Regiment. They had eleven children born in Cumberland County from 1787 to 1802. She was still living in 1834.

Sarah Ligon married — Wood and had three children.

John Ligon (4 Oct. 1778 -1861) made his home in Nelson County in 1807 and built “Seclusival.” On 12 November 1812 he married Nancy Daniel (3 Feb. 1783 - 31 Aug. 1873), the daughter of Robert Campbell Daniel and his wife, Elizabeth Sublett. They had two children before John died in Nelson County (will dated 8 Nov. 1849, recorded 27 May 1861).

Frances Ligon (- 1 May 1832) died unmarried in Cumberland County (will dated 12 Nov. 1831, recorded 24 Sept. 1832), leaving all her possessions to her sister Elizabeth.

Elizabeth Ligon (-1850) bought 6½ acres in Cumberland County from Hezekiah Ford & Co. for \$65 in June 1813. She died unmarried in Cumberland County (will dated 23 Mar. 1850, recorded 27 Jan. 1851). Her death came before 22 July 1850 when her will was first presented.

Richard Ligon [(10 Sept. 1772 - 14 Dec. 1841) died unmarried in Nelson County.

Frances Ligon.

Henry Ligon (-1762), the son of Richard Ligon and Mary Worsham, wed his cousin Sarah Ligon. (See their family)

Sarah Ligon, the daughter of Richard Ligon and Mary Worsham, wed Richard Grills. We know Rev. George Robertson married them before 1 June 1708 when Henrico County granted him a judgement against Grills for not paying the marriage fee. This impropriety was perhaps an indication of Grill’s character. He was sufficiently well off to get a patent on 3,000 acres in Henrico County on the south side of Swift Creek on 16 June 1714. Further, during the next four years, he bought and sold many parcels of land. Records show Richard was a millwright.

One sale of land was the source of a legal battle after Richard’s death. In 1710 Richard Ligon deeded

Richard Grills, his son-in-law, a parcel of land near “Curles” in what is now Chesterfield County. In 1717 Grills sold this land to Thomas Jefferson who wrote a will leaving the land to his daughter Judith and her husband George Farrar. Yet when Jefferson later decided to convey the property to Farrar while he lived, he discovered that Matthew Ligon was preparing to re-patent the tract. The court made Ligon deed the disputed land to George Farrar.

Richard died in North Carolina (will dated 1 Feb. 1719/20, recorded 4 April 1720) and named his wife, Sarah, sole executor. They had two sons Richard Grills was a “hatter” when he sold 150 acres to Peter Jefferson in 1732. His father had taken up the upper half of the tract. Grills held 1,001 acres in Henrico County in 1736; John Grills was in Henrico County in May 1735 when he sold 148½ acres on the south side of Swift Creek to John Newby but was in North Carolina in June 1735 when he sold 4,000 acres that had belonged to his father to Thomas Farmer for 14,000 pounds of tobacco. The latter tract of land had belonged to Richard Grills. Grills was still in North Carolina in August 1735 when he sold a lot in Bermuda Hundred to Matthew Ligon. He later returned to Virginia from North Carolina.

Mary Ligon (c.1694), the daughter of Richard Ligon and Mary Worsham, was born about 1694. She wed Capt. John Coleman, the son of Robert Coleman of Prince George County. John owned 200 acres in Prince George County in 1704 that was probably the land his father secured a patent for on 29 September 1668. He and his wife sold this land on 8 May 1725 to Robert Munford and bought 185 acres on Whipponock Creek in Dinwiddie County on 13 May 1725. In 1749 Mary (Ligon) Coleman of Cumberland County released her brother, Matthew Ligon, also of Cumberland, from “all actions, suits, bonds, accounts, writs, obligations, etc. at law or in equity which I ever had against Matthew.” We do not know the cause of her complaint against her brother. John and Mary were both dead by 1749 leaving an only child: Mary Ligon Coleman (18 July 1731) who went to live with her guardian, Matthew Ligon. She married Thomas Bedford (1725-1785), son of Stephen Bedford and Elizabeth Flippen in Cumberland County 24 September (bond) 1750. The elder Bedford relocated to Cumberland County from Gloucester County in 1735. A justice of the peace in Cumberland County (1749), Lunenburg County (1756-64), and Charlotte County up to 1778, the younger Bedford also represented Charlotte County in the Virginia House of Delegates (1788) and was a member of the Charlotte Committee of Safety (1775-76). He was a trustee of the town of Dalstonburgh in Lunenburg County in 1759. Thomas Bedford died in Charlotte County (will dated 3 Feb. 1785, recorded 7 Mar. 1785) and divided his considerable estate among his fourteen children.

Richard Ligon with his brother Matthew had surveyed 290 acres on the south side of Swift Creek in Henrico County on 15 March 1705/6. It was not until 22 January 1718/9 that they obtained a patent for the land.

Matthew Ligon [1659-1689] the son of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris, was born about 1659 in Henrico County. He apparently did not marry and died before May 1689 at age thirty.

Hugh Ligon [1661-]

Hugh Ligon, the son of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris, was born about 1661. On 21 April 1690, he, Col. Edward Hill, Richard Ligon, and Samuel Newman secured a patent for 292 acres in Bristol Parish, Henrico County. The land was on the north side of Swift Creek and next to land belonging to Henry Walthall. On 24 April 1703, this land was regranted to Henry Mayes. In 1704 Hugh was paying quit rents on 150 acres in Henrico County. He was a horse fancier and about 1687 a great race took place between a horse belonging to Hugh and one owned by Stephen Cocke. Christopher Branch held a stake in the outcome of this race.

Hugh Ligon was a grand juryman in Henrico County in 1689. Yet he walked out of the court house before they could swear him in. He was ordered immersed and fined 200 pounds of tobacco. Hugh married first Elizabeth Walthall the orphan daughter of William Walthall and his wife, Anne Archer. They were married in Henrico County about 1689.

Hugh’s father-in-law, William Walthall, was first a prosperous farmer and merchant. Yet he was mentally disturbed for the last years of his life, breaking things around the house that got in his way. The family became so poor that Anne Walthall once made a blouse of a bed sheet. By the time William died, Anne did not have enough cattle and hogs to feed her family and had to depend on charity. Elizabeth Walthall was most likely just an infant when her father died.

By 1689 all four Walthall children had reached their lawful age and their mother, who had meanwhile married Richard Morris, was again a widow. Anne reported to the court that she had already given all of her first husband’s estate to her children. This satisfied Anne’s three sons. Yet Hugh Ligon, who had married Elizabeth Walthall only a year before, did not believe her and presented a petition to the court demanding more. Perhaps Hugh had heard William Walthall had been wealthy and was anticipating a windfall. Anyway, the court ordered Peter Field and Richard Kennon to look into Hugh’s allegations and they reported that Hugh had already received

more than a quarter of the estate. Hugh then, perhaps disappointedly, formally acknowledged the division on 23 January 1689/90.

In 1690 Hugh bought "Northampton," a plantation belonging to Thomas Wells, for 8,080 pounds of tobacco. Together, Ligon and Wells sold 100 acres called "Scurry Hill" to Richard Holmes.

Hugh later married Jane (Pew) Price, the widow of John Price who remembered his wife, Jane, in his 1693-will in Charles City County. Jane was a daughter of Henry Pew (c.1634) of Henrico County who mentioned daughter Jane Price in his 1709-will. Hugh became guardian to her daughter, Elizabeth Pew.

The Henrico County Record Book of June 1689 called Hugh Ligon the sheriff. Later, in 1699, he was the constable. We have no record that Hugh had any children.

In June 1717 Hugh sold Gilbert Elam 200 acres south of the James River in Henrico County for 3,000 pounds of tobacco. Wife, Jane, relinquished her dower right. The deed described the land as part of a 1,300-acre patent his father had allowed to lapse and Hugh had taken up. This was perhaps the patent of 28 September 1672 for land south of the James River. Yet Charles Evans secured a patent to this property in May 1706.

Mary (Ligon) Farrar [1663-]

Mary Ligon, the daughter of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris, was born about 1663 in Henrico County. Her husband was Thomas Farrar, the son of William Farrar and his wife, Mary. They had one son. Mary died before 1686 when Thomas Sr. remarried. The only son of Thomas and Mary (Ligon) Farrar: Thomas Farrar who was a legatee of the will of his grandmother.

Thomas Ligon III [1655-1678]

Thomas Ligon III was the first born son of Col. Thomas Ligon and Mary Harris. He was born about 1655 for his father appeared as Mr. Thomas Ligon Sr. when his name is shown on a patent of 18 Mar 1672/3.

Thomas died before 20 August 1678 when his estate of "Mr. Thomas Lygon Junr." was distributed. As Thomas was unmarried, his mother distributed his cattle among her remaining children. Richard received "a heifer called by the name of the brindle heifer." Matthew got "one Cow called Slowe," and Hugh, "1 cow called Strawberry." To Mary went "2 Cow Calves which fell this year of them to Cowes."

Margaret (Lygon) Russell Berkeley (-1617)

Margaret Lygon, the daughter of William Lygon and Eleanor Dennis, married first Sir Thomas Russell Thomas had previously been married to Frances Cholmley, the daughter of Sir Roger Cholmley. Sir Thomas died in 1574. They had one son. Margaret later married Sir Henry Berkeley who was born in 1531 and knighted in 1585. Henry was a Member of Parliament (1584-86). Sir Berkeley was from the same Berkeley family as Maurice Berkeley. Both were descended from Maurice, Second Lord Berkeley. Sir Henry died in 1601 and Margaret in 1517.

The only child of Thomas and Margaret (Lygon) Russell was Thomas Russell, born in 1570. He was the half-brother of Mary Russell who married Richard Ligon. Margaret Lygon was thus Thomas' mother and his half sister-in-law.

He was only four years old when his father died and he inherited a manor near Stratford. Thomas' first wife was the widow of Francis Brace-Smith. Thomas was a friend of William Shakespeare and the bard named Thomas an overseer of his will. Thomas' second wife was Anne St. Leger. She was the daughter of Sir Warham St. Leger and the widow of Thomas Digges. Anne (St. Leger) Digges was the mother of Edward Diggees, a Colonial governor of Virginia. Thomas Russell had no children who lived to adulthood.

Children of Henry and Margaret (Lygon) Russell Berkeley are:

Sir Maurice Berkeley was knighted by the Earl of Essex while serving under that nobleman in the expedition to Cadiz in 1596. He married Elizabeth Killebrew, daughter of Sir William Killebrew, of Hansworth, Middlesex. Maurice received his B.A. at Oxford, 1592-3 and was a Member of Parliament 1597-1604. He died 15 January 1617/8.

Sir Charles Berkeley was born 14 December 1599. He was first comptroller and then treasurer of the household of King Charles I. He married Penelope Godolphin, daughter of William Godolphin. He was the father of four children and died 12 June 1688.

Sir Henry Berkeley was baptized 8 December 1599 at Middlesex. He died unmarried in 1631.

Sir Maurice Berkeley (1603-1628).

Sir John Berkeley was baptized 1 February 1606/7 at Hansworth Middlesex County. With his brother William,

John marched against the Scots in 1638. He was knighted by King Charles I at Berwick in July of 1639.

The queen respected his military skills and during the usurpation by Oliver Cromwell, Sir John Berkeley remained in exile with the royal family. After the death of Lord Byron, in 1652, John was placed in charge of the Duke of York's family and managed all the receipts and disbursements. In 1675 he was an ambassador to the court of Versailles. John married Christiana Riccard, daughter and heir of Sir Andrew Riccard. Sir Andrew Riccard was the president of the East India Company. John had close ties to King Charles II who granted Sir John Berkeley and his brother Charles extensive property rights in the Northern Neck of Virginia (now Maryland), New Jersey, and the Carolinas. The Colonial Government annulled this charter with great difficulty. John died 28 August 1678.

Gov. William Berkeley was baptized at Hansford, Middlesex County, 16 July 1608. He enrolled in Queen's College, Oxford, 14 February 1622/3 at the age of seventeen. He received his B.A. 1624 and his M.A. 1629. Charles I knighted William at Berwick on 27 July 1639. William probably participated in the defense of England against Scotland in 1639. Scotland had earlier seized English castles and arrayed a substantial army on the border. Not wanting war, England negotiated the so-called "Pacification of Berwick" on 18 June 1639. The decision was prudent as the Scots would have overrun the weaker forces that Charles had gathered. Sir William was the Royal Governor of Virginia (1642-54, 1661-76). When William Berkeley came to Virginia in 1641, his distant cousin Thomas Ligon joined him. William named Bruton Church in Williamsburg for Bruton Abbey in Wessex, a Berkeley estate. William married three times. He died 9 July 1677 and was buried at Twickenham, Middlesex County, England. Among the witnesses to William's will (will dated 2 May 1676, recorded 22 Nov. 1678) was Nathaniel Bacon.

Margaret Berkeley married Sir Popham Southcatt.

Jane Berkeley was baptized at Bruton, 27 December 1610. She was living in 1626 and married — Davies.

Sir Henry Berkeley married Elizabeth Nevill, daughter of Henry Nevill, Esq., of Pillinsbee, Berkshire.

Edward Berkeley married Margaret Holland, daughter of John Holland, Esq., of Sussex County.

Sir Charles Berkeley.

Margaret Berkeley married Sir Richard Pollard.

~ ~ ~

Cicely (Lygon) Gorges Vivian

Cicely Lygon, the **daughter of William Lygon and Eleanor Dennis**, married Edward Gorges (1537-1568) of Wraxall, in 1559. They were the parents of two sons. Edward died at Clerkenwell 29 August 1568. Cicely married second John Vivian, Esq.

Children of Edward and Cicely (Lygon) Gorges 3> **Edward Gorges** [28160.9.1]. 3> **Sir Ferdinando Gorges** [28160.9.2] was born in 1573 at Ashton Philips in Somersetshire. Historians called him "the father of colonization in America." Sir Gorges and Sir John Popham, both wealthy Englishmen, sent George Weymouth to explore the coast of Maine. Weymouth's reports were sufficiently favorable that Gorges and Popham attempted a settlement there. They financed a group of colonists who established Popham Plantation near the mouth of the Kennebec River in 1607. Hardships and harsh weather forced the colonists to return to England the following year. Sir Gorges was a member of His Majesty's Council for Virginia from the first and a member of Lord Rich's African Company, 16 November 1618. He also served on the South Virginia Company, before 17 November 1619. It was through the efforts of Sir Ferdinando Gorges that King James I made the Royal Grant or Charter, dated April 1606, granting to "the Council of Virginia" the Continent of North America, from 34 to 45 north latitude, and all the islands within one hundred miles of the shore.

The prestigious Council of Virginia was made up of fourteen individuals including, Gorges, Sir John Popham, Thomas Warr (Lord de la Warr) and Sir Thomas Smith. The charter of 10 April 1606 provided for planting two distinct and separate colonies, each having a local government of north and south Virginia. The former became the Plymouth Company and the latter the Virginia Company. An expedition from Plymouth in 1607 built a fortified storehouse near the mouth of the Kennebec River called Fort George, but they abandoned it in the following spring. In the early 1620s Gorges and Popham established many permanent settlements in Maine, perhaps the earliest made near present-day Saco in 1623. Ownership of the land was disputed until 1622 when the Council for New England, an agency of the English government, presented John Mason and Ferdinando Gorges a large parcel of land in what is now Maine and New Hampshire. In 1629 the men split the land with Gorges receiving the Maine portion. In 1636 it was Gorges who established the first government in Maine. In 1641 he made the community of Gorgeana (now York) a city, the first English community chartered in what is now the United States. Charles I, King of England, on 3 April 1639, granted Sir Ferdinando Gorges "a parte & portion of the countrie of America, nowe commonly called or knowne by the name of New England."

Sir Ferdinando Gorges married four times and had four children by his first wife Ann Bell. Gorges died at Long Ashton and was buried there 14 May 1647. The Maine settlements later sought to become a part of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. A dispute with the heirs of Gorges, who claimed the land for themselves, was settled for \$6,000. The U.S. Navy named a base on Hog Island in Portland Harbor, Maine "Fort Gorges" in honor of Sir Ferdinando Gorges.

~ ~ ~

European notables

Sir Henry Berkeley was a Member of Parliament

Sir Maurice Berkeley was a Member of Parliament

Soldiers of Colonial and American wars

William Ligon - American Revolution

Thomas Ligon - American Revolution

John Howson Ligon - American Revolution

Blackman Ligon - American Revolution

Lt. Joseph Ligon Jr. - American Revolution

Thomas Bedford - American Revolution

Maj. William Moseley - American Revolution

Capt. Charles Moseley - American Revolution

Capt. John Moseley - American Revolution

Maj. Edward Moseley - American Revolution

Benjamin Moseley - American Revolution

Hezekiah Morton - American Revolution

Blackman Moseley - American Revolution

William Moseley - American Revolution

Joseph Moseley - American Revolution

Thomas Smith Moseley - American Revolution

Arthur Richard Moseley - American Revolution

William Hancock - American Revolution

Simon Hancock - American Revolution

Col. Samuel Hancock - American Revolution

Samuel Watkins - American Revolution

Capt. Henry Watkins - American Revolution

Matthew Ligon - War of 1812

Sgt. Archibald Fuqua - War of 1812

David Clopton - Civil War

Col. Edmund John Goode - Civil War

Robert Fulwood Ligon - Mexican War

Members of Congress - U.S. and Confederate

Joseph Calhoun - U.S. Thomas Watkins Ligon - U.S.

David Clopton - U.S. David Clopton - Confederate
Robert Fulwood Ligon - U.S.

Governors - Colonial, territorial, and state

Thomas Watkins Ligon - Maryland
Sir William Berkeley, Royal Governor of Virginia

Legislators - Colonial and state

Thomas Ligon Jr. - Virginia
William Moseley - Virginia
John Moseley - Virginia
John Moseley - Virginia
Joseph Calhoun - South Carolina
William Marshall Moseley - Virginia
Thomas Smith Moseley - Virginia
Langdon Cheve Moseley - Virginia
Hickerson Barksdale - Virginia
Littleberry Netherland Ligon - Virginia
Thomas Watkins Ligon - Maryland
David Clopton - Alabama
Robert Fulwood Ligon - Alabama
Thomas Bedford - Virginia
Charles Norwood - Virginia

~ ~ ~

Virginia Statues at Large

An Act to establish Ligontown passed December 14, 1796: That twenty-five acres of land, the property of William Ligon, lying on Appomattox River, near mouth of Angola creek, shall be, and they are hereby vested in Thomas Elmore, William Wood Jr., Efford Bentley, Benjamin Chapman, Thomas Ligon, Ambrose Jeter and James Gills, gentlemen, trustees, to be by them, or a majority of them, laid off in lots of half an acre each, with convenient streets, and established a town by the name of Ligontown.

~ ~ ~

From Jackson to Vicksburg

1861-1865

Memories of the War Between the States

Personal experiences on the Barrett Plantation

Hinds County, Mississippi

by Cornelia Barrett Ligon

as told to her daughter, Kate Ligon McGarvey

These memoirs of the Civil War reflect the experiences of my great grandmother, Sarah Cornelia Barrett (1846-1932), a young girl living on the family plantation in the South during the Civil War. Her father, Oliver Perry Barrett, owned the plantation known as Newstead located in Hinds County, Mississippi near the town of Jackson. She was called Cornelia because her mother's name was also Sarah Cornelia (Walton) Barrett. Cornelia later married Buxton Townes Ligon, hence these memoirs were written under her married name, Cornelia Barrett Ligon (see Barrett/Ligon genealogies).

The war had made a tremendous impression on Cornelia, and subsequently, her vivid recollections of Yankee troops taking over the Barrett family home and the battles that were fought "in my own back yard" were related to her daughter, my maternal grandmother, Kate Lawn Ligon McGarvey, who helped her mother compile her childhood memories and later recollections into the following record. My grandmother also cited quotes from books, newspaper accounts and other supporting documents, included at the end of this story.

With the exception of a few typographical errors, etc., I have not changed my grandmother's monograph. She had added some handwritten notes in the margins which are shown as footnotes. To clarify information within the text, I added my own comments in brackets.

Lora Lee (Weitz) Cline

Huachuca City, Arizona

Summer 2007

I was a little girl eleven years old, attending a private boarding school with my sister in Jackson, Mississippi. In every group of people, talking could be heard, such catchwords, phrases and slogans as: Tariff for revenue only, tariff for protection, free soil, slavery. The Missouri Compromise, Dred Scott Decision, states' rights, covenant with death, the Yankee Mudsill, the southern gentleman, and the Toombs and Yanceys who ate fire.

The school in Jackson closed, then mother sent sister Lucy and me to Central Female College in Clinton. This was Dr. Walter Hillman's school. This school was not closed during the war. Clinton is justly called the Athens of Mississippi. My brother, Thomas William Hickman Barrett (he did not like such a long name) was enrolled in Mississippi College at Clinton. This college was founded in 1830 by a private means of the enterprising citizens of the community. Oliver [Perry] Barrett, my father, contributed largely to its endowment, and so did my grandfather, Don Carlos Barrett. After a meeting of the citizens, Oliver Barrett told of one citizen without ready cash who stood up when contributions were being called for and he said, "I will give a bull." It was gladly accepted.

Our family lived on Barrett Plantation¹ in Hinds County, five miles out of Jackson.² My father, Oliver Barrett, son of Don Carlos Barrett, figured very prominently in the early history of Texas. He was one of the peace commissioners to General Cos, and chairman of the state and judiciary during the council meetings from 1822 to 1838³ at San Felipe, and the delegate from Mina. He was unanimously elected Judge Advocate General of Texas, with pay and emoluments of the Judge Advocate General of the United States of America. A prominent lawyer and historian [Clarence Warton], in his history of "Texas, One Hundred Years Ago," speaks of Don Carlos

Barrett as the “brains of the council.”

Don Carlos Barrett married Lucy Walton at Natches, Mississippi in 1810. The license is on record there right now. They had one child, Oliver, who became my father. He had large estates, two plantations, the one where we lived and another up on the Big Black River [feeds into the Mississippi River 12 miles south of Vicksburg]. We owned many slaves. I even had a little girl named Matilda who played with me and took care of me every day. The plantation we lived on was ten miles long and ten miles across. There was an old folk song I heard that ran something like this:

What care I for gold or silver,

What care I for house or land?

All I want on this creation

Is a husband and a big plantation.

And that is what I was raised on and where I lived nearly all my life.

My brother, Tom, enlisted in the Mississippi College Rifles. He was only fifteen years old and my mother had his body servant to go along with him. She said it reminded her of a baby and its nurse. He remained in active duty during the entire war. My father was one who contributed toward financing the Mississippi College.

In 1861, military companies were being organized and the students of the University of Mississippi and of Mississippi College formed themselves into the University Grays and the Mississippi College Rifles, respectively, and were the first to enter the conflict. Captain William Ratcliff, of Raymond, Mississippi, was the captain of brother Tom’s company, and I knew many of the personnel. They were my friends and my friends’ friends also.

The Federal Army went from Jackson to Vicksburg and back again all the time. Teneral [Ulysses S.] Grant was with them. There were some terrible raids every time. Mother always sent for sister Lucy and me to be with her. Clinton was six miles away. At first we drove in our carriage and had fine horses, but later, after the Yankees took them, my mother had to send the best she could for us to come home. For instance, my little brother and a Darkey would come with a wobbly old horse and fairly good mule. I would choose the mule and back home in this style we would go, much to the merriment of the other girls who were left.

During one of these raids, my sister Lucy, who was older than I and an ardent Rebel, defiantly waved a Confederate flag and sang “The Bonnie Blue Flag.” It surely did make those old Yankees mad, and one of the officers warned mother to “get that little spitfire away before she was arrested and sent up north to prison.” So, the following night, sister Lucy and one younger brother, with a faithful colored man, were sent as far as South Carolina to stay with relatives. This left my brother Oliver, myself, mother and grandmother alone on that plantation during the rest of the war.

It happened once that mother had driven somewhere in her carriage and the Yankees came sooner than we expected. I was there with my grandmother, Mrs. Don Carlos Barrett [Lucy Walton Barrett]. We looked out into the front yard and saw a whole cavalry squadron riding right into the beautiful flower bed of my mother’s, and the horses [were] trampling down the flowers. I was shocked! The captain had ridden up to the front gallery. I went out and told him how sorry mother would be to have her flowers ruined and asked him to spare them. He immediately gave orders and the soldiers quickly rode away and back onto the driveways. Then the captain talked to me for a little while. He was very gentlemanly. Finally he asked me for something to read. I gave him a Bible. The company rode away, and it did not seem more than ten minutes had passed before the entire yard and a thirty-acre lawn in front were filled with the blue uniforms of the Yankee soldiers! Everywhere you looked there they were. You could see them everywhere. Of course, the yard was ruined.

In the meantime, my mother had returned and, oh, such a sight as greeted her eyes! She had left riding in her carriage. She returned walking. The Yankees had taken her carriage away from her, and a little Negro girl, frightened half to death, was clinging to her skirts. This child’s mother had gone to the Yankees.

One would have to witness a raid before a just conception could be formed. Such destruction, such ruin. Houses were burning in every direction, done by an army of thousands of men, and done so quickly! They even drew all the water out of the wells and cisterns, and cut the ponds and drained them. Some families hid their valuables at the bottom of their cisterns, but faithful old servants, by a little Yankee persuasion, would tell on their masters. So the valuables were taken. And way back in 1870, after dusk once in a while, a carriage and horses driven by

strangers were seen lurking in the woods. Then the next day, upon passing through the woods, a person often found a deep hole excavated. The report was that some northern Yankee soldier had returned to get the loot he had stolen from a southern family, and had hidden until he could sneak back and dig it up after dark. This happened very frequently.

After a raid, a deep silence pervaded over everything. Not a bird, no life of any kind, only silence. It was dismal. The raid passed on to Vicksburg, and late one evening a screech owl alighted on the front door blinds and gave its dismal scream. We were dreadfully frightened, but mother said, "Don't drive it away. It is better than no life at all."

Several days after this raid, we found the handsome and expensive family portraits down by the woods. The pictures had been removed from the frames and were rolled up. They were damaged and the frames were ruined. The Yankees carried off large quantities of our silverware and jewelry, also elegant silk dresses and expensive lace shawls and everything they found in women's wearing apparel.

During a raid, the awful confusion can better be described thus: Every room, every hall, every gallery, outhouse and yard were filled with Union soldiers at the same time. They robbed and looted and left things bare and desolate. Once, mother and I were in her room when a Minnieball whizzed through a window pane and shot into the wall just above the clock on the mantelpiece.

Once, during a raid, a Yankee was carrying off my favorite doll.¹ I ran after him and cried for it. He laughed and handed it to me saying, "Here, take your young one," and I carried it in my arms all the rest of the day.

There was much skirmishing during these raids. Captain Will Montgomery figured in these [raids] on our plantation. We were in constant expectation. One day, when the dinner bell began to ring, "clang-a-lang, clang-a-lang," Mother and I walked down the hall to the dining room door where we saw the Yankees eating the precious food we had prepared for our own boys.² We had expected our boys to come first. Mother looked at them and she quietly spoke, "Gentlemen, I cooked that food and I know you were looking. If any of you die suddenly, I want you to remember that I warned you, and that you were not invited to dinner." Quite a few left immediately and went out. The dinner did not turn out to be such a hilarious success as [the Yankees] planned.

Long before the surrender of Vicksburg, the Federal army was in Tennessee. They had already captured Memphis, but nobody in our community knew about it [yet]. News travelled slowly in those days. There was New Orleans in the hands of the Yankees, and Natches was captured, and they were after Vicksburg, the hardest one to get.

One afternoon, some member of our family walked into a back bedroom. A fire of heavy logs had been build in the morning and had burned out. Only ashes were left. Nobody had poked the fire as no one had been in there. Outlined in the gray ashes on the log were streaks of white ashes spelling "Memphis"! We called everybody to see the phenomenon! Very soon after that a message arrived telling of the fall of Memphis.

Long after our yard and flowers had been destroyed and the house had been ransacked several times, I had become so accustomed to the rumble of cannon, frequent plundering of Union soldiers and general disorder, that I would even resume playing "Jacks." I was an expert. I used five marbles on my hands. When my mother was disturbed and worried, she would walk around crying, and I felt so sorry for her and said. "Oh Mama, please don't cry." But even then I never did miss a throw nor a marble. It was a child's game and my mother was glad then that I did not take things as seriously as they were.

There was a sort of a runic rhyme the Darkies used to sing meaninglessly. And long since I have heard college professors try to parse it. This is the way it runs:

*Snakey baked a boecake, and set the frog to mind it.
Froggie went to nodding, and a lizard came and stole it.
Oh, bring bacvk my boecake, you long-tailed Nannie.*

The year 1862 made Mississippi the battleground. New Orleans and Natches were in the possession of the Union, and there was a drive to capture Vicksburg. General Van Dorn and General Sterling Price were in northern Mississippi, and between Jackson and Vicksburg, General Joseph E. Johnson, General Pemberton, Withers Regiment of Artillery and Brig. General Samuel J. Gholson passed our way. Then there were always the Mississippi College Rigles and the University Grays close by.

There was one most desperate raid, during which a battle was fought that lasted two days. Two of my girlfriends were visiting me, one being my cousin Jennie Walton, the other Mollie Brock, my dear friend and schoolmate. Mollie's brother, Glover, was in the army, fighting in the battle. The first day we could stand on our back gallery and see the enemy on one side of the Jackson and Clinton Road, and our forces on the other. It was the month of July.¹ One minute there would be Yankees in our yard, and the next minute the Confederates, and the next both at the same time.

Mollie Brock's brother rode up to see how we were getting along. We gave him a drink of water and, while he was sitting on his horse, a company of Yankees came into the yard. He had to surrender or run, and he chose the latter. The last we saw of him he was leaning far over the side of his horse and going on a run, the Yankees riding close behind him, firing. His sister and I were greatly distressed and feared for his safety and wept bitterly.²

In a little while, we saw one of our soldiers taken prisoner. Some Yankees rode in and were talking to us when one of our men came into the yard. The Union soldiers immediately concealed themselves behind an office. We tried by signals to make our soldier understand the situation, but the Yankees, by unmistakable signs, gave us to understand clearly that if our soldier left, they would shoot him. We quieted down. They raised their guns on the Confederate and called, "Halt!" and made him hold up both hands while they disarmed him. All of us went out in the yard to tell him goodbye. He was a jovial, lighthearted young man and took it cheerfully, saying as he rode away, "Don't worry about me, I will give them the dodge and be back here for supper tonight." As they rode away, we heard him say, "Yank, I'll swap shoes with you." He did not eat supper with us that night, but the next night he did.

General Grant, the Bulldog of Vicksburg, moved in and established his headquarters right in our parlor. He stayed there two weeks. He took everything to eat from us, then issued us rations! After General Grant left, another [Yankee] soldier came and took everything to eat. My grandmother just could not drink the substitute for coffee and asked for a small amount of real coffee, and if the soldier would leave some. He said he had strict orders to take everything, but if he had his way, that he would leave it. It is true that enough rations for three days were left [for us]. That same soldier came back and handed my grandmother a bag of the best and purest coffee she ever drank. Grant's army drilled while he stayed there. My, but the whole face of the earth was covered with blue [Union] soldiers!

Times were bad. The next day, about five o'clock, a young Yankee soldier was lain under a sheet to die out in the front yard, and somehow, I accidently found him there. He was mortally wounded and when he saw me, he beckoned to me to come closer so he could tell me something. He asked me to write to his sweetheart to whom he was engaged. I wrote just exactly as he dictated, saying he loved her to the last, and wanted her to be true and meet him in the Great Beyond. He sent her a plain gold ring from his finger and a lock of his hair. I put all these in the letter while tears were streaming down my cheeks. We did everything possible for this young man, but very soon he died. I was anxious to get a reply from this letter and asked the young lady to please answer if she received it, and sure enough, in about sic months, I received a reply. She wrote a sad letter and seemed bery grateful for what I had done.

That night we served supper until two o'clock to a large number of our soldiers. It was after twelve o'clock when the jovial soldier came back. He had escaped!

About daylight the next morning, the battle began again.³ Being now between the lines, we had to leave our house and the only place of safety was a gully about four-hundred yards away. Brother Tom went with us. One of our [Confederate] cannon was stationed at a corner of the front yard. When we passed out the gate, I noticed somebody was getting ready to fire it. I wanted to see how it was done, so I purposely walked slowly, looking back over my shoulder, watching that cannon. I saw it fired! At that moment, Brother Tom, who had missed me from the rest, was coming after me. He grabbed me by the arm violently and led me almost in a run to where the others were. He did not call me "Sweet Sister" either, but he did say, "Come on here, you little fool, you! Come on up there with your mother and stay with her!"

While passing through the lines, we were in as much danger as the soldiers. Our refuge in the gully was shaded by a broad-spreading oak tree. One of my brother's friends was badly wounded. They carried him down and laid him under the tree. Brother Tom was going through our yard to the house for a mattress on which to lay his friend when his body servant, old Uncle Jerry, called [a warning] loudly to him. The next day, Uncle Jerry gave my brother a rifle, saying, "Marse Tom, a Yankee had dis gun levelled on you, and one of our men shot him. Dat was all dat saved your life."

All day down in that gully we had nothing to eat, only water to drink, and we thought little of it. We could see the cannonballs flit overhead like birds, sometimes they tore through the tree. Minnieballs snipped off leaves and

twigs from the tree. There was a feeling of awe pervading everywhere and everything. About six o'clock in the afternoon, the armies moved further toward Clinton, so we came back to the house.

So many buildings were burned, and there was no provision for a hospital in Jackson. Sherman had burned so many houses that the town was called the "Town of Chimneys." It became necessary to use our house, with large and beautiful rooms and the offices in the yard, for the wounded. We cared for over two hundred until a place was prepared in Jackson. General Gholson, who was in command of our forces, was severely wounded, and sometimes my mother would let me carry the general his meals. Of course, we made bandages and helped in every way that we could. The Federal officers were there, and I am thankful to say that they were treated just the same as our own people. And the Yankees were so profuse in their thanks when they were being taken off to Jackson.

During the war, there was a faithful family of Negroes, a man and his wife and several children, who stayed in our yard and worked for my mother. The wife cooked for us and the girl was the housemaid. After the soldiers were moved to the hospital prepared for them in Jackson, we walked over the battlefield. Some of the dead were scarcely covered, with an arm or leg exposed, and some with their heads uncovered. The weather was warm and the bones and skulls and teeth were exposed. It was a gruesome sight! My mother had the Negro man go over the battlefield and cover them.

Mollie Brock and I were walking around the yard and found two dead men under a blanket. Mother had them buried. After the battle, one of the cannons of Withers Light Artillery was named "The Cornelia Barrett" in honor of the writer of this. I made a beautiful silk Confederate flag and presented it to the officer in charge, Captain William Ratliff. And the march music "Lorena" was the tune.

Of course, I was not acquainted with the soldier who fired the cannon that day, but subsequently I met him, Buxton Townes Ligon, and he slept on the front porch that night, along with my brother, and their horses were hitched close by, ready for use. He and brother Thomas were members of the First Mississippi Light Artillery. After the war, Buxton and I were married. We lived right there on that same plantation where we were married and raised a family of eight children.

Several years after the war, Emma, a colored girl who belonged to Dr. Walter Hillman, was a born musician. She was allowed to use the piano and she played [composed] a military march, "Lorena," with beautiful variations. One day, old Uncle Jerry heard her playing "Lorena" and tiptoed down the hall, peeped in and, seeing a colored girl playing on the piano, rubbed his hands together and exclaimed, "I'm gwine to larn betts how to do dat!"

Late one evening after a raid, my mother received a message from our neighbor, Col. H.O. Dixon,¹ that he and his wife were under arrest at Grant's headquarters, and for her to come at once. She had to walk, and she found them standing by the campfire. It was winter and very cold. When the Yankees came into their house, Mrs. Dixon sat at the piano and played "The Bonnie Blue Flag."² It was too much! They set fire to their house and burned it up. And they got so angered that they threw all the cats and dogs into the fire and hammered her piano all to pieces.

General Grant had arrested them and was going to send the old couple at once up North to prison. Mother asked him not to take them. She pointed out to him that Colonel Dixon was a veteran of the Mexican War and it would be a shame to so humiliate him and to expose him to such danger and hardship, and that his wife was too old and frail. At first General Grant was abrupt and turned his back to her refusing to listen, and started to walk back to his tent. But my mother caught him by his coattail and refused to let go unless he agreed to listen and let her take the couple home with her. It was late and the general gave in. He even sent a guard to escort them home and to stay all night to protect us.

My grandmother, Mrs. Don Carlos Barrett, concealed about five thousand dollars in her belt that she wore all the time. She always took an evening nap, and one evening when she awoke, the belt and the money were gone!

A Union soldier was getting ready to shoot an old overworked and broken down horse about ready to die. When Uncle Jerry insisted that the horse be given to him, the soldier gave the Darkey the horse. Uncle Jerry fed and cared for the horse until he became fat and well and turned out to be most beautiful. The old Darkey named him "Happen-Well-The-Lord-Provides-For-The-Needy," and called him "Happen-Well" for short.

At school in Clinton, we girls organized a military company. We were well-drilled and kept perfect step. From that day to this, I always like to keep step when I am walking with anyone.

Shortly before the end of the war, when General Robert E. Lee was having so much trouble in Virginia, and the Confederacy was tottering, my mother, seeking to help it, invested \$80,000 in gold and Confederate money and bonds. Did it help?

There was a Yankee captain with a crowd of soldiers, thronging our house during a raid in the forenoon. They passed on to Jackson, and that same evening returned on their way to Vicksburg. Late in the evening, Captain Lloyd, for that was his name, rode up, dismounted and hitched his horse by the steps. He told mother he had come to protect us in case any stragglers should pass, as they were the worst elements of the army. It was a cold day in January, and mother and I were making a fire. He finished it for us. He was exceedingly nice and pleasant.

It was not long before three drunken soldiers came up the steps, cursing and very boisterous. The captain ordered them away and they refused to go. He told them he had orders from General Grant to protect that family, and he had to obey orders. They behaved very ugly and used awfully profane language. Captain Lloyd drew two army pistols on them and made them leave. He said there was no telling what those drunken men might have done had he not been there. My mother was so thankful and grateful to him. That scene scared me worse than anything that happened during the entire war.

The captain told Mama he really had no orders to protect her family, but had come of his own accord. After the war, Captain Lloyd went to San Francisco to live. He wrote many letters to me telling of what he was doing and of plans he was making. I received letters from Kansas and St. Louis. The last letter he addressed¹ me and my answer was to be sent to San Francisco in care of the Oriental Hotel. But I was too patriotic to fall in love with a "Yankee," so I wrote him as nice a letter as I could muster up. He had put his picture in the letter and I have kept it to this day.

Supporting Documents

From "The Great American Conflict," by Horace Greeley:

Among the captures by General Grant's army, during his glorious Mississippi campaign of 1863, were several boxes of letters and private papers of Jefferson Davis, found in an outhouse on a plantation between Jackson and Vicksburg. Several of these letters were given to the public by their captors, many bearing the signature of northern men of note, who never denied their authenticity. These letters throw a clear light on the state of Southern opinion which induced the Succession movement, 1860-1861, and are therefore essential contributions to the history of that period.

NOTE: Greeley may have been referring to the Barrett plantation. My mother's memoirs, while reminiscences of a child, are substantiated by historical data which can be found in Dunbar Rowland's "Mississippi, the Heart of the South," and in Lowery and McCardle's "History of Mississippi." [Kate Ligon McGarvey]

~ ~ ~

From "Mississippi Official & Statistical Register - Military History of Mississippi," referring to the battle between Jackson and Clinton [when the Barrett family hid in the gully]:

Major J.L. Wofford, field officer, Artillery Cavalry Corps, commanded by Maj. Gen. Stephen Dilly Lee; Company A, Capt. William T. Ratliff, commanding. As it retreated from Jackson toward Clinton, this company was assigned to Loring's Division, Gen. Polk's army. Date July 6, 1864. The first attack was made in the evening of July 6 at the Barrett Plantation west of Jackson. They used 20-pound Blakely guns. It was reported that after a vigorous skirmish under a heavy fire of shot and shell, they passed the night in line of battle, made a demonstration of attack next morning and were for three hours under a galling fire until the trains passed, when they fell back under a withering fire, his ranks torn by shell, and again submerged to shelling, some shots tearing fearfully into our ranks as they took up the march as rear guards. The casualties including the repulse of Gen. Gholson's charge on the 7th were 19 killed, 99 wounded. Ratliff's Battery had 109 present and four guns. Gen. Maury wrote Gen. Bragg, "Please send back my heavy artillery, the Louisiana Artillery and the First Mississippi Light Artillery."

~ ~ ~

From the "Vicksburg Evening Post," Wednesday, June 4, 1913:

Ratliff Battery Annual Reunion - Clarion-Ledger, June 4:

JACKSON, MISSISSIPPI -- Members of Ratliff's Battery held their annual reunion in this city yesterday, the attendance being smaller than usual, because of the inroads made upon the ranks of the veterans by Father Time, seven having died since the last reunion, namely: W.A. Whiting, Milton Ewing, W.A. McPhail, W.L. Head, J.T. Casey, A.W. Hendricks and Charles C Petrie.

In calling the meeting to order, Commander W.T. Ratliff said, "In the mercies of a kind providence some of us have been permitted to meet in another annual reunion, though seven of us have passed over the river since our last anniversary.

He said that Company A, now known as Ratliff's Battery, was one of ten companies constituting Withers Regiment of Artillery, the largest organization of its kind in the war, Ratliff's alone having 330 men. He told of its services at Champion Hill, Big Black [River], Vicksburg and other places, saying that it had not only made a reputation during the war, but since the secession of hostilities, that returning home, its members had resumed their former businesses, adopting themselves to the changed condition, the one purpose being to rebuild the section of country that had been destroyed during the dark days of the war; that for years they submitted to Negro domination, but when they could no longer endure the ills and outrages practiced during the days of reconstruction, they with other Mississippians assisted in overthrowing the rule and reign of Adelbert Ames, who was the Carpetbag governor of Mississippi, by force of federal bayonets.

Dr. Alfred Franklin Smith invoked the Divine blessing in his most fervent and eloquent manner, moving the veterans by his sincere prayer and earnest appeal, asking divine guidance upon them during their remaining years.

The secretary, Mrs. Mary Andrews Croom, called the roll of members showing the following present: Captain W.T. Ratliff, Lieutenant Frank Johnson, Lieutenant Sam Chambers, Privates N.W. Bankstone, T.H.W. Barrett, John G. Cashman, H.B. Cagee, Ben F. Chambers, Thomas Helfm James C. Lester, R.H. Mateer, J.T. McAlpin, A.M. McCallum

Honorary members: W.B. Ratliff, George B. Power, Bourbon Shotwell, R.H. Henry, Jas Fuller, Percy Clifton, Bruce Banks, T.W. McAlpin, Ansart Lancaster, Mrs. Bourbon Shotwell, Mrs. Mary Andrews Croom, secretary.

Absent members; J.R. Moore, Texas; W.T. Moore, Texas; A.W. Hendricks; Capt. S.J. Ridley; J.H. Goodlow, Flora, Mississippi; J.C. McMillan; Wash J. Smith; J.W. Harris; J.D. Roach; R.F. M'Ginty.

Mrs. Cornelia Barrett Ligon, widow of Buxton Townes Ligon, and Mrs. Laura Shotwell, were elected as honorary members.

Capt. Frank Johnson was called upon to talk, saying that though not expecting to speak, that what he said would come right straight from his heart; that he knew of no greater happiness or higher pleasure enjoyed in life than to meet his old comrades in arms on the third of June each year; that he was happy to clasp hands with the boys who had worn the gray, fought on short rations and wore poor clothes. He paid high compliment to the Confederate soldiers, saying that history recorded no greater no braver men than those who marched under the Stars and Bars.

Capt. J.G. Cashman told of the Mississippi Commission, which had erected one of the most beautiful monuments in the national park at Vicksburg and which challenged the admiration of all passersby. Capt. Cashman, referring to the members growing old, read this poem:

*There comes a time when we grow old
And like a sunset, down the sea,
Slopes gradual, and the night wind cold,
Comes whispering sad and chillingly:
And locks are gray ans winter's day
And eyes of saddest hue behold
The leaves all dreary, drift away,*

*And lips of coral say,
There comes a time when we grow old.*

Capt. Frank Johnson gave a sketch of the battle at Champion Hill and the movements of the Federal and the Confederate troops, and commanders prior to the occupancy of Vicksburg. In his opinion that the Battle of Champion Hill (one of the bloodiest of the Civil War, considering the number of men engaged in it) should not have been fought. Mr. Cashman told about Gen. Stephen D. Lee, who said he had received information that Grant intended to cross the Mississippi River, and he urged Gen. Pemberton to send a large force to defeat Grant. The request was not heeded. If Lee's request had been heeded, the battle would not have been fought. After a social reunion, the members repaired to a cafe where they were given an excellent dinner. which was seasoned with wit and reminiscences and brilliant repartee.

NOTE: Because Pemberton surrendered on July 4, Vicksburg has never had a "glorious 4th." Gen. Joseph E. Johnston, with a large company, was on his way a few miles out of Vicksburg to help Pemberton, but not aware of it, Pemberton surrendered. [Kate Ligon McGarvey]

~ ~ ~

References: *Gammel's Laws of Texas From 1822 to 1838; The Great Conflict*, by Horace Greeley; *History of Mississippi*, by Lowry and McCardle, p. 109; *Mississippi, the Heart of the South*, by Dunbar Rowland; *Mississippi Official and Statistical Registry - Military History of Mississippi*; *Texas One Hundred Years Ago (1836-1936)*, by Clarence Warton (quotes from this publication appeared in the *Houston Chronicle*, Oct. 22, 1936).

~ ~ ~

Deeds Involving Ligon & Other Ancestors

Henrico County was one of the eight original counties set up in 1634. From it were derived Goochland,(1728) and Cheserfield (1749). Goodchland was the parent county of Albemarle (1744) and Cumberland (1749). From Albemarle came Amberst (1741) and from Amberst in 1808 came Nelson. Buckingham came for Albemarle in 1761, and from this came Appomttox in 1845. Fluvanna came from Albemarle in 1777. And Powhatan from Cumberland the same year. The county was divided into parishes of the Church of England. Henrico Parish was formed in 1611. Varina Parish was a name used synonomously with Henrico, especially when the principal church was a Varina during the period 1660-1720. Bristol Parish formed in 1641 was on both sides of the Appomatox River, being in southern Charles City County. In 1735 Dale Parish was formed from that part of Bristol Parish North of the Appomttox and that par of Henrico Parish south of the James, and east of King William Parish. King William Parish was formed in 1705 from the southwestern part of Henirco Parish.

Deed #4:

Richard LIGON of Bristol Parish, Henrico County, is indebted to William LIGON of Henrico Parish, Henrico County, and bound for \$200 1 Nov 1707. The condition is that there is a parcel of land on north side of James River, between plantation called "Curles" belonging to Col. William Randolph, and plantation of John Woodson where he lives, containing 200 acres, left to **Mary Ligon** by her father **Capt. Thomas Harris**, dec'd, . There have lately been several suits concerning right to said land, between above **Richard Ligon** and **Thomas Ligon**, son and heir of **William Ligon**, elder brother of said **Richard**. On death of said **Thomas Ligon**, the right of above

William Ligon, dec'd, descended to above named **William Ligon**. **William Ligon** and **Richard Ligon** have agreed to divide the land equally between said **William Ligon** and **Matthew Ligon**, son of above **Richard**. the lower half to **William** and upper to **Matthew**. Wit: John Pleasants, Joseph Pleasants

Recorded 1 Nov 1706.

Deed #5

Richard LIGON of Bristol Parish, Henrico County., for 5 shillings, to **William LIGON** of Henrico Parish, Henrico County, 100 acres on north side of James River, adjoining the "Curles" plantation, bounded Curles, John Woodson, the land having lately been in tenure of several tenants placed there by **Mrs. Mary LIGON**, dec'd, to whom said land did belong, the whole property being 200 acres. Dated 1 Nov 1706 Wit: John Pleasants, Joseph Pleasants.

Recorded 1 Nov 1706.

Deed #6

Bond of **William LIGON** of Henrico Parish, Henrico County, to **Matthew LIGON**, son of **Richard Ligon** of Bristol Parish, same county, 1 Nov 1706, the above **William Ligon is brother to Thomas Ligon**, dec'd, and mutually agrees to divide the 200 acres in above deeds with **Matthew Ligon, son of Richard**. Wit: John Pleasants, Joseph Pleasants

Recorded 1 Nov 1706.

Deed #7

William LIGON to Matthew LIGON, son of Richard Ligon, 100 acres on north side of James River, adjoining John Woodson, the river, and the Curles plantation of William Randolph. 1 Nov 1706 Wit: John Pleasants, Joseph Pleasants

Recorded 1 Nov 1706.

Deed #9

John PERRIN of Varina Parish, Henrico County, for 30 lbs, to John FORREST of same, planter, 50 acres, being part of plantation known as "Long Swamp; devised to my brother Richard PERRIN, late departed, by will of Richard PIERCE, sometime of said county, and to me descended by my brother, bounded by **John Stewart**, James River, and Samuel Goode. Dated 2 Dec 1706. Wit: Leonard Ballow, C. Evans

Recorded 2 Dec 1706.

Deed #11

Thomas CARDWELL of County and Parish of Henrico, plasterer, for love and affection to my daughter, Mary, now wife of James FRANKLIN, of same parish and county, planter, 50 acres, part of tract where I dwell in above parish, on north side of James River on south side of Gillys Creek; bounded by Thomas Robertson, after death of above James and Mary, land to go to my granddaughter, their eldest daughter Ann, and her male issue. Dated 1 Feb 1706 Wit: **Richard Ligon**, Joseph Royall, Jr.

Recorded 1 Feb 1706.

Deed #20

Charles EVANS of Charles City County, planter, for 20 shillings and 200 lbs. tobacco, to John PERRIN of Henrico County, son of Ann PERRIN, 140 acres, bounded as is patent to Thomas PERRIN 20 OCT 1688. Wit: Thomas Howlet, **Martha Ligon**

Recorded 1 Apr 1707.

Deed #21

Charles EVANS of Charles City County, for 800 lbs tobacco, to Robert HANDCOCK, Sr., of Henrico County., boatwright, 1301 acres on south side of James River, bounded by second bottom below Mount My Lady, adjoining Maj. Harris, a branch of Ashen Swamp, Reddy Branch of the Red Waters, being land formerly granted to **Col. Thomas Ligon** and by him lapsed, and since granted to said Charles Evans. Dated 1 Apr 1707. Wit: Samuel Newman, Thomas Harwood

Recorded 2 Apr 1707.

Deed #26

17 Mar 1707 **Richard LIGON, Surveyor of Henrico County**, to John CURTIS, planter, of same. Capt. John Worsham and Francis Patram, by deed 1 Jun 1703, sold **Richard Ligon** 303 acres on main fork of Proctors Creek, and is southern part of 924 acres granted to said Worsham and Patram 24 Oct 1702. **Ligon** for 12 lbs sells 303 acres to said Curtis. Wit: Simon Jeffreys, Robert Hancocke

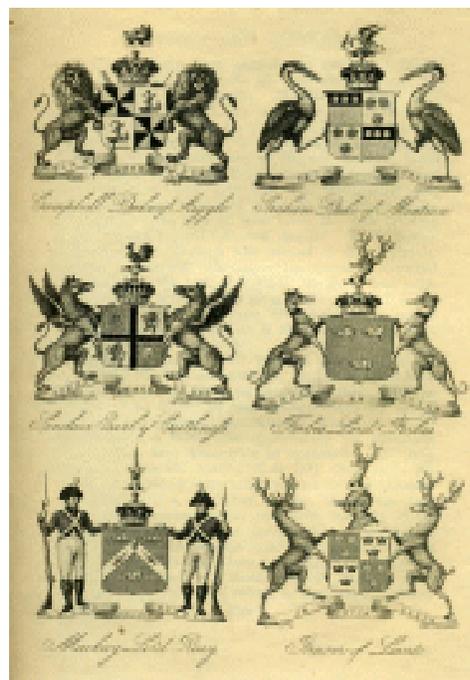
Recorded 2 Jun 1707.

Mary, wife of Ligon, relinquishes dower.

~ ~ ~

Appendix D

Scottish Clan Connections

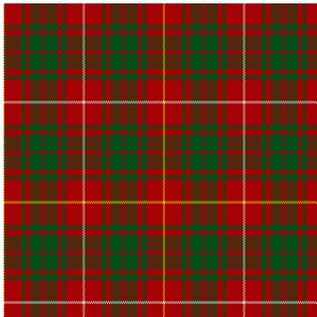


Clans & Armigerous Clans

The clans of the Standing Council of Scottish Chiefs are those officially recognised by the Lord Lyon, have the right to bear arms and have an acknowledged chief at their head.

Armigerous clans are also officially recognised by the Lord Lyon, have the right to bear arms, but do not currently have a chief. Their situation could change with the discovery and acceptance of a chiefly line and consequent granting of full Standing Council membership.

Member Clans of the Standing Council of Scottish Chiefs



Bruce

This name, now inextricably linked with the history of the Scottish nation through its association with the victor of Bannockburn, was ancient long before that momentous battle. It is believed that Adam de Brus built the castle at Brix between Cherbourg and Valognes in Normandy in the eleventh century, the ruins of which still remain.

Robert de Brus followed William the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy, to England in 1066, and although he is thought to have died soon after, his sons acquired great possessions in Surrey and Dorset.

Another Robert de Brus became a companion-in-arms to Prince David, afterwards David I of Scotland, and followed him when he went north to regain his kingdom in 1124.

De Brus could not support his king, and resigned his holdings in Annandale to his second son, Robert, to join the English forces gathering to resist the Scottish invasion. At the Battle of the Standard in 1138, Scottish forces were defeated and de Brus took prisoner his own son, now Lord of the lands of Annandale. He was ultimately returned to Scotland, and to demonstrate his determination to establish his branch of the family in Scotland, he abandoned his father's arms of a red lion on a silver field and assumed the now familiar red saltire. The arms borne by the present chief allude to both elements.

William the Lion confirmed to the son the grant of the lands of Annandale made to his father by David I. Robert, fourth Lord of Annandale, laid the foundation of the royal house of Bruce when he married Isobel, niece of William the Lion. She also brought extensive estates, both in Scotland and England. Princess Isobel's son, another Robert, known as "the competitor," was at the time named heir to the Scottish crown. However, his claim was challenged by the birth of a son to the daughter of his wife's elder sister, who was married to John Balliol. On the death of Alexander III in 1286 there commenced the contest for the succession to the Crown between Bruce and Balliol. The death of the child heir to the throne, Margaret, the Maid of Norway, in 1290, opened the competition for the succession once more, and to avoid a civil war, the rival claimants asked Edward I of England to act as arbiter.

In 1292 Edward found in favour of John Balliol. But Edward was not content to advise on the selection of a new monarch, and asserted a right of overlordship in Scottish affairs. Balliol attempted armed resistance but was decisively defeated at the Battle of Dunbar in 1296. His defeat left the leadership of Scotland in the hands either of the powerful Comyn family or of the Bruces. Robert the Bruce met with John Comyn on February 1306 in the Church of the Minorite Friars at Dumfries. Bruce stabbed his rival in the heart, and his companions dispatched the rest of the Comyn party. Within weeks Robert was crowned king and began a long, hard campaign to make his title a reality, culminating in the Battle of Bannockburn in 1314. He set about rebuilding the shattered nation and it is a considerable tribute to his leadership and abilities that he substantially achieved his objectives. In 1370 the first Stewart monarch succeeded to the throne by right of descent from Marjory, Bruce's daughter.

Thomas Bruce, who claimed close kinship with the royal house, organised with Robert the Steward (later Robert II) a rising in Kyle against the English in 1334. He received in recompense part of the Crown lands of Clackmannan.

Sir Edward Bruce was made commendator of Kinloss Abbey and appointed a judge in 1597. In 1601 he was appointed a Lord of Parliament with the title of “Lord Kinloss.” He accompanied James VI to claim his English throne in 1603 and was subsequently appointed to English judicial office as Master of the Rolls. In May 1608 he was granted a barony as Lord Bruce of Kinloss. His son, Thomas, was created first Earl of Elgin in 1633. The fourth Earl died without a male heir and the title passed to a descendant of Sir George Bruce of Carnock. This branch of the family had already been created Earls of Kincardine in 1647, and thus two titles were united.

The seventh Earl of Elgin was the famous diplomat who spent much of his fortune rescuing the marbles of the Parthenon (the Elgin marbles) which were at that time falling into utter ruin. His son was an eminent diplomat and Governor General of Canada. He led two important missions to the Emperor of China. He was Viceroy of India, a post also held by the ninth Earl of Elgin from 1894 to 1899. The present chief – the eleventh Earl of Elgin and fifteenth of Kincardine – is prominent in Scottish public affairs and is convenor of the Standing Council of Scottish Chiefs.



Campbell

Traditional genealogies place the origin of this clan among the ancient Britons of Strathclyde, but the first Campbell in written records is Gillespie, in 1263. Early grants of land to him and his relations were almost all in east-central Scotland, although the family’s first connection with Argyll appears to have come about some generations before, with the marriage of a Campbell to the dynastic heiress of the O’Duines, who brought with her the Lordship of Loch Awe. Through this connection the clan took its early name of Clan O’Duine, a name which was later supplanted by the style Clan Diarmid, from a fancied connection with a great hero from early Celtic mythology, Diarmid the Boar.

The original seat of the clan was either Innischonnel Castle on Loch Awe, which was in Campbell hands by the early fourteenth century, or Caisteal na Nigheann Ruaidhe on Loch Avich. The Campbell landholdings spread, with Craignich, Avaslotnisk, Melfort and Strachur, together with other lands of Cowal, being early additions, and the family’s power soon spread throughout Argyll.

At first the Campbells were under the domination of the Macdougall Lords of Lorne who killed the Campbell chief, Sir Cailen Mor Campbell, in 1296. (All subsequent Campbell chiefs have taken as their Gaelic patronymic, “MacCaillein Mor”).

However, this situation was reversed in the time of his son, Sir Neil, a staunch ally and companion of Robert the Bruce, by whom he was rewarded with extensive grants of land forfeited by the Lords of Lorne and other enemies in Argyll. It was this that gave initial impetus to the rise to power of the Campbells in the west Highlands. The king also gave his sister in marriage to Sir Neil, who appears to have disposed of his existing wife for this better offer, a common practice at a time when noble marriages were primarily a means of forging alliances. This royal marriage resulted in a son, John, who was created Earl of Atholl. John was killed at the Battle of Halidon Hill in 1333, and with no heir to succeed, the title and lands passed out of Campbell hands. However, this close royal connection may have helped to ensure the emergence of the Loch Awe branch as the chiefly line of the Campbells.

The Macarthur Campbells of Strachur may well have been senior by primo geniture, but their chance of pre-eminence failed when a projected marriage with the MacRuari heiress to Garmoran was prevented by her family. The lands later fell into the hands of the expanding Clan Donald, but not before a charter had been made out to her intended husband, Arthur Campbell, a younger son of Strachur. This gave rise to the celebrated incident in 1427 when James I executed both John Macarthur, a descendant of the disappointed bridegroom, and the then

MacRuari chief in order to settle the quarrel over the right to Garmoran.

Throughout the fifteenth century the Campbells gave steady support to the Crown in an area where royal influence was under severe pressure, first from the rival Crown of Norway and then from the descendants of Somerled, former Lord of the Isles, with the eventual emergence of the Crown's most powerful rival in the Macdonald Lordship of the Isles. The Lordship of the Isles was broken by the Crown by the end of the fifteenth century, leaving the Campbells the main power in the area. Thereafter they continued to act as the chief instrument of central authority in the region. This long struggle for supremacy, and with it, the headship of the Gael, may be said to be the real cause for the ancient enmity between the Campbells and the Macdonalds.

In 1445, Sir Duncan Campbell of Loch Awe became Lord Campbell. In 1457 his grandson and heir, Colin, was created Earl of Argyll. He married one of the three daughters of the Stewart Lord of Lorne, and through a financial deal with his wife's uncle, he brought the Lordship of Lorne to the Campbells, with not only much land and the stronghold of Dunstaffnage, but the important dynastic significance of a title which represented the senior line of the descendants of Somerled; from then on the Campbell chiefs quartered the galley of the Isles in their Arms. His uncle, another Colin, also married another of the Stewart daughters and founded a line which was to rival that of Loch Awe in terms of power and importance – the Campbells of Glenorchy, later Earls of Breadalbane. The Earls of Breadalbane were to build themselves the palatial Taymouth Castle, at the east end of Loch Tay, which still stands to this day. It was said at one time that Breadalbane could ride for a hundred miles across his family's possessions which stretched from Perthshire to the Atlantic.

The Campbell family held other earldoms, in the north and south of the country. As Earls of Loudoun they held land in Ayrshire and spawned a host of lairdships there; and they gained the thanedom of Cawdor from the Calders as a result of the marriage of an infant Calder heiress to one of Argyll's sons, founding the great house of the Earls of Cawdor. However, internal rivalry for the chiefship led to a feud which threatened to split the clan. Campbell of Cawdor, a guardian of the young seventh Earl of Argyll, was murdered in 1592 during a conspiracy by some of the other guardians, which threatened the child's life and that of his brother. None of the principal conspirators was brought to justice, but the young earl survived a suspected poisoning attempt to become an able soldier and unite the clan. Campbell support for central government brought rewards. In 1607 Archibald, seventh Earl of Argyll, was granted former Macdonald lands in Kintyre, while in 1615 Campbell of Cawdor was allowed to purchase Islay and most of Jura which had previously belonged to the Macleans of Duart.

The civil war and the invasion of the Irish Macdonalds into Argyll in support of the great Montrose brought wholesale death and destruction, and at Inverlochy in 1645 the clan suffered the biggest single defeat in its history. Archibald, the eighth Earl, attempted to maintain a precarious balance between his espousal of the Covenant and his support for Charles II's attempts to win his father's throne. But it was a balance too fine to be maintained, and the earl was executed for treason after the Restoration. His son, the ninth Earl, was staunch in his loyalty to the Protestant religion and he, like his father, was executed, this time as a result of his support for the rebellion of Monmouth against the king.

The Revolution of 1688 once more restored the family fortunes, and in 1703 William of Orange created the tenth Earl, Duke of Argyll and Marquess of Lorne and Kintyre, with a string of lesser titles. The second Duke was one of the first officers of the British army to be promoted to the rank of field marshal; his military skills were said to be equal to, if not greater than, those of his renowned contemporary, Marlborough, and he became commander-in-chief of the British army. He was succeeded by his brother, the most influential man in Scotland and a proponent of the Treaty of Union of 1707.

The success of the Campbells owed much to a remarkable succession of chiefs, although they could not have achieved what they did without the support of their people. Throughout their history the chiefs managed to combine their role of Highland clan chiefs with a strong presence at court, which insured them a leading part in the affairs of Scotland, Great Britain and the Empire. In the days when allegiances were expressed by bonds of manrent, the chiefs of a dozen clans swore allegiance to Argyll, whose superiority as lord extended to the Outer Hebrides, and his clansmen possessed great swathes of Scotland both within and without the bounds of the Highlands. They were difficult neighbours and their success, and the ways in which they achieved it, brought them

many enemies, but no-one could gainsay those achievements. Shortly before 1745 the strength of Clan Campbell was put at a total of some five thousand men.

The rise of Empire opened up many other opportunities to serve the Crown, and no less than sixteen regiments of the British army were at one time or another raised by members of the clan. The Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, descended from Lochnell's 98th (later 91st) Highlanders still wear the Duke's boar's head as their cap badge and charge to the Campbell battle-cry, 'Cruachan'. The intense pride of the Campbells in their ancestry was illustrated when Queen Victoria's daughter, Princess Louise, became engaged to the Marquess of Lorne, the ninth Duke's heir, in a marriage which was sensational in its day. The news was apparently told to an old lady in Inveraray, who is said to have replied, "Ach weel, Her Majesty'll be a proud wumman the day, wat wi' her dochter gettin' mairrit on the son of MacCailein Mor."

Campbells have spread out across the globe and have prospered. Geographic features throughout the world are called after the family, and although there are now fewer Campbells still owning lands in the Highlands, the family still prospers there. No less than four new Campbell peerages have been created since the end of the Second World War to add to the fifteen Campbell families who have already been distinguished in this way. Much of the ancestral lands are still in family hands, including the Castles of Inveraray, Dunstaffnage and Cawdor. MacCailein Mor is often to be seen at great state ceremonies in his capacity as hereditary Great Master of the Royal Household. The Clan Campbell is now organised as a world-wide association with a permanent base at Inveraray Castle which is still the family home of the thirteenth Duke of Argyll and twenty-seventh chief of the clan.

The 12th Duke, Ian, rallied the clan in 1975 when Inveraray was badly damaged by fire. The restoration took nearly four years and cost in excess of £1.25 million. For the first year after the blaze the family lived in the basement as 600 tradesmen worked from old pictures to recreate the interior. He was the first Lord Lieutenant of Argyll and Bute and Deputy Grand Master Mason of Scotland. He died, suddenly, in April 2001 at the age of 63.



Drummond

One of the families residing on the edge of the Highlands, the Drummonds have always played a prominent part in Scottish affairs. The parish of Drymen lies to the west of Stirling and appears to have derived its name from the Gaelic, "dromainn," meaning a "ridge" or "high ground." The traditional legend narrates that the first nobleman to settle at Drymen was Hungarian, having accompanied Edgar the Aetheling and his two sisters to Scotland in 1067 on their flight from William the Conqueror. The royal fugitives were warmly received by Malcolm III, who married one of the royal sisters, Margaret, later to be made a saint.

The first chief appearing in written records was Malcolm Beg, Chamberlain of Lennox, who married Ada, the daughter of the Earl of Lennox and who died some time prior to 1260. Gilbert de Dromund of Dumbarton appears on the Ragman Roll of Scottish noblemen submitting to Edward I of England in 1296. Malcolm de Drummond also swore fealty to Edward at this time. Despite this, the Drummonds firmly supported the cause of Bruce and Scottish Independence, and after the Battle of Bannockburn the king bestowed upon them lands in Perthshire. It is supposed that the four-spiked pieces of iron called "caltrops," which form part of the heraldic emblems of the Drummonds, allude to Sir Malcolm's promotion of the use of these weapons, which were highly destructive of the English cavalry.



In 1357, Annabella Drummond married John, High Steward of Scotland, later Robert III, and she exercised considerable influence over her husband. Sir John

Drummond rose to great power during the reigns of James III and IV. He was created a peer with the title of 'Lord Drummond' in 1488, a title borne today by the present chief. In one famous incident he was confined in Blackness Castle for having struck the Lord Lyon, King of Arms, for allegedly slighting his grandson, the Red Earl of Angus, and was only released a year later. His son, David Drummond, also

fell foul of royal justice after a feud with another family resulted in his violation of the right of sanctuary. He did not escape with imprisonment, and instead paid with his life.

Around this time the Drummonds built a new castle at Concraig, and named it Drummond Castle. It is now the Scottish seat of the Earls of Ancaster, whose family name is Drummond-Willoughby. James, the fourth Lord Drummond, was created Earl of Perth in 1605.

The family were staunch supporters of the Stuart kings, both during their quarrels with Parliament and after the exile of James VII. The third Earl joined the Marquess of Montrose in August 1645 and was taken prisoner at Philiphaugh the following month. James, the fourth Earl, was appointed Lord High Chancellor of Scotland in June 1684. On the accession of James VII he openly declared himself a Catholic, and enjoyed high royal favour. He was one of the founder knights at the revival of the Order of the Thistle in 1687. When James abdicated, the Edinburgh mob plundered the earl's town house and he himself became a prisoner for nearly four years in Stirling

Castle. He was freed in 1693 and went to Rome. He was summoned to France by his king, who bestowed upon him the Order of the Garter and raised him to the rank of Duke of Perth. His brother, the Earl of Melfort, also one of the founder knights of the Order of the Thistle, was with the king during his campaign in Ireland in 1690. The brothers so impressed their French hosts that their duchesses were accorded the jealously guarded right to sit in the royal presence.

James Drummond, later the second Duke, was one of the first to join in the rising of 1715. He formed a daring plan to seize Edinburgh Castle and commanded Jacobite horse at the Battle of Sheriffmuir. He escaped to France and his estates were forfeited. The third Duke joined Bonnie Prince Charlie on his arrival at Perth in September 1745. He followed his prince into England and captured Carlisle. His brother, John, later arrived with troops sent to assist in the rising by the king of France. At the Battle of Culloden, the duke commanded the left flank, and after the defeat of the Jacobite forces he was forced to flee. His escape was a harrowing ordeal and he died on the passage to France in 1746. The estates and titles of the Drummonds were once again declared forfeit.

In 1853 George Drummond, Duc de Melfort, Comte de Lussan and Baron de Valrose in the peerage of France, was restored by Act of Parliament to the title of 'Earl of Perth', together with various subsidiary titles. The sixteenth Earl of Perth was the first secretary general of the League of Nations and his son was a Minister of State and a member of the Privy Council.



Dunbar

Patrick of Dunbar married Ada, natural daughter of William the Lion, around 1184 and was created justiciar of Lothian. Earl Patrick's daughter received as part of her dowry the lands of Home, establishing the line that was later to be created Earls of Home in the seventeenth century. Her brother, Patrick, went to the Crusades, and died in 1248 at the siege of Damietta in Egypt.

Patrick "Black Beard," Earl of Dunbar, was one of the competitors for the Crown of Scotland at Berwick in 1291 through his royal great-grandmother, Ada. His wife was a Comyn and held Dunbar Castle for Balliol, but was forced to surrender it in April 1296.



The tenth Earl, another Patrick, sheltered Edward II of England at Dunbar after his flight from the field of Bannockburn in 1314. Historians have suggested that if the king had been seized by Dunbar he might have been forced to make peace with Robert the Bruce, thereby preventing further years of bloodshed. Despite his apparent treachery, the earl made his peace with his cousin the king, and was present at the Parliament at Ayr in 1315 which settled the succession of the Scottish throne. He was appointed governor of Berwick, where he was besieged by Edward III. He surrendered to the English and the town was refortified and garrisoned by English troops. Dunbar renounced any allegiance to the English

king, as a result of which his castle was besieged by the Earl of Salisbury.

Command of the castle fell to Dunbar's wife, commonly called "Black Agnes," who performed her task with vigour. The English attacked the castle with all the technology of fourteenth-century siegecraft, and when they

brought up a machine which, from its shape was called “the sow,” she personally directed its destruction by rocks hurled from the castle walls. As the English fled for their lives she is said to have scoffed, “behold the litter of English pigs.” The siege lasted nineteen weeks and Salisbury eventually retired, leaving Black Agnes in possession of her husband’s fortress.

The tenth Earl was one of the most powerful nobles in Scotland, with vast estates. In 1388 he accompanied the Earl of Douglas into England and fought at the Battle of Otterburn. He had arranged a marriage for his daughter with the Duke of Rothesay, son of Robert III, but through the influence of the Douglasses the marriage did not take place. The earl was incensed by this slight to his family pride, and retired to his estates in England. He was eventually reconciled with the Douglasses and returned to Scotland in 1409.

George, the eleventh Earl, succeeded to his father’s title and vast estates in 1420, and was prominent in public affairs. His wealth, however, was to be his undoing: James I coveted the Dunbar estates and imprisoned the earl on trumped-up charges of treason, so the earldom and the estates were forfeited to the Crown. The last earl died in England in 1455.

The family had established a number of branches, including the Dunbars of Mochrum (to which house the present chief belongs), of Northfield, Hempriggs, Durn, and Both. It is a tribute to the distinction of this name that each of these five branches achieved the rank of baronet. Gavin Dunbar, Archbishop of Glasgow and Lord High Chancellor of Scotland in the reign of James V, was a younger son of Sir John Dunbar of Mochrum. He distinguished himself at the University of Glasgow and in 1514 became Dean of Moray. In 1524 he was appointed Archbishop of Glasgow. He weathered the first storms of the Reformation and although reckoned a good and learned man, was criticised for his participation in the persecution of Protestants instigated by Cardinal Beaton.

Sir James Dunbar of Mochrum was created a Baronet of Nova Scotia in March 1694 with a special royal honour of a grant of supporters “Imperially Crowned.” The second Baronet served in the Duke of Marlborough’s cavalry with great distinction. He was recognised as chief on the death of Ludovic Dunbar in 1744. Sir William Dunbar, ninth Baronet, was Registrar General from 1902 to 1909. The title of the present chief’s father was established only after a celebrated court case in 1990 first heard before the Lord Lyon, King of Arms, then appealed to the Supreme Court in Edinburgh, and finally concluded in the House of Lords in London.

Gordon



The Gordons are one of the great families of the north-east of Scotland, and their surname has many suggested meanings, although the family originally were almost certainly of Anglo–Norman descent. There is also a tale which makes the first of the family the saviour of a Scottish king, in this case from a wild boar. This is said to explain the boars’ heads which appear on the Gordon arms.

The first certain record of the name places the family in the Borders during the reigns of Malcolm IV and William the Lion. Richard de Gordon appears in numerous charters, and probably died around 1200. Sir Adam de Gordon was one of the wardens of the marches in 1300, and in 1305 was appointed one of the commissioners to negotiate with Edward I seeking settlement to the competition for the crown of Scotland. He became a staunch supporter of Robert the Bruce, and was one of the ambassadors sent to Rome to petition the pope to remove the excommunication which had been placed on Bruce after his murder of John Comyn. For his services the king granted to Gordon the lands of Strathbogie, which had been confiscated from the Earl of Atholl for treason.



The Castle of Strathbogie was to be renamed Huntly after a portion of the Gordon lands in Berwickshire. In 1436 Sir Alexander Gordon was created Lord Gordon, and his son was raised to the title of Earl of Huntly. The family became embroiled in the deadly battle for power between the king and the Douglasses. Huntly was for the king, but when he moved his forces south, the Earl of Moray,

kinsman and ally of the Douglasses, devastated the Gordon lands and burned Huntly Castle. The Gordons were recalled and soon defeated their enemies.

After the fall of the Douglases, the power of the Gordons grew unchallenged. Their control over their lands was almost regal, and the chiefs are to this day fondly referred to as “Cock o’ the North.” A grand new castle at Huntly rose from the ruins of the old, and it soon rivalled any of the great houses of the realm. In 1496 Huntly Castle hosted the marriage of the pretender, Perkin Warbeck, believed at the time to be one of the missing sons of Edward IV (the “princes in the tower”), to Lady Catherine Gordon. James IV honoured the couple with his presence, although he was a frequent visitor to Strathbogie in any event.

George, fourth Earl of Huntly, became Chancellor of Scotland in 1547 and was a close confidant of the regent, Mary of Guise, the mother of Mary, Queen of Scots. The Gordons paid scant attention to the Reformation, remaining firmly Catholic. However, they disagreed with the young queen; Huntly died at Corrichie, leading his men against the royal army, and his son, Sir John Gordon, was later beheaded before Queen Mary at Aberdeen. The Gordons eventually made peace with the Crown, and in 1599 the chief was created Marquess of Huntly. The

second Marquess was a fierce supporter of the royalist cause in the civil war, and his followers have passed into history as the Gordon Horse, which figured so prominently in the campaigns of the great Marquess of Montrose. Huntly’s pride was such that he found it impossible to co-operate with Montrose, and some historians have suggested that had he done so wholeheartedly, the whole course of the war in Scotland might have been very different. Huntly was captured in Strathdon in December 1647 and was taken to Edinburgh, where he languished until March 1649, when he was beheaded. Lord Louis Gordon was restored to the family estates and titles in 1651, and was raised to the highest rank of the peerage as Duke of Gordon in 1684.

The Gordons fought on both sides during the Jacobite risings of 1715 and 1745. The second Duke of Gordon followed the standard of the ‘Old Pretender’ at the Battle of Sheriffmuir in 1715. He later surrendered, but although he was imprisoned for a short period, no further proceedings were taken against him. The third Duke remained loyal to the Hanoverians when Prince Charles Edward Stuart reasserted his father’s claim in 1745, but his brother, Lord Louis Gordon, promptly raised a regiment of two battalions. After Culloden he escaped to France, where he died in 1754. George, fifth Duke of Gordon, was a general in the army and for a time governor of Edinburgh Castle. He died without issue, and the dukedom became extinct. The marquessate passed to a kinsman, from whom the present chief descends.

Another branch of the clan were created Earls of Aberdeen in 1682. The fourth Earl was a Prime Minister in the mid nineteenth century. This branch, too, were advanced to the dignity of Marquess, and established their seat at Haddo House near Aberdeen.



Graham

Despite a colourful tradition which asserts that Greme was a mighty Caledonian chief who broke the Antonine Wall driving the Roman legions out of Scotland, the likely origin of this family is Anglo-Norman; the Manor of Gregham, or Greyhome, is recorded in William the Conqueror’s Domesday Book. When David I came to Scotland to claim his throne, Graham was one of the knights who accompanied him. Sir William de Graham was present at the erection of the great Abbey of Holyrood and witnessed its foundation charter.



The first lands the family acquired in Scotland appear to have been around Dalkeith in Midlothian. Sir Nicholas de Graham attended the Parliament in 1290 where the Treaty of Brigham, for the marriage of the infant heir to the Scottish throne, Margaret, the Maid of Norway, to Prince Edward of England, was agreed. Their acceptance in Celtic Scotland was assured when they married into the princely family of Strathearn, and from Malise of Strathearn they acquired the lands around Auchterarder which were to become their principal seat.

Sir John de Graham was a companion-in-arms of Sir William Wallace, the great patriot. His bravery was legendary even in his own lifetime, and he was called “Graham with the bright sword.” He fell at the Battle of Falkirk in 1298, and his gravestone and effigy can still

be found in Falkirk Old Parish Church.

The family's landholdings and power grew throughout the centuries. They acquired the lands of Mugdock north of Glasgow, where they built a stout castle around 1370. Patrick Graham of Kincardine was created a peer in 1451 with the title, "Lord Graham." Two generations later they were created Earls of Montrose and in 1504 their hereditary lands of "Auld Montross" were erected into a free barony and earldom of Montrose. The first Earl fell at the fateful field of Flodden in 1513. By means of purchase and inheritance the Graham lands had become, by the late seventeenth century, among the richest in Scotland.

The name would have been remembered for the many great deeds of the family, but it passed into legend in the person of the fifth Earl and first Marquess of Montrose, James Graham, probably the most glamorous figure in Scottish history. A renowned scholar and poet, he was one of the leaders of the movement opposed to Charles I's attempt to introduce new practices of worship into the Scottish Church. Montrose signed the Covenant, but later decided not to take up arms against the king. He offered his services to the king, who gratefully accepted and created him captain general of the king's army in Scotland. This was a grand-sounding title, but the king's general was left to find his own army.

The Grahams rallied to their chief, and they were joined by a large force of Highlanders led by Alasdair Macdonald, "Colkitto." The campaign of 1644–45 is one of the most remarkable in Scottish military history. At one point, Montrose seemed poised not only to hold Scotland for the king, but to drive south to ward off the certain defeat faced in England. However, on 13 September 1645, Montrose was taken by surprise at Philiphaugh in the Borders by a substantial force of Covenant cavalry under General David Lesley. The captain general escaped to the north, but his forces were massacred after they surrendered, and the royalist cause in Scotland seemed mortally wounded. In May 1646, Montrose received orders from Charles to disband his army and leave the kingdom. Charles had by this time placed himself in the keeping of the Scottish Covenanting forces in England, setting in motion the series of events which led him to the scaffold at Whitehall.

Montrose arrived safely in Norway and thereafter travelled extensively on the Continent. His military prowess, coupled with his own personal wit and charm, guaranteed the warmth of his reception. In Germany he was raised to the rank of mareschal, and offered field command. The French similarly honoured him. He had done everything and more that could be expected of a loyal subject, but the glitter of royal courts and the power which was offered to him could not sway his belief that his duty and loyalty lay with his king. He was given commission by the newly proclaimed Charles II to recover Scotland. With the assistance of arms and supplies from Sweden and Denmark, Montrose landed in Orkney in March 1650. He reached the mainland but the anticipated rising of royalists did not materialise. At Invercharron in Ross-shire, the tiny royal army was totally defeated and Montrose forced to flee. He was betrayed, captured and transported to Edinburgh, where he was sentenced to death without the formality of a trial, and executed on 21 May 1650. After the Restoration, the Stuarts repaid their debt to the Grahams in some small measure by according the captain general's remains one of the grandest state funerals ever held in Scotland. The chiefs were raised to the highest rank of the peerage in 1707, when the fourth Marquess was created Duke of Montrose.



The third Duke of Montrose sat in Parliament, and was responsible for the Act which in 1782 repealed the prohibition on the wearing of Highland dress.

Hamilton

It is believed that this family descends from a Norman, Walter Fitz Gilbert of Hambledon, who appears in a charter to the Monastery of Paisley around 1294. In Old English Hamel Dun means bare hill and as a place name is found in Hampshire, Surrey and Dorset. His lands appear to have been in Renfrewshire, but for his belated support of Robert the Bruce he was granted lands in the Lothians and Lanarkshire including the lands of Cadzow, later to become Hamilton town.



Walter's son, David, fought for David II in 1346 at the Battle of Neville's Cross, where he was captured and held prisoner until a substantial ransom was paid.

James, first Lord Hamilton, married Princess Mary, daughter of James III, in 1474. The issue of this marriage were clearly in line of succession to the throne, and Princess Mary's son was created Earl of Arran. The family extended the simple Castle of Brodick on the island of Arran, and in the nineteenth century the chiefs developed it into a splendid stately home.

The second Earl of Arran was the heir to the throne of both James IV and Mary, Queen of Scots. He was made Regent of Scotland while the queen was a child and to secure his claim to the throne he proposed to marry his son to her. In the end the match did not take place, and Mary married the heir to the French throne. However,

Arran had figured prominently in the marriage negotiations with France and, as a reward, he was created Duke of Chatelherault in the French peerage in 1548. When Mary's marriage to the Dauphin of France ended with his death, the Hamilton hopes of a royal match were again rekindled. He was sent into exile for five years in 1561 when he openly opposed Mary's marriage to Lord Darnley, but on his return he tried to save the ill-fated queen, who stayed at Cadzow after her escape from Lochleven.

The fourth Earl of Arran and third Duke of Chatelherault became Chancellor of Scotland and keeper of both the strategic Castles of Edinburgh and Stirling. In 1599 he was advanced to the rank of Marquess. His brother, Claud, was created Lord Paisley in 1587, and later Lord Abercorn. This branch of the family also prospered, Abercorn being translated into an earldom and ultimately a dukedom in 1868. The Dukes of Abercorn now have their seat in Ulster in the splendid house of Baronscourt.

The third Marquess was a staunch supporter of Charles I, who rewarded him in 1643 with a Scottish dukedom, making Hamilton the premier peer of Scotland. Hamilton led an army into England after the Scots had handed Charles over to Parliament, but strategic errors and the superiority of the English army resulted in his defeat at Preston in 1648. He was beheaded at Whitehall in 1649 shortly before the king. His brother, the second Duke, was a brave but less than competent soldier who was killed at the Battle of Worcester in 1651.

The title passed to Anne, the daughter of the first Duke. A woman of great intellect and determination, she inherited the title and estates heavily burdened by debts, a situation made worse by a legal dispute with her kinsman, the Earl of Abercorn, who challenged her right to succeed. She had married William Douglas, Earl of Selkirk, and set out to re-establish the family seat, laying the foundations for the building of a great palace. Her son, the fourth Duke, must have inherited some of the fire and energy of his mother, as he met his death in a duel in London in 1712. The affair was something of a scandal, as the parties' seconds also joined in, and after Hamilton killed his opponent, Lord Mohun, one McCartney promptly killed the duke. The fifth and sixth Dukes extended the palace and built the splendid hunting lodge named Chatelherault, now part of a public park.

Alexander, the tenth Duke, completed the enlargement of Hamilton Palace and adorned it with spectacular works of art collected from all over the world. He was nicknamed "Il Magnifico" and lived in truly regal style. He



crowned his royal ambitions by marrying his son, William, to Princess Marie of Baden, a cousin of Napoleon III. The fourteenth Duke inherited his family's sense of adventure and in 1933 piloted the first aeroplane to fly over Everest. The fifteenth Duke is an engineer, a former RAF test pilot and an author. Hamilton Palace was demolished because of mining subsidence and the seat is now Lennoxlove, near Haddington.

Hanna

The Hannays hail from the ancient principedom of Galloway. The original spelling of the name appears to have been 'Ahannay', and although its origin is uncertain, it may derive from the Gaelic "O'Hannaigh" or "Ap Shenaigh." Other spellings



of the name include Hanna, Hannah, Hanney, Hannan.

Gilbert de Hannethe appears on the Ragman Roll among the Scottish Barons submitting to Edward I of England in 1296. This may be the same Gilbert who acquired the lands of Sorbie. The Hannays were suspicious of the ambitions of the Bruces, and supported the claim of John Balliol who, through his mother, Lady Devorgilla, was descended from the Celtic Princes of Galloway.

In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries they extended their influence over much of the surrounding countryside, building a tower on their lands at Sorbie around 1550. The tower was the seat of the chief family of this name until the seventeenth century, when it fell into disrepair after the family were outlawed. In 1965 the tower was presented to a clan trust, and a maintenance scheme was put in hand.

There were many distinguished scions of the chiefly house, including Patrick Hannay, the distinguished soldier and poet whose literature, once highly regarded, is now almost forgotten. The grandson of Donald Hannay of Sorbie, he entered the service of Queen Elizabeth of Bohemia, the daughter of James VI and sister of Charles I, who became his patron. In 1619, Hannay published two eulogies on the death of Queen Anne, wife of James VI, and on his own death many eulogies were published. The best of these expresses the high regard with which Patrick and his kin were held:

‘Hannay thy worth betrays well whence thou’rt sprung and that that honour’d name thou dost not wrong; As if from Sorbie’s stock no branch could sprout but should with ripening bear golden fruit. Thy Ancestors were ever worthy found else Galdus’ grave had grac’d no Hannay ground, Thy father’s father Donald well was knowne to the English by his sword, but thou art showne by pen (times changing) Hannays are active in acts of worth be’t peace or war. Go on in virtue, aftertimes will tell, none but a Hannay could have done so well.’ (Galdus was a resistance leader against the Romans.)

Also from the house of Sorbie came James Hannay, the Dean of St Giles’ in Edinburgh, who has passed into legend as the minister who attempted to read the new liturgy in St Giles’ in July 1637. It was at Dean Hannay’s head that Jenny Geddes flung her stool crying, “Thou false thief, dost thou say Mass at my lug?” A full scale riot ensued, which ultimately had to be suppressed by the town guard. In 1630, Sir Robert Hannay of Mochrum was created a Baronet of Nova Scotia.

Other branches descended from Sorbie include the Hannays of Grennan, Knock, Garrie and Kingsmuir. At the beginning of the seventeenth century the Hannays of Sorbie became locked in a deadly feud with the Murrays of Broughton, which ended in the Hannays’ being outlawed and ruined. The lands and tower of Sorbie were lost around 1640. One consequence of the family’s being outlawed was the emigration of large numbers of Hannays to Ulster, where the name is still found widely in Counties Antrim, Down and Armagh. The Hannays of Newry are reckoned to be the senior branch of the emigrant families.

In 1582, Alexander Hannay, a younger son of Sorbie, purchased the lands of Kirkdale in the Stewartry of Kirkcudbright. His son, John Hannay of Kirkdale, inherited the estate and established the line which is now recognised by the Lord Lyon as chief of the name. Alexander Hannay, a younger son of Kirkdale, was a professional soldier who served in India, where he rose to the rank of colonel. His eldest brother, Sir Samuel Hannay of Kirkdale, succeeded to the title and estates of his kinsman, Sir Robert Hannay of Mochrum, Baronet. The next baronet, Sir Samuel Hannay, entered the service of the Hapsburg Emperors, and prospered sufficiently to build for himself a grand mansion on his family lands. The house is said to have provided the inspiration for Sir Walter Scott’s novel, “Guy Mannering.” Sir Samuel died in 1841 and the baronetcy became dormant.

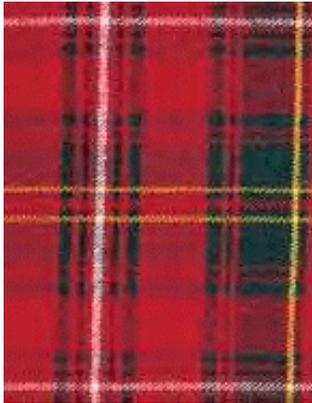
The estate of Kirkdale and the representation of the family passed to Sir Samuel’s sister, Mary, and on her death in 1850 to her nephew, William Rainsford Hannay. The present chief, David Hannay, is his descendant.



Hay

This family descend from a member of the de La Haye, powerful Norman princes who followed William the Conqueror to England in 1066. (William de La Haye, cup bearer to Malcolm IV, was claimed as ancestor by Sir William Hay of Errol when he was raised to the peerage as Earl of Errol in 1453.) The lands of Errol in Perthshire were confirmed to William de Haya by charter around 1172.

The fortunes of the family were secured when Sir Gilbert Hay became one of the faithful comrades-in-arms of Robert the Bruce, not only at the glory of Bannockburn, but sharing the hardships of the earlier campaigns. Gilbert was rewarded with the lands of Slains in Aberdeen-shire, but more importantly with the office of Lord High Constable of Scotland. Hay was first created constable in 1309 and then, by charter dated 12 November 1314, the title was made hereditary. This dignity, which is still enjoyed by the present chief, gives the holder precedence in Scotland before every other hereditary honour, saving only the royal family itself. The Lord High Constable was responsible for the personal safety of the monarch, and was sword bearer at coronations. He maintained a ceremonial royal guard, called the Durward of Partisans, and has a theoretical jurisdiction over persons indicted for riot or crimes of bloodshed near the royal person.



Sir Thomas Hay, seventh Baron of Erroll, brought royal blood into the family when he married Elizabeth, daughter of Robert II. The family were also descended from Celtic Kings, through the marriages of David de La Hay to Ethna, daughter of the Earl of Strathearn, and of Gilbert, third Baron of Erroll, to Idoine, daughter of the Earl of Buchan.

Another Sir Gilbert Hay fought for the cause of Joan of Arc and attended the coronation of Charles VII of France at Rheims. From this knight errant descend the Hays of Delgatie, whose castle near Turriff is now restored as the Clan Centre. Sir William Hay of Delgatie served with Montrose as chief of staff during his campaign on behalf of Charles I. On the defeat of the royalist party, he was captured and imprisoned, finally being executed in 1650. Delgatie, having shared the fate of his commander, was accorded a state funeral after the Restoration, and is buried in St Giles' in Edinburgh.

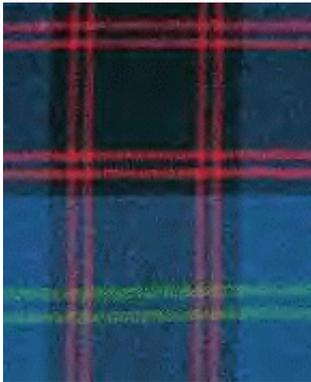
The Hays did not embrace the Reformation, but in consort with other Catholic nobles, including the Gordons and the Red Douglasses, negotiated with Philip II of Spain in the hope of bringing about an alliance. A campaign against the Protestant nobles, led by Argyll in 1594, ultimately led to James VI's declaring both Erroll and Huntly rebels, and they went into exile. Slains Castle was taken and blown up under the personal supervision of the king, and it has remained a ruin ever since.

A brief period of exile convinced Erroll of the wisdom of converting to the reformed religion, and he returned to Scotland and to royal favour. The Hays remained loyal to the Stuarts, and came out in both the Jacobite risings of 1715 and 1745. The thirteenth Earl received the Order of the Thistle from James VIII, the "Old Pretender." He was succeeded by his sister, Mary, who revelled in Jacobite intrigue, using the ruins of Slains Castle as a meeting point for Jacobite agents. She personally called out the Hays to fight for Bonnie Prince Charlie. On her death in 1758 the title passed to her great nephew, James Boyd, whose father, the Jacobite Earl of Kilmarnock, had been beheaded for treason in 1746. The Kilmarnock title had been forfeit for treason and James, in addition to the earldom of Erroll, assumed the surname of Hay and the chiefship of the clan.

The eighteenth Earl was Lord High Constable during George IV's visit to Scotland in 1822, and he lavished a fortune on the affair, which nearly ruined him. The nineteenth Earl, William Hay, fought in the Crimea where he was wounded at the Battle of Alma in 1854. He was passionately concerned for the welfare of his people, and founded the fishing village of Port Erroll. He provided the hard-pressed fishermen with good housing at a low rent, and dealt generously with the many widows that this hazardous calling produced. His son, Major General Charles Hay, twentieth Earl, saw action in the Boer War and commanded the Household Cavalry and was lord-in-

waiting to Edward VII.

Other branches of the family rose to prominence, including the Hays of Yester, who were to become the Marquesses of Tweeddale. They built the great Adam mansion of Yester near Gifford in East Lothian. In 1950 Diana, Countess of Erroll, founded the Clan Hay Society, which now has branches throughout the world. She was married to the Scottish herald, Sir Iain Moncreiffe of that Ilk Bt, and their son is the present chief.



Home

A Borders family of immense power, the Homes are said to have been the descendants of the Saxon Princes of Northumberland through Cospatrick, Earl of Dunbar. Prior to 1266, William de Home appears in land grants to the Monastery at Coldstream. Geoffrey de Home submitted to Edward I of England in 1296. His son, Sir Thomas, married the heiress to the Pepdie estate of Dunglass.

Sir Alexander Home of Dunglass was captured at the Battle of Homildon in 1402. He later followed the Earl of Douglas to France, where he was killed in battle in 1424. He left three sons, from whom most of the principal branches of the family were to descend. His eldest grandson was created a Lord of Parliament, taking the title 'Lord Home' in 1473. He joined in the rebellion against James III, which ended in the death of the king.

His son, the second Lord Home, became joint administrator of the Lothians and Berwickshire during the minority of James IV, and Great Chamberlain of Scotland in 1488. Lord Home and his followers formed part of the army levied by James IV for his invasion of England in 1513. At Flodden, Lord Home led the vanguard of Scots knights, and although he personally escaped the slaughter, many of his family and supporters were not so fortunate. Home was appointed one of the counsellors to the Queen Regent. When the regency was transferred to the Duke of Albany, the fortunes of the Homes suffered. Lord Home was accused of conspiring with the English and was arrested for treason, and he and his brother were executed in October 1516, after which their heads were

displayed on the Tolbooth of Edinburgh.

The title and estates were, however, restored to another brother, George Home, who on several occasions led his Border spearmen against the English. On the eve of the Battle of Pinkie in 1547 he was thrown from his horse and died of the injuries that he sustained. The Home lands were occupied by the English invaders and it fell to Lord Home's son, Alexander, the fifth Lord, to retake them in 1549. He supported the Reformation and sat in the Parliament which passed the Protestant Confession of Faith in 1560.

The politics of the reign of Mary, Queen of Scots were complex, and the Homes, along with many others, shifted their allegiance more than once. Lord Home, supported the marriage of Mary to Bothwell, but later led his men against the queen at the Battle of Langside. Fortunes shifted again, and in 1573 he was arrested and later convicted of treason against the young James VI. He was only released from Edinburgh Castle when his health had failed and he died a few days later. Despite his father's chequered political history, Alexander, the sixth Lord Home, was unswerving in his devotion to James VI, and was a royal favourite throughout his life. In 1603, when James travelled to England to take possession of his new kingdom, he stopped at Dunglass, and Lord Home then accompanied him to London. In March 1605 he was raised to the title of Earl of Home.

The third Earl was a staunch supporter of Charles I, and in 1648 was colonel of the Berwickshire Regiment of Foot. When Cromwell invaded Scotland in 1650 he made particular point of seizing Home's castle, which was garrisoned by Parliament's troops.

The Home allegiances were again inconstant during the Jacobite risings. The seventh Earl was imprisoned in Edinburgh Castle during the rising of 1715, and his brother, James Home of Ayton, had his estates confiscated for his part in the rebellion. When the "Young Pretender" asserted his father's claim in 1745, the eighth Earl

joined the government forces under Sir John Cope at Dunbar and later fought at the Battle of Preston. He rose to the rank of Lieutenant General and was appointed Governor of Gibraltar where he died in 1761.

Henry Home was a distinguished eighteenth-century lawyer who, on being elevated to the Supreme Court Bench in 1752, took the title of 'Lord Kames' after his family estate in Berwickshire. He was a noted author, and published several important works on Scots Law which are still highly regarded to this day. David Hume, born in 1711, has become perhaps the most highly regarded British philosopher of the eighteenth century.

The family came to public prominence in the twentieth century, when the fourteenth Earl disclaimed his hereditary peerage to become Prime Minister of the United Kingdom as Sir Alec Douglas Home. The title was only disclaimed for his lifetime, and it has now been revived by his heir, the 15th Earl. The family seat is the splendid Border estate of the Hirsell, from which the former Prime Minister named the life peerage which was bestowed upon him for service to the nation, as Lord Home of the Hirsell.



Keith

A warrior of the Chatti slew the Danish General Camus at the Battle of Barrie in 1010, for which valour Malcolm II dipped three fingers into the blood of the slain and drew them down the shield of the warrior, thereafter named Marbhachair Chamuis, or "Camus Slayer." Ever since then, the chief of the Keiths has borne on his arms the same three red lines. This is depicted as early as 1316 on the seal of Sir Robert de Keth, marischal. Malcolm's victory at the Battle of Chathem in 1018 brought him into possession of Lothian, and Camus Slayer subsequently held the Lothian lands of Keth from which his progeny took their names.



A Norman adventurer, Hervey, married the native heiress of Marbhachair and received a charter for the lands of Keth from David I around 1150. Hervey's son was styled "Marischal of the King of Scots" in a charter of 1176, which office the family held until the attainder of George, tenth Earl Marischal. The Marischal was custodian of the royal regalia and charged with the safety of the king's person within Parliament.

Robert the Bruce granted Halfforest, the Aberdeenshire royal forest, to his friend, Sir Robert de Keth, in 1308, and it was there that the Marischal built his castle. His nephew, Sir William of Galston, returned Robert's heart to Melrose Abbey after the demise of the Black Douglas at the hands of the Moors in Spain. By a charter of Robert in 1324, the office of marischal became hereditary in the family of Sir Robert de Keth, the cavalry commander at Bannockburn, conditional upon their bearing the ancient arms inherited from Marbhachair Chamuis. The young David II was escorted by Sir Robert the Marischal when he fled to the safety of France during Edward Balliol's usurpation.

Sir William the Marischal (1350–1407) added great estates in Buchan, Kincardine and Lothian to his existing patrimony when he married the heiress of Sir Alexander Fraser, the High Chamberlain. His brother, John, married the Cheyne heiress, bringing to the Keiths the massive Inverugie estate with its castle which later became the chief's seat of the earls marischal. Three of Sir William's offspring married children of Robert II, while another daughter married Sir Adam Gordon, progenitor of the Earls of Huntly, and to whom she took substantial estates, forming the foundations of that great family.

The third Lord Keith was elevated to the peerage as Earl Marischal in 1458, the only peer to be styled by his great office of state. The third Earl Marischal, with the Earl of Glencaim, invited the reformer John Knox to return to Scotland in 1559, while the fourth Earl founded Marischal College in Aberdeen, endowing it with the Greyfriars lands and introducing radical teaching protocols which were later to be adopted universally. George, the fifth Earl Marischal and the wealthiest nobleman in the land, undertook the embassy to Denmark which

culminated in the marriage of James VI to Princess Anne of Denmark.

After the coronation of Charles II in 1651 at Scone, William, the seventh Earl, was captured and imprisoned in the Tower of London, where he remained until the Restoration, when the king appointed him a Privy Councillor and later Lord Privy Seal, in recompense for the great sufferings he and his family had endured in the royal cause. There were rewards for those who had hidden the Scottish crown jewels on the Keith lands after Charles's coronation: Ogilvie of Barras was created a knight baronet, and Marischal's brother, John, became Knight Marischal and later Earl of Kintore, with an augmentation to his arms consisting of the royal crown, sword and sceptre. Kintore's nephew, the eighth Earl Marischal, was appointed a Knight of the Thistle by James VIII, the "Old Pretender."

The Keith family supported the Jacobite cause in the Forty-five, for which the tenth Earl and his brother, James, forfeited their lands, castles and titles. The Keith brothers thereafter played a part in Continental affairs during the eighteenth century. The earl was one of the very few Jacobite Knights of the Garter and also received Prussia's highest order, the Black Eagle. James was invested by the Tsarina with the Russian Imperial Order of St Andrew.

Keith of Ravelston and Dunnottar was recognised as a representer of the Marischals by the Lord Lyon in 1801. His nephew was dubbed Knight Marishal for George IV's visit to Edinburgh in 1822. The flamboyant ninth Earl of Kintore, who was Governor General of South Australia from 1889 to 1895, decimated the Kintore estates. The twelfth Earl of Kintore promoted the clan internationally and was instrumental in appointing a hereditary sennachie to preserve the family's history and traditions. The thirteenth and present Earl continues to reside on the Keith Hall estate in Aberdeenshire.



Ker

The Kerrs were one of the great riding clans of the Scottish Borders, and their name is rendered in various forms, including Kerr, Ker, Carr and Carre. It stems from the old Norse "kjrr" meaning "marsh dweller," and came to Scotland from Normandy, the French settlement of the Norse. A variant is found on the west coast of Scotland and particularly on the island of Arran, which has a separate derivation, taken from the Gaelic "ciar" meaning "dusky."

Nevertheless, family tradition asserts a Norman origin, from two brothers, Ralph and Robert (also called John), who came to Roxburgh from Lancashire. Which of the brothers was the elder has never been ascertained, but the senior branch of the family, the Kerrs of Ferniehurst, claim descent from Ralph, while their rivals, the Kerrs of Cessford, descend from John.



The influence of the Kerrs grew steadily throughout the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and by the time of the fall of the Douglases in the mid fifteenth century, the Kerrs had become Crown vassals with considerable influence. In 1451 Andrew Kerr of Cessford received a charter to the barony of Old Roxburgh, and in 1457 he was appointed warden of the marches.

The family were confirmed in the barony and Castle of Cessford by a charter of 1493. Sir Andrew Kerr of Ferniehurst received a royal charter to the barony of Oxnam, and was appointed warden of the middle marches in 1502. This important and influential royal office was to pass in 1515 to another Sir Andrew Kerr, this time of the house of Cessford, who had fought at Flodden two years earlier. He was killed near Melrose while escorting the infant James V to Edinburgh in July 1526. His grandson, Mark Kerr, had his lands of Newbattle and Prestongrange erected into the barony of Newbattle by a charter of 1591, and in 1606 he was created Earl of Lothian. This title failed when his son died in 1624 without male issue. Sir Andrew Kerr of the Ferniehurst line was created Lord Jedburgh in 1621.

The third peerage to come to the family was the earldom of Ancram, which was bestowed upon Sir Robert Kerr

who was descended from a younger son of Sir Andrew Kerr of Ferniehurst. Sir Robert of Cessford, who now spelt his surname with a single “r” was created Earl of Roxburghe in 1616. To add to the plethora of honours showered on the family, Sir William Kerr, son of the Earl of Ancram, was granted a new earldom of Lothian in 1631. His son, Robert, who was advanced to the rank of Marquess, also succeeded to the earldom of Ancram on the death of his uncle. The Roxburghe title was later to be advanced to a dukedom, largely in return for supporting the political union of Scotland and England in 1707. The dukedom of Roxburghe was to pass through female lines until, in 1805, the chief of Clan Innes inherited the title and compounded his surname as Innes-Ker.

The history of the rivalry between the two branches of the family is so complex that few who are not deeply interested can unravel it. If Ferniehurst supported young James V, then Cessford was for the Douglasses. In the next reign Ferniehurst was a staunch supporter of Mary, Queen of Scots, and did not abandon her cause, even after her flight into English captivity; but Sir Walter Kerr of Cessford led his men against the queen at the Battle of Langside in 1568. The feud only came to an end when in 1631 William Kerr of Ferniehurst married Ann Ker of Cessford, and it is their descendants who are the present Marquesses of Lothian.

The first Marquess was Lord Justice General of Scotland. He had five sons and five daughters. One of these, Lord Mark Kerr, was a distinguished professional soldier and is reputed to have had a high sense of personal honour and a quick temper. He fought several duels throughout his military career but rose ultimately to the rank of general, and was appointed governor of Edinburgh Castle in 1745. His eldest brother, the second Marquess was created a Knight of the Thistle in 1705. Robert Kerr, one of the sons of the third Marquess, has the dubious distinction of being the only person of high rank killed on the Hanoverian side at the Battle of Culloden in 1746. His elder brother, later the fourth Marquess, commanded three squadrons of cavalry at Culloden and survived to serve under the Duke of Cumberland in France in 1758. Admiral of the Fleet, Sir Walter Talbot Kerr, a younger son of the seventh Marquess, was a naval lord at the Admiralty from 1899 to 1904.

The twelfth and present Marquess of Lothian lives at Ferniehurst Castle, although the principal seat of the family is the great mansion house of Monteviot. His son, Michael Ancram, is a Member of Parliament.



Leslie

The progenitor of this great Scottish family is claimed as Bartolf, a Hungarian nobleman who came to Scotland in 1067 in the retinue of Edgar the Aetheling, brother of Margaret, later queen of Malcolm III. Bartolf was apparently a man of intellect and bravery, for which qualities Malcolm appointed him governor of Edinburgh Castle and bestowed on him estates in Fife, Angus, the Mearns and Aberdeenshire. It is said that he was carrying the queen across a swollen river upon his own horse. The queen almost fell from the horse, whereupon Bartolf cried out “Grip fast,” and as the queen took hold of his belt buckle she replied, “Will the buckle bide.”



The river crossing was accomplished, and to commemorate the event the family has the motto, “Grip fast,” and they still carry belt buckles on their shield. Bartolf established his principal holding in the Garioch district of Aberdeen, at a place known then as Lesselyn, where he built a castle. From Lesselyn the name has evolved to Lesley, of which spellings still vary widely. Bartolf’s son, Malcolm, was created constable of the royal castle at Inverury which he held for David II, and his great-grandson, Sir Norman Lesley, acquired the lands of Fythkill in Fife, afterwards called Lesley, around 1282.

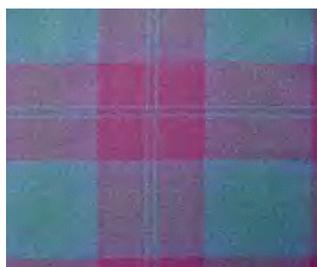
The chiefly line passed to a junior branch of the family from whom the present chiefs, the Earls of Rothes descend in a curious manner. In 1391 Sir Norman Lesley, believing his only son, David, to have been killed in the Crusades, settled his estates on his cousin, George Lesley. In 1398, shortly after Sir George had taken possession of the castle and

lands, David returned from the Wars and claimed possession of his estate. Time has now shrouded in mystery the exact terms of the settlement that was reached, but the family resolved matters peacefully.

Sir George's grandson, another George, was created a Lord of Parliament in 1445 as Lord Lesley of Leven, and had all his lands united into the barony of Ballinbreich. He was advanced to the title of Earl of Rothes sometime prior to 1458. The third Earl died at Flodden in 1513. George, the fourth Earl, was one of the Scottish commissioners at the marriage of Mary, Queen of Scots to the heir to the throne of France in 1558. George died in mysterious circumstances at Dieppe, along with the Earl of Cascillus and two others. It was popularly believed that they had been poisoned for refusing to allow the crown of Scotland to be settled on the Dauphin.

Thereafter, the Lesleys abandoned politics for a time, for the less hazardous career of professional soldiery. Europe throughout the seventeenth century was an almost permanent battleground, providing ample employment for the younger sons of many Scottish noble houses. Lesleys fought in Germany, France, Sweden and the Baltic. Perhaps the most famous of the Lesley mercenaries was Alexander Leslie, who was recalled from the Continent to take command of the Army of the Covenant, and was later raised to the peerage as the Earl of Leven. His seat was the great Tower of Balgonie which he improved and extended. (Although the castle fell into ruin, the main tower has now been fully restored as a family home, and the present Laird is a prominent heraldic craftsman.) David Lesley, of the Rothes family, was also a Covenanter commander. He defeated Montrose at Philiphaugh in 1645 and was routed by Cromwell's troops at Dunbar in 1650. He was captured the following year and imprisoned in the Tower of London until the Restoration in 1660, being created Lord Newark in the following year. Sir Alexander Leslie of Auchintoul became a general in the Russian army and Governor of Smolensk. The seventh Earl was created Duke of Rothes in 1680 by Charles II. He was a great favourite of the king and one of the most distinguished statesmen of his time. The dukedom died with him as he left no male heir, but under the terms of an earlier charter the earldom could pass through the female line, and thus the title was preserved.

The ninth Earl was Vice Admiral of Scotland and governor of Stirling Castle. He was a supporter of the Hanoverians, and in 1715 he commanded a regiment of cavalry at the Battle of Sheriffmuir. He sold much of the Rothes estates, although the magnificent Leslie House near Fife remained the seat of the earls until 1919. Leslie Castle in Aberdeenshire has also been fully restored in recent years by David Lesley, a prominent local architect. There have been many other distinguished persons of this name, including Harald Leslie, Lord Birsay, a judge of the Scottish Land Court and twice Lord High Commissioner to the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland.



Lindsay

The Lindsays came to prominence in the late eleventh century in England and Scotland. Sir Walter de Lindissee, "noble and knight" accompanied David, Earl of Huntingdon, brother of Alexander I, to Scotland to claim his throne. Lindissee means Lincoln's Island and was a jurisdiction within that English shire.

Sir Walter's great-grandson, Sir William de Lindsay, sat in the Parliament of 1164 and was afterwards a justiciar. He held the lands of Crawford, the earldom of which was to ultimately be the premier title of the chiefs, but he sat in Parliament as Baron of Luffness in East Lothian. He acquired considerable wealth through his wife, Ethelreda, a granddaughter of the great Cospatrik ruler of most of Northumbria. His son, Sir David, married Marjory, a member of the royal family, and on his death in 1214 he was succeeded as third Lord of Crawford and High Justiciar of Lothian by his son, David, who also inherited the English estates of Limesay and Wolveray.

One of his descendants, another Sir David, was High Chamberlain of Scotland in 1256 and later died on the Crusade led by Louis of France in 1268. His grandson, yet another Sir David, succeeded to the estates as Lord of Crawford

and was one of the barons whose seal was appended to the letter of 1320 to the pope, asserting the independence of Scotland, and more commonly known as the Declaration of Arbroath. In 1346 his second son and heir, Sir James de Lindsay, married Egidia, daughter of Walter the High Steward of Scotland and half-sister to Robert II.

Sir David de Lindsay took part in the famous tournament at London Bridge in 1390 in the presence of Richard II of England, at which Lindsay won the day and the admiration of the English king. On 21 April 1398 he was created Earl of Crawford. He was Lord High Admiral of Scotland in 1403 and sent as ambassador to England in 1406.

Alexander, the fourth Earl, joined in the rebellion against James II and fought at the Battle of Brechin in 1452. The royal forces were victorious and the earl was attainted for treason, but he was later pardoned. His daughter, Elizabeth, married John, the first Lord Drummond, who was ancestor of Henry, Lord Darnley, the King Consort of Mary, Queen of Scots and the father of James VI. The fifth Earl rose high in royal favour and was successively Lord High Admiral of Scotland, Master of the Royal Household, Lord Chamberlain and High Justiciary. The sixth Earl fell at Flodden, in close attendance on his king, James IV.

Ludovic Lindsay, who had learned his trade as a soldier on the Continent, fought for Charles I during the civil war. He commanded a regiment of cavalry at Marston Moor and was later with Montrose at Philiphaugh in 1645, where he was captured. He died without issue, having first resigned his earldom to the Crown for regrant to his kinsman John, Earl of Lindsay. The title remained in this branch of the family until the nineteenth century, when it passed to the Earls of Balcarres.

The Lindsays of Balcarres descended from a younger son of the ninth Earl of Crawford, who were created earls in their own right in 1650 for eminent services during the civil war. The first Earl of Balcarres was made hereditary governor of Edinburgh Castle, Secretary of State for Scotland and High Commissioner to the General Assembly. His younger son, Colin, later the third Earl, was a staunch Jacobite who fought during the rising of 1715 and only escaped being attainted for treason through the intervention of his life-long friend, the Duke of Marlborough. Alexander, the sixth Earl of Balcarres, became the twenty-third Earl of Crawford, and his descendant, the twenty-ninth Earl, is the present chief.

Another prominent branch of the family were the Lindsays of Edzell, who descended from a son of the ninth Earl of Crawford. Edzell Castle north of Brechin is now largely ruinous but it is famed for its magnificent renaissance garden which has been completely restored, and is unique in Scotland. The garden was laid out by Lord Edzell, a judge of the Supreme Court who, as a youth, travelled on the Continent. The Lindsays' other unique contribution to Scottish heritage is in the work of Sir David Lindsay of the Mount. His play, *Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis*, satirising the corruption in Church and State, was first performed in 1540. It was successfully revived twice this century to high critical acclaim.

The present chief still resides at Balcarres in Fife, where he is prominent in local affairs. In 1997 he was created a Knight of the Most Ancient and Most Noble Order of the Thistle. The earldom of Lindsay has also been revived, although this line now bear the compound surname of Lindsay-Bethune.



Lyon

Although Sir Iain Moncreiffe of that Ilk, perhaps the greatest Scottish herald and genealogist of this century, believed that this family were of Celtic origin and descended from a younger son of the Lamonts, the generally accepted view is that they descend from a French family called de Leon, who came north with Edgar, son of Malcolm II, at the end of the eleventh century to fight against his uncle, Donald Bane, the usurper of the throne. Edgar was triumphant, and de Leon received lands in Perthshire which were later called Glen Lyon.

Roger de Leonne witnessed a charter of Edgar to the Abbey at Dunfermline in 1105. In 1372 Robert II granted to Sir John Lyon, called the White Lyon because of his fair complexion, the thanage of Glamis. Five years later he became Chamberlain of Scotland, and his prominence was such that he was considered fit to marry the king's daughter,



Princess Jean, who brought with her not only illustrious lineage, but also the lands of Tannadice on the River Esk. He was later also granted the barony of Kinghorne. He was killed during a quarrel with Sir James Lindsay of Crawford near Menmuir in Angus.

The family have descended in a direct line from the White Lion and Princess Jean to the present day, and their crest alludes to this. His only son, another John, was his successor, and he strengthened the royal ties by marrying a granddaughter of Robert II. Sir John's son, Patrick, was created Lord Glamis in 1445 and thereafter became a Privy Councillor and Master of the Royal Household. He had earlier discovered that being a courtier was not always an easy life, when he was one of those sent to England as a hostage in 1424 for the ransom of James I.

John, the sixth Lord Glamis, was, according to tradition, a quarrelsome man with a quick temper. He married Janet Douglas, granddaughter of the famous Archibald 'Bell the Cat', and in the years following his death she suffered terribly for the hatred which James V bore to all of her name. Lady Glamis was accused on trumped-up charges of witchcraft and, despite speaking boldly in her own defence, her doom was preordained. She was burned at the stake on the castle hill at Edinburgh on 3 December 1540. Her death was much lamented, as she was "in the prime of her years, of a singular beauty, and suffering all, though a woman, with a man-like courage, all men conceiving that it was not this but the hatred which the King carried to her brothers." Her young son was also found guilty of conspiracy and sentenced to death, the sentence to be carried out when he had come of age. He was fortunate that he did not do so until after the king's death, when he was released. The king took possession of Glamis and plundered it.

The eighth Lord Glamis renounced his allegiance to Mary, Queen of Scots and served under the Regents Moray and Lennox. He was made Chancellor of Scotland and Keeper of the Great Seal for life, and his son, the ninth Lord, was captain of the Royal Guard and one of James VI's Privy Councillors. In 1606 he was created Earl of Kinghorne, Viscount Lyon and Baron Glamis. His son, the second Earl, was a close personal friend of the Marquess of Montrose and was with him when he subscribed to the National Covenant in 1638. He accompanied Montrose on his early campaigns in defence of the Covenant, but despite his great affection for the Marquess, he could not support him when he broke with the Scots Parliament to fight for Charles I. Lyon almost ruined his estates in supporting the Army of the Covenant against his friend.

In 1677 the third Earl of Kinghorne obtained a new patent of nobility, being styled thereafter Earl of Strathmore and Kinghorne Viscount Lyon, Baron Glamis, Tannadyce, Sidlaw and Strathdichtie. He paid off the debts he inherited from his father by skilful management of the estates and was later able to alter and enlarge the Castle of Glamis. John, his son, although a member of the Privy Council, opposed the Treaty of Union of 1707. His son was a Jacobite who fought in the rising of 1715 at the Battle of Sheriffmuir in Tulli-bardine's regiment. He died defending his regiment's colours. In 1716 James, the 'Old Pretender', son of James VII, was entertained at Glamis. Thirty years later another king's son, but a much less welcome one, the Duke of Cumberland, stopped at the castle on his march north to Culloden. It is said that after he left the bed which he had used was dismantled.

Among the Jacobite relics now preserved at Glamis are a sword and watch belonging to James VIII, the 'Old Pretender', and an intriguing tartan coat worn by him. The youngest daughter of the fourteenth Earl of Strathmore and Kinghorne was the late Queen Elizabeth, the Queen Mother.



MacDonald

The Clan Donald, often described as the most powerful of the clans, hold as their eponymous ancestor Donald of Islay, who succeeded his father Reginald or Ranald, son of Somerled, Lord of the Isles in 1207. Somerled's campaigns spanned over forty years, during which time he gained a kingdom and the hand of Ragnhild, daughter of King Olav the Red, Norse King of Man and the Isles.

The story of this match is part of the origin legends of Clan Macintyre. The new



empire stretched from Bute to Ardnamurchan, including Lorne, Argyll and Kintyre on the mainland. On Somerled's death his realm was partitioned between his heirs, each of whom was to establish the fortunes of a great clan. Dugall received Lorne, Mull and Jura, and from him sprang the Macdougalls. Angus had Bute, Arran and Garmoran (Moydart, Morar and Knoydart), which passed through his heiress, Jane, to the Stewarts. Reginald fell heir to Islay and Kintyre, which passed in due course to his son, Donald. Unlike his father, who seems to have tempered personal valour with a love of peace and culture, Donald was an iron warrior. He perpetrated so many black deeds in defence of his possessions that he feared for his salvation, and went on a pilgrimage to Rome to seek absolution for his sins from the pope. He died, probably in 1269, when he was succeeded by Angus Mor.

When Alexander III determined to oppose the nominal suzerainty of Norway over the Hebrides, he provoked the launching of King Haakon's Norwegian fleet, which anchored off Largs in 1263. Angus Mor and his uncle, Ruari, were technically vassals of Haakon, and after his defeat at the Battle of Largs, confirmed in the Treaty of Perth in 1266, the king of Scots became their overlord. An uneasy truce existed for a time, and Angus's son, Angus Og, came to the aid of Robert the Bruce, leading his fierce clansmen against Edward II of England at Bannockburn in 1314.

When Angus Og died in 1330, he left two sons. John, later Lord of the Isles, and Iain, from whom descended the Macdonalds (Maciains) of Glencoe. John's son, Donald, inherited the lordship in 1386. He unsuccessfully laid claim to the great earldom of Ross through his wife, Margaret, which led to the bloody Battle of Harlaw in 1411. After his defeat at Harlaw, Donald returned to his island fastness, and it was left to his son, Alexander, to reassert, this time successfully, their right to the earldom.

The power of the lordship reached its peak under Alexander's son, John, Earl of Ross and Lord of the Isles. Not since the time of Somerled had the isles enjoyed such independence, but his ambitions were to be John's undoing. He entered into the Treaty of Ardtornish with Henry VII of England in 1462, agreeing to accept the English king as overlord once James IV had been defeated. James, with customary decisiveness, acted swiftly, invading the isles and ultimately stripping John of all his titles in May 1493. Attempts were made over the next two generations to revive the lordship, but by 1545 it had become a forlorn hope. The various branches of the descendants of Donald gradually accepted Crown charters and recognition of their separate holdings. This was part of the successful royal policy to keep Clan Donald divided, and thereby less of a threat to central authority.

Various claims were made to the chiefship of the whole Clan Donald, but by the late seventeenth century, Hugh Macdonald of Sleat on Skye was recognised by the Privy Council as Laird of Macdonald. The lairds were first created baronets and then, in 1776, Lords Macdonald in the Irish peerage. The third Lord Macdonald sought to split the paramount chiefship with the peerage, from the house an baronetcy of Sleat, and an Act of Parliament was procured in 1847 to effect this. (The process is explained in the chapter on the Macdonalds of Sleat.) The dispute was resolved in 1947, when the present chief's father was recognised by the Lord Lyon as Lord Macdonald, high chief of Clan Donald, under whom are recognised the chiefs of Sleat, Clanranald and Glengarry. A recent petition to the Lord Lyon in favour of a claimant to be recognised as chief of the Macdonalds of Keppoch was unsuccessful, but may be resubmitted.

A highly active Clan Donald Society now exists, with its centre at Armadale Castle on Skye. Lord Macdonald still lives on the island and is vice-convenor of the Council of Chiefs.

Montgomery

Although the actual derivation of this name is obscure, the Norman family who bore it held the Castle of Sainte Foy de Montgomery at Lisieux. One tradition asserts that the name refers to a hill and a Roman Commander called Gomericus. Roger de Mundegumbrie, whose mother was the niece of the great-grandmother of William the Conqueror, accompanied his kinsman on the invasion of England and commanded the van at Hastings in 1066. He was rewarded with Chichester, Arundel and the Earldom of Shrewsbury. He soon consolidated his

possessions, and then invaded Wales, where he captured the Castle of Baldwin, to which he gave his own name of Montgomery. There was later to be not only a town, but an entire county of this name.

The first Montgomery who appears on record in Scotland is Robert, who obtained the lands of Eaglesham in Renfrewshire. He appears as a witness in a charter to the Monastery of Paisley around 1165. It is generally supposed that Robert, a grandson of Earl Roger, accompanied Walter Fitz-Alan the first High Steward of Scotland, when he came to Scotland to take possession of lands conferred upon him by David I.

Eight centuries later the Montgomeries still held lands in Renfrew and Ayrshire. John de Montgomery and his brother are listed on the Ragman Roll, rendering homage to Edward I of England for their estates in 1296. A later Sir John, the seventh Baron of Eaglesham, was one of the heroes of the Battle of Otterburn in 1388, capturing Sir Henry Percy the renowned Hotspur. According a vivid Borders ballad, Hotspur and Montgomery met in hand-to-hand combat, and Montgomery carried the day. The Percys paid a great ransom for the release of Hotspur, building for Montgomery the castle of Polnoon. The hero of Otterburn cemented his good fortune by marrying the heiress of Sir Hugh Eglinton, thereby acquiring the Barony of Eglinton and Ardrossan. His son, Sir John Montgomery of Ardrossan, was one of the hostages for James I, and took for his second wife Margaret, the daughter of Maxwell of Caerlaverock.

He was succeeded by his eldest son, Alexander, a member of the king's council who was sent on several important missions to England. He was created Lord Montgomery sometime prior to 31 January 1449. Hugh, the third Lord Montgomery, supported Prince James in rebellion against his father, James III, and fought at the Battle of Sauchieburn in 1488. Montgomery was rewarded with the grant for life of the island of Arran and the keepership of Brodick Castle. More honours followed, and in the year after Sauchieburn he was made baillie of Bute and Cunningham. But Cunningham was claimed by the Glencairns, and a feud arose during which Eglinton Castle was burned.

In either 1507 or 1508, Lord Montgomery was created Earl of Eglinton. He escaped the carnage of Flodden Field in September 1513, and was part of the Parliament at Perth in October of that year which proclaimed the infant James V king. Hugh, the second Earl, succeeded his grandfather in June 1545, but died a year later and his son, another Hugh, became the third Earl. A devout Catholic, the Earl rejected the Reformation and staunchly supported Mary, Queen of Scots, throughout her troubled reign.

He fought for her at the Battle of Langside, where he was taken prisoner. He was imprisoned and declared guilty of treason, but remained unrepentant until 1571, when he was convinced to accept James VI. He sat in the Parliament in Stirling in September of that year. Twice married, he died in 1585, leaving two sons and two daughters. His daughter, Margaret, married Robert, Earl of Winton, and their son was later to succeed as the sixth Earl of Eglinton.

Margaret's brother, the fourth Earl, fell victim to his family's ancient enmity with the Cunninghams of Glencairn. In 1586 the earl was riding from Eglinton to Stirling when he was attacked by John Cunningham, brother of the Earl of Glencairn, with several of his close kinsmen and retainers. Eglinton was shot dead, probably by John Cunningham of Colbeith.

The Montgomeries on discovering the murder, killed every Cunningham that came in their path. Colbeith was pursued, and when captured was cut to pieces on the spot. The infant who succeeded his murdered father as fifth Earl was brought up by his maternal uncle, Robert Boyd of Badenheath. He was a favourite of James VI. When he died without issue, the Eglinton title passed to Alexander Seton as heir of line. A rigid Protestant, the new Earl of Eglinton could not accept the religious policies of Charles I, and he fought in the Army of the Covenant during the civil war. He was able to accept Charles II, who had agreed to his Scottish subjects' terms concerning religion, and he was made a colonel of the King's Lifeguard of Cavalry. He was captured at Dumbarton and remained imprisoned in Berwick until the Restoration in 1660.

The thirteenth Earl organised the celebrated tournament at Eglinton Castle in 1839 which set out to recapture the spectacle of medieval jousting. The present chief is the eighteenth Earl of Eglinton and ninth Earl of Winton.



Murray

The progenitor of this family was Freskin, who flourished in the twelfth century. While it has been claimed that he may have been a Pict, it is more likely that he was a Flemish knight, one of many of that bellicose and ruthless group of warlords who were employed by the Norman kings to pacify their new realm of England after the Conquest. David I, who had been brought up at the English court, sought to employ such men to help him hold the wilder parts of his kingdom, and he granted lands in West Lothian to Freskin.



The ancient Pictish kingdom of Moray, in Gaelic, “Moireabh,” was also given to Freskin, to put to an end the remnants of the old royal house. In a series of politically astute moves, he and his sons intermarried with the house of Moray to consolidate their power. There seems little doubt that royal Pictish blood flowed in the veins of Freskin’s descendants, and the lines descending from Freskin are linked heraldically by their use of three stars and the colours blue and silver in some fashion on their coats of arms.

The Earls of Sutherland descend from what is thought to be Freskin’s eldest son. In charters, Freskin’s other descendants were designated ‘de Moravia’, and this, in Lowland Scots, became “Murray.” Sir Walter Murray, who became Lord of Bothwell in Clydesdale through marriage to an Oliphant heiress, was one of the regents of Scotland in 1255. He started construction on Bothwell Castle, which was to become one of the most powerful and visually striking strongholds in Scotland. It was the seat of the chiefs until 1360, when it passed into the possession of the Douglases.

The third Murray Lord of Bothwell died a prisoner in the Tower of London, whereupon his heir, Sir Andrew Murray, took up the cause of Scottish independence and rose against Edward I of England in 1297. He was joined by Sir William Wallace who, when Murray was killed at the great victory of Stirling Bridge, assumed command of the Scottish forces. Historians have suggested that, as Murray had shown considerable skill in pitched battle, which Wallace sorely lacked, the whole war against the English might have taken a very different course had Sir Andrew survived Stirling Bridge. Sir Andrew’s heir, the fourth Lord, fell at the Battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. The lordship of Bothwell passed to the Douglases when the fifth Lord and chief died of plague in 1360, and his widow, Joan, took as her second husband the third Earl of Douglas.

There were many branches of the name who disputed the right to the chiefship, and it was not until the sixteenth century that the Murrays of Tullibardine are recorded using the undifferenced Murray arms in the armorial of Lord Lyon Lindsay of 1542. This work predated the establishment of the Lyon register in 1672, and is considered to be of equal authority.

The Tullibardine claim seems to have rested upon descent from Sir Malcolm, sheriff of Perth, around 1270, who was a younger brother of the first Lord of Bothwell. In order to consolidate their position, the Tullibardines promoted two “bands of association” in 1586 and 1598, whereby the numerous Murray lairds recognised the chiefship of Sir John Murray, later first Earl of Tullibardine.

Among the signatories were the Morays of Abercairny in Perthshire. Sir John Moray had married a daughter of the ancient Celtic royal house of Strathearn around 1320, and as part of her dowry she brought the lands of Abercairny. Sir Iain Moncreiffe has pointed out that when Sir John’s son, Sir Alexander, succeeded to Abercairny, he was probably the nearest heir to the house of Bothwell. Although by this family arrangement the Murrays of Tullibardine gained the ascendancy, Abercairny continued to prosper. The neo-gothic seat of the lairds was the largest house in Perthshire until it was demolished to make way for a more conveniently sized but still elegant twentieth-century mansion.

Although the bands entered into put beyond doubt the rights of the Murrays of Tullibardine to be chiefs of the

clan, Abercairny still ranked high in the family, and in a magnificent portrait of Colonel James, the sixteenth Laird, in his finery, commissioned for George IV's visit to Scotland in 1822, three eagles' feathers (normally worn only by a chief) can be seen in his bonnet.

Sir John Murray of Tullibardine was created first Earl of Tullibardine in 1606. His son and heir married Dorothea Stewart, heiress to the Earls of Atholl. She brought with her a vast estate of over two hundred thousand acres.

The Stewart earldom of Atholl became a Murray earldom in 1629, and a marquessate in 1676. In 1703 the Murrays reached the pinnacle of the peerage when they were created Dukes of Atholl. The first Duke's younger son, Lord George Murray, was the great Jacobite general and the architect of the early successes of the rising of 1745.

Most military historians concur in the view that, if Lord George had been allowed sole command of the Jacobite army, the "Old Pretender" might well have gained his throne. His elder brother, the duke, supported the Hanoverian Government. Lord George had already spent many years in exile as a result of his Jacobite sympathies, and at first was unwilling to join Prince Charles when he raised his father's royal standard at Glenfinnan. He is believed to have been persuaded by a personal letter from his exiled sovereign, sent to him by the prince. He wrote a poignant letter to his brother on 3 September 1745, explaining his intentions and asking his forgiveness for opposing him in doing what he thought was "just and right as well as for the interest, good and liberty of my country."

A Gaelic speaker, his strategic skills were matched by his personal courage and popularity with his Highlanders. But his sound advice was ignored by the prince, and the tide of fortune turned against the Jacobites. Lord George Murray led a charge at Culloden which broke the Hanoverian ranks, although this was not enough to prevent the overall defeat. He died in exile in the Netherlands in 1760. Culloden was the last time that the Highlanders of Atholl went to war, but the ceremonial guard of the chiefs – which became known as the Atholl Highlanders – still has the unique honour of being the only private army in the realm.

In 1845 Queen Victoria presented colours to the Atholl Highlanders, and they regularly attend upon the present duke on ceremonial occasions. Another unique honour passed to the family in 1736, when the second Duke inherited through his grandmother the sovereignty of the Isle of Man. As Lords of Man, the Dukes issued their own coinage and held their own Parliament. Although the third Duke transferred the sovereignty to the British Crown in 1765, the Atholl arms still display the trinacria, the symbol of the island.

Another royal connection was established when Sir David Murray was granted the lands of Scone by James VI in 1600. On the lands stood the ancient hill on which the kings of Scots were crowned, a ceremony which last took place in 1651, when Charles II was proclaimed king. Sir David was created Lord Scone and later Viscount of Stormont. His descendants became the Earls of Mansfield who built the magnificent Scone Palace which is their home today. The first Earl of Mansfield was one of the greatest jurists of his time, and rose to become Lord Chief Justice of England. His direct descendent, the seventh Earl of Mansfield, has held high Government office as a minister for Scottish affairs.

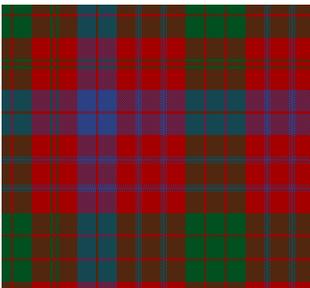
Although the heraldry of the Dukes of Atholl includes three separate crests (one each for Murray, Tullibardine and Atholl), the present chief has indicated that the demi-wildman and the motto, "Furth fortune and fill the fetters," alluding to the capture of the last Lord of the Isles by the Earl of Atholl in 1475 – should be used as the crest badge for all Murray clansmen. The 10th Duke died unmarried on 27 February 1996 at the age of 64. The title and chiefship were inherited by the Duke's distant South African third cousin, John Murray. The Atholl estates did not pass to the present Duke but were placed in trust for the nation.

Ross

In the ancient Celtic tongue, a ros was a promontory, such as the fertile land between the Cromarty and Dornoch Firths. Those who bore the name rose to be Earls of Ross, and it is believed that the first Earl, Malcolm, who



lived in the early twelfth century, allied his family to O'Beolan of the great Irish royal house of Tara, by the marriage of his daughter. The clan was sometimes also referred to as Clan Anrias, or Gille Andras, alluding to Anrias, a distinguished O'Beolan ancestor. It has also been suggested that another variation, "MicGille Andras," son of the follower of St Andrew, derives from one of the ancient earls who was devoted to Scotland's patron saint.



In 1214, Alexander II led his army to the north to put down the rebellion of the son of Donald Bane, a rival claimant to the throne. He was aided by the chief of Clan Ross, Fearchar Mac an t-Sagairt, which in English acclaimed him to be "son of the priest," alluding to his O'Beolan descent from the hereditary Abbots of Applecross. Fearchar was knighted by his king, and by 1234 he was formally recognised in the title of Earl of Ross. The earl's son, William, received grants of land in Skye and Lewis. William's son, also William, was abducted around 1250 during a revolt against the earl's rule, and was rescued with help from the Munros, who were re-warded with grants of land and became closely connected to their powerful benefactors.

The Rosses were prominent in Scottish affairs and supported an alliance with Llewellyn the Welsh Prince, against the English. They fought at the Battle of Largs against the Norse invasion in 1263, and spoke in Parliament of 1283 in support of settling the succession to the throne on the infant Princess Margaret, the Maid of Norway. Young William survived to succeed his father as chief and Earl of Ross, leading his clan through the turmoil of the struggle to win Scotland's independence. He was one of those who swore fealty to Edward I of England in 1296, and when he was captured at the Battle of Dunbar in the same year, he was sent as a prisoner to London. He was later released, but again fell into the hands of the English in 1306, when he was forced to surrender Bruce's wife and daughter, whom he was protecting and who had taken sanctuary at the shrine of St Duthac at Tain. The king was at first enraged, but when the earl sued for pardon he received it, and the reconciliation was cemented by the marriage of Ross's son to the king's sister, Princess Maud. The clan fought with distinction at Bannockburn, and the earl's seal was affixed to the great Declaration of Arbroath in 1320. Hugh, the brother-in-law of Bruce, fell at the Battle of Halidon Hill in 1333.

The last chief to hold the earldom was another William, who died in 1372. Euphemia, his only daughter, claimed the earldom as Countess of Ross, but it eventually passed through the Macdonalds of the Isles into the hands of the Crown in 1476. The chiefship devolved upon William's younger half-brother, Hugh of Balnagowan.

The Rosses were royalists in the civil war, and David, the twelfth chief, led almost a thousand of his clansmen against the forces of Oliver Cromwell at the Battle of Worcester in 1651. The royalists were defeated, and Ross and many of his men were taken prisoner. The chief was imprisoned in the Tower of London in 1653, while many of his clansmen were transported to the colonies in New England. His son, another David, succeeded to the chiefship when he was only nine years of age.

David died, without an heir, in 1711, and the chiefship passed to his kinsman, Malcolm Ross of Pitcalnie. The once-proud estate of Balnagowan had been terribly burdened with debt, and was eventually purchased by General Charles Ross, brother of Lord Ross of Hawkhead, whose family were from the Lowlands and were truly "de Roos" of Norman descent. As such, they were, genealogically, complete strangers to the Celtic Earls of Ross but nevertheless managed to obtain a matriculation in the Court of the Lord Lyon of the undifferenced arms of Ross. Pitcalnie continued to be regarded as the chief by the clan, and he was acknowledged by the great Simon Fraser, Lord Lovat, who wrote in 1740 hailing him as "brother chief." In the risings of 1715 and 1745 the clan as a whole avoided Jacobite intrigues, although Malcolm, the Younger of Pitcalnie, joined the "Old Pretender."

The chiefship was restored to the true line in 1903, when Miss Ross of Pitcalnie rematriculated the undifferenced chiefly arms. The chiefship eventually passed in 1968 to her heir, David Ross of Ross and Balnagowan, a

descendant in the direct male line of Mac an t-Sagairt, who was Earl of Ross more than seven-and-a-half centuries ago. The chief's grandfather, Sir Ronald Ross of Shandwick, was a pioneer of modern medicine who discovered the cause of malaria. He was awarded the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1902.

Scott



The Latin word “Scotti” originally denoted the Irish Celts, and later the Gaels in general. However, Black, in his *Surnames of Scotland*, notes that in the earliest certain record of the name (in a charter of around 1120), Uchtred “Filius Scott” bears a remarkably Saxon personal name, if the family were truly of Celtic origin. Henricus le Scotte witnessed a charter by David, Earl of Strathearn, around 1195. A Master Isaac Scotus witnessed charters by the Bishop of St Andrews at the beginning of the thirteenth century.



Four generations after Uchtred, Sir Richard Scott married the daughter and heiress of Murthockstone, and thereby acquired her estates. Sir Richard was appointed ranger of Ettrick Forest, which brought the additional lands of Rankilburn into the family demesne. The new laird built his residence at Buccleuch, and the estates generally became known by this name. His son, Sir Michael, second Laird of Buccleuch, proved a staunch supporter of Robert the Bruce, and distinguished himself at the Battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. He was one of the few that escaped the carnage of that disastrous day, but he later fell at Durham in 1346. He left two sons: Robert, the third Laird; and John, who founded the important cadet house of Synton, from whom the Lords of Polwarth were to descend. Robert died around 1389, probably from wounds received at the Battle of Otterburn. Robert, fifth of Buccleuch, succeeded to the family

estates when his father, Sir Walter, was killed in battle in 1402. He consolidated the family's estates, acquiring in 1420 half of the lands of Branxholm. The sixth Laird exchanged Murthockstone for the remainder of Branxholm. He was active in the struggle of the Crown to suppress the powerful Douglas faction, and received tracts of Douglas land when the king's cause prevailed. Branxholm became a free barony in 1463, held on the annual payment to the Crown of a red rose on the feast day of St John the Baptist.

By the end of the fifteenth century, the Scotts were among the most powerful of the Borders clans, and the chief could easily call upon a thousand spears to enforce his will. In common with most Borders families, the Scotts quarrelled with their neighbours, and in particular with the Kerrs of Cessford. The feud flared up when Sir Walter Scott of Buccleuch tried to free the young James V, then being held by the Earl of Angus at Darnick just west of Melrose. On 25 July 1526 he launched his attack, and in the ensuing fray Kerr of Cessford was killed. Sir Walter himself was also wounded. Buccleuch fought at the Battle of Pinkie in 1547, and four years later was appointed warden of Liddesdale and the middle marches.

The Kerrs were, however, only biding their time, and they set upon Sir Walter in the High Street of Edinburgh on 4 October 1552 and killed him. The feud was brought to an end when Sir Thomas Kerr of Ferniehirst married Janet Scott, sister of the tenth Laird of Buccleuch. The tenth Laird was a keen supporter of Mary, Queen of Scots, until his death in 1574. His son, another Walter Scott, succeeded to the estates as a youth. He went on to become a daring military leader, being known to his admirers as the Bold Buccleuch, a man much in the mould of his vigorous ancestors. He rescued his vassal, William Armstrong, known as Kinmont Willy, from the previously impregnable fortress of Carlisle in 1596.

James VI's accession to the English throne was followed by a royal policy to pacify the Borders, and so Lord Scott sought military adventure on the Continent fighting for the Prince of Orange in the Netherlands. His son, Walter, also commanded a regiment for the States of Holland against the Spanish, and was advanced to the title of Earl of Buccleuch in 1619.

The second Earl, Francis, supported the National Covenant and opposed the religious policies of Charles I. He led his horsemen against Montrose at Philiphaugh, a defeat which marked the turning point in the king's war in Scotland. He died in 1651 at the early age of twenty-five, and was succeeded by his four-year-old daughter, Mary, Countess of Buccleuch. She was married at the age of eleven to Walter Scott of Highchester by special sanction of the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland, but died in March 1661, aged only fourteen years.

She was succeeded by her sister, Anne, who was considered one of the greatest heiresses in the kingdom and consequently worthy of a splendid marriage. Charles II sought her hand for his illegitimate son, James, Duke of Monmouth, and when the marriage was agreed Monmouth assumed the name of Scott. On the day of the marriage in April 1663, the couple were also created Duke and Duchess of Buccleuch, with numerous subsidiary honours.

Monmouth later rose in rebellion against the Crown, and was executed in July 1685. His titles were forfeit, but as Anne Scott had been specifically created Duchess of Buccleuch, her title was unaffected. The duchess was succeeded by her grandson, Francis, second Duke of Buccleuch. The Buccleuch art collection, maintained in the family's three great houses of Drumlanrig, Bowhill and Boughton, is internationally renowned.



Sempill

A name known in Renfrewshire from the twelfth century, its origin is obscure. The suggestion that it is a corruption of 'St Paul' seems unlikely, as is the tradition that the first of the name had a reputation for being humble or simple. Robert de Sempill witnessed a charter to Paisley Abbey around 1246, and later, as chamberlain of Renfrew, a charter of the Earl of Lennox. His two sons, Robert and Thomas, supported Robert the Bruce, and both were rewarded by the king for their services. The elder son received all the lands around Largs in Ayrshire which had been confiscated from the Balliols. Thomas received a grant of half of the lands of Longniddry.



The lands of Eliotstoun, which became the territorial designation of the chiefly line, were acquired prior to 1344. Sir Thomas Sempill of Eliotstoun fell at the Battle of Sauchieburn fighting for James III in June 1488. His only son, John, succeeded to the family estates, and early in the reign of James IV – probably in 1488 – he was ennobled with the title, Lord Sempill. He founded the Collegiate Church of Lochwinnoch in 1505, and rebuilt the castle at the eastern end of the loch which he renamed Castle Semple. Like his father, he followed his king into battle, and died on the field of Flodden in September 1513.

His eldest son, William, succeeded to the title, obtaining a charter to the lordship with the assistance of the Regent Albany, in 1515. He favoured the betrothal of the infant Mary, Queen of Scots, to the son of Henry VIII of England. His son, Robert, Master of Sempill, was constable of the king's Castle of Douglas, and was taken prisoner by the English at the Battle of Pinkie in 1547. Sometimes called the Great Lord Semple, he supported the Queen Regent, Mary of Guise, widow of James V.

In 1560 his castle was attacked and seized for his opposition to the Reformation. He was a faithful adherent of Queen Mary until the death of Darnley, and thereafter he joined those who sought to promote Mary's son as King James VI. He fought against the queen and Bothwell at the Battle of Carberry Hill, and was one of the signatories of the warrant to confine the queen in Lochleven Castle. He led the van of Regent Moray's army at the Battle of Langside in 1568, and for this and other services he received a charter to the abbey lands of Paisley, which had been forfeited from Lord Claud Hamilton. Hamilton later regained the lands.

The murder of the regent was a setback to Sempill's ambitions, and in 1570 he was imprisoned for a year. By his

second wife Lord Sempill had a son, John, who was castigated by the reformer John Knox as Sempill “the dancer.” In 1577 John was accused of treason and conspiring to assassinate the Regent Morton. He was denounced by one of his own alleged accomplices, and was sentenced to be hanged, drawn and quartered. The sentence was commuted to imprisonment by the influence of his family and friends, and he was later released. His elder half-brother, Robert, succeeded as fourth Lord Sempill in 1572. He assisted at the baptism of Prince Henry in 1594, and attended personally on the queen at the banquet held in celebration in the great hall of Stirling Castle. He was appointed Privy Councillor by James VI, and sent as ambassador to Spain. He would not renounce the Catholic faith, and therefore held no other high public office.

In 1608 the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland excommunicated him as “an obstinate papist.” The fifth Lord took little part in court intrigue or politics, but concentrated on his estates, where he is said to have lived in considerable splendour. He was succeeded by his brother, Robert, who also led a largely private life, but he supported the royalist cause in the civil war, and was fined under the Common-wealth as a consequence.

His first two sons died without issue, and he was succeeded by his third son, Francis. The eighth Lord Sempill embraced the Protestant faith, and was the first Sempill to sit in Parliament since the reign of Mary, Queen of Scots. He died without issue in 1684, when he was succeeded by his elder sister, Anne, under a deed of entail which had been confirmed by the Crown in 1685. The baroness obtained a new charter to the title on 16 May 1688, in terms of which the title descended in default of any male issue, to her daughters, and with a special reservation to any of her heirs. Three of her sons were to succeed to the title.

Francis, Anne’s eldest son and the tenth Lord, was an implacable opponent of the union with England, and voted in Parliament against every article. He died unmarried in 1716, and was succeeded by his brother, John, who had supported the Hanoverian Government during the rising of 1715. John also died unmarried, and the title passed to his brother, Hew, a professional soldier who had made a reputation fighting on the Continent. At Culloden, he held the rank of brigadier general, and fought with his regiment on the left wing of the Government army.

In 1835 the title once more passed to the female line, when Maria Janet Sempill succeeded her brother, the fifteenth Lord. In 1884 on her death, the title passed to her cousin Sir William Forbes of Craigievar. His son, John, the 18th Lord Sempill, was a distinguished soldier and a representative Peer of Scotland, who was succeeded in 1934 by his eldest son William. As the Master of Sempill he made the headlines as a dashing air pioneer, and became a leading advocate of aviation. On his death in 1965 the title was inherited by his eldest daughter Ann. Her son, Jamie, the 21st Lord Sempill, witnessed the abolition of the Rights of Hereditary Peers to a seat in the House of Lords, bringing to a close over 500 years of participation in the politics of Scotland and Britain.

Sinclair



St Clare lay in Pont d’Eveque in Normandy, and was the birthplace of this great northern clan. Walderne de Santo Claro accompanied William the Conqueror on his invasion of England in 1066. His son by Margaret, daughter of Richard of Normandy, was one of the many Anglo–Norman barons who came north to settle in Scotland during the reign of David I.

William de Santo Claro was granted the barony of Roslin just south of Edinburgh, and this was confirmed to his son, Sir William St Clair of Roslin, in 1180. Sir William’s grandson, another William, was one of the most powerful men in Scotland in the reign of Alexander III, and was appointed sheriff of Edinburgh, Linlithgow and Haddington around 1263. He became guardian to the heir to the

throne and governor of Edinburgh Castle.

His eldest son, Sir Henry, swore fealty to Edward I of England in 1296, and the family generally favoured the Balliol claim to the throne. However, as the struggle for Scottish independence became paramount, the St Clares gave their loyalty to Bruce, and they fought at Bannockburn in 1314. Sir Henry received a grant of lands around Pentland in 1317 as his reward.



Sir Henry's son, Sir William, was a favourite of King Robert, and he accompanied Sir James Douglas on his expedition to the Holy Land with the heart of the king. The Scots knights did not see the Holy Land, but joined the king of Aragon in his fight against the Moors of Spain. St Clare and Douglas were both killed, and the pilgrimage was abandoned. William's tomb is in the chapel at Roslin, which remains one of the finest chapels of the late-medieval period in Scotland. His grandson, Henry St Clare, became Earl of Orkney through his mother, Isabel. Haakon VI, King of Norway, who had previously controlled the islands outright, recognised the title in 1379.

Henry conquered the Faroe Islands in 1391 and discovered Greenland. He is now believed to have voyaged as far as the Americas, possibly landing in both Nova Scotia and Massachusetts.

The third Earl was High Chancellor of Scotland between 1454 and 1458. He was granted the earldom of Caithness in 1455 in compensation for the loss of his claim to the lordship of Nithsdale. James III married Princess Margaret of Denmark in 1468 and her father, unable to pay her dowry in cash, pledged Orkney and Shetland in lieu.

The islands were never redeemed by the Danes, and became part of Scotland. The earldom, or principality, of Orkney was bought from the St Clares in 1470, and later annexed to the Crown. William settled the earldom of Caithness on the eldest son of his second marriage, and the Roslin lands on his younger son. It was around this time that the spelling 'Sinclair' came into general use, although the Earls of Rosslyn still prefer the older form. The second Earl of Caithness died at Flodden in 1513 following his royal master, James IV.

The chiefship followed with the earldom of Caithness, and the fourth Earl, George, was as fierce as any of his Viking ancestors. He imprisoned his own son, the Master of Caithness, for making peace with the Morays without his permission. The Master languished in chains in the dungeons of Gimigoe Castle for seven years. He died only through the intrigues of his brother, William Sinclair of Mey, who had the jailers first starve him, then feed him with salt beef without water to drink. The Master soon died raving.

George, the sixth Earl of Caithness, was forced to sell off much of the family lands in 1672, being greatly burdened with debt. He died without issue in 1676, and Sir John Campbell of Glenorchy claimed the earldom, being in possession of most of the mortgaged estates. Glenorchy promptly married the widowed countess. The right to the title in the estates was disputed by George Sinclair of Keiss, a descendant of a younger son of the fifth Earl. Keiss took possession of the estates by force, but when he met the Campbells in a pitched battle on the banks of Altimarlech near Wick, it is said so many Sinclairs were killed that the Campbells were able to cross the water without getting their feet wet. The Sinclairs regained the earldom in 1681 by an order of Parliament.

The St Clares of Roslin laid claim to be hereditary Grand Master Masons of Scotland. In 1736, when forty-four Scottish Freemasons' Lodges met in Edinburgh to found the Grand Lodge of Scotland, William St Clare appeared as a candidate for Grand Master. He played his trump card by offering to surrender his hereditary rights, and promptly became the first elected Grand Master.



The remains of Rosslyn Castle near Edinburgh and the splendid chapel associated with it are still in family hands. In 1805, the earldom of Rosslyn passed to Sir James St Clair Erskine, Baronet, whose descendants care for these jewels of Scottish architecture today.

Stuart
of Bute

The stewards, or seneschals, of Dol in Brittany came to Scotland via England, when David I returned to claim his throne in 1124. They soon rose to high rank,



being created hereditary high stewards of Scotland. By judicious marriage to Marjory, daughter of Robert the Bruce, they acquired the throne on the death of the Bruce's only son, David II. Robert Stewart, who reigned as Robert II, bestowed upon his younger son, John, the lands of Bute, Arran and Cumbræ. The king erected the lands into a county, and conferred the office of hereditary sheriff on his son. The grant was confirmed by a charter in the year 1400 by Robert III.

James, sheriff of Bute between 1445 and 1449, was succeeded by his brother, William, who was also keeper of Brodick Castle on Arran. His grandson, Ninian Stewart, was confirmed in the office of sheriff of Bute together with the lands of Ardmaleish, Greenan, the Mill of Kilcattan and Corrigillis. In 1498, James IV created Ninian hereditary captain and keeper of the royal Castle of Rothesay, an honour still held by the family to this day and which is shown in their coat of arms. He married three times, and was succeeded in 1539 by his son, James, who suffered during the struggle between the Earl of Lennox and the Earl of Arran, Regent of Scotland.

In 1570, James was succeeded by his son, John, who attended Parliament in Edinburgh as Commissioner for Bute. The family favoured the spelling of their name introduced by Mary, Queen of Scots, and the present chiefs still use it to this day.

Sir James Stuart of Bute was created a Baronet of Nova Scotia by Charles I in 1627. Early in the civil war, he garrisoned the Castle of Rothesay, and at his own expense raised soldiers for the king. He was appointed royal lieutenant for the west of Scotland, and directed to take possession of Dumbarton Castle. Two frigates sent to assist him fell foul of stormy weather, and one was completely wrecked. Ultimately, Sir James was forced to flee to Ireland when the forces of Cromwell were victorious. His estates were sequestrated, and he was forced to pay a substantial fine to redeem them.

His grandson, Sir James Stuart of Bute, was appointed to manage the estates and to be colonel of the local militia on the forfeiture of the Earl of Argyll in 1681. He supported the accession of Queen Mary and William of Orange, and later, in the reign of Queen Anne, he was made a Privy Councillor and one of the commissioners for the negotiation of the Treaty of Union between Scotland and England. In 1703 he was created Earl of Bute, Viscount Kingarth and Lord Mount Stuart, Cumra and Inchmarnock.

But by 1706, the earl was convinced a union with England would be a disaster for his country, and he opposed it vehemently. When he realised that Parliament would vote in favour of the alliance, he withdrew from politics entirely. He married the eldest daughter of Sir George Mackenzie of Rosehaugh, the celebrated Lord Advocate and heraldic writer. After the succession of George I, the Earl of Bute was appointed Commissioner for Trade and Police in Scotland, Lord Lieutenant of Bute and a lord of the bedchamber.

During the rising of 1715 he commanded the Bute and Argyll militia at Inveraray, and through his vigilance kept that part of the country peaceful. His second son, having inherited his mother's estates of Rosehaugh, took the surname Mackenzie. He became a Member of Parliament and later envoy to Sardinia, Keeper of the Privy Seal and Privy Councillor.

John Stewart, the third Earl, was tutor to Prince George and became his constant companion and confidante. When his royal friend became George III, Bute was created a Privy Councillor and First Lord of the Treasury. He concluded a treaty with France in 1763 which brought the Seven Years' War to an end, but the terms were unpopular, and he was vilified by the press of the day. He retired from public life, having employed Robert Adam to build a splendid house at Sutton Hoo in Bedfordshire. His heir, John Lord Mount Stuart, was born in 1767. He married the heiress of Patrick Crichton, the Earl of Dumfries. He succeeded his father as Earl of Bute in 1792, and in 1796 he was advanced to the rank of marquess.

The second Marquess consolidated the family fortunes and expanded the estates on businesslike lines. He was a noted industrialist who was largely responsible for modern Cardiff, where he developed the docklands to rival Liverpool. By 1900 millions of tons of coal were being handled there, making Cardiff the greatest coal port in the

world. John, the third Marquess, inherited vast wealth at the tender age of six months. He grew to be a scholar, with wide interests, including heraldry, archaeology and mysticism. He rebuilt Castel Coch and Cardiff Castle as tributes to the high art of the Middle Ages.

The present chief, better known as the racing driver, Johnny Dumfries, succeeded his father, the sixth Marquess in 1993. The late Lord Bute was passionately concerned for Scottish heritage, and his efforts were recognised by a knighthood shortly before his death.



Sutherland

A territorial name from the county of Sutherland in the north-east of Scotland. Sutherland was the “Sudrland” or “Southland” of the Norsemen who had by the tenth century conquered all of the islands of Scotland and much of the mainland as far south as Inverness.

The family are probably of Flemish origin, descended from Freskin, whose grandson, Hugh, was granted land in Moray around the year 1130 by David I. Hugh acquired estates in Sutherland and was referred to as Lord of Sutherland. His son, William, became Earl of Sutherland around 1235, at a time when earldoms were accorded only to near kin of the Scottish kings. Hugh’s brother, also William, remained in Moray. His family took the surname Murray, and he is the ancestor of the many powerful families who bear this name, including the Dukes of Atholl. The clan evolved around this powerful chief, who was strong enough to hold and protect the cathedral town of Dornoch.

Kenneth, fourth Earl of Sutherland, was killed with the regent of Scotland and three other earls while fighting against the English in 1333 at the Battle of Halidon Hill. William, the fifth Earl, was married first to Princess Margaret, daughter of Robert the Bruce and sister of David II. His son by her was heir to the throne prior to 1361, when he died of plague. William was murdered in 1370 by the Mackays in a feud which was to last for at least the next four centuries.

Robert, the sixth Earl, William’s son by his second marriage, built Dunrobin. He married the niece of Robert III in 1389. John, the eighth Earl, was declared unfit to manage his own affairs in 1494 at the insistence of his son-in-law, Adam Gordon, a younger son of the Earl of Huntly. He brought a further charge of idiocy against the earl’s heir, and rounded things off with a charge of illegitimacy against Alexander Sutherland, the younger son of the eighth Earl, who was ultimately mysteriously murdered. Adam Gordon’s wife then succeeded to the Sutherland lands and titles.

John, the sixteenth Earl, resumed the ancient surname of Sutherland, and in 1715, was Lord Lieutenant for the north of Scotland, including the islands. He called out his men for George I, and garrisoned Inverness against the Jacobites. His son, William, the seventeenth Earl, reconciled the Sutherlands to their ancient enemies, the Mackays, and settled the ancient feud at the start of the rising of 1745. The Earl of Cromarty, commanding the Jacobite forces in the north, occupied Dunrobin Castle but was defeated and captured by Sutherland’s militia. Dunrobin thus became the first British castle to be captured with bloodshed in time of war.

The death of the seventeenth Earl, leaving an only daughter, Elizabeth, led to a legal battle over the succession to the title. Her right as a woman to succeed was challenged by the nearest male heirs, George Sutherland of Forse and Sir Robert Gordon of Gordonstoun, a descendant of the second marriage of the twelfth Earl. The House of Lords heard the case on 21 March 1771, and decided in Elizabeth’s favour, confirming her as Countess of Sutherland in her own right. She married the Marquess of Stafford, of the prominent Leveson-Gower family. He was later created first Duke of Sutherland in 1833.

The first Duke was a keen reformer and progressive planner. He set up new industries on the coast and achieved his ends by ruthlessly clearing his tenants off the land, abandoning the customary obligations of a chief to his clan.

He virtually destroyed the old ways of life in Sutherland, uprooting the pastoral inhabitants of the hills and glens and moving some of them to modern housing on the coast to work in industries, such as distilling, which he had financed. Stafford lost a great deal of money in his schemes, and although he was hated at first, he came to be respected by some at his death, although many could never forgive the clearances which his policies had required.

The second Duke transformed Dunrobin from a traditional Scottish castle into a vast palace in the French chateau style through the work of the architect, Sir Charles Barry. Dunrobin was badly damaged by fire in 1915 and was later restored and partly remodelled by Sir Robert Lorimer. The third Duke contributed nearly a quarter of a million pounds for the building of the Highland railway, and had his own line built from Golspie to Helmsdale.

On the death of the fifth Duke, the chiefship of the clan and the earldom of Sutherland devolved upon his niece, Elizabeth, the present Countess of Sutherland. The dukedom, however, did not die out, and was inherited by the Earl of Ellesmere, a descendant of a younger son of the first Duke. There is accordingly now a separate earldom and dukedom of Sutherland. In September 2000 the Dukedom passed to the sixth Duke's cousin Francis Egerton.

The fairy-tale Castle of Dunrobin, the principal seat of the chiefs and the largest house in the Highlands, remains in the family's possession, but is now open to the public.



Wallace

There are two principal theories for the origin of this name, both of which indicate an ancient British origin. The *Waleis* were originally Britons from Wales who held land in Shropshire and who may have come north with David I. More plausibly, it is believed that they were Britons who settled in the ancient kingdom of Strathclyde, having been driven north in the tenth century.

The name is certainly found in records by the twelfth century in Ayrshire and Renfrewshire. Richard Walensis of Riccarton held land near Kilmarnock as a vassal of the High Steward of Scotland sometime before 1160. His grandson, Adam Walays, had two sons, the eldest of whom succeeded to the family estates in Ayrshire. Malcolm, Adam's younger son, received Elderslie and Auchinbothie in Renfrewshire. Malcolm was the father of the great Scottish patriot, Sir William Wallace of Elderslie.



Adam de Waleys appears on the Ragman Roll of nobles paying allegiance to Edward I of England in 1296, but Malcolm of Elderslie was one of very few Scottish nobles who bravely refused to submit to Edward. He and his eldest son, Andrew, were both executed. His wife fled with her younger son, William, to the protection of relatives near Dundee. William gathered a number of young men around him, including a cousin from the Riccarton branch of the family. When he

heard that Sir John Fenwick, his father's executioner, was marching towards Dundee with a packed train of plunder from Scottish churches and monasteries, he determined to have his revenge. He met Fenwick at the path leading over Lowden Hill in Lanarkshire, and killed him. His success brought him many new followers, but to gain the support of the nobility he allied himself with Sir Andrew Murray, who was raising a revolt in the north-east. They were joined by the Grahams, the Campbells and the Earl of Lennox. There then began one of the earliest guerilla campaigns in military history.

The English, unable to capture Wallace, indiscriminately executed a number of the Scots nobility, including his uncle, who had been lured into their hands to discuss possible peace terms. A full-scale revolt commenced in the south-west of Scotland, but when a strong English army marched to suppress it, resistance melted. Wallace was forced to flee to the north, where he gathered a small force. By 1297 he had gathered enough popular support to lay siege to Dundee. The English sent another great army under the Earl of Surrey and Hugo de Cressingham. Wallace met the English at Stirling Bridge, where his superior tactics carried the day against overwhelming English

odds. He was knighted and granted the title “Guardian of Scotland.”

However, the guardian was defeated at a set-piece battle at Falkirk, when the English superiority of numbers finally prevailed and the Scots were defeated. Wallace escaped, but was later betrayed and taken to London, where he was tried for treason. At his trial it was argued that, as he owed no allegiance to the English king, no treason had been committed, but the outcome was predetermined, and Wallace was executed with great brutality.

The Wallaces of Craigie descended from the uncle of the great patriot. They obtained the estate by marriage to the heiress of Sir John Lindsay of Craigie, and in 1669 Hugh Wallace of Craigie was created a Baronet of Nova Scotia. Sir Hugh married Esther Kerr, daughter of the Laird of Little Dean but sadly their only son was brain-damaged. On Sir Hugh’s death, his grand-nephew, the grandson of his brother, the Reverend William Wallace of Falford, became the second Baronet. He was a distinguished lawyer who rose to the rank of Lord Justice Clerk, the second-highest judge in Scotland.

The third Baronet left an only daughter, and was succeeded by his brother, who had married a daughter of Sir Hew Wallace of Wolmet. Sir Thomas Wallace was the fifth Baronet, and when his son, a captain in the Guards, predeceased him, the estates passed to his daughter, Frances. In 1760 she married John Dunlop of Dunlop, the friend of the poet Robert Burns. His eldest son, Sir John Dunlop, succeeded his maternal grandmother as sixth Baronet of Craigie, and assumed the name of Wallace.

The representation of the chiefly line then passed to another cadet branch, the Wallaces of Cairnhill, who had lived in Jamaica for several generations. Through marriage to an heiress, they inherited estates in Ayrshire at Busbie and Clancaird. In 1888, Captain Henry Wallace of Busbie and Clancaird established himself as chief of the name. Robert Wallace of that ilk received both the French and Belgian Croix De Guerre during the First World War. His son, Malcolm, who served in the Second World War, Korea, and Borneo, rose to the rank of colonel. He was succeeded in 1991 by his brother, Ian, the thirty-fifth chief.

The Armigerous Clans and Families of Scotland



Armstrong

The legends and traditions of this powerful Borders family hold that the first of the name was Siward Beorn (‘sword warrior’), also known as Siward Digry (‘sword strong arm’), who was the last Anglo–Danish Earl of Northumberland and a nephew of King Canute, the Danish king of England who reigned until 1035. The family is said to have been related by marriage both to Duncan, King of Scots and William the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy and King of England.

The name was common over the whole of North-umbria and the Borders, and the Armstrongs became a powerful and warlike border clan in Liddisdale and the debateable border land. Black lists Adam Armstrong as being pardoned at Carlisle in 1235 for causing the death of another man and Gilbert Armstrong, steward of the household of David II, as ambassador to England in 1363. The Armstrongs continued to expand their influence into the valleys of the Esk and Ewes, and in about 1425 John, brother of Armstrong of Mangerton, in Liddisdale, built a strong tower. The Armstrongs were

said to be able to raise three thousand horsemen and at one point were in virtual control of the debateable land.

In 1528 the English warden of the marches, Lord Dacre, attacked and raised the Armstrong tower but the Armstrong response was to burn Netherby. The Armstrongs’ power was seen as a threat by James V to his own authority and, according to tradition, the king tricked John of Gilnockie to a meeting near Hawick, where the king hanged the laird without further ado. The historian Pitscottie attributes to Armstrong the brave retort that “King Harry would downweigh my best horse with gold to know I were condemned to die this day.”

King James was to rue his treatment of the Armstrongs when they failed to support him at the Battle of Solway Moss in 1542. The union of the Crowns in 1603 brought an official end to the Anglo–Scottish border wars and the last of the Armstrong lairds was hanged in Edinburgh in 1610 for leading a reiving raid on Penrith. A ruthless campaign followed as the Crown attempted to pacify the Borders.

The families were scattered and many sought new homes in Ulster, particularly in Fermanagh. Armstrong is now among the fifty most common Ulster surnames. There have been many distinguished Armstrongs, including Sir Alexander Armstrong, the Arctic explorer and, in keeping with the Armstrong spirit of adventure, the most far-travelled must be Neil Armstrong, the first man to walk upon the moon. There has been no trace of the Armstrong chiefs since the dispersal of the clan in the seventeenth century, but a powerful and active clan association is in existence and the Clan Armstrong Trust was established in 1978.



Baillie

The most likely derivation of this name is from the French 'baillie', meaning 'bailiff' or 'steward'. This was an office of great importance in medieval times. One of the earliest records of the name appears in 1311 when William de Baillie appears as juror in a case concerning land in Lothian. Nisbet records that, according to family tradition, the Baillies of Lamington were truly a branch of the great house of Balliol, Lords of Galloway and sometime kings of Scots.

The family was said to have changed its name due to the unpopularity of the Balliol kings after the succession of Robert the Bruce. There is, however, no real evidence to support this tradition, particularly as the name Balliol remained fairly widespread in Scotland after that time. William Baillie of Hoprig was knighted by David II in 1357 and received a royal charter to the barony of Lamington in 1368.

The lands remained in the family until the present time. Sir William established the family fortunes and from him are descended the Baillies of Carphin, Park, Jerviston, Dunrogal, Carnbroe, Castlecary, Provand and Dochfour. Alexander Baillie, a younger son of Lamington, fought at the Battle of Brechin in 1452 and was rewarded by the Earl of Huntly with the lands of Dunain and Dochfour near Inverness. He was also appointed constable of Inverness Castle.

The family played a prominent part in affairs around the Highland capital, and formed alliances by marriage to many notable local families. Cuthbert Baillie of Carphin was Lord High Treasurer to James IV in 1512. Sir William Baillie of Provand was called to the Bench in 1566, taking the title of 'Lord Provand'. He was Lord President of the Court of Session from 1565 to his death in 1595. The principal house of Lamington suffered the vagaries of fortune after having risen high in royal favour when Sir William Baillie married Janet Hamilton, daughter of James, Earl of Arran and Duke of Chatelherault. He was made Master of the Wardrobe to Queen Mary in 1542. Faithful to her daughter, Mary, Queen of Scots, they fought at the Battle of Langside in 1568, after which the estates were declared forfeit.

His grandson was the famous General Baillie who was soundly defeated by the Marquess of Montrose at the Battles of Alford and Kilsyth in 1645. The general had two sons, both of whom married daughters of the Lord Forrester of Corstorphine, to whose estates they eventually succeeded. The Reverend Robert Baillie, descended from the house of Jerviston, was a renowned Protestant minister and chaplain to the Covenanter armies in 1639. His daughter, Margaret, was to marry a Walkinshaw of Barrowfield, ancestor of the celebrated Clementina Walkinshaw, the mistress of Prince Charles Edward Stuart, the "Young Pretender."

Robert Baillie of Jerviswood was also a staunch Protestant, whose outspoken views on civil and religious liberty were ultimately to result in his death. A cadet of the Lamington family, he was planning to emigrate to South Carolina in 1683, believing that there was no escape from the oppression of the government of the time. He was also in correspondence with leaders of the faction opposed to the succession of James VII in England, and prior to his intended journey he went to London to consult with the Duke of Monmouth (later involved in a rebellion,

and executed) and others. Baillie had no connection with any conspiracy to overthrow the government but he was nevertheless arrested and charged with conspiracy to commit high treason. He was convicted in the High Court at Edinburgh on 24 December 1684 and sentenced to be hanged the same day. His family was forced to flee to Holland and the estates were not restored until the overthrow of James VII in 1688.

Lady Grizel Baillie, the poet and songwriter, who died in 1746, was the wife of George, the ill-fated Laird of Jerviswood's son. This branch of the family was ultimately to succeed by marriage to the earldom of Haddington, a title which they still hold. In 1894, James Evan Baillie of Dochfour married the daughter of the first Baron Burton, the great Victorian industrialist. Lord Burton died without male issue and the peerage has now passed to the Baillies of Dochfour, who still have a great estate on the shores of Loch Ness.

Douglas



The Douglases were one of Scotland's most powerful families. It is therefore remarkable that their origins remain obscure. The name itself is territorial and it has been suggested that it originates from lands by Douglas Water received by a Flemish knight from the Abbey of Kelso. However, the first certain record of the name relates to a William de Dufglas who, between 1175 and 1199, witnessed a charter by the Bishop of Glasgow to the monks of Kelso.

Sir William de Douglas, believed to be the third head of the Borders family, had two sons who fought against the Norse at the Battle of Largs in 1263. William Douglas "The Hardy" was governor of Berwick when the town was besieged by the English. Douglas was taken prisoner when the town fell and he was only released when he agreed to accept the claim of Edward I of England to be overlord of Scotland. He later joined Sir William Wallace in the struggle for Scottish independence but he was again captured and died in England in 1302. His son, "The Good Sir James," patriot and founder of the Black Douglases was killed in battle in Spain, carrying the heart of his life-long friend, King Robert the Bruce to the Holy land. Douglas and his knights had joined the king of Castille's crusade against the Moors and in 1330, near Teba in Andalucia, they were cut off from the main Christian force and heavily outnumbered when they were attacked by the enemy. Sir James was killed leading the charge against the Moors but the casket containing Bruce's heart was recovered from the battlefield and returned to Scotland where it was interred in Melrose Abbey.

Marriage to a Stewart princess brought wealth and prestige to his great nephew, the second Earl of Douglas, later to die in his moment of victory at Otterburn in 1388. Sir James' illegitimate son, Archibald "The Grim," became the third Earl and consolidated the family's position. He successfully defended Edinburgh Castle against Henry IV of England in 1400 but died a year later. Archibald, the fourth Earl, married James I's sister and in 1437, on the death of James I, he was one of the council of regents, and later lieutenant general of the kingdom. Both he and his son were killed fighting the English in France.

Despite this and other setbacks, in the early fifteenth century the Douglases had become so powerful that they were seen as a threat to the nation's stability. In 1440 the young sixth Earl and his brother were invited by a rival to dine in Edinburgh Castle with the ten-year-old James II. A black bull's head, the symbol of death, was brought in, and the Douglas boys were dragged away, given a mock trial, and beheaded. The young king was horrified, but twelve years later he invited their cousin, the eighth Earl, under a promise of safe conduct, to Stirling Castle where he was murdered with the king himself striking the first blow. The ninth Earl prudently spent much of his adult life in England. When he returned in 1484 with a small invading army to recover his possessions, he was captured and confined in Lindores Abbey. He died in 1491, the last of his line.

Meanwhile, another of Sir James' great nephews, George, first Earl of Angus, was the first of the Red Douglases.

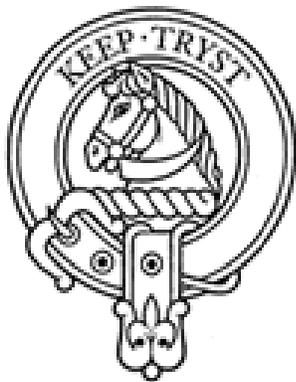
He too married a Stewart princess and the Red Douglases soon rose to as great a prominence as the family had held hitherto; this was largely due to the success of Archibald, fifth Earl of Angus, known as “Bell the Cat.” He is said to have gained his nickname from an incident in 1482 when a number of the Scots nobility plotted the downfall of certain unpopular favourites of the king. One of the conspirators told the tale of mice seeking deliverance from a cat: all agreed that a bell should be suspended from the cat’s neck to signal its approach, but the question was, which mouse had courage to fasten the bell? Angus is said to have immediately cried “I shall bell the cat.”

The favourites were murdered, and Angus gained his nickname. He subsequently became Lord Chancellor of Scotland. His grandson, the sixth Earl, made himself guardian of James V by marrying Margaret Tudor, the young king’s widowed mother. He was still taking the field against the English when over the age of sixty.

James, Earl of Morton, younger brother of the seventh Earl was a bitter enemy of Mary, Queen of Scots. He was one of the murderers of her secretary, David Rizzio, and was deeply implicated in the assassination of her second husband Lord Damley. A brutally effective regent during the infancy of James VI, he fell from power in 1581 and was duly executed. William, eleventh Earl of Angus and first Marquess of Douglas, was a Catholic and an ardent supporter of Charles I during the civil wars. He was created marquess in 1633 and lived in princely style at Douglas Castle. He joined Montrose after the Battle of Kilsyth in 1645 and was present when Royalists forces were surprised by Covenanter cavalry at Philiphaugh later that year when he barely escaped with his life. He made peace with Cromwell’s government, although he was fined £1,000. William, brother of the second Marquess became, through marriage, Duke of Hamilton in 1660.

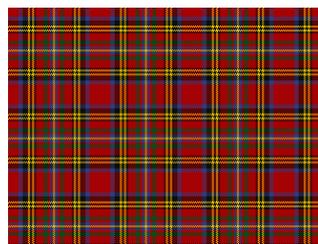
The titles of Marquess of Douglas, Earl of Angus and several others were ultimately all to devolve on the Dukes of Hamilton and the eldest son and heir of that house is always styled “Marquess of Douglas and Clydesdale.” Other branches of the family include the Earls of Morton, and the Marquesses of Queensberry, who gave their name to the famous rules of boxing. The Douglas-Hamiltons are the heirs male of the house of Douglas but are barred, under Lyon Court rules, from matriculating as chiefs because of their hyphenated surname. Angus Douglas-Hamilton, the fifteenth Duke, is an engineer, former RAF test-pilot and author. His seat is at Lennoxlove near Haddington.

Fleming



Fleming, derived from the French, “le Fleming,” indicates the origin of the family as Flanders. The once-powerful medieval principality is now split between the Netherlands, Belgium and France. The Flemish were enterprising merchants who traded with England, Scotland and Wales in the latter part of the twelfth century.

Baldwin, a distinguished Flemish leader, settled with his followers in Biggar in Lanarkshire, under grant of David I, and he became sheriff of Lanark under Malcolm IV and William the Lion. This office appears to have been hereditary for some time. Nine Flemings signed the Ragman Roll, swearing fealty to Edward I of England in 1296, although one of the signatories, Sir Robert Fleming, was among the first to join Robert the Bruce and assist him after the death of the Comyn at Dumfries in 1306.



Sir Malcolm Fleming of Cumbernauld was created Earl of Wigton in 1342 by David II for his help in keeping him safe from Edward Balliol and the English. His grandson, Thomas, sold the earldom to Archibald Douglas, Lord of Galloway, in 1371, which was confirmed by Robert II. Sir Malcolm Fleming of Biggar and Cumber-nauld was knighted by Robert III and was one of the hostages for release of James I from his English captivity in 1423. He was a friend and counsellor of William, sixth Earl of Douglas, and was a member of the party which went to Edinburgh Castle on the invitation of Governor Livingstone and

Chancellor Crichton in November 1440. Douglas, his brother David, and Fleming were summarily arrested, briefly and hurriedly tried and then beheaded. His younger son, Sir Robert, had the forfeited lands returned to him by James II when it was held that his father had “died at the faith and peace of His Majesty.” He was created a Lord of Parliament some time before 1460.

His grandson, John, the second Lord Fleming, was one of the lords appointed as guardians to James V in his infancy in July 1515. John became Chancellor of Scotland in 1517. He was assassinated on 1 November 1524, while out hawking, by John Tweedie of Drummelzier and others. The third Lord Fleming, Malcolm, was Great Chamberlain of Scotland, and married Janet Stewart, the natural daughter of James IV. He was killed at the Battle of Pinkie in 1547. The fourth Lord Fleming accompanied the young Queen Mary to France in 1548 to marry the heir to the throne. He continued as Great Chamberlain of Scotland for life, and was one of the eight commissioners to the royal wedding in 1558. He was amongst those taken ill at Dieppe on the return journey, supposedly poisoned. Three of the party died immediately and Fleming a fortnight later in Paris.

John, sixth Lord Fleming, was recreated Earl of Wigton in 1606. The family were Jacobites and the earl attended James VII after the Revolution of 1688. He opposed the Treaty of Union, voting against every article in the Parliament of 1706. At the rising of 1715 he was arrested by the governor of Edinburgh Castle. The title became dormant with the death in 1747 of Charles Fleming, who had succeeded his brother in the earldom. The most distinguished bearer of this name in recent times has been Sir Alexander Fleming, who discovered penicillin.



Hepburn

The Hepburn name is territorial, coming from the village of Hebburn in the parish of Chillingham in Northumberland. During the late thirteenth or early fourteenth century, an Adam de Hibburne appears to have been captured by the Scots on one of their many cross-border raids. On his way through East Lothian to Edinburgh, the story goes that he saved the Earl of Dunbar from attack by an unbroken wild stallion. The earl, in gratitude, gifted Adam the lands of North and South Hailes in East Lothian.



Adam's son, Patrick, married Eleanor de Brus, Countess of Carrick, who was the niece of Robert the Bruce. She was Adam's second wife and he, her fifth husband. Patrick and his son, another Patrick, were with James, Earl of Douglas, when he raided Northumbria in 1388. The Scots captured the banner of Henry Percy (the renowned *Hotspur*), who vowed that the banner would never leave England.

At the ensuing Battle of Otterburn the Hepburns managed to save the Douglas standard, a feat which won them the gratitude and protection of that powerful family. Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, invaded Scotland in 1400 intent on burning Hailes by way of revenge, but he was driven off by Douglas.

Sir Patrick Hepburn became the first Lord Hailes in 1482. His grandson, also Patrick, was created Earl of Bothwell by James IV, who was his cousin. He was also created High Admiral of Scotland, Keeper of the King's Household, Sheriff Principal of Scotland, Keeper of Edinburgh Castle and Lord of Orkney. He was trusted enough to stand proxy for the king at his marriage to Margaret Tudor, daughter of Henry VII of England. It was from this union that James VI was later to succeed to the English throne.

Patrick and his son, Adam, were among the many Scottish nobles who died alongside James IV at Flodden in 1513. Adam's son, Patrick, the third Earl, grew up with the leading Borders families and joined their rebellion during the reign of James V, as a result of which he was forced into exile in England. On the death of the king he returned home to attempt to woo Mary of Guise, the king's widow and mother of Mary, Queen of Scots.

Henry VIII of England bribed Bothwell and a number of other Scottish nobles to ensure the marriage of the infant Mary to his son Edward, Prince of Wales. A treaty was enacted but later annulled, due to Henry's excessive demands. Mary was instead married to the heir to the throne of France, but after her husband's death returned to Scotland in 1561. She married her weak-willed cousin, Henry Stewart, Lord Darnley. When Darnley, now King Henry, was found strangled in the ruins of his house at Kirk o' Field, there was little public doubt that his death had been contrived by James, fourth Earl of Bothwell, who had already tried to abduct the queen. Bothwell was charged with the murder but was acquitted after filling Edinburgh with his men. He married the queen, a union later said to have been forced upon her, and he was created Duke of Orkney and loaded with other high ranks and titles.

Public outrage and the jealousy of other powerful factions ensured that the marriage was not to last, and after various adventures, Mary escaped to England where she was held captive for twenty years, ultimately being executed by her cousin, Elizabeth. Bothwell escaped to Denmark where he was seized and held in the castle at Dragsholm, where he died in pitiful circumstances, chained to a pillar after eleven years of captivity. All his honours were forfeited to the Crown. His mummified body was on display until quite recently. A cousin of the earl, Sir John Hepburn, became a marshal of France and later the first colonel of the Royal Scots Regiment. Sir George Buchan Hepburn became representer of the family and was created a baronet in May 1815. His descendant, Sir Alastair, is the present baronet.



Livingston

A name which is probably territorial in origin, from lands of the same name in West Lothian. According to one legend, the lands were named after a Saxon called Leving. There is record of one Livingus living during the reigns of Alexander I and David I.

Sir William Livingstone, believed to be his great grandson, had three sons. Two of his younger sons appear on the Ragman Roll swearing fealty to Edward I of England in 1296. His eldest son followed David II on his invasion of England in 1346 and was taken prisoner at the Battle of Durham. He was one of the commissioners to England who negotiated the release of the king and was thereafter granted the barony of Callendar.

Sir Alexander Livingstone of Callendar was one of the guardians of the infant James II. Following a dispute with William Crichton, another of the guardians, the young king was spirited out of Edinburgh Castle to Callendar.

In 1440 the Livingstones were instrumental in persuading the young Earl of Douglas and his brother to attend a banquet of reconciliation in Edinburgh Castle. The Douglases were promptly seized and executed. In revenge, the Douglases imprisoned Livingstone and killed one of his sons. Another son, Sir James Livingstone, was created captain of Stirling Castle and later Great Chamberlain of Scotland. He was raised to the peerage as Lord Livingstone in 1458. He died without issue and the title devolved upon his nephew, John.

In 1543 Alexander, the fifth Lord Livingstone, was one of the noblemen chosen to educate the young Mary, Queen of Scots. He accompanied the young queen to France, where he died. William, his son who succeeded him as sixth Lord, was a fierce adherent of Mary's cause and fought for her at the Battle of Langside. In 1600 Livingstone was raised to the rank of Earl of Linlithgow. The second Earl was created Hereditary Constable of the Royal Palace of Linlithgow. His son, George, remained loyal to the Crown during the civil war and the estates suffered, first at the hands of the Army of the Covenant and later the forces of Oliver Cromwell and the Parliamentarians. After the Restoration, Livingstone was appointed a colonel in the Royal Horse Guards and a Privy Councillor. The family supported the Jacobite cause, and for their part in the 1715 rising the titles were forfeited.

The Livingstones of Bachuil had received in early times a grant of lands on the island of Lismore as hereditary keepers of the crozier of St Molluag. The Celtic barony attached to the hereditary keepership was recognised by Parliament. The Barons of Bachuil are still the keepers of this sacred relic and live on their ancient lands on Lismore. The name of Livingstone is also borne as an anglicised version of “Macleay,” meaning “son of the physician.” Doctor David Livingstone, the famous African explorer and missionary, was descended from the Macleays of Appin.

Lundin



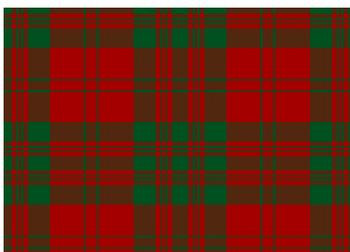
Originally thought to be derived from lands in Forfarshire and Fife, the name of Lundin appears to arise from one Robert de London, who came to Scotland before the reign of Alexander II. Philip de Lundin was granted a barony near Largo in Fife, and his brother Malcolm, received lands in Forfarshire. Malcolm’s son, Thomas, was appointed doorward (a gatekeeper, or janitor) by William the Lion and was later called by the surname Durward. The doorward’s was an important post, and in this case would imply close personal confidence and trust

by the king. The Doorwards’ son, Alan, was appointed justiciar, and assumed the title “Earl of Athol,” to which he did not appear to have any right. However, he married the natural daughter of Alexander II, and this close royal connection may have promoted the marriage of Robert, natural son of William the Lion, to the heiress of the house of Lundin. Robert assumed the Lundin surname, and thereafter the Lairds of Lundin proudly proclaimed their twice-royal blood, their coat of arms leaving this in no doubt.

In 1648 Sir John Lundin of Lundin was succeeded by his daughter, Margaret, whose husband, Robert Maitland, assumed her name and the family coat of arms along with the estates. He joined with the Duke of Hamilton in the engagement for the rescue of Charles I in 1648, and fought at the Battle of Worcester in 1651. He was captured and remained a prisoner for some years until he paid a heavy fine.

The line again passed through a female and in 1679 John Drummond received a royal warrant to add his wife’s coat of arms, which were virtually those of the Kings of Scots, to his own. He held high office, first as Deputy Governor of Edinburgh Castle, and later as Secretary of State. He was created Earl of Melfort in 1685. He married twice and left his Drummond titles to his second family, as the Lundins were staunch Protestants and the Drummonds were among the most ardent of Jacobites. His son, James Lundin, succeeded to his mother’s estates, which his descendants ultimately sold.

Muir



This name appears to have two derivations, one Highland and one Lowland. The Gaelic, “mor,” is translated as “large” or “big,” and the surname may in some instances simply refer to such physical attributes. Alternatively, Muir is also derived from the Middle English for a “low grassy hill or heath.” In 1291 Thomas Delamore was executor of the will of Devorgilla, the mother of John Balliol, King of Scots.

The chief family of the name were the Mures of Rowallan in Ayrshire. At the beginning of the reign of Alexander III, Sir Walter Comyn seized the house and lands of Rowallan from the Mures. However, the lands were restored

after Gilchrist Mure distinguished himself at the Battle of Largs in 1263, when he was also knighted for his bravery. Better relations were established with the Comyns by the marriage of Gilchrist to one of the Comyn daughters, through whom he inherited additional estates. His eldest son, Archibald, was killed at the siege of Berwick when the town was sacked by the English and Balliol’s army routed.

The name appears several times on the Ragman Roll of Scottish nobles submitting to Edward I of England in 1296. Sir William Mure, son and successor to Archibald, was knighted by David II, and sent one of his sons as hostage to England for the ransom of the king. His granddaughter, Elizabeth Mure, married the future Robert II in 1346. The validity of the marriage was later challenged, and a papal dispensation was sought to ensure the

legitimacy of their children, including the future Robert III. The Mures followed James IV to the fateful field of Flodden in 1513, and many of them died along with their king.

Mungo Mure supported his relative, the Regent Arran, during the minority of Mary, Queen of Scots, and fought for him at Glasgow in 1543. He carried out significant improvements to the fine Castle at Rowallan, but was killed at the Battle of Pinkie in 1547. The family embraced the new reformed religion and became opponents of Mary, Queen of Scots, but by the end of the seventeenth century they were persecuted as Covenanters. William Mure of Rowallan allowed conventicles to be held in his house, for which he was imprisoned, first at Stirling Castle and then in Edinburgh. The direct line ended soon thereafter, when the estates passed to the Earls of Loudoun.

Another prominent branch of the family, the Mures of Abercorn, prospered under the early Stewarts. A member of this branch, Sir Robert Mure, was one of the jury who tried Lord Ruthven for the murder of Queen Mary's secretary, David Rizzio. Sir Robert was a favourite of James VI. Alexander Muir Mackenzie, born in 1764, was a descendant of the line of Muir of Cassenarie and was created a baronet in 1805. John Muir, born at Dunbar in 1838, emigrated to America in 1849. He was a naturalist and first advocate of forest conservation in the United States, being responsible for the establishment of the internationally renowned Yosemite National Park.



Seton

It is thought that the village of Sai near Exmes in Normandy had given its name to Seton in Scotland by 1150, when Alexander de Seton witnessed a charter of David I. Sir Christopher Seton, who died in 1306, secured the family's fortunes when he married a sister of Robert the Bruce. He was a witness at Bruce's coronation at Scone in March 1306, and is said to have saved the king's life when he was unhorsed at the Battle of Methven in June of that year. Seton was captured at the same battle and taken to London where he was executed with great brutality.

In 1320 Sir Alexander Seton, who was probably his brother, signed the famous missive to the pope, later to be called the Declaration of Arbroath, asserting the independence of Scotland. He was governor of Berwick from 1327 to 1333 when the town surrendered to the English. The surrender was made all the more bitter by the fact that the English had hanged Seton's son whom they held as hostage. Further tragedy followed when his remaining sons were killed – one fighting Edward Balliol and the other drowning in a sea battle with an English fleet. His daughter, Margaret, succeeded to the estates, and it was her descendants who were created Lords Seton.

William, Lord Seton, attended the coronation of Robert II. One of his sons married Elizabeth of Gordon and so was ancestor to the Marquesses of Huntly. George, the third Lord, was a favourite of James IV and died with his king at Flodden in 1513. The Setons supported Mary, Queen of Scots, and in 1557 the fifth Lord attended the queen's wedding to the Dauphin of Viennois. Seton later became her Privy Councillor, Master of the Household and close personal friend.

On the terrible night of the murder of the queen's secretary, David Rizzio, he helped the queen escape, first to his castle at Seton in East Lothian, and thence to Dunbar. After the assassination of the queen's husband, Darnley,

it was again to Seton that the queen turned and it was in his castle that the marriage contract with Lord Bothwell was sealed. When his queen was imprisoned in Lochleven Castle in 1568 Seton, with two hundred lances, aided in her escape. He retired to Flanders after the queen's defeat at the Battle of Langside, and tried to enlist foreign aid. He returned to Scotland two years later. In 1581 he was one of the judges at the trial of the Earl of Morton, accused of complicity in the murder of Darnley. His portrait, which now hangs in the Scottish National Portrait Gallery, is one of the most spectacular paintings of his or any other period. His second son, Robert, who succeeded to his father's title, was created Earl of Winton by James VI in 1600. The earl's brother, Alexander Seton, was appointed Lord President of the Court of Session, Scotland's highest judicial office, and then

Chancellor of Scotland. He was himself created Earl of Dunfermline in 1606.

Staunch Jacobites, the fourth Earl of Dunfermline forfeited his title for his support of Viscount Dundee in 1689, as did the fifth Earl of Winton after the 1715 rising. Other branches of the family include the Setons of Abercorn, who were created Baronets of Nova Scotia in 1663. Sir Alexander Seton of Pitmedden, who took the title, “Lord Pitmedden” on his appointment to the Supreme Court Bench in 1677, was also created a Baronet of Nova Scotia in 1684. Port Seton, Seton Collegiate Church and Seton House itself all still lie on the coast south of Edinburgh, fitting memorials to this great family.



Somerville

This name is derived from Somerville, a town near Caen in Normandy. Sir Gaulter de Somerville accompanied the Duke of Normandy, William the Conqueror, to England in 1066. One of his descendants, Philip of Whichnow, in Staffordshire, instituted the gift of a side of bacon called the “Dunmow fitch,” which is still given today to husbands and wives who have lived together a year and a day without strife or disagreement.

William de Somerville, Gaulter’s second son, came to Scotland with David I and received lands near Carnwath in Clydesdale. William died around 1142 and was buried at Melrose Abbey. William de Somerville, who, according to tradition, killed the last serpent in Scotland, obtained the lands of Linton around 1174 from Malcolm IV. He later became chief falconer to the king and sheriff of Roxburgh.

Sir William de Somerville, fifth of that name, fought for Alexander II, driving back the Norse invasion at Largs in 1263. His son, Sir Thomas appears on the Ragman Roll of nobles forced to swear fealty to Edward I of England in 1296, but the following year he joined Sir William Wallace in the fight for Scottish freedom. Sir Walter Somerville commanded a brigade of cavalry under Wallace at the Battle of Biggar, and was later a steady supporter of Robert the Bruce. His great-grandson, Sir Thomas, was created Lord Somerville around 1430. He was justiciar of Scotland south of the Forth. John, the third Lord, was wounded fighting against the English at the Battle of Sark in 1448 and was present at the siege of Roxburgh in 1460, when James II was killed by an exploding canon. John, fourth Lord Somerville, died without issue and was succeeded by his brother, Hugh, who was taken prisoner after the rout at Solway Moss in 1542. He was ransomed for 1,000 merks and the promise of his support for the proposed marriage of Mary, Queen of Scots to Edward, Prince of Wales, son of Henry VIII of England. He was later arrested for treason but was pardoned. He supported Mary of Guise, the Queen Mother, as Regent of Scotland.

Like many nobles who had been secretly intriguing with England, he was an early adherent to the reformed doctrines. However, his son – later the sixth Lord Somerville– opposed the Reformation and voted against the Confession of Faith proposed in the Parliament of 1560. He supported also Mary, Queen of Scots, and fought at the Battle of Langside where he was severely wounded. Hugh Somerville, the seventh Lord, was also a supporter of the queen, but in the shifting politics of the time he later supported her son, James VI, becoming a Privy Councillor. James was entertained by the Somervilles in such splendour that they burdened themselves with debt and had to sell their estates at Carnwath.

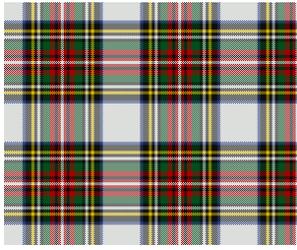
When the Scots nobility was ranked in 1606 after the union of the Crowns, the name of Somerville did not appear. James Somerville, titular tenth Lord Somerville, served on the Continent, where he gained a considerable reputation as a soldier commanding his own regiment. His grandson, James Somerville of Drum, died from wounds received in a duel with Thomas Learmonth in 1682.

In 1723 the Somerville peerage was acknowledged by the House of Lords and John, now thirteenth Lord Somerville, stood for election as a representative peer of Scotland. He built the elegant House of Drum which still stands on the outskirts of Edinburgh. Mary Somerville who died in 1872 was a noted mathematician and

scientific writer as well as a great pioneer of womens' education, and Somerville College in Oxford, founded in 1879, is named after her.

Stewart

Royal



The Stewarts, who were to become monarchs of the Scots, descended from a family who were seneschals of Dol in Brittany. They acquired estates in England after the Norman Conquest and Walter Flaad, the Steward, moved to Scotland when David I claimed his throne. He was created Steward of Scotland and granted extensive estates in Renfrewshire and East Lothian. He was one of the commanders of the army which defeated Somerled of the Isles in 1164.

James, the fifth High Steward, swore fealty to Edward I of England, but later joined Sir William Wallace and on his death, Robert the Bruce, in the struggle for Scottish independence.

Walter, the High Steward, married Marjory, Robert's daughter, and when Bruce's son, David II, died childless, he was succeeded by Bruce's grandson, Robert Stewart, who reigned as Robert II.

The first Stewart king had many sons. His eldest, John, succeeded to the throne as Robert III; his third son, Robert, Duke of Albany, was Regent during the reigns of his father, his brother and his nephew, James I; his fourth son Alexander, Earl of Buchan, famed as the "Wolf of Badenoch," was responsible for the destruction of the elegant cathedral at Elgin.

When James I became of age, he curbed the power of his cousins of Albany by beheading Robert's son, Murdoch, along with the latter's sons and father-in-law. The royal line of male Stewarts continued uninterrupted until the reign of Mary, Queen of Scots, and as a family they held the throne of Scotland and later that of England in the direct line until the death of Queen Anne in 1714.

The present royal family still has Stewart blood, both through Sophia of Hanover, granddaughter of James VI, and the mother of the present queen, formerly Lady Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon. Apart from the royal house, three main branches of the Stewarts settled in the Highlands during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries: the Stewarts of ; of Atholl; and of Balquhiddier.



The Appin Stewarts descend from Sir John Stewart of Bonkyl, son of Alexander the fourth High Steward. Sir John's younger son, Sir James Stewart, was killed at the Battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. His grandson married the heiress of the Lord of Lorne, and their son became the first Stewart Lord of Lorne.



In 1463, the dispossessed Macdougalls murdered the next Lorne heir whose son, Dugald, became the first Stewart to hold Appin. Duncan, second of Appin, was appointed Chamberlain of the Isles by James IV and built Castle Stalker, which was sometimes used as a royal hunting lodge.

Duncan Mor, eighth of Appin, took the field under Montrose in 1645 at the Battles of Inverlochy, Auldearn and Kilsyth. He was outlawed and his lands were forfeited, although they were later restored after the accession of Charles II to the throne.

The Stewarts of Appin came out in 1715 for the "Old Pretender," and fought at the Battle of Sheriffmuir. The chief was attainted for treason and fled into exile. Charles Stewart of Ardsheal led the men of Appin during the rising of 1745, and many fell at the grim field of Culloden, having first gained glory by breaking the Redcoat ranks. Colin Campbell of Glenure, "the Red Fox," was placed as government factor on the forfeited Stewart estates. His murder in 1752 has been immortalised by Stevenson in the novel, "Kidnapped." After the chief

suspect, Alan Breck Stewart, made his escape, James Stewart, the half-brother of the chief, was tried by a jury comprised entirely of Campbells at Inverary presided over by Argyll himself, and, perhaps not surprisingly, was convicted and hanged.

The Stewarts of Atholl descend from a son of the Wolf of Badenoch. James Stewart built a strong castle at Garth and settled there towards the end of the fourteenth century. In 1437 Queen Joanna, widow of James I, married the Black Knight of Lorne who was descended from the fourth High Steward. Her son by this marriage, Sir John Stewart of Balveny, was granted the earldom of Atholl by his half-brother, James II. He supported his brother by commanding the royal forces who suppressed the rebellion of the Lord of the Isles.

John, fifth Earl, died with no male issue. His daughter had married William Murray, second Earl of Tullibardine, who was created Earl of Atholl in his own right in 1627. Many Stewart families continued to live around the Atholl lands, many of them claiming direct descent from the numerous illegitimate progeny of the Wolf of Badenoch. They largely transferred their allegiance to the new Murray Earls of Atholl, calling themselves Athollmen. This is commemorated by the right still exercised by the present Duke of Atholl to maintain the Atholl Highlanders as the only private army in the kingdom.

The new allegiance was sometimes sorely tried. In 1689 Murray called out the Athollmen for William of Orange, but his baillie defiantly held Blair Castle for James II. In 1715 Atholl again supported the government but his heir, the Marquess of Tullibardine, was a Jacobite. Stewarts flocked to the banner of Bonnie Prince Charlie in 1745. General David Stewart of Garth, an Athollman, was an officer in the 42nd Regiment (the Black Watch) whose book, "Sketches of the Highlanders and Highland Regiments," did much to popularise his homeland in Victorian England.

Stewarts came to Balquidder when William Stewart of Baldorran, grandson of the only son of the Duke of Albany who escaped the persecution of James I, was appointed baillie of the Crown lands of Balquidder around 1490. The Crown lands were eventually divided and granted to various noble families, and William's grandson, Alexander, settled in Ardvorlich at the end of the sixteenth century. It is generally accepted that the Earls of Galloway now head the principal house of this great name.

Other Clan / Sept Connections

Angus



It is not clear whether Angus tartan was intended as a District or a Family tartan and as a consequence it has been used as both. It is now firmly established as a tartan for all those people having a connection with the area. The name means 'The Only One', possibly referring to the Angus King of Dalriada in western Scotland in the ninth century. The name is associated with Clan MacInnes, who also claim descent from the Dalriada Scots. The Earldom of Angus was held by the Stewarts and Douglases.



Barclay

Based on the earlier hunting sett which appeared in the Vestiarium Scoticum in 1842. Barclay's appear to have no 'regular' tartan. The dress version assumes this role and is the sett most commonly associated with the name. The Aberdeenshire Barclays of Tolly held lands for over 600 years, and their descendant, Michael Andreas Barclay, was made Prince Barclay de Tolly for his part in the defeat of Napoleon. There is also a green hunting version of the same pattern.



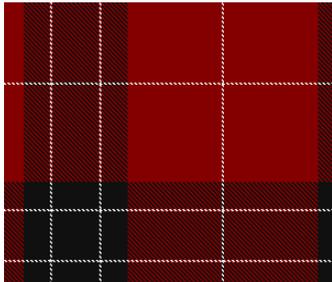
Galloway

In contemporary correspondence Mr John Hannay said that the Galloway 'everyday' tartan was 'in four shades of green with yellow and red stripe'. Cree Mills of Newton-Stewart, however, used only two shades in the manufacture on Mr Hannay's behalf. MacGregor Hastie's collection includes this sett with the pale yellow rendered in white and called Galloway Hunting.



Haye

The design comes from the Vestiarium Scoticum (1842). The authors, the Sobieski Stuart brothers, enjoyed a popular following among the Scottish gentry in the early Victorian era, and in the spirit of the times, added mystery, romance and some spurious historical documentation to the subject of tartan. Of the better known tartans, the book offers some minor variation, but in other cases it provides the only recorded version of many tartans in use today.



Knights Templar Dress

Ordo Supremus Militaris Templi Hierosolymitani - Magistral Grand Priory of the Holy Lands.



Knights Templar Hunting

Ordo Supremus Militaris Templi Hierosolymitani - Magistral Grand Priory of the Holy Lands.



Rosslyn Chapel

This ancient chapel, built by William Sinclair, has connections with the Crusades, the Temple of Solomon and the Knights Templar. The source of this tartan is David McGill from International Tartans.

Royal Stewart



The best known of all Scottish tartans, the Royal Stewart is the tartan of the Royal House of Stewart and the personal tartan of Her Majesty the Queen. In the same way that clansmen wear the tartan of their chief, it is appropriate for all subjects of the Queen to wear the Royal Stewart tartan. The pattern was first published by James Logan in his book, 'The Scottish Gael' in 1831, but references indicate that the sett was known at the end of the 18th century. Early samples show blue as a light 'azure'.

~ ~ ~

Appendix E

Magna Charta Barons



King John and the Magna Charta Barons

The Baronage of the Magna Charta

There were 197 lay baronies, plus 39 ecclesiastical, or 236 in all. The lay baronies were held by 45 barons who maintained 140 castles; thus a number of the barons held several baronies. The total of 236 was divided into 7,200 Knights fees or lordship – a Knight's fee being a manor or a tenure (could be town property) with sufficient income to support a Knight. The figure given by some other historians of the time is about 6,500. Of the 45 barons, only 24 were in revolt; they were practically all related, and acted as a clan. The other 21 either remained neutral or were on the side of the King, and only interested in preserving their fiefs. The point is the baronage was not united against King John, and of the knightage only a small percentage was in revolt. As for the great mass of Englishmen, there was no national feeling in that age. Each man was bound by fealty to his lord and followed his banner, no matter how vacillating that might be.

There is a parallel here with the American Revolution; the leaders in both instances represented a minority of the people, but with this difference — in the latter case the leaders were men of great character, high-minded, with a vision, concerned with creating a new order in society, in the former case they were, with one or two exceptions concerned chiefly in preserving their feudal privileges.

The historian William Stubbs in his “Constitutional History of England” writes in connection with the framing of Magna Charta, “So much of the fortunes of the Constitutions turns upon personal history, on the local, official, and family connection of the great men, that we cannot dismiss the subject without asking ‘Who were the men and what was their training? Who were the barons that now impose limits upon tyranny and place themselves in the vanguard of liberty? How have they come to sit in the seats and wield the swords of those whom so lately we saw arranged in feudal might against King and people?’”

When one reads the many accounts of the twenty four barons, one is disappointed to discover little of that loftiness of mind, broad vision, which one would expect of the authors of the great document. There are but meager records about many of them; the above statement may be a misjudgment of some. But in any case one is forced to seek elsewhere for those virtues. The men who, one must believe were the framers of the document, or active in its authorship, were 1) Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, later famous as an ecclesiastical jurist, author of “The Constitutions of Langton”; 2) William Marshall, the wisest and most capable man in England who remained the councilor of King John; 3) perhaps Roger Bigod, justiciar in King Richard's reign, but alive in 1215; 4) Saher de Quincy, justiciar in the years 1211-1214, so he must have been consulted; 5) perhaps also William de Huntingfield who was a justice itinerant, although it does not follow he was learned in the law, or Richard de Montfichet, who, as the Royal Forester, may have been of influence in inserting the clauses dealing with forest laws.

Robert fitzWalter and his companions, the Magna Charta Sureties, we must realize, were military leaders and landed magnates. If the records of their lives give us no clue to their greatness of mind, they sensed the importance of what Stephen Lanfton and the framers of Magna Charta were proposing, and we are grateful to them for recognizing its significance and enforcing it. [*From “History of the Reign of King John,” by Sidney Painter*]

The following is the order in which the baron's names are appended to Magna Charta:

1. Comes de Clare
2. Comes Albemarle (William de Fortibus, Earl of Aumale)
3. Comes Gloverniae (Geoffrey de Manville, Earl of Gloucester)
4. Comes Wintoniensis (Saher de Quincy, Earl of Winchester)
5. Comes Herefordensis (Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford)
6. Comes Rogerus (Roger Bigod, Earl of Norfolk)
7. Comes Robertus (Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford)
8. Willemus Marecallus (William Marshall, Jr.)
9. Robertus filius Walter (Robert fitzWalter)
10. Gilbertus de Clare
11. Eustachius de Vesci

12. Hugh Bigod
13. Willelmus de Munbrai (William de Mowbray)
14. Major de Londensis (William Hardell)
15. Willemus de Lanvallay
16. Robertus de Ros
17. Constabularius Cestriae (John de Lacy, Constable of Chester)
18. Richardus de Perci
19. Joannes filius Roberti (John fitzRobert)
20. Willelmus Malet
21. Gaufridus de Say (Geoffrey de Say)
22. Rogerus de Munbezou (Roger de Montbegon)
23. Willelmus de Huntingfield
24. Richardus de Montfichet
25. Willelmus de Albineio (William d'Aubigny)

Those barons assembled at Runnemedede as guarantors or counselors of King John were:

1. William Marshall, Earl of Pembroke
2. William Longuespee, Earl of Warenne (John's half brother)
3. William, Earl of Warenne (son of Hamelin, half uncle of King John)
4. William d'Aubigny, Earl of Arundel
5. Ranulph Blundeville, Earl of Chester
6. Alan de Galway, Constable of Scotland
7. Warin fitzGerold
8. Hubert de Burgh, Seneschal of Poitou
9. Piers fitzHerbert
10. Hugh de Neville
11. Matthew fitzHerbert
12. Thomas Basset
13. Alan Basset
14. Philip Daubing (d.'Aubigny or Albini)
15. Robert de Roppelay
16. John Marshall, nephew of William, son of Anselm the Elder
17. John fitzHugh
18. Henry, Earl of Cornwall

Sureties and Magna Charta barons who were on the Crusades:

William Marshall, Earl of Pembroke

William de Fortibus, Earl of Aumale, d. 1241/42 on the way to the Holy Land

Geoffrey de Say, 1219

Saher de Quincy. Earl of Winchester, 1219, d. in Egypt 1219/20

Robert fitzWalter, 1219

Henry de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, 1219, d. In Egypt in 1220

Richard de Clare. Earl of Clare and Hertford, helped King Richard before the third Crusade and accompanied him as far as France, but then returned home.

John de Lacy (later Earl of Lincoln) 1219

Eustace de Vesci 1191

William d'Aubigny, Earl of Arundel, d. 1221 on way home from 5th Crusade

William de Huntingfield 1219

William Longuespee, Earl of Salisbury, a crusader 1219

~ ~ ~

Biographies of the Magna Charta Barons

William d'Albini (Aubigny) Lord of Belvoir Castle, Leicestershire

The seat of William d'Albini *Magna Charta Surety* was Belvoir Castle founded in 1088 by Robert de Todei, or Toni. D'Albini succeeded to the Castle in 1167/8. It needed no artificial motte, for it was built on a steep and isolated hill. Apparently there was once a fine shell wall, but the builders of the present mansion have ruined the earthworks left after King John destroyed the Castle. All that had remained of the original Norman structure was destroyed by fire in the late 18th Century.

But the scene of William d'Albini's struggle with King John was the lowering Castle of Rochester. It was situated on the great Northwest Southeast Road built by the Romans and known to later Englishmen as Watling Street. It was well guarded, on one side by the swirling waters of the Medway, and on the other three by a curtain wall. The lost Belvoir was centrally located in Leistershire, but Rochester was in the South, close to the Royal palace. Numerous coins found near Rochester Castle show that it was built on the site of a Roman ruin, but there are no Roman walls to be found.

Only the keep remains, but it can be seen from a distance of twenty miles. Some claim that the Castle was originally built by Odo of Bayeux, and used as a threat to William Rufus. Others claim that the construction was ordered by William the Conqueror. The structure we now see was commenced by Bishop Gundulf, and on the site of the Bishop's earlier tower a castle was completed before 1139, under the orders of William de Corbeuil. The keep might date to approximately 1130, and the cell under the wall of one of the towers has suffered few alterations since that time.

While William d'Albini held the Castle against King John and his army of mercenaries, the King appeared on the scene in person. The siege continued for seven weeks. The outer wall had been badly damaged and the soldiers had resorted to the keep. But when John's soldiers made a breach in the wall and attempted to enter, they were promptly repelled. The siege continued, and finally hunger and thirst forced a surrender. All d'Albini's men were killed. Their leader was spared, but he had to spend a long time in a medieval prison and was heavily fined.

In 1216 the Dauphin took Rochester Castle and all Kent submitted to him as overlord. Now the walls are standing. The masonry of the keep is firm, but the interior has long since been destroyed. William d'Albini, *Magna Charta Surety*, was the third Baron of his family. When his father died he was in ward to King Henry II and, in 1194, he was in the army of Richard I in Normandy. Already a wealthy man at the time of the accession of John to the throne, he received several additional grants of great value. In 1201, when the Barons refused to follow their Sovereign into France, King John demanded that their castles should be given up to him as security for their allegiance, beginning with William d'Albini; and therewith Belvoir Castle, instead of which d'Albini gave him his son, William, as a hostage.

He appears to have remained longer faithful to King John, as well as more moderate in his opposition to the King than most of the Barons, and he did not join the insurgents until he could no longer with safety remain neutral or adhere to the King for, as late as January 1214/5, he was one of King John's commissioners appointed for the safe conduct of such as were traveling to his Court at Northampton.

After he joined the Baron's party, d'Albini entered with great spirit into their cause and was excommunicated but, after having gained their point, he was looked upon with suspicion by the other Sureties, because he did not attend the grand tournament in Staine's Wood on 29 June 1215, to celebrate the victory. It was not until after other Barons had alarmed him that he fortified his Castle at Belvoir and joined them at London. But the sequel proves that their suspicions were not well grounded. He was placed as governor of Rochester Castle when, though he found it so utterly destitute of provisions as almost to induce his men to abandon it, he recruited and held it until weakness and famine obliged them to surrender to the King. The siege lasted three months and his army suffered considerable loss. King John ordered that all nobles in the Castle be hanged, but his chief counsellors resolutely opposed this sentence and William d'Albini and his son, Odonel, with several other Barons, were merely committed to the custody of Peter de Mauley, and sent as prisoners to Corfe and Nottingham Castles.

While d'Albini remained at Corfe, the King marched, on Christmas morning 1216, from Nottingham to Langar near Belvoir Castle, and sent a summons to surrender. Upon this, Nicholas d'Albini, one of the Baron's sons and a Clerk in Orders, delivered the keys to the King, asking only that his father should be mercifully treated. The fortress was then committed to the custody of Geoffrey and Oliver de Buteville.

William's liberty was gained by paying to the King a fine of 6,000 marks (more than 4,000 pounds) and the sum was raised from his own lands by his wife. After King John's death, though he submitted himself to King Henry III, William d'Albini was forced to give his wife and son Nicholas as hostages for his allegiance, but in 1217 he was one of the King's commanders at the Battle of Lincoln. He died at Offington 1 May 1236, and his body was buried in Newstead, and "his heart under the wall opposite the high altar" at Belvoir Castle.

William d'Albini was one of the King's foremost financial officers. Before 1200 he had been custodian sheriff, a sort of tax collector and treasurer combined. After 1200 King John appointed him one of the justices or "exchequers" of the Jews. As such he kept a record of all royal debts to Jews, and of payments made to them. Possibly such an official settled disputes connected with money-lending operations. The Jews were a powerful source of revenue, which the King desired to protect to his own interest. From Michaelmas 1210 to mid-Lent of 1211, William and five other Barons were in charge of customs duties on dyes and grain. In 1213 we find him involved in a baronial investigation committee, which sought to unearth evidence of alleged embezzlements charged to certain sheriffs.

Roger Bigod Earl of Norfolk and Suffolk

Bigod is the name associated with Framlingham Castle in Suffolk. It is an imposing structure. The outer walls are forty-four feet high and eight feet thick. Thirteen towers fifty-eight feet in height remain, along with a gateway and some outworks. In early Roman times it was probably the site of the fortified earthwork that sheltered Saint Edmund when he fled from the Danes in 870, but we cannot be sure of the authenticity of this tradition. The Danes seized the fort, but they lost it in 921; it then remained a Crown possession, which passed into the hands of William the Conqueror when he became King. In 1100 Henry I granted the Castle to Roger Bigod, and possibly Roger was the one to erect the first masonry building.

The ruins indicate a 12th Century dating, though material from an older building may very well have been used in the walls. Evidently the Castle was completely rebuilt in 1170. It remained in the Bigod family for some generations, then passed into the hands of the Mowbrays.

Roger Bigod *Magna Charta Surety*, was born about 1150 and succeeded as second Earl of Norfolk and Suffolk. It is fitting that, after Richard's return to England after his captivity in Germany, Roger Bigod was chosen to be one of the four Earls who carried the silken canopy for the King, as Hugh Bigod had borne the Royal sceptre in the Royal procession.

Roger Bigod was appointed in 1189 by King Richard one of the Ambassadors to King Philip of France, to obtain aid for the recovery of the Holy Land. In 1191 he was keeper of Hereford Castle. He was chief judge in the King's Court from 1195 to 1202. In 1200 he was sent by King John as one of his messengers to summon William the Lion, King of Scotland, to do homage to him in the Parliament which was held at Lincoln, and subsequently attended King John into Poitou; but on his return he was won over to the opposition by the rebel Barons and became one of the strongest advocates of the Charter of Liberty, for which he was excommunicated by Pope Innocent III. He died before August 1221, having married as his first wife, Isabella daughter of Hameline Plantagenet, who was descended from the Earls of Warren.

Hugh Bigod Earl of Norfolk's Heir

Hugh Bigod *Magna Charta Surety*, son of Roger Bigod, was third Earl of Norfolk and Suffolk, and heir to his father's estates and honors, to which he had succeeded in the 5th of King Henry III. He died four years later, in February 1224/5. He married about 1212 Maud, a sister of *Magna Charta Surety* William Marshal, and eldest daughter of William Marshal, the Protector. In her right Hugh acquired the Earldom of Pembroke, in which rank William Marshal bore the Royal Sceptre at the Coronation of King Richard I.

Henry de Bohun Earl of Hereford

Henry de Bohun *Magna Charta Surety* was born before 1177. He became the first Earl of Hereford of this family, for he was so created by the Charter of King John, dated 28 April 1199. Even though he took the Barons' side against the King, on becoming Earl of Hereford he had promised that he would never make any claim against John or his heirs, on the basis of a Charter given to his great uncle Roger by Henry II. The office of Lord High Constable of England he inherited from his father, but he seems to have played no other active part in John's government. As he took a prominent part with the Barons against King John, his lands were confiscated, but he received them again at the granting of *Magna Charta*. Having been excommunicated along with the other Barons, he did not return to his allegiance on the decease of King John, but became one

of the commanders in the Army of Louis the Dauphin, at the Battle of Lincoln, and was taken prisoner by William Marshal. After this defeat he joined Saire de Quincey and other Magna Charta Barons in a pilgrimage to the Holy Land in 1220, and died on the passage 1 June 1220. His body was brought home and buried in the chapter-house of Llanthony Abbey in Gloucestershire.

His wife, Maud FitzGeoffrey, was the daughter of Geoffrey FitzPiers, Baron de Mandeville, and his first wife, Beatrix Say.

The name of Bohun suggests Hereford. Unfortunately, Hereford Castle no longer exists. It was built in 1048, and apparently consisted of a moat and bailey. The mound has been leveled to the ground, but the bailey is outlined by high banks. One report has it that all that remains is a platform and a piece of a ditch.

The Castle was once situated near the present Bishop's Palace. It was seriously battered in an attack in 1055, but it was restored, and was again in use in 1067. The site which it now occupies is a public garden, gay with shrubbery and flowers. An ornamental lake indicates where once was the moat, but the outlines of the walls are shown only by grass covered ridges.

Richard de Clare Earl of Hertford

As for the Hertford Castle of the de Clares, it is one of two Castles: A 10th Century ruin or a 17th Century structure. The older Castle retains a wall and part of a Norman tower. The remainder of the building is a Jacobean accretion made of brick and completely modernized.

Gilbert de Clare built a Castle at Caerdigan, Pembrokeshire, Wales. A marriage brought it into the hands of William Marshal, who soon controlled the strongest castles on the peninsula. The keep has been transformed into a modern house. Of all the castles that finally came into William Marshal's possession, this was the most important to the area. Scholars believe there is evidence that it was originally built of wood.

Richard de Clare Magna Charta Surety was the fourth Earl of Hertford but, like his father and uncle, was more generally known as Earl of Clare. He was present at the Coronation of King Richard I at Westminster, 3 September 1189, and of King John, 27 May 1199. He sided with the Barons against King John, and his Castle at Tonbridge was taken. On 9 November 1215 he was one of the commissioners who, on the part of the Barons, was to treat of peace with the King. On 4 March 1215/6 his lands in counties Cambridge, Norfolk, Suffolk; and Essex were granted to Robert de Betun; he and his son were among the Barons excommunicated by the Pope in 1215. He died between 3 October and 28 November 1217. He married Amicia, Countess of Gloucester, second daughter of William FitzRobert, Earl of Gloucester, and his wife, Hawise, daughter of Robert de Beaumont, Earl of Leicester. She died 1 January 1224/5.

Gilbert de Clare Earl of Hertford's Heir

Gilbert de Clare Magna Charta Surety, son of Surety Richard de Clare, was born about the year 1180. In June 1202 he was entrusted with the lands of Harfleur and Mostrevilliers. He was one of the Barons still opposing the arbitrary proceedings of the Crown. He championed Louis the Dauphin, fighting at Lincoln under the Baronial banner, and was taken prisoner by William Marshal, whose daughter he later married. He led an army against the Welsh in 1228 and captured Morgan Gam, who was released the next year. After an engagement in Brittany, he died on his return at Penros in that Duchy, 25 October 1230. His body was conveyed by way of Plymouth and Cranbourn to Tewkesbury. He was buried there before the High Altar 10 November 1230. He married Isabella, sister of William Marshal, Magna Charta Surety, and daughter of William Marshal, the Protector, on 9 October 1217. She died 17 January 1239/40.

John FitzRobert Lord of Warkworth Castle, Northumberland

John FitzRobert Magna Charta Surety married Ada Baliol, and in her right became lord of Barnard Castle, whose founder was Barnard Baliol. The Castle is now a scanty ruin, but the remaining walls stand high on a cliff scarp, so that wall and bank are one, dropping down to the River Tees. The Castle looms over the town, and may be approached through a gate in the yard of the King's Head Inn.

The date of the Castle's founding is between 1112 and 1132. The keep, known as Baliol's Tower, stands fifty feet high and served as a background for Sir Walter Scott's Rokeby. The surrounding property extends over six acres.

This same Surety, FitzRobert, was also lord of the handsome Warkworth Castle in the border country of Northumberland. It is an excellently preserved fortress built, at the earliest, in the 12th Century. It is situated near the mouth of the Coquet River. One approaches it from a double arched bridge and finds that

it is bounded on three sides by water. The walls, gateway and Great Hall are intact, as are the Lion Tower of the 13th Century and the 14th Century keep. Robert FitzRichard probably added to it in Henry II's reign. It became the property of the Percy family in the reign of Edward III, and is now held by the Dukes of Northumberland.

When the Barons met at Saint Edmondsbury, John FitzRobert, Magna Charta Surety, was still loyal to King John and was, with John Marshal, joint governor of the Castles of Norwich and Oxford. Subsequently he joined the insurrection, and took such a prominent part that his lands were seized by the King. He returned allegiance in the next reign, his Castles and vast estates were returned to him, and he was constituted high sheriff of County Northumberland and governor of New-Castle-upon-Tyne. He died in 1240, the same year as his father. The monk, Matthew Paris, records: "In this year died John FitzRobert, a man of noble birth, and one of the chief Barons of the Northern provinces of England."

Robert FitzWalter Lord of Dunmow Castle, Essexshire

Robert FitzWalter *Magna Charta Surety* was third lord of Dunmow Castle and leader of the Magna Charta Barons and their Army, styled "Marshal of the Army of God and the Holy Church." The first public act recorded of this subsequently important Baron and standard bearer of the City of London conveys at first a bad impression of him. It is recorded that "in 5th John 1203 Robert FitzWalter, being trusted, together with Saire de Quincey, also a Surety, to keep the Castle of Ruil in France, delivered it up to the King of that realm as soon as he came before it with an army." This appears to imply a measure of cowardice rather than disloyalty, but a short time proved to which of these motives the deed was to be ascribed. There was a possibility that FitzWalter and Quincey surrendered the Castle for a false bribe from Philip. It is also likely that the two were involved in a general Baronial conspiracy against John, knowing that he would have to be lenient with them. In 1212 John was being unusually careful about the use of the exchequer seal, possibly fearing Baronial plotting (that a wrong use would be made of the seal privately) for Canons of St. Paul's, intimates of exchequer officials, were known to be involved in FitzWalter's conspiracy. There is also controversy over FitzWalter's later hasty departure for France. Whether it was because of John's alleged seduction of Robert's daughter or his refusal to live under the reign of an excommunicate King, we cannot say.

At the time the Barons, at home and abroad, were preparing to compel King John to keep his promises in the matter of the proposed statutes, several conspiracies to this end were discovered, wherein Robert FitzWalter was materially concerned. On the discovery of his "treasonable practices," FitzWalter, with his wife and children, sought refuge in France; but the following year, 1213, his friends persuaded him to return home, and, with the other Barons, he was reconciled to King John. But this friendship was only of short duration, for soon it was discovered that he was still plotting against the King in the interests of reform in the government; so his residence in London, the Castle of Baynard, was in consequence almost entirely destroyed, and the hatred between King John and FitzWalter became yet more violent. His lands were seized, effectually binding him to the discontented Barons and the people. The active spirit of FitzWalter made him a desirable leader for their party, and he was selected as one of the commissioners who hoped to cement the differences of opinion at a meeting at Erith Church, and subsequently was elected their leader.

After the granting of Magna Charta, when King John endeavored to elude his promises, FitzWalter was one of the committee of the Baronial party which went to France to invite the Dauphin to accept the throne of England and, on this Prince's coming, he with William de Mandeville and William de Huntingfield, the Sureties, reduced the counties of Essex and Suffolk to the authority of the Dauphin. Upon the accession of Henry III, FitzWalter, then a prisoner, along with a majority of the rebel Barons, finding the Dauphin a useless political factor, dropped him and sent him back to France. In 1218, although he was a prisoner, FitzWalter was allowed to assume the Cross and join a Crusade. He took part in the famous siege of Damietta, returned home and died a peaceful death in 1234. He was buried before the High Altar of Dunmow Priory.

Notwithstanding his enmity to King John and King Henry III, and the frequent confiscation of his property, FitzWalter died possessed of an extensive estate. The monk, Matthew Paris, records: "In the same year (1234/5) at the advent of Our Lord, Robert FitzWalter, a Baron of illustrious race, and renowned in feats of arms, went the way of all flesh." His first wife was Gunora, daughter of Robert, second lord of Valoines, and he married second, Rohese, who survived him. By his first wife, FitzWalter had, with other

children, a daughter, Matilda the Fair, called "Maid Marion," said to have been poisoned by King John.

Norwich Castle, once a formidable fortress, has almost but not quite disappeared. It now stands high upon a steep mound. It is still partly surrounded by earthworks, and a ditch is spanned by a very early bridge. Only the square Norman keep remains, with its four tiers of colonades on the outside and an ornate doorway to the Great Tower. From 1345 to 1857 the building served as a prison, but when the new jail was erected outside the City, the Castle was acquired by the City Corporation and, by 1894, was adapted as a museum and art gallery.

William de Fortibus Earl of Albemarle

William de Fortibus, the youngest of the Magna Charta Sureties, came of age in 1214/5, when King John confirmed to him all the lands which accrued to him by inheritance from his mother, and he succeeded in her right as Earl of Albemarle.

Although originally on the side of the Barons, this Surety deserted them and joined King John in that expedition into the North of England so marked by destruction. For his services the King granted him all the lands belonging to his sister Alice, the wife of William Marshal, Jr., Magna Charta Surety, and constituted him in 1218, governor of the Castles of Rockingham in Northamptonshire, Sauvey in Leistershire and Botham in Lincolnshire, with strict command to destroy all the houses, parks and possessions of those Barons who were in arms against the King. In the reign of King Henry III this nobleman fought under the Royal banner at the Battle of Lincoln, and shared largely in the spoils of the victory. He was alternately for and against the Charter. Since he was opposed to the King, his submission was accomplished only by excommunication. In 1230 he was one of the commanders of the Royal troops in Normandy. He set out on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and died on the Mediterranean Sea 29 March 1241.

Of William de Fortibus the monk, Matthew Paris, wrote: "As the weather was at this time (1241) favorable, William de Fortibus, Earl of Albemarle, a bold knight (and other knights named) took leave of their friends and, commending themselves to the prayers of religious men, set out in great pomp towards Jerusalem and, embarking at the Mediterranean Sea in the Autumn, sailed forth on their voyage across the sea: 1241. Among the English nobles who died this year was one William de Forbes (*sic.*) Earl of Albemarle who, when on his pilgrimage, was taken ill on the Mediterranean Sea, and being unable to eat, endured protracted sufferings for eight days and on Friday next before Easter, on which Christ on the Cross resigned his spirit to his Father, he in like manner resigned his spirit to Christ."

William has been described by Bishop Stubbs as "a feudal adventurer of the worst type." He changed sides as often as suited his policy. Following his election as a Surety he wanted, most of all, to revive the independent power of the feudal Barons, and carried out his plans with Falkes de Breauté and other foreign adventurers whom John had established in the country. He was twice excommunicated, once in John's reign, once in Henry III's. He was never really in the Royal favor until after the death of Falkes de Breauté.

William de Hardell Mayor of London

William de Hardell *Magna Charta Surety* was Mayor of the City of London at the time of the insurrection of the Barons. It is highly probable that it was he who induced the citizens to deliver up one of the entrances of the City to the barons, the one called the Akdgate, through which they passed Sunday morning, May 17, 1215, while the people were at Mass.

There is no evidence that Hardell was a feudal Baron or a Baron by tenure and, since he was a civil officer of so early a period, there is some doubt as to the arms attributed to him. He served as sheriff of the City of London in 1207, and was the first Mayor of the City by popular election in 1215, by consent of King John. It was at his installation that the "Ridings" or Lord Mayor's Shows were instituted when the candidate was obliged by Royal command to ride in state to Westminster, where the Royal palace was situated and where the judges sat, to be presented for the King's approval.

William de Huntingfield, a feudal baron in Suffolk

Dover Castle, the stronghold which William de Huntingfield held in the Barons' War, is a famous one, fulfilling the dream of the grim place of nameless cruelties and horrible prisons. It was built near the site of the ancient Roman Pharos or lighthouse. Legends attest that once William the Conqueror advised Harold to fortify it, then to deliver it up to the Normans when the time came, for it was a stout coastal defense.

Harold was allegedly enticed to swear to do this, but if he did swear it, he took his oath lightly.

The Castle was completed by the son of Godwin, and was set high upon a rock above the sea. The rock was cut so that it was flush with the wall. By 1066 Dover Castle was thoroughly established, but there is no doubt that the wide encircling walls, the sturdy watch towers and massive keep are Norman. Even so, there were probably Roman and Saxon forts on the same site. The keep is believed to have been erected by Henry II about 1154. But the whole Castle, as we can envision it today, dates to a much earlier period.

William de Huntingfield *Magna Charta Surety*, born about 1165, married Isabel Gressinghall, widow of Osmond de Stuteville. He was made constable of Dover Castle in 1204, and delivered up his son and daughter as hostages for his loyalty to the King. The son was to remain with the Earl of Arundel, the daughter with Earl Ferrers.

He was one of five wardens of the Ports of Norfolk and Suffolk from 1210 to 1212, and the following year he was one of the itinerant justices of Lincoln. He was high sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk until the end of 1214. He witnessed King John's grant of freedom of election to churches in 1214. He was governor of Sauvey Castle in Leistershire when he joined the cause of the Barons in arms against King John, and was excommunicated by the Pope. His lands were then given to Nicholas de Haya. According to the close and patent rolls he was one of the men actively in rebellion against King John before the issuance of Magna Charta. Very likely the cause of the Protector's severity toward Huntingfield was that he was one of those who plotted to have the Dauphin come to England and, after the Dauphin's landing, was very active in reducing the Courts of Essex and Suffolk to French authority. He fought at Lincoln 20 May 1217, and was taken prisoner by the King's forces. William had a daughter, Alice Huntingfield, who was married twice, but the name of her first husband has not been preserved. Her father paid the King a fine of "six fair Norway Goshawks," in the 15th of King John, for permission to marry Alice, his daughter, then a widow, to Richard de Solers. William de Huntingfield, *Magna Charta Surety*, died 25 January 1220/1 on a Crusade.

William de Lanvallei Lord of Stanway Castle, Essex

William de Lanvallei *Magna Charta Surety* died 1217. He was governor of Colchester Castle (see later under Quincey) in 1215, when he joined the insurgent Barons. He also had Stanway Castle, which has since crumbled to dust. In 1212 Alan Basset of Wycombe, County Bucks (father of Philip Basset, Chief Justice of England, who is named in Magna Charta as one of the King's liegemen) gave the King two hundred marks and "an excellent palfrey," so that his daughter Hawise might be married to William de Lanvallei.

John de Lacie Lord of Halton Castle, Cheshire

The Lacie strongholds on the Welsh border are Beeston, Chester and Halton Castles. Beeston is now a crumbling ruin. It is hard even to identify the keep, but it could be the large wall tower East of the gate house. The Castle is perched on a height bounded on three sides by sheer drops, and a steep slope on the fourth. Its strength as a defense lay in its inaccessibility. There are two baileys, the innermost on a summit and the other situated on the sloping ground. The inner bailey was guarded on the approachable side by a gate house, two wall towers and a ditch thirty-five feet wide and thirty feet deep, which cut across the promontory. It is important to note that the artificial ravine was fashioned two hundred fifty years before blasting was known. The date of founding was in the 13th Century, and it was founded by Randolph de Blondeville, Earl of Chester.

Chester was the last City to yield to William the Conqueror, and the surrender came in 1070. Once the Normans had the Castle, William's nephew, Hugh Lupus, Palatine Earl of Chester, was appointed as head of the border patrol.

Chester Castle was originally built by the first Norman Earl of Chester, and now consists of modern buildings, the assize-court, jail and barracks. The one remaining Norman relic is "Julius Caesar's Tower," standing by the River. It is a square tower which has been used as a powder magazine, but is scarcely recognizable as a Norman building, because it has been recently recased in red stone. With the exception of this tower, another of the round style, and adjacent buildings in the upper ward, the Castle was dismantled at the end of the 18th Century. From Julius Caesar's Tower one can see the ruins of Beeston Castle, which met a like fate in 1646. Of Halton Castle nothing is left. But Lincoln Castle, on the other side of the Island, is an important monument.

Lincoln was the fourth City of the Realm when the Normans invaded, and it seemed to William to be

a logical site for a castle. The Domesday Book states that one hundred sixty-six houses were torn down to make way for it. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle held that on his return to York in 1068, William erected the Castle on the site of a Roman fort. Since the land was rather flat, a great bank was built up around it. There are two mottes, the larger one crowned by a polygonal shell wall, which may have been built by Ralph de Gernon's widow. In 1140 King Stephen captured the Castle and, in 1216, Magna Charta Surety Barons had charge of it.

John de Lacie *Magna Charta Surety*, born 1192, seventh Baron of Halton Castle and hereditary constable of Chester, was one of the earliest Barons to take up arms at the time of Magna Charta. He was also appointed to see that the new statutes were properly carried into effect and observed in the counties of York and Nottingham. He was excommunicated by the Pope. Upon the accession of King Henry III, he joined a party of noblemen and made a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, rendering valuable service at the Siege of Damietta.

In 1232 Lacie was made Earl of Lincoln and, in 1240, governor of Chester and Beeston Castles. He died 22 July 1240, and was buried in the Cistercian Abbey of Stanlaw in County Chester. The monk, Matthew Paris, records: "On the 22d day of July, in this year (1240), which was St. Magdalen's Day, John, Earl of Lincoln, after suffering from a long illness went the way of all flesh." His first wife was Alice, daughter of Gilbert d'Aquila, but by her he had no issue. She died in 1215 and he married second, after his marked gallantry at the Siege of Damietta, Margaret, only daughter and heiress of Robert de Quincy, a fellow Crusader, who died in the Holy Land, eldest son of Saire de Quincy, Magna Charta Surety. They had three children, Lady Margaret survived him and married second Walter Marshal, Earl of Pembroke.

William Malet Lord of Curry-Malet, Somersetshire

William Malet Magna Charta Surety, was mentioned as a minor in the year 1194, in connection with an expedition made that year into Normandy. His principal estate was Curry-Malet. From 1210 to 1214 he was sheriff of counties Somerset and Dorset. He then joined the Barons against King John and became one of the Sureties. He had lands in four counties which were confiscated and given to his son-in-law, Hugh de Vivonia, Thomas Basset, and to his father-in-law, and Malet was excommunicated by the Pope in 1216. He was also fined 2,000 marks, but the sum was not paid until after his death, and at that time 1,000 marks were remitted, being found due to him for military service to King John in Poitou. It is interesting to note that there were five contemporary relatives named Malet, all of whom held lands in England or in Jersey. William Malet died about 1217, having married Mabel, called also Alice and Aliva, daughter of Thomas Basset of Headington. Nothing now remains of Malet's estate of Curry-Malet.

Geoffrey de Mandeville Earl of Essex and Gloucester

Geoffrey de Mandeville *Magna Charta Surety*, upon paying King John 20,000 marks, obtained a license in 1214 to marry Avisia or Isabella, daughter of William, Count of Meullent, who had first been King John's wife, but who was repudiated in 1200 because of consanguinity, since both the King and Queen were great grandchildren of King Henry I. Geoffrey died two years after their marriage, and Avisia was promised to Hubert de Burgh, but the marriage never took place, and she died without issue. In right of his wife Geoffrey de Mandeville became Earl of Gloucester, and was placed in full possession of all the liberties belonging to this Earldom and to the lordship of Glamorgan in Wales. He was one of the wealthiest of the Barons opposed to King John. He was excommunicated for adhering to the Barons' party. His life was short. He was mortally wounded in a tournament in London in February 1216, and died 23 February, without issue. He was interred in the Priory of the Holy Trinity in the suburbs of the City.

He was succeeded by his brother William de Mandeville, who also took the part of the Barons and maintained it, even after the death of King John, for he had assisted Louis of France in the siege of Berkamstead Castle, which was occupied by the King's forces. William died without issue 8 January 1227, when the Earldom of Essex devolved upon his sister, Maud Bohun, Countess of Hereford, while the lands which he inherited passed to his half brother, John FitzGeoffrey, whose wife was Isabel Bigod, widow of Gilbert de Lacie and daughter of Hugh Bigod, Magna Charta Surety.

Geoffrey de Mandeville's Castle at Gloucester is nothing but a city jail, yet once it was a Saxon Castle and later a Norman stronghold.

William Marshal Jr. Earl of Pembroke's Heir

William Marshal *Magna Charta Surety* was sometimes as strenuous a supporter of the Baronial cause as his father was of the Royal interests; consequently he was excommunicated by the Pope. When the Dauphin came to London he was one of the prominent men who recognized him as King of England. Upon the death of King John, the Protector procured the consent of the Barons to the coronation of young Henry, requiring the allegiance of the Barons including his own son, William Marshal, Jr. When the rebels were finally conquered, he went back to the King's cause, profiting nicely at the expense of some of his slower former colleagues. In 1223/4 he returned from Ireland and gained a great victory over Prince Llewellyn and the Welsh who in his absence had taken two of his castles. He was made governor of the Castles of Caerdigan and Caermarthen and, in 1230, captain-general of all the King's forces in Bretagne. William Marshal succeeded as second Earl of Pembroke and died 24 April 1231, very wealthy but without issue.

The Marshal country is the tip end of the Welsh Peninsula. One of his finest Castles was Pembroke. It is situated on a singularly steep hill, while the town clings precariously to the slopes. Although the Castle is now a county jail, it still retains some of the atmosphere of the old fortress, for it dwarfs all else with its bulk. Externally it is one of the finest ruins in Wales. It was originally built by Arnulph de Montgomery at the close of the 11th Century. The buildings of the outer ward were added not earlier than the 14th Century. The great vaulted keep, erected by William Marshal about 1200, is almost intact. There is a handsome gateway with slender flanking turrets, and the Great Hall is well preserved. Beneath the banqueting hall there is a vast cavern, known as the "Wogan," giving access to the harbor.

The Castle has been restored. Early in the 20th Century it was strongly fortified and occupied by a small garrison. Barracks filled the Court. The keep is in excellent condition, with its walls twenty-three feet thick and a hundred feet high. Inside there are a Norman chapel and a three-hundred-foot wall which is said to have been dug by Harold.

Roger de Montbegon Lord of Norneby, Lancashire

Roger de Montbegon *Magna Charta Surety* was the successor of Adam de Monte Begonis, whose principal lands were in Lincolnshire. Roger was apparently the son of this Adam by his wife Maud FitzSwaine. During the imprisonment of Richard I in Germany, Roger de Montbegon seems to have favored Prince John's designs on the throne, since he was one of those who held the Castle of Nottingham against the Bishop of Durham. When, however, the King on his return advanced to besiege that fortress, he came out and submitted himself without shooting an arrow. He was one of the most adamant in refusing to pay the levy assessed to those who did not supply the King with soldiers, and must have been more mercurial than most of the Barons. Whenever he was in one of his periodic lapses of disgrace, the King would reclaim some of the lands he had previously granted. In the Barons' proceedings to procure the Charter of Liberty from King John, he took a prominent part and was one of the parties to the covenant for surrendering the City and Tower of London into the hands of the Barons, although several lordships were granted or confirmed to him by King John as late as 1215/6. There is, however, no reason to doubt his original loyalty to the cause of the Barons for when he took up arms against the King, his possessions were seized and given to Oliver d'Albini, while he himself was excommunicated with the other Barons. Roger de Montbegon had no issue by his wife Olivia, whom he married about 1200, widow of Robert St. John. When he died in 1225/6 his Castle of Horneby in Lancashire was given by the King to John de Warren, Earl of Surrey; but when Henry de Montbegon became heir to Roger, he recovered it. Nevertheless Roger deserted the Barons before Magna Charta was confirmed a year and Roger de Mowbray was substituted for him among the Sureties. He was a younger brother of Magna Charta Surety William de Mowbray. He did not marry and died in 1217/8, his elder brother William, succeeding to his estate. The armorial ensigns of Roger de Mowbray are extant in the South aisle of Westminster Abbey, as he was one of its benefactors.

Horneby Castle in Lancashire, now the seat of the Duke of Leeds, has not been of sufficient interest to warrant a description. On the other hand, Nottingham, the other Castle held by Roger de Montbegon, was once the key to the North. It now is overshadowed by a palatial combination museum and art gallery. It occupies a conspicuous site on a steep, rocky hill. The original remains include a restored Norman gateway and some few fragments of fortifications.

Nottingham Castle seems to owe its origin to the Danes, who are said to have erected a fort in 868. The later building was probably ordered by Edward the Elder. The rock motte evidently was not severed from the rest

of the headland by a ditch until the Norman Castle was built, under the direction of William the Conqueror in 1067, when William returned, on the occasion of Yorkshire's first rebellion. Apparently realizing that this was the foremost midland fortress, he left William Peverel in command.

The two upper wards could have been suggested by William. The upper one forms a natural motte of rock, fifteen feet higher than the bailey attached to it. The keep has Norman buttresses. The North side of the small ward which formed the top of the motte was enclosed in a shell wall, no longer in existence. The Castle has been so changed by a 17th Century spoiler that the work of King Henry and King John is all gone, except for one small tower which seems to have been a part of the inner bailey defense system.

Montbegon was the original surety who was replaced by Roger de Mowbray.

Richard de Montfichet, a feudal baron in Essex

Richard de Montfichet Magna Charta Surety was under age at the time of his father's death, and his wardship was committed to Roger de Lacie, Constable of Chester. He evidently came of age almost within the month of the signing of Magna Charta. It is notable that so young a man was so soon elected a Surety for the observance of Magna Charta, and to a position of political responsibility. As he was not of age until the Spring of 1215, his first public act appears to have been that of joining the Baronial party in arms against the King. The next year he went with Magna Charta Surety Robert FitzWalter into France to solicit aid and continued to be one of the most enthusiastic of the Barons, until he was taken prisoner at Lincoln. Even after he was released he attended a tournament at Blithe in the 7th of King Henry III, contrary to the King's, that is, the Protector's prohibition, for which his lands were seized. Later he made peace with the King and was, in 1236/7, constituted Justice of the King's forests or game parks in nineteen counties of England, and in 1241/2 was made sheriff of Essex and governor of Hertford Castle. It would appear that he was the last survivor of the Sureties.

Richard de Montfichet died without issue, never having married and after 1258 his lands were divided among his three sisters, one of whom was Aveline, wife of William de Fortibus, the Magna Charta Surety.

Roger de Mowbray, a feudal baron in Northumberland

He replaced Roger de Montbegon as Magna Charta Surety.

William de Mowbray Lord of Axholme Castle, Lincolnshire

William de Mowbray Magna Charta Surety came of age in 1194/5. He was early embittered against King John by being compelled to surrender the Barony of Frontboeuf, which Henry I had conferred upon his great grandfather, Sir Nigel d'Aubigny. That, and the aid exacted from his vassals, enraged him. We note in Magna Charta, Article 16, that a lord is forbidden to demand more service than a fief owes. Perhaps William was influential in getting this clause accepted. The debt was probably exacted because Mowbray, upon the accession of King John, was tardy in pledging his allegiance and at length swore fealty only on condition that "the King should render to every man his right." At the breaking out of the Baronial war, he was governor of York Castle, and it is not surprising that he at once sided with the Barons against King John, and was one of the most forward among them.

He was a party to the "Covenant for holding the City and Tower of London," and one of those whom the Pope excommunicated. He continued in arms after the death of King John, and in the Battle of Lincoln he was taken prisoner. His lands were confiscated and bestowed upon William Marshal, Jr., Magna Charta Surety, but he was subsequently allowed to redeem them. After this he attached himself to King Henry III. He died in 1223/4 at his Castle in the Isle of Axholme, and was buried in the Abbey of Newburgh in Yorkshire. His wife was Avice d'Albini.

The Mowbray Castles are an impressive array. Axholme seems to offer no discernible ruins, and the land has become a swamp. New-Castle-upon-Tyne boasts a stern building in dreary surroundings, built on the site of an earlier fortress, and thus its present name. It has more the appearance of a prison than a Royal stronghold, partly because its walls are begrimed with factory smoke. However, if it had been left out in the country, it might have fallen into ruins sooner. It is an exceptionally fine example of a Norman stronghold.

The keep is the chief relic of the Castle on the Tyne. For centuries it was the residence of Royalty when

Kings visited the North. It symbolized their power at those times when they were not in residence. It was founded by Robert, son of the Conqueror. It had massive walls and was flanked by a moat on the town side, while the steep climb discouraged approach from the River. The present keep is a later building, dated in the last decade of the 12th Century. Only once did William the Conqueror stop here. At the end of the Century Robert de Mowbray, Earl of Northumberland, seized and garrisoned it in his effort to dethrone William Rufus. At the death of Henry I it was captured by King David of Scotland. Stephen arrived with an army, and a truce was arranged, whereby King Stephen agreed to cede Northumberland to the Scottish Kings who, from then on, held court at Newcastle.

The Castle was founded in the 11th Century by Robert Curthose, but the keep, which is all that is left, dates from about 1172. It is eighty-five feet high; to the top of the turret it measures one hundred seven feet, and its walls are from twelve to eighteen feet thick. The second floor is reached by an outside staircase. The chapel, the finest room, is located in the basement. Both the Great Hall and the Well Chamber have been well preserved.

Originally Newcastle was the strongest fortress in the North. Before its completion William the Lion was marched through its gates, after the capture of Alnwick and Baliol 26 December 1262, and did homage to Edward I as King of Scotland, in Newcastle's Great Hall.

The area within the outer walls and fosse measured three acres. Fragments of the wall, the Black Gate, the principal entrance, stand encased in late construction. The Watergate or Southern Postern has disappeared entirely. The keep is well preserved and the chapel also, a fine example of late Norman style.

William the Conqueror built two Castles at York. His second Castle is now marked by Baile Hill; the mound of the Castle is nonexistent. Clifford's Tower marks the place of the keep of the former Castle, near which in 1188/9 five hundred Jews were massacred in the reign of Richard I.

Saire de Quincy Earl of Winchester

Saire de Quincy *Magna Charta Surety*, born before 1154, was a Baron present at Lincoln when William the Lion of Scotland did homage to the English monarch in October 1200. He obtained large grants and immunities from King John and was created Earl of Winchester, 2 March 1207, having been governor in 1203 of the Castle of Ruil in Normandy. He is created with rewriting Magna Charta from the Charter of King Henry I and the Saxon Code. Because he had opposed the King's concession to the Pope's legate, he was bitterly hated by King John. One of the Barons to whom the City and Tower of London were resigned, Saire de Quincy was excommunicated with the other Barons the following year. He was sent, with Robert FitzWalter, *Magna Charta Surety*, by the other Barons, to invite the Dauphin of France to assume the Crown of England and, even after the death of King John, he kept a strong garrison in Montsorell Castle in behalf of Prince Louis. When the Barons, being greatly outnumbered, were defeated by the troops of King Henry III, Saire de Quincy, with many others, was made prisoner and his estates forfeited.

In the following October his immense estates were restored upon his submission. In 1218 the Earl of Winchester went with the Earls of Chester and Arundel to the Holy Land, assisted at the siege of Damietta in 1219, and died 3 November in the same year, on the way to Jerusalem. His wife was Margaret Beaumont, whom he married before 1173.

At the beginning of John's reign, Saire de Quincy was not a Baron, much less a great one. In the civil war the King had had the advantage over the rebels. Few of the Barons had had much actual military experience. The Barons' contribution to the war was the scutage they paid, a war fund substituted for the contingent of knights owed to the King's service. The money was collected from vassals, and mercenary knights were paid from it. Many of the mercenaries were regulars who served the same Baron from campaign to campaign, but those Barons who are known to have had extensive military experience were only Saire de Quincy, Robert FitzWalter, William de Mowbray, William d'Albini, Roger de Cressi and Robert de Roos.

Saire de Quincy is associated with two stalwart Castles in the South of England: Colchester and Winchester, both with the Latin castrum root, signifying that they were once the site of Roman forts. Colchester Castle could not have been built before the early 12th Century, though Roman materials may have been re-used in its construction. The keep, the only portion now surviving, is in complete harmony with other Norman castles. Colchester must have been a formidable stronghold, and a challenge to Saire de Quincy. The King's men held the Castle against Quincy, the first Earl to attack Colchester. John had given the fortress into the charge of a Fleming whom he thought he could trust. But Quincy took the Castle, and

later found holding it more difficult. The fighting was of such a nature that John himself came to Colchester to see just how stubborn Saire de Quincy was. The Earl held the Castle for two months, but lack of food forced him to give up and take flight to France.

Colchester was the largest Norman keep in England. It measures one hundred fifty-two by one hundred seventeen feet, enclosing nearly twice the area of the Tower of London. Its walls vary between eleven and thirty feet in thickness. It was erected either by William the Conqueror or by William II. It is of the quadrangular variety, turreted at the corners. In it and elsewhere herringbone masonry has been noted.

Winchester Castle was first erected by William the Conqueror. Later alterations and extra height were added by Henry III, about the year 1138. The great Hall has Purbeck columns of 13th Century architecture, supporting a restored roof and containing handsome windows of the same approximate period. Only the keep remains. "How commonplace this saying, 'Only the keep still stands,' . . . thanks to the old builders who made the keep strong and high to withstand time, and so difficult to tear down that it escaped the looters of the ages." Perhaps Murphy was thinking of Colchester or Winchester when he thus wrote, for this was the fate of the Quincy strongholds.

Richard de Percy, a feudal baron of Yorkshire

Richard de Percy *the Surety* inherited from his aunt, the "countess of Warwick," who died without issue, her share of the Percy heritage. He was one of the first powerful lords to take up arms against King John in the cause of "a constitutional government," and was excommunicated. He died without issue about 1244.

Robert de Ros Lord of Hamlake Castle, Yorkshire

The Barons de Roos owned Helmsley or Hamlake Castle. Baedeker remarks only that it is an interesting Castle, but we can give some description of it. Hamlake has a rectangular bailey, a barbican, and an outwork at the East end of the bailey. Its singular defense was a double line of ditches, both of which were fed by the River Rye. The curtain wall was built about 1170, and the keep about 1190. The East gateway and barbican are ascribed to the 13th Century. The Castle, except for the keep, was destroyed in 1649. The other half remains, one hundred feet above the bailey. The keep is an excellent example of traditional design, combining the old square style with coming roundness in towers. The outside of the tower is rounded to baffle sappers, and the portion inside the curtain is square, as a convenience for the occupants.

Robert de Ros of Fursan *Magna Charta Surety*, fourth Baron of Hamlake Manor, was born in 1177. When only fifteen years of age he had paid a thousand marks' fine for livery of his lands, and in 1197 when aged twenty years, while with the King of Normandy, he was arrested, though we know nothing of the offense, and was committed to the custody of Hugh de Chaumont. However, de Chaumont trusted his prisoner to William de Spiney, and the latter allowed him to escape out of the Castle of Bonville. King Richard thereupon hanged de Spiney and collected a fine of twelve hundred marks, about eight hundred pounds, from Roos' guardian as the price of his continued freedom.

When John became King, he gave young Roos the whole Barony of his great grandmother's father, Walter d'Espes, as conciliation. About the 14th of King John, Robert assumed the habit of a monk, whereupon the custody of all his lands and Castle Werke, were committed to Philip d'Ulcote. But Robert did not long continue as a recluse, as in about a year he was executing the office of high sheriff of County Cumberland. At the beginning of the struggle of the Barons for a constitutional government, he at first sided with King John and, in consequence, obtained some valuable grants from the Crown. He was made governor of Carlisle, but was later won over by the Barons. He returned to his allegiance in the reign of Henry III for, in 1217/8, his manors were restored to him, and, although he was a witness to the second Great Charter and the Forest Charter of 1224, he seems to have been in favor with the King.

Roos erected the Castles of Helmsley, or Hamlake, in Yorkshire, and of Werke, in Northumberland. He was a member of the Order of Knights Templar. He died in 1226/7 and was buried "in his proper habit" in the Knights' Church, or the New Temple in London, where his tomb may be seen. His effigy is described by Gough, in "Sepulchral Monuments," as "the most elegant of all the figures in the Temple Church, representing a comly young knight in mail, and a flowing mantle with a kind of cowl; his hair neatly curled at the sides; his crown appears shaved. His hands are elevated in a praying posture, and on his left arm is a short, pointed shield charged with three water-bougets. He has on his left side a long sword, and the armor

of his legs, which are crossed, has a ridge, or a seam up the front, continued over the knee. At his feet is a lion, and the whole figure measures six feet two inches.” He married Isabel, daughter of William the Lion, King of Scotland, and widow of Robert Bruce.

Geoffrey de Say, a feudal baron in Sussex

Geoffrey de Say *Magna Charta Surety* was in arms with the other Barons against the King, and consequently his extensive lands and possessions in ten counties were seized. These were given to Peter de Crohim. Six of the counties we can name: Northampton, Cambridge, Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk and Lincoln, but we cannot be sure of what Castles in those areas were Geoffrey’s, or which other four counties he could claim.

While William d’Albini and his companions were holding Rochester Castle, they had been assured that other Baronial leaders would relieve them if the Castle were to be besieged by King John. Such a rescue would not have been easy unless the Royal guards were lax in watching the bridge over the Medway. If this bridge were under guard, a march to Rochester from London along the Dover Road would prove impossible, the company then being forced to detour and approach Rochester from Maidstone. Nevertheless, on 26 October, they moved in as far as Dover, where they soon heard that the King was on his way to meet them. They promptly returned to London, leaving the Rochester garrison to do the best it could.

Perhaps the march on Rochester was a sop to the Barons’ consciences. Had it been a serious move, it would have been an extraordinarily foolish one. The only other attempt to save Rochester was negotiatory. On 9 November King John issued letters of conduct for Richard de Clare, Robert FitzWalter, Geoffrey de Say and the Mayor of London, to confer with the Royal emissaries: Peter de Roches, Hubert de Burgh and the Earls of Arundel and Warren. There is no certainty that these men ever met. If indeed they did, nothing came of it. We suspect that the meeting was originally planned with the hope that a proposal would be accepted, and it is not unlikely that the proposal would have been a willingness to surrender Rochester Castle to the King if the garrison could go free, but no such move resulted. Yet despite the futility of the meeting, at least we see Geoffrey de Say connected, if lightly, with Rochester Castle. And this is the only Castle with which we are able to link his name.

Geoffrey de Say returned to the Royalist party when the civil war was over, and sided with King Henry III, thereby regaining his lost lands after the expulsion of the Dauphin. He died 24 October 1230 leaving a son, William, as his heir, by Alice, daughter of William de Cheney.

Robert de Vere Earl of Oxford

The principal residence of the de Veres was Castle Headingham. The keep still stands sentry guard over the River Colne in the North of Essex, probably erected by Aubrey de Vere, who died in 1194. The Headingham keep ranks with that of Rochester as the finest of the square keeps in England.

Oxford Castle was the seat of the Earls de Vere. It now consists of little more than a Norman tower which stands inside the walls of a county jail. It was here that King Stephen laid siege to Matilda in 1141. She escaped by a rope ladder fashioned from bed sheets during the night and, fleeing, found refuge at Wallingford.

Oxford Castle is thought to be the oldest in all England. The Norman structure was built in 1071 by Robert d’Oilly. From what is left of it we can conclude that it was originally a pre-Norman motte and bailey fort. After the 1071 rebuilding, alterations were made by Henry II, between 1165 and 1173. He added the houses inside the shell keep, and also the well. He presumably built the diagonal keep on the motte, the foundations of which were discovered in the 18th Century.

Robert de Vere *Magna Charta Surety*, born after 1164, became heir to his brother, Aubrey de Vere, who died without issue before September of 1214, and who was reputed to be one of the “evil councillors” of King John. Although he was hereditary lord great Chamberlain of the kingdom, Robert pursued a different course in politics from that of his brother, and became one of the principal Barons in arms against King John, a party to that covenant which resigned the custody of the City and Tower of London to the Barons, and one of those excommunicated by the Pope. In the beginning of the reign of King Henry III, after he had made his peace with that young monarch following the Battle of Lincoln, Robert was received into his favor, and was appointed one of the judges in the Court of King’s Bench, but he died only a few months afterward, 25~ October 1221, and was buried in the Priory of Hatfield, Broad Oak, in Essex. His wife was Isabel, who died

3 February 124S, daughter of Hugh, second Baron de Bolebec in Northumberland.

Eustace de Vesci Lord of Alnwick, Northumberland

The Vesci family had control of Alnwick Castle (pronounced “Onick”) built as a threat to Scotland in Northumberland. The Vesci family came to an end, and the Castle went to the Percys in 1309. It is now in fragments, embodied in a palace of later date. The walls have been integrated into the residence of the Dukes of Northumberland. The property consists of five acres. Fortunately, parts of the building have been restored. The oldest of these is the Norman gateway, dating from the 12th Century, also the well in the keep.

In the second half of the 18th Century more than half the Castle was renovated, and an Italian style of decoration was applied to the interior. In the park there is a monument commemorating the capture of William the Lion, when he besieged the town in 1174.

According to the chronicler of Alnwick Abbey, the Barony of Alnwick belonged to Gilbert Tyson prior to the Conquest. His son and heir, William, was killed at Hastings, leaving no issue. His daughter and estates were granted to Ivo de Vesci. In 1297 William, first Baron Vesci, died without surviving issue, and left the Barony to the Bishop of Durham, who sold it to Sir Henry Percy. The Castle slowly became the center of the town, which supposedly received its borough charter from King John.

Alnwick Castle, built by Eustace FitzJohn in 1140, is said to be the finest example of its kind. It is one of those Castles that boast an open or shell keep and a complete enceinte. For two Centuries it remained tenantless until the present family succeeded. The restoration was instituted between 1750 and 1786.

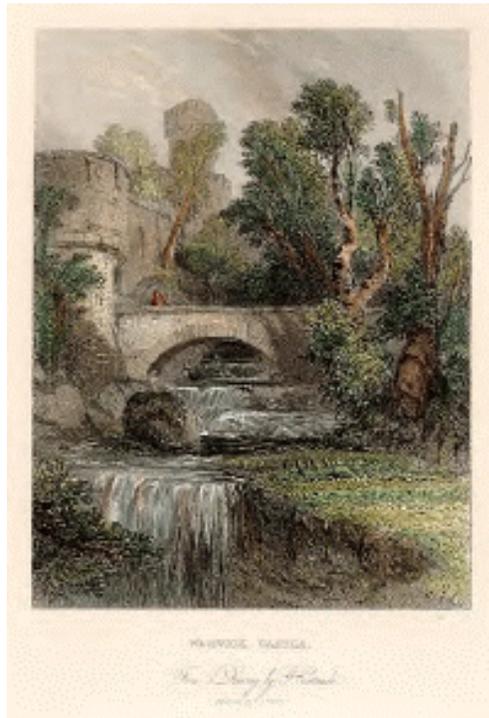
Near Philadelphia, the mansion of the Harrison Estate, now Beaver College, Glenside, Pennsylvania, is a replica of the Castle of Alnwick in Northumberland. It is considered a very creditable facsimile.

Eustace de Vesci *Magna Charta Surety* was feudal lord of Alnwick Castle. He came of age in 1190 and, in 1199, was sent by King John as one of the ambassadors to King William the Lion of Scotland. He married one of William’s daughters. Soon he became closely connected with the rise and progress of the Baronial cause. In 1212 he and Robert FitzWalter, *Magna Charta Surety*, were called to give security for faithful allegiance, whereupon they fled to Scotland. De Vesci’s English possessions were seized and also his Castle of Alnwick, which was to be destroyed, but the order was never carried out. This order so embittered de Vesci that he became the most persistent of the King’s enemies, and a principal leader in the insurrection. He soon was taking a prominent part in all their conventions, endeavoring to revive the laws of Edward the Confessor. He was one of the Barons to whom the City and Tower of London were committed. He was excommunicated, and was one of those who urged the Dauphin to come to England. While attending his brother-in-law, Alexander, King of Scots, as he welcomed Prince Louis and paid him Scotland’s homage in 1216, Eustace de Vesci passed Bernard Castle in Yorkshire and noted that it displayed the Royal banner. He approached the Castle to see if and how it could be captured, and was mortally wounded in the attempt.

~ ~ ~

Appendix F

Documents



Warwick Castle
engraved by J.C. Bentley after a picture by Cattermole,
published in *Gallery of Modern British Artists*, 1836.

The Salic Law

(Gengler, *Germanische Rechtsdenkmaeler*,” p. 267.)

Title I. Concerning Summonses.

1. If any one be summoned before the “Thing” by the king's law, and do not come he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings (solid).
2. But he who summons another, and does not come himself, shall, if a lawful impediment have not delayed him, be sentenced to 15 shillings, to be paid to him whom he summoned.
3. And he who summons another shall walk with witnesses to the home of that man, and, if he be not at home, shall bid the wife or any one of the family to make known to him that he has been summoned to court.
4. But if he be occupied in the king's service he can not summon him.
5. But if he shall be inside the hundred seeing about his own affairs, he can summon him in the manner explained above.

Title II. Concerning Thefts of Pigs etc.

1. If any one steal a sucking pig, and it be proved against him, he shall be sentenced to 120 denars, which make three shillings.
2. If any one steal a pig that can live without its mother, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 40 denars-that is, 1 shilling.
14. If any one steal 25 sheep where there were no more in that flock, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 2500 denars-that is, 62 shillings.

Title III. Concerning Thefts of Cattle.

4. If any one steal that bull which rules the herd and never has been yoked, he shall be sentenced to 1800 denars, which make 45 shillings.
5. But if that bull is used for the coves of three villages in common, he who stole him shall be sentenced to three times 45 shillings.
6. If any one steal a bull belonging to the king he shall be sentenced to 3600 denars, which make 90 shillings.

Title IV. Concerning Damage done among Crops or in any Enclosure.

1. If any one finds cattle, or a horse, or flocks of any kind in his crops, he shall not at all mutilate them.
2. If he do this and confess it, he shall restore the worth of the animal in place of it, and shall himself keep the mutilated one.
3. But if he have not confessed it, and it have been proved on him, he shall be sentenced, besides the value of the animal and the fines for delay, to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.

Title XI. Concerning Thefts or Housebreakings of Freemen.

1. If any freeman steal, outside of the house, something worth 2 denars, he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.
2. But if he steal, outside of the house, something worth 40 denars, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced, besides the amount and the fines for delay, to 1400 denars, which make 35 shillings.
3. If a freeman break into a house and steal something worth 2 denars, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 15 shillings
4. But if he shall have stolen something worth more than 5 denars, and it have been proved on him, he shall be sentenced, besides the worth of the object and the fines for delay, to 1400 denars, which make 35

shillings.

5. But if he have broken, or tampered with, the lock, and thus have entered the house and stolen anything from it, he shall be sentenced, besides the worth of the object and the fines for delay, to 1800 denars, which make 45 shillings.

6. And if he have taken nothing, or have escaped by flight, he shall, for the housebreaking alone, be sentenced to 1200 denars, which make 30 shillings.

Title XII. Concerning Thefts or Housebreakings on the Part of Slaves.

1. If a slave steal, outside of the house, something worth two denars, he shall, besides paying the worth of the object and the fines for delay, be stretched out and receive 120 blows.

2. But if he steal something worth 40 denars, he shall either be castrated or pay 6 shillings. But the lord of the slave who committed the theft shall restore to the plaintiff the worth of the object and the fines for delay.

Title XIII. Concerning Rape committed by Freemen.

1. If three men carry off a free born girl, they shall be compelled to pay 30 shillings.

2. If there are more than three, each one shall pay 5 shillings.

3. Those who shall have been present with boats shall be sentenced to three shillings.

4. But those who commit rape shall be compelled to pay 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

5. But if they have carried off that girl from behind lock and key, or from the spinning room, they shall be sentenced to the above price and penalty.

6. But if the girl who is carried off be under the king's protection, then the "frith" (peace-money) shall be 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

7. But if a bondsman of the king, or a leet, should carry off a free woman, he shall be sentenced to death.

8. But if a free woman have followed a slave of her own will, she shall lose her freedom.

9. If a freeborn man shall have taken an alien bondswoman, he shall suffer similarly.

10. If any body take an alien spouse and join her to himself in matrimony, he shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

Title XIV. Concerning Assault and Robbery.

1. If any one have assaulted and plundered a free man, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

2. If a Roman have plundered a Salian Frank, the above law shall be observed.

3. But if a Frank have plundered a Roman, he shall be sentenced to 35 shillings.

4. If any man should wish to migrate, and has permission from the king, and shall have shown this in the public "Thing"; whoever, contrary to the decree of the king, shall presume to oppose him, shall be sentenced to 8000 denars, which make 200 shillings.

Title XV. Concerning Arson.

1. If any one shall set fire to a house in which men were sleeping, as many freemen as were in it can make complaint before the "Thing"; and if any one shall have been burned in it, the incendiary shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

Title XVII. Concerning Wounds.

1. If any one have wished to kill another person, and the blow have missed, he on whom it was proved shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

2. If any person have wished to strike another with a poisoned arrow, and the arrow have glanced aside, and it shall be proved on him; he shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

3. If any person strike another on the head so that the brain appears, and the three bones which lie above the brain shall project, he shall be sentenced to 1200 denars, which make 30 shillings.

4. But if it shall have been between the ribs or in the stomach, so that the wound appears and reaches to the entrails, he shall be sentenced to 1200 denars-which make 30 shillings-besides five shillings for the physician's pay.

5. If any one shall have struck a man so that blood falls to the floor, and it be proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.

6. But if a freeman strike a freeman with his fist so that blood does not flow, he shall be sentenced for each blow-up to 3 blows-to 120 denars, which make 3 shillings.

Title XVIII. Concerning him who, before the King, accuses an innocent Man.

If any one, before the king, accuse an innocent man who is absent, he shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

Title XIX. Concerning Magicians.

1. If any one have given herbs to another so that he die, he shall be sentenced to 200 shillings (or shall surely be given over to fire).

2. If any person have bewitched another, and he who was thus treated shall escape, the author of the crime, who is proved to have committed it, shall be sentenced to 2500 denars, which make 63 shillings.

Title XXIV. Concerning the Killing of little children and women.

1. If any one have slain a boy under 10 years-up to the end of the tenth-and it shall have been proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 24000 denars, which make 600 shillings.

3. If any one have hit a free woman who is pregnant and she dies, he shall be sentenced to 28000 denars, which make 700 shillings.

6. If any one have killed a free woman after she has begun bearing children, he shall be sentenced to 24000 denars, which make 600 shillings.

7. After she can have no more children, he who kills her shall be sentenced to 8000 denars, which make 200, shillings.

Title XXX. Concerning Insults.

3. If any one, man or woman, shall have called a woman harlot, and shall not have been able to prove it, he shall be sentenced to 1800 denars, which make 45 shillings.

4. If any person shall have called another "fox," he shall be sentenced to 3 shillings.

5. If any man shall have called another "hare," he shall be sentenced to 3 shillings.

6. If any man shall have brought it up against another that he have thrown away his shield, and shall not have been able to prove it, he shall be sentenced to 120 denars, which make 3 shillings.

7. If any man shall have called another "spy" or "perjurer," and shall not have been able to prove it, he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.

Title XXXIII. Concerning the Theft of hunting animals.

2. If any one have stolen a tame marked stag (-hound ?), trained to hunting, and it shall have been proved through witnesses that his master had him for hunting, or had killed with him two or three beasts, he shall be sentenced to 1800 denars, which make 45 shillings.

Title XXXIV. Concerning the Stealing of Fences.

1. If any man shall have cut 3 staves by which a fence is bound or held together, or have stolen or cut the heads of 3 stakes, he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.

2. If any one shall have drawn a harrow through another's harvest after it has sprouted, or shall have gone through it with a waggon where there was no road, he shall be sentenced to 120 denars, which make 3

shillings.

3. If any one shall have gone, where there is no way or path, through another's harvest which has already become thick, he shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings.

Title XLI. Concerning the Murder of Free Men.

1. If any one shall have killed a free Frank, or a barbarian living under the Salic law, and it have been proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 8000 denars.

2. But if he shall have thrown him into a well or into the water, or shall have covered him with branches or anything else, to conceal him, he shall be sentenced to 24000 denars, which make 600 shillings.

3. But if any one has slain a man who is in the service of the king, he shall be sentenced to 24000 denars, which make 600 shillings.

4. But if he have put him in the water or in a well, and covered him with anything to conceal him, he shall be sentenced to 72000 denars, which make 1800 shillings.

5. If any one have slain a Roman who eats in the king's palace, and it have been proved on him, he shall be sentenced to 12000 denars, which make 300 shillings.

6. But if the Roman shall not have been a landed proprietor and table companion of the king, he who killed him shall be sentenced to 4000 denars, which make 100 shillings.

7. But if he shall have killed a Roman who was obliged to pay tribute, he shall be sentenced to shillings.

9. If any one have thrown a free man into a well, and he have escaped alive, he (the criminal) shall be sentenced to 4000 denars, which make 100 shillings.

Title XLV. Concerning Migrators.

1. If any one wish to migrate to another village and if one or more who live in that village do not wish to receive him, -if there be only one who objects, he shall not have leave to move there.

2. But if he shall have presumed to settle in that village in spite of his rejection by one or two men, then some one shall give him warning. And if he be unwilling to go away, he who gives him warning shall give him warning, with witnesses, as follows: I warn thee that thou mayst remain here this next night as the Salic law demands, and I warn thee that within 10 nights thou shalt go forth from this village. After another 10 nights he shall again come to him and warn him again within 10 nights to go away. If he still refuse to go, again 10 nights shall be added to the command, that the number of 30 nights may be full. If he will not go away even then, then he shall summon him to the "Thing," and present his witnesses as to the separate commands to leave. If he who has been warned will not then move away, and no valid reason detains him, and all the above warnings which we have mentioned have been given according to law: then he who gave him warning shall take the matter into his own hands and request the "comes" to go to that place and expel him. And because he would not listen to the law, that man shall relinquish all that he has earned there, and, besides, shall be sentenced to 1200 denars, which make 30 shillings.

3. But if anyone have moved there, and within 12 months no one have given him warning, he shall remain as secure as the other neighbours.

Title XLVL Concerning Transfers of Property.

1. The observance shall be that the Thunginus or Centenarius shall call together a "Thing," and shall have his shield in the "Thing," and shall demand three men as witnesses for each of the three transactions. He (the owner of the land to be transferred) shall seek a man who has no connection with himself, and shall throw a stalk into his lap. And to him into whose lap he has thrown the stalk he shall tell, concerning his property, how much of it - or whether the whole or a half - he wishes to give. He in whose lap he threw the stalk shall remain in his (the owner's) house, and shall collect three or more guests, and shall have the property - as much as is given him - in his power. And, afterwards, he to whom that property is entrusted shall discuss all these things with the witnesses collected afterwards, either before the king or in the regular "Thing," he shall give the property up to him for whom it was intended. He shall take the stalk in the "Thing," and, before 12 months are over, shall throw it into the lap of him whom the owner has named heir; and he shall restore not

more nor less, but exactly as much as was entrusted to him.

2. And if any one shall wish to say anything against this, three sworn witnesses shall say that they were in the “Thing” which the “Thunginus” or “Centenarius” called together, and that they saw that man who wished to give his property throw a stalk into the lap of him whom he had selected. They shall name by name him who threw his property into the lap of the other, and, likewise, shall name him whom he named his heir. And three other sworn witnesses shall say that he in whose lap the stalk was thrown had remained in the house of him who gave his property, and had there collected three or more guests and that they had eaten porridge at table, and that he had collected those who were bearing witness, and that those guests had thanked him for their entertainment. All this those other sworn witnesses shall say, and that he who received that property in his lap in the “Thing” held before the king, or in the regular public “Thing,” did publicly, before the people, either in the presence of the king or in public “Thing” – namely on the Mallberg, before the “Thunginus” – throw the stalk into the lap of him whom the owner had named as heir. And thus 9 witnesses shall confirm all this.

Title L. Concerning Promises to Pay.

1. If any freeman or feet have made to another a promise to pay, then he to whom the promise was made shall, within 40 days or within such term as was agreed when he made the promise, go to the house of that man with witnesses, or with appraisers. And if he (the debtor) be unwilling to make the promised payment, he shall be sentenced to 15 shillings above the debt which he had promised.

2. If he then be unwilling to pay, he (the creditor) shall summon him before the “Thing”; and thus accuse him: “I ask thee, 'Thunginus,' to bann my opponent who made me a promise to pay and owes me a debt.” And he shall state how much he owes and promised to pay. Then the “Thunginus” shall say: “I bann thy opponent to what the Salic law decrees.” Then he to whom the promise was made shall warn him (the debtor) to make no payment or pledge of payment to any body else until he have fulfilled his promise to him (the creditor). And straightway on that same day before the sun sets, he shall go to the house of that man with witnesses, and shall ask if he will pay that debt. If he will not, he (the creditor) shall wait until after sunset; then, if he have waited until after sunset, 120 denars, which make 3 shillings shall be added on to the debt. And this shall be done up to 3 times in 3 weeks. And if at the third time he will not pay all this, it (the sum) shall increase to 360 denars, or 9 shillings: so, namely, that, after each admonition or waiting until after sunset, 3 shillings shall be added to the debt.

3. If any one be unwilling to fulfil his promise in the regular assembly, -then he to whom the promise was made shall go the count of that place, in whose district he lives, and shall take the stalk and shall say: oh count, that man made me a promise to pay, and I have lawfully summoned him before the court according to the Salic law on this matter; I pledge thee myself and my fortune that thou may'st safely seize his property. And he shall state the case to him, and shall tell how much he (the debtor) had agreed to pay. Then the count shall collect suitable bailiffs, and shall go with them to the house of him who made the promise and shall say: thou who art here present pay voluntarily to that man what thou didst promise, and choose any two of those bailiffs who shall appraise that from which thou shalt pay; and make good what thou cost owe, according to a just appraisal. But if ho will not hear, or be absent, then the bailiffs shall take from his property the value of the debt which he owes. And, according to the law, the accuser shall take two thirds of that which the debtor owes, and the count shall collect for himself the other third as peace money; unless the peace money shall have been paid to him before in this same matter.

4. If the count have been appealed to, and no sufficient reason, and no duty of the king, have detained him - and if he have put off going, and have sent no substitute to demand law and justice: he shall answer for it with his life, or shall redeem himself with his “wergeld.”

Title LIV. Concerning the Slaying of a Count.

1. If any one slay a count, he shall be sentenced to 2400 debars, which make 600 shillings.

Title LV. Concerning the Plundering of Corpses.

2. If any one shall have dug up and plundered a corpse already buried, and it shall have been proved on him, he shall be outlawed until the day when he comes to an agreement with the relatives of the dead man, and they ask for him that he be allowed to come among men. And whoever, before he come to an arrangement with the relative, shall give him bread or shelter-even if they are his relations or his own wife-shall be sentenced to 600 denars which make xv shillings.

3. But he who is proved to have committed the crime shall be sentenced to 8000 denars, which make 200 shillings.

Title LVI. Concerning him who shall have scorned to come to Court.

1. If any man shall have scorned to come to court, and shall have put off fulfilling the injunction of the bailiffs, and shall not have been willing to consent to undergo the fine, or the kettle ordeal, or anything prescribed by law: then he (the plaintiff) shall summon him to the presence of the king. And there shall be 12 witnesses who-3 at a time being sworn-shall testify that they were present when the bailiff enjoined him (the accused) either to go to the kettle ordeal, or to agree concerning the fine; and that he had scorned the injunction. Then 3 others shall swear that they were there on the day when the bailiffs enjoined that he should free himself by the kettle ordeal or by composition; and that 40 days after that, in the "mallberg," he (the accuser) had again waited until after sunset, and that he (the accused) would not obey the law. Then he (the accuser) shall summon him before the king for a fortnight thence; and three witnesses shall swear that they were there when he summoned him and when he waited for sunset. If he does not then come, those 9, being sworn, shall give testimony as we have above explained. On that day likewise, if he do not come, he (the accuser) shall let the sun go down on him, and shall have 3 witnesses who shall be there when he waits till sunset. But if the accuser shall have fulfilled all this, and the accused shall not have been willing to come to any court, then the king, before whom he has been summoned, shall withdraw his protection from him. Then he shall be guilty, and all his goods shall belong to the fisc, or to him to whom the fisc may wish to give them. And whoever shall have fed or housed him-even if it were his own wife-shall be sentenced to 600 denars, which make 15 shillings; until he (the debtor) shall have made good all that has been laid to his charge.

Title LVII. Concerning the "Chrenecruda."

1. If any one have killed a man, and, having given up all his property, has not enough to comply with the full terms of the law, he shall present 12 sworn witnesses to the effect that, neither above the earth nor under it, has he any more property than he has already given. And he shall afterwards go into his house, and shall collect in his hand dust from the four corners of it, and shall afterwards stand upon the threshold, looking inwards into the house. And then, with his left hand, he shall throw over his shoulder some of that dust on the nearest relative that he has. But if his father and (his father's) brothers have already paid, he shall then throw that dust on their (the brothers') children-that is, over three (relatives) who are nearest on the father's and three on the mother's side. And after that, in his shirt, without girdle and without shoes, a staff in his hand, he shall spring over the hedge. And then those three shall pay half of what is lacking of the compounding money or the legal fine; that is, those others who are descended in the paternal line shall do this.

2. But if there be one of those relatives who has not enough to pay his whole indebtedness, he, the poorer one, shall in turn throw the "chrenecruda" on him of them who has the most, so that he shall pay the whole fine.

3. But if he also have not enough to pay the whole then he who has charge of the murderer shall bring him before the "Thing," and afterwards to 4 Things in order that they (his friends) may take him under their protection. And if no one have taken him under his protection -that is, so as to redeem him for what he can not pay- then he shall have to atone with his life.

Title LIX. Concerning Private Property.

1. If any man die and leave no sons, if the father and mother survive, they shall inherit.

3. If the father and mother do not survive, and he leave brothers or sisters, they shall inherit.

3. But if there are none, the sisters of the father shall inherit.
4. But if there are no sisters of the father, the sisters of the mother shall claim that inheritance.
5. If there are none of these, the nearest relatives on the father's side shall succeed to that inheritance.
6. But of Salic land no portion of the inheritance shall come to a woman: but the whole inheritance of the land shall come to the male sex.

Title LXII. Concerning Wergeld.

1. If any one's father have been killed, the sons shall have half the compounding money (wergeld); and the other half the nearest relatives, as well on the mother's as on the father's side, shall divide among themselves.
2. But if there are no relatives, paternal or maternal that portion shall go to the fisc. [*The Avalon Project, Yale Law School*]

~ ~ ~

NOTE: *The Salic Law* is particularly interesting from the fact that it illustrates a period concerning which we have almost no other contemporary information. A few charters, the scanty notes for this time of Gregory of Tours and the Roman writers, the contents of a few graves—the most important that of Childerich, father of Clovis (481-511), found at Tournay in 1663—are all that we would otherwise have had to show the extent of civilization under the earliest Merovingian kings.

The Salic Law was composed under Clovis. It concerns itself, as will be seen from the extracts here given, with the most manifold branches of administration. The system of landholding, the nature of the early village community, the relations of the Germans to the Romans, the position of the king, the classes of the population, family life, the disposal of property, judicial procedure, the ethical views of the time, are all illustrated in its sixty-five articles. Directly and indirectly we can gather from it a great mass of information. How dearly, for instance, does the title on insults show the regard paid for personal bravery and for female chastity! The false charge of having thrown away one's shield was punished as severely as assault and battery—and the person who groundlessly called a woman unclean paid a fine second only in severity to that imposed for attempted murder! [*Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*, by Ernest F. Henderson, George Bell & Sons, London, 1896.]

~ ~ ~

Treaty at Aix Between Louis 11 and Charles the Bald Concerning the Division of the Kingdom of Lothar 11 A.D. 870

(Altmann u. Bernheim, "AusReuablte Urkunden," p 16)

In the year of the Incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ 870, on the day before
the Nones of March, in the 32nd year of the most glorious king Charles,
in the palace at Aix, this agreement was made between him and his brother King Louis.

Count Ingelram on the part of king Charles:

I promise this on the part of my lord, that my lord king Charles consents that his brother, king Louis, shall have such portion of the kingdom of king Lothar, as either they themselves, or their faithful followers among themselves, shall find to be most just and most equable. Neither with regard to that portion nor with regard to the kingdom which he (Louis) before held will he (Charles) deceive or ill-advise him through any fraud or wile, provided that his brother Louis will on his part inviolably observe, as long as he lives, the same steadfastness and fidelity to my lord which I have promised to him on the part of that lord.

Likewise Liutfried on the part of king Louis:

I promise this on the part of my lord, that my lord king Louis consents that his brother, king Charles, shall have such portion of the kingdom of king LotharP, as either they themselves, or their faithful followers among themselves, shall find to be most just or most equable. Neither with regard to that portion nor with regard to the kingdom which he (Charles) before held, will he (Louis) deceive or ill-advise him through any fraud or wile, provided that his brother Charles will on his part inviolably observe, as long as he lives, the same steadfastness and fidelity to my lord which I have promised to him on the part of that lord. In like manner count Theoderic as a third swore to these things on the part of the glorious king Charles, and as a fourth count Ralph on the part of king Louis.

There were present there: archbishop Liutbert, bishop Altfred, bishop Odo, count Adalelm, count Ingleram, count Liutfried, count Theoderic, likewise a count Adalelm.

~ ~ ~

Statutes of William The Conqueror

(Stubbs' "Charters," p. 83-85.)

Here is shown what William the king of the English, together With his princes, has established since the Conquest of England.

1. Firstly that, above all things, he wishes one God to lie venerated throughout his whole kingdom, one faith of Christ always to be kept inviolate, peace and security to be observed between the English and the Normans.
2. We decree also that every free man shall affirm by compact and an oath that, within and without England, he desires to be faithful to king William, to preserve with him his lands and his honour with all fidelity, and first to defend him against his enemies.
3. I will, moreover, that all the men whom I have brought with me, or who have come after me, shall be in my peace and quiet. And if one of them shall be slain, the lord of his murderer shall seize him within five days, if he can; but if not, he shall begin to pay to me forty six marks of silver as long as his possessions shall hold out. But when the possessions of the lord of that man are at an end the whole hundred in which the slaying took place shall pay in common what remains.
4. And every Frenchman who, in the time of my relative king Edward, was a sharer in England of the customs of the English, shall pay according to the law of the English what they themselves call "onhlote" and "anscote." This decree has been confirmed in the city of Gloucester.
5. We forbid also that any live cattle be sold or bought for money except within the cities, and this before three faithful witnesses; nor even anything old without a surety and warrant. But if he do otherwise he shall pay, and shall afterwards pay a fine.
6. It was also decreed there that if a Frenchman summon an Englishman for perjury or murder, theft, homicide, or "ran"-as the English call evident rape which can not be denied-the Englishman shall defend himself as he prefers, either through the ordeal of iron, or through wager of battle. But if the Englishman be infirm he shall find another who will do it for him. If one of them shall be vanquished he shall pay a fine of forty shillings to the king. If an Englishman summon a Frenchman, and be unwilling to prove his charge by judgment or by wager of battle, I will, nevertheless, that the Frenchman purge himself by an informal oath.
7. This also I command and will, that all shall hold and keep the law of Edward the king with regard to their lands, and with regard to all their possessions, those provisions being added which I have made for the utility of the English people.
8. Every man who wishes to be considered a freeman shall have a surety, that his surety may hold him and hand him over to justice if he offend in any way. And if any such one escape, his sureties shall see to it that, without making difficulties, they pay what is charged against him, and that they clear themselves of having known of any fraud in the matter of his escape. The hundred and county shall be made to answer as our predecessors decreed. And those that ought of right to come, and are unwilling to appear, shall be summoned once; and if a second time they are unwilling to appear, one ox shall be taken from them and they shall be

summoned a third time. And if they do not come the third time, another ox shall be taken: but if they do not come the fourth time there shall be forfeited from the goods of that man who was unwilling to come, the extent of the charge against him,- "ceapgeld" as it is called,-and besides this a fine to the king.

9. I forbid any one to sell a man beyond the limits of the country, under penalty of a fine in full to me.

10. I forbid that any one be killed or hung for any fault but his eyes shall be torn out or his testicles cut off. And this command shall not be violated under penalty of a fine in full to me.

~ ~ ~

*Peace of the Land Established by Frederick Barbarossa
Between 1152 and 1157 A.D.*

(Altmann u. Bernheim, "Ausgewahlte Urkunden," p. 150. Berlin, 1891.)

Frederick by the grace of God emperor of the Romans, always august, to the bishops, dukes, counts, margraves and all to whom these letters shall come: sends his favour, peace, and love.

Inasmuch as by the ordination of the divine mercy we ascend the throne of the royal majesty, it is right that in our works we altogether obey Him by whose gift we are exalted. Therefore we, desiring the divine as well as the human laws to remain in vigour, and endeavouring to exalt the churches and ecclesiastical persons, and to defend them from tile incursions and invasions of every one, do wish to preserve to all persons whatever their rights, and do by the royal authority indicate a peace, long desired and hitherto necessary to the whole earth, to be observed throughout all parts of our kingdom. In what manner, moreover, this same peace is to be kept and observed, will be clearly shown from what follows.

1. If any one, within the term fixed for the peace, shall slay a man, he shall be sentenced to death, unless by wager of battle he can prove this, that he slew him in defending his own life. But if this shall be manifest to all, that he slew him not of necessity but voluntarily, then neither through wager of battle nor in any other manner shall he keep himself from being condemned to death. But if a violator of the peace shall flee the face of the judge, his movable possessions shall be confiscated by the judge and dispensed among the people; but his heirs shall receive the heritage which he held; this condition being imposed, that a promise shall be given under oath to the effect that that of the peace shall never, henceforth, by their will or consent receive any emolument from it. But if late; the heirs, neglecting the rigour of the law, shall allow him to have his heritage, the count shall hand over that same heritage to the rule of the king and shall receive it from the king under the name of a benefice.

2. If any one wound another after the proclamation of the peace, unless he prove by wager of battle that he did this while defending his life, his hand shall be amputated and he shall be sentenced as has been explained above: the judge shall most strictly prosecute him and his possessions according to the rigour of justice.

3. If any one take another and without shedding blood beat him with rods, or pull out his hair or beard, he shall pay by way of composition 10 pounds to him on whom the injury is seen to have been inflicted, and 80 pounds to the judge. But if without striking him he shall boldly attack him "asteros hant," as it is vulgarly called, viz., with hot hand, and shall maltreat him with contumelious words, he shall compound with 10 pounds for such excess and shall pay 10 to the judge. And whoever, for an excess, shall engage to pay 20 pounds to his judge, shall hand over his estate to him as a pledge, and within four weeks shad pay the money required; and if within four weeks he neglect to hand over his estate, his heirs, if they wish, may receive his heritage, and shall pay to the count the 20 pounds within six weeks; but if not, the count shall assign that heritage to the power of the king, shall restore the claims of those who proclaim them, and shall receive the estate from the king under the title of a benefice.

4. If a clerk be charged with violating the peace and be openly known and published as doing so, or if he keep companionship with a violator of the peace and be convicted of these things in the presence of his bishop and by sufficient testimony: to the count in whose county this same clerk has perpetrated this he shall

pay 20 pounds, and for so great an excess he shall make satisfaction to the bishop according to the statutes of the canons. If, moreover, that same clerk shall be disobedient, he shall not only be deprived of his office and ecclesiastical benefice, but also he shall be considered an outlaw.

5. If a judge through clamour of the people shall have followed any violator of the peace to the city of any lord that same lord whose city it is known to be shall produce him to render justice; but if he shall mistrust his own innocence and shall fear to come before the face of the judge, -if he have a dwelling in the city, his lord shall under oath, place all his movable goods at the disposition of the judge, and in future, as an outlaw, not receive him in his house; but if he have not a dwelling in his city, his lord shall cause him to be placed in security, and afterwards the judge, with the people, shall not desist from prosecuting him as a violator of the peace.

6. If two men contend for the possession of one benefice and one of them produces the man who invested him with that benefice, his testimony, if the investor acknowledge having given the investiture, shall be received first by the count; and if the man can prove by suitable witnesses that he obtained this same benefice without plunder, the occasion for controversy being removed, he shall hold it; but if in the presence of the judge he be convicted of plunder, he shall doubly pay the plunder, and shall be deprived of the benefice, unless, justice and judgment dictating, he may in the future seek to obtain it again.

7. If three or more contend for the same benefice, each one producing different investors, the judge in whose presence the case is carried on shall require of two men of good testimony dwelling in the province of these same litigants, that they swear by an oath which of them, without plunder, has been the possessor of that benefice; and, the truth of the matter being known from their testimony, the possessor shall quietly obtain his benefice unless, justice and judgment dictating, another shall snatch it from his hand.

8. If a rustic charge a knight with violating the peace he shall swear by his hand that he does this not willingly but of necessity; the knight shall clear himself by the hand of four.

9. If a knight charge a rustic with violating the peace, the rustic shall swear by his hand that he has done this not willingly but of necessity; the rustic shall choose one of two things: whether he shall show his innocence by a divine or a human judgment, or whether he shall expurgate himself by six suitable witnesses whom the judge shall choose.

10. If for violation of the peace, or in any capital matter, a knight wishes to engage in wager of battle against a knight, permission to fight shall not be granted to him unless he can prove that front of old he himself, and his parents as well, have by birth been lawful knights.

11. After the nativity of St. Mary each count shall choose for himself seven men of good testimony, and shall wisely make arrangements for each province, and shall usefully provide for what price, according to the quality, the grain is to be sold at different times; but whoever contrary to his ruling, within the term of the year, shall presume to sell a measure for a higher price, shall be considered a violator of the peace, and shall pay as many times thirty pounds to the count as the number of measures he shall have been convicted of selling.

12. If any rustic shall carry as weapons either a lance or a sword, the judge within whose jurisdiction he shall be found to belong shall either take away the weapons, or shall receive 20 shillings for them from the rustic.

13. A merchant passing through the province on business may tie his sword to his saddle, or place it above his vehicle, not in order to injure the innocent, but to defend himself from the robber.

14. No one shall spread his nets or his nooses, or any other instruments for taking game, except for taking bears, boars and wolves.

15. In going to the palace of the count no knight shall bear arms unless invited by the count. Public robbers and convicts shall be condemned to the old sentence.

16. Whoever shall treat his advowson or any other benefice unbecomingly, and shall have been warned by his lord and do not amend, continuing in his insolence, -he shall be deprived by a judicial order as well of his advowson as of his benefice; and if he afterwards, with bold daring, shall invade his advowson or benefice, he shall be considered a violator of the peace.

17. If any one shall have stolen 5 shillings, or its equivalent, -he shall be hung with a rope; if less he shall be flayed with whips, and his hair pulled out with a pincers.

18. If the ministeriales of any lord have a conflict among themselves, the count or judge in whose district they do this shall carry on the law and the judgments in the matter.

19. Whoever, in passing through the land, wishes to feed his horse, may with impunity take, for the defecation and refreshment of his horse, as much as he can reach when he stands in a place directly adjoining the road. It is lawful for any one to take, for his convenience and necessary use, grass and green wood; but without any devastation.

~ ~ ~

*Laws of Richard 1 (Coeur de Lion) Concerning
Crusaders Who Were to Go by Sea. 1189 A.D.*

(“Roger of Hoveden,” III p. 36 [Rolls Series].)

Richard by the grace of God king of England, and duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, and count of Anjou, to all his subjects who are about to go by sea to Jerusalem, greeting. know that we, by the common counsel of upright men, have made the laws here given. Whoever slays a man on ship. board shall be bound to the dead man and thrown into the sea. But if he shall slay him on land, he shall be bound to the dead man and buried in the earth. If any one, moreover, shall be convicted through lawful witnesses of having drawn a knife to strike another, or of having struck him so as to draw blood, he shall lose his hand. But if he shall strike him with his fist without drawing blood, he shall be dipped three times in the sea. But if any one shall taunt or insult a comrade or charge him with hatred of God: as many times as he shall have insulted him, so many ounces of silver shall he pay. A robber, moreover, convicted of theft, shall be shorn like a hired fighter, and boiling tar shall be poured over his head, and feathers from a cushion shall be shaken out over his head, - so that he may be publicly known; and at the first land where the ships put in he shall be cast on shore. Under my own witness at Chinon. [*Avalon Project, Yale Law School*]

~ ~ ~

Abuses by King John caused a revolt by nobles who compelled him to execute this recognition of rights for both noblemen and ordinary Englishmen. It established the principle that no one, including the king or a lawmaker, is above the law.

The Magna Charta

Preamble: John, by the grace of God, king of England, lord of Ireland, duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, and count of Anjou, to the archbishop, bishops, abbots, earls, barons, justiciaries, foresters, sheriffs, stewards, servants, and to all his bailiffs and liege subjects, greetings. Know that, having regard to God and for the salvation of our soul, and those of all our ancestors and heirs, and unto the honor of God and the advancement of his holy Church and for the rectifying of our realm, we have granted as underwritten by advice of our venerable fathers, Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England and cardinal of the holy Roman Church, Henry, archbishop of Dublin, William of London, Peter of Winchester, Jocelyn of Bath and Glastonbury, Hugh of Lincoln, Walter of Worcester, William of Coventry, Benedict of Rochester, bishops; of Master Pandulf, subdeacon and member of the household of our lord the Pope, of brother Aymerie (master of the Knights of the Temple in England), and of the illustrious men William Marshal, earl of Pembroke, William, earl of Salisbury, William, earl of Warenne, William, earl of Arundel, Alan of Galloway (constable of Scotland), Waren Fitz Gerold, Peter Fitz Herbert, Hubert De Burgh (seneschal of Poitou), Hugh de Neville, Matthew Fitz Herbert, Thomas Basset, Alan Basset, Philip d'Abigny, Robert of Roppeley, John Marshal, John Fitz Hugh, and others, our liegemen.

1. In the first place we have granted to God, and by this our present charter confirmed for us and our heirs forever that the English Church shall be free, and shall have her rights entire, and her liberties inviolate; and we will that it be thus observed; which is apparent from this that the freedom of elections, which is reckoned most important and very essential to the English Church, we, of our pure and unconstrained will, did grant, and did by our charter confirm and did obtain the ratification of the same from our lord, Pope Innocent III, before the quarrel arose between us and our barons; and this we will observe, and our will is that it be observed in good faith by our heirs forever. We have also granted to all freemen of our kingdom, for us and our heirs forever, all the underwritten liberties, to be had and held by them and their heirs, of us and our heirs forever.

2. If any of our earls or barons, or others holding of us in chief by military service shall have died, and at the time of his death his heir shall be full of age and owe "relief", he shall have his inheritance by the old relief, to wit, the heir or heirs of an earl, for the whole barony of an earl by £100; the heir or heirs of a baron, £100 for a whole barony; the heir or heirs of a knight, 100s, at most, and whoever owes less let him give less, according to the ancient custom of fees.

3. If, however, the heir of any one of the aforesaid has been under age and in wardship, let him have his inheritance without relief and without fine when he comes of age.

4. The guardian of the land of an heir who is thus under age, shall take from the land of the heir nothing but reasonable produce, reasonable customs, and reasonable services, and that without destruction or waste of men or goods; and if we have committed the wardship of the lands of any such minor to the sheriff, or to any other who is responsible to us for its issues, and he has made destruction or waste of what he holds in wardship, we will take of him amends, and the land shall be committed to two lawful and discreet men of that fee, who shall be responsible for the issues to us or to him to whom we shall assign them; and if we have given or

sold the wardship of any such land to anyone and he has therein made destruction or waste, he shall lose that wardship, and it shall be transferred to two lawful and discreet men of that fief, who shall be responsible to us in like manner as aforesaid.

5. The guardian, moreover, so long as he has the wardship of the land, shall keep up the houses, parks, fishponds, stanks, mills, and other things pertaining to the land, out of the issues of the same land; and he shall restore to the heir, when he has come to full age, all his land, stocked with ploughs and wainage, according as the season of husbandry shall require, and the issues of the land can reasonable bear.

6. Heirs shall be married without disparagement, yet so that before the marriage takes place the nearest in blood to that heir shall have notice.

7. A widow, after the death of her husband, shall forthwith and without difficulty have her marriage portion and inheritance; nor shall she give anything for her dower, or for her marriage portion, or for the inheritance which her husband and she held on the day of the death of that husband; and she may remain in the house of her husband for forty days after his death, within which time her dower shall be assigned to her.

8. No widow shall be compelled to marry, so long as she prefers to live without a husband; provided always that she gives security not to marry without our consent, if she holds of us, or without the consent of the lord of whom she holds, if she holds of another.

9. Neither we nor our bailiffs will seize any land or rent for any debt, as long as the chattels of the debtor are sufficient to repay the debt; nor shall the sureties of the debtor be distrained so long as the principal debtor is able to satisfy the debt; and if the principal debtor shall fail to pay the debt, having nothing wherewith to pay it, then the sureties shall answer for the debt; and let them have the lands and rents of the debtor, if they desire them, until they are indemnified for the debt which they have paid for him, unless the principal debtor can show proof that he is discharged thereof as against the said sureties.

10. If one who has borrowed from the Jews any sum, great or small, die before that loan be repaid, the debt shall not bear interest while the heir is under age, of whomsoever he may hold; and if the debt fall into our hands, we will not take anything except the principal sum contained in the bond.

11. And if anyone die indebted to the Jews, his wife shall have her dower and pay nothing of that debt; and if any children of the deceased are left under age, necessaries shall be provided for them in keeping with the holding of the deceased; and out of the residue the debt shall be paid, reserving, however, service due to feudal lords; in like manner let it be done touching debts due to others than Jews.

12. No scutage nor aid shall be imposed on our kingdom, unless by common counsel of our kingdom, except for ransoming our person, for making our eldest son a knight, and for once marrying our eldest daughter; and for these there shall not be levied more than a reasonable aid. In like manner it shall be done concerning aids from the city of London.

13. And the city of London shall have all its ancient liberties and free customs, as well by land as by water; furthermore, we decree and grant that all other cities, boroughs, towns, and ports shall have all their liberties and free customs.

14. And for obtaining the common counsel of the kingdom anent the assessing of an aid (except in the three cases aforesaid) or of a scutage, we will cause to be summoned the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, and greater barons, severally by our letters; and we will moreover cause to be summoned generally, through our sheriffs and bailiffs, and others who hold of us in chief, for a fixed date, namely, after the expiry of at least forty days, and at a fixed place; and in all letters of such summons we will specify the reason of the summons. And when the summons has thus been made, the business shall proceed on the day appointed, according to the counsel of such as are present, although not all who were summoned have come.

15. We will not for the future grant to anyone license to take an aid from his own free tenants, except to ransom his person, to make his eldest son a knight, and once to marry his eldest daughter; and on each of these occasions there shall be levied only a

reasonable aid.

16. No one shall be distrained for performance of greater service for a knight's fee, or for any other free tenement, than is due therefrom.

17. Common pleas shall not follow our court, but shall be held in some fixed place.

18. Inquests of novel disseisin, of mort d'ancestor, and of darrein presentment shall not be held elsewhere than in their own county courts, and that in manner following: We, or, if we should be out of the realm, our chief justiciar, will send two justiciaries through every county four times a year, who shall also go with four knights of the county chosen by the county, hold the said assizes in the county court, on the day and in the place of meeting of that court.

19. And if any of the said assizes cannot be taken on the day of the county court, let there remain of the knights and freeholders, who were present at the county court on that day, as many as may be required for the efficient making of judgments, according as the business be more or less.

20. A freeman shall not be amerced for a slight offense, except in accordance with the degree of the offense; and for a grave offense he shall be amerced in accordance with the gravity of the offense, yet saving always his "contentment"; and a merchant in the same way, saving his "merchandise"; and a villein shall be amerced in the same way, saving his "wainage" if they have fallen into our mercy; and none of the aforesaid ameracements shall be imposed except by the oath of honest men of the neighborhood.

21. Earls and barons shall not be amerced except through their peers, and only in accordance with the degree of the offense.

22. A clerk shall not be amerced in respect of his lay holding except after the manner of the others aforesaid; further, he shall not be amerced in accordance with the extent of his ecclesiastical benefice.

23. No village or individual shall be compelled to make bridges at river banks, except those who from of old were legally bound to do so.

24. No sheriff, constable, coroners, or others of our bailiffs, shall hold pleas of our Crown.

25. All counties, hundred, wapentakes, and tithings (except our demesne manors) shall remain at the old rents, and without any additional payment.

26. If anyone holding of us a lay fief shall die, and our sheriff or bailiff shall exhibit our letters patent of summons for a debt which the deceased owed us, it shall be lawful for our sheriff or bailiff to attach and enroll the chattels of the deceased, found upon the lay fief, to the value of that debt, at the sight of law worthy men, provided always that nothing whatever be thence removed until the debt which is evident shall be fully paid to us; and the residue shall be left to the executors to fulfill the will of the deceased; and if there be nothing due from him to us, all the chattels shall go to the deceased, saving to his wife and children their reasonable shares.

27. If any freeman shall die intestate, his chattels shall be distributed by the hands of his nearest kinsfolk and friends, under supervision of the Church, saving to every one the debts which the deceased owed to him.

28. No constable or other bailiff of ours shall take corn or other provisions from anyone without immediately tendering money therefor, unless he can have postponement thereof by permission of the seller.

29. No constable shall compel any knight to give money in lieu of castle-guard, when he is willing to perform it in his own person, or (if he himself cannot do it from any reasonable cause) then by another responsible man. Further, if we have led or sent him upon military service, he shall be relieved from guard in proportion to the time during which he has been on service because of us.

30. No sheriff or bailiff of ours, or other person, shall take the horses or carts of any freeman for transport duty, against the will of the said freeman.

31. Neither we nor our bailiffs shall take, for our castles or for any other work of ours, wood which is not ours, against the will of the owner of that wood.

32. We will not retain beyond one year and one day, the lands those who have been convicted of felony, and the lands shall thereafter be handed over to the lords of the fiefs.

33. All hydells for the future shall be removed altogether from Thames and Medway, and throughout all England, except upon the seashore.

34. The writ which is called *praecipe* shall not for the future be issued to anyone, regarding any tenement whereby a freeman may lose his court.

35. Let there be one measure of wine throughout our whole realm; and one measure of ale; and one measure of corn, to wit, "the London quarter"; and one width of cloth (whether dyed, or russet, or "halberget"), to wit, two ells within the selvages; of weights also let it be as of measures.

36. Nothing in future shall be given or taken for a writ of inquisition of life or limbs, but freely it shall be granted, and never denied.

37. If anyone holds of us by fee-farm, either by socage or by burgage, or of any other land by knight's service, we will not (by reason of that fee-farm, socage, or burgage), have the wardship of the heir, or of such land of his as if of the fief of that other; nor shall we have wardship of that fee-farm, socage, or burgage, unless such fee-farm owes knight's service. We will not by reason of any small serjeancy which anyone may hold of us by the service of rendering to us knives, arrows, or the like, have wardship of his heir or of the land which he holds of another lord by knight's service.

38. No bailiff for the future shall, upon his own unsupported complaint, put anyone to his "law", without credible witnesses brought for this purposes.

39. No freemen shall be taken or imprisoned or disseised or exiled or in any way destroyed, nor will we go upon him nor send upon him, except by the lawful judgment of his peers or by the law of the land.

40. To no one will we sell, to no one will we refuse or delay, right or justice.

41. All merchants shall have safe and secure exit from England, and entry to England, with the right to tarry there and to move about as well by land as by water, for buying and selling by the ancient and right customs, quit from all evil tolls, except (in time of war) such merchants as are of the land at war with us. And if such are found in our land at the beginning of the war, they shall be detained, without injury to their bodies or goods, until information be received by us, or by our chief justiciar, how the merchants of our land found in the land at war with us are treated; and if our men are safe there, the others shall be safe in our land.

42. It shall be lawful in future for anyone (excepting always those imprisoned or outlawed in accordance with the law of the kingdom, and natives of any country at war with us, and merchants, who shall be treated as if above provided) to leave our kingdom and to return, safe and secure by land and water, except for a short period in time of war, on grounds of public policy - reserving always the allegiance due to us.

43. If anyone holding of some escheat (such as the honor of Walsingham, Nottingham, Boulogne, Lancaster, or of other escheats which are in our hands and are baronies) shall die, his heir shall give no other relief, and perform no other service to us than he would have done to the baron if that barony had been in the baron's hand; and we shall hold it in the same manner in which the baron held it.

44. Men who dwell without the forest need not henceforth come before our justiciaries of the forest upon a general summons, unless they are in plea, or sureties of one or more, who are attached for the forest.

45. We will appoint as justices, constables, sheriffs, or bailiffs only such as know the law of the realm and mean to observe it well.

46. *All barons who have founded abbeys, concerning which they hold charters from the kings of England, or of which they have long continued possession, shall have the wardship of them, when vacant, as they ought to have.*

47. *All forests that have been made such in our time shall forthwith be disafforested; and a similar course shall be followed with regard to river banks that have been placed "in defense" by us in our time.*

48. *All evil customs connected with forests and warrens, foresters and warreners, sheriffs and their officers, river banks and their wardens, shall immediately be inquired into in each county by twelve sworn knights of the same county chosen by the honest men of the same county, and shall, within forty days of the said inquest, be utterly abolished, so as never to be restored, provided always that we previously have intimation thereof, or our justiciar, if we should not be in England.*

49. *We will immediately restore all hostages and charters delivered to us by Englishmen, as sureties of the peace of faithful service.*

50. *We will entirely remove from their bailiwicks, the relations of Gerard of Athee (so that in future they shall have no bailiwick in England): namely, Engelard of Cigogne, Pater, Guy, and Andrew of Chanceaux, Guy of Cigogne, Geoffrey of Martigny with his brothers, Philip Mark with his brothers and his nephew Geoffrey, and the whole brood of the same.*

51. *As soon as peace is restored, we will banish from the kingdom all foreign born knights, crossbowmen, sergeants, and mercenary soldiers who have come with horses and arms to the kingdom's hurt.*

52. *If anyone has been dispossessed or removed by us, without the legal judgment of his peers, from his lands, castles, franchises, or from his right, we will immediately restore them to him; and if a dispute arise over this, then let it be decided by the five and twenty barons of whom mention is made below in the clause for securing the peace. Moreover, for all those possessions, from which anyone has, without the lawful judgment of his peers, been dispossessed or removed, by our father, King Henry, or by our brother, King Richard, and which we retain in our hand (or which as possessed by others, to whom we are bound to warrant them) we shall have respite until the usual term of crusaders; excepting those things about which a plea has been raised, or an inquest made by our order, before our taking of the cross; but as soon as we return from the expedition, we will immediately grant full justice therein.*

53. *We shall have, moreover, the same respite and in the same manner in rendering justice concerning the disafforestation or retention of those forests which Henry our father and Richard our brother afforested, and concerning the wardship of lands which are of the fief of another (namely, such wardships as we have hitherto had by reason of a fief which anyone held of us by knight's service), and concerning abbeys founded on other fiefs than our own, in which the lord of the fee claims to have right, and when we have returned, or if we desist from our expedition, we will immediately grant full justice to all who complain of such things.*

54. *No one shall be arrested or imprisoned upon the appeal of a woman, for the death of any other than her husband.*

55. *All fines made with us unjustly and against the law of the land, and all amercements, imposed unjustly and against the law of the land, shall be entirely remitted, or else it shall be done concerning them according to the decision of the five and twenty barons whom mention is made below in the clause for securing the peace, or according to the judgment of the majority of the same, along with the aforesaid Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, if he can be present, and such others as he may wish to bring with him for this purpose, and if he cannot be present the business shall nevertheless proceed without him, provided always that if any one or more of the aforesaid five and twenty barons are in a similar suit, they shall be removed as far as concerns this particular judgment, others being substituted in their places after having been selected by the rest of the same five and twenty for this purpose only, and after having been sworn.*

56. *If we have dispossessed or removed Welshmen from lands or liberties, or other things, without the legal judgment of their peers in England or in Wales, they shall be immediately restored to them; and if a dispute arise over this, then let it be decided in the marches by the judgment of their peers; for the tenements in England according to the law of England, for tenements in Wales according to the law of Wales, and for tenements in the marches according to the law of the marches. Welshmen shall*

do the same to us and ours.

57. Further, for all those possessions from which any Welshman has, without the lawful judgment of his peers, been dispossessed or removed by King Henry our father, or King Richard our brother, and which we retain in our hand (or which are possessed by others, and which we ought to warrant), we will have respite until the usual term of crusaders; excepting those things about which a plea has been raised or an inquest made by our order before we took the cross; but as soon as we return (or if perchance we desist from our expedition), we will immediately grant full justice in accordance with the laws of the Welsh and in relation to the foresaid regions.

58. We will immediately give up the son of Llywelyn and all the hostages of Wales, and the charters delivered to us as security for the peace.

59. We will do towards Alexander, king of Scots, concerning the return of his sisters and his hostages, and concerning his franchises, and his right, in the same manner as we shall do towards our other barons of England, unless it ought to be otherwise according to the charters which we hold from William his father, formerly king of Scots; and this shall be according to the judgment of his peers in our court.

60. Moreover, all these aforesaid customs and liberties, the observances of which we have granted in our kingdom as far as pertains to us towards our men, shall be observed by all of our kingdom, as well clergy as laymen, as far as pertains to them towards their men.

61. Since, moreover, for God and the amendment of our kingdom and for the better allaying of the quarrel that has arisen between us and our barons, we have granted all these concessions, desirous that they should enjoy them in complete and firm endurance forever, we give and grant to them the underwritten security, namely, that the barons choose five and twenty barons of the kingdom, whomsoever they will, who shall be bound with all their might, to observe and hold, and cause to be observed, the peace and liberties we have granted and confirmed to them by this our present Charter, so that if we, or our justiciar, or our bailiffs or any one of our officers, shall in anything be at fault towards anyone, or shall have broken any one of the articles of this peace or of this security, and the offense be notified to four barons of the foresaid five and twenty, the said four barons shall repair to us (or our justiciar, if we are out of the realm) and, laying the transgression before us, petition to have that transgression redressed without delay. And if we shall not have corrected the transgression (or, in the event of our being out of the realm, if our justiciar shall not have corrected it) within forty days, reckoning from the time it has been intimated to us (or to our justiciar, if we should be out of the realm), the four barons aforesaid shall refer that matter to the rest of the five and twenty barons, and those five and twenty barons shall, together with the community of the whole realm, distrain and distress us in all possible ways, namely, by seizing our castles, lands, possessions, and in any other way they can, until redress has been obtained as they deem fit, saving harmless our own person, and the persons of our queen and children; and when redress has been obtained, they shall resume their old relations towards us. And let whoever in the country desires it, swear to obey the orders of the said five and twenty barons for the execution of all the aforesaid matters, and along with them, to molest us to the utmost of his power; and we publicly and freely grant leave to everyone who wishes to swear, and we shall never forbid anyone to swear. All those, moreover, in the land who of themselves and of their own accord are unwilling to swear to the twenty five to help them in constraining and molesting us, we shall by our command compel the same to swear to the effect aforesaid. And if any one of the five and twenty barons shall have died or departed from the land, or be incapacitated in any other manner which would prevent the foresaid provisions being carried out, those of the said twenty five barons who are left shall choose another in his place according to their own judgment, and he shall be sworn in the same way as the others. Further, in all matters, the execution of which is entrusted to these twenty five barons, if perchance these twenty five are present and disagree about anything, or if some of them, after being summoned, are unwilling or unable to be present, that which the majority of those present ordain or command shall be held as fixed and established, exactly as if the whole twenty five had concurred in this; and the said twenty five shall swear that they will faithfully observe all that is aforesaid, and cause it to be observed

with all their might. And we shall procure nothing from anyone, directly or indirectly, whereby any part of these concessions and liberties might be revoked or diminished: and if any such things has been procured, let it be void and null, and we shall never use it personally or by another.

62. And all the will, hatreds, and bitterness that have arisen between us and our men, clergy and lay, from the date of the quarrel, we have completely remitted and pardoned to everyone. Moreover, all trespasses occasioned by the said quarrel, from Easter in the sixteenth year of our reign till the restoration of peace, we have fully remitted to all, both clergy and laymen, and completely forgiven, as far as pertains to us. And on this head, we have caused to be made for them letters testimonial patent of the lord Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, of the lord Henry, archbishop of Dublin, of the bishops aforesaid, and of Master Pandulf as touching this security and the concessions aforesaid.

63. Wherefore we will and firmly order that the English Church be free, and that the men in our kingdom have and hold all the aforesaid liberties, rights, and concessions, well and peaceably, freely and quietly, fully and wholly, for themselves and their heirs, of us and our heirs, in all respects and in all places forever, as is aforesaid. An oath, moreover, has been taken, as well on our part as on the part of the barons, that all these conditions aforesaid shall be kept in good faith and without evil intent.

Given under our hand - the above named and many others being witnesses - in the meadow which is called Runnymede, between Windsor and Staines, on the fifteenth day of June, in the seventeenth year of our reign.

~ ~ ~

This is but one of three different translations of the Magna Carta that was found by Gerald Murphy of The Cleveland Free-Net; it was originally done in Latin, probably by the Archbishop, Stephen Langton. It was in force for only a few months, when it was violated by the king. Just over a year later, with no resolution to the war, the king died, being succeeded by his 9-year old son, Henry III. The Charter (Carta) was reissued again, with some revisions, in 1216, 1217 and 1225. It is believed that the version presented here is the one that preceded all of the others; nearly all of it's provisions were soon superceded by other laws, and none of it is effective today. The two other versions each professed to be the original, as well. The basic intent of each is the same.

Prepared by Nancy Troutman (The Cleveland Free-Net - aa345). Distributed by the Cybercasting Services Division of the National Public Telecomputing Network (NPTN). Permission is hereby given to download, reprint, and/or otherwise redistribute this file, provided appropriate point of origin credit is given to the preparer(s) and the National Public Telecomputing Network.

~ ~ ~

*Statute of Edward 1 Concerning the Buying and
Selling of Land
(Quia Emptores): 1290*

Forasmuch as purchasers of lands and tenements of the fees of magnates and others, have many times previously entered into their fees to the prejudice of the same (lords) since to them (the purchasers) the free tenants of these same magnates and others have sold their lands and tenements to be held in fee for themselves and their heirs from the subinfeudators and not from the lords in chief of the fees, whereby the same lords in chief have often lost the escheats, marriages and wardships of lands and tenements belonging to their fees, which thing indeed seemed very hard and extreme to the magnates and other lords, and moreover, in this case, manifest disinheritance; the lord king in his parliament at Westminster after Easter in the 18th year of his reign, viz., in the Quinzime of St. John the Baptist, at the instance of his magnates, did grant, provide and decree that henceforth it shall be lawful for any free man to sell at will his lands or tenements or a part of them; in such manner, however, that the infeudated person shall hold that land or tenement from the same lord in chief and by the same services and customs by which his infeudator previously held them. And if he shall have sold to any one any part of those his lands or tenements, the infeudated person shall hold that (part) directly of the lord in chief, and shall straightway be charged with as much service as pertains or ought to pertain to that lord for that parcel, according to the quantity of the land or tenement sold; and so in this case there shall fall away from the lord in chief that part of the service which is to be performed by the hand of the infeudator, from the time when the infeudated person ought to be attendant and answerable to that same lord in chief, according to the quantity of the land or tenement sold, for that parcel of service thus due. And it must be known that by the said sales or purchases of lands or tenements, or any part of them, those lands or tenements in part or in whole, may not come into mortmain, by art or by wile, contrary to the statute recently issued on this point. And it is to be known that that statute concerning lands sold holds good only for those holding in fee simple, etc.; and that it extends to future time; and it shall begin to take effect at the feast of St. Andrew next coming.

~ ~ ~

The Declaration of Arbroath

Although the English armies under Edward II were routed at Bannockburn in 1314 and by 1319, with the recapture of Berwick, effectively expelled from Scottish soil, they continued to mount attacks into Robert the Bruce's Scotland over the succeeding years.

The Pope had not accepted Scottish independence, perhaps partially because Robert the Bruce had been excommunicated for killing John Comyn in a church in Dumfries in 1306 (Comyn had formed an alliance with Edward, but perhaps had more of a right to be King than Bruce).

Thus the *Declaration of Arbroath* was prepared as a formal Declaration of Independence. It was drawn up in Arbroath Abbey on the 6th April 1320, most likely by the Abbot, Bernard de Linton, who was also the Chancellor of Scotland.

The Declaration urged the Pope to see things from a Scottish perspective and not to take the English claim on Scotland seriously. It used strong words, indicating that without acceptance of the Scottish case that the wars would continue and the resultant deaths would be the responsibility of the Pope.

The English translation of the Declaration of Arbroath:

To the most Holy Father and Lord in Christ, the Lord John, by divine providence Supreme Pontiff of the Holy Roman and Universal Church, his humble and devout sons Duncan, Earl of Fife, Thomas Randolph, Earl of Moray, Lord of Man and of Annandale, Patrick Dunbar, Earl of March, Malise, Earl of Stratbearn, Malcolm, Earl of Lennox, William, Earl of Ross, Magnus, Earl of Caithness and Orkney, and William, Earl of Sutherland; Walter, Steward of Scotland, William Soules, Butler of Scotland, James, Lord of Douglas, Roger Mowbray, David, Lord of Brechin, David Grabam, Ingram Umfraville, John Menteith, guardian of the earldom of Menteith, Alexander Fraser, Gilbert Hay, Constable of Scotland, Robert Keith, Marischal of Scotland, Henry St Clair, John Graham, David Lindsay, William Oliphant, Patrick Grabam, John Fenton, William Abernethy, David Wemyss, William Musbet, Fergus of Ardrossan, Eustace Maxwell, William Ramsay, William Mowat, Alan Murray, Donald Campbell, John Cameron, Reginald Cheyne, Alexander Seton, Andrew Leslie, and Alexander Straiton, and the other barons and freeholders and the whole community of the realm of Scotland send all manner of filial reverence, with devout kisses of his blessed feet.

Most Holy Father and Lord, we know and from the chronicles and books of the ancients we find that among other famous nations our own, the Scots, has been graced with widespread renown. They journeyed from Greater Scythia by way of the Tyrrhenian Sea and the Pillars of Hercules, and dwelt for a long course of time in Spain among the most savage tribes, but nowhere could they be subdued by any race, however barbarous. Thence they came, twelve hundred years after the people of Israel crossed the Red Sea, to their home in the west where they still live today. The Britons they first drove out, the Picts they utterly destroyed, and, even though very often assailed by the Norwegians, the Danes and the English, they took possession of that home with many victories and untold efforts; and, as the historians of old time bear witness, they have held it free of all bondage ever since. In their kingdom there have reigned one hundred and thirteen kings of their own royal stock, the line unbroken a single foreigner.

The high qualities and deserts of these people, were they not otherwise manifest, gain glory enough from this: that the King of kings and Lord of lords, our Lord Jesus Christ, after His Passion and Resurrection, called them, even though settled in the uttermost parts of the earth, almost the first to His most holy faith. Nor would He have them confirmed in that faith by merely anyone but by the first of His Apostles -- by calling, though second or third in rank -- the most gentle Saint Andrew, the Blessed Peter's brother, and desired him to keep them under his protection as their patron forever.

The Most Holy Fathers your predecessors gave careful heed to these things and bestowed many favours and numerous privileges on this same kingdom and people, as being the special charge of the Blessed Peter's brother. Thus our nation under their protection did indeed live in freedom and peace up to the time when that mighty prince the King of the English, Edward, the father of the one who reigns today, when our kingdom had no head and our people harboured no malice or treachery and were then unused to wars or invasions, came in the guise of a friend and ally to harass them as an enemy. The deeds of cruelty, massacre, violence, pillage, arson, imprisoning prelates, burning down monasteries, robbing and killing monks and nuns, and yet other outrages without number which he committed against our people, sparing neither age nor sex, religion nor rank, no one could describe nor fully imagine unless he had seen them with his own eyes.

But from these countless evils we have been set free, by the help of Him Who though He afflicts yet heals and restores, by our most tireless Prince, King and Lord, the Lord Robert. He, that his people and his heritage might be delivered out of the hands of our enemies, met toil and fatigue, hunger and peril, like another Macabaeus or Joshua and bore them cheerfully. Him, too, divine providence, his right of succession according to our laws and customs which we shall maintain to the death, and the due consent and assent of us all have made our Prince and King. To him, as to the man by whom salvation has been wrought unto our people, we are bound both by law and by his merits that our freedom may be still maintained, and by him, come what may, we mean to stand.

Yet if he should give up what he has begun, and agree to make us or our kingdom subject to the King of England or the English, we should exert ourselves at once to drive him out as our enemy and a subverter of his own rights and ours, and make some other man who was well able to defend us our King; for, as long as but a hundred of us remain alive, never will we on any conditions be brought under English rule. It is in truth not for glory, nor riches, nor honours that we are fighting, but for freedom -- for that alone, which no honest man gives up but with life itself.

Therefore it is, Reverend Father and Lord, that we beseech your Holiness with our most earnest prayers and suppliant hearts, inasmuch as you will in your sincerity and goodness consider all this, that, since with Him Whose Vice-Regent on earth you are there is neither weighing nor distinction of Jew and Greek, Scotsman or Englishman, you will look with the eyes of a father on the troubles and privation brought by the English upon us and upon the Church of God. May it please you to admonish and exhort the King of the English, who ought to be satisfied with what belongs to him since England used once to be enough for seven kings or more, to leave us Scots in peace, who live in this poor little Scotland, beyond which there is no dwelling-place at all, and covet nothing but our own. We are sincerely willing to do

anything for him, having regard to our condition, that we can, to win peace for ourselves.

This truly concerns you, Holy Father, since you see the savagery of the heathen raging against the Christians, as the sins of Christians have indeed deserved, and the frontiers of Christendom being pressed inward every day; and how much it will tarnish your Holiness's memory if (which God forbid) the Church suffers eclipse or scandal in any branch of it during your time, you must perceive. Then rouse the Christian princes who for false reasons pretend that they cannot go to help of the Holy Land because of wars they have on hand with their neighbours. The real reason that prevents them is that in making war on their smaller neighbours they find quicker profit and weaker resistance. But how cheerfully our Lord the King and we too would go there if the King of the English would leave us in peace, He from Whom nothing is hidden well knows; and we profess and declare it to you as the Vicar of Christ and to all Christendom.

But if your Holiness puts too much faith in the tales the English tell and will not give sincere belief to all this, nor refrain from favouring them to our prejudice, then the slaughter of bodies, the perdition of souls, and all the other misfortunes that will follow, inflicted by them on us and by us on them, will, we believe, be surely laid by the Most High to your charge.

To conclude, we are and shall ever be, as far as duty calls us, ready to do your will in all things, as obedient sons to you as His Vicar; and to Him as the Supreme King and Judge we commit the maintenance of our cause, csating our cares upon Him and firmly trusting that He will inspire us with courage and bring our enemies to nought.

May the Most High preserve you to his Holy Church in boliness and health and grant you length of days.

Given at the monastery of Arbroath in Scotland on the sixth day of the month of April in the year of grace thirteen hundred and twenty and the fifteenth year of the reign of our King aforesaid.

Endorsed: Letter directed to our Lord the Supreme Pontiff by the community of Scotland.

Additional names written on some of the seal tags: Alexander Lambertson, Edward Keith, John Inchmartin, Thomas Menzies, John Durrant, Thomas Morham (and one illegible).

The Declaration of Arbroath in original Latin:

Sanctissimo Patri in Christo ac Domino, domino Johanni, diuina prouidencia Sacrosancte Romane et Vniuersalis Ecclesie Summo Pontifici, Filii Sui Humiles et deuoti Duncanus Comes de Fyf, Thomas Ranulphi Comes Morauie Dominus Mannie et Vallis Anandie, Patricius de Dumbar Comes Marobie, Malisius Comes de Stratheryne, Malcolmus Comes de Leuenax, Willelmus Comes de Ross, Magnus Comes Cathanie et Orkadie et Willelmus Comes Suthirlandie; Walterus Senescallus Scocie, Willelmus de Soules Buttellarius Scocie, Jacobus Dominus de Duglas, Rogerus de Moubray, David Dominus de Brechyn, David de Graham, Ingeramus de Vmfraille, Johannes de Menetethe Custos Comitatus de Menetethe, Alexander Fraser, Gilbertus de Haya Constabularius Scocie, Robertus de Keth Marescallus Scocie, Henricus de Sancto Claro, Johannes de Graham, David de Lindesay, Willelmus Olifaunt, Patricius de Graham, Johannes de Fentoun, Willelmus de Abirnithy, David de Wemys, Willelmus de Montefixo, Fergusius de Ardrossane, Eustacbius de Maxwell, Willelmus de Ramesay, Willelmus de Montealto, Alanus de Morauia, Douenaldus Cambell, Johannes Cambrun, Reginaldus le chen, Alexander de Setoun, Andreas de Lescehlyne, et Alexander de Stratoun, Ceterique Barones et Liberetenetes ac tota Communitas Regni Scocie, omnimodam Reuerenciam filialem cum deuotis Pedum osculis beatorum.

Scimus, Sanctissime Pater et Domine, et ex antiquorum gestis et libris Colligimus quod inter Ceteras naciones egregias nostra scilicet Scottorum nacio multis preconijs fuerit insignita, que de Maiori Scithia per Mare tirenium et Columpnas Herculis transiens et in Hispania inter ferocissimas gentes per multa temporum curricula Residens a nullis quantumcumque barbaricis poterat allicubi gentibus subiugari. Indeque ueniens post mille et ducentos annos a transitu populi israelitici per mare rubrum sibi sedes in Occidente quas nunc optinet, expulsis primo Britonibus et Pictis omnino deletis, licet per Norwagienses, Dacos et Anglicos sepius impugnata fuerit, multis cum victorijs et Laboribus quamplurimis adquisiuit, ipsaque ab omni seruitute liberata, ut Priscorum testantur Historie, semper tenuit. In quorum Regno Centum et Tredescim Reges de ipsorum Regali prosapia, nullo alienigena interueniente, Regnauerunt.

Quorum Nobilitates et Merita, licet ex alijs non clarent, satis patenter effulgent ex eo quod Rex Regum et dominancium dominus Ihesus Christus post passionem suam et Resurreccionem ipsos in vltimis terre finibus constitutos quasi primos ad suam fidem sanctissimam conuocauit. Nec eos per quemlibet in dicta fide confirmari voluit set per suum primum apostolum uocatione quamuis ordine secundum vel tertium, sanctum Andream mitissimum beati Petri Germanum, quem semper ipsis preesse voluit ut Patronum.

Hec autem Sanctissimi Patres et Predecessores vestri sollicita mente pensantes ipsum Regnum et populum ut beati Petri germani peculium multis fauoribus et priuilegijs quamplurimis Munierunt, Ita quippe quod gens nostra sub ipsorum proteccionem hactenus libera deguit et quieta donec ille Princeps Magnificus Rex Anglorum Edwardus, pater istius qui nunc

est, Regnum nostrum accephalum populumque nullius mali aut doli nec bellis aut insultibus tunc assuetum sub amici et confederati specie inimicabiliter infestavit. Cuius iniurias, Cedas, violencias, predaciones, incendia, prelatorum incarcerationes, Monasteriorum combustiones, Religiosorum spoliaciones et occisiones alia quoque enormia et innumera que in dicto populo exercuit, nulli parcens etati aut sexui, Religioni aut ordini, nullus scriberet nec ad plenum intelligeret nisi quem experientia informaret.

A quibus Malis innumeris, ipso Juuante qui post uulnera medetur et sanat, liberati sumus per strenuissimum Principem, Regem et Dominum nostrum, Dominum Robertum, qui pro populo et hereditate suis de manibus Inimicorum liberandis quasi alter Machabeus aut Josue labores et tedia, inedia et pericula, leto sustinuit animo. Quem eciam diuina dispositio et iuxta leges et Consuetudines nostra, quas vsque ad mortem sustinere volumus, Juris successio et debitus nostrorum omnium Consensus et Assensus nostrum fecerunt Principem atque Regem, cui tanquam illi per quem salus in populo nostro facta est pro nostra libertate tuenda tam Jure quam meritis tenemur et volumus in omnibus adherere.

Quem si ab inceptis desisteret, regi Anglorum aut Anglicis nos aut Regnum nostrum volens subicere, tanquam inimicum nostrum et sui nostrique Juris subuersorem statim expellere niteremur et alium Regem nostrum qui ad defensionem nostram sufficeret faceremus. Quia quamdiu Centum ex nobis viui remanserint, nunquam Anglorum dominio aliquatenus volumus subiugari. Non enim propter gloriam, diuicias aut honores pugnamus set propter libertatem solummodo quam Nemo bonus nisi simul cum vita amittit. Hinc est, Reuerende Pater et Domine,

Quod sanctitatem vestram omni precum instancia genuflexis cordibus exoramus quatinus sincero corde Mentemque pia recensentes quod apud eum cuius vices in terris geritis cum non sit Pondus nec distinctio Judei et greci, Scoti aut Anglici, tribulaciones et angustias nobis et Ecclesie dei illatas ab Anglicis paternis oculis intuentes, Regem Anglorum, cui sufficere debet quod possidet cum olim Anglia septem aut pluribus solebat sufficere Regibus, Monere et exhortari dignemini vt nos scotos, in exili degentes Scotia ultra quam habitacia non est nichilque nisi nostrum Cupientes, in pace dimittat. Cui pro nostra procuranda quiete quicquid possumus, ad statum nostrum Respectu habito, facere volumus cum effectu.

Vestra enim interest, sancte Pater, hoc facere qui paganorum feritatem, Christianorum culpis exigentibus, in Christianos seuientem aspicitis et Christianorum terminos arctari indies, quantumque vestre sanctitatis memorie derogat si (quod absit) Ecclesia in aliqua sui parte vestris temporibus patiatur eclipsim aut Scandalum, vos videritis. Excitet igitur Christianos Principes qui non causam vt causam ponentes se fingunt in subsidium terre sancte propter guerras quas habent cum proximis ire non posse. Cuius impedimenti Causa est verior quod in Minoribus proximis debellandis utilitas proprii et resistencia debilior estimantur. Set quam leto corde dictus dominus Rex noster et Nos si Rex Anglorum nos is pace dimitteret illis iremus qui nichil ignorat satis novit. Quod Christi vicario totique Christianitati ostendimus et testamur.

Quibus si sanctitas vestra Anglorum relatibus nimis credula fidem sinceram non adhibeat aut ipsis in nostram confusionem fauere non desinat, corporum excidia, animarum excicia, et cetera que sequentur incomoda que ipsi in nobis et Nos in ipsis fecerimus vobis ab altissimo credimus inputanda.

Ex quo sumus et erimus in hiis que tenemur tanquam obediencie filii vobis tanquam ipsius vicario parati in omnibus complacere, ipsique tanquam Summo Regi et Judici causam nostram tuendam committimus, Cogitatum nostrum Jactantes in ipso sperantesque firmiter quod in nobis virtutem faciet et ad nichilum rediget hostes nostros.

Sanctitatem ac sanitatem vestram conseruet altissimus Ecclesie sue sancte per tempora diuturna.

Datum apud Monasterium de Abirbrothoc in Scocis Sexto die mensis Aprilis Anno gracie Millesimo Trescentesimo vicesimo Anno vero Regni Regis nostri supradicti Quinto decimo.

Endorsed: *Littere directe ad dominum Supremum Pontificem per communitatem Scocie.*

Names inscribed on some of the seal tags: *Alexander de Lambertoun, Edwardus de Keth, Johannes de Inchmertyn, Thomas de Meiners, Johannes Duraunt, Thomas de Morham (and one illegible).* [Medieval Sourcebook, Fordham University Center for Medieval Studies]

~ ~ ~

Mayflower Compact 1620

Agreement Between the Settlers at New Plymouth : 1620

IN THE NAME OF GOD, AMEN. We, whose names are underwritten, the Loyal Subjects of our dread Sovereign Lord King *James*, by the Grace of God, of *Great Britain, France, and Ireland*, King, *Defender of the Faith*, &c. Having undertaken for the Glory of God, and Advancement of the Christian Faith, and the Honour of our King and Country, a Voyage to plant the first Colony in the northern Parts of *Virginia*; Do by these Presents, solemnly and mutually, in the Presence of God and one another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civil Body Politick, for our better Ordering and Preservation, and Furtherance of the Ends aforesaid: And by Virtue hereof do enact, constitute, and frame, such just and equal Laws, Ordinances, Acts, Constitutions, and Officers, from time to time, as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general Good of the Colony; unto which we promise all due Submission and Obedience. IN WITNESS whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names at *Cape-Cod* the eleventh of November, in the Reign of our Sovereign Lord King *James*, of *England, France, and Ireland*, the eighteenth, and of *Scotland* the fifty-fourth, *Anno Domini*, 1620.

Mr. John Carver,
Mr. William Bradford,
Mr Edward Winslow,
Mr. William Brewster.
Isaac Allerton,
Myles Standish,
John Alden,
John Turner,
Francis Eaton,
James Chilton,
John Craxton,
John Billington,
Joses Fletcher,
John Goodman,
Mr. Samuel Fuller,
Mr. Christopher Martin,
Mr. William Mullins,
Mr. William White,
Mr. Richard Warren,
John Howland,
Mr. Steven Hopkins,

Digery Priest,
Thomas Williams,
Gilbert Winslow,
Edmund Margesson,
Peter Brown,
Richard Britteridge
George Soule,
Edward Tilly,
John Tilly,
Francis Cooke,
Thomas Rogers,
Thomas Tinker,
John Ridgdale
Edward Fuller,
Richard Clark,
Richard Gardiner,
Mr. John Allerton,
Thomas English,
Edward Doten,
Edward Liester.

(Note: 41 signed the Compact; there were 102 passengers on the voyage)

~ ~ ~

Newspaper account of Elizabeth Armstrong's 100th birthday celebration

*From the Plainrove News
October 9, 1888*

A CENTENARIAN A CELEBRATION IN HONOR OF AN AGED LADY WHO LIVED IN THE DAYS OF WASHINGTON, JEFFERSON AND ADAMS.

Plainrove People pay their respects and five generations are represented - Extreme Old Age and Helpless infancy sit side by side - A remarkable woman who has seen many changes in government, people and times.

Mrs. Elizabeth Armstrong, of Plaingrove Township, was one hundred years old on Monday, Oct. 8, 1888, and the anniversary of her centennial was celebrated by a grand reunion of her children, grandchildren and great-grandchildren and relatives from all sections of the country. The day was very inauspicious for a gathering of this kind, but in spite of the inclement weather, about 200 people congregated in the house and about the grounds, and the little farm house was taxed to its utmost capacity to hold the guests. Early in the forenoon the carriages commenced to arrive, and soon the grounds were a scene of bustle and activity. "How do you do," cousin, uncle or aunt, as the case happened to be, with a hearty hand shake from the men while the women of the party practiced the osculatory process of salutation. As soon as this was over and every one had been cordially greeted, the visitors repaired to the house, where in a little room off the parlor Mrs. Armstrong was

seated surrounded by her immediate family, and looking like a queen upon her throne, with her courtiers at her feet. In this little room the representatives of five generations were assembled, and the sight was truly a beautiful one. There sat the old lady over whose life the sun of a hundred summers and winters had passed, and by her side was a lady holding a babe barely two months old, the youngest of the fifth generation of her progeny, and by her side on the other hand, was the eldest of the fifth generation, aged about seven years. As each visitor came into the room Mrs. Armstrong cordially extended her hand and greeted them with a pleasant smile and often with a joking remark about some reminiscence of her younger days, showing that though she had reached the centennial of her life, her mind and recollection of past events was in no way impaired. The guests did not come empty-handed and many handsome and useful gifts were laid at her feet. The news reporter was introduced to her and congratulated on her anniversary, passed several minutes in pleasant conversation with her, and was more than surprised at the wonderful manner in which she has retained all of her faculties at so extreme an old age. Her hearing is almost perfect, no raise in the voice to carry on conversation, while as stated before her memory is excellent, and she proved that her eyesight was still in excellent condition by reading a chapter from the Bible in a clear and distinct voice so that all in the room could hear her without

difficulty. While all this was going on the women folks were preparing an excellent dinner which was spread on a long table in the barn, and about twelve o'clock all hands were discussing the merits of the good things in a manner highly complimentary to the culinary skill of the hostess.

After dinner "Old Prob." who had had a frowning and threatening aspect all the morning, gathered up his forces and soon a heavy shower of rain was drenching those who were strolling about the larn, and caused a general stampede for a place of shelter. In the house a little speech-making was going on. Squire Lawrence was the first one called on, and he made a few remarks appropriate for the occasion. E.S. Durban rolled him. Then Squire McCune addressed the party, giving a full history of Mrs. Armstrong's life from her early youth up to the present day, and perhaps it would be well to give right here, for the benefit of our many readers, a history of her life and of her family, as taken by a News reporter from the family records.

Elizabeth Wallace was born near Carlisle, Pa., on the 8th day of October, 1788. When still a child her parents moved to Plaingrove township, Lawrence county, where they settled on the old Wallace estate, now owned and occupied by Milton Stevenson. When about 18 years of age, Elizabeth was wooed and won by Archibald Armstrong, a son of a neighbor farmer. Archibald was born at Path Valley, Franklin county, Pa., on March 6th, 1785, and was three years the senior of his wife at the time of their marriage, which was celebrated at the residence of the bride's parents on October 8th,

1807. The couple lived happily together for sixty-two years, when Archibald Armstrong was called to join the majority in the great and unknown world beyond the skies on June 18, 1869. Their union was blessed with seven children, four of whom are living, and all of these four were present at the reunion.

The eldest of those now living, Mrs. Thomas Hanna, resides at Mercer, Pa. She has four children, Thomas and James Hanna and Mrs. Kate Shaff of Pittsburg, and Mrs. Evelyn Haynes, of Springfield township, Mercer county.

James Hanna is also married and has three children, B----, John and Helen.

Mrs. Evelyn Haynes has two daughters, grandchildren of Mrs. Armstrong.

Mrs. Celinda McCune, of Grove City, is the younger. She has four children who were all present. Samuel is married and has one boy, William Lincoln. Robert is also married and lives in Chicago, and has a family of six children.

Hugh Wallace Armstrong, of Youngstown, comes next in line. His descendants are as follows:

Mrs. J.D. Orr, of Youngstown, whose children are George W. and Minnie B., both unmarried. Misses Sarah, Hattie and Annie. Mrs. Mary McClintock of Brooklyn, Schuyler county, Ill, who has three children, William, Elizabeth and Hattie. Mrs. George Howell of Portland, Oregon, who has a son named George, and Mrs. J.W. Tinker of Winchester, Tenn., with a family of two, Florence and an infant child born on Sept. 24, not yet named.

The youngest of the four is Samuel Armstrong, of Plaingrove, whose progeny number six - W.S., J.L., R.A., R.W., Minnie L., and W.R.

W.S. Armstrong is married and has five children, Ann Eliza,

Frank Stevenson, Archibald, James L., and Sarah Eliza.

Mrs. Helen Armstrong, of Grove City, was also present. She is the widow of Thomas Armstrong, who was wounded in the hand in the war at Petersburg, Va., on June 14th, 1864, and died of his injuries at a hospital in Philadelphia a short time afterward. She had four children, Mrs. Black, of Grove City, who has a family of four, Eulah Lee, Myrtle, Frank and Louisa. Mrs. Allie Heisley of the same place, who also has four children, Thos. C., Ethel, Walter and George Shurman. Luther Armstrong, of Bowling Green, Ky., who has three boys; and W.A.

Armstrong, of Burlington, Iowa, who has four daughters. Mr. Wallace Davidson was another of the relatives present. He married Margaret Jane Armstrong, daughter of Mrs. Elizabeth Armstrong, to whom were born three children, Gertrude, Hattie and John. Isaac A. Davidson, another of those at the reunion, married Ann Eliza Armstrong, now deceased. His family consists of Sarah E., Margaret E., George A., Elmer E., A.W. and D.T. Davidson.

This is about all of the immediate descendants of the old lady, as near as could be gathered from the means at hand. Besides there there [sic] were many relatives of those mentioned that were connected by marriage to Mrs. Armstrong that were present. One of the features of the occasion was the photographing by A.P. Webb, of Youngstown, of Mrs. Armstrong as she sat in her easy chair, copies of which were purchased by nearly everyone present. About four o'clock in the afternoon the guests commenced to disperse, each one as they departed bidding the old lady good bye and wishing her many happy returns of the day, and judging from her hale and hearty appearance, their wishes are likely to be fulfilled.

From the Plaingrove News, 1888

AFTER A FULL CENTURY.

Death of Mrs. Elizabeth Armstrong. Aged More Than 100 Years.

Mrs. Elizabeth Armstrong died at her home in Plaingrove, Pa., Wednesday morning. On Oct. 8 last the old lady celebrated her hundredth birthday anniversary at Plaingrove, a full account of which appeared in the News at the time. Mrs. Armstrong, at the time, declared that her health was better than it was 20 years ago, and she remained in her usual health until last Monday evening, when her fatal illness attacked her. Her mind remained clear until her death. Indeed, upon the completion of 100 years of life, her mind was nearly as clear as it ever was.

The surviving children of Mrs. Armstrong are Mrs. Evaline Hanna, aged 76, living near Mercer County, Pa.; Mrs. Selinda McCune, of near Grove City, Mercer County, Pa., aged 70; H. W. Armstrong, Youngstown, aged 73; and Samuel Armstrong, aged 64, who lives in the old homestead. Funeral Thursday.

~ ~ ~

Ragman Rolls of 1296 and 1291

After the death of Queen Margaret in 1291, there were a number of claimants to the Scottish throne. At that time, due to several marriage alliances, Scotland and England had diplomatic relationship. When it became obvious that Scotland couldn't make the decision without all out clan wars, King Edward of England offered to hear their cases and decide who had the most valid claim. When the Noblemen who were involved met with Edward at Norham on Tweed, Edward insisted in having them sign oath of allegiance to him, partly because he was afraid of making an unpopular choice and causing a riot among the Scots. The document signed by most of the noblemen is called the first and smallest of the Ragman Rolls. Balliol resisted the demands of Edward so the King sent an army and fought the Scots at the Battle of Dunbar. He proceeded across Scotland and stole some most important Scot artifacts such as the Stone of Destiny, where Scot Kings had been inaugurated from the earliest times, the Scottish Crown and the archives of Scottish Records.

On August 28, 1296, Edward again called together the Scots myalty and armies and asked them to swear allegiance to him and to sign another Ragman Roll. As the noblemen did this, they affixed their wax seals to the parchment and they often attached their own ribbon to the wax. It was signed by most of the leading Scots of the day including Robert Bruce, the sixth Lord of Annandale, his son, the 2nd Earl of carrick and William Wallace's uncle Sir Reginald de Crauford who is my ancestor and our Templeton ancestor, Gilbert Du Templeton. It has almost 2000 signatures making it one of the most valuable documents for future researchers.

Of these records two copies were preserved in the chapterhouse at Westminster (now in the Record Office, London), and it has been printed by Rymer. Another copy, preserved originally in the Tower of London, is now also in the Record Office. The latter record, containing the various acts of homage and fealty extorted by Edward from Baliol and others in the course of his progress through Scotland in the summer of 1296 and in August at the parliament of Berwick, was published by Prynne from the copy in the Tower and now in the Record Office. Both records were printed by the Bannatyne Club in 1834.

This page is part of an index of the 2,000 nobles and clergy who signed the Ragman Rolls of 1296 and 1291. The Ragman Rolls of 1291 are listed at the end.

SIGNATORIES in the RAGMAN ROLL of 1296

Abberdash, Alifaundre de (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
Abercromby (Abercrunby), Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
Abercromby (Abercrunby), William de (del counte de Fyf).
Aberden (Abirden, Abreden), chanoigne de, Fergus (del counte de Abirden).
Aberden (Abirden, Abreden), minifre del ordre de la Trinite de, Frere Huwe (del counte de Aberden).
Aberdenenfis (Aberdonenfis, Abredenenfis), burgenfes et communitas ciuitatis, (les burgoys e la cornmunaute de la ville de Abreden).
Aberdenenfis (Aberdonenfis, Abredenenfis), epifcopus. Dominus Henricus (Henry euefqe de Abreden).
Abergaldyn, Vide Dabergaldyn.
Aberkerthor, Johan de (del counte de Banf).
Abernyd, Phelipp de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
Abernythyn, Vide Abirnythy.
Abirbrothok, abbas de, Frater Henricus (et conuentus ejuſdem loci); (Henri abbe de Abirbrothok, et le couent de meſme le lieu).
Abirnythy (Abrenethy, Abernythyn), Dorminus Alexander de (miles) ; (Alifaundre de Abrenethy).
Abirnythy (Abrenethy, Abernythyn), Alifaundre de (del counte de Perth).
Abirnythy (Abrenethy, Abernythyn), Margarete qe fu la femme William de (del counte de Berewyk).
Abirnythy (Abrenethy, Abernythyn), Phelipp de (burgoys de Linlefcu).
Abirnythy (Abrenethy, Abernythyn), William de (tenant le Roi du counte de Berewyk).
Achtheleg, Nicol de (del counte de Are).
Adam, Johan fiz (burgoys de Monros).
Adamfone de Ouerayton, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
Adamfone de Ouerayton, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
Agdokefton, Johan de (tenant le Roi du cornte de Edeneburgh).
Aghenros, Anegos de.
Aghlek, Patrik de (del counte de Lanark).
Akeman, Alifaundre (del counte de Lanark).
Akenheued, Gilbert del (del counte de Lanark).
Aldcambus, le vicaire del Eglife de, Huwe (del counte de Berewyk).
Aldham, perfone del Eglife de, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
Aleyn, Brian fiz chiuallier.

Aleyn, Johan fiz (burgois de Monros).
 Alight, William (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Aliffone, Patrik (del counte de Berewyk).
 Almere (Aylmer), Emme de (del counte de Selkirk).
 Almere (Aylmer), Rogier de (del counte de Selghkyrk).
 Alnewyk, abbe de, Aleyn (del counte de Berewyk).
 Alpinfon de Aughtulus, Dunkan (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Alpyn, Monagh fiz (del counte de Perth).
 Anaund, William de (del counte de Forfare).
 Andreu, Daud le fiz (burgois de Pebbles).
 Andreu, Duncan fiz (del counte de Dunfres).
 Anecol, Donald le fiz (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Anegos, Eue de (del counte de Forfare).
 Anefleye de Crucfut, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Anefleye, Johan le fiz Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Annekombe, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Annethe, Gilbert de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Apelton, William de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Araz, Johan de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Archer, Patrik le (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Arde, William fiz Steuene de (del counte de Inuerneffe).
 Ardebechey, Lorn de (del counte de Perth).
 Ardros, Ele de (del counte de Fyf).
 Ardroffan, Godefrey (del counte de Are).
 Ardroffan, Godefridus de (Godefray de Ardroffan).
 Ardwykefton, Adam de (del counte de Lanark).
 Argoyl, Vide Ergayl.
 Arnald, Richard (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Arnald, William le fiz (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Arcappel, Morice de (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Arnot, Daud (del counte de Fyf).
 Arrat, Johan de (del counte de Anegos).
 Arthurfhull, Henry de (del counte de Lanark).
 Afkeby, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Afkelot, Hectur (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Afkolo, Fergus (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Atteboche de Berewyk, Criftiane.
 Auelyn, Alun le fiz (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Auelyn, Dunkan fiz (cheualier, del counte de Dunbretan).
 Auenel, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Aumbler, Wautier le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Ayer de Caludon, Huwe (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Aylmer, Vide Almere.
 Aynefton, Symon de (del counte de Lanark).
 Aynetrothere, Henry de (del counte de Fyf).
 Ayr de Ayton, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Ayton, Henry de (burgois de Hadington).

Bachiler, William (burgois de Hadington).
 Badby (Baddeby) de Lambreton, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Badby (Baddeby) Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Badby (Baddeby) Johan de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Badby (Baddeby) Nicol de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Baihard. de Hoton, Johan (del count de Rokefburgh).
 Bailliol (Bailol, Balliolo), Dominus Alexander de (miles); (Alifaundr de Bailol, chiuallier).
 Bailliol (Bailol, Balliolo), Alifaundre de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Bailliol (Bailol, Balliolo), Dominus Willelmus de (rector ecclesie de Kirkpatrik); (William de Bailliol
 perfone de Eglife de Kirkpatrik).

Bailliol (Bailol, Balliolo), William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bakepol, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Bakefter de Loffithe, Geffray le (del counte de Forfare).
 Balernagh, Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Balkafky, Thomas de (del counte de Fyf).
 Balmakomor, Richard de (del counte de Fyf).
 Balmalkyn, Andreu (del counte de Fyf).
 BalmyI, Meftre Nicol de (perfone de Kaleder Comitis, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Balnehard, Thomas de (del counte de Linlifcu).
 Balran, Matheu de (del counte de Fyf).
 Banf, Meftre Henry de (chaunceler de Morref, del counte de Elgyn).
 Banyfleue, Margerie qe fu la femme Thomas (tenaunte le Roi du counte de Berewyk).
 Barbour, Alyn le (del counte de Are).
 Bard, Duncan (del counte de Striuelin).
 Bard, Fergus de (del counte de Lanark).
 Bard, Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Bard, Nicol (del counte de Lanark).
 Bardonan, Patrik de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Bardonan, Thomas de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Baret, William (del counte de Pebbles).
 Barker de Tynningham, Richard le (tenant le Euelfqe de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Barker Aliffindre le (provofit de Hadington).
 Barker William le (burgois de Hadington).
 Barton, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Barton, Thomas de (del counte de Are).
 Barwe, perfone del Eglife de, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bat, Wautier del (del counte de Lanark).
 Baudrefton, William de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Beatrice, Gilbert fiz (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Beg, Patrik (del counte de Are).
 Belgauen, Alifaundre de (del counte de Lanark).
 Belle, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Belle, Aleyn (del counte de Berewyk).
 Belle, Richard (del counte de Berewyk).
 Belmenagh, Hughe de (del counte de Perth).
 Benauty, Nicol de (del counte de Lanark).
 Benoughtyn, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Berewyk, Geffrey de (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Berewyk, miniftre del ordre de la Trinite de, Frere Adam
 Berewyk, vicaire del Eglife de la Trinite de, William
 Berkele (Berkelee, Berkelegh, Berkelye), Daud de (del counte de Fyf).
 Berkele Dominus Patricius de (miles) (Patrick de Berkeleye, chiualler).
 Berkele Patrik de (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Berkele Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bernak de Hilton, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bernard de Hilton, Adam (del counte de Perth).
 Bertelmeu, Alifaundre (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bertram, Johan (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Beton, (Betton, Betun), Andreu de (del counte de Perth).
 Beton, Daud de (chiualer, del counte de Forfare).
 Beton, Robert de (del counte de Anegos).
 Betuyn, Robert de (del counte de Forfare).
 Beuauelyn, Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Biddefden, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bigge, Huwe de (del counte de Lanark).
 Bikerton (Bykerton), Euftace de (del counte de Fif).
 Bikerton Euitachius de (rector ecclefiie de Hutremokedy); (Euftache de Bikerton perfone del Eglife de Hutremokedy).

Bikerton Johan de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Bikerton, Wautier de (del counte de Fyf).
 Billingham, William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bishop, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Bifet, (Byfet), Wautier (del counte de Aberden).
 Bifet, Wautier (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bifet, Dominus Willielmus (miles); (William. Bifet, chiualer).
 Bifet, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bithweder, Conan de (del counte de Perth).
 Blacwatre, Dominus Walterus dictus (decanus ecclesie Abredenensis), (Wautier Blacwatre, dean de Abreden).
 Blakeburn, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Blakelawe, William de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Blanerne, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Blare, Daud de (del counte de Perth).
 Blare, Huwe of the (del counte de Are).
 Blauntyr, Patrik de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Blauntyr, priour de, Frere William (del counte de Lanark).
 Blenkhanfon, Patrik de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Blind, Roger (burgois de Pebbles).
 Blunt de Efkeby, Johan le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Blythe, Williame de (perfone de Chirneffyd).
 Body, Huwe (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Boghan, Thomas de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bondington (Bondyngton), Alifaundre de (chapelyn, del counte de Berewyk).
 Bondington, Johan de (clerk, del counte de Striuelyn).
 Bonekel (Bonkhill, Bonkhille, Bonequill), Agneys de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bonekel, Alifaundre de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bonekel, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bonekel, Thomas (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bofeuill, William de (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Bofeuill, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Bofeuill, William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Botergaft, Johan de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Boterotheryn, le vicaire del Eglife de, Auftyn (del counte de Elgyn).
 Botiler (Botillier) de Cramund, Johan le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Botiler, Johan le (del counte de Perth).
 Botiler, Dominus Johannes dictus le (miles); (Johan le Botiler. chiualer).
 Botle, Patrik de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Bouchan, comes de (Vide Comyn).
 Bougheannan, Malcolm de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Boulden, Mefre Richard de (perfone del Eglife de Edalfton, del counte de Pebbles).
 Boule, William (del counte de Are).
 Boulton, William. fiz Geffrey de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Boure, Lawrenz atte (del counte de Pebbles).
 Boutelerie, Alifaundre de la (del counte de Are).
 Boys, Humfrey de (chiualier, del counte de Dunfres).
 Boys, Patrik fiz Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Boys, Thomas de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Boyt, Robert (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Boyuile (Boyuill), Eufrage de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Boyuile, Richard de (del counte de Are).
 Boyuile, Robert de (del counte de Are).
 Braceour de Jeddeworth, Henry (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Brade, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Bradeleye, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Brecnagh, Duncan (del counte de Fyf).
 Breghin, Daud de (del counte de Forfare).
 Breghinens, Ercedyakne, Mefre Johan (del comte de Forfare).

Breton (Bretun, Briton), Eliz (del counte de Berewyk).
 Breton William (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Breton William (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Brewefter del a Forefte de Paffeleye, Thomas le (del counte de Lanark).
 Brice, Richard (burgois e aldremen de Striuelin).
 Brid, Douenald (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Briden, Phelipp de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Brinfolles, Iue de (del counte de Fyf).
 Broun (Brun) de Gamelfheles, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Broun (Brun) de Laweder, William le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Broun (Brun), Gunnyd (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Broun (Brun), Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Broun (Brun), Rauf (del counte de Berewyk).
 Brunhous (Brunhus), Robert del (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Brutherftanes, Huwe de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Bruyn de Eghelin, Johan (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Bruyn de Kilbride, Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Bruyn, Phelip (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Bundeby, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Bunkel, Vide Dunkel.
 Buntying, Thomas (del counte de Pebbles).
 Burgh, Pieres de (del counte de Are).
 Burgh, Robert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Burghdon de Blakeder, Rogier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Burghdon de Blakeder, Wautier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Buthernok, Gilbert de (del counte de Striuelin).
 Byetoine, Dominus Andreas de (miles), (Andreu de Byetoine, chiualler).
 Byly, Patrik de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Byfkeby, William de (del counte de Wyggeton).

Cadiou, Adam de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cadrogh, Rogier le fix Richard de (tenant le Roi du counte de Lanark).
 Caffurlong, William (del counte de Berewyk).
 Calantyr (Calentir), Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Calantyr, chiualler).
 Caldecote, Geffrey de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Caldefreme, Meftre de (Vide Morton).
 Calrewode, Ifabele de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cambays, Richard (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Cambel (Campbel) del Illes, Dunkan (del counte de Fyf).
 Cambel (Campbel) Arthur (del counte de Perth).
 Cambel (Campbel) Sire Douenal (del counte de Dunbreton).
 Cambel (Campbel) Dugal (del counte de Perth).
 Cambel (Campbel) Duncan (del counte de Perth).
 Cambel (Campbel) Meftre Neel (del counte de Are).
 Cambel (Campbel) Nicol (chiualler).
 Cambel (Campbel) Thomas (tenant le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Cambo (Cambhou), Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
 Cambo (Cambhou), Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Cambo, chiualler).
 Cambok, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Cambos, Anable de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Camboflanc, perfone del Eglife de, Connel (del counte de Berewyk).
 Cambron (Cambroun) dominus de Balingernach, Dominus Robertus (miles), (Robert Cambron de Balligrenach, chiualler).
 Cambron (Cambroun) de Balingrenagh. Robert (del counte de Perth).
 Cambron (Cambroun) de Balnely, Dominus Robertus (miles), (Robert Cambron de Balnely, chiualler).
 Cambron (Cambroun) de Balnely, Robert (tenant le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Cambron (Cambroun) de Balnely, Robert (del counte de Forfare).
 Cambufkenel, abbe de, Patrik (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Cammays, Wautier (clerk, del counte de Rokefburgh).

Camp, Nicol de (vicaire del Eglife de Grenlawe).
 Campanya, Petrus de (rector ecclesie de Kinkel); (Pieres de Champagne perfone del Eglife de Kynkel).
 Campanya (Vide Chaumpaigne).
 Campyon, Nicol (del counte de Berewyk).
 Can, Dominus Douenaldus filius (miles); (Douenald le fiuz Can, chiualer).
 Can, Douenald fiz (del counte de Dunfres).
 Candide Cafe, euefqe de, Thomas.
 Candide Cafe (Vide Whiterne).
 Canonby, priour de, William (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Cantelu, Johan de (chiualier).
 Caran, Wautier de (del counte de Fyf).
 Cardelneffe, Michel de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Cardoyl, priour de, Adam (del counte de Are).
 Carduff, Dauid fiz Cauan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Carleal, Beatrice de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Carleton, Duncan de (del counte de Are).
 Carnant, Crifti de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Carnot, Deuorgoyl qe fut femme Robert (del counte de Lanark).
 Carnwedry, Pieres de (del counte de Lanark).
 Carribber, Phelipp de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Carriz, Adam de (tenant le Euefqe de Saint Audreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Carryk (Karrik), Meftre Duncan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Carryk (Karrik), Johan fiz Neel de (del counte de Are).
 Carryk (Karrik), Morthak de (del counte de Fyf).
 Carfan, Robert de (perfone de la meyte del Eglife de Kircandres, del counte de Dunfres).
 Catkon, Thomas de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Catton, Thomas de (del counte de Perth).
 Cauerton, Alifaundre le fiz Henry de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Cauerton, Alifaundre de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Celer, Dunkan del (burgois de Saint Johan de Perth).
 Chapelain (Chapeleyn), Henry le (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Chapelain (Chapeleyn), Nicol le (gardein de la mefon Dieu de Rokefburg).
 Chartres, Andreas de (Andreu de Chartres).
 Chartres, Andreu de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Chartres, Ofbern (del counte de Pebbles).
 Chartres, Robert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Chartres, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Chartres, William de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Chaftel Bernard, Huwe del (perfone del Eglife de Colbanfton, del counte de Lanark).
 Chathou, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Chatton, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Chatton, William de (vicaire del Eglife de Ederham, del counte de Berewyk).
 Chaumbre, Robert de la (del counte de Lanark).
 Chaumbre, Symund de la (del counte de Dunfres).
 Chaumbre, Wautier de la (del counte de Berewyk),
 Chaumbre, William de la (bailif é burgois de Pebbles).
 Chaumbre, William de la (del counte de Dunfres).
 Chaumbre, William de la (del counte de Lanark).
 Chaumpaigne, Pieres de (del counte de Fyf).
 Chaumpaigne, Rauf de (del counte de Wygeton).
 Chaumpaigne, William de (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Chaumpaigne, Vide Campanya.
 Chaundel (Chaundeil), Martin del (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Chaundel (Chaundeil), Thomas de la (del counte de Pebbles).
 Cheen, Johan (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Cheen, Dominus Reginaldus le (miles); (Renaud le Cheen, chiualer).
 Chefolm (Chefehalm), Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Chefolm (Chefehalm), Richard de (del counte de Rokefburg).

Chilham, Rofe de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Clapham, Marchus de (Mark de Clapham).
 Clapham, Mark de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu del counte de Fyf).
 Clenel, Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Clerk de Colgynnton, Adam le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Clerk de Eyeton, William le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Clerk de Louweder, William le fiz Alain le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Clerk de Rokefburgh, Wautier le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Clerk Guy le (burgoyes de Jeddeworth).
 Clerk, Johan le (del counte de Are).
 Clerk, Pieres le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Clerk, Richard le (burgoyes de Jeddeworth).
 Clerk, William le (del counte db Lanark).
 Cliueland, Ofbern de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cloggefton, Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Clonas Lombard, Reyner de (tenant le Roi du counte de Rokefburgh).
 Cluny (Cluniaco), Adam (del counte de Fyf).
 Cluny (Cluniaco), Dominus Willelmus de (miles), (William de Cluny, chiualer).
 Cluny, William de (chantour de Bregghyn).
 Cluny, William de (del counte de Perth).
 Cochet, Robert (del counte de Striuelin).
 Cogan, Robert (del counte de Berewyk).
 Cokeburn, Pieres de
 Cokeburn, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Colbanfton (Colbenfton), Edmund de (del counte de Lanark).
 Colbanfton (Colbenfton), Ifabele de (del counte de Lanark).
 Colbanfton (Colbenfton), Margarete de (del counte Lanark).
 Coldingham, priour de, Henry (et couent de mefme le lu).
 Coldingham, Richard de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Coleuill (Coleuile), Thomas de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Colilawe, Aleyn de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Collan, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Colly, Thomas de
 Colnehach, Willelmus dictus de (William de Colnehach).
 Colwenne, Adam de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Comenagh, Patrik de (del counte de Are).
 Comenok, Patrik de (del counte de Lanark).
 Comyn comes de Bouchan, Dominus Johannes (Johan Comyn comte de Bouchan).
 Comyn de Badenach, fenior, Dominus Johannes (miles), (Johan Comyn de Badenach, chiualler).
 Comyn, dame de Gordon, Marjerie (del counte de Berewyk).
 Comyn de Scraefburgh (Skreefburgh), Johannes (Johan Comyn de Scraefburgh), (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Comyn, Dominus Alexander (miles), (Alifandre Comyn, chiualler).
 Comyn, Audomerus (Ayelmer Comyn).
 Comyn, Eymmer (del counte de Banf).
 Comyn, Wautier (del counte de Pebbles).
 Comyn Dominus Willelmus (prepositus Sancti Andree), (William Comyn prouoft del Eglife de Seint Andreu).
 Coneueth, Johan de (perfone del Eglife de Alnecrom).
 Coneueth, Johan de (perfone del Eglife de Alnecrom, del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Congelton (Cungleton), Mabile de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Congelton (Cungleton), Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Coningefburgh (Conyngburgh), Dunkan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Coningefburgh (Conyngburgh), Gilbert de (del counte de Are).
 Coningefburgh (Conyngburgh), William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Coningham, Robert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Contegarny, Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Cor, Henricus dictus (Henry Cor).
 Corbet, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Corbet, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).

Corbet, Rogier (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Corbrand, Adam (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Cormanough, Steuene de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cornhal, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Corour, Nicol (del counte de Berewyk).
 Corry, Nicol de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Corry, Dominus Walterus de (miles) (Wautier de Corry, chiualer).
 Coteford, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Couerton, Edward de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Coughran, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Coupre (Cupre), abbe de, Andreu (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Coupre (Cupre), Symund (del counte de Berewyk).
 Crag (Cragge), Agneys del (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Crag (Cragge), Johan de la (del counte de Lanark).
 Cragefton, Andreu de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Cragi, Johan (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Cragyn (Cregayn), Johan de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Cragyn (Cregayn), Thomas de (del counte de Are).
 Crak, Henry (del counte de Dunfres).
 Crak, James de (del counte de Selkyrk).
 Crak, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Crambath, Dominus Heruius de (decanus Dunkeldenfis), (Heruy de Crambath dean de Dunkeldin).
 Cramound (Cramund), Laurence de (del counte de Forfare).
 Cramound (Cramund), William de (clerk, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Cranefton, vicaire del Eglife de, Huwe (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Crauford (Crauford), Johan de (tenant le Roi du counte Are).
 Crauford (Crauford), Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Crauford (Crauford), Renaud (Reinaud, Reynaud) de (del counte de Are).
 Crauford (Crauford), Roger (Rogier) de (del counte de Are).
 Crauford (Crauford), William de (del counte de Are).
 Cregayn, Vide Cragyn.
 Creges, Randolf de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Creghton (Creyghton), Alifaandre de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Creghton, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Creling (Creling), Richard de (del counte de Lanark).
 Creling (Creling), William de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Creffeuelle (Creffewill), Daud de (del counte de Lanark).
 Creffeuelle (Creffewill), Symund de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Cribbes, Robert de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Cribbes, Robert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Croket de Kameflank, Huwe (del counte de Lanark).
 Croketa de Kylbride, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Crokfchank, Johan (burgois de Hadington)
 Cromkam, Roulant de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cronrotheryk, Gilbert fiz Gregoire de (del counte de Lanark).
 Cronrotheryk, Gotherik fiz Matheu de (del counte de Lanark).
 Crofton, Andreu de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Cruk de Fingaldefton, Robert (del counte de Lanark).
 Cuffok, Thomas (burgois de Monros).
 Culte de Strathawan, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Curry, Wautier (del counte de Dunfres).
 Curryk, Johan (del counte de Perth).
 Cuyot, Richard (del counte de Fyf).

 Dabergaldyn, Thomas (del counte de Are).
 Daliell (Dalielle), Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Daliell (Dalielle), vicaire del Eglife de, Renaud (del counte de Lanark).
 Dalmahoy, Alifaandre de (del counte de Edeneburgh).

Dalmahoy, Henry de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Dammefone, Johan (burgois e aldreman de Jeddeworth).
 Danielfton, Huwe de (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Darel, Gilbert (del counte de Pebbles).
 Dauentre, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Daudid, Adam fiz (del counte de Forfare).
 Daudid, Johan le fiz (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dederik, William de (burgois e aldreman de Edeneburgh).
 Deghlyn de Hadington, Rauf (tenaunt le Roi du. counte de Edeneburgh)
 Deghlyn - Vide Eghlyn.
 Demefter, Vide Emefter.
 Dene, Robert de (perfone del Eglife de Wilton).
 Denum, Gwy de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Dercheftre, Thomas (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dere, abbe de, Brice (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Derefdere, Huwe de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Derlington, Johan de (perfone del Eglife de Dunlopy, del comte de Forfare).
 Dernington, Wautier de (perfone de Parton, del counte de Dunfres).
 Derok, Johan (burgois de Hadington).
 Derum, Randulf de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Defpenfe, Henry de la (del counte de Perth).
 Defpenfe, Nicol de la (del counte de Berewyk).
 Defpenfer, Nicol le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Deuorgoyl, Vide Carnot.
 Dewere, Peres de (de counte de Edeneburgh).
 Dewere, Thomas de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Dirland (Dirlaund), Robert (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Dirland (Dirlaund), Thomas (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Doberuill, William (del counte de Fyf).
 Dod, William (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Doghterloueny, Wautier de (del counte de Fyf).
 Dolfinefton, Reynaud de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Donan (Donon), Adam de (del counte de Lanark).
 Donan (Donon), Arthur de (del counte de Are).
 Dordof, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Doucquer, abbe de, Johan (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Douglas (Duglas), Frefkyn de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Douglas (Duglas), Dominus Willelmus de (miles), (William de Douglas, chiualer).
 Douglas (Duglas), William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Douglas (Duglas), William fiz Andreu de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Dounom, Huwe de (perfone del Eglife de Liberton, del counte de Lanark).
 Douns, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dowan, Adam de (del counte de Lanark).
 Drelton, Robert fiz Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Drieburgh, abbe de, Williame (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Drilawe (Drilowe), Johan de (burgois de Striuelin).
 Drilawe (Drilowe), Johan de (tenant le Roi du counte de Striuelym).
 Drilawe (Drilowe), William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Drilawe (Drilowe), William de (tenant le Roi du cornte de Edeneburgh).
 Droghkil, Alifaandre de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Dromund, Gilbert de (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Drufqum, Robert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Duddynggefton, Eleyne de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Dudyn, Alifaandre (del counte de Pebbles).
 Dukeldyn, deen de, Meftre Heruy (del counte de Perth).
 Dukeldyn, Vide Dunkel.
 Dullop, Neel fiz Robert de (del counte de Are).
 Dunbar, Alice de (del counte de Berewyk).

Dunbar, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dunblan, Laurence de (burgois de Striuelin).
 Dunbretan, Johan de (perfone del Eglife de Nig, del counte de Ros).
 Dunbretan, Nicol le fiz Adam de (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Dunbretan, Robert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Duncan, Ewyn fiz
 Dundas, Saer de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Dundas, Serle de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Dundee, Michel de (perfone del Eglife de Stubbehok, del counte de Pebbles).
 Dundee, Rauf de (del counte de Forfare).
 Dundee, Meftre William de (perfone del Eglife de A1uyth, del counte de Abirden).
 Dundemer (Dundemor), Henry de (del counte de Fyf).
 Dundemer (Dundemor), Patrik de (del counte de Fyf).
 Dunderinan, abbe de, Wautier (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Dunduf, Robert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Dunfermelin, abbe de, Rauf (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Dungalphone, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Dunkel (Bunkel?), vicaire de, Douenal (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dunkel - Vide Dukeldyn.
 Dunmany, Gilbert de (tenant le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Dunmany, vicaire del Eglife de, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Dunfier, Mariorie de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Dunwythye, Aleyn (del counte de Berewyk).
 Durant, Wautier (del counte de Dunfres).
 Dureme, priour de, Richard (et le couent de mefme le lu)

Eccles, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Edenburgh, la commune de
 Edenburgh, James de (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Edenburgh, Richard fiz Wautier de (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Edenham, vicaire del Eglife de, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Edenham, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Edmerfton, Baldewyn de (del counte de Lanark).
 Edward, Dunkan fiz Gilmor (del counte de Are).
 Edward, Gilmor fiz (del counte de Are).
 Egerhop, Rauf de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Eggilune, (Eggilune), Dominus Patricius de (miles), (Patrik de Eggilune, chiuale).
 Eggleffeyan, perfone del Eglife de, Gyles (del counte de Dunfres).
 Egglefham, Barthelmeu de (chapelyn, gardein de Nouel leu de Seneware, del counte de Dunfres).
 Eghlyn, Rauf (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Eghlyn, Robert de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Eghlyn - Vide Deghlyn.
 Eglinton, (Eglyn), Radulphus de (Rauf de Eglinton)
 Eglinton, Rauf de (del counte de Are).
 Ekford, Richard le fiz Geffrey de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Elbotle, (Elebotle), Hughe fiz Geffrey de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Elbotle, (Elebotle), Iue de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Elfinfton, (Elfinefton, Elfingefton, Elfingifton), Alain de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Elfinfton, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Elfinfton, Johannes de (Johan de Elfingefton).
 Elgeryk, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Elgyn en Morref, burgenfes et communitas de (les burgois e la comunaute de la ville de Elgyn en Morref).
 Ellom, Henry de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Elmeley (Elmelegh), Robert de (del counte de Aberden).
 Elmeley (Elmelegh), Robertus de (Robert de Elmely).
 Elyffone, Rogier (del counte de Berewyk).
 Emefter, Haldan de (del counte de Perth).
 Enderkelyn, Michel de (del counte de Edeneburgh).

Engleis (Engleys), Johan le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Engleis (Engleys), Margarete le (del counte de Perth).
 Engleis (Engleys), Maucolum le (del counte de Perth).
 Engleis (Engleys), Phelip le (del counte de Lanark).
 Engleis (Engleys), Richard le (del counte de Lanark).
 Engleis (Engleys), Wautier le (del counte de Lanark).
 Ennerkethin, la communaute de
 Enrepeffre, Daud de (del counte de Anegos).
 Ercattan, priour de, Pieres (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Erchebaudeffone, Malcolom (del counte de Pebbles).
 Ergayl (Ergayel, Argoyl, Ergad), Dominus. Alexander de (miles), (Alifandre de Ergayl, chiualer).
 Ergayl, Alifaundre de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Ergayl, Malcolom de (frere Sire Alifaundre de Ergad), (Maucolum frere Alifaundre de Ergayl, del counte de Ergayl).
 Erington, Rauf de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Ernaud, Henry le fiz (del counte de Selkyrk).
 Ernaud, William fiz (burgoyes de Linlefcu).
 Erth (Erthe), Alexander de (Alifaundre de Erthe).
 Erth (Erthe), Marie qe fu la femme Huwe de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Erth (Erthe), Richard de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Erth (Erthe), William de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Eftnefbyt (Eftnefebyt), Gilbert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Eftnefbyt (Eftnefebyt), Johan le fiz Adam de
 Eftreuill, Alifaundre fiz William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Efttubille, Morice de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Eftwode, Gyles del (del counte de Lanark).
 Etherefton, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Eue, William le fiz (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Eurewyk, Adam de (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Ewer, Thomas le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ewynfone, Johan (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Eyr de Eyton, Steuen (del counte de Berewyk).
 Eyr de Eyton, de Mefpennon, Johan (del counte de Pebbles).
 Eyr de Eyton, de Stychehull, Daud (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Eyton, William le fiz Renaud de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Eyton, William de (del counte de Berewyk).

Fairhalugh, Margerie de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Farningdon, Williame de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fafington, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Faftfurlong, Johan fiz William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fauconer, Robert le (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Fauconer, Robertus le (Robert le Fauconer).
 Faudon, Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Faughfide, Rogier de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Faufy, Nicol (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Faufyde, Robert del (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Faufyde, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Federed, William le fiz William de (del counte de Elgyn en Morref).
 Fenton, Wautier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Fenton, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Fermin, Adam le fiz (burgois de Hadington).
 Ferndragh (Fernyndraugh, Fernyndrogh), Dominus Duncanus de (miles); (Duncan de Ferndragh, chiualier).
 Ferndragh, Duncan de (chiualer, del counte de Abreden).
 Ferndragh, Eue qe fut la femme Maucolom de (del counte de Abreden).
 Ferrer (Ferur) de Grauernen, Henry le (del Counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ferrer de Kellawe, Aleyn le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Ferye, Henry del (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Feure de Erfeldoun, Adam le (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).

Feure, William le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Fin, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Finlaufone de Netbolg, Brice (del counte de Striuelin).
 Fleming (Flaming, Flemeng, Flemingus, Flemyng) de Seton, William le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Fleming, Aleyn de (del counte de Are).
 Fleming, Johan (del counte de Pebbles).
 Fleming, Dominus Johannes (miles), (Johan Flaming, chiualer).
 Fleming, Michel le (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Fleming, Patrik (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Fleming, Wautier le (del counte de Lanark).
 Fleming, William le (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Fleming, William le (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Flex, Richard de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Flifk, Laurence de (del counte de Perth).
 Florieffine, Thomas (del counte de Berewyk).
 Foderingeye, Hughe de (del counte de Perth).
 Foderingeye, Roger de (vicaire del Eglife de Kilmor, del counte de Ros).
 Foghou, le vicaire del Eglife de, Daudid (del counte de Berewyk).
 Foreman, Robert (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Forefter, Johan le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Forgrunt, vicaire de, Wautier (del counte de Fyf).
 Foffard (Foffart) de Jeddeworth, Richard (tenant le Roi del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Foffard de Tynningham, Alifaundre (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Foftrefone, Fergus (del counte de Are).
 Foughelton, Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Fouk, Robert (burgois de Saint Johan de Perth).
 Fouldon (Foweldon) de Horton, Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Fouldon, la perfone de, Adam (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fourbour, Richard le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Foward, Alifaundre de (del counte de Lanark).
 Frafer (Refer), Ade de (prieuffe de Eccles, del counte de Berewyk).
 Frafer (Refer), Andreu (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Frafer (Refer), Sire Richard (del counte de Dunfres).
 Frafer (Refer), Richard (chiualer, del counte de Striuelyn).
 Frafer (Refer), Robert (del counte de Dunfres).
 Frafer (Refer), Willelmus (filius quondam Alexandri Frafer), (William Frafer le fiz jadis Alifandre Frafer).
 Frafer (Refer), William (del counte de Pebles).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) de Benefton, Johan (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) de Longaneuton, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) Aleyn (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) Symund (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) Dominus Willelmus (miles), (William Fraunceys, chiualler).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) William le (del counte de de Edeneburgh).
 Fraunceis (Fraunceys) William (del counte de Fyf).
 Freman, Jacob (del counte de Pebbles).
 Fremanfone, Robert (burgoys de Jeddeworth).
 Frere, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Frefel (Freyfel, Frifel, Fryfel), Alifandre (chiualier).
 Frefel, Andreu (del counte de Fyf).
 Frefel, Bernard (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Frefel, Johan (del counte de Fyf).
 Frefel, Laurence (del counte de Pebbles).
 Frefel, Sare la fielle Thomas (del counte de Berewyk).
 Frefel, William (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Freffeleye, Henry de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Freffeleye, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Frifith, William (del counte de Pebbles).
 Fulton (Foulton), Aleyn fiz Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).

Fulton (Foulton), Henry de (del counte de Lanark).
 Fulton (Foulton), Nicol de (del counte de Lanark).
 Fulton (Foulton), Thomas de (vicaire del Eglife de Irnnewyk (Inuerwyk?), del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Furblur, Alifaundre (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Furblur, Richard le (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Furdal, Richard de (del counte de Perth).
 Fyf, Ele de (del counte de Fyf).
 Fylorth, perfone del Eglife de, Andreu (del counte de Abirden).
 Fyndon, Phelipp de (del comte de Kincardin).

 Galbrath de Kilbride, Douenal (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Galbrath Arthur de (del counte de Wygeton).
 Galfagy, Thomas (del counte de Are).
 Galightly de Aberden, Henry (del counte de Aberden).
 Garderobe, Aleyn de la (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Garderobe, Andreu de la (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Garderobe, Daud de la (del counte de Fyf).
 Gardin (Gardeyn, Gardino, Gardyn), Willelmus de (William de Gardyn).
 Gardin William (del counte de Forfare)
 Gardin William du (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gardin, Umfrey du (del counte de Dunfres).
 Garghill, Iwyn de (del counte de Striuelin).
 Garthgeuerton, Thomas le fiz Mauclom de (del counte de Striuelin).
 Garuan, vicaire del Eglife de, Johan.
 Garuiagh (Garuyagh), Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Garuiagh (Garuyagh), Andreu de (del counte de Aberden).
 Garuiagh (Garuyagh), Johan de (del counte de Aberden).
 Garuiagh (Garuyagh), Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Garuiagh, chiualer).
 Garuok, vicaire del Eglife de, William (del counte de Miernes).
 Geffrey (Gieffrey), Pieres le fiz (burgois de Pebbles).
 Geffrey (Gieffrey), Symund le fiz (burgois de Pebbles).
 Geffrey (Gieffrey), William le fiz (burgois de Hadington).
 Gelghagi, Thomas de (del counte de Are).
 Gerlaund, Robert (del counte de Perth).
 Geruald, Robert (del counte de Fyf).
 Gerueyfe, William. fiz (del counte de Are).
 Geuelefton, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Gibelotefton, Adam de (del counte de Fyf).
 Gibelotefton, Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Giffard, Huwe de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Giffard, James (del counte de Berewyk).
 Giffard, Johan (chiualier, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gilberdeffone, Johan (del counte de Pebbles).
 Gilbert, Douenald fiuz (del counte de Are).
 Gilcrift, Kefchyn (del counte de Perth).
 Gilcrift, Mac (tenaunt le Roi du counte, de Perth).
 Gilcrifteffone, Patrik (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Gilgirgefton, Rauf de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Gillehomedy, (del counte de Lanark).
 Gillonby, Henry de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Glan, Johan del (del counte de Lanark).
 Glafcu (Glafcou), vicaire de, Aleyn_ (del counte de Lanark).
 Glafcuenfis epifcopus, Robertus (Robert euefk de Glafgu).
 Glafford, Rogier de (del counte de Lanark).
 Glaffreth, Aleyn de (del counte de Lanark).
 Glafirthe, Aleyn fiz Rogier de (del counte de Lanark).
 Gledeftan, Herbert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Glendeghrad (Glendughred, Glyndoghred), Malcolm de (del counte de Perth).

Glendeghrad, Maucolum de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Glendeghrad, Patrik de (del counte de Perth).
 Glengeuel (Glangeuel), Marie de (del counte de Lanark).
 Glenkerny Dominus Gilbertus de (miles); (Gilberd de Glenkerny, chiuualier).
 Glenkerny, Sire Gilbert de (del counte de Elgyn).
 Glennefk. (Glennyfk), Johan de (del counte de Forfare).
 Glennefk, Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Glennelk, chiuualier).
 Glennefk, Morgund de (del counte de Forfare).
 Glenwhym, Efteuene de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Glover, Symon le (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Glymcarny, Gilberd de (del counte de Inuernys).
 Gobynfekegh, William, de (del counte de Are).
 Godeflyme, William (del counte do Berewyk).
 Gold, Adam (baillif de Monros).
 Goldingham, Edith de (del counte do Berewyk).
 Golyn, Mariot de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gofcelyn, William (del counte de Selkyrk).
 Gofeford, Meftre William de (perfone de Caftelmilke, del counte de Dunfres).
 Gotherikfone, Dougal (del counte de Wygeton).
 Gothrik, Dougal fiz (del counte de Dunfres).
 Gourlay (Gourley, Gurle, Gurlegh, Gurleye) de Bagally, William de (del counte de Forfare).
 Gourlay, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Gourlay, Huwe de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gourlay, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Gourlay, Matheu de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gourlay, Patrik de (perfone del Eglife de Loghorward, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Gourlay, Rogier (del counte do Edeneburgh).
 Gourlay, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Graham, Anable qe fu la femme Patrik de (del counte de Perth).
 Graham, Henry de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Graham, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Graham, Mariorie de (del counte de Perth).
 Graham, Sire Nicol de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Graham, Pieres de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Graham, Pieres de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Graunge, Robert de la (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Graunt, Robert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Gregyns, Dugald.
 Grene, Rogier del (del counte do Rokefburg).
 Greneheued, Criftiane de (del counte do Selkirk).
 Grenerig, William del (del counte de Lanark).
 Grenlawe, Matheu de (fiz William de Grenlawe, del counte de Berewyk).
 Grenlawe, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Grenok, Hugh de (del counte de Lanark).
 Gretheued, Johan le fiz Wautier (burgois de Pebbles).
 Greue (Greyue) de Haytone, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Greue (Greyue) Johan le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Grey, Henry (del counte do Fyf).
 Grey, Huwe (del counte de Berewyk).
 Greydon, Wautier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Greyly, Johan de (chiualier, del counte de Aberden).
 Grimbald (Grimbaud), Adam fiz (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Grimbald (Grimbaud), Robert (del counte de Berewyk).
 Grimmeflawe, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Grithman, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Grundi de Neicton, Robert (del counte do Rokefburgh).
 Gummefton, Wautier fiz Wautier de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Gurdon, Dominus Adam (miles), (Adam Gurdoun, chiuualier).

Gurdon, Adam (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Gurney, Aleyn (del counte do Rokefburgh).
 Gyle, Patrik del (del counte de Pebbles).
 Gynnere, Anneys la (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hadington (Haddington, Hadynton), la commune de
 Hadington, Dauid de (del counte de Fyf).
 Hadington, Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
 Hadington la prioreffe de, Eue (et le couent de mefme le lu), (tenante le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hage, Johan del (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hakely, Henry de (burgois de Monros).
 Haldanfton, Andreu de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hale, Michel de (del counte de Edene. burgh).
 Haliburton, Alice qe fu la femme Phelipp de (tenaunte le Roi du counte de Berewyk).
 Haliburton, Henry de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Berewyk).
 Haliburton, Henry de
 Halifton, prioreffe de, Mariorie (del counte de Berewyk).
 Halton, Patrik de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hameldon, Wautier fiz Gilbert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Hamftede, William de (del counte de Elgyn).
 Hanewort, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hangindefchawe, Gilberd de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hannehe, Gilbert de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Hanwyk, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hardegrepes, Renaud (burgois de Pebbles).
 Harden, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hardy, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Harkars (Harcars, Harecarres), Alifaundre de (del counte de Fyf).
 Harkars, Marierie de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Harkars, Roger de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Harkars, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Harpenfeud, Erchebald de (del counte de Lanark).
 Harpur de Hom, Rogier le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Harpur de la Lawe, William le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Harpur, Johan le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Harpur, Robert le (del counte de Are).
 Harpur, Witing le (del counte de Lanark).
 Haftinges, Eadmund de (del counte de Fyf).
 Haftinges, Robert de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Hatal, Johan de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Hateley, Alexander de (Alifaundre de Hateleye).
 Haucworth, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hauden, Ayelmer de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hauden, Bernard de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hauden, Eymer de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hauden, Rauf de (perfone del Eglife de Whitefum).
 Haughenros, Johan (del counte de Elgyn).
 Haukerfton, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Haunches, Gilbert (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Haunches, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Haunfard, Johan (del counte de Forfare).
 Hauthornden, Matheu de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Haye de Drumranagh, William de la (del counte de Fyf).
 Haye, Edmund de la (del counte de Perth).
 Haye, Dominus Gilbertus de la (miles), (Gilbert Haya de la Haye, chiuallier).
 Haye, Gilbert de la (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Haye, Dominus Hugo de la (miles); (Hughe de la Haye, chiuallier).
 Haye, Huwe de la (del counte de Fyf).

Haye, Dominus Johannes de la (miles); (Johan de la Haye, chiuahier).
 Haye, Johan de la (del counte de Fyf).
 Haye, Jone de la (del counte de Forfare).
 Haye, Dominus Nicolaus de la (miles), (Nicole de la Haye, chiuahier).
 Haye, Nicol de la (del counte de Perth).
 Haye, Nicol de la (perfone del Eglife de Erol, del counte de Perth).
 Haye, Thomas de la (del counte de Perth).
 Haye, William de la (chiuahier).
 Hayton, Johan de (gardein del Hofpital Seint Leonard de Torrens, del counte de Lanark).
 Hayton, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Hayton, Thomas de (vicaire del Eglife de Cambofneythan, del counte de Lanark).
 Hedlam, Johan de (fuchantour del Eglife de Ros).
 Hedleye, Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Heir (Heyr), Hewe (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Heir, Steuene le fiz Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hellebeck, Williarn de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Hep (Hepburn ?) Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Heriz, William de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Herok, Wautier (deen de Morref, del counte de Elgyn).
 Hertefhede, Aleyn de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Heffewell, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Heton, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hextildefpeth, Huwe de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hildecliue (Hildeclyve), Gilbert de (burgoys de Linlefcu).
 Hildecliue, Gilbert de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Hill, Vide O' the Hill.
 Hilton (Hylton), Huwe le fiz Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hilton, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hilton, perfone del Eglife de, Daudid (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hinkerftan, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hippereyfon, Michel (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hirdemanefton (Hirmanefton), Alifaandre de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hirdemanefton, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hirdemanefton, Patrik de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Hodolm, Adam de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Hodolm, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hog (Hogge), Henry (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hog, Johan (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Hoggefton, Alexander de (Alifandre de Hoggefton).
 Holafton, Richard de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Holcote, Wautier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Holden, Symund de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Holmoltram, abbe de, Robert (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Home (Hom), Adam de (del counte de Are).
 Home (Hom), Geffrei de (del counte de Lanark).
 Hommes, Henry de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hope, Johan (del counte de Pebbles).
 Hopkeliogh, William de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Hord (Horde), Adam de (burgois de Pebbles).
 Hord (Horde), Adam de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Horneden, Eufemme qe fu la femme William de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Horreden, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Horton, Pieres de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Horfeley (Horfeleye), Richard de (del counte de Lanark).
 Hofpital, Robert del (del counte de Berewyk).
 Hoton, perfone del Eglife de, Thomas (del counte de Berewyk).
 Houeden, Rauf de (perfone del Eglife de Whytoutfne, del counte de Berewyk).
 Houeden, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).

Hull, Vide On the Hull.
 Hunfingoure, Thomas de (perfone del Eglife de Aldhamftok, del counte de Berewyk).
 Huntelegh, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Hunter (Huntere) de la Forefte de Paffeley, Johan (del counte Lanark).
 Hunter, de Stragrif, Hawe le (del counte de Lanark).
 Hunter, de Stragrif, Richard le (del counte de Lanark).
 Hunter, Aylmere le (del counte de Are).
 Hufton (Huwefton), Finlau de (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Hufton (Huwefton), mefre del Hofpital de la Seinte Trinite de, Frere Johan (del counte de Edeneburgh).

Idle, Richard del (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ile (Ille), Alifaundre del (del counte de Perth).
 Ile (Ille), Johan del (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Ile (Ille), Johan del (del counte de Berewyk).
 Inays, Willelmus de (William Inays).
 Inchaufrau, abbe de, Frere Thomas
 Inchebecky, Muriele de (del counte de Perth).
 Inredouet, Gregoire de (del counte de Fyf).
 Inrelauran, Gilbert de (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Inrepeffre, Adam de (del counte de Forfare).
 Ireland, Vide Dirland.
 Irfkyn, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Ifabelfone, Geffirey de (del counte de Berewyk).

Jar [Jarum], Roger de (del counte de Lanark).
 Jar [Jarum], Thomas de (prouendrer del Eglife de Ros).
 Jar [Jarum], William de (del counte de Rokefburg). Vide Jarum.
 Jarum, Pieres de (perfone de Kelles, del counte de Dunfres). Vide Jar.
 Jeddeworth, abbe de, Johan (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Jeddeworth, la communaute de
 Jeddeworth, Robert de (perfone del Eglife de Kermighel, del counte de Lanark).
 Johan, Bride fiz (del counte de Fyf).
 Johan, William le fiz (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Jonefton (Johannefton, Jonefone), Gilberd de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Jonefton, Johan de (chiualer, del counte de Dunfres).
 Jonefton, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Jonefton, Wautier (del counte de Berewyk).
 Jugger, Andreu le
 Juneyr, Maucolum fiuz (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).

Kair [Kayter], Thomas (del counte de Fyf).
 Kaland, Geffrey (bailif e burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Kalentyr, Alewynus de (del counte de Striuelyn). Vide Calantyr.
 Karal, vicaire de, Lambard (del counte de Fyf).
 Karibre, Thomas de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Karlel, Gilbert de (del counte de Dunfres). Vide Carleal.
 Kathkerk, William de (del counte de Are).
 Kelor (Keloure), Ranulphus de (Randulf de Kelor).
 Kelor (Keloure), Randulf de (del counte de Forfare).
 Kelput, Johan de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Kelfhou, abbe de, Richard (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Kelfhou, Huwe de (del counte de Are).
 Keluini [Kelwiny], Yfaac de (del counte de Perth).
 Kenedy, Dominus Alexander (canonicus Glafcuensis); (Alifandre Kenedy, chanoin de Glafcou).
 Kenedy, Huwe (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Kenemunth, Vide Kynmunth.
 Kenros, Vide Kynros.
 Kent, Robert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Kenyn, Pieres (del counte de Lanark).

Ker (Kerre), Andreu del (del counte de Striuelin).
 Ker (Kerre), Henry (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ker (Kerre), Nicol (del counte de Pebbles).
 Ker (Kerre), William (del counte de Are).
 Kerderneffe, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Keres, Aleyn de (del counte de Are).
 Kergill, Wautier de (del counte de Perth).
 Keryngton, Wautier de (perfone del Eglife de Dunnoter, del counte de Kincardyn en Miernes).
 Keth, Alifaundre de (perfone del Eglife de Hodolm, del counte de Dunfres).
 Keu de Knoll, William le (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Lanark).
 Keu Mefre Richard le (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Keu William le (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Kilbrid (Kilbride), Druwet de (del counte de Are).
 Kilbrid (Kilbride), Gilbert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Kildekauena [Kildehavana], perfone del Eglife de, Gilbert (del counte de Perth).
 Kildunham, Bartholomeu de (del counte de Fyf).
 Kilmernon, Reynaud de (del counte de Are).
 Kilmoneth, William de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Kilpatrik, Steuene de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Kilros, abbe de, Gilbert (et de couent de mefme le lu).
 Kilwhon, Homfrey de (chiualer, del counte de Dunbretan).
 Kilwynin, abbe de, Bernard (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Kinglas, Matheu de (burgoys de Linlefcu).
 Kinburn, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kincardin fur Neele, mefre del Hofpital de, Wautier (del counte de Abirden).
 Kindellogh, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Kingorn, Vide Kynghorn.
 Kinros, Vide Kynros.
 Kiphop, Conftance de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Kircomtolagh, Alifaundre de (del counte de Lanark).
 Kirconnel, Thomas de (del counte de Dumfres).
 Kircuthbright, Williaun de (mefre del Hofpital de Turryth, del counte de Banf).
 Kirkeby, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kirkepatrik (Kirke Patrik), Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Kirkepatrik, Rogier de (chiualier, del counte de Dunfres).
 Kirketon, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kirketon, Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Kithehilt, Thomas de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Knere [Kuere], William de (del counte de Fyf). Vide Kuere.
 Knightefon de Eglefham, William (del counte de Lanark).
 Knighton, Nicole de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Knokyntynnon, William de (del counte de Inuerneffe).
 Knoudolyan, Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Knout, Adam (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Knout, Ifabelle (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Knout, Johan (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Knout, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Kuere, Johan de (del counte de Fyf). Vide Knere.
 Kymbregan, Vide Kymbrigham.
 Kymbrigham (Kymbregan, Kynbriggeham), Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kymbrigham, Johan le fiz Wautier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kymbrigham, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Kymmok, Gilbert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Kynbriggeham Vide Kymbrigham.
 Kynbuk, Maucolum de (del counte de Perth).
 Kynemore, Johan de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Kyngarth, Thomas de (del counte de Perth).
 Kyngeffyde, Richard de (del counte de Berewyk).

Kynghorn (Kingorn, Kyngorn), Magifter Willelmus de (rector Ecelefie de Lifton); (William de Kyngorn perfone del Eglife de Lifton), (Meftre William de Kinghorn, perfone de Lifton, del counte de Linlefcu).
 Kynghorn, William de (perfone del Eglife de Kiltyerne, del counte de Inthernes).
 Kynmunth (Kenemunth, Kynmuth), Eude de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Kynmunth, William de (tenant le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Kynmunth, William de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Kynnard (Kynard), Radulphus de (Rauf de Kinnard).
 Kynnard (Kynard), Rauf de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Kynnard (Kynard), Richard de (del counte de Fyf).
 Kynros (Kenros, Kinros), Ace de (del counte de Perth).
 Kynros, Johan de (del counte de Forfare).
 Kynros, Dominus Johannes filius Domini Johannis de (miles), (Johan de Kynros le fic, chiualler).
 Kynros, Robert de (del counte de Forfare).
 Kynfpinedy (Kynfpinedi), Maucolum de (del counte de Fyf).
 Kynfpinedy, Maucolum de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Kyntowar (Kyntowhar), Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Kyntowar, Wautier de (del counte de Perth).
 Lagenheued, Wautier de (del counte de Aberden).
 Laghmanoueny, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Lamb, Adam (perfone del Eglife de Foulefworth, del counte de Berewyk).
 Lamb, Nicol (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Dominus Alexander de (miles); (Alifaundre de Lambreton, chiualler).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Alifaundre de (del counte de Forfare).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Johan de (tenant le Roi du counte de Striuelyn).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Johannes de (Johan de Lambreton).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Robert de (vicaire de Wallefton, del counte de Lanark).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Wautier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Lamberton (Lambreton), Meftre William de (chaunceler del Eglife de Glafcu, del counte de Lanark).
 Laneta, vicaire del Eglife de, William (gardeyn de la Prioraute de Northberewyk).
 Lang, William (del counte de Berewyk).
 Langemore (Langemor, Longemore), Elice de la (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Langemore, Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Langemore, Johan fiz Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Langemore, Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Langeton, Aleyn de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Langeton, vicaire de, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Langhild, Gerueys de (del counte de Linlifeu).
 Lany, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lanyn, Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Larblafter [Le Arblafter], Wautier (burgois de Edeneburgh).
 Larder, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lardiner, Michel le (burgois de Linlefcu).
 Lardiner, Michel le (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Lardiner, William le (burgois de Striuelin).
 Lafceles, Johan de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Lafceles, Rauf de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lafceles, Richard de (del counte de Fyf).
 Lafceles, Willelmus de (William de Lafceles).
 Lafceles, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Lafkerefk, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Laftalrigg (Laftalirik), perfone del Eglife de, Adam (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Laftalrigg (Laftalirik), Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Laumanfone, Johan (del counte de Perth).

Laundeles, Frefkums (Frefkinus?) de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Laundeles, Jone de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Laurineton, vicair del Eglife de, Henry (del counte de Dunfres).
 Lawedre, meftre del Hofpital de, Rauf (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lawefone de Bykre, Richard (del counte de Lanark).
 Lechelyn, Dominus Normannus de (miles); (Norman de Lechelyn, chiualer). Vide Leffelyn.
 Lecton [Letton], William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Ledham, Meftre Edmund de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Ledyorde (Ledyard), Thomas de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Legh, Matheu de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Legun de Rothegele, Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Leigger, Vide Of the Leigger.
 Lekathy, Laurenecz de (del counte de Forfare).
 Lematon, Henry de (perfone del Eglife de Douns, del counte de Perth).
 Lencludan, prioreffe de, Alianore (de counte de Dunfres).
 Leppaine, Gilbert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Lefpecier, Rauf (burgoy de Jeddeworth).
 Leffelyn, Normande (chiualer, del counte de Abreden). Vide Lechelyn.
 Leffewade, vicair del Eglife de, Nicol (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Leffewade, W. de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lefquier de Whyop, Johan (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Letham, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lethindy, Richard de (del counte de Aberden).
 Leuenaux (Leuenaus), comte de, Maucolum. (Maukelom), (del counte de Fyf).
 Leuingfton (Leuingefton), Andreu de (del counte de Lanark).
 Leuingfton, Sire Archebaud de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Leuingfton, Dominus Erchebaldus de (miles), (Erchebaud de Leuingfton, chiualer).
 Leyceftre, William de (burgoy de Edenburgh).
 Leye, Johan de la (del counte de Dunfres).
 Leye, Phelipp de la (chiualier).
 Liberton (Lyberton), Aleyn de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Liberton (Lyberton), Aleyn de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Liberton (Lyberton), Daudid de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Licheardefwode (Lychardefwode), Nicol de (chapelein, gardeyn del Hofpital de Lichardefwode, del counte de Berewyk).
 Licheardefwode, Symund de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Licheardefwode, vicair del Eglife de, Wautier (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lillefclif (Lillefcluyue), Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Lillefclif (Lillefcluyue), Johan de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Lillok (Lillock), Thomas (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Lillok (Lillock), Thomas (del counte de Pebbles).
 Lillok (Lillock), Wautier (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Lindefeye, Alifandre de (chiualier).
 Lindefeye, Sire Alifaandre de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Lindefeye, Hewe de (burgoy de Jeddeworth).
 Lindefeye, James de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Lindefeye, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Lindefeye, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Lindefeye, Phelip de (chiualier).
 Lindefeye, Sire Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lindefeye, Wautier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Linlefcu, la commune de
 Linton (Lynton), Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Linton (Lynton), Adam de (le jouiene, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Linton (Lynton), Bernard de (perfone del Eglife de Mordington, del counte de Berewyk).
 Linton (Lynton), Johan de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Linton (Lynton), Phelippe de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Liollefton, Loel de (del counte de Berewyk).

Lifours, Henry de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Lifours, Pieres de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Litefter (Litteftere), Aleyn de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Litefter (Litteftere), Pieres de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lock, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Lockard, Crifitin (del counte de Pebbles).
 Lockare, Maucolum (del counte de Are).
 Lodham, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Logan (Logyn), Andreu de (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Logan (Logyn), Phelipp de (burgois de Monros).
 Logan (Logyn), Thurbrandus de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Logan (Logyn), Walterus (Wautier Logan).
 Logan (Logyn), Wautier (del counte de Lanark).
 Loghdon, Randulf, de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Loghdon, Wautier de (tenant le Roi du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Loughlane, Eugene fiz (del counte de Perth).
 Loghore, Huwe de (del counte de Fyf).
 Loghy, Wautier de (del counte de Fyf).
 Logy, perfone del Eglife de, Alifaandre (del counte de Forfare).
 Longemore, Vide Langemore.
 Longhill (Loughill), Gerueys de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Longton, Rauf de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Longton, Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Lorence, William fiz (del counte de Are).
 Louel, Agneys qe fu la femme Henry (del counte de Rokefbutg).
 Louel, Morice (perfone del Eglife de Petyt Cares, del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Louely (Louvely) Adam (del counte de Pebbles).
 Louerd, Thomas le (del counte de Pebbles).
 Lumbyny, Adam de (del counte de Fyf).
 Lummedfen, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lummedfen, Rogier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Lundors, abbe de, Thomas (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Lundy, Margarete qe fu la femme Pieres de (del counte de Fyf).
 Luuecot (Lunetot], Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Lynne, Wautier de (del counte de Are).
 Lyp (Lyppe), Johan (del counte de Abreden).
 Lyfton, Symund de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Linlefcu).

 Maccognache, Gilbert (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mac Cuffok, Maucolum (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Mac Dowyl, Dougal (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Mak Dowylt, Fergus (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Mac Eth, Gilmyhel (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mac Gahen, Roland (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Machun de Strathafan, Robert le (del counte de Lanark).
 Mac Rotherik, Rouland fiz Aleyn (del counte de Inuernys).
 Maefalny, Morice (del counte de Dunfres).
 Maculagh (Mac Ulagh), Michel (del counte de Wygeton).
 Maculagh (Mac Ulagh), Thomas (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Maculagh (Mac Ulagh), William (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Maggadelf de Cambroun, Duncan (del counte de Striuelin).
 Maghan, Patrik de (del counte de Lanark).
 Maghan, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Makachelfon, Douenal (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Makelemwyn, Cuthbert (del counte de Dunfres).
 Makelmothan, Johan (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Makenaght, Gilberd (del counte de Dunfres).
 Makerath, Anegos.

Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), dominus de, Dominus Johannes (miles); (Johan de Makefwell, chiualer).
 Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), Dominus Herbertus de (miles); (Herbert de Makefwell, chiualer).
 Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), Sire Herbert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Makefwell (Makefwelle, Maxwell), Dominus Johannes Herberti de (miles), (Johan de Makefwelle, chiualer, le fiuz
 Sire Herbert de Makefwelle).
 Makewheffhapp, Nicol.
 Makilcrist (Mac Gilcrist) de Leuenaghes, Dunkan (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Makilyn, Gillemoie (del counte de Perth).
 Maklurk, Gilbert (del counte de Are).
 Malcomeffone, Symund (del counte de Berewyk).
 Malere, Johan de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Malherbe, Gilbert (del counte de Striuelin).
 Maleuill, (Maleuil, Maleuille, Melville) Gregoire de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Maleuill, Jacobus de (James de Maleuill).
 Maleuill, James de (del counte de Aberden).
 Maleuill, Dominus Johannes de (miles); (Johan de Malueill, chiualer).
 Maleuill, Patrik de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Maleuill, Reynaud de (burgois de Striuelin).
 Maleuill, Richard de (del counte de Fyf).
 Maleuill, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Maleuill, William de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Maleuill, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Maleuill, William de (tenaunt le Roi du. counte de Pebbles).
 Maleuill, William de (Seigneur de Retreuy, del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Malkarrefton, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Man, Marie la Reyne de (del counte de Perth).
 Manfpeth, Henry de (del counte de Lanark).
 Manuel, Johan (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Manuel, Johan (del counte de Are).
 Manuel, prioreffe de, Alice (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Manypeny, Johan (del counte de Fyf).
 Mar, comes de, Douenaldus (Douenaud comte de Mar).
 Mar, Chriftn de (la femme Dunkan de Mar, del counte de Ilderneffe).
 Mar, Dunkan fiz le comte de (del counte de Perth).
 Mar, Gilbert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Mar, Gilbertus de (Gilbert de Mar).
 Mar, James de (del counte de Aberden).
 Mar, Johan de (baillif de Linlefcu).
 Mare, Syuan le (del counte de Perth).
 Marefchal (Marefcallus) de Corftorphyn, Thornas le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Marefchal, de Morthington, William le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Marefchal, Adam le (burgois de, Ennerkethin).
 Marefchal, Daud le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Marefchal, Fergundus dictus (Fergus le Marefchal).
 Marefchal, Fergus le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Marefchal, Johan le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Marefchal, Johan le (del counte de Lanark).
 Marefchal, Dominus Johannes de Tofketon dictus (miles); (Johan le Marefchal de Tofketon, chiualer), (Johan le
 Marefchal de Tofketon, del counte de Wiggeton).
 Marefchal, Patrik le fiz Johan de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Marefchal, Phelipp le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Marefchal, Robert le (burgois de Jeddeworth).
 Marefchal, Roger le (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Marefchal, Rouland le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Marefchal, Steuene le (burgois de Jeddeworth).
 Marefchal, Thomas le (del counte de Rokefburgh).

Marechal, William le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Martin, Wautier fiz (del burk de Edeneburgh).
 Maucolom (Maukelom), Aleyn fiz (del counte de Berewyk).
 Maucolom, Huwe le fiz (burgois de Monros).
 Maucolom, Maucolom fiz (del counte de Perth).
 Mauleurer, Huwe (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mauleurer, Rauf (del counte de Lanark).
 Mautalent, Robert (del counte de Berewyk).
 Maxpoffle, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Maxton, Alifaundre de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Maxwell, Vide Makefwell.
 Meifreton, William de (del comte de Fyf).
 Meldon, Johan de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Melkedrum (Melkedrom), Daudid de (del counte de Fyf).
 Melkedrum, William de (del counte de Aberden).
 Meneteth, comes de, Dominus Alexander (Alifandre comte de Meneteth).
 Mercer, Auftin le (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Mercer, Bernard le (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Mercer, Wautier le (burgois de Monros).
 Merlegh, Wautier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Merley (Merleye), Robert de (perfone del Eglife de Wefterker, del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Merley, Roger de (del counte de Lanark).
 Merpym, Wautier (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Merton, Meftre Nicol de (perfone del Eglife de Kynathes, del comte de Forfare).
 Meffager, Gilbert le (tenant le Euefqe, de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Meffager, Gilbert le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Meffager, Iue le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Meffager, Michel le (tenant le Euefqe, de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Meffager, Michel le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Meffager, Rauf le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Methfenn, Rogier de (del counte de Perth).
 Meuros, Vide Monros.
 Meynreth, Johan de (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Middeby, perfone del Eglife de, Symon (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Midelburgh, Rogier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Midelton, Humfrey de (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Miggel, Rogier de (del counte. de Perth).
 Mindrom, Adam de (burgois de Rokefburgh).
 Moderual, Adam de (del counte de Lanark).
 Moffet, Robert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Moffet, Thomas (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mohaut (Mouhaut), Bernard de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Mohaut, Michel de (chiualier, del counte de Are).
 Mohaut, Rogier de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Mohaut, Dominus Willelmus de (miles); (William de Mouhaut, chiualer).
 Moigne, Wautier le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Molegan, Macrath ap (del counte de Dunfres).
 Moliofard, Malis de (del counte de Perth).
 Mollefworth, Anneys de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Modyn, Eliz del (del counte de Berewyk).
 Moncref (Mouncref, Muncref), Dominus Johannes de (miles) ; (Johan Moncref).
 Moncref, Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Moncref, William de (del counte de Anegos).
 Mongale, William de (del counte de Are).
 Monimel (Munimel), Henry de (del counte de Fyf).
 Monimel, perfone del Eglife de, Henry (del counte de Fyf).
 Monros (Munros, Meuros), abbe de, Patrik (et de couent de mefme le lu).
 Monros la commune de.

Monros, Meftre Matheu de (clerk, del counte de Perth).
 Montcour, Andreu de (chiualier).
 Montfort (Montford, Monte Forti, Mounfort, Mountfort, Munfort), Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Montfort, Johannes de (Johan de Montford).
 Montfort, Peres de (del counte de Aberden).
 Montfort, Robert de (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Montgomery (Mountgomery, Muntgomery), Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Montgomery, Murthauch de (del counte de Are).
 Montgomery, Thomas de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 More (Mor) de Cragg, Reynaud (del counte de Lanark).
 More de Leuenaghes, Douenal le fiz Michel (del counte de Dunbretan).
 More, de Thaugarfton, Symon de la (del counte de Lanark).
 More, Adam de la (del counte de Are).
 More, Gilcrift (del counte de Are).
 More, Renaud de la (Renaud) (del counte de Are).
 Morhalle, Johan de (tenant le Euefqe de Seint Andreu, del counte de Perth).
 Morham, Thomas de (pufne, del counte de Striuelyn).
 Morhaut, Sire William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Morice, Eude le fiz (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Morington, Patrik de (del counte de Lanark).
 Morref (Morauia, Murref, Murreue), feigneur de Botheuill, William de.
 Morref, de Rumfirgard, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Morref, de Tulybardy, William de (del counte de Perth).
 Morref, Alanus de (Aley de Morref).
 Morref, Aley de (del counte de Foreys).
 Morref, Auftyn de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Morref, Daud de (perfone del Eglife de Botheuille, del counte de Lanark).
 Morref, Erchebaud de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Morref, Hugo de (Hughe de Morreue).
 Morref, Huwe de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Morref, Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
 Morref, Dominus Johannes de (miles); (Johan de Morref, chiualer).
 Morref, Laurence de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Morref, Dominus Willelmus de (miles); (William de Morreue, chiualer).
 Mortimer, Rogier de (del counte de Perth).
 Morton, perfone del Eglife de, (e meftre de Caldeftreme), Wautier (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mofyn, Gilbert (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Mounceaus, Maut de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Mounlaud (Mounland), Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Muller, Thomas le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Mundeuill, Henry de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mundeuill, Johan de (perfone de Moffat, del counte de Wyggeton).
 Murthoc, Johan (del counte de Dunfres).
 Mufcamp (Mufchaump), Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Mufcamp, Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Mufchance, Robertus de (Robert de Mufchance).
 Mufchet, Daud (del counte de Anegos).
 Mufchet, Richard (del counte de Anegos).

 Naper (Neper) de Aghelek, Matheu le (del counte de Forfare).
 Naper, Johan le (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Naper, Johan le (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Nelgos, Duncan le fiz (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Nefbyt (Nefebyt), Jone de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Nefbyt, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Nefbyt, William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Neubotle, abbe de, Johan (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Neuill de Perth, Richard de (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).

Neutober (Neutobere), Anegos de (del counte de Forfare).
 Neutober, Richard de (del counte de Forfare). Vide Newecobyry.
 Neuton, Huwe de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Neuton, James de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Neuy (Neiui), Patrik fiz Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Newecobyry (Newecobyry), Ricardus de (Richard de Newecobyry). Vide Neutober.
 Neythanthern, Henry de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Nibreim, Lamb fiz Auftyn de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Nicol, Adam fiz (del counte de Berewyk).
 Nicol, Aleyn le fiz (del counte de Lanark).
 Nicol, Maucolum fiz.
 Noble, Patrik le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Noble, Thomas le (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Norman, Rauf le fiz (hurgois de Ennerkethin).
 Normanuill (Normanuy), Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Normanuill, Robert de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Normanuill, Robert de (tenant le Roi, du counte de Striuelyn).
 Normanuill, Dominus Robertus de (miles); (Robert de Normanuill, chiualler).
 Normaunt, Johan (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Norreys, Richard (del counte de Berewyk).
 Northberewyk, Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Northincheton Nichol de (burgois de Pebbles).
 Nouelchafel, Eliz fiz Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).

 O Brinkel, Elys de (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Odefon, Wautier le fiz Rogier de (del counte de Lanark).
 Of the Leigger, Hughe (tenaunt le Roi, du counte de Pebbles).
 Oggeluyll, Patrik de (del counte de Forfare).
 Oghtergeuen, Robert de (del counte de Perth). Vide Oftregauen.
 Oghterloney, Vide Doghterloueny.
 Orchard, Henry del (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Orchard, Jordan del (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefca).
 Orfeure de Berewyk, Roger le (del counte de Lanark).
 Orfeure de Rokefburgh, Wautier le (burgois e aldreman de Rokefburgh).
 Orky, Elys de (del counte de Fyf).
 Ormefton, Alice de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ormefton, Alice qe fu la femme Aleyn de (tenaunte le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ormefton, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Ormefton, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Orre, Huwe de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Orrok, Robert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Orrok, Symund de (del counte de Fyf).
 Oftherebure (Ofcherebure), William (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Oftregauen, Robert de (tenaunt le Roi, du counte de Perth). Vide Oghtergeuen.
 O the Hill, William (del counte de Berewyk).
 O the Hulle, William (burgoys de Linlefca).
 On the Hull, William (tenant le Roi, du counte de Linlefca).
 Otre, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Oueree, Maucolum de (del counte de Aberden).
 Ouer Eyton, William de (del counte de Berewyk).

 Papede, Eleyne (del counte de Berewyk).
 Paris, Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Park, Johan del (chiualler, del counte de Berewyk).
 Parker, William le (perfone de Killom (Kilmon), del counte de Perth).
 Parton, Patrik fiz Matheu de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Paffelay, abbe de, Wautier (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Paffenandehull, Richard. de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Pater nofter, Rogerus dictus (Rogier Patre noftre).

Patrik, Kircrift fiz (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Paunton, Alifaandre de (del counte de Lanark).
 Paxton, Nicol de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Paxton, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Pebbles, la communaute de
 Pebbles, meffre de la mefon de la Seinte Croice de, Frere Thomas (del counte de Pebbles).
 Pebbles, vicaire del Eglise de, Johan
 Pedglaffy, Patrik de (del counte de Fyf).
 Pedgrogeny, Johan de (del counte de Perth).
 Pencatlond, Daud de (burgois de Hadington).
 Pendenan, Adam de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Penicok, Hughe de (tenant le Roi, du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Penicok, Huwe de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Penicok, Margarete de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Perel, William (tenaunt le Roi, du counte de Pebbles).
 Perre de Bonekel, Nicol (del counte do Berewyk).
 Perreffar [Perrefax], Robert de (del counte de Dulfres).
 Perth de Rokefburgh, Richard de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Perth, Johan de (burgois e aldremen de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Perth, Johan fiz Richard de (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Perth, Wadyn de (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Perth, William fiz Johan de (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Perthay, Phelippe de (del counte de Lanark).
 Peffhun (Peffoun) de Striuelin, Richard (del counte de, Striuelyn).
 Peffhun, de Tynyngnam, William (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Edeneburgh).
 Petcarne, Peres de (del counte de Fyf).
 Petikreu, Thomas (del counte de Lanark).
 Petkery, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Petrauy, Pieres de (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Petfcotyn, Johannes filius Randulphi de (Johan le fiz Randolph de Petfcotyn).
 Petyclank, Adam de (del counte de Fyf).
 Pety, Laurence de (del counte de Lanark).
 Petyt de Miernes, Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Phelipp de Berewyk, Rauf (del counte de Berewyk).
 Phelipp, Henry fiz (del counte de Lanark).
 Picton, Robert de (del counte de Are).
 Pictot, Theobaud (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Piereffone, Wautier (del counte de Berewyk).
 Pigaz de Lynton, Johan (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Pilmor, Aleyn de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Pokeby, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Pollewe, Patrick de (del counte de Fyf).
 Pollok, Johan (del comte de Forfare),
 Pollok, Pieres de (del counte de Lanark).
 Polmalot, William (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Porneys, William (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Pebbles).
 Porter de Linlefcu, Johan le (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Porter, del Rugan, Helys le (tenant le Roi du counte de Lanark).
 Porter, Johan le (burgois de Linlefcu).
 Porter, William le (del counte de Lanark).
 Pount de Pebbles, Rauf del (tenaunt le Roi, du counte de Pebbles).
 Poureys, William (del counte de Berewyk).
 Prat, Johan (del counte de Elgyn).
 Prat, William (del counte de Fyf).
 Prendregaft (Prendegeft, Prendelgaft), Henri le fiz Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Prendregaft, Henry de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Prendregaft, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Prendregaft, Pieres de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Berewyk).

Prendrelath, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Prefton, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Prefton, Nicol de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Prefton, Thomas de (chanoigne del Eglife de Dunkeldyn), (del counte de Perth).
 Prefton, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Preftre, Edward fiz Richard le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Preftre, Richard (burgois de Striuelyn).
 Pryde, Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Purdeuyn, Alifaundre de (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Purdeuyn, Thomas (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Pylmor (Pylemor), Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Pylmor, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Pylmor, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Pynkerton, Nicol de (del counte de Hadington).
 Rabuk, Johan (baillif de Linlefcu).
 Rainaldefton. Rogier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rammefeye (Ramefeye), Adam, de (del counte de Fyf).
 Rammefeye, Andreu de (del counte de Ergayl).
 Rammefeye, Dulkan de (perfone del Eglife de Loghore).
 Rammefeye, Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
 Rammefeye, Johan fiz Nece de (del counte de Fyf).
 Rammefeye, Margarete de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Rammefeye, Robert de (del counte do de Berewyk).
 Rammefeye, Thomas de (del counte del Anegos).
 Rammefeye, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Rammefeye, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Rammefeye, Sire William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Randolf de Fediche, Johan fiz (del counte de Fyf).
 Randolf, Johan fiz (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Randoluefton, Johan de (del counte de Fyf).
 Rat (Rate), Andreu de (chiualier, del counte de Inuernarn).
 Rat (Rate), Dominus Geruafius de (Geruays de Rate, chiualer).
 Rat (Rate), Geruays (del counte de Inuernarn).
 Rath, Rogier de (del counte de Are).
 Ratheuen, Dominus Willielmus de (miles); (William de Ratheuen, chiualer).
 Rauenefgraf, Robert de (del counte de Lanark).
 Rauefmaugh (Ranfemaugh), Henry (burgois de Pebbles).
 Raueffone, William (del counte de Berewyk).
 Rauf, Robert fiz (perfone del Eglife de Seint Cuthbert de Ewytefdale, del counte de Are).
 Raulfefton, Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Ratheu, perfone del Eglife de, Richard (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Redebogh, Robert de (del counte de Are).
 Redepeth, William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Reinfu, Adam de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Renyngton, Symund de (burgoyes de Jeddeworth).
 Rereys, Randulf de (del counte de Fyf).
 Richard, Adam le fiz (burgois de Striuelyn).
 Richard, William fiz (del counte de Pebbles).
 Richardefton, Margerie de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Riche, Steuene le (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Rillewod, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Ripon. Wautier de (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Roberton, Steuene de (del counte de Lanark).
 Roche de Corfforfyn, William de la (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Roche, Waldef de la (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Roffa, Aleyn de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Rokefburgh (Rokefburg), la commune de.

Rokefburgh, perfone del Eglife de Chafel de, Adam.
 Rokefburgh, peftour de, Thomas le.
 Roland (Rouland), Gilafcop fiz (del counte de Perth).
 Roland, Gilbert fiz (del counte de Are).
 Roland, Johan fiz (del counte de Are).
 Ros, Andreas Godefridi de (Andreu le fiuz Godefrey de Ros).
 Ros, Andreu fiz Godefroi de (del counte de Are).
 Ros, Jacobus filius Godefridi de (fenior) ; (James le fiuz Godefrey de Ros, le efnee).
 Ros, Jacobus filius Godeffidi de (junior); (James le fiuz Godefrey, le pufnee).
 Ros, James de (del counte de Are).
 Ros, Robert de (del counte de Are).
 Ros, Wautier de (del counte de Are).
 Ros, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Rofky, Maucolum de (del counte de Perth).
 Roffeneth, Elizabeth de (del counte de Aberden).
 Roffy, Wautier de (burgois de Monros).
 Rothinnot, priour de, Robert (et le chanoines de mefme le lu, du comte de Forfare).
 Rothenan, Sire William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Rothenayk (Rotheneck, Rotheneyk), Anegos de (deen de Morref, del counte de Elgyn).
 Rothenayk, Willielmus de (William de Rothenayk).
 Rothenayk, William de (del counte de Elgyn).
 Rothenayk, Patrik de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Perth).
 Rotherford, Aymer de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rotherford, Margarete la fielle Nicol de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Rotherford, Dominus Nicolaus de (miles); (Nicol de Rotherford, chiualler).
 Rothefford, William de (perfone del Eglife de Lillefclyue).
 Roule, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Roule, perfone del Eglife de, Aleyn (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Roule, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rouley, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rous, Duncan le (burgois de Hadington).
 Rous, Gille Folan le (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Rous, Morice le (burgois de Striuelin).
 Rucaftel, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rugan, Adam fiz Matheu de (del counte de Lanark).
 Rukelton, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Ruffel, Robert (del counte de Berewyk).
 Ruffy, Wautier de.
 Rydel (Rydale), Hughe (tenant le Roi, du comte de Edeneburgh).
 Rydel, Dominus Hugo (miles); (Hughe Rydel, chiualler).
 Rydel, Huwe (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Rydel, William de (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Rydelowe, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Rykeldon, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Rymour, Johan (del counte de Berewyk).
 Ryfton, Oliuer de (del counte de Berewyk).

Sammok de Trebrun, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Sammokfone, Aleyn (del counte de Berewyk).
 Sanfer de Innerkethyn, Alifaandre le (del counte de Forfar).
 Saufer, Alifaandre le (bailif e burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Sautre, Frere Johan de (meftre de la cheualerie del Temple en Efcocce).
 Scadaghy, Richard de (del counte de Fyf).
 Scalerik, Symund de la (del counte Edeneburgh).
 Schawe (Shawe), Fergus del (del counte de Lanark).
 Schawe, Symund del (del counte de Lanark).
 Schawe, William de (del counte de, Lanark).
 Schelle (Scheles), William (del counte Edeneburgh).

Schelle William de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Scherwinglawe, Walterus de (Wautier de Scherwinglawe, chiualer).
 Schutlynton, Johan de (chiualier, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Scocie Rex, Johannes.
 Scocie, Edwardus filius Joannis regis.
 Scone (Scon), abbe de, Thomas (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Scone (Scon), Thomas de (del counte Rokefburgh).
 Scorton, Henry de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Scorton, Laurenz de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Scot de Murthoxton, Richard le (del counte de Lanark).
 Scot de Pertheyk, Alifaundre (del counte de Lanark).
 Scot, Henry le (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Scot, Ifabele (del counte de Fyf).
 Scot, Johan les (burgois de Hadington).
 Scot, Michel (del counte de Linlefcu).
 Scot, Patrik le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Scot, Wautier le (del counte de Pebbles).
 Scot, Wautier (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Scot, William (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Scouneflegh, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Sealeer (Seeler), Andreu le (del counte de Pebbles).
 Sealeer Michel le (burgois de Rokerburgh).
 Seggeden, meftr de la mefon de Saint Augftyn (Auftyn) de, Frere William (del counte de Berewyk).
 Saint Andreu, priour de, Johan (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Saint Boiz, abbe de, Dungald (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Saint Boythan, prioreffe de, Ade (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Saint Cler (Sein Cler) de Hirdemanfton (Hirmanefton, Hurmanefton), Dominus Johannes, (Johan Seincler de Hirmanefton), (del counte de Berewyk).
 Saint Cler, Gregoire de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Saint Colmoth, priour del Idle de, Adam (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Saint Columb, abbe de, Brice (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Sainte Croiz de Edenburgh, abbe de, Adam (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Saint Edward de Balmurinagh, abbe de, William (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Sainte foy, William fiz Gode de (del counte de Lanark).
 Saint Germeyn, meftr de la mefon de, Bartholomeu (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Saint Johan de Perth, la communaute de la ville de.
 Sainte Leonard, prioreffe de, (juxte la vile de Sainte Johan de Perth).
 Saint Michel (Sancto Michael), Dominus Johannes de(miles); (Johan de Saint Michel, chiualer).
 Saint Michel, Johan de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Saint Michel, Sire Johan de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Saint Michel, Reginaldus de (clericus), (Renaud de Saint Michel, clerk).
 Sel de Ryfton, Adam de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Selkyrk, Thomas de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Selkyrk, vicair del Eglife de, Richard (del counte de Perth).
 Seluenland, Patrik de (del counte de Lanark).
 Seman, Ughtred (del counte de Lanark).
 Semlaund de Cadiou, Criftiane (del counte de Lanark).
 Senefcalli, Dominus Johannes (Domini Jacobi Senefcalli Scocie germanus, miles) ; (Johan Senefchal frere Mon fire James Senefchal Defcoce).
 Senefcallus Scocie, Dominus Jacobus dictus (miles), (James Senefchal Defcoce).
 Senefchal de Jeddeworth, Johan le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Senefchal, Johan le (chiualer, del counte de Lanark).
 Senetour, William le (del counte de Striuelin).
 Serjaunt, Andreu le (burgoy de Linlefcu).
 Serjaunt, Nicol le (burgoy de Linlefcu).
 Serjaunt, Nicol le (tenaunt le Roi da counte de Linlefcu).
 Serle de Perth, Johan (burgois de Saint Johan de Perth).
 Seruatour, William (burgois de Striuelin).

Seruys, Alifaundre (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Seton, Alifaundre de (vallet, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Seton, Johan de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Seton, Richard de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Sharperton, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Shawe, Vide Schawe.
 Sherwynclawe, Sire Wautier de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Shetton (Shotton), Huwe de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Sibbald de Auganfauche, Dauid (del counte de Lanark).
 Sideferf (Sydeferf). Margerie de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Sideferf, William de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Silkefworth, Willielmus de (William, de Silkefworth).
 Silueftre, Johan (perfone de Dolfinfon del counte de Lanark).
 Skene, Joban de (del counte de Aberden).
 Skene, Johan, de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Skene, Patrik de (del counte de Aberden).
 Skrogges, Adam del (burgois de Haddington).
 Skrogges, (Skegges), William del (del counte de Pebbles).
 Slaues, Nicol de (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Smytheton, Henry de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Soltre, meftre de la Mefon de la Trinite de, Frere Thomas (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Someruill (Somerville, Someruyle), Dominus Thomas de (miles), (Thomas de Somerayle, chiuallier).
 Someruill, Thomas de (del counte de Lanark).
 Softlawe, Adam de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Softlawe, Aylmer de (perfone del Eglife de Douglas, del counte de Lanark).
 Souche, Simon de la (del counte do Lanark).
 Soules, Dominus Nicholas de (miles), (Nicol de Soules, chiualler).
 Soules, Nicol de (del counte de Fyff).
 Soules, Dominus Thomas de (miles), (Thomas de Soules, chiuallier).
 Soules, Thomas de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 South Berewyk, prioreffe de, Agneys (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Southayk (Southeyk), Gilbert de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Southayk, Gilbertus de (Gilbert de Southeyk).
 Southayk, Thomas de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Southirland, comte de, William.
 Spalding, Symund de (perfone del Eglife de Ogheltre, del counte de Are).
 Spendeloue, Emme (del counte de Lanark).
 Spollard, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Spot, Eliz de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Spot, Huwe le fiz Moyfes de (tenaunt le Roi du counte de Berewyk).
 Spottewod, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Spreul (Sproul) Wauter (del counte de Lanark).
 Spreul, Wautier (del counte de Dunbretan).
 Steuenfton, Efteuene de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Steuenfton, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Stiward (Styward) de Cranefton, Richard (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Stiward, Ifabele qe fu la femme Thomas (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Stiward, Phelipp (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Stiward, William le fiz le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Stowe, Johan de (perfone del Eglife de Glenkerny, del counte de Kincardin en Miernes).
 Stragrif, Pieres fiz Gerard de (del counte de Lanark).
 Stragrif, William fiz Nicol de (del counte de Lanark).
 Strathawan (Strathauyn, Strathafayn), Wautier de (del counte de Lanark).
 Strathawan, William fiz Pieres de (del counte de Lanark).
 Strathawan, William fiz Rogier de (del counte de Lanark).
 Strathern (Stratherne), comes de, Malifius, (Malis, Malys) comte de Strathern).
 Strathern, Johan de (del counte de Forfare).
 Strathern, Malcolum de (clerk, del counte de Perth).

Strathern, Bobert de (del counte de Perth).
 Strathhach, Ego de (del counte de Perth).
 Straton (Stratton), Alexander de (Alifaundre de Stratton).
 Straton, Alifaundre de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Straton, James de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Straton, Thomas de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Striuelin (Striuelyn, Efriuelin) de Cars, Johan de (del counte de Striuelin).
 Striuelin de Morauia (Morref, Morreue), Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Striuelin de Morref, chiualer).
 Striuelin, Alifaundre de (del counte de Lanark).
 Striuelin, Andreu de (burgois de Ennerkethin).
 Striuelin, la communaute de.
 Striuelin, Mefre Henry de (del counte de Striuelyn).
 Striuelin, Henry de (perfone del Eglife de Upfetelyngton, del counte de Berewyk).
 Striuelin, Dominus Johannes de (miles), (Johan de Efriuelin, chiualer).
 Striuelin, William de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Strong, William (burgois do Monros).
 Stychehull, Robert de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Stywerdefton, Adam de (del counte de Perth).
 Sulby, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Suthlinton, Johan de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Suthftanes, Aleyn de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Sutton, Mariot de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Swafham, Nicol de (perfone de Graunt Dalton, del counte de Wyggeton).
 Swenton (Swynton), Henry de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Swenton, William de (vicaire del Eglife de Swynton).
 Swineburn, Johan de (del counte de Are).
 Swyn de Ryfton, Adam (del counte de Berewyk).
 Synton, Marie de (del counte de Rokefburgh).

 Taillur, (Taillour) de Balfhamwell, William le (del counte de Forfare).
 Taillur, de Ceffeworth, Adam le (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Taillur, de Coningham, Adam le (del counte de Are).
 Taillur, Adam le (del counte de Lanark).
 Taillur, Ifabele qe fut la femme Daud le (del counte de Forfare).
 Taillur, Robert le (burgois de Striuelin).
 Taillur, Symund le (burgois de Jeddeworth).
 Taillur, Thomas le (burgois de Jeddeworth).
 Taillur, William le (burgois de Edenburgh).
 Taillur, William le (del counte, de Lanark).
 Taillur, William le (del counte de Dunfres).
 Taket (Teket), (Teketer), Gilbert (burgois de Striuelin).
 Taket, Phelipp (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Tarueth, Henry de (tenant le Euefqe de Seint Andreu, del counte de Fyf).
 Tattenel, Willielmus de (William de Tattenel).
 Templeton, Mefre Gilbert de (del counte de Are).
 Tenant de Crofton, William (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Thornton (Thorneton), Johan de (burgois de Monros).
 Thornton, Johan de (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Thoruk, Gilbert de (del counte de Perth).
 Threpeland, Robert de (del counte de Pebbles).
 Tiry, Morice de (del counte de Perth).
 Toftes, Ingram de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Toftes, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Toftes, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Tornal, William (gardein del Hofpital de Seint Cuthbert de Balnecrif, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Torry, perfone del Eglife de, Richard (del counte de Fyf).
 Totherigg, Adam fiz Henry de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Torthorald, James de (del counte de Dunfres).

Torthorald, Dominus Thomas de (miles); (Thomas de Torthorald, chiualer).
 Torthorald, Thomas de (del counte de Wiggeton).
 Tofketon, Vide Marefchal. Dominus Johannes.
 Tour, Thomas de la (del counte de Are).
 Trebrun, Aleyn de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Trebrun, Rauf de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Trebrun, William le fiz William de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Trembleye, Robert de (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Trembleye, Robertus de (Robert le Trembleye).
 Trefor (Trefour), Johannes dictus (burgenfis ville Sancti Johannis de Perth); (Johan Trefour burgois de Perth).
 Tripponeye, Nicol de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Trot, Johan (burgois de Monros).
 Troup, Hamund de (del counte de Lanark).
 Tundeman, Rauf (burgois de Saint Johan de Perth).
 Tungeland, abbe de, Alifaundre (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Tutte de Stratherne, Thomas (del counte de Perth).
 Twydyn, Fynlay de (del counte de Lanark).
 Twynham, Wautier de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Twynham, Wautier fiz Richard de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Twyfle, Agneys de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Tylliol, Mefre Pieres (perfone de Cultre, del counte de Lanark).
 Tylliol, Mefre William (chanoigne del Eglife de Dunkeldyn, del counte de Perth).
 Tymerham David de (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Tyndale. Robert de (perfone del Eglife de Grant Dalton, del counte de Dunfres).
 Tyningham, Gilbert fiz Henry de (tenant le Euefque de Saint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).

 Ugtherardogh, Morice de (del counte de Ugtherardoure).
 Umframuille, Ingram, de (del counte de Are).
 Unthank, Morice (del counte de Lanark).
 Urre (Urry), Hughe de (del counte de Dunfres).
 Urre (Urry), Hugo de (Huwe de Vrrre).
 Urre (Urry), Hugo dictus (Hughe Urry).
 Urre (Urry), Huwe (de counte de Are).
 Urres, vicaire de, Johan (del counte de Dunfres).
 Uffher (Uffer), Dominus Thomas dictus le (miles); (Thomas le Uffer, chiualer).
 Uffher (Uffer), Thomas le (del counte de Anegos).

 Vache, William le (del counte de Pebbles).
 Val de Efke, Robert du (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Valoynes, Adam de (del counte de Fyf).
 Valoynes, William de (del counte de Fyf).
 Vaus, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Venaly, Galfridus de (Giffrey de Venaly).
 Veupont (Veepount, Veupount, Vypount, Vypunt), Aliue [Aline] de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Veupont, Henry de (chiualer, del counte de Dunbretan).
 Veupont, Nicol de (de Tyndale).
 Veupont, Peronel de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Veupont, Robert de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Victie, James (perfone del Eglife de Edenyn, del comte de Forfare).
 Vigrus, Richard (burgois de Rokefburgh).

 Wafrer, Steuene le (del counte de Lanark).
 Wafrer, William de (del counte de Lanark).
 Waleys de Ouer Eton, Johan le (del counte de Berewyk).
 Waleys, Adam le (del counte de Are).
 Waleys, Aleyn (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Waleys, Johan le (fiz Thomas le Waleys, del counte de Fyf).
 Waleys, Nicol le (del counte de Are).
 Walgh, Vide Waugh.

Walghop (Walghope), Robert de (del counte de Fyf).
 Walghop, Robertus de (Robert de Walghop).
 Walghop, Thomas (tenant le Euefque de Seint Andreu, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Walram, Mefre (perfone del Eglife de Yetham, del counte de Are).
 Walran, Phelipp (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Walugh, Vide Waugh.
 Walughton, Robert de (perfone de la Chapele de Walughton, del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Wanewyk, Henry de (del counte de Lanark).
 Warewyk, Richard de (del counte de Are).
 Watton, Huwe de (burgoy de Jeddeworth).
 Waugh (Walgh, Walugh) de Hep, Robert (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Waugh, Daud de (del counte de Lanark).
 Waugh, Thomas (del counte de Pebbles).
 Wautier, Geffrey le fiz (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Wautier, Symond le frere (burgois de Pebbles).
 Weddale (Wedale), Laurence de (del counte de Rokefburg).
 Weddale, vicair del Eglife de, Edward (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Wederburn, Wautier de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Welles, Frere Alifaudre de (gardeyn del Hofpital. de Seint Johan de Jerufalem en Efcoco).
 Wer, Richard (del counte de Lanark).
 Weftlommeften, Rogier de (del counte de Berewyk).
 Wefton, William de (del counte de Wyggeton).
 Weues (Wemes?), Dominus Michael de (miles); (Michel de Weues, chiualer).
 Whight, Vide Wight.
 Whiteburn, Adam de (tenant le Rol du counte de Linlefcu).
 Whiteburn, Gilchrift de (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Whiteby, Waryn de (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Whitelowe, Johan de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Whiteerne, priour de, Morice (et le couent de mefme le lu).
 Whitewell. Edward de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
 Wiggemere de Edeneburgh, Johan (burgois de Edeneburgh).
 Wight (Whight), Johan (del counte de Lanark).
 Wight, Thomas (burgois de Seint Johan de Perth).
 Winceftre (Wynceftre), Henry de (del counte de Lanark).
 Winceftre, Johan de (del counte de Lanark).
 Winceftre, Thomas de (Thomas de Winceftre).
 Winceftre, Thomas de (tenant le Roi du counte de Are).
 Wifchard (Wichard, Wychard, Wyfcard, Wyfchard) del Miernes, Johannes (Johan Wychard del Miernes)
 Wifchard, Gilbert (del counte de Forfare).
 Wifchard, Johan (del counte de Kincardyn in Miernes).
 Wifchard, Dominus Johannes (miles); (Johan Wifchard, chiualer).
 Wifchard, Jone qe fu la femme Randulf (del counte de Berewyk).
 Wifeman (Wifman), William (del counte de Elgyn).
 Wifeman, Willielmus dictus (William Wifman).
 Witton (Wytton), Adam de (del counte de Selghkyrk).
 Witton, Michel de (del counte de Selghkyrk).
 Witton, Richard de (perfone del Eglife de Hawyk).
 Wodeford, Robert de (del counte de Rokefburgh).
 Wright (Wrighte) de la Blakehalle, Thomas le (del counte de Lanark).
 Wright, Rauf le (burgois de Striuelin).
 Wro, Henry del (tenant le Roi du counte de Linlefcu).
 Wro, Henry del (burgoy de Linlefcu).
 Wyet, Maucolum (del counte de Anegos).
 Wymes, Daud de (del counte de Fyf).
 Wymes, Michel de.
 Wymes, Sire Michel de (del counte de Fyf). Vide Weues.
 Wymundefone, William (del counte de Pebbles).
 Wynton, Aleyn de (del counte de Edeneburgh).

Wynton, Aleyn de (del counte de Are).
Wynton, Gode de (del counte de Edeneburgh).
Wynton, Thomas de (del counte de Are).
Wyrok, Coleman (del counte de Berewyk).
Wyfton, vicaire del Eglife de, William (del counte de Lanark).
Wythirhirde, William (del counte de Berewyck).
Yetham, William de (del counte de Rokefburgh).

SIGNATORIES in the RAGMAN ROLL of 1291

Aberon, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Aberdonenfis epifcopus, Dominus Henricus.
Abirbrothok, abbas de, Henricus.
Abrenithy, Dominus Alexander de (miles).
Alureton, Robertus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Anegos, comes de, Gilbertus, (Gilbert counte de Anegos). See Umfrauille, Gilbertus de.
Anker, Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Anftrether, Dominus Henricus de (miles).
Ardern, Dominus Alexander de (miles).
Athle [Atholis], Adam de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Atholie comes, Johannes [Johan comte de Atheles].
Aurifaber, Henricus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Aurifaber, Jacobus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Aurifaber, Willielmus (burgenfis Sancti de Perth).

Baligalli, Rogerus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Balliolo dominus Galwidie, Johannes de (Johan de Baillol, feignor de Gaweye).
Balliolo dominus Alexander de (Alifandre de Baillol, feignor de Caures)
Balncrif, magifter domus de, Walterus.
Bartholomei, Magifter Rogerus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Barton, Adam de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Barton, Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Bataile, Thomas (burgenfis de Berewico).
Belle, Malcolmus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Berewico (Berewyk), clericus de, Johannes (burgenfis de Berewico)
Berewico (Berewyk), clericus de, Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Berkle, Philippus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Bernham, Domina Agnes de (prioriffa de Berewyco).
Betune, Dominus Robertus de (miles).
Beuerle (Beuerlaco), Nicolaus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Beuerle, Thomas de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Bindington, Edmundus.
Blakmantel, Petrus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Bonkhille, Dominus Alexander de (Alifandre de Bonkehille).
Botilier, Johannes le (miles).
Boughan (Boghan), comes de, Johannes (Johan comte de Bogham), Vide Comyn.
Boughan (Boghan), Magifter Robertus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Bradeley, Johannes de.
Breghin, Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Brianus, Frater, Vide Milicie Templi.
Brid, Douenaldus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Brokour, Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Brus dominus Vallis Anandie, Robertus de (Robert de Brus feignor du Val Danant).
Brus comes de Carryk, Robertus de.
Burdon, Dominus Walterus (miles).
Cambron, Johannes de (miles).

Cantelou, Johannes de.
 Carc [Carz], Thomas de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Carpentarius, Robertus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Cathanenfis Epifcopus, Alanus (cancellarius regni per regem Anglie factus).
 Celer, Duncanus del (ballivus Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Champion, Nicolaus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Chaucon [Chauzon], Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Clericus, Laurencius (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Clericus Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Cokin, Gilbertus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Coldingham, Gregorius de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Coldingham, prior de, Frater Henricus.
 Colton, Ingeramus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Comyn (Comin), comes de Boghan, Johannes Vide Boughan, comes de, Johannes
 Comyn (Comin), dominus de Badenagh, Johannes (Johan Comyn feignor de Badenagh), (cuftos regni).
 Comyn (Comin), Dominus Willielmus (miles).
 Cornbyr, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Corry, Duncanus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Cotelier, Matheus le (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Crophill, Willielmus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Couentre, Petrus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Crauford, Dominus Radulfus de (miles).
 Cupro, abbas de, Frater Andreas.
 Cyrotecarius, Henricus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Diaconus [Deken], Walterus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Dod, Ricardus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Donewyce, Thomas de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Donewyce, Thomas parvus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Douce [Douze], Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Douglas, Dominus Willielmus de.
 Dounan, Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Dumblanenfis epifcopus, Willielmus.
 Dunbar comes de Marchia, Patricius de (Patrik de Dunbar, comte de la Marche).
 Dunbar Adam de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Dunbar Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Dundee, Daud de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Dunfermelin, abbas de, Radulfus.
 Dunftan, Willielmus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Eboraco Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Ergadia, Dominus Johannes de (filius Domini Alexandri de Ergadia).

Flemeng, Criftinus (burgenfis Santcti Johannis de Perth).
 Fenton, Dominus Willielmus de.
 Frafel, Dominus Ricardus.
 Frafer, Dominus Andreas (vicecomes de Fyf), (Andreu Frafer).
 Frafer, Dominus Symon.
 Fraunceys, Henricus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Frefchele, Dominus Symon de.

Galightly, Patricius (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Gaunter [Glover], Symon (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
 Gibbe, Ricardus (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Glafguenfis epifcopus, Robertus (cuftos regni), (Robert de Glafcu euefque).
 Gofewyk, Walterus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
 Graham, Dominus Daud de (miles).

Graham, Dominus Patricius de (miles), (Patrik de Graham).
Grendon, Willielmus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Gretheued [Grofetefte], Adam (burgenfis de Berewico).
Gretheued, Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).

Hadington, prioriffa de, Alicia.
Haingham, Andi de (burgenlis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Haftinges dominus de Bergeueny, Johannes de (Johan de Haftinges feignor de Bergeueny)
Haye (Haya), Dominus Hugo de la (miles).
Haye Dominus Johannes de la (miles).
Haye Dominus Willielmus de (vice-comes de Fyf).
Herford, Willielmus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Holandie comes, Florencius (Florence comte de Hoilande).
Holthale, Willielmus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Horeth, Dominus Robertus (miles).
Houe, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Houeden, Dominus Radulfus de (miles).

Inche, Robertus del (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Infula, Miffarum, Fergus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Infula, Miffarum, Michael de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Janua, Malcolmus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Kenilworth, Daud de (balius de Berewico).
Keth, Symon de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Keyr, Dominus Thomas (miles).
Knapton, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Knight, Petrus filius Roberti (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Kynghos [Kynloz], abbas de.
Kynros, Dominus Aco [Azo] de (miles).

Lambbreton, Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Langeton, Alanus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Legheton, Dominus Willielmus de (miles).
Lenne, Johannes de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Lefpicer, Euftachius (burgenfis de Berewico).
Lefpicer, Martinus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Lefpicer, Rogerus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Letham, Adam de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Leuenaux, comes de, Malcolmus.
Loghore, Dominus Conftantinus de (vicecomes de Fyf).
Lucifer, Willielmus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Lundors, abbas monafterii de, Johannes.

Mann regina de, Maria (et comitiffa de Strathern).
Manuel, prioriffa, de, Criftina.
Mar, comes de, Douenaldus.
Mar, Adam de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Marefchal (Marefcallus), Johannes le (burgenfis de Berewico).
Marefchal Vthredus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Maul, Dominus Willielmus de (miles).
May, Willielmus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Meneteth (Meinteth), comes de, Walterus, (Wautier comte de Meinteth).
Meneteth (Meinteth), Dominus Alexander filius comitis de.
Menfton, Ricardus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Mercer, Stephanus le (burgenfis de Berewico).
Merfington, Willielmus de (burgenfis de Berewico).

Milicie Templi in Scotia preceptor, Frater Brianus.
Moigne, Adam (burgenfis de Berewico).

Monachus, Johannes (burgenfis de Berewico).
Monfy, Thomas (burgenfis de Berewico).
Monthe, Alexander del (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Morauia de Tulibardin, Dominus Willielmus de (miles).
Morauia Dominus Andreas de (vicecomes de Fyf), (Andreu de Morref).
Morauia Dominus Johannes de (miles).
Morauia Dominus Willielmus de (diues, miles).
Morington, Petrus de.
Moubray, Dominus Galfridus de (Giffroy de Moubray).
Multref, Adam de (burgenfis de Berewico).

Neubotle, abbas de, Johannes.
Neuile, Ricardus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Oliuer, Robertus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Otre, Johannes (burgenfis de Berewico).

Pebles, Warinus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Pelliparius [le Peleter], Alexander (burgenfis de Berewico).
Pelliparius [le Peleter], Michael, (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Perth, Johannes de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Philippi, Radulphus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Philippi, Rogerus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Pinkeny, Dominus Henricus de (miles).
Pifcator [le Pefchour], Robertus (balliuus Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Piftor, Ricardus (Ricardus Rubeus Piftor, burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Piftor, Robertus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Piftor, Rogerus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Polle, Willielmus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Prepofiti, Willielmus filius (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Rakstra, Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Randolf, Dominus Thomas (miles).
Randolf, Thomas filius, (Thomas le fiz).
Ricardi, Johannes filius (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Ros (Rofs, Roffe), Willielmus, de (baro); (William de Rofs), (comes de Rofs), (William comte de Roffe).
Roffenfis epifcopus, Dominus Robertus.
Rotheiuan, Dominus Willielmus de.
Rotref, Dominus Adam de (miles).
Routhbyr, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Ruffel, Robertus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Rydale, Philippus de (major ville de Berewico).

Sancti Andree Epifcopus, Willielmus (cuftos regni) (William de Seint Andreu uefye).
Sancti Andree Epifcopus, prior, Johannes.
Sancte Crucis de Edinburgh abbas, Dominus Adam.
Sancti Johannis Ierefolimitani in Scotia prior, Frater Alexander.
Sancto Claro, Dominus Henricus de (miles).
Sancto Claro, Dominus Willielmus de (miles), (William. de Seint Clere).
Sancto Claro, Magifter Willielmus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Scardeburgh, Robertus de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Schenker, Walterus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Scona, abbas de, Frater Thomas.
Scorth, Andreas (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Scotus, Dominus Michael (miles).

Sealer, Symon le (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Seleby, Adam. de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Selghkirk, Thomas de (burgenfis de Berewico).

Senefcalli, Dominus Johannes (miles).
Senefcallus Scocie, Jacobus (cuflos regni), (James Senefchal Defcoce).
Sodorenfis Epifcopus, Marcus (cancellarius regni).
Soltre, magifter hofpitalis de, Radulphus.
Soules, Dominus Johannes de (miles).
Soules, Nicholaus de (baro); (Nicol de Soules).
Soules, Dominus Willielmus de (miles).
Southgate, Roffi de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Southgate, Wadinus [Wady] de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Southren, Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Speldre, Reginaldus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Spring, Henricus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Stag, Johannes (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Strathern, comes de, Malifius comitiffa de. Vide Man, regina de.
Strathern, comitiffa de (Vide Man, regina de)
Strathy, Symon de (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Striuelin, Adam de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Striuelin, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Syward, Dominus Ricardus dictus (Richard Syward).

Tailour, Adam le (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Taket, Philippus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Taket, Radulphus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Takmore [Tobbemor], Symon (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Talemor Willielmus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Tannator [le Barker], Ricardus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Tannour, Thomas le (burgenfis de Berewico).
Thorel, Hugo (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Tod, Thomas (burgenfis de Berewico).
Tonfor [le Barber] Henricus (burgenfis de Berewico).
Torthorald (Torthorald), Dominus Daud de (miles).
Tridelton, Symon de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Troifdeners, Michael (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Trompour, Adam le (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Tundeman, Radulphus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

Umfrauille comes de Anegos, Gilbertus de (Gilbert de Umfrauille comte de Anegos), Vide Anegos, comes de,
Gilbertus.
Umfrauille, Dominus Ingeramus de (miles). (Ingeram de Umfrauille).

Vaus, Dominus Johannes de.
Venour, Thomas le (burgenfis de Berewico).
Vefcy, Johannes de (baro, pro fuo patre); (Johan de Vefey, pur fon pere), (attornatus Willielmi de Vefcy patris fui).
Violer, Warinus le (burgenfis de Berewico).

Wainflet, Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Whiteby (Whitebi), Johannes de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Whiteby (Whitebi), Nicholaus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Whiteby (Whitebi), Ranulphus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Whiteby (Whitebi), Robertus de (burgenfis de Berewico).
Wyles (Wyhz), Thomas (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Wymark [Wyremark], Petrus filius (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).
Wynk, Willielmus (burgenfis Sancti Johannis de Perth).

~ ~ ~

Appendix G

Historical Tidbits



Historical Tidbits
History of the Celts
Old Irish Kingdoms & Clans
The Middle Ages
Early Knights of the Garter
Medieval Beginnings of Sheriffs
French Titles of Nobility
Ranks & File in England
Scale of General Precedence in Scotland
Scale of Precedence for Ladies in Scotland
Latin First Names Found on Old Documents
Old Kings & Clans of Ireland
Old Baronies of Ireland

Historical Tidbits

Alfred the Great [849-899] king of Wessex (871-99), b. Wantage, Berkshire. The youngest son of King Æthelwulf, he was sent in 853 to Rome, where the pope gave him the title of Roman consul. He returned to Rome with his father in 855. His adolescence was marked by ill health and deep religious devotion, both of which persisted for the rest of his life.

Little is known of him during the reigns of his older brothers Æthelbald and Æthelbert, but when Æthelred took the throne (865), Alfred became his *secundarius* (viceroy) and aided his brother in subsequent battles against the Danes, who then threatened to overrun all England. When the Danes began their assault on Wessex in 870, Æthelred and Alfred resisted with varying results: they won a victory at Ashdown, Berkshire; they were defeated at Basing; and they had several indecisive engagements.

Upon Æthelred's death after Easter in 871, Alfred became king of the West Saxons and overlord of Kent, Surrey, Sussex, and Essex. Faced by an enemy too powerful to defeat decisively, Alfred cleared the Danes from Wessex by a heavy payment of tribute in 871. Alfred used the five-year respite that followed to begin building up a fleet. In 876 and 877 the Danes returned to ravage for several months and finally, halted by Alfred's army, swore to leave Wessex forever. However, in a surprise invasion early in 878 they crushed Alfred's forces, and he fled to Athelney in the fens of Somerset, where he organized a series of harassing raids on the enemy. The famous legend in which, unrecognized, he is scolded by a peasant woman for letting her cakes burn probably derives from this period of his life.

In May, 878, Alfred rallied his army and won a complete victory over the Danes at Edington. He then dictated the Peace of Chippenham (or Wedmore) by which Guthrum, the Danish leader, accepted Christian baptism and probably agreed to separate England into English and Danish spheres of influence. The Danes moved into East Anglia and E Mercia, and Alfred established his overlordship in W Mercia. Alfred captured (886) London and concluded another treaty with Guthrum that marked off the Danelaw E and N of the Thames, Lea, and Ouse rivers, and Watling Street, leaving the south and west of England to Alfred.

Security gave Alfred the chance to institute numerous reforms within his kingdom. Against further probable attacks by the Danes, he reorganized the militia, or *fyrð*, around numerous garrisoned forts throughout Wessex. Drawing from the old codes of Æthelbert of Kent, Ine of Wessex, and Offa of Mercia, he issued his own code of laws, which contained measures for a stronger centralized monarchy. He reformed the administration of justice and energetically participated in it, and he reorganized the finances of his court. He came eventually to be considered the overlord of all England, although this title was not realized in concrete political administration.

Alfred's greatest achievements, however, were the revival of learning and the establishment of Old English literary prose. He gathered together a group of eminent scholars, including the Welshman Asser. They strengthened the church by reviving learning among the clergy and organized a court school like that of Charlemagne, in which not only youths and clerics but also mature nobles were taught. Alfred himself between 887 and 892 learned Latin and translated several Latin works into English: Gregory the Great's *Pastoral Care*, Orosius's universal history, Boethius's *Consolation of Philosophy*, and St. Augustine's *Soliloquies*. A translation of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History* is also commonly ascribed to him, but there is some doubt since it differs markedly in style from the others. Alfred liberally interpolated his own thoughts into his writings, and the Orosius is particularly interesting for the addition of accounts of voyages made by the Norse explorers Ohthere and Wulfstan. Although he probably was not directly responsible for the compilation of the Angle-Saxon Chronicle, his patronage of learning undoubtedly encouraged it.

All these pursuits were interrupted, but not ended, by new Danish invasions between 892 and 896. The struggle was severe because Alfred's military reforms had not been completed and because the invading forces were joined by settlers from the Danelaw. He received strong support from his son Edward the Elder, his daughter Æthelflæd, and her husband, Æthelred of Mercia, and in the critical year of 893 the great Danish fort at Benfleet was successfully stormed. The one Danish attempt to penetrate deeply into Wessex was halted by Edward the Elder. In 896 the Danes slowly dispersed to the Danelaw or overseas, and Alfred's new long ships fought with varying success against pirate raids on the south coast. Alfred's career was later embroidered by many heroic legends, but history alone justifies calling him Alfred the Great.

Queen Anne [1665-1714] queen of England, Scotland, and Ireland (1702-7), later queen of Great Britain and Ireland (1707-14), daughter of James II and Anne Hyde; successor to William III. Reared as a Protestant and married (1683) to Prince George of Denmark (d. 1708), she was not close to her Catholic father and acquiesced in the Glorious Revolution (1688), which put William III and her sister, Mary II, on the throne. She was soon on bad terms with them, however, partly because they objected to her favorite, Sarah Jennings (later Sarah Churchill, duchess of Marlboro), who was to exercise great influence in Anne's private and public life.

Of Anne's many children the only one to live much beyond infancy the duke of Gloucester died at the age of 11 in 1700. Since neither she nor William had surviving children and support for her exiled Catholic half brother rose and fell in Great Britain, the question of succession continued after the Act of Settlement (1701) and after Anne's accession.

Queen Anne was a dull, stubborn, but conscientious woman, devoted to the Church of England and within it to the High Church party. She supported the act (1711) against "occasional conformity" and the Schism Act (1714), both directed against dissenters and both repealed in 1718. She also created a trust fund, known as Queen Anne's Bounty, for poor clerical benefices. During Anne's reign such thinkers as George Berkeley and Sir Isaac Newton and such scholars and writers as Richard Bentley, Swift, Pope, Addison, Steele, and Defoe were at work, while Sir Christopher Wren and Sir John Vanbrugh were at the same time setting in stone and brick the rich elegance of the period.

Audley, Sir James KG [1316-1386] He was one of the founder knights of the Order of the Garter, and fought with the Black Prince (Prince of Wales, son of Edward III) in France. Apart from his own exploits, he is best remembered for having four famous squires who fought alongside him in battle – Dutton, Delves, Fulleshurst and Hawkestone. After the victory of Poitiers Sept. 19, 1356, Sir James Audley was brought in wounded. In recognition of his gallantry, the Black Prince conferred on him a yearly income of 500 marks. Audley, however, passed it on to his four Cheshire squires. The Prince, when he heard of Audley's chivalrous gesture, doubled the award.

Baldwin of Flanders [1058-1118] 1st King of Jerusalem, During the 1st Crusade [1096-1100], the Crusaders captured Antioch after an eight-month siege in 1098 and then went on to occupy the Holy City itself (July 15, 1099). Godfrey of Bouillon was in reality the first Christian King of Jerusalem, but he would accept only the title of Count, refusing to wear the golden circle of kingship in the place where his Saviour had once worn a crown of thorns. On Godfrey's death in 1100, Baldwin succeeded him as the first titular King of Jerusalem.

Baliol, Edward de [-1363] king of Scotland, son of John de Baliol (d. 1315). Having secured English support for his claim to the Scottish throne, he invaded Scotland in 1332 and was crowned at Scone. He was soon driven out, but Edward III of England came to his active support, and together they defeated forces of the young David II at Halidon Hill in 1334. Baliol then ceded several southern Scottish counties to Edward. He was driven out again, and David, who had been in France, returned in 1341 as king. In 1356 Baliol retired on an English pension, surrendering his title as king to Edward.

Baliol, John de [1249-1315] king of Scotland (1292-96), son of John de Baliol (d. 1269). He became head of the family after the death of his elder brothers in 1278. At the death of Margaret Maid of Norway (1290), he claimed the Scottish throne through his grandmother, eldest daughter of David of Huntingdon, brother of King William the Lion. His principal rival was Robert the Bruce, of the celebrated Bruce family, son of David of Huntingdon's second daughter and hence one generation closer to his royal ancestor, although through a younger line. The laws of succession not being firmly established, the question was referred to Edward I of England, who first demanded and secured (1291) recognition as feudal overlord of Scotland. Edward decided in favor of Baliol, who was then crowned king (1292) and did homage to Edward for the kingdom. Baliol, after some hesitation, accepted Edward's asserted right to hear appeals from Scottish courts. However, when he attended Edward's Parliament at Westminster in late 1293, he refused to answer such an appeal. The Scottish council subsequently disregarded Edward's summons for help against France and formed (1295) an alliance with Philip IV of France.

Early in 1296 the Scots invaded England, and as Edward marched north to take Berwick, Baliol renounced his oath of fealty to the English king. However, after defeat in a brief campaign, in which he took no active part, Baliol surrendered to Edward. He was imprisoned in England until 1299 and ended his days on his estates in France, ignoring the continuing struggle for Scottish independence.

Barrett, Don Carlos was the son of Jonathan Barrett II and Elizabeth Murdock. He was born June 22, 1789 in Norwich, Vermont. His first marriage was to Lucy Walton on June 21, 1810 in Natchez, Mississippi. He died May 19, 1838 in Brazoria, Texas.

Don Carlos left Norwich when he was about 20 for the Mississippi Territory. The early marriage and separation of Don Carlos and his young expectant wife has been a dark and speculative event through later generations of Barretts. The following account was contributed by Mary Nicholson, which was part of her aunt Elizabeth Barrett's memories. As Elizabeth Barrett knew personally the children of Oliver Barrett (Lucy's son), it is one of the best interpretations available of this young couple's separation.

"Don Carlos Barrett was a very intelligent, high-class man who lived in Vermont at one time. He practiced law in Natchez, Mississippi. There he and Lucy Walton married. She was the young daughter of a very wealthy man who had also moved there from Vermont. The young couple were very happy and his legal business was fine. He evidently wanted to lead an adventurous life. My great grandmother, Lucy, loved him and wanted to go with him, which he planned for her to do. Her father did not want him to leave Natchez and did his best to keep Don Carlos from going, but he was determined to go. Finally, it reached the point where Lucy, the wife, had to choose between her husband and her father. Don Carlos told her that he'd never come back and pleaded with her to come with him. She and her father went down to the river and were on the boat when he left. An eye witness told of his almost dragging her off while she was weeping and sobbing. Neither she nor her husband knew she was pregnant. Don Carlos never knew that he had a child or should have expected one."

In 1820 Don Carlos was licensed to practice law in the Court of Quarter Sessions on Luzen County, Pennsylvania. In that same year he married his second wife, Eliza de Cressey Smith. In 1827 he was certified to practice law in the Supreme Court of Pennsylvania in the Western District. He arrived in Texas in 1835. The Revolution was rapidly approaching. In his involvements he was a member of the Consultation of November 3, 1835. Although hostilities had begun, this Consultation of chosen delegates of all Texans met in session at San Felip de Bexar where Don Carlos Barrett represented Mina. He was elected to serve as chairman of a select committee of five chosen from the members of the Consultation to draft a plan or constitution for a provisional government. The plan, as he helped write it, was adopted by the Consultation. Barrett represented Mina on the General Council in the Provisional Government, and was its most prolific recorder. He was elected by the Council to serve as Judge Advocate General of the Texas Army. Don Carlos was stricken ill only weeks before the battle of San Jacinto which led to the independence of Texas. He was buried in Brazoria, Texas. To do justice to a man who served Texas in her revolution both tirelessly and with fidelity, the Centenary Commission in 1836 ordered a Texas Centennial Monument over his grave in Brazoria.

Here again is a family legend: Kate Ligon McGarvey, on Jan. 23, 1945, wrote the following information on the return of Barrett to Texas and his sudden death:

"Colonel Barrett went for a visit to his Pennsylvania home after he had recovered from his illness. Then he returned to Valasco where he had a beautifully furnished home. He had brought his son George with him to Texas and was making preparations to bring his entire Pennsylvania family to their new home. He and his son journeyed to the home of Warren D.C. Hall at Chenango Plantation, where, after eating supper, he died suddenly on May 19, 1838. The sudden death had the suspicion that Barrett was poisoned in Hall's home. Warren Hall owned a large amount of money to Barrett and he had gone to talk to Hall about it."

One of the foundations for her suspicions could have been a letter written to Buxton Townes Ligon from Brazoria, Texas, from a lawyer her father had hired to investigate the possibility of recovering some of the vast acreage owned by Don Carlos Barrett. The letter, dated March 29, 1886, read in part: "After a further investigation of the Barrett Estate, I find that the mortgages which Barrett held against Hall and Austin on 11 Leagues of land to secure \$52,000 has long since been barred by limitation, that it was recorded in this jurisdiction and not in the one in which the land lay, and further that this land was granted to Hall by the State of Coahuila and that when Texas gained her independence her congress declared the grant void and illegal. So you cannot recover any part of this land except to force title by time."

Another account of Barrett: Don Carlos Barrett [1788-1838], lawyer and legislator, was born on June 22, 1788, at Norwich, Vermont, the eldest son of Jonathan and Elizabeth (Murdock) Barrett. In 1810 at Natchez, Mississippi, he married Lucy Walton, also of Norwich. The couple had one son. After he divorced his first wife Barrett married Eliza De Cressy, sometime in the early 1820s. He had met Mrs. De Cressy in New York City, and they lived for a time in Wilkes-Barre, Pennsylvania; they had four children. In 1820 Barrett was licensed to practice law in Luzerne County, Pennsylvania, and in 1827 he was admitted to practice before the Supreme Court of Western Pennsylvania.

On April 13, 1835, he took the oath of allegiance to Mexico in Mina Municipality, now Bastrop, and became a citizen of Texas. At Mina he formed a law partnership with Elisha M. Pease, with whom he had come to Texas. With the approach of the Texas Revolution, Barrett was elected president of the newly formed committee of public safety at Mina, on May 8, 1835, and on July 4 he was appointed to initiate correspondence with similar committees in the Brazos District with a view toward closing the breach between Texas and the Mexican government. Later that month he was named Mina delegate to a meeting at San Felipe that was to draw up assurances of Texan loyalty to the Mexican government. In August 1835 the joint committee sent Barrett and Edward Gritten as commissioners to meet with Gen. Martín Perfecto de Cos at Matamoros and explain to him the cause of the settlers' displeasure with the Mexican Centralist government. The two commissioners were intercepted at San Antonio by Col. Domingo de Ugartechea, however, and told that Cos would not receive them but demanded the surrender of insurrectionary leaders Lorenzo de Zavala, William B. Travis, and Robert M. Williamson before the disturbances in Texas could be forgiven. In his absence a portion of Barrett's property was attached to satisfy an old debt, an action that he bitterly resented.

Barrett returned to San Felipe and then to Mina, where he was elected a delegate to the Consultation, to take place at Washington-on-the-Brazos on October 15. There he initially opposed the declaration of Texas independence for fear that such a move would unite all of Mexico against the Texans. He voted with the majority on the Declaration of November 7, 1835, a declaration that the Texans were fighting in favor of the Mexican Constitution of 1824. Barrett was a principal author of this important document. He then was selected chairman of a committee of twelve delegates to draft a plan for a provisional government for Texas. The work of this committee provided for the establishment of a civil government and military force for Texas.

When the provisional government took power on November 14, Barrett was elected to the General Council as representative from Mina. As a member of the council he was chairman of the standing Committee on State and Judiciary as well as the chairman or member of more than twenty other committees. In addition, he sponsored a great many of the laws passed by the provisional government and was a close friend of both Stephen F. Austin and Sam Houston. On December 11 he was elected judge advocate of the Texas army, but his appointment was vetoed with a vicious attack by Governor Henry Smith. Smith claimed, among other charges, that Barrett had forged an attorney's license in North Carolina, that he had accepted fees from both prosecution and defense on a case, that he had knowingly passed counterfeit money, and that he had embezzled money appropriated for his and Gritten's mission to Matamoros to petition Cos the previous July. The council denied not only Smith's charges but his right to veto its appointments. Due at least in part to this clash of wills, Smith ordered the council dissolved on January 11, 1836, and the body responded by naming Lieutenant Governor James W. Robinson governor of Texas. Barrett made no personal response to Smith's charges, but his colleagues on the council testified that he "has been one of the leading members of the Consultation and General Council and has been industrious and useful to the country. We do most sincerely recommend him as a gentleman of high order, talents and learning, a patriot and an honest politician."

On February 15 Barrett resigned from the council due to failing health. Early in April he went to New Orleans and from there to Blue Sulphur Springs in Greenbriar Springs, Virginia, to recover his health. In May 1837 he returned to New Orleans, and by August 26 he was again in Galveston. He died at the home of Col. Warren D. C. Hall at Brazoria on May 19, 1838, and was buried in the old cemetery there. The Texas Centennial Commission placed a marker at his grave. His estate, valued at \$140,000, included five slaves and a home in Quintana. Barrett's papers are preserved at the Barker Texas History Center, University of Texas at Austin. [“BARRETT, DON CARLOS.” The Handbook of Texas Online]

And yet another account: In the Mississippi census of 1850, Lucy Walton is listed as being 54 years old and of course we have to accept that as being factual. This being the case, it would mean she was born in

1796 at Norwich town, which later became Norwich, Vermont. This is also the birthplace of Don Carlos Barrett, who was born June 22, 1789, and was therefore some seven years older than his first wife, Lucy Walton, our ancestor.

Lucy Walton was the daughter of Oliver Walton who married Catherine Murdock. Catherine Murdock was a sister of Elizabeth Murdock, who married Jonathon Barrett the Second, the father of Don Carlos Barrett. So the mothers of Don Carlos Barrett and Lucy Walton were sisters, which means that Don Carlos married his first cousin. Catherine Murdock was the second wife of Oliver Walton. He first married a girl by the name of Anne who died March 23, 1773 at the age of 27. We do not know her last name.

If we go by the U.S. census of 1850, showing Lucy Walton Cordell (she had married Richard Cordell by that time) to be 54 years old and having been born in Norwich in 1796, that proves she was born before her parents moved to Natchez. This fairly well pinpoints the date of their move to Natchez as around 1799, which date is supported by evidence later found at Natchez about a land deal involving Oliver Walton.

To go back briefly to Don Carlos at Natchez after he was married to Lucy and was anxious to leave Natchez, our family tradition has it that he begged her earnestly to go away with him, and she had a time making up her mind whether or not to go. Apparently they were in love, so says this tradition. We even have a report that she didn't make up her mind until the last minute; that she and her father even went with Don Carlos to the boat which he got on; that her father remained on shore and didn't know whether Lucy was coming off the boat or not, but she did and did not go with her husband. Don Carlos told her at the time that if she decided not to go with him, that she had seen the last of him. And according to our family tradition, she never heard from him after that. He was true to his word. We will never know how deep his love for Lucy really was.

The fact that Don Carlos left Natchez by boat indicates he went downstream. Undoubtedly he just floated downstream because Robert Fulton didn't get his steamboat, "Claremont," under way until 1812. We don't know the date that Don Carlos left Natchez, but we can guess at it with a supporting piece of evidence; he got his marriage license on June 21, 1810, and no doubt married within the next day or two. That would place his marriage on June 22 or 23. As he was born on June 22, it is possible that he married on his birthday. We have no record of a date to indicate when he left Natchez, but if we base our reasoning on the fact that his wife was pregnant at the time he left and neither of them knew she was going to become a mother, and using to some extent the fact that his son-to-be, Oliver, was born August 29, 1811, a little logical reasoning will give us the date of departure of Don Carlos from Natchez and Lucy with sufficient accuracy to be acceptable. It is obvious that the stork decided the latter part of Nov. 1810 to present Don Carlos and Lucy with a baby Aug. 29, 1811. It is an accepted fact that Lucy did not know she was to become a mother when don Carlos left, and allowing her two months to learn of her pregnancy indicates Don Carlos went away between November 25, 1810 and January 25, 1811. The fact that he decided to travel just prior to the mid-winter season would appear to indicate he was anxious and in a hurry to go.

When Don Carlos Barrett reached his destination downstream, in New Orleans or perhaps even further south, he caught a boat - a sailing vessel more than likely - and returned to the New England coast by water, going home to Norwich, we believe. No doubt he continued with his education.

We don't know where he got his high school equivalent of an education. It is possible he even had a tutor as that was the custom in those days of no public schools. Also, James Barrett (whom I will mention later and who was a great-grandson of Oramel Barrett, the brother of Don Carlos) said it was his understanding that Don Carlos attended Dartmouth University. James didn't know if Don Carlos completed his education there, but apparently was told that Don Carlos did attend. That makes sense because our ancestors, the Murdocks and the Hatches, with whom they intermarried, both donated land and some money for the erection of Dartmouth University, so it would seem reasonable and also logical to conclude that is where Don Carlos enrolled for his higher education. Anyway, it is definite that he obtained a license to practice law, even in the Pennsylvania Supreme Court.

____ We next pick up his trail in New York where he met Elize DeCressy Smith, a pretty widow and reportedly a society belle in New York City. We don't know whether she and her husband, Mr. Smith, were divorced or whether he had died. We do know she was a widow and as no mention is made of her being a grass widow, we assume he passed away. We pinpoint this marriage as taking place in 1818 or maybe a year or even two years later. After the death of Don Carlos, she married again, incidentally.

According to this James Barrett, a student at Stanford University, Don Carlos did not tell his second wife, Eliza DeCressy, about his first marriage. She knew nothing about it, nor did she ever learn about it.

Neither did his first wife, Lucy Walton, ever hear from or see Don Carlos after he left her in Natchez that winter day.

By his first wife, Lucy Walton, Don Carlos had only one child, born after he had departed Natchez. Lucy named that child Oliver Barrett, undoubtedly after her father, Oliver Walton.

The natural question would be: How did the descendants of Don Carlos by his second wife learn of his first wife? This was by sheer coincidence. I have earlier mentioned James Barrett, a great grandson of Oramel Barrett, the brother of Don Carlos, who was a student at Stanford University in 1906. Don Carlos Barrett II, who was named after his great-grandfather, Don Carlos, was also enrolled at Stanford University at the same time. As I mentioned earlier, the second Don Carlos was a son of T.H.W. Barrett. Neither boy had ever heard of the other.

____ Since both boys had the same surname and one of them was named Don Carlos, it was only natural that curiosity should bring them together to discuss their common name. This was the first that the descendants of Eliza DeCressy, the second wife, know that there had been a first wife, because the second Don Carlos told James of his great-grandmother, Lucy. By comparing notes, they determined that the original Don Carlos Barrett was one and the same in the ancestral line. Imagine that occurring across the continent, 3000 miles away, with two people, unbeknownst to each other, happening to run together. What a coincidence!

When the second Don Carlos Barrett and James Barrett found each other at Stanford University, Don Carlos the Second immediately wrote his father of this incident. A copy of that letter is as follows:

Don Carlos had quietly "walled himself in"; he didn't tell other people much about his business; he kept things to himself. Now, his home in Erie, Pennsylvania was a very beautiful place, from what can be learned about it. He bought it at a court sale, so evidently he got a good buy. It was valued at \$30,000. That is not such a big figure today but when you consider that would be the equivalent of at least \$100,000 not, it makes it a pretty fine home at that time. This is where he lived with his second wife, Eliza DeCressey, and where some of his children were born, and it was from this home that he departed for Texas, undoubtedly in 1835 as he reached Texas in March 1835.

____ Don Carlos practiced law at Erie and also did some real estate business, being very successful in both occupations. It was from here that he suddenly, without any explanation or known reason, departed for the Mexican provincial State of Texas. He arrived in March of 1835, settled at Mina (now Bastrop) some 35 miles east of Austin. He was elected to represent that district on the General Council which was the government of the Province. His ability was quickly recognized and he became "the brains" and leader of the Council.

He served on the General Council which was the Provisional Government of Texas at that time, and Texas, of course was a Provisional State of Old Mexico. There are many complimentary descriptions of Don Carlos by his contemporaries. He was described as the most influential man on the Council, as a brilliant young politician, as the brains of the General Council. He was also perhaps the work horse of the Council and this is one reason eventually his health began to fail. In about a year he was in bad shape with what they called dropsy. In today's language that would be called edema- in other words, it was fluid in the tissues. His ankles were swelling badly. He looked bloated, and became quite weak.

In February of 1836, upon his doctor's insistence, he had to resign from this General Council work. After his resignation he decided to go to Sulphur Springs, Virginia, to take some hot mineral baths, thinking that might correct his problem. He had to be helped into his carriage when he left. But anyway, he did get better in Virginia and from there he went back to his home in Erie, Pennsylvania. He remained there awhile and began to feel better, and decided he wanted to again return to Texas. This time he brought his son, George Lafayette, with him. Evidently he was still not very confident of his health and wanted to be sure some member of his family was along to help him in case he needed it.

George went with him when he went to the ranch of Austin and Hall to see about collecting the \$50,000 that they owed him. Now, there are some who say he loaned them this money but I believe it more likely that he sold them the ranch and they still owed him that on it. Anyway, I don't know, and probably we will never know. He did not go alone; George went with him, but as George was only a boy of about 17, we doubt that he would have been very much of a deterrent in case Austin or Hall wanted to poison him. Anyway, Don Carlos Barrett did die while he was at their ranch. This was in 1838.

He is today buried in a cemetery at Brazoria, Texas. There is a nice monument now honoring his memory that was erected by the State of Texas because of his patriotic work in the early pre-revolutionary days of Texas.

In my own mind, most of the big questions are fairly well settled. There is one question, though, that

I am not satisfied I could even guess the answer to, and that is where did he and how did he accumulate his wealth? He was a very wealthy man. The lawyer, Stephen Bittel, the B.T. Ligon wrote to about the estate, said that Don Carlos was one of the wealthiest men in Texas; that he owned over a quarter of a million acres of land. Attorney Bittel said if his estate could have been held together for another ten years after his death, it probably would have reached into the millions of dollars.

___ I just don't know how Don Carlos accumulated that kind of a fortune. He had to be awfully prosperous as an attorney back in Erie, Pennsylvania, or he had to make a lot of money in real estate, which he did dabble in while in Erie-- and is supposed to have been quite good at it -- but I can't see him making that kind of money doing that. Of course, a lot of these pieces of land that he owned were land grants from Mexico, possibly to Don Carlos direct or possibly to others from whom he purchased it very cheaply. Anyway, he had title to it.

Settling his estate dragged on and on for a long time -- over 20 years. They think this was due to complications by the Civil War disrupting the proceedings. I cannot say who benefitted from all this vast wealth; only I do believe that after Texas won its independence from Mexico and became a republic that it refuted some of these land grants that were given, not only to Don Carlos but to others, and the state took them back. Too, I know that other people moved in and settled on his land, paid some taxes on it, did some improvements on it and got title to it in court proceedings. I don't know how much of it he lost in that manner. Most of this took place after his death.

CONSULTATION OF 1835 (OCTOBER-NOVEMBER 1835)

A meeting of representatives of various districts of Texas was planned for the fall of 1835 at Columbia to discuss escalating friction with Mexico, and consider options for more autonomous rule for Texas. Referred to as the Consultation of 1835, it was first set to convene on October 16. Although a few of the delegates met at the scheduled time, the meeting was almost immediately adjourned as the result of military hostilities that had erupted earlier in the month.

The Consultation reconvened November 4 in San Felipe and chose Branch T. Archer to preside. From the beginning, there was considerable discord among the members as to the best course to follow in its dealings with the Mexican government. As a result, three factions developed. Although Stephen Austin was away with the Texas forces at the time, a pro-Austin group led by Don Carlos Barrett favored a conciliatory approach to try to gain the support of Mexican liberals. John A. Wharton and Henry Smith directed an opposing faction which favored a more militant anti-Mexican stance. The third faction sought to work toward a compromise in the positions of the other two.

While the Consultation deliberated about a compromise, its actions leaned clearly in the direction of a more autonomous role for Texas. While it stopped short of declaring independence from Mexico, the group asserted its right to do so, and voted 33 to 14 for the establishment of a Provisional Government. It drafted an Organic Law with provisions for a governor and a general council. Henry Smith was chosen as governor.

No clear division of power was established, however, which resulted in a relatively weak and indecisive governing body. Thus, the Consultation of 1835 adjourned unfocused and without clear leadership, purpose, or military authority.

PAPERS FROM THE COUNCIL HALL, San Felipe de Austin, Texas dated Jan. 24th, 1836:

“Col. D.C. Barrett, a member of the General Council of Texas, has been with us in the Convention that formed the Provisional Government from the of November, until the Government went into operation and since that time, in the General Council. His whole conduct and Policy has been favorable to conciliatory and specific measures, uniformly opposed to a declaration of Independence by Texas, alone, until the people should be generally well advised upon that all important and interesting subject. He has been one of the leading members of the Consultation and General Council, had has been industrious and useful to the country. We do most sincerely recommend him as a gentleman of high order of talents and learning, a patient and an honest politician, and unhesitatingly declare our opinion that the country would be greatly benefitted by his services in the next convention, or any other public capacity to which his habits and talents are adopted.”

James N. Robinson, acting Governor

John McMullin, President Pro Tem of General Council

J. D. Clements

Hyatt Hauks

G.A. Paltino

Alex. Thompson

Thos. Barnett

FROM THE BOOK "DAUGHTERS OF THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS -- PATRIOT ANCESTOR ALBUM":

"Don Carols Barrett was born in Norwich, Vermont on June 22, 1788. His parents were Jonathan Barrett, II, a Revolutionary War veteran, and Elizabeth Murdock Barrett.

By June 21, 1810, Don Carlos Barrett was practicing law in Natchez, Mississippi, when he married Lucy Walton, whose family was also from Norwich. Their son, Oliver Perry Barrett, was born on August 29, 1811.

____ During the 1820's, Don Carlos Barrett lived in Erie, PA, where he married Mrs. Eliza De Cressy Smith, had four children from this union and practiced law. In 1827, he was certified to practice law in the Supreme Court of Pennsylvania in the Western District.

In the 1830s, the adventurous Don Carlos left his young family in Pennsylvania and traveled to the thinly settled Mexican province of Coahuila and Texas. In 1833, records place him in Valasco, a frequent port of entry for immigrants.

Well-educated and respected for his sound logic and perseverance, D.C. Barrett quickly became a leader and representative of the settlers. He established a law partnership in Mina (later called Bastrop) with Elisha M. Pease, future governor of Texas.

On April 13, 1835, Don Carlos Barrett became a citizen of Coahuila and Texas. He served as a commissioner for the evaluation of ways to improve navigation on the Colorado River.

In May 1835, he was elected president of the Committee of Safety and Correspondence for Mina. Initially founded to organize militia for defense against Indian depredations, these committees later provided the organization for resistance in the Texas Revolution.

Two months later, at a meeting held in San Felipe on July 17, 1835, he and Edward Gritten were appointed commissioners to General Martin de Cos, brother-in-law of Santa Anna, to assure him that the majority of Texans desired peace and to halt the proposed military occupation of the area. En route to Matamoras to confer with General Cos, they met with Colonel Domingo de Ugartechea, military commandant of Coahuila and Texas, who was respected by the Anglo-Texans. During one of the discussions, a message from General Cos advised that he was pleased with the obedient attitude expressed by these Texans but that he would abort his mission to subdue Texas only if those desiring peace assisted in the arrest of Texans Santa Anna considered hostile to his dictatorship. Unless this condition were met, Cos would not meet with them. Barrett and Gritten terminated their trip to San Antonio after writing to Cos to express the hope he would see them later.

The following September, Cos landed troops at Matagorda Bay to overrun the province. However, he was forced to surrender to the defiant settlers in December after the Siege of Bexar.

Representing Mina, Don Carlos Barrett was a pivotal participant in the consultation which was held at San Felipe de Austin on Oct. 16 to November 14, 1835. The purpose of the consultation was to decide how Texas should respond to the dictatorship recently established by Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna. Don Carlos Barrett and Sam Houston were the leaders of the group who sought to remain within the Mexican nation by gaining support of the Mexican liberals and restoring the constitution of 1824. This group prevailed at the Consultation.

Don Carlos Barrett was chairman of the select committee of five from the Consultation who drafted the plan for the Constitution of the Provisional Government which directed Texas before the Convention on March 1, 1836.

In the Provisional Government, Sam Houston served as commander in chief of the Texas Army and his friend, Don Carlos Barrett, was elected judge advocate general with the rank of colonel on December 11, 1835.

In addition, the Provisional Government included a General Council which was composed of one member from each municipality. D.C. Barrett served both as a representative from Mina and as chairman of the Advisory Committee to the Executive. His sagacious advice helped to guide the government during these uncertain and difficult months.

Unfortunately, the stress of his dedicated efforts aggravated a liver disease and gout. Taken ill shortly

before the battle of San Jacinto, he sought relief at Blue Sulphur Springs in Greenbrier County, Virginia.

During the summer of 1837, Don Carlos Barrett returned to Texas with his son, George, and prepared a large house at the new port of Quintana for the arrival of his family.

____On May 19, 1839, while visiting Warren D.C. Hall, Don Carlos Barrett suddenly became ill and died. He was buried in Brazoria, Texas. In 1936, the Texas Centennial Commission erected a marker at his grave.”

FROM THE BOOK “DAUGHTERS OF THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS - PATRIOT ANCESTOR ALBUM”:

“Don Carlos Barrett, my great-great-great-grandfather, was born in Norwich, Vermont on Jan. 1, 1789. His parents were Elizabeth Murdock and Jonathan Barrett, Revolutionary soldier.

He came to Natchez, Mississippi about 1806, and “read law” in the office of his aunt's husband, Oliver Walton. He married his cousin, Lucy Walton, Jan. 22, 1810. Shortly afterwards, not knowing Lucy was pregnant with their son, Oliver, he left Natchez and continued his education probably at Dartmouth (his Murdock and Hatch ancestors gave land and money for the University). Family tradition records Lucy refused to go with him and never saw him again. In September 1827, he obtained a license to practice law in the Supreme Court of Pennsylvania. His second marriage was to the sister of his brother Oramel's wife, Eliza DeCressy, a widow. He practiced law in Erie, PA, and sold real estate. Four children were born.

In 1835, Don Carlos went to New Orleans where he met Elisha Pease. They became friends and traveled to Texas together. He settled in Mina (Bastrop) and became Pease's law partner and a citizen of Mexico via naturalization. He represented the Mina area in the provincial government of Texas, designing and organizing the plan of government. In 1836, because of illness, he resigned from General Council, recuperated in Sulphur Springs, VA, and went home to Pennsylvania. His son, George (17), accompanied him back to Texas. He put his home, five slaves and some personal property in Eliza's name. he died May 5, 1838, at the ranch of Stephen F. Austin, a personal friend. There is a monument in Brazoria honoring his memory erected by the State of Texas because of his patriotic work in early pre-revolutionary days.

An interesting question is how did the descendants of Don Carlos Barrett and Eliza DeCressy learn of his first wife? James Barrett, great-grandson of Oramel (brother of Don Carlos) and Don Carlos, II, great-grandson of Don Carlos and son of Thomas Hickman Williams Barrett of Edwards, Mississippi met by chance at Stanford University in 1906. Because their surname was Barrett, each wrote to their family. Relatives of both wives discovered they shared a prominent ancestor who had been elected Judge Advocate of Texas by the Council.”

Beauchamp, Guy de, Earl of Warwick [-1315] English nobleman. He was active in Edward I's campaigns in Scotland. A leading opponent of Piers Gaveston, he became (1310) one of the lords ordainers and procured Gaveston's banishment. He was largely responsible for Gaveston's death in 1312, although he did not participate in the actual execution.

Beauchamp, Richard de, Earl of Warwick KG [1382-1439] English nobleman; son of Thomas de Beauchamp, earl of Warwick. He fought for Henry IV against Owen Glendower in Wales and the Percys at Shrewsbury (1403). In 1408 he set out for the Holy Land, visiting monarchs and fighting in a tournament en route; he made a similarly active return trip through Russia, Poland, and Germany. After his return (1410), Beauchamp performed several royal missions, including that as chief English lay envoy to the Council of Constance (1414). He fought with notable success in Henry V's French campaigns and on Henry's death (1422) became a member of the council for the infant Henry VI. He served as tutor to the young king from 1428 to 1437, when he was appointed lieutenant of France and Normandy. Richard de Beauchamp was a man of piety and courtesy and was famed throughout Europe as a chivalrous knight. His daughter Anne married and brought the earldom to Richard Neville, earl of Warwick.

Beauchamp, Thomas de, Earl of Warwick [-1401] He was one of the governors of the young Richard II. After Richard assumed power, Warwick joined the barons who opposed the acts of Richard's favorite courtiers and was one of the lords appellants (1388) who accused them of treason and curbed Richard's power. When Richard resumed control (1389), Warwick retired to his estates until his sudden arrest on a

fabricated charge of treason in 1397. He was imprisoned in the Tower of London (in the Beauchamp Tower, named for him) and then banished to the Isle of Man until the accession of Henry IV, when he was restored to his estates.

Boleyn, Anne [1507?-1536] second queen consort of Henry VIII and mother of Elizabeth I. She was the daughter of Sir Thomas Boleyn, later earl of Wiltshire and Ormonde, and on her mother's side she was related to the Howard family. After spending some years in France, she was introduced to the English court in 1522. Soon Henry, who had already enjoyed the favors of her older sister, fell deeply in love with Anne. Unlike her sister, however, Anne refused to become his mistress, and this fact, coupled with Henry's desire for a male heir, led the king to begin divorce proceedings against Catherine of Aragon in 1527. In 1532, Anne finally yielded to the king, and the resulting pregnancy hastened a secret marriage (January 1533) and the final annulment (May) by Archbishop Cranmer of Henry's previous marriage.

Anne was crowned queen on June 1. Her delivery of a daughter (Elizabeth), in September 1533, bitterly disappointed Henry. In 1536, after the miscarriage of a son, Anne was brought to trial on charges of adultery and incest. Under great pressure, a court, headed by her uncle Thomas Howard, duke of Norfolk, condemned her, and she was beheaded. Two days before her death her marriage was declared void by the Church of England.

Hugh le Despenser [-1265] chief justiciar of England. He joined the barons in their struggle against Henry III and received various offices, becoming chief justiciar in 1260. He lost this office in 1261 but was restored to it in 1263. He fought in the Barons' War and was killed at Evesham in 1265. His son and grandson, **Hugh le Despenser**, the elder, 1262-1326, and **Hugh le Despenser**, the younger, d. 1326, became even more prominent. The elder Despenser took part in Edward I's Scottish campaigns and engaged in negotiations with France. On the accession of Edward II, Despenser alienated the baronial party by his support of Piers Gaveston and, on the latter's death (1312), became the chief adviser to the king. After Edward's defeat by the Scots at Bannockburn in 1314, Hugh withdrew from the court. About 1318 the younger Despenser, who had earlier supported the barons, joined his father and the king, soon gaining more influence with Edward than had the elder Hugh. Both Despensers became involved in a quarrel with the barons, who formed a league against them and brought about their banishment in 1321. In 1322, however, they returned to England, and after the baronial defeat at Boroughbridge they were the real rulers of the kingdom. The elder Despenser was created earl of Winchester in 1322. Their rule was notable for several important administrative reforms and the conclusion of peace with Scotland (1323), but their greed was enormous and they were bitterly hated by the barons. Both Despensers were executed after the invasion of Queen Isabella in 1326.

Douglas, Sir James *the Good* [1286-1330] One of the most famous and valiant of Scottish knights. After the death of King Robert the Bruce in June 1329, Douglas was entrusted with the heart of the king, enshrined in a silver casket, to convey it to the Holy Land, thus enabling Bruce to fulfill the crusader's vow he had not lived long enough to carry out. Douglas was well on the journey when he was tempted by the King of Castile to join in a fight against the Moors of Granada. Mortally wounded, and knowing his pilgrimage was ended, he flung the heart of his king into the thick of the infidel hose, shouting, "Go first, as thou wert wont to go!" Thus, Bruce, as he had always wished, led an army against the Saracen. His heart was rescued and brought back to Melrose Abbey in Scotland. The old shield of Douglas was silver, with three silver stars on a blue chief. To it was added, to commemorate this last gallant exploit of a great knight, the red heart of Bruce, later surmounted by a royal crown.

Edmund of Langley, Duke of York [1341-1402] fifth son of Edward III of England. He was made (1362) earl of Cambridge, served on expeditions to Spain and France, and married (1372) Isabel, daughter of Peter the Cruel, king of Castile. He became (1377) a member of the council of regency for his nephew Richard II and in 1381-82 made a fruitless expedition to help Ferdinand I of Portugal against John I of Castile. He served against the Scots in 1385, and in that year he was created duke of York. He acted as regent when Richard II went to Ireland in 1394-95 and again in 1399. When Henry of Lancaster landed in England in 1399, to claim the throne, Edmund opposed him halfheartedly and finally veered to his support. After

Henry's coronation as Henry IV, York retired from court. The royal house of York takes its name from his creation as duke of York.

Edward, Duke of York [1373?-1415] English nobleman; elder son of Edmund of Langley, duke of York. In 1390, Edward was made earl of Rutland, and in 1394 he was created earl of York while with his cousin Richard II in Ireland. He acted for the king in the marriage negotiations for the hand of Isabella of France. For his help in the proceedings (1397) against the lords appellant, Richard gave him the lands of the attainted Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloucester, and the title duke of Aumâle (Albemarle). He espoused the cause of Henry of Lancaster (Henry IV) against Richard in 1399, but he was accused in Parliament of complicity in the murder of Gloucester and lost his dukedom. He was soon restored to favor, however, and in 1402 he succeeded his father as duke of York. He was appointed (1403) lieutenant of South Wales, but discontent over lack of funds led him to join in an unsuccessful plot to kidnap and make king the captive Edmund de Mortimer, 5th earl of March. York was imprisoned (1405) but was later released and made a privy councilor. Subsequently he served Henry IV in Wales and France and was killed while fighting for Henry V at Agincourt. He was succeeded as duke of York by his nephew, Richard.

Edward I [1239-1307] king of England (1272-1307), son of and successor to Henry III. By his marriage (1254) to Eleanor of Castile, Edward gained new claims in France and strengthened the English rights to Gascony. He received from his father the huge appanage of all outlying English dependencies, including Wales, Ireland, and the lands in France. After a brief alliance with Simon de Montfort, earl of Leicester, Edward supported his father in the Barons' War (1263-67) and, by revitalizing the royal party and its forces, was responsible for the crown's triumph. From this time on the young heir was the real ruler of the realm. He joined (1270) the Ninth Crusade and was on his return journey when he learned of his father's death. He did not reach England until 1274, when he was crowned.

Edward's vigorous reign was characterized by constant warfare. Trouble with Llywelyn ap Gruffydd led to his successful conquest (1277-82) of Wales beyond the Welsh Marches, and in 1284 he extended the English administration to Wales. In France from 1286 to 1289 he improved the administration of Gascony.

After the death in 1290 of Margaret Maid of Norway, Edward asserted his claim to overlordship of Scotland, but John de Baliol (1249-1315), his choice for the throne, soon entered an alliance with Philip IV of France, with whom Edward was already on bad terms. Edward's long struggle to conquer Scotland began in 1296. His first campaign was successful; he deposed Baliol and humiliated Scotland by removing the Coronation Stone from Scone to Westminster. But while he was heading an expedition against France in 1297 the Scots found a new leader in Sir William Wallace, who defeated the English at Stirling Bridge.

Edward immediately concluded a truce with Philip IV, and the English claims to Gascony were finally settled favorably in the treaty of 1303. In the meantime Edward invaded Scotland again and won a brilliant but inconclusive victory at Falkirk (1298). Campaigns in the following years led to Wallace's defeat (1305) and execution, but a new leader, Robert I, arose as king of a still defiant Scotland. Edward commenced an expedition against him in 1307 but died before reaching the border.

Even more important than Edward's military exploits were the legal and constitutional developments of his reign; Edward has been called the English Justinian. He asserted the judicial supremacy of the crown by his quo warranto proceedings (inquiries to determine "by what warrant" private jurisdictions were held), which culminated in the statutes of Gloucester (1278) and of *Quo Warranto* (1290). By his law of 1285, *Circumspecte agatis*, he forced church courts to confine themselves to ecclesiastical cases. His three statutes of Westminster (1275, 1285, 1290) formulated the advances of a century of common law and supplemented them.

By his Statute of Mortmain (1279), Edward prohibited grants of land to the church without the king's permission. In turn the English clergy, backed by Pope Boniface VIII's bull *Clericis laicos* (1296), refused in 1297 to contribute to Edward's campaign against the French until the king boldly denied protection to them and their goods and even threatened to confiscate all church property. This action was mainly prompted by his need for funds, as was his expulsion (1290) of the Jews from England (which enabled him to seize their property). His expensive wars also necessitated the frequent summoning of Parliament to grant taxes. The so-called Model Parliament of 1295 included representatives of the shires, boroughs, and lesser clergy, but the composition of Edward's parliaments varied.

The increasing resistance of the country to heavy taxation and the refusal of many barons to fight in France in 1297 forced Edward to issue a confirmation of the charters of liberties, including the Magna Carta and those signed by Henry III. The king also promised that he would collect the nonfeudal forms of taxation only with the consent of Parliament. He did not keep this promise, however, and the last years of his reign were marked by increasing baronial opposition to the crown. This opposition and the war with Scotland proved to be a disastrous legacy for his son and successor, Edward II.

Edward II [1284-1327] king of England (1307-27), son of Edward I and Eleanor of Castile, called Edward of Carnarvon for his birthplace in Wales. He became the first prince of Wales in 1301 and served in the Scottish campaigns from 1301 to 1306. The prince's dissipation caused his father to banish young Edward's friend Piers Gaveston, who, however, returned to England immediately on Edward II's succession (1307) to the throne. Edward married Isabella of France in 1308. Edward's reliance on Gaveston, both as intimate and adviser, to the exclusion of the baronial council, provoked a crisis. The barons forced Edward to banish (1308) Gaveston, but he soon returned (1309). In 1310 a baronial coalition compelled Edward to consent to the appointment of a committee of 21 lords ordainers to share his ruling powers. The committee drafted the Ordinances of 1311, which, in addition to banishing Gaveston, placed serious restrictions on the royal power. Gaveston was recalled (1311) again, however, and the barons resorted to arms, capturing and killing Gaveston in 1312.

Edward tried to renew his father's campaigns against Scotland, but his forces were routed by Robert I at Bannockburn in 1314. General disorder followed in England, and for a while the most powerful man in the country was Edward's cousin, Thomas, earl of Lancaster. Lancaster was supplanted (1318) by a moderate group of barons under Aymer de Valence, earl of Pembroke, who conciliated the king and maintained a relatively stable government until 1321. In that year, Lancaster led a rebellion against the king's new favorites, Hugh le Despenser (1262-1326) and his son. Lancaster was defeated and executed (1322). A Parliament at York (1322) revoked the Ordinances, and Edward, now dominated by the Despensers, regained control of the government. A truce was made (1323) with Robert I that virtually recognized him as king of the Scots. The Despensers carried through some notable administrative reforms, but their avarice caused them to make many enemies.

When trouble threatened with the new king of France (Charles IV, brother of Edward's queen, Isabella), the queen went as envoy to France in 1325, taking her son (later Edward III). Having been alienated by Edward's neglect, she refused to return home while the Despensers ruled. Isabella, with her son and Roger de Mortimer, 1st earl of March, gathered a force and in 1326 invaded England. Edward II found no one to support him and fled westward. The Despensers were executed and Edward himself was captured and forced to abdicate (1327). He was imprisoned in Berkeley Castle and almost certainly murdered there.

Edward III KG [1312-1377] Grandson of Edward I and, like him, a redoubtable warrior. Among the memorable events was the founding of the Order of the Garter. He was a great lover of the display and trappings of chivalry and promoter of many tournaments. In a typically colorful event at Cheapside, his knights arrayed themselves as infidel warriors from Tartary and paced their gaily caparisoned horses through the streets of London leading in silver chains a number of court ladies clothed in ruby velvet and challenging any man to come to their rescue. But Edward was far from being a mere playboy king and was sometimes prepared to shed his royal dignity and fight as a nameless knight. The chronicles of Froissart relate how, in 1348, he fought incognito under the banner of Sir Walter Manny outside Calais, and singled out one of the most redoubtable of the French knights, Sir Eustace de Ribeaumont, who twice beat the king to his knees, but was eventually compelled to surrender his sword. Not till the fight was over did the French know that the king of England had been in Manny's ranks. As ever, the captured knights received great hospitality and were waited on at supper by the Prince of Wales himself. When the meal was done, the tables were removed and Edward III stood amidst the knights of both countries with only a chaplet of fine pearls around his forehead to mark his rank. When he came to Sir Eustace de Ribeaumont, he smiled and said, "Sir Eustace, you are the most valiant knight in Christendom that I ever saw attack his enemy or defend himself. I never yet found anyone in battle who, body to body, had given me so much to do as you have done this day." With the words, Edward took off his chaplet of pearls, placed it on the head of Sir Eustace in tribute to his valor, and set him free without ransom. Thus were war and play, hardihood and courtly pleasantry mixed.

Edward IV [1442-1483] Though a brilliant commander in his early years, this Plantagenet is not usually thought of as one of the most knightly of English kings. But he performed one great service to chivalry in replacing the ruinous chapel of the Knights of the Garter, instituted by Edward III, with the magnificent new building of St. George's Chapel, Windsor, begun about 1478.

Edward Prince of Wales [1330-1376] Known as "The Black Prince," he was the eldest son of Edward III and heir to the throne, but died one year before his father. Though a gallant soldier and a great exponent of knightly courtesies due to men of rank, he was sometimes ruthless and cruel in his campaigning, such as the sack of the town of Limoges in 1370, when all the inhabitants were massacred without regard to age or sex. But the chronicler Froissart called him the "chief flower of chivalry of all the world." Edward lies buried in Canterbury Cathedral in one of the most impressive tombs in the world, and one of the greatest examples of medieval craftsmanship. The effigy of the Prince, in gilt latten that glows like gold, is in full plate armor. For centuries there hung above the recumbent figure, the mailed hands touching as though in prayer, his great helm, gauntlets, scabbard (from which the sword disappeared in the late 1700s), surcoat and wooden shield with leather covering. These important survivals from the age of chivalry are now preserved in a glass case near the tomb, which has exact replicas above it. The surcoat, embroidered with English and French emblems is probably the only 14th century example surviving in England.

Eleanor of Castile [1244-1290] Queen of Edward I who accompanied him on his crusade to the Holy Land in 1271, and is credited with saving his life after an attack by an assassin with a poisoned dagger. She was a virtuous and greatly loved queen. When she died at Harby in Nottinghamshire in November 1290, Edward had her remains brought to Westminster and, wherever the procession halted, he had a richly carved cross erected in her honor. Three survive, at Geddington, Northampton and Waltham, the latter near the site of the present Charing Cross Station which is commemorated in the name. This was demolished in the 17th century, but a replica stands in front of the station. The old manor house and chapel at Harby have gone, but in a niche above the tower doorway of the newer church stands the little crowned figure of Eleanor of Castile, Queen of England, surrounded by the shields of Castile, Leon, England and Ponthieu.

Franks – The West German tribes who conquered Gaul in the 5th century and founded the kingdom of France, with Paris as its capital. In the deeds and customs of these warriors can be traced some of the origins of chivalry. An eye witness, who was on a visit to Lyons in AD 470 has left us a vivid description of their appearance and favorite weapons: *...they wore high, tight, and many-colored garments which hardly reached down to their bare thighs; their sleeves only covered their upper arms; their cloaks were green, embroidered with red. Their swords hung down from their shoulders on baldricks, and round their waists they wore a belt of fur adorned with bosses ... In their right hands they held barbed lances and throwing axes, and in their left shields, on which the light shone, white on the circuit and red on the boss, displaying both opulence and craftsmanship.*

Frederick I Barbarossa [1122-1190] Called "Barbarossa" or "Red-Bearded," he ruled Germany from 1155-1189. H.A.L. Fisher wrote of him, "All the qualities most generally admired in the age of chivalry, courage, energy, good cheer, joy in battle and love of adventure, the rough justice that goes with hearty common sense, and the geniality which accompanies superb physical health, belonged to Frederick. No German sovereign since Charlemagne possessed qualities so well fitted for the governance of the German people. He could both frighten and charm. Churchmen, nobles, peasants, were prepared to regard him as the perfect knight." The end of this restless and action-filled life came when he took the Cross and joined the Third Crusade with Philip II of France and Richard Coeur de Lion. He set out in May 1189 from Ratisbon with the largest single army ever to leave for the Holy Land, numbering an estimated 50,000 horsemen and 100,000 foot soldiers. On June 10th the army came to the river Calycadnus, which had to be crossed for the crusaders to enter the city of Seleucia. The 64-year-old Emperor was ahead with his bodyguard. By the time the main army came up, their heroic leader was lying dead on the bank, Either he had fallen from his horse and gone down with the weight of his armor, or he had unwisely plunged into the water to refresh himself and then was swept away by a strong current. The news destroyed his great army which lost all cohesion and broke up.

Garter, Order of the – The original name of the order of knighthood was Order of the Blue Garter. It was founded in the middle of the 14th century by Edward III and exceeding “in majesty, honour, and fame, all chivalrous orders in the world.” It took as its badge a blue garter, symbol of unity, of being joined together in honor and knightly virtue. At their installation, the knights “the valyantest men of the realm,” were exhorted: “Tie about thy leg for thy renown this noble Garter, wear it as the symbol of the most illustrious Order, never to be forgotten or laid aside, that thereby thou mayest me admonished to be courageous, and, having undertaken a just war ... that thou mayest stand firm and valiantly and successfully conquer.” The knights wore their insignia for the first time in the New Year of 1348 at the royal palace of Eltham, where many of them jousted before the king.

In the early years, the Order was restricted in number to Edward, The Black Prince, and 24 other worthy knights. In theory the number remains the same today, though in practice it is increased by some extra categories of knights, such as foreign princes. The Prince of Wales is always a member, as descendant of the Black Prince. Women have been eligible since earliest times, though none were elected between the reigns of Henry VIII and Edward VII. The oft-told tale of the founding of the Order and the adoption of its motto is that while the lovely princess Joan of Kent was dancing at a ball in Calais, her garter dropped to the ground. Edward III bound it round his knee and reproved the smiles of the court with the words, “*Hone soit qui mal y pense*,” “Evil to him who evil thinks.”

George III of England [1738-1820] In his “Memoirs,” Sir N.W. Wraxall relates, “towards the end of the month of January 1805, at a time when he was much occupied in preparations for the installation of the Knights of the Garter, destined to take place on the approaching 23rd of April, and while conversing on the subject with some persons of high rank at Windsor, one of them, the late Earl of Chesterfield (5th earl), a nobleman much distinguished by his favour, said, ‘Sir, are not the new knights, now meant to be installed, obliged to take the sacrament before the ceremony?’ Nothing could probably have been farther from his idea of intention than to have asked the question in a manner capable of implying any levity or irreverence. Nevertheless, his Majesty instantly changed countenance, and assuming a severe look, after a moment or two of pause, ‘No,’ replied he, ‘that religious institution is not to be mixed with our profane ceremonies. Even at the time of my coronation, I was very unwilling to take the sacrament. But when they told me that it was indispensable, and that I must receive it, before I approached the communion table I took off the bauble from my head. The sacrament, my Lord, is not to be profaned by our Gothic institutions.’ The severity of the king’s manner while he pronounced these words impressed all present, and suspended for a short time the conversation. Never was any prince more religiously tenacious of his engagements or promises. Even the temporary privation of his intellect did not affect his regard to the assurances that he had given previous to such alienation of mind, nor, which is still more wonderful, obliterate them from his recollection. I know that on his recovery from the severest visitations under which he has laboured, he has said to his minister in the first moments of his convalescences, ‘Previous to my attack of illness I made such and such promises; they must be effectuated.’ How strong a moral principle must have animated such a prince!”

Also, in the “Memoirs of the Life and Reign of King George the Third,” John Heneage Jesse says: “Only on one occasion, whether at this or at any other period of the prince’s [George III when still Prince of Wales] life, is there evidence that his constitutional warmth of temperament, and susceptibility to the fascinations of female loveliness, tempted him to outstep the strict boundaries of continence and chastity. that single exception—it is needless, perhaps, to remark—was his early and notorious passion for the fair Quakeress, Hannah Lightfoot, a passion to which a peculiar interest attaches itself, derived partly from their youth and the previous purity of their lives, but, still more, from the strange mystery which hangs over the fate of a beautiful girl who, whatever may have been her secrets or her sorrows, carried them apparently unshared and uncomplainingly to her grave.

“The family of Hannah Lightfoot originally came to London from Yorkshire. Her father, a respectable tradesman, resided at Execution Dock, Wapping in the East, a district sufficiently obscure and remote, one would have thought, to have preserved his daughter from the temptations and perils of a court. Unfortunately, however, she had an uncle, a prosperous linen-draper of the name of Wheeler, who resided in the more fashionable vicinities of Leicester House and St. James’s Palace; and as his children were nearly of the same age as herself, it was only natural that she should occasionally become a guest in his house. The house in question – interesting, perhaps, as having been the last in which she was destined to press the pillow

of innocence – stood at the southeast corner of Carlton Street, and of what is now called St. Alban's Place; but which was then a continuation of Market Street, which ran, and still runs, southward out of Jermyn Street, St. James's.

“It seems to have been early in the year 1754 that the heir to the throne first accidentally encountered, and became enamoured of Hannah Lightfoot. His confidante and agent on the occasion is said to have been his mother's maid of honour, Miss Chudleigh, afterward the too celebrated Duchess of Kingston, a lady whose intimate experience in the intrigues and gallantries of a court enabled her to obtain the ear, and dazzle the imagination, of her intended victim. Unhappily, the fair girl listened to her, and was persuaded to forsake the home of her youth. Her parents advertised for her in the newspapers, but to no purpose. According to the account of one of her relations, her mother died of grief, the result of her daughter's disappearance.

“It has been asserted—and in fairness to Hannah Lightfoot the assertion deserves to be repeated—that when she quitted her uncle's roof in Market Street, it was for the purpose of becoming, not the mistress, but the wife of the Prince of Wales. As the Royal Marriage Act was not at this time in existence, the consequences of such a marriage, had it really taken place, might have proved most momentous to the royal family. If, for instance, as has been confidently stated, Hannah Lightfoot became more than once a mother, her children by the Prince of Wales, and not those which Charlotte of Mecklenburgh-Strelitz subsequently bore him, would have been the rightful and legitimate heirs to the crown. Nay, even had she remained childless, the fact of her having been alive at the time of the marriage of George the Third and Queen Charlotte would have rendered that marriage null and void, and have bastardised its issue.

“The first occasion, we believe, on which this very improbably marriage was positively asserted to have taken place was in a scandalous work—afterward suppressed—entitled, ‘Authentic Records of the Court of England.’ It is there confidently asserted that the prince was legally married to Hannah Lightfoot in Curzon Street Chapel, May Fair, in the presence of his brother, the Duke of York; that after the death of George the Second, the discovery of the young king's secret spread great consternation amongst his ministers; that subsequently they found means of ‘disposing’ of the fair Quakeress by inducing her to marry a person of the name of Axford; and that from this time her royal lover, notwithstanding his diligent and anxious inquiries, was never able to discover the place of her retreat. Lastly, it is stated that in 1765, at the time when Queen Charlotte was in the family way with the late King William the Fourth, so alarmed was she, on the secret of her consort's former engagement being revealed to her, that she insisted upon the nuptial ceremony being performed anew between them, which was accordingly done at Kew. Most of these statements, it may be mentioned, are repeated in another scandalous and suppressed work, published in 1832, entitled ‘A Secret History of the Court of England, from the Accession of George the Third to the Death of George the Fourth’; this latter work being professedly from the pen of Lady Anne Hamilton [1766-1846], daughter of Archibald, Duke of Hamilton, lady of the bedchamber to Caroline, Princess of Wales. These two unworthy literary productions, though evidently composed by persons not ill informed in the secret history of the court, are nevertheless so unmistakably distorted either by invention or exaggeration, that at first our impulse is to dismiss them as utterly worthless. Singularly enough, however, we find more than one of the statements which are contained in the ‘Authentic Records’ and in the ‘Secret History’ endorsed by the respectable authority of a no less well-informed person than William Beckford, the author of ‘Vathek.’ His account, it is true, differs in its details from the others; but, on the other hand, the discrepancies are thereby rendered confirmatory rather than otherwise, as apparently showing that the several statements were derived from persons who had no communication with each other. For instance, instead of Curzon Street Chapel being specified as the scene of the marriage between the prince and Hannah Lightfoot, the ceremony, according to Beckford, was performed at Kew in the presence of Mr. Pitt [later Earl of Chatham] and of one Ann Taylor. Here, curiously enough, we have Mr. Pitt brought forward as an actor in the drama, while in the ‘Authentic Records’ he is introduced as playing an equally prominent part in assisting the young king to discover the retreat of his mistress. Again, according to the ‘Secret History,’ the Clergyman who married Hannah Lightfoot to the Prince of Wales was Doctor Wilmot [Rev. James Wilmot, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford and Rector of Barton-on-the-Heath], while, according to Beckford's version, this was the person who solemnised the second marriage between the king and queen. Lastly, both by Beckford and in the ‘Secret History,’ Doctor Wilmot is spoken of as a likely person to have written the letters of Junius (see note below).

“Of the amount of credit which ought to be placed in these different statements the reader must be left

to judge for himself. For our own part, we are inclined to attach some slight importance to another irregular version of the story—the version, by the by, which the nearest relatives of Hannah Lightfoot regarded as the truth—namely, that when she quitted her uncle’s roof it was for the purpose of being married, not to the heir to the throne, but to one who had been bribed to lend her his name, and to give her his hand at the altar on the condition that he was never to claim her as his wife. Presuming, for the sake of argument, that this unholy marriage really took place, the projectors of it had doubtless in view the double object of preventing the infatuated young prince from marrying Hannah Lightfoot himself, and also of precluding the possibility of their issue hereafter preferring any inconvenient claims to legitimacy. The name of the individual who is presumed to have led Hannah Lightfoot to the altar is, we believe, correctly stated in the ‘Authentic Memoirs.’ It was Axford. According to the account of a distant connection to Hannah Lightfoot who was living in the year 1821, ‘the general belief of her friends was that she was taken into keeping by Prince George directly after her marriage to Axford, but never lived with him.’ At Knowle Park, in Kent, is an interesting portrait of Hannah Lightfoot, painted by Sir Joshua Reynolds. The catalogue describes it as the portrait of Mrs. Axford.

“One other trifling incident may be recorded as tending to corroborate the presumption that Hannah Lightfoot was the wedded wife of Axford. As soon, it is stated, as the ceremony was performed, she was conducted to the house of ‘one Perryn of Knightsbridge,’ where she received the visits of her royal lover; the important feature of the anecdote being that within the present century, a samily of this uncommon name was discovered to be still residing in the district. Its members carried on the business of dressmaking in Exeter Street.

“Not only has it been asserted that Hannah Lightfoot bore children to her royal lover, but one or two respectable families have been named as having sprung from their intercourse. Instead, however, of these surmises, as far as we are aware, having been satisfactorily substantiated, the real fact would seem to be, that from the time of Hannah Lightfoot quitting her uncle’s roof in Market Street to the hour of her death, little or nothing authentic is known concerning her. She lived, it is said, in the most secluded manner, in a villa in the neighbourhood of the Hanckey Road, then a sequestered suburb of the metropolis. There, too, in all probability, she died.”

NOTE 1: According to the account from “An Historical Fragment Relative to Her Late Majesty, Queen Caroline,” 1824: “A retreat was provided for Hannab in one of those large houses surrounded with a high wall and garden, in the district of Cat-and-Mutton Fields, on the east side of Hackney Road, leading from Mile End Road, where she lived, and, it is said, died.”

NOTE 2: A fourth authority for the supposition that a marriage was solemnised between George the Third and Hannah Lightfoot is to be found in a handsomely printed pamphlet entitled, “An Historical Fragment Relative to Her Late Majesty, Queen Caroline,” printed for Hunt, London, 1824, pp. 44-45. “The queen [Caroline] at this time laboured under a very curious and, to me, unaccountable species of delusion. She fancied herself neither a wife nor a queen. She believed his present Majesty [George the Fourth] to have been actually married to Mrs. Fitzherbert; and she as fully believed that his late Majesty, George the Third, was married to Miss Hannah Lightfoot, the beautiful Quakeress—pervious to his marriage with Queen Charlotte, under the colour of an evening’s entertainment after the death of Miss Lightfoot—and as that lady did not die till after the births of the present king and his royal Highness the Duke of York, her Majesty really considered the present Duke of Clarence the true heir to the throne. How the queen came to entertain such romantic suppositions as these is not for me to know; but that she did entertain them I know well.”

Grey, Thomas [1477-1530] 2nd Marquess of Dorset and a courtier of Henry VIII who rose to high favor because of his skill in the tournament, one of the king’s favorite sports. Dorset rode as one of the Champions of England at the Paris tournaments of 1514, when Henry VIII’s sister Mary was married to Louis XII, and was also present at the Field of the Cloth of Gold.

Henry II of France [1519-1559] An undistinguished king with few gifts but those of strength and physical prowess, which, in the end, brought about his downfall. In 1559, in order to celebrate the double marriage of his sister and his daughter, the king arranged a series of splendid fetes and tournaments before the two princesses departed to their future husbands. Right at the end, Henry, who had carried himself well, said he would run a final course with Count Montmorency, the captain of the royal guard. The two lances struck each other, but Montmorency was unable to lower his in time, and it pierced the king’s visor. He died 11 days later.

Henry V of England [1387-1422] King of England and one of the most famous of her warriors. His greatest victory was that of Agincourt in 1415. He was the hero of one of the most spirited and martial of Shakespeare's plays, which contains some of the best known passages in English literature, including the king's speech delivered in the English camp before Agincourt. An early writer described Henry as having thick brown hair, evenly cut. *He has a straight nose, and wide, handsome features ... His eyes sparkle brightly, having a reddish tinge when wide open. In peace they resemble those of a dove, but in rage are like a lion's. His teeth are snowy, strong and even... He has a cleft chin and his neck is everywhere evenly thick... His limbs are well-formed and strong with bone and sinew.* Another wrote that he ran with such speed as to be able to kill the swiftest fallow deer. Henry was a patron of poets and was renowned for his justice and religious spirit, so that in his best moments, he came closer than most kings to the ideal of the Christian knight. His tomb and chantry chapel are in Westminster Abbey. On an oak beam hang his great helm, his shield and saddle. The royal arms on the front of the shield have worn away, but the back is covered with blue silk powdered with fleur-de-lys. His padded wooden saddle is the only one of its kind known in England. On the walls of the chantry chapel are two representations of Henry in armor and in full career on his war horse.

Holand, Thomas [1315-1353] 1st Earl of Kent. He provides a good example of the importance of capturing the right sort of prisoner in the Middle Ages. Holand was of modest origins, with few assets but skill in the tournament. At the storming of Caen (France) in 1346, he took prisoner the wealthy Count of Eu and won a large fortune in ransom money almost overnight. To provide the perfect storybook ending, though he did not live happily ever after, he married a princess, Joan of Kent, and became Earl of Kent. He was the governor of Carisbroke Castle.

Irish Kings – Their laws survive, in late manuscripts, but demonstrably in archaic texts unchanged since the 9th century and earlier, which takes us back into an otherwise prehistoric world. Ireland contained some 150 *tuatha* (regions), each with its *ri* (king). There was a distinct hierarchy of kings: Greater kings had a king of tribute, a taking and present-giving authority, over lesser kings, and in turn, had greater kings above them.

James I of England, VI of Scotland [1566-1625] king of England (1603-25) and, as James VI, of Scotland (1567-1625). James's reign witnessed the beginnings of English colonization in North America (Jamestown was founded in 1607) and the plantation of Scottish settlers in Ulster. The son of Lord Darnley and Mary Queen of Scots, James succeeded to the Scottish throne on the forced abdication of his mother. He was placed in the care of John Erskine, 1st earl of Mar, and later of Mar's brother, Sir Alexander Erskine. The young king progressed in his studies under various teachers, notably George Buchanan, and acquired a taste for learning and theological debate. During James's minority, Scotland was ruled by a series of regents—the earls of Murray, Lennox, Mar, and Morton. The king was the creature of successive combinations of the nobility and clergy in a complicated struggle between the remnants of his mother's Catholic party, which favored an alliance with France, and the Protestant faction, which wished an alliance with England.

In 1582, James was seized by William Ruthven, earl of Gowrie and other Protestant adherents. He escaped in 1583 and began his personal rule, though influenced by his favorite, James Stuart, earl of Arran. James considered an alliance with his mother's French relatives, the Guise family, but in 1586, to improve his prospects of succeeding to the English throne, he allied himself with Elizabeth I. This caused a break with his mother's party, and he accepted her execution in 1587 calmly.

James, by clever politics and armed force, succeeded in subduing the feudal Scottish baronage, in establishing royal authority, and in asserting the superiority of the state over the Presbyterian Church. In 1589, against the wishes of Elizabeth, James married Anne of Denmark. He succeeded in 1603 to the English crown by virtue of his descent from Margaret Tudor, daughter of Henry VII.

Although at first welcomed in England, James brought to his new kingdom little understanding of its Parliament or its changing political, social, and religious conditions. James's reliance on favorites whose qualifications consisted more of personal charm than talent for government, the extravagance and moral looseness of the court, and the scandalous career of James's favorite Robert Carr, earl of Somerset, all furthered discontent.

On his arrival in England, the king was presented with the Millenary Petition, a plea for the accommodation of Puritans within the Established Church. However, at the Hampton Court Conference

(1604), called to consider the petition, James displayed an uncompromising anti-Puritan attitude, which aroused great distrust. (This conference commissioned the translation of the Bible that resulted in the Authorized, or King James, Version.) James's inconsistent policy toward English Roman Catholics angered both Catholic and Protestant alike. The Gunpowder Plot (1605), which sprang from Catholic anger at the reimposition of fines and penalties that James had earlier relaxed, led to greater harshness toward Catholics and prevented any cordial relations thereafter. Yet the suspicion arose that the king favored the Catholics, because he sought to conciliate Spain and attempted to arrange a marriage between the Spanish infanta and Prince Charles (later Charles I).

James's relations with the English Parliament were strained from the beginning because of his insistence upon the concept of divine right of monarchy and his inability to recognize Parliament as representative of a large and important body of opinion. As it was, Parliament and particularly the House of Commons, where Puritanism was strong soon became the rallying point of the forces opposing the crown. The Commons blocked (1607) James's cherished project of a union with Scotland. They also complained bitterly about James's methods of raising revenue by imposing new customs duties and selling monopolies. The Great Contract of 1610, a compromise whereby James would relinquish some of his feudal rights in return for a yearly income, did not come to fruition.

In 1611, James dissolved Parliament and except for the Addled Parliament of 1614, which produced no legislation, ruled without one until 1621. After the death (1612) of his capable minister, Robert Cecil, earl of Salisbury, the king exercised the royal prerogative with even less restraint and entered into battle with the courts of common law, whose position was strongly defended by Sir Edward Coke. After the fall of Somerset, George Villiers, later 1st duke of Buckingham, rose to favor and by 1619 was in complete possession of the king's confidence.

At the Parliament of 1621, called in order to raise money for the cause of the German Protestants and James's son-in-law, Frederick the Winter King, in the Thirty Years War, James was forced to abolish certain monopolies that had been abused by their holders. This Parliament also impeached the lord chancellor, Francis Bacon. It was dissolved by James for asserting its right to debate foreign policy.

The unpopular Spanish policy was pursued until the 1623 expedition of Prince Charles and Buckingham to Spain to facilitate the marriage arrangements ended in failure. A marriage treaty with France was concluded in 1624, and James was unable to prevent Parliament from voting a subsidy for war against Spain. James left to his son, Charles I, a foreign war and events leading up to the English Civil War.

Jamnia – the Greek form of the Hebrew name Jabneel (“God causeth to build”), the modern Arabic Yebna, a town of Palestine, on the border between Dan and Judah, situated 13 miles south of Jaffa, and 4 miles east of the seashore. The modern village stands on an isolated sandy hillock, surrounded by gardens with olives to the north and sand dunes to the west. It contains a small crusaders’ church, now a mosque. Jamnia belonged to the Philistines, and Uzziah of Judah is said to have taken it. In Maccabean times Joseph and Azarias attacked it unsuccessfully. Alexander Jannaeus subdued it, and under Pompey it became Roman. It changed hands several times, is mentioned by Strabo as being once very populous, and in the Jewish war was taken by Vespasian. The population was mainly Jewish, and the town is principally famous as having been the seat of the Sanhedrin and the religious center of Judaism from AD 70 to 135. It sent a bishop to Nicaea in 325. In 1144 a crusaders’ fortress was built on the hill, which is often mentioned under the name Ibelin.

Joan of Kent [1328-1385] “The Fair Maid of Kent,” daughter of Edmund of Woodstock, Earl of Kent, and reckoned one of the most beautiful women of her age. She married as her second husband, Edward the Black Prince. It was her garter, dropped by accident at a ball in Calais, that was bound round his knee by Edward III and taken as the badge of the Order of the Garter. As Countess of Salisbury, she had been present at the Battle of Neville’s Cross, 1346, and it was probably her Froissart describes as moving among the king’s forces, “desiring them to do their devoir to defend the honour of her lord the king of England and, in the name of God, every man to be of good heart and courage.”

Marshal, Sir William KT [1146-1219] Earl of Pembroke and Strigul was considered one of the finest of medieval knights and statesmen. He was a faithful servant and adviser to four English kings. He served his military apprenticeship in Normandy, was captured and ransomed by Queen Eleanor, wife of Henry II. From 1183-87 he was in the Holy Land, performing great exploits there. In an engagement against Prince Richard, later Richard I, he unhorsed him but spared his life. When Richard succeeded to the throne, he was one of the marshals at the coronation and held many high offices for another 30 years. On the death of King John, he was appointed regent for the 9-year-old Henry III and by his wisdom and statesmanship, settled him securely on his throne. In his last illness, when the Great Council of the realm had gathered round his bedside to receive his resignation, he said to the young king, "Sire, I pray God if ever I have done anything pleasing to him, He will give you grace to be a gentleman."

Before he died he was admitted to the Order of the Knights Templar, the Master saying, "In the world you have had more honour than any other knight for prowess, wisdom and loyalty." Marshal was buried in the Temple Church by Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, with the words: "Behold all that remains of the best knight who ever lived," We know a great deal about him from the 19,000-line poetical biography of him, finished only six years after death – *L'Historie de Guillaume le Marechal*.

Montfort, Simon de [1208-1265] Earl of Leicester, was born in Normandy, his claim to the earldom of Leicester came through an English grandmother. At first he appeared to be little more than one more foreign adventurer at the court of Henry III, but presently showed great personal qualities of courage and a sense of justice. After varied fortunes he became a popular leader against the influence of foreign favorites and the misrule of Henry. In the ensuing civil war he defeated and captured the king at Lewes and called a famous Parliament (1265) which included two citizens from each borough as well as the knights, nobles and ecclesiastics. Eight months later he was overwhelmed and killed by the royal forces at Evesham. His reputation stood high with the common people and he was credited with more than two hundred miracles. His arms are carved in painted stone in the north aisle of the nave of Westminster Abbey – a white lion with a forked tail on a red field.

Roger de Mortimer [1287?-1330] English nobleman. He inherited (c.1304) the vast estates and the title of his father, Edmund, 7th baron of Wigmore. Appointed lieutenant of Ireland in 1316, he was instrumental in securing the defeat of Edward Bruce and thus was able to consolidate his own holdings in Ireland. His principal estates, however, were in the Welsh Marches, and he joined (1321) the other Marcher lords in opposition to Edward II and the Despensers. He submitted to the king in 1322 and was imprisoned, but in 1323 he escaped to France. When Edward II's queen, Isabella, came to France in 1325, Mortimer became her lover. Together they invaded England in 1326 and routed Edward, whom they forced to abdicate (1327) and later had murdered. Having secured the crown for young Edward III, Mortimer, with Isabella, virtually ruled England and acquired great wealth. He became earl of March in 1328. Finally in 1330 he was seized by Edward III, tried and convicted by Parliament, and executed as a traitor.

Mottoes – Often considered an invariable accompaniment to a coat of arms, but, in fact, there are many without them. They are not part of grants of arms from the English college of Heralds, no one need have one, and, unlike a coat of arms, no one needs any authority to adopt and use one. In Scotland, the position is different, since mottoes are registered, are granted as part of the arms and are hereditary:

– *Dieu et mon Droit*, the English royal motto, meaning "God and my Right," was adopted by Edward III in 1340. The "right" may have been taken to refer to his claim to the throne of France, but the motto is much older and is reputed to have been used by Richard I as a battle cry at the Battle of Gisors in 1198 as a declaration that he was not the vassal of France, but owned his kingdom to God.

– *Esperance en Dieu*, the motto of the Percys (Duke of Northumberland) can probably be traced to the Percy war cry of "Esperance!"

– *Jour de ma Vic* was taken by Sir Roger de la Warre after the Battle of Poitiers, in which he helped to

capture King John (Jean) of France.

Most mottoes in England date no further back than the 18th century. No rules govern their adoption, their language, their number or their position. Some families have more than one, some carry them beneath their arms and some above the crest.

Neville, Charles, 6th Earl of Westmorland [1543-1601] English nobleman. A Roman Catholic by birth and connected with the powerful Howard family by marriage, he joined the rebellion (1569) led by Thomas Percy, earl of Northumberland against Queen Elizabeth I. The rebels captured Durham but failed in their attempt to rescue Mary Queen of Scots from prison. Westmorland fled, to live in exile on the Continent; he was attainted by Parliament in 1571.

Neville, Ralph, 1st Earl of Westmorland [1364-1425] English nobleman. His family was one of the most powerful in England and shared domination of the northern counties with the Percy family, with whom the Nevilles were closely allied. Neville succeeded his father as Baron Neville of Raby in 1388 and supported Richard II against the baronial party. In 1397 he was created earl of Westmorland. His second wife was Joan Beaufort, daughter of John of Gaunt and half sister of Henry of Lancaster (later Henry IV).

When, in 1399, Henry revolted against Richard, Westmorland supported Lancaster. He continued to support Henry as king and helped to put down the Percy revolt in 1403. When a new anti-Lancastrian revolt broke out in 1405, Westmorland captured two of the leaders, Archbishop Richard Le Scrope and the earl marshal of England, by trickery, but he had nothing to do with their quick execution. He was the father of a large family, many of whom made advantageous marriages. His daughter Cecily Neville married Richard, duke of York, and became the mother of Edward IV and Richard III; another of his grandsons was Richard Neville, earl of Warwick called the Kingmaker.

Neville, Richard, Earl of Warwick [1428-1471] English nobleman, called the Kingmaker. Through his grandfather, Ralph Neville, 1st earl of Westmorland, he had connections with the house of Lancaster; he was also the nephew of Cecily Neville, wife of Richard, duke of York. Through his wife, Anne de Beauchamp, he inherited the earldom of Warwick and the vast Beauchamp estates. Thus by virtue of his family and lands, Warwick was the most powerful noble in England and the principal baronial figure in the Wars of the Roses.

With his father, the earl of Salisbury, Warwick supported Richard of York in his bid for the protectorship of Henry VI (1454) and took up arms when York lost his office. Warwick was largely responsible for the Yorkist victory at the first battle of St. Albans (1455) and was appointed to the strategic post of governor of Calais. In 1459 when fighting broke out again, York, Salisbury, and Warwick were forced to flee the country, but in 1460 they returned and captured the king at the battle of Northampton. The queen, Margaret of Anjou, raised an army in the north, defeated and killed York and Salisbury at Wakefield (1460), and defeated Warwick and recaptured Henry at the second battle of St. Albans (1461). But York's son, Edward, won the battle of Mortimer's Cross (1461), entered London, and was proclaimed king as Edward IV.

Henry and Margaret were decisively defeated at Towton (1461), and Edward was crowned. Warwick was now the most powerful man in England, and the Nevilles received extensive royal favors; but Edward resented the earl's domination. In the midst of negotiations by Warwick to marry Edward to Bona of Savoy, the sister-in-law of Louis XI of France, the king announced (1464) that he had secretly married Elizabeth Woodville (Wydeville). Edward now favored a Burgundian alliance against France, the Woodvilles received favor, and Warwick was gradually pushed into the background.

He formed an alliance with the king's brother George, duke of Clarence, to whom he married his daughter, against Edward's orders. Together they rose against Edward in 1469, defeated the king's forces, and placed Edward in captivity. By the end of the year, however, Edward had regained control, and in 1470, after another abortive rising, Warwick and Clarence fled to France. There Louis XI persuaded them to make up their differences with Margaret of Anjou, and in September 1470, Warwick invaded England as a Lancastrian,

defeated Edward (who fled abroad), and restored Henry VI. Within six months Edward secured Burgundian aid, landed in England, and was joined by Clarence. Edward and Warwick met in battle at Barnet; the earl was defeated and was slain in flight.

Although an able diplomat and a man of great energy, Warwick owed much of his greatness to his birth and marriage. By the marriage of his daughter to Clarence and the marriage after his death of another daughter to the duke of Gloucester, later Richard III, all of Warwick's property went to the royal house.

Northumberland, Earls of – A line of great northern landowners, of the Percy family, who for centuries played a great part in the martial history of England, especially along the borders, which they long guarded as Wardens of the Marches. So strong was their position, in such castles as Alnwick and Warkworth, that it was once a saying that “the north knows no king but Percy.” Of the first six earls, from 1377 to 1537, all were Wardens of one or other of the Marches; four were killed in battle. The most famous early member of the family, Sir Henry Percy, called “Harry Hotspur,” son of the 1st Earl, did not succeed to the earldom because he was killed at the Battle of Shrewsbury in 1403.

Percy, Sir Henry *Harry Hotspur* [1364-1403] He was the eldest son of Sir Henry Percy 1st Earl of Northumberland. Some say the name was given him because of his fiery temper, others that it dates from an occasion when, with his brother Ralph, he was waiting at Yarmouth with 600 lances and 300 men-at-arms for an invading French force. Too impatient to delay longer, he commandeered every vessel in Yarmouth Harbor, packed his men aboard and made a series of surprise raids on the French coast, bringing off a good deal of rich booty. He saw his first actions, even if he did not participate, at the age of about 12, was knighted at the age of 13 at Richard II's coronation, and when still only about 14, he led the final assault on the garrison of Berwick after a nine-day siege. He rebelled against Henry IV and was killed at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 1403.

Percy, Thomas, Earl of Worcester [1344-1403] English nobleman; brother of Henry Percy, 1st earl of Northumberland. He served with considerable success in the wars in France and Spain, especially as admiral of the fleet of the north, a position to which he was appointed in 1378. He also served on several diplomatic missions, heading the English embassy to France to treat for peace in 1392. He was created earl of Worcester by Richard II in 1397. He accompanied Richard to Ireland in 1399 as admiral, but upon their return to England he joined his brother and his nephew, Sir Henry Percy, in supporting the seizure of the throne by Henry IV. Henry confirmed Worcester's past privileges and in 1401 appointed him seneschal (steward), lieutenant of South Wales, and tutor to the prince of Wales (1402). In July, 1403, Worcester surprised the king by joining his kinsmen in open revolt against the crown. Captured in the subsequent battle of Shrewsbury, Worcester was beheaded.

Robert I “The Bruce” [1274-1329] king of Scotland (1306-29). He belonged to the illustrious Bruce family and was the grandson of that Robert the Bruce who in 1290 was an unsuccessful claimant to the Scottish throne. He became (1292) earl of Carrick and on his father's death (1304) assumed the lordship of Annandale and of the Bruce lands in England. In 1296, Robert swore fealty to Edward I of England, but the following year he joined the struggle for national independence. He appears to have taken part only intermittently until an obscure contest between him and John Comyn (d. 1306) for the adherence of the Scottish nationalists resulted in Comyn's murder (probably unpremeditated) by Bruce or his followers. In defiance of Edward I, Robert was then crowned king at Scone on Mar. 27, 1306. Defeated by the English at Methven (1306), he fled to the west and apparently took refuge on the island of Rathlin, off the coast of Ireland.

The Bruce estates were confiscated by Edward, and punishment was meted out to Robert's followers. From this time of discouragement stems the legend that Robert learned courage and hope from watching a spider persevere in spinning its web. Returning in 1307, Robert won a victory at Loudon Hill, which brought him new adherents. Edward I attempted to lead a new expedition against the rebellious Scots but

died on the way and was succeeded by his son, Edward II, who failed to pursue his father's vigorous course. Robert was able to consolidate his hold on Scotland and to recapture lands and castles from the English. Stirling was besieged by the Scots and so hard pressed that the English governor finally agreed to its surrender if relief from England did not arrive before June 24, 1314. On June 23 and 24, at nearby Bannockburn, Robert overwhelmingly defeated the large English relief force led by Edward II. The war went on, and in 1318 the Scots recaptured Berwick. A truce, made in 1323, lasted only until 1327, when the bellicose young Edward III led an unsuccessful expedition to the north. Finally, by the Treaty of Northampton (1328), the English recognized the independence of Scotland and the validity of Robert's title to the throne.

Robert spent the short remainder of his life in his castle at Cardross and died there, perhaps of leprosy. As he requested, his embalmed heart was given to Sir James Douglas, lord of Douglas, to be carried to Jerusalem for burial. Douglas was killed in Spain, but (according to tradition) Robert's heart was recovered, brought back to Scotland, and buried in Melrose Abbey. By his courage and skill Robert had freed Scotland from English rule. He was succeeded by his son, David II.

Rose – The rose occurs very early in heraldry and is always shown as “displaying” five petals. It is, in fact, the common wild rose of the English hedgerows. In Tudor times, the rose is often shown with a double row of petals. The archivist of Canterbury Cathedral found a real Tudor rose – a cultivated one – crushed in the folds of a Tudor document where it had lain undisturbed for nearly four centuries.

– *Rose of England* is a golden rose, originally a royal badge brought in by Henry III's queen, Eleanor of Provence.

– *Rose of Lancaster* is red. When John of Gaunt, 4th son of Edward III, married Blanche of Lancaster, he incorporated the red rose in his arms and it became the badge of the Lancastrian kings who descended from him.

– *Rose of York* is the white rose. The origins of the rose of York are not clear. Roger Mortimer, 2nd Earl of March, used the white rose as a badge. From him descended Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, who unsuccessfully claimed the throne, Edward IV and Richard III, all three of whom used the white rose among their badges.

Saracens – The general name given by crusaders and Christians to all infidels – Arabs, Moors, Moslems, etc. To the Saracens, all Christians were Franks.

Stephen, King of England [1097-1154] a brave knight and soldier who was crowned king in 1135 and spent much of his reign under arms. We have a vivid word picture of him at the Battle of Lincoln, where he was captured by some of the barons in 1141, fighting desperately till his sword broke, then taking an immense axe and holding off for awhile the whole pack of enemies closing in on him. He was the first English king to allow and encourage tournaments. But, despite his personal courage, he was a weak and ineffective king, under whom the country suffered grievous cruelty and hardship.

Tiptoft (Tibetot), John, Earl of Worcester [1427?-1470] English nobleman. He studied at Oxford and was created earl of Worcester in 1449. He served as treasurer of the exchequer (1452-55) and lord deputy of Ireland (1456-57). In 1457 he went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land and on the return journey stayed in Italy for two years. There he studied under Guarino da Verona and acquired a considerable reputation as a Latin scholar. He was one of the first Englishmen to become familiar with the learning of the Italian Renaissance. On his return to England, Worcester, who was a brother-in-law of the powerful Richard Neville, earl of Warwick, became (1462) constable of England under Edward IV. In this capacity he tried and sentenced to death many of the Lancastrian leaders.

He again became (1467) lord deputy of Ireland and had the earl of Desmond executed and, it is claimed, Desmond's two sons as well. He was appointed constable again in Mar., 1470, but when Warwick restored

Henry VI to the throne in October, Worcester fled. He was captured, condemned by John de Vere, earl of Oxford (whose father and brother Worcester had sentenced to death in 1462), and executed. Hated by the Lancastrians, he was called “the butcher of England.” His translation of Cicero's *De amicitia* was printed by William Caxton in 1481.

Tostig, Earl of Northumbria [-1066] earl of Northumbria; son of Earl Godwin of Wessex. He was banished with his father in 1051 and returned with him in their armed invasion of 1052. Made earl of Northumbria in 1055, Tostig jointly invaded (1063) Wales with his brother Harold (later King Harold of England). The Northumbrians revolted against Tostig's severe rule in 1065 and chose Morcar, brother of the earl of Mercia, to be their earl. Tostig fled to Flanders. The next year he raided the English coast, then joined the Norwegian king Harold III in defeating Morcar. Tostig and his ally were killed by Tostig's brother Harold at Stamford Bridge.

Tudor—Royal family that ruled England from 1485 to 1603. Its founder was Owen Tudor, of a Welsh family of great antiquity, who was a squire at the court of Henry V and who married that king's widow, Catherine of Valois. Their eldest son, Edmund, was created (1453) earl of Richmond, married Margaret Beaufort (a descendant of John of Gaunt), and had a posthumous son, Henry, who assumed the Lancastrian claims and ascended the throne as Henry VII after defeating Richard III at Bosworth Field (1485). By his marriage to Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV, Henry united the Lancastrian and Yorkist claims to the throne. Of his children, his daughter Margaret Tudor married James IV of Scotland; his daughter Mary married Louis XII of France; and his surviving son succeeded him (1509) on the throne as Henry VIII. All three of Henry VIII's children, Edward VI, Mary I, and Elizabeth I, were rulers of England.

Following the death of Edward VI, there was an unsuccessful attempt to place Mary of England's granddaughter, Lady Jane Grey, upon the throne. The reign of the Tudors was distinguished by considerable governmental reorganization, which strengthened the power of the monarchy; the rise of England as a naval power and a corresponding growth in the sense of national pride; and the Reformation of the English church with attendant religious strife. It was a period of a remarkable flowering of English literature and scholarship. Upon the death of Elizabeth I (1603), the Tudor dynasty was succeeded by the house of Stuart, whose claim to the throne derived from Margaret Tudor.

Wallace, Sir William [1272?-1305] Scottish soldier and national hero. The first historical record of Wallace's activities concerns the burning of Lanark by Wallace and 30 men in May, 1297, and the slaying of the English sheriff, one of those whom Edward I of England had installed in his attempt to make good his claim to overlordship of Scotland. After the burning of Lanark many joined Wallace's forces, and under his leadership a disciplined army was evolved. Wallace marched on Scone and met an English force of more than 50,000 before Stirling Castle in September 1297. The English, trying to cross a narrow bridge over the Forth River, were killed as they crossed, and their army was routed. Wallace crossed the border and laid waste several counties in the North of England.

In December he returned to Scotland and for a short time acted as guardian of the realm for the imprisoned king, John de Baliol. In July, 1298, Edward defeated Wallace and his army at Falkirk, and forced him to retreat northward. His prestige lost, Wallace went to France in 1299 to seek the aid of King Philip IV, and he possibly went on to Rome. He is heard of again fighting in Scotland in 1304, but there was a price on his head, and in 1305 he was captured by Sir John de Menteith. He was taken to London in August 1305, declared guilty of treason, and executed. The best-known source for the life of Wallace is a long romantic poem attributed to Blind Harry, written in the 15th century.

William I “the Conqueror” [1027?-1087] king of England (1066-87). Earnest and resourceful, William was not only one of the greatest of English monarchs but a pivotal figure in European history as well. The illegitimate son of Robert I, duke of Normandy, and Herleve (Arlette), daughter of a tanner, he is sometimes called William the Bastard. He succeeded to the dukedom on his father's death in 1035. William and his guardians were hard pressed to keep down recurrent rebellions during his minority, and at least once the

young duke barely escaped death.

In 1047, with the aid of Henry I of France, he solidly established his power. William is said to have visited England in 1051 or 1052, when his cousin Edward the Confessor probably promised that William would succeed him as king of England. Despite a papal prohibition, William married Matilda, daughter of Baldwin, count of Flanders, in 1053. The union, which greatly increased the duke's prestige, did not receive papal dispensation until 1059.

William's growing power brought him into conflict with King Henry of France, whose invading armies he defeated in 1054 and 1058. The accession (1060) of the child Philip I of France, whose guardian was William's father-in-law, improved his position, and in 1063 William conquered the county of Maine. Soon afterward Harold, then earl of Wessex, was shipwrecked on the French coast and was turned over to William, who apparently extracted Harold's oath to support the duke's interests in England.

Upon hearing that Harold had been crowned (1066) king of England, William secured the sanction of the pope, raised an army and transport fleet, sailed for England, and defeated and slew Harold at the battle of Hastings (1066). Overcoming what little resistance remained in SE England, he led his army to London, received the city's submission, and was crowned king on Christmas Day.

Although William immediately began to build and garrison castles around the country, he apparently hoped to maintain continuity of rule; many of the English nobility had fallen at Hastings, but most of those who survived were permitted to keep their lands for the time being. The English, however, did not so readily accept him as their king.

A series of rebellions broke out, and William suppressed them harshly, ravaging great sections of the country. Titles to the lands of the now decimated native nobility were called in and redistributed on a strictly feudal basis to the king's Norman followers. By 1072 the adherents of Edgar Atheling and their Scottish and Danish allies had been defeated and the military part of the Norman Conquest virtually completed. In the only major rebellion that came thereafter (1075), the chief rebels were Normans.

William undertook church reform, appointed Lanfranc Archbishop of Canterbury, substituted foreign prelates for many of the English bishops, took command over the administration of church affairs, and established (1076) separate ecclesiastical courts. In 1085-86 at his orders a survey of England was taken, the results of which were embodied in the Domesday Book. By the Oath of Salisbury in 1086, William established the important precedent that loyalty to the king is superior to loyalty to any subordinate feudal lord of the kingdom. William fought with his factious son Robert II, duke of Normandy, in 1079 and quarreled intermittently with France from 1080 until his death. He invaded the French Vexin in 1087, was fatally injured in a riding accident, and died at Rouen, directing that his son Robert should succeed him in Normandy and his son William (William II) in England.

William II "Rufus" [-1100] king of England (1087-1100), son and successor of William I. He was called William Rufus or William *the Red* because of his ruddy complexion. His first act as king was to put down the effort of his uncle, Odo of Bayeux, to seat William I's eldest son, Robert II, duke of Normandy, on the English throne. Having quelled the rebellion in England, William invaded (1090) Normandy, secured a portion of Robert's lands, and then agreed to help his brother regain lands, most notably Maine, that Robert had previously lost. After his return to England, William forced Malcolm III of Scotland to do him homage (1091) and seized (1092) the city of Carlisle from the Scots. Having quarreled with Robert over their agreement of 1091, William again invaded Normandy in 1094 and bribed Philip I of France to withdraw his support from Robert.

In 1095 he suppressed an English rebellion led by the earl of Northumberland and made an unsuccessful expedition against the Welsh. A second Welsh campaign in 1097 was also ineffective, but in that year William gained control of the Scottish throne by sanctioning the successful expedition of Edgar Atheling to dethrone Malcolm III's son Donald Bane. In the meantime Robert, who needed money to go on the First Crusade, had pledged (1096) his duchy to William in return for the sum of 10,000 marks. From 1097 to 1099 William was engaged primarily in campaigns in France, securing and holding northern Maine but failing in his attempt to seize the French Vexin. At the time of his death he was planning to occupy Aquitaine.

William ruled England with a strong hand and aroused the hatred particularly of the church, for which he had utter contempt. He extorted large sums of money from the church by the sale of church appointments and by leaving sees and abbeys vacant so that their revenues would come to him. Although responsible for the appointment (1093) of Saint Anselm as archbishop of Canterbury, he quarreled with the archbishop over the question of investiture and finally drove him into exile in 1097. William was killed by an arrow while on a hunting party, and there is some evidence to suggest that his death was not an accident. The English throne was immediately seized by his younger brother, Henry I.

William III [1650-1702] king of England, Scotland, and Ireland (1689-1702); son of William II, prince of Orange, stadtholder of the United Provinces of the Netherlands, and of Mary, oldest daughter of King Charles I of England. William's personality was cold and his public policy calculating, but he was an able soldier and an astute politician, and his reign was of momentous constitutional importance.

He was born at The Hague after his father's death, when the office of stadtholder was suspended and power fell into the hands of Jan de Witt. In 1672, however, a revolution was precipitated by Louis XIV's invasion of the Netherlands; De Witt was overthrown, and William was made stadtholder, captain general, and admiral for life. In the ensuing warfare with France, William was able to drive the French out of the Netherlands. He made peace with England in 1674 and finally with France in 1678. Thereafter he endeavored to build up a European coalition to prevent further French aggression.

In 1677, William had married the English Princess Mary, Protestant daughter of the Roman Catholic James, duke of York (later James II). After James's succession (1685) to the English throne, the Protestant William kept in close contact with the opposition to the king. Finally, after the birth of a son to James in 1688, he was invited to England by seven important nobles.

William landed in Devon with an army of 15,000 and advanced to London, meeting virtually no opposition. James was allowed to escape to France. Early in 1689, William summoned a Convention Parliament and accepted its offer of the crown jointly with his wife. The Glorious Revolution was thus accomplished in England without bloodshed, and it proved a decisive victory for Parliament in its long struggle with the crown; William was forced to accept the Bill of Rights (1689), which greatly limited the royal power and prescribed the line of succession, and to give Parliament control of finances and of the army.

In Scotland, the Jacobites resisted violently, but after their defeat at Killiecrankie (1689) William was able to make Scottish Presbyterianism secure. He blackened his reputation, however, by apparently condoning the bloody massacre of Glencoe (1692). In Ireland, after William's victory over the exiled James at the battle of the Boyne (1690) and the conclusion of the Treaty of Limerick (1691), the Penal Laws against Roman Catholics were increased in severity.

The Jacobite effort in Ireland had been supported by Louis XIV, who hoped thus to divert William from the larger war then being fought on the Continent. William, however, took an English army to the Spanish Netherlands in 1691 and was constantly involved in campaigning until the conclusion of peace by the Treaty of Ryswick (1697). William attempted to ignore the party divisions in England, but he was forced to rely increasingly on Whig ministers because only the Whigs supported his foreign policy fully. His Whig ministers, most notably Charles Montagu, earl of Halifax, were responsible for establishment (1694) of the Bank of England and the policy of the national debt. William and the Whigs were also responsible for the Toleration Act (1689), which lifted some of the disabilities imposed on Protestant nonconformists, and for allowing the Licensing Act to lapse (1695), a great step toward freedom of the press. William sought to maintain royal prerogatives but was unable to prevent passage of the Triennial Act (1694), which required a new Parliament every three years, and the Act of Settlement (1701), which imposed the first statutory limitation on royal control of foreign policy.

A center of disaffection from c.1690 was the household of the queen's sister Anne (later Queen Anne), who with her favorites, the Marlboroughs, had been alienated by the hostile attitude of William and Mary. William's popularity diminished greatly after the death (1694) of the childless Queen Mary, and his concern near the end of his life with the Partition Treaties and with the War of the Spanish Succession, in which England was involved in another long duel with France, did nothing to improve it.

William the Lion [1143-1214] king of Scotland (1165-1214), brother and successor of Malcolm IV. Determined to recover Northumbria (lost to England in 1157), he supported the rebellion (1173-74) of the sons of Henry II of England. The result was that he was captured by Henry, who forced him to sign the Treaty of Falaise (1174), making Scotland a feudal possession of England. Released in 1175, he immediately asked the pope to declare the Scottish church free of English domination. A quarrel with the pope delayed the decision, but, in 1188, Pope Clement III declared the church in Scotland subject only to Rome.

In 1189, William was able to buy annulment of the Treaty of Falaise from Richard I of England for 10,000 marks. After the succession (1199) of King John in England, William once more demanded the restoration of Northumbria but was finally forced (1209) by show of arms to abandon the claim. William put down several revolts within Scotland and furthered somewhat the process of feudalization in the kingdom.

His alliance (1168) with Louis VII of France began a long friendship between France and Scotland, later to be known as the Auld Alliance. He was succeeded by his son, Alexander II.

Windsor – Family name of the royal house of Great Britain. The name Wettin, family name of Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, consort of Queen Victoria, was changed to Windsor by George V in 1917. The new name was adopted by all members of the family. In 1952, Queen Elizabeth II, who married Philip Mountbatten, duke of Edinburgh, decreed that she and her descendants (other than females who marry) should retain the name Windsor. A declaration of 1960, however, restricted the name to those descendants bearing the title prince or princess (i.e., the sovereign's children, the children of the sovereign's sons, and the eldest son of the eldest son of the prince of Wales); all other descendants are to be known as Mountbatten-Windsor.

Elizabeth Woodville (Wydeville) [1437-1492] queen consort of Edward IV of England. She was the daughter of Richard Woodville (later the 1st Earl Rivers). Her first husband, Sir John Grey, was killed fighting on the Lancastrian side at the battle of St. Albans (1461) in the Wars of the Roses. By him she had two sons, Thomas, 1st marquess of Dorset, and Richard. Edward IV married her in secret in 1464, partly because the powerful Richard Neville, earl of Warwick, had other marriage plans for him and partly because of Elizabeth's Lancastrian connections. The marriage was soon made public, however, and Elizabeth's large family received numerous royal favors. At the death (1483) of Edward IV, Richard, duke of Gloucester (later Richard III), seized custody of the young Edward V, Elizabeth's eldest son by the late king, and destroyed the power of the Woodvilles (Elizabeth's brother the 2d Earl Rivers and son Richard Grey were executed).

The queen mother again took sanctuary in Westminster and soon surrendered her second son by Edward, Richard, duke of York, to Gloucester. He then placed both boys in the Tower of London and declared them illegitimate, asserting that Elizabeth's marriage to Edward was voided by a precontract of marriage on Edward's part. (The boys were subsequently murdered.) After Henry VII seized the throne from Richard, he married (1486) Elizabeth's eldest daughter, who was also named Elizabeth.

~ ~ ~

History of the Celts

by Robert Dunn

For those not familiar with the different Celts in Britain in the ancient days, there were the ancient race of the Irish in Ireland; the Picts in the north of Scotland (also called collectively "Caledonians" by the Romans); the Silures or ancient Welsh; the Scots in Dalriada (around 500 AD) from the Irish; the Britons of Strathclyde -- a race of Celtic people strongly related to the Welsh both in customs and in the form of Celtic language; and at least a dozen different south and central British Celtic tribes that were, for the most part, thoroughly Romanised.

When the Romans left Britain, and the Angles and Saxons, already present, they were brought in as reinforcement troops and paid by the Roman legions; the Angles and Saxons slowly merged forming a people we now call the Anglo-Saxons. They were a Germanic, war-like group of people who aggressively sought more

and more land for themselves throughout the whole of the British mainland. Their constant wars against the native Celtic peoples forced the Scots to war on them and the Britons to seek haven in a new land, across the channel in an area of northwest France, now known as Brittany (from the name Britons). Brittany consists of the northwestern peninsula of France, nearly corresponding to the modern departments of Finistere, Cotes-du-Nord, Morbihan, Ille-et-Vilaine and Loire-Antlantique.

The historical evolution of Brittany has been mainly determined by its remoteness. The region has twice been a shelter for the Celts. The earliest inhabitants of whom there is record were Celtic tribes, possibly intermingled with the remnants of an earlier race whose monuments are menhirs, dolmens and cromlechs (most numerous at Carna, Morbihan). Conquered by Julius Caesar in 56 BC, Armorica took part in the unsuccessful rising against him. It was only superficially Romanised.

The Anglo-Saxons wars in Britain were part of a broader conflict across north-west Europe. In France, the Romano-Gauls (Roman and Celtic Gauls allies) had long protected the coasts of Brittany against Saxon pirates with their river-mouth forts. During the fifth century, the Romano-Gallic warlords were joined by British immigrants. These were the cream of Romano-British aristocracy from Cornwall: some fleeing before Irish (Scots) raiders, others hoping for closer associations with Imperial Roman culture. Allied sometimes with the Franks of France, it was this Romano-Gallo-British amalgam -- the BRETONS -- who fought most ferociously against the Saxons of the North Sea and the Goths settled in Central France, and then, in later centuries, when the Franks had established themselves as a separate kingdom, it was the Bretons who maintained Brittany as an independent Celtic state against the Merovingian and Carolingian dynasties.

Celtic Brittany was divided into a number of smaller lordships, upon which the Merovingians and the first Carolingians tried without great success to impose their authority. The line of the Carolingians would go on to produce the most important of all early medieval rulers -- Charlemagne. But the Celtic Bretons, as tough and proud as their British and Irish counterparts, would continue to resist the powerful emerging Frankish Kingdoms.

In the sixth century, Gregory of Tours records their damaging raids on the cities of Nantes and Rennes. Two hundred years later, the Bretons were still resisting and Charlemagne had to devote an entire campaign to their conquest. Even then this proved fragile and during his reign they were in constant rebellion.

Back in the fifth century, the security of the Bretons depended on the efforts of independent Romano-Gallic warlords like Ecdicius. With only his private income to fund him and no assistance from other magnates, Ecdicius gathered together a small force of horse-warriors. He then set about ambushing the local plundering expeditions of the Goths of central France. So hard did the Gallic horsemen harass the Goth raiders that, according to the account of Sidonius, the bandits had no time to retrieve their dead. Instead the raiders (Goths) preferred to cut the heads off their comrades so that at least the Gallic Ecdicius would not know how many Goths he had slain by the hairstyles of corpses. When this private band of man-hunters relieved the town of Clermont from the Goth bandits, Ecdicius was received rapturously by the townspeople.

These Gallic Guerilla actions took place around 471 A.D. and may well have been inspired by stories of the successful resistance of the Britons in Britain, led by Ambrosius Aurelianus. Ten years earlier, Ambrosius had commanded a similar task force of horse-warriors against the Saxons in Britain. Raised from the Romano-Celtic estates of the West Country and Wales, these swift-moving, professional, largely aristocratic horsemen hammered the Saxons in a series of confrontations. The Celtic warriors called each other *Combrogii* -- "fellow countrymen," a word probably derived from the Latin "cives." It is the origin of "Cymry" and "Cumbri," names still used by the Welsh and North-west British to denote their Celtic separateness from the Germanic English. For a hundred years, the British Celts and Saxons fought their border wars. At sometime during the conflict Ambrosius died. He was replaced by an equally competent warlord, a major Romano-British Celtic land-owner and expert leader of horsemen: Arthur.

There is possibly more written about Arthur and his adventures than any other single series except, of course, for the Bible. It transcended languages and borders and the Arthur stories spread from Celtic Britain to all of Britain, and from there to all of Europe. Arthur was even known in Arabia and the East.

Arthur is a Celt by tradition -- and by history. Often, people outside of Britain (and some inside) tend to see "Arthur" as "English" rather than as he should be properly seen -- as a Briton, of Celtic stock.

Arthur's story begins in the middle of the fourth century A.D. "Britannia," divided into four provinces, stretched from beyond the channel up to Hadrian's Wall in Scotland, with a wild and debatable zone beyond. The people on the Island were Celts, related to the Gauls and the Irish.

The Romans had been in Britain for centuries now, their laws generally accepted and a state of "Pax Romana" existed. At the higher ends of the social ladder, the ruling "Romans" and subject "Britons" were

blurred and were often indistinguishable. Britons had adopted Latin, Roman laws and customs, dress and warfare. They were a Celtic people, but had, for the most part become thoroughly Romanised. Only in Wales and even moreso in Caledonia (Scottish Highlands) were Roman ways still foreign.

For Britons, the imperial ways began to come crashing down in 367 AD. The island was suddenly attacked by three barbaric nations at one time. From across the North sea, after a long lull, came the Saxons. Fierce and war-like, these Teutonic warriors came in waves via boats carrying short swords, bows, lances and round wooden shields. Their origin was in Schleswig-Holstein, but they'd been advancing along the German coast. In the North, wild Picts (Caledonians) scrambled past Roman garrisons in night raids and over the wall. They were described as bearded, often as red-haired and tattooed with intricate symbols on their naked bodies and blue woad. They were generally unarmoured, indeed often naked, and the intricate symbols painted on them might have been wards of magical protection to the Picts (which may mean "Painted ones"). They were armed with slings, spears and captured Roman weapons such as swords. In the West, the British shores were assaulted by hordes of Irish tribes whom the Romans called "Scots," after one of their chief groups which had only begun to settle in Western Caledonia. They sailed in hide-covered currachs and blew terrifying blasts on enormous curled war-horns, not unlike the ancient Icenii tribe had when led by Boadicea in 60 AD.

To add to the problems of the besieged Britons, the Roman Empire began a gradual but steady withdrawal of Roman troops to the continent (originally under orders of Magnus Maximus), for protection of more vital parts of the Roman Empire, which was experiencing large Germanic tribal invasions of its own. Tribes such as the Visigoths, Ostrogoths, Vandals, Lombards, Franks and other Germanic and Eastern barbarian tribes, had Rome pulling all its resources inward to the heart of the Western Empire -- Rome -- for self-preservation. At the time the Picts, Anglo-Saxons, and Irish-Scots were raiding the British Isles, the Romans in Rome felt Britain was expendable. So, from 383 to 407 A.D., the whole of the Roman forces were removed, leaving the Britons to fend for themselves.

The Angles, Saxons and Jutes (along with the Frisians and others) which invaded the British Isles, are believed to have come from different areas of Northwest Europe: the Saxons from northern Germany and Holland; the Angles from the south of the Danish peninsula, (an area still known as Angeln exists); and the Jutes from Jutland.

Traditionally and cumulatively, they were known or came to be known as just "Anglo-Saxons" as these Germanic tribes had become one basic people over time.

They came to Britain for several reasons. For one, they had been brought in by Romans and late Romano-Celtic Society as warriors and mercenaries to help in either defensive or offensive battles with other British rivals, or against the invading Picts, Welsh and Irish-Scot raiders.

The major reason, however, was the lure of easy plunder and land. Germanic tribes themselves, were being pushed out of their traditional homelands by other rival and powerful Germanic tribes. Also, at this time, the "Migration Period," there were similar movements of tribes taking place throughout Europe, and some have postulated that the Angles, Saxons, Frisians and possibly even the more independent Jutes, were by this date already identified with each other enough to form an "Anglo-Saxon" people of mixed stock but of similar backgrounds. The invaders are generically referred to as Anglo-Saxons even if in some areas they were more Angle than Saxon or vice versa.

It seems the first Anglo-Saxons to reach Britain came by invitation, possibly even before the Roman collapse. They arrived in War-bands or mercenaries, with their "chiefs" to defend some British areas from attacks by Irish-Scots, Picts and the Continent. This only seemed to encourage the Anglo-Saxons as they began to send word back to their homelands that Britain might be easy pickings. In time, larger-scale Anglo-Saxon invasions followed, this time without invitation.

The most important invasions by these mercenaries turned colonists were circa 440-460 A.D. Legendary leaders such as the Saxon brothers Hengist and Horsa, were employed originally by High King Vortigern "the Thin" in the south-east to repel the Picts and Scots, but soon rebelled against their British (Britons) employers, and began to establish their own petty kingdoms.

Like so many characters in Arthurian Tradition, Vortigern is indeed based on a real man, but his historic impact has been tinged with so much legend that it's necessary to retell part of that legend.

Historic Vortigern seems to have been a minor king who makes a military movement for power amongst the chaos of invasion. According to history, he is responsible for bringing in the Saxons (including the powerful Saxon brothers Hengist and Horsa) both to fight the Picts and Scots, as well as fight Vortigern's own British enemies to increase his power and rule. Bede said Vortigern married Rowena, daughter of the Saxon brother Hengist, and it would eventually lead to his downfall.

The legend goes on to state that Vortigern was popular for a short time, but as more Saxon invaders arrived and began settling large areas of land, he begins to lose that popularity. Eventually, sons of a former High King of Britain return from exile at the head of an army and Vortigern is forced to flee to Wales, where he plans to build a fortress. The legend brings into the story a mysterious character originally identified as “Myrddin.” Merlin appears, historically at least, to have been created by Geoffery of Monmouth who wrote one of the first set of “histories” of Arthur and Britain, even if highly unreliable historically. Although probably invented by Monmouth, Merlin is not without a historical connection, even if remote. There was a northern British (many claim he was Pictish) bard named Myrddin, whose name Monmouth used, changing it to Merlin. Other accounts tell of a historic Merlin as a Pictish tribal leader whose pagan tribe was wiped out by a newly Christianised rival Pictish tribe. Only Merlin, it is said, survived -- he went insane and wandered the forests casting spells and talking to spirits and animals.

When Vortigern fled to Wales to build his stronghold, he chose a site quite unfortunate. Every night, all the progress made by his workmen was undone by rumblings and shaking under the ground, thus collapsing the days work. Vortigern somehow learns from his advisors, possibly Druids, that he needs the blood of a fatherless child, spilled on the stones of the stronghold. This, they tell him, will ensure the completion of the fortress. A search begins for this child. Vortigern’s men find young Merlin at Carmarthen (according to Monmouth this is “Caer Myrddin,” Merlin’s town or fortress). Again, according to the legend, Merlin is the son of a Welsh princess but an unknown father. They are brought before Vortigern. The princess tells a wild story about being visited by a golden being, and that she is devout and pure. She further explains that this golden being fathered the child Merlin. Vortigern doesn’t buy this story, but Merlin speaks out in defence of his mother, and challenges Vortigern’s wise men and Druids to explain the real reason the tower will not stand.

Vortigern’s men cannot explain so Merlin tells them. He tells Vortigern there is a pool beneath the hilltop and that inside it is a stone coffer containing two dragons: one red and the other white, who battle every night, thus causing the workmen’s building to collapse. Vortigern has his workers dig into the hill and discovers Merlin to be correct (for the legend). Then Merlins explains that the red dragon symbolises Britain and the white one the Saxons. He also predicts, that in time, the white will overcome the red dragon. To this day, the red dragon is the national symbol of Wales.

Merlin, again according to the legend, goes into a trance and prophesies the future; foretelling the coming of Arthur, “the Boar of Cornwall,” which will bring relief from the Saxon invaders, and warns Vortigern of his forthcoming death. Thus the legend of Merlin is born through the legend of Vortigern.

History? Not likely. In fact, as we have already determined, if there was indeed a Merlin, he was based on Myrddin, and he lived long after Arthur, not before. But the legend shows the power of the Arthur Tradition. Wales got the Red Dragon as their symbol; the two “dragons” did collide in the form of native British Celts against invading pagan Anglo-Saxons, and indeed the Anglo-Saxons did win the long struggle for dominance. A legend is born.

Defence was based upon the “caer,” which normally was a fortified site. Warriors kept fit by wrestling, throwing iron bars and racing up and down the many hills. About this time there was a shift for armies to the smaller, more cavalry oriented style. All except in Wales, where infantry predominated.

The other British areas were divided into a multitude of states, the most important being Strathclyde around modern Glasgow, Rheged around Carlisle, Elmet around Leeds, Gwynedd in north Wales and Powys on the Welsh borders. Southern Wales was another story altogether. It was a confusing patchwork of possibly eight competing kingdoms, while in Cornwall and Devon the “West Welsh” of Dumnonia clung to their independence.

Gwynedd led the majority of British resistance to the Saxons for years until it’s greatest leader, CadWallon, fell on the field of Hexham in 634 A.D. In the north, Strathclyde led the struggle in many epic battles against Northumbria. The British kingdom of Gododdin, heir to the ancient Votadini tribe, probably had its stronghold at Stirling, Edinburgh and Traprain Law. Gododdin was soon crushed by the Angles of Northumbria, however, leaving Strathclyde to fight on from its long-occupied capital at Dumbarton Rock. Further south, the Mote of Mark was fortified in the 6th century as a major centre of resistance for Rheged-Cumbria. In the late 8th and 9th centuries, Northumbria had a decline in power which led to a revival of Strathclyde and Rheged-Cumbria, so that the British or “North Welsh” held sway from Loch Lomond to the North Riding of Yorkshire.

Surrounded by foes, these Celtic British areas were finally swallowed by the rising Celtic Kingdom of Scotland in the 11th century, known previously as Alban.

~ ~ ~

Latin First Names Found in Old Documents

Adalbertus = Albert or George
Adam (Ade) = Adam
Adeliza = Adelize
Adranus = Adrian
Aedus = Hugh
Aemilia = Emily
Agnas = Agnes, Nancy
Agnas, Agnetis, Agneta = Agnes
Ailmerus = Aylmer
Alanus = Alan
Albertus = Albert
Albinus = Aubin
Alda = Aude
Alesia, Alicia = Alice
Alfredus, Aluredus = Alfred
Alicia = Alice, Elsie, Alyssa
Alianora, Eleanora, Elianora = Eleanor
Aloisius = Aloysius, Louis, Luis
Alvredus = Alfred
Amabilla = Amabel
Amfridus = Amfrey
Amica, Amata, Amia = Amy
Amphelicia = Amfelice
Anastasia = Anastasia or Nancy
Andreas = Andrew
Anna = Anne
Antonius = Anthony
Appolonia = Polly or Pauline
Arcturus, Artorius, Arturus = Arthur
Audoenus, Audoinus, Oeneus, Oenus = Owen
Audomarus = Aymer
Augustinus = Austin
Avelina = Evelyn
Avicia = Avice
Baldricus = Baudry
Bartholomeus = Bartholomew
Basilias = Basile
Basilius = Basil
Baudewinus = Baldwin
Beatrix = Beatrice
Benedictus = Benet
Bertrandus = Bertram
Blasius = Blase
Blasius = Blaise
Bricius = Brice
Brigida, Brigitta, Brigid = Bridget
Caritas = Charity
Carolus, Carolus = Charles, Carl
Caterina, Katerina, Katharina = Catherine
Catharina = Catherine, Kathryn, Kathleen, Caitlin

Cecilia = Cecily
 Cecilius = Cecil
 Christiana, Christina = Christine
 Christophorus = Christopher
 Claricia = Clarice
 Clemencia = Clemence
 Clemens = Clement
 Colecta = Colette
 Constantia, Custancia = Constance
 Daniele = Daniel
 Denisia, Dionisia = Denise
 Deodatus = Theodore
 Desiderata = Desiree
 Desideratus = Didier
 Dionisius = Dennis
 Dionisius, Dionysius = Denis
 Donatus = Duncan
 Dorothea = Dorothy
 Droco, Drogo = Drew
 Duvenaldus = Donald
 Eadmundus = Edmund
 Eadwardus = Edward
 Eduardus = Edward, sometimes Eamon
 Egidia = Gille
 Egidius = Giles
 Eleanora (see Alienora)
 Elena = Ellen
 Elianora (see Alienora)
 Elias = Ellis
 Elisius = Elisha
 Elisabetha = Elizabeth, Beth, Betty, Isabel, Lisa
 Emericus = Emery
 Emma = Emme
 Erchenbaldus = Archibald
 Ernisius = Ernis
 Etheldreda = Audrey
 Eudo Eudes
 Eustachius = Eustace
 Eva = Eve
 Falcasius = Fawkes
 Felicia = Felice
 Fidelia = Vera or Faith
 Fides (Fidis) = Faith
 Folcho (see Fulco)
 Francisca = Frances
 Franciscus = Francis, Frank
 Francus = Frank
 Fridericus = Frederick
 Fulco, Folcho = Fulk
 Galwanus = Gawain
 Garnerius = Warner
 Genofeva = Genevieve
 Georgius = George

Gerardus = Gerard
 Germanus = Germain
 Geroldus (see Giraldus)
 Gilebertus, Gislebertus = Gilbert
 Ginevra Jennifer
 Giraldus, Geroldus Gerald
 Godefridus = Godfrey
 Godelacius = Guthlac
 Goditha = Goodith
 Goisfridus, Gosfridus = Geoffrey
 Goscelinus = Jocelin
 Gottfridus/Godefredus = Godfrey
 Gratia = Grace
 Griffinus = Griffin
 Griselda = Grizel
 Gualterus = Walter
 Guarinus (see Warinus)
 Guenliana, = Wenteliana
 Guglielmus, Gulielmus, Gulielmo = William
 Gwendoloena = Gwendolen
 Hamo = Hamon
 Haraldus = Harold
 Hasculfus = Hasculf
 Hawisia = Hawise
 Helena = Helen, Ellen, Nell, Aileen, Eileen, Nora
 Helewisa = Helewise
 Hereweccus, Henricum, Henricus, Herveius,
 Henricus = Henry
 Hervicius = Hervey
 Hieremias = Jeremiah
 Hieronymus = Jerome
 Hilaria Hilarius = Hilary
 Hoelus = Howel
 Honorah = Nora/Norah.
 Honoria = Honour
 Hugo = Hugh
 Humfredus = Humphrey
 Idonea = Idony
 Ingelardus = Engelard
 Ingeramus = Ingram
 Isabella = Isabel
 Isenbardus = Imbert
 Ivo, Ivonus = Ives
 Jacobus = James or Jacob
 Joances, Johannes, Joannes, Johannis, Joanis = John, Sean, Eoin, Ian
 Joanna, Johanna = Joan, Jane, Jeanne, Jeanette, Joanne, Sinead,
 Jocca, Jocosa, Jodoca, Jocus, Jodocus = Joyce
 Johanna = Joan
 Johanna = Honora
 Johanna, Jonna = Jane, Joan or Jean
 Josephum = Joseph
 Josias = Josiah
 Juliana = Gillian

Jurdanus = Jordan
 Katerina, Katharina (see Caterina)
 Kenewricus = Kenric
 Landebertus = Lambert
 Laurencia, Laurencius = Laurence
 Laurentium = Lawrence
 Lecia (see Leticia)
 Leonellus = Lionel
 Leonius = Leo
 Lucas (m.) = Luke, Lucas
 Lucia Lucy
 Ludovicum, Ludovicus, Lodovicus = Louis, Lewis, Ludwig
 Luelinus = Llewelyn
 Mabilla, Mabilia = Mabel
 Magdalena = Madeline
 Malachias (m.) = Malachy
 Marcus = Mark
 Margareta = Margaret
 Margeria = Margery
 Maria = Mary, Maureen, Maeve, Molly, Mame, Polly, Moire
 Maria Anna = Mary Ann, Marian, Marianne
 Mariam = Mae, Mary
 Mariana = Marion
 Mariota = Mariot
 Marmaducus = Marmaduke
 Martinus = Martin
 Mathaeus = Matthew
 Matilda, Matildis, Matillis = Maud
 Matheus = Matthew, Matthias
 Matthias (m.) = Matthias, Matt
 Mauricius, Meuricius = Maurice
 Mereducius, Moreducus = Meredith
 Michaelem = Michael
 Milisenda = Millicent
 Milo = Miles
 Mirabilis = Mirabel
 Miriela, Mirielda (see Muriella)
 Misericordia = Mercy
 Mordacus = Murdoch
 Moreducus (see Mereducius)
 Morganus = Morgan
 Moyses = Moses
 Muriella, Miriela, Mirielda = Muriel
 Nantia = Nancy
 Natalis = Noel
 Ni = Nicholas
 Nicholaus, Nicolaus = Nicholas
 Nigellus = Niel
 Normanus = Norman
 Odo, Otho = Otes
 Oeneus, Oenus (see Audoenus)
 Olaus = Olave
 Oliva = Olive

Orabilis, Orabilia = Orabel
 Patritius = Patrick
 Petronilla = Parnel
 Petrus = Peter
 Philippa = Philippe
 Pigotus = Pigot
 Placencia = Pleasance
 Radulfus, Radulphus = Ralph
 Randolphus = Randal
 Reginaldus = Reynold
 Reimundus = Raymond
 Reinerus = Rayner
 Reinfridus = Remphrey
 Ricardus = Richard, Dick, Dirck
 Richerus = Richer
 Roesia, Rohesia = Rose
 Rohelendus, Roulandus = Roland
 Rothericus = Roderick
 Rufus = Rory, Rufus, Red
 Rugerius = Roger, Rory
 Sabinus = Sabin
 Salamanus, Salamon = Solomon
 Samuelem = Samuel
 Sarra = Sarah
 Savaricus = Savary
 Scolastica = Scholace
 Serlo Serle
 Sewallus = Sewel
 Sibella = Sibyl
 Stanislausum = Stan
 Stephanus = Stephen
 Suanus = Sweyn
 Teodoricus, Terricus = Terry
 Theodoricus = Derek
 Theodorus = Theodore
 Theophania = Tiffany
 Thomas, Thome, Thomasum = Thomas
 Timotheus = Timothy
 Tobias = Toby
 Tuoldus = Thorold
 Turstanus = Thurstan
 Veronica = Veronica or Bernice
 Vincencius = Vincent
 Vitalis = Viel
 Vitus = Guy
 Walkelinus = Waukelin
 Warinus, Guarinus = Warin
 Warnerus = Warner
 Wenteliana (see Guenliana)
 Wido (see Guido)
 Willelmus, Guillelmus = William
 Wymerca = Wymark

The Middle Ages

Chivalry

During the time of the Crusades the word “knight” came to mean something more than “armored horseman” or “lord of the manor.” It came to mean a man who tried to use his strength and wealth in doing good for those who were weaker and poorer. The new idea was that a true knight was not only faithful to his lord, but should also protect churchmen, serve ladies, be kind to the unfortunate. He should always be brave and courteous, and should never be boastful or greedy or aggressive or drunken, but quiet and modest. This ideal of a knight’s behavior was called “chivalry.”

A chivalrous knight was a very different sort of man from the proud, unruly, land-brabbing, brutal warriors who seem to have been only too common in the Middle Ages. Did such warriors turn into chivalrous knights? Or was chivalry only a game of make-believe, a fashionable game which the ruling classes played when they were not busy quarrelling and scheming for more land, or following their lords to war, or trying to squeeze more out of the peasants and merchants who lived on their land? Were these people “bold bad barons” or were they “very perfect gentle knights”? Or were they very mixed?

Certainly, boys of the ruling class were supposed to be brought up to be good knights. Their parents sent them to the castles of other lords. Here they would begin as pages to the ladies, who would teach them good manners and gentle behavior. They would become squires, acting as servants to knights and thus learning about armor, weapons and horses. The chaplain of the castle would see that they were religious, while the lord of the castle would watch over their progress generally. When a squire was old enough and had shown that he was good enough, the lord would make him a knight. Sometimes a man would be knighted for great valor on the battlefield.

It was an honor to be made a knight, to be called “Sir” and to wear a knightly sword and spurs. Soon after the end of the Crusades, some kings thought of making some knights more highly honored still. They set up orders of knighthood, and the members were supposed to be specially brave and good. These orders were not like those of the Templars and Hospitallers, but more like clubs which a knight could join only if the king invited him.

Many of these orders exist to this day: for example, the Knights of the Garter in Britain. The order was founded by Edward III about 1349. The knights wear the badge of St. George and carry on an old-fashioned garter their motto, “Evil be to him who evil thinks.” Another very famous order was that of the Golden Fleece, founded by the Duke of Burgundy in 1429 “for the reverence of God and the sustenance of our Christian faith, and to honor and enhance the noble order of chivalry.”

Each year the knights were to meet in a Chapter and, with feasts and religious services, discuss one another’s conduct during the past twelve months, praising those who had done well and blaming those who had not acted as good knights ought. Sometimes it went like that, even the Duke of Burgundy himself being rebuked for his faults.

Yet, though there was a rule that only tried and tested knights could be members, the duke’s son in 1433 was made a knight of the order when he was twenty days old. That boy grew up to be Duke Charles the Bold, and he thought little of massacring the people of towns he captured, though he usually spared the churches.

The Church also tried to reduce the feuding, robbing and killing by “the Truce of God.” This meant that no man should fight his enemy on certain days of the week. The Church tried to enforce the Truce of God, but had to give up in the end, for it never was properly respected. The Church also said that it was wicked to fight simply for pay, because a Christian should fight only when he believed that it was right to do so. Therefore, all mercenaries were to be excommunicated; but men still went on selling their swords to the highest bidder. You could argue that the church had failed in its efforts to improve the feudal ruling class, but that would not be the whole truth.

Whatever they sometimes did, there had been thousands of barons and knights who had gone to the Crusades without any intention of becoming lords in the Holy Land, and who, if they survived, had been content to return home poorer than when they had left. And, even if they did not always live up to it, knights believed in the ideal of chivalry as something which they should try to follow. Men who believed and sometimes acted thus were different from their ancestors who had led the barbarian invasions of the Viking raids.

Barons and Knights

The lord of the manor held the village but did not own it, but held it because he served another lord who had handed it over to him. When he received his land from this other lord, the lord of the manor came and swore to serve the lord who was giving him the land by fighting for him. This ceremony was called doing homage and swearing fealty. In return, the greater lord promised to protect the lord of the manor. The greater one was called the lord of the smaller one, and the smaller one was the vassal of the greater one. Land held on these conditions was known as a fief. In the same way, the greater lord himself might be the vassal of a still more powerful lord, and so it could go on until somebody was the vassal of the king. So everyone was the vassal of somebody else; even some kings were vassals of others.

Vassals paid for their fiefs, not only by fighting in person for their lords but by bringing properly equipped horsemen, or knights, with them. Bishops and abbots who held land, usually from the king, were not forced to fight, but they did pay the fair number of knights just like anyone else, because no king could afford to do without all the soldiers which the lands could support.

The number of knights which each lord owned would depend on how much land he held and what he had agreed with his own lord. A very small lord might be expected to bring only one knight – himself. There was a time limit on the service vassals owned each year. In England this was forty days. If the king wanted to keep his vassals in the army for a longer period, he was entitled to do so, but he had to pay them.

This system of holding land by military service is called feudalism. In practice it means that the king could call up his vassals, who would bring their vassals, who would bring their vassals, and so on, until there was a knight for every manor in the country. But usually the king would not want all of his knights in the army at the same time. When they were not with the army, these knights ruled their manors and kept order in the country. Although only one knight from each manor doesn't seem like much, but the knights were not foot soldiers, of which there were many more. Knights were very special and expensive soldiers. They wore full armor and were mounted. The armor became more elaborate as the Middle Ages progressed. Mail was gradually replaced by cunningly forged plates of steel, which became even more expensive. Then the horses had to be specially strong and fierce. There had to be servants to look after the knight, his armor, weapons and horse. And they, too, needed horses. There had to be tents erected at times, and food prepared. It follows that men had to be fairly well off to be able to afford to be a knight. Only a very great lord, or the king himself, would be rich enough to keep knights in his household as a guard. Though there were far more soldiers of other sorts in medieval armies, the knights were always thought to be far more important than the other troops.

The outcome of a battle depended on these heavy steel warriors and their fearful charges. The men who ruled the battlefields in war are the villages in peace were, in addition to the churchmen, the most important set of people in medieval Europe. They had different titles, according to their importance, working downwards from the king himself, there were dukes, marquises, earls and counts, barons and knights. All those above the rank of knight are sometimes grouped together as lords or barons, but great or small, they all belonged to the feudal ruling class.

In war, the important thing was the lord that a man followed, not the nation to which he belonged. A French knight or baron thought of himself as being the same sort of man as a German or English or Spanish or Italian knight or baron. In battle, these men would capture one another, and the prisoners would be held to ransom, being treated all the time as honored guests. Sometimes a captive knight would even be released in order to raise his ransom money, or if he were ill or wounded, after promising to return to captivity if he failed to find the money or when he had recovered; gentlemen could be trusted to keep their word. Common soldiers were simply slaughtered.

Knights and barons married one another's daughter, after careful discussions about how much dowry the bride would bring her husband. They never intermarried with peasants and townsmen, unless, perhaps, a townsman was very rich indeed. And if for some reason he were to be executed, he would be beheaded with a sword or axe, though hanging was good enough for ordinary criminals.

Barons and knights normally had two main interests – warfare and land. If they were good at war, they would get more land, either by conquering it or as a reward from their king. The more land they had, the more vassals they had and the stronger they were for war. Everyone who could manage it has his own castle. Many were small, but a great lord might build a spectacular fortress/palace like Warwick Castle. In lands where there was no strong king, enormous numbers of castles can still be seen. In the part of the

rheinland, there is a castle on almost every hilltop. The other main way of getting land was through marriage. If a vassal died before his children had grown up, his lord had to look after them and their land until they were old enough to do it themselves. If the dead man had left only daughter to inherit his lands, there was usually a rush to marry them. It was the duty of the lord who was their guardian to look after them properly, and to see that they were suitably married. But it was tempting to a guardian to make a profit, and sometimes he would marry off an heiress to the highest bidder. There was little romance about marriage among knights and barons; it was simply a serious matter of business. A family which made a few fortunate marriages could become very powerful indeed.

If a family died out completely, its fiefs went back to the lord, and he could either give them to someone else or keep them in his own hands. In all this there was one very big disadvantage from the king's point of view. Who really controlled the knights? Some of the great lords had so many vassals that a few of them, if they could rely on the loyalty of their vassals, might be strong enough to quarrel with the king and win. In fact, this happened fairly often in most of the kingdoms of Europe and England. Originally, the term "baron/baroness" was used for a tenant-in-chief, one who held his land direct from the sovereign.

Lords

As far as his religious life was concerned, every peasant belonged to a parish, and had to attend the parish church to help pay for it and the priest. For ordinary, everyday things, for his life and work in this world, the peasant belonged to a manor and had to obey the lord of the manor. Sometimes there might be two small villages in one parish or two parishes in one village. There could be as many as three manors in one village or vice versa. Usually, only one manor covered one village.

The lord of the manor was supposed to hold all the land in the manor and the peasants had to pay him for whatever land they worked on. Rather than money, they paid by working for the lord during part of each week and by giving him some of their crops and animals. Many of these villagers were serfs; they were not allowed to leave the manor without the lord's permission and he could bring them back and punish them if they ran away. On the other hand, as long as the villagers paid their dues, the lord could not throw them off their pieces of land. Also, it was the lord's duty to protect his people, in war and in peace.

The lord usually lived in a large house or castle where he would hold the manor court. If there were any disputes between villagers, for instance, about how many animals a man could put out to graze on the common field, he would settle them according to what seemed the usual custom of the manor. If a villager had done anything wrong, the lord could punish him, probably with a fine. The right to hang wrongdoers was mostly reserved for the courts of the king or the most important lords. The size of the lord's house or castle would depend on his wealth. A rich lord might have several manors and a castle, usually leaving bailiffs to run his other manors.

Many a lord made himself unpopular by his pride and greed. In a newly conquered country, like England after 1066, there were bitter feelings against the new masters, with their strange ways and foreign speech. All over England the Normans built castles of earth and wood, which were quick to build and quite strong. When life was more settled and the lords had time and wealth to spare, they often replaced their motte-and-bailey castles by stone buildings. But, even if the peasants seemed friendly and loyal, there might be a danger to some lords, especially strong ones who were greedy. It was easy for a powerful lord to invent some claim to the lands of a weaker neighbor, and unless he feared the king or the king's sheriff, he might try to grab what he claimed by force.

There was a danger to lords of rear war. Rival heirs might fight for the crown, and begin a civil war. When this happened in England in the early 12th century between Stephen and Matilda, it was not safe to be without a stronghold. Many castles were built then. The next king, Henry II, was strong and realized that castles might easily be held against the king's men if there were a rebellion, so he had many of them destroyed. A lord had to ask the king's permission before he could crenelate (put battlements on his house). There was also a danger from other kingdoms. An army or raiding party could cross the border long before the king or any of his great nobles could bring men to stop them. Looting and burning were common. So anyone within striking distance of an unfriendly kingdom would try to have a strong house. On the Anglo-Scottish border, during the 14th and 15th centuries, church towers were built. Even churchmen felt that they needed such defense against the borderland peoples.

Although lords were adamant about protecting their turf and charges, and often were subjected to

threats from both within and without their realms, much of the time everything would be quiet. Many of the most famous castles never saw any serious fighting at all. But because of his duties as protector of those under his control as well as his own interests, he had to be ready for trouble.

~ ~ ~

Early Knights of the Garter
in the Reigns of Kings Edward III & Richard II

Reign of Edward III: Founders

King Edward III
Henry of Grosmont, Earl of Derby (later Duke of Lancaster)
Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick
Jean de Grailly, Captal de Buch
Ralph Stafford, Baron Stafford (later Earl of Stafford)
William Montagu, Earl of Salisbury
Roger Mortimer, Baron Mortimer (later Earl of March)
John Lisle, Baron Lisle of Rougemont
Bartholomew Burghersh (later Baron Burghersh)
Sir John Beauchamp (later Lord Beauchamp of Warwick)
John de Mohun, Baron Mohun of Dunster
Hugh Courtenay, Baron Courtenay
Sir Thomas Holland (later Earl of Kent)
John Grey, Baron Grey of Rotherfield
Sir Richard FitzSimon
Sir Miles Stapleton
Sir Thomas Wale
Sir Hugh Wrottesley
Sir Neil Loryng
Sir John Chandos
sir James Audley
Sir Otes Holland
Sir Henry d'Enne
Sir Sanchet d'Abridgecourt
Sir Walter Paveley

Reign of Edward III: Successive Knights

Sir William FitzWarin (said to be Baron FitzWarin of Wantage)
Robert Ufford, Earl of Suffolk
William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton
Reynold Cobham, Baron Cobham of Sterborough
Sir Richard la Vache
Thomas Ughtred, Baron Ughtred
Walter de Mauny, Baron de Mauny
Sir Francis van Halle
Sir Thomas Ufford
Prince Lionel of Antwerp, Earl of Ulster (later Duke of Clarence)

Prince John of Gaunt, Earl of Richmond (later Duke of Lancaster)
Prince Edmund Langley, Earl of Cambridge (later Duke of York)
Edward le Despenser, Baron Despenser
Sir John Sully
William Latimer, Baron Latimer
Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford
Enguerrand de Coucy, Earl of Bedford
John Neville, Baron Neville of Raby
Sir Robert de Namur, Seigneur de Beaufort-sur-Meuse
John Hastings, Earl of Pembroke
Thomas Grandisson, Baron Grandisson
Guy de Bryan, Baron Bryan
Sir Guichard d'Angle (later Earl of Huntingdon)
Sir Alan Buxhull
Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick
John IV, Duke of Brittany, Earl of Richmond
Sir Thomas Banastre
William Ufford, Earl of Suffolk
Hugh Stafford, Earl of Stafford
Sir Thomas Holland (later Earl of Kent)
Sir Thomas Percy (later Earl of Worcester)
Sir William Beauchamp (later Baron Beauchamp of Abergavenny)
Richard, Prince of Wales (later King Richard II)
Prince Henry Bolingbroke (later King Henry IV)

Reign of Richard II

Sir John Burley
Sir Lewis Clifford
Bermond Arnaud de Peissac
Prince Thomas of Woodstock, Earl of Buckingham (later Duke of Gloucester)
Sir Thomas Felton
Sir John Holland (later Duke of Exeter)
Sir Simon Burley
Sir Bryan Stapleton
Sir Richard Burley
Thomas Mowbray, Earl of Nottingham (later Duke of Norfolk)
Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford (later Duke of Ireland)
Richard FitzAlan, Earl of Arundel
Sir Nicholas Samesfield
Edward, Earl of Rutland (later Duke of York)
Sir Henry Percy
John Devereux, Baron Devereux
Sir Peter Courtenay
Sir Thomas le Despenser, Baron Despenser (later Earl of Gloucester)
William, Duke of Guelders & Juliers
William, Count of Ostrevant (later Count of Hainault, Duke of Bavaria)
John Bouchier, Baron Bouchier
John Beaumont, Baron Beaumont
Sir William le Scrope (later Earl of Wiltshire)
Sir William Arundel
Sir John Beaufort (later Earl of Somerset, Marquis of Dorset)
Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent (later Duke of Surrey)
John Montacute, Earl of Salisbury

Albert, Count of Hainault, Duke of Bavaria
Sir Simon Felbrigge
Sir Philip la Vache

~ ~ ~

Medieval Beginnings of Sheriffs

The office of sheriff was a development that began over 1000 years ago in England, simultaneously with the development of the local form of government that allowed early English people to be divided into smaller units subject to the considerations of a national interest and central authority of the king. The formation of the units was crucial to the central authority because the population was scattered and Saxon kings had no large standing armies, a centralized court system, or the ability to finance a government appropriately. The small unit management therefore became crucial to a national development of government.

In about the seventh century, groups were formed into “tuns” (later called towns), which were the basic unit of smaller society. Groups of ten families of freeholders or frank-pledges formed units called tens or tithings. The frank-pledges were persons that had to pledge surety to the sovereign against any infractions of good behavior for the benefit of the collective good of the group. Groups of ten tithing became an administrative unit known as a “hundred.” Each hundred was responsible for the defaults of the individual freeholders or frank-pledges. The collective liability of the group made for a corporate form of government.

The social groups of these hundreds became useful for census and resource assessment. The hundreds became the basic unit of tax appropriation for the Crown and they provided for much of the development of English common law. The hundreds existed until the nineteenth century, when a more modern form of assessment and census taking developed. Indefinite numbers of hundreds existed throughout early English history.

Collectively, the hundreds formed into geographically based divisions known by the Anglo-Saxon word “scir,” which means, “a piece shorn off.” The word scir later became shire. Shires were originally not much more than forest clearings identified roughly by existing natural landmarks that formed their boundaries. The shires have appeared on crudely drawn maps and have been written about in English literature for more than ten centuries. Until 1972, there were forty-two such units in England, with twenty-four of them bearing the suffix *shire*. The earliest of these units to be so designated were Hampshire, Wiltshire, and Berkshire. In the year 871, King Alfred “shired” his entire kingdom in order to compile the units into a unified defense against the intrusion of the Danes.

While these shires were in the developmental and refinement stage, a custodian was chosen by the fellow members of the hundreds to be their “gerefa” or guardian. Later this title was to become known as “reeve.” The combination of the unit known as scir or shire and the administrative title of reeve would eventually develop into the word “sheriff.” With the exception of king, no English institution is older than this office. The earliest mention of a position somewhat like a sheriff was in the 970s during the reign of King Edgar.

In order to receive protection from attacks of neighboring communities, the peasants had to pay an excise to the king to finance protective armies. . . . In order to collect payments from the peasants, a reeve was appointed by the king to collect his recompense. The reeve had full authority from the Crown to force peasants to pay their due as well as having full administrative power over the shire. He could supervise the lives of the peasants and manage their daily existence in order to insure proper productivity from the land, thereby, insuring adequate payment to the king.

The administrative service of the reeve transformed from a resource producing capacity to a position that involved community management. The reeve could enforce standards and customs of the community and he had total authority to enforce the “kings peace.” . . . If the peace was not kept, or if order was not maintained by the reeve, he could assess penalties to the violators. Monetary levies could be made ranging from a man’s “wergild,” or price of his life, to lesser corporal punishments for minor violations.

Portions of the fines collected were given to the victims, or the victims's family, after the king was given his due by the reeve. The assessments varied from shire to shire and by the demeanor and character of the reeve.

As the administration of the shires became more complex the reeves had less time to attend to their personal farming. Because of this, the reeves were excused from royal taxes in exchange for their administrative duties. They were also given the choice acreage for their use, and a greater portion of the land was given to the reeves than to peasants without status. Eventually, reeves were allowed to keep portions of the tax they collected as compensation. This was exclusive of the riches they were already skimming off the top for themselves before they remitted to the monarchy. There would have been little ability for the crown to keep track of the assessments, given the exclusive authority of the reeves. Generally, the monarchy was happy with what they received and were able to enjoy the financial benefits of the shires without the tiresome responsibility of tax collection and population management.

Some reeves specifically in charge of royal properties were known as "wic" or "port" reeves. They were distinguished from the reeves known as "tungerfan" reeves, who managed king's private estates. The wic reeve in charge of the fortified areas where the king and his family resided was not a peasant but a gentry member and a landowner in his own right. This upper class reeve was known as the "King's Reeve" or "High Reeve" and he was on the upper side of the social scale and part of the aristocracy.

As the scope of the monarchy grew with increased sophistication and became more complex, so too did the status of the king's reeves. The High Reeve shared managerial responsibility for the shire's administration with an ealdorman and the bishop. The ealdorman was in charge of the king's military and spent much of his time away fighting the king's battles. The bishop's responsibility was to attend to the king's personal needs. Consequently, the High Reeve had most of the day-to-day administrative responsibilities for the maintenance of the shires. It was the High Reeve that dealt directly with the people and became a permanent link between them and the Crown. The High Reeve had direct responsibility for fiscal matters and for police duties.

The High Reeve's police responsibility was to preserve the king's peace. He had authority to raise the "hue and cry" for the pursuit of thieves and other criminals. The hue and cry was a form of posse, in which once the shout was sounded that a crime such as robbery, theft, assault, or murder was committed; all that heard it were obligated and bound by honor to join the pursuit until the scoundrel was captured or the reeve called off the search. The first recorded involvement of the reeve in this law enforcement process was first chronicled in the tenth century, when King Aethelstan proclaimed: "Each reeve is to help the next for the sake of peace of all, on pain of fine for disobedience to the king."

The most difficult of the reeve's duties was his judicial responsibilities. The king garnered considerable revenue from the fines imposed for breaking the peace. The Church too sought to preserve the peace by ruling against any form of trade on Sundays. The enforcement of Church laws was also the obligation of the reeve. The reeve had total authority over the Hundred Courts, which were held monthly. Because there were many hundreds in the shire the reeve delegated judicial responsibility to a bailiff, whom he appointed to preside over legal concerns. The courts ruled on issues of civil law as well as criminal matters. It was not uncommon for the courts to hear social gossip, business transactions, and land grants. Because the fine process brought enhancement to the king's treasury and the collection of fines ingratiated the reeve to the king, it became quite a litigious society. [*The History of the Office of Sheriff*, by Harry C. Buffardi, *Schenectady County Sheriff, 1998*]

~ ~ ~

Ranks and Title in England

The ordinary ranking of the English Court, disregarding various offices, patents, or orders of knighthood is as follows:

Men	Women
Duke	Duchess
Marquis (MAR-kwis)	Marchioness (MAR-shon-ess)
Earl	Countess
Viscount (vEYE-count)	Viscountess (vEYE-count-ess)
Baron	Baroness
Knight	Knight's lady

Royalty refers only to the monarch and his/her immediate family.

Nobility refers to peers and their families.

The peers are barons and above, and sit by right in the House of Lords.

Gentry refers to anyone gentle but untitled, usually descended from nobility.

Knights are not noble. They are knightly. Knights and peers' sons may sit, by election or appointment, in the House of Commons.

An ordinary, undifferentiated knight is a Knight Bachelor.

Knight Banneret is an honour conferred on a man who distinguished himself on the battlefield in front of his monarch. It is a battlefield promotion which permits him to cut the tails off his pennon (making it a banner) and permits/requires him to lead a company of his own men under it. In Elizabeth's reign, there are only three, including Sir Ralph Sadler.

Knights of the Garter outrank all the other knights.

NOTE: The rank of Baronet (an hereditary knighthood) does not exist until James I invents it as a money-making scheme.

In 1558, there were no more than about 600 knights in the country.

Minors and women holding rank in their own right may not sit in the House of Lords. Minors must wait till they are old enough. A woman may send her eldest son "in her right," when he comes of age.

Certain ecclesiastical titles are also ranked with the peers. Bishops have a rank equal to that of an Earl. Archbishops rank with the Dukes, and are addressed as Your Grace.

The Queen has little use for Churchmen, however, and seldom invites them 'round to dine.

The Senior Peers of England

This is just a very simple table, and it doesn't include the barons or bishops.

The creation date shown is when this branch of the family came into the senior (current) title. For

example, 1550 is the year John Russell became Earl of Bedford.

Notice that Northampton has to die (without heirs) in 1572 before Hereford can become the Earl of Essex.

Viscounts do not have secondary titles. Modernly, an earl's second title is a viscount. In period it is almost always a barony.

Codes: VC = Viscount E. = Earl B. = Baron

Title	Created	Surname	Secondary Title
<i>Dukes</i>			
Norfolk	1483	Howard	Surrey
<i>Marquises</i>			
Northampton	1547	Parr	E. Essex
Winchester	1551	Paulet	E. Wiltshire, B. St. John
<i>Earls</i>			
Arundel	1137	FitzAlan	Maltravers
Oxford	1142	deVere	Vere
Northumberland	1377	Percy	Percy
Westmoreland	1397	Neville	Neville of Raby
Shrewsbury	1442	Talbot	Furnival
Kent	1465	Grey de Ruthen	Grey
Derby	1485	Stanley	Strange
Worcester	1514	Somerset	Somerset
Rutland	1525	Manners	Roos
Cumberland	1525	Clifford	Clifford
Sussex	1529	Radcliffe	VC Fitzwalter, B Fitzwalter
Huntington	1529	Hastings	Hastings
Bath	1536	Bourchier	Fitzwarrin
Warwick	1547	Dudley	Lisle
Southampton	1547	Wriothesley	Wriothesley of Titchfield
Bedford	1550	Russell	Russell of Cheynies
Pembroke	1558	Herbert	Herbert
Hertford	1558	Seymour	Beauchamp

Leicester	1564	Dudley	Denbigh
Essex	1572	Devereaux	VC Hereford, B Ferrers
Lincoln	1572	Fiennes	Clinton
Nottingham	1597	Howard	Howard of Effingham
<i>Viscounts</i>			
Montague	1554	Browne	
Bindon	1559	Howard	

~ ~ ~

Scale of General Precedence in Scotland

The Sovereign

The Lord High Commissioner to the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland during the sitting of the General Assembly.

Duke of Rothesay.

Younger Sons of the Sovereign.

Grandsons of the Sovereign.

Brothers of the Sovereign.

Uncles of the Sovereign.

Nephews of the Sovereign.

Lord-Lieutenants of Counties.

Lord Provosts of Cities being *ex officio* Lord-Lieutenants of those Cities.

Sheriff Principal

during their terms of office, and within the bounds of their respective Sheriffdoms shall have precedence next after the Royal Family and the Lord High Commissioner. Every Lord-Lieutenant of a County and every Lord-Lieutenant of a County of a City during his term of office, and within the limits of his jurisdiction, shall have precedence before the Sheriff Principal having concurrent jurisdiction.

The Lord Chancellor of Great Britain.

The Moderator of the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland during his term of office.

The Keeper of the Great Seal of Scotland (The First Minister).

The Presiding Officer.

The Secretary of State for Scotland.

The Hereditary High Constable of Scotland.

The Hereditary Master of the Household in Scotland.

Dukes of England.
Dukes of Scotland.
Dukes of Great Britain.
Dukes of the United Kingdom & Dukes of Ireland created since the Union of Great Britain & Ireland.
Eldest Sons of Dukes of Blood Royal.
Marquesses of England.
Marquesses of Scotland.
Marquesses of Great Britain.
Marquesses of United Kingdom & Marquesses of Ireland created since the Union of Great Britain & Ireland.
Eldest Sons of Dukes.
Earls of England.
Earls of Scotland.
Earls of Great Britain.
Earls of United Kingdom & Earls of Ireland created since the Union of Great Britain & Ireland.
Younger Sons of Dukes of Blood Royal.
Eldest Sons of Marquesses.
Younger Sons of Dukes.
The Lord Justice-General.
The Lord Clerk Register.
The Lord Advocate.
The Advocate General.
The Lord Justice-Clerk.
Viscounts of England.
Viscounts of Scotland.
Viscounts of Great Britain.
Viscounts of the United Kingdom & Viscounts of Ireland created since the Union of Great Britain & Ireland.
Eldest Sons of Earls.
Younger Sons of Marquesses.
Barons of England.
Barons of Scotland.
Barons of Great Britain.
Barons of United Kingdom & Barons of Ireland created since the Union of Great Britain & Ireland.
Eldest Sons of Viscounts.
Younger Sons of Earls.
Eldest Sons of Barons.
Knights of the Garter.

Knights of the Thistle.
Privy Councillors.
Senators of the College of Justice (Lords of Session).
Younger Sons of Viscounts.
Younger Sons of Barons.
Sons of Law Life Peers.
Baronets.
Knights of St. Patrick.
Knights Grand Cross of the Order of the Bath.
Knights Grand Commanders of the Order of the Star of India.
Knights Grand Cross of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.
Knights Grand Commanders of the Order of the Indian Empire.
Knights Grand Cross of the Royal Victorian Order.
Knights Commanders of the Order of the Bath.
Knights Commanders of the Order of the Star of India.
Knights Commanders of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.
Knights Commanders of the Order of the Indian Empire.
Knights Commanders of the Royal Victorian Order.
Solicitor-General for Scotland.
Lyon King of Arms.
Sheriffs Principal.
Knights Bachelor.
Sheriffs.
Commanders of the Royal Victorian Order.
Companions of the Order of the Bath.
Companions of the Order of the Star of India.
Companions of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.
Companions of the Order of the Indian Empire.
Members of the Fourth Class of the Royal Victorian Order.
Companions of the Distinguished Service Order.
Eldest Sons of Younger Sons of Peers.
Eldest Sons of Baronets.
Eldest Sons of Knights of the Garter, of the Thistle, and of St. Patrick.
Eldest Sons of Knights.
Members of the Fifth Class of the Royal Victorian Order.
Younger Sons of Baronets.
Younger Sons of Knights.
Queen's Counsel.
Esquires.
Gentlemen.

Scale of Precedence for Ladies in Scotland

The Queen.
Daughters of the Sovereign.
Wives of Younger Sons of the Sovereign.
Granddaughters of the Sovereign.
Wives of Grandsons of the Sovereign.
Sisters of the Sovereign.
Wives of Brothers of the Sovereign.
Aunts of the Sovereign.
Wives of Uncles of the Sovereign.
Nieces of the Sovereign.
Wives of Nephews of the Sovereign.
Duchesses in the rank of their Husbands, viz: Duchesses of England.
Duchesses of Scotland.
Duchesses of Great Britain.
Duchesses of the United Kingdom and Duchesses of Ireland of titles created since the Union of
Great Britain and Ireland.
Wives of Eldest Sons of Dukes of Blood Royal.
Marchionesses in the rank of their Husbands, viz:
Marchionesses of England.
Marchionesses of Scotland.
Marchionesses of Great Britain.
Marchionesses of the United Kingdom and Marchionesses of Ireland of titles created since the
Union of Great Britain and Ireland.
Wives of Eldest Sons of Dukes.
Daughters of Dukes.
Countesses in the rank of their Husbands, viz:
Countesses of England.
Countesses of Scotland.
Countesses of Great Britain.
Countesses of the United Kingdom and Countesses of Ireland of titles created since the Union of
Great Britain and Ireland.
Wives of Younger Sons of Dukes of Blood Royal.
Wives of Eldest Sons of Marquesses.
Daughters of Marquesses.
Wives of Younger Sons of Dukes.
Viscountesses in the rank of their Husbands, viz:
Viscountesses of England.

Viscountesses of Scotland.

Viscountesses of Great Britain.

Viscountesses of the United Kingdom and Viscountesses of Ireland of titles created since the
Union of Great Britain and Ireland.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Earls.

Daughters of Earls.

Wives of Younger Sons of Marquesses.

Baronesses in the rank of their Husbands, viz:

Baronesses of England.

Baronesses of Scotland.

Baronesses of Great Britain.

Baronesses of the United Kingdom and Baronesses of Ireland of titles created since the Union of
Great Britain and Ireland.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Viscounts.

Daughters of Viscounts.

Wives of Younger Sons of Earls.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Barons.

Daughters of Barons.

Maids of Honour of the Queen.

Wives of Knights of the Garter.

Wives of Knights of the Thistle.

Wives of Younger Sons of Viscounts.

Wives of Younger Sons of Barons.

Daughters of Law Peers (Lords of Appeal in Ordinary).

Wives of Sons of Law Life Peers (Lords of Appeal in Ordinary).

Wives of Baronets.

Wives of Knights of St. Patrick.

Wives of Knights Grand Cross of the Order of the Bath.

Wives of Knights Grand Commanders of the Order of the Star of India.

Wives of Knights Grand Cross of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.

Wives of Knights Grand Commanders of the Order of the Indian Empire.

Wives of Knights Grand Cross of the Royal Victorian Order.

Wives of Knights Commanders of the Order of the Bath.

Wives of Knights Commanders of the Order of the Star of India.

Wives of Knights Commanders of the Order of St Michael and St. George.

Wives of Knights Commanders of the Order of the Indian Empire.

Wives of Knights Commanders of the Royal Victorian Order.

Wives of Knights Bachelor and Wives of Senators of the College of Justice (Lords of Session).

Taking precedence among themselves according to the date of their husbands' creation as Knights or appointment as Senators of the College of Justice respectively.

Wives of Commanders of the Royal Victorian Order.

Wives of Companions of the Order of the Bath.

Wives of Companions of the Order of the Star of India.

Wives of Companions of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.

Wives of Companions of the Order of the Indian Empire.

Wives of Members of the Fourth Class of the Royal Victorian Order.

Wives of Companions of the Distinguished Service Order.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Younger Sons of Peers.

Daughters of Younger Sons of Peers.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Baronets.

Daughters of Baronets.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Knights of the Garter, of the Thistle, and of St. Patrick.

Wives of Eldest Sons of Knights.

Daughters of Knights.

Wives of Members of the Fifth Class of the Royal Victorian Order.

Wives of Younger Sons of Baronets.

Wives of Younger Sons of Knights.

Wives of Esquires.

Wives of Gentlemen.

~ ~ ~

French Titles of Nobility

The status of nobility was thus a personal quality, inherited or acquired. Titles of nobility were a rank attached to certain pieces of land. The two (nobility and titles) are therefore separate, although nobility was a pre-condition for bearing a title of nobility. This explains, in particular, why so many noble families were untitled (see below).

Historically, titles went through three phases.

They were originally (6th to 12th century) offices or functions which became (a) hereditary and (b) attached to the ownership of specific pieces of land;

later (13th - 18th century) they were a special status attached by the king to specific pieces of land, inheritable along with the land subject to certain rules;

finally (19th- 20th century) titles became simply hereditary appendages of the family name.

1. Titles as offices (6th -12th century)

The origin of modern titles like duke, marquis, count lie in public offices held under Merovingian kings (6th -8th century).

A duke (Latin *dux*, literally "leader") was the governor of a province, usually a military leader.

A count (Latin *comes*, literally "companion") was an appointee of the king governing a city and its immediate surroundings, or else a high-ranking official in the king's immediate entourage (the latter called "palace counts" or "counts Palatine").

A marquis was a count who was also the governor of a "march", a region at the boundaries of the kingdom that needed particular protection against foreign incursions (margrave in German).

A viscount was the lieutenant of a count, either when the count was too busy to stay at home, or when the county was held by the king himself

A baron (a later title) was originally a direct vassal of the king, or of a major feudal lord like a duke or a count

A castellan (*châtelain*) was the commander in charge of a castle. A few castellanies survived with the title of "sire".

These offices became hereditary and attached to land over the course of time. The connection to land came both from the fact that these offices corresponded to regional units of administration, but also because kings, rather than pay their officers' salary in cash, paid them by giving them pieces of land, whose income was to represent the officer's wages. Although appointments were initially for life at the longest, both the land endowment (the "benefice") and the office itself became hereditary.

In the later part of this period (9th-12th century), the feudal system emerged, which brought a coherent system by establishing contractual relationships between all members of society, from the king down to the peasant. The holders of offices were naturally integrated in these chains of relationships, being vassals of the king or another great lord (who owed them protection and to whom they owed loyalty and support). They, in turn, were able to create their own vassals, by "infeoffing" land in their jurisdiction to others who became their vassals. Hence the origin of baronies and lordships.

The French kings were successful in reuniting the country and asserting their central authority to the detriment of the great dukes and counts. As a result, the governmental powers which had been lost to them over time were brought back again in the hands of the king. It became accepted that such powers as titled nobles did hold came ultimately from the king himself. Over time, by a combination of marriages, purchases and confiscations, the king of France managed to unite with the crown virtually all the ancient titles of duke, marquis and count. This process was pretty much complete by the 16th century, so that, with a handful of exceptions, titles of duke, marquis, count, or viscounts in existence after 1600 are created rather than feudal in origin.

A few feudal titles of viscount, baron and vidame made it down past 1500. Here are a few examples, with the names of the families that owned them:

counties:

Nevers (with Rethel and the baronny of Donzy): passed to Courtenay 1192, Bourgogne 1266, Flanders 1280, raised to a peerage 1347, 1459, 1464, 1515; Bourgogne 1385, Clèves 1491, raised to a duchy-peerage 1539; passed to Gonzague 1601; sold to Mazarin 1659; raised to a duchy-peerage 1660

Tonnerre (Bourgogne): to Bourgogne, to Châlon 1346, to Husson 1453, to Clermont 1540, raised to a duchy-peerage 1572, sold 1684 to Louvois

Saint-Pol (Artois): to Châtillon 1219, to Luxembourg 1371, to Bourbon 1495, to Longueville

1601, sold to Elisabeth de Lorraine-Lillebonne, princess of Epinoy; passed on the death of her son in 1724 to

his sister, princesse de Soubise

Vendôme: to Bourbon 1412, not united to the crown when Henri IV acceded but given by him to his mistress Gabrielle d'Estrées and her issue, extinct 1712, at which time it went to the crown

Armagnac: to Alençon 1497, to Albret 1549, united to the crown 1589 on the accession of Henri IV

Blois and Châteaudun/Dunois: sold to Louis d'Orléans 1397, united to the crown 1498 on the accession of Louis XII

Foix, Comminges: passed to Albret, then united to crown 1589

viscounties were common in particular areas like Limousin, Poitou and Gascogne.

Limoges (Limousin): to the Comborn family in the 12th century, the dukes of Brittany in 1301, to Châtillon-Blois family in 1384, to Albret in 1481, united to the crown in 1589

Turenne (Limousin): to Comborn in 10th century, to Comminges in 1335, sold in 1350 to Beaufort, to La Tour in 1490, sold to the crown in 1738

Comborn (Limousin): in the family of that name, to Pompadour in the 16th century, family extinct early 18th century

Ventadour (Limousin): raised to a county 1350, to a duchy 1578, to a duchy-peerage 1589; passed to Rohan-Rohan in 1727

Lavedan (Gascogne): late 15th century to Charles, bastard of Bourbon; to Gontaut in 1610; to Philippe de Montault, raised to a duchy in 1650

Narbonne: to Lara in 1193, sold 1447 to Foix, exchanged with the crown against Nemours in 1507

Thouars (Poitou): to Amboise, to La Trémoille 1446, raised to a duchy 1563, duchy-peerage 1595

Rohan (Bretagne): in the Rohan family, 1648 to the Rohan-Chabot family; raised to a duchy-peerage 1603, and again in 1648

numerous viscounties in Gascogne:

Couserans (to Comminges, Foix, Mauléon, Modave, Polignac)

Fézansaguet (to Armagnac 1140)

Gabardan

Gimois

Labourd

Magnoac

Maremnes

Marsan

Nébouzan

Quatre-Vallées

Soule

Tursan

vidames:

"sireries", which were lordships of high standing or castellanies:

Pons (Saintonge): to Albret de Miossans 16th century, to Lorraine afterwards

Mortagne (Saintonge): to Aulnay, Clermont, Montberon, Coetivy, Matignon, Loménie

Coucy: divided in 1397, part to Orléans (united to the crown 1498), part to Luxembourg, then Bourbon (united to the crown 1589)

Beaujeu (with Dombes): ceded 1400 to the duc de Bourbon

Craon: to La Trémoille

Sully: to La Trémoille, sold 1602 to Maximilien de Béthune, raised to a duchy-peerage 1606

~ ~ ~

Old Irish Kingdoms & Clans

Ulster

Ulster was an ancient province of northeast Ireland, named after one of its chief inhabitants, the Ulaid (Voluntii). Other early peoples included the Pictish tribe of the Robogdii, the Cruithin and the Darini. Later there were the Dal Riata, Dal nAraide and the Dal Fiatach. Ulster had its ancient capital at Emain Macha, near the modern city of Armagh.

Attacks from the midland kingdom of Mide led to Ulster's disintegration in the 4th and 5th centuries. The province subsequently split into the three kingdoms of Airgialla (in central Ulster), Aileach, (in western Ulster), and the kingdom of Ulaid (in eastern Ulster). By the 8th century the island's clans had grouped themselves into five provinces, of which Ulster under the Uí Néill dynasty was the leading one until the 11th century.

Norman adventurers from England, South Wales, and the European continent succeeded in establishing themselves in Ireland by the late-12th century, and in 1205 the English king, John Plantagenet, took control and created an earldom of Ulster.

Meanwhile, the O'Neills (of County Tyrone) and the O'Donnells (of County Tyrconnell) had become virtually supreme in much of Ulster. These two Roman Catholic clans were involved in a serious rebellion against Queen Elizabeth I from 1594 to 1601, caused in part by attempts to impose the English Reformation on the Irish. The failure of negotiations with James I led to the flight of the northern earls of Tyrone, Tyrconnell, and many others in 1607.

Source: various

Dal Fiatach and Dal nAraide

The Dal Fiatach who were also known as the Ulaid and the Dal nAraide also known as the Cruithne. Cruithne is also the name applied to the ancient Picts of Scotland. The Dal Fiatach and the Dal nAraide were constantly warring with one another over the rulership of their territory (in Ulster) with the Kingship falling into the hands of whichever one was the most powerful at the time. The portion of Dal Riata that remained in Ireland (County Antrim) allied themselves to the Dal nAraide, helping to make them more

powerful, while Cairpre Riata led the rest of his people across the water to the land of the

Picts.

Source: <http://www.dalriada.co.uk/history/kingdom.html>

Dal Riata

The earliest knowledge we have of them comes from when they were still in Ireland. At that time there were four septs or main families of the Erainn stock, who were considered to be a section of the original inhabitants of Eire. These four septs were named the Muscraige, Corco Duibne, Corce Baiscind and Dal Riata, who came from three sons of Conaire Mor called Cairpre Musc, Cairpre Baschain and Cairpre Riata. These four septs of the Erainn migrated from Breg in the north of Ireland to Munster in the south. No reason is given as to why they travelled south, although it is probable that their own family lands could no longer contain them.

Source: <http://www.dalriada.co.uk/history/kingdom.html>

Fir Manach

In Co Fermanagh, where the name Monaghan is numerous, the family are thought to be part of the original inhabitants of the area, the Fir Manach, from whom the county gets its name. Their base was in the district of Lurg. From here the Monaghan name migrated into the adjoining counties of Monaghan and Derry.

Source: <http://www.vretail.com/names8.htm>

Cineal Fógartaigh - (Kinelarty)

Kinelarty is from the Gaelic 'Cineál Fogartaígh', which translates 'followers of Fogartaígh'. Fogartaígh was, according to the annals, grandfather to Ártan and was alive in the year 950. The surname McCartan owes its origin to the Gaelic Mac Ártan which translates 'son of Ártan'. The annals record that Ártan died in 1004. An early Irish pedigree deposited in the National Library of Ireland traces this line further back in time to Rudricus Magnus, the 10th King of Ulster at Emáin Mácha (Navan Fort). Before the middle-ages McCartan Country included the Baronies of Kinelarty, Dufferin and about one quarter of Castlereagh - all in the County of Down. Parts of another adjoining barony, that of Iveagh, also came under their control for short periods.

Source: <http://dnausers.d-n-a.net/dnetcRrI/chron7.html>

Airgialla (Oriel)

The ancient kingdom of Airgialla was formed around AD 330. At one time, it included the southern parts of the modern counties of Tyrone and Derry, as well as much of Armagh, Monaghan and Fermanagh. With its royal site at Clogher, it included the Ui Thuitre, Ui Cremthainn, Ui Meith, Airthir, Mugdorna, Dairtre and Fir Rois tribes. Later the septs of the MacMahony, O'Hanlon, and O'Neill of the Fewes were prominent in this area.

The Anglo-Norman advance in the 13th century broke up Oriel, but Monaghan remained dominated by the MacMahons and lay outside the main area of Anglo-Norman influence. In 1589 a large area came under the English crown; in 1591 Monaghan was divided into estates between seven MacMahons and a McKenna and was not included in the later plantation of Ulster.

Source: various

Ui Cremthainne

The Ui Cremthainn, a branch of the Airgialla, named from a fifth-century ancestor was a sept held rule in two petty kingdoms, Fir Manach and Fernmag, corresponding very roughly to the counties of Fermanagh and Monaghan. In the 13th century, the Monaghan line, in the family of MacMathghamhna (MacMahon), held the superior authority with the title king of Oirghialla.

In the beginning of the 14th century, the headship of Fermanagh passes from other branches of their kin to the family of Mag Uidhir (Maguire). The numerous pedigrees which this family branched included MacMaghnusa (MacManus), MacGafraidh (MacCaffrey), MacGothraidh (Corry?), MacAmhlaimh (MacAuley) of Clanawley barony.

Collateral families of the Cremthainne sept are MacDomhnaill (MacDonnell) of Clann Cheallaigh (Clankelly barony), distinct from the Hebridean Mac Domhnaill family, Mac acute; Mhaighistir (MacMaster, Masterson)

of the sept of Fergus Cennfhota (Tirkennedy barony), MacAodha (Magee, Mac Hugh Hughes), Mac Giolla Fhinnéin (Mac a Linnéin) chiefs of Muinntir Pheodachain and for a time holding the kingship of Fir Manach. Source: <http://www.cris.com/~Maguire/GF1.html>

Erainn

The Belgic tribe of the Erainn lived in Munster prior to the arrival of the Milesian Gaels. Approximately 200 A.D. the Eoganachta under Mug Muadat, aka Eogan, began to colonize Munster arriving from Northern Iberia (or Southern Gaul?). The Erainn tribes then submitted to Eoganachta rule.

Source: <http://www-leland.stanford.edu/~meehan/sullivan/to200.html>

Decies

Native Gaelic peoples called the Deisi, who were very early driven from Tara, conquered and settled in the area now known as Co. Waterford. Originally referred to as Deise Muman, the area between the River Blackwater and the River Suir is still today called "The Decies."

Waterford city, of Norse foundation and an important port and centre of trade, was a bridgehead for the Anglo-Normans in the 12th century. The eastern part of the county came under the control of the Le Poers, or Powers, family, and the western part, called the Decies, came under a branch of the Fitzgeralds. The native Irish character of the population was never wholly obliterated; and in the west, near Dungarvan, Gaelic continued to be spoken into the 20th century.

Source: various

Deise

It is recorded that about the 3rd century A.D., a tribe called the Deise settled on the site where Dungarvan, County Waterford now stands. The area is still known as the Desies (Decies).

Source: <http://homepages.iol.ie/~wpdee/ire.htm>

Ciannachta

descendants of Cian, son of Ailill Olomm.

The septs included the Ciannachta, Gailenga, Luigni, Eile, ... Taig, son of Ciann, supported Cormac in his fight against Fergus for the high Kingship of Ireland. Fergus was overthrown at the battle of Crionna (on the Boyne) where Fergus and his two brothers were slain. For his aid, Taig was granted a large territory between Damlaig (Duleek) and the River Liffi, since then called the Ciannachta. He became the ancestor of the O'Hara's, O'Gara's, O'Carroll's, and other now Northern families.

Source: <http://www.vretail.com/history/History4.htm>

Éile

The Eile, the Iron Age tribal group from which the Ui Chearbhaill (O'Carroll) emerged, are immortalised in the ancient place name Bri Éile, now Croghan Hill in north County Offaly, and Moin Éile, the 'Notorious Red Bog of Ely' as Sir William Petty and his wary surveyors described it in 1657. Éile was a territory between Lough Derg on the river Shannon and the Slieve Bloom mountains. The territory consisted of Lower Ormond and the Ikerrin in north Tipperary together with Clanrisk and Ballybritt in south Offaly.

Source: <http://www.holy.demon.co.uk/chapt02.htm>

The Fiachach Eile (in north-east of Tipperary - Thurles and Roscrea) were descended from Deachluath, grandson of Eoghan Mor (ancestor of the Eoghanachta). Source: <http://acad.smumn.edu/uasal/eoghan.html>

Desmond

Desmond was an ancient territorial division of Ireland approximating the modern counties of Kerry and Cork. Gaelic Desmond extended over the modern County Kerry south of the River Maine and over the modern County Cork west and north of the city of Cork. Early peoples of the area included the Erainn, Corca Duibhne, Corca Loigde, Ui Fidgente, Obraigne, Ciarraige Luachra, and septs of the Eoganachta.

Anglo-Norman Desmond extended over north Kerry from the River Maine, over most of the modern county of Limerick, southwest Tipperary, east and south County Cork, and east Waterford. Desmond was MacCarthy territory from as early as A.D. 150. In 1329 Maurice Fitzgerald was created earl of Desmond, and his descendants became almost independent rulers during the 15th century.

Source: various

Corca Luighe (aka Corca Laoidhe or Loigde)

The Corca Luighe were a pre-Milesian race and the name Luighe was common among their early chiefs. One of those, Lughaidh Mac Con was Monarch of Ireland. According to the Book of Ballymote, Corca Luighe extended from Beann Finn westward to Tragumina and Lough Ine and from Beal Atha Buidhe to Tragh Claen at the rock.

Each tuath of Corca Luighe was governed by a taoiseach and beneath him were the hereditary leaders. Tuatha O Fitchellaigh and O Dunghalaigh merged in Clonakilty. O'Fehilly and O'Dunlea were the taoiseacha. Oglagh or Leaders are represented by names which still survive, i.e. Duggan, Keady, Eady, Anglin, Kennedy, Cagney, Hennessy, Leary, Dineen, Cronin, Hayes or O'Hea, Murray, Dulea, Coffey, Cowhig, Cullinane, Downey, Lahiffe, Shinnick, Deady and Muintir Oh Illigh or Hill. The O'Driscolls were the ruling race.

These races had been gradually pushed south of the Bandon river by the Eoghanachta of which the ruling families were the O'Mahony's and the O'Donoghues.

Source: <http://www.clon.ie/text/system/clehis1.html>

Eoghanacht

The descendants of Eoghan Mór, son of Aillil Olumm (Oilill Olum).

The Eóghanacht Dynasties include the septs of the Eóghanacht Locha Lein, Eóghanacht Maige, Eóghanacht Raithlind, Eóghanacht Airthir Chliach, Eóghanacht Glendamnach, Eóghanacht Chaisil, Eóghanacht Aine, Ui Fidgeintí, Ui Liathain, Ui Maic, Ui Echach Muman, Ui Corpri.

Sources: <http://acad.smumn.edu/uasal/gencharts/chart01.gif>

<http://acad.smumn.edu/uasal/eoghan.html>

Oilill Olum became King of Munster and, as head of both the Eberian and Ithian tribes he became the first true King of the whole province. Thereafter the Kingship of Munster was handed down in Oilill Olum's family. Oilill willed, and his will was observed for many centuries, that the crown of Munster should henceforth alternate between the descendants of his two eldest sons, Eogan Mor and Cormac Cas. The MacCarthys are descended from Eogan Mor and the O'Briens are descended from Cormac Cas. The O'Carrolls are descended from Oilill Olum's youngest son Ciann and his son Taig.

Source: <http://www.holy.demon.co.uk/chapt01.htm>

The MacCarthys, the O'Sullivans and the O'Callaghans, all of Eoghanacht Caisil stock, migrated southwards into Counties Cork and Kerry in pre-Norman times, ousted from their original lands in Counties Tipperary and Limerick by the aggression of the Dál Cais. From longer established tribal groupings in County Cork, such as the Corca Laidhe, the Muscraige and the Eoghanachts of the Cork region, emerged such family names as O'Driscoll, O'Leary, Cronin; Murphy; O'Mahony and O'Keefe, respectively.

Source: <http://homepages.iol.ie/~irishrts/CorkNames.html>

The Eoghanachta ruling families were the O'Mahony's and the O'Donoghues. Other names have descended in the form of Spillane, O'Neill, Long, Flynn, Keating, Ring, Canty, Mehigan, Dillon, Healy, Slattery, Coghlan, Cahalane, Canniffe, Heenigan, Flahive, Hurley, Wholey, Kearney, etc.
Source: <http://www.clon.ie/text/system/clehis1.html>

Corcu Duibhne

The name comes from Corc, a son of Cairbre Musc and his sister Dubinn. As early as the 6th century, the Corcu Duibne, a kin group which was to later branch into the O'Shea, O'Falvey, and O'Connell families, had become well established on the Dingle and Iveragh peninsulas in the west of what is now County Kerry. The Uí Séaghdha, Uí Failbhe, and the Uí Conaill septs branched out from the Corcu Duibne in the 10th century.

Source: <http://acad.smumn.edu/uasal/CorcDuib.html>

Thomond

Early people of Thomond included the Corca Baiscind, Uaithne, Corca Mruad and the Dal gCais. The Norse, who sacked the early settlement of Limerick in 812, made it the principal town of their kingdom; they were expelled at the end of the 10th century by the Irish hero Brian Boru. From 1106 to 1174 it was the seat of the kings of Thomond, or North Munster.

County Clare was part of Thomond, or North Munster, of which the O'Briens remained lords until the 16th century, despite the Anglo-Norman colonization in the 12th century. Clare was made a shire in the reign of Elizabeth I. In 1828 Daniel O'Connell won the election in Clare that led to the emancipation of Catholics in Ireland.

County Kerry was divided in 1127 between the O'Brien kingdom of Thomond, or North Munster, and the MacCarthy kingdom of Desmond, or South Munster.

Source: various

Dal gCais

(Dalcassion) the race of Cas, the sixth in descent from Cormac Cas, son of Oilioll Olum, King of Munster in the 3rd century. Through this line they are connected to Cashel and the other great families of the province of Munster. This great clan of Thomond (North Munster), holds several distinguished families including the chief family of the name, the O'Briens. The clan of the noted high king, Brian Boru.

Clann Chuileainn - the race of Cuilean, another branch of the Dal gCais. One of several clan names which apply to the MacNamaras and their co-relatives in Thomand.

Ui Caisin - descendants of Caisin, son of Cas, the name of a branch of the Dal gCais of which MacNamara was chief.

Cineal Cuallachta - the race of Cuallachta or Collachtach; a branch of the Dal gCais or Dalcassions. These families are descended from Aonghus Ceannathrach, son of Cas, and centered in the barony of Inchiquin, Co. Clare. O'gRiobta was the chief family of this tribe.

Muintear Ifearnain - The family of Ifearnan, a branch of the Dal gCais. This was the clan name of the O'Quinns of Thomand who descend from Ifearnan, son of Corc, the 15th in descent from Cormac Cas, the ancestor of the Dal gCas or Dalcassions.

Ui Bluid - descendants of Blod, son of Cas, a branch of the Dal gCais. This clan includes the O'Kennedy, O'Shanahan, O'Durack and O'Ahern families of eastern Co. Clare. The name is still preserved in the place name of the deanery of Omulled.

Ui Cearnaigh - descendants of Cearnach, the branch of the Dal gCais of which the Ahernes were chiefs.

Ui Ronghaile - descendants of Ronghal, a branch of the Dal gCais of which the O'Shanahans were chiefs.

Ui Toirdealbhaigh - descendants of Toirdealbach (Father of St. Flannan), King of Thomond. The clan name of the O'Briens and their co-relatives in the east of Co. Clare.

Ui Cormaic - descendants of Cormac, the clan name of the O'Hehirs in Thomond.

Corca Bhaiscinn - the race of Cairbre Baschaoín, centered in the south-west of Co. Clare. [Not Dalcassian].

Corca Modhruadh - the race of Modruadh, son of Fergus MacRoigh. This is the name of a 'great clan' in the north-west of Co. Clare. Their territory was co-extensive with the Diocese of Kilfenora. The chief families of this clan were the O'Loughlins and the O'Connors. They were not a Dalcassian clan.

Source: <http://www.irishroots.com/july96.html>

Uí Néill

Niall Noigíallach (of the Nine Hostages) established himself as King of Midhe (Meath) at Tara around 400 A.D. This kingship was followed by many of his descendants, thereafter referred to as the Uí Néill. The Uí Néill dynasty divided into two in the 400's, the Northern Uí Néill (Cenel nEoghain and Cenel Conaill) remained in the north while the Southern Uí Néill moved to Meath and the eastern midlands - they took it in turns to be Kings of Tara and, later, High-Kings of Ireland.

Source: various

Cenel nEoghain

Son of Niall of the Nine Hostages, Eogan, King of Ailech (later referred to as Tir Eoghain, later Tyrone) took part with three of his brothers (Conall Gulban, Enda and Cairbre) in the overthrow of Ulidian power and the conquest of north-western Ireland, capturing the great pre-historic dry-stone stronghold at Aileech (whose keep can still be seen surrounded by three remaining rings of ramparts) circa 425; established his own kingdom in the peninsula still called after him Innishowen (Innis Eoghain or Eogan's Isle) between Lough Swilly and Lough Foyle; was converted to Christianity by St. Patrick himself, who called him "the lion Eogan mac Neill" circa 442; and died 465, being buried at Eskaneen. His descendants, known as the Cenel Eoghain, became the principal branch of the Northern Uí Néill.

Source: <http://www.lcs.net/users/rneill/nial.htm>

In the fourteenth century a branch of the Tyrone O'Neills migrated to Antrim where they became known as Clann Aodha Bhuidhe (Clannaboy).

Cenel Conaill

Son of Niall of the Nine Hostages, Conall Gulban, King of Tir Conaill or the Land of Conall (Tyrconnell, later Donegal), which was his share of the family's conquests in north-western Ulster after 425. His descendants, known as the Cenel Conaill, formed one of the principle branches of the Northern Uí Néill, and until the 12th century their kings were inaugurated at the sacrifice of a white mare, going down on all fours like a stallion and lapping its broth. As the kindred of St. Columba, members of this branch were also Abbots of Iona 563-891 or later, Abbots of Dunkeld from the 9th to 12th centuries, and Kings of Scots from Duncan I (slain by MacBeth 1040) to Alexander III (died of a fall from his horse 1285/86).

Source: <http://www.lcs.net/users/rneill/nial.htm>

Cineal Chonaill

Conall Gulban and his brothers Enda and Eoghan, sons of the High King of Ireland, conquered and partitioned the north-west of Ulster in about the year 460 AD. This area is now known as County Donegal. Conall's descendants, Cineal Chonaill, spread eastward, first conquering Tir Enda and then, in the 11th century, Inish Eoghain was incorporated into Tir Chonaill. Connell's descendants had divided into a number of septs, the more important of which gave their names to tuatha. These were; Tir Aedha, Tir Boghaine, Tir Ainmireach and Tir Lughdach. For 600 years, except during the time of Dalach and his son, the Cineal Ainmireach were supreme in Tir Chonaill and provided Ireland with eight High Kings. Among the descendants of Ainmireach in the 11th century were numbered the O'Cannons, O'Muldoreys and O'Gallaghers. The descendants of Lughdach were the O'Boyles, the O'Dohertys and the O'Donnells. Source: <http://www.failte.org/page8.html>

Mide (Meath)

Mide (Mídhe), "the middle kingdom," consisted of the present Counties of Meath and Westmeath, with parts of Cavan and Longford. It was one of the five early provinces of Ireland, and by 400-500 A.D. it comprised much of the territory of the Southern Ui Neill with its capital at the royal site of Tara, Ireland's first capital.

In 1172 Henry II bestowed Meath as an earldom to Hugh de Lacy, creating an English territorial nobility that lasted into the 17th century. The county of Meath came into existence in the 13th century. By the 14th century the territory of Meath was split down the middle by as a territory known as Trim.

As the English hold in Ireland deteriorated in the 13th and 14th centuries, only part of Meath remained inside the English Pale (territory) and under direct rule from Dublin. Following the 16th-century reconquest of Ireland, Westmeath was separated from Meath in 1541 and ultimately passed into the hands of English landlords. Meath's northern boundary, west of Drogheda, was the scene of the Battle of the Boyne (1690), in which William III defeated James II and asserted English Protestant rule over Ireland.

Source: various

Southern Ui Neill

The descendants of Fiacha, son of Niall of the Nine Hostages, were collectively known as Cenel Fhiachaigh (Fiachach). Fiacha and two of his brothers are said to be the descendants of the Southern Ui Neill septs, which included the O'Melaghlins (MacLoughlins), O'Molloys, MacGeoghegans, Foxes, among others.

Source: <http://homepage.tinet.ie/~eddiegeo/GeogHist.txt>

Around 700 A.D. the territory of the Southern Ui Neill included the Cenel Fiachach, Tethba, Loegaire, Gailenga, Luigne, Ciannachta, Saithne, Fir Tulach and two septs of the Cairbre. The ancient sub-kingdom of Brega as well as the royal sites of Tara, Knowth, and Lagore were also within its boundaries, which stretched through the modern counties of Meath, Westmeath, Longford, southern Louth and Cavan, and northern Dublin, Kildare and Offaly.

Four Tribes of Tara

The O'Harts, the O'Regans, Connollys, and the O'Kellys formed the "Four Tribes of Tara."

Source: <http://indigo.ie/~okellyc/okbreagh.htm>

~ ~ ~

Appendix H

Diaries



Balmoral Castle

hand-colored restrike etching by David Law, 1850-1900

From Personal Diaries

The following are excerpts from diaries of ancestors or people who knew them well enough to comment on such things as their behavior or an impression of their environment. Included as well are entries from period bystanders, commenting on the events of the day. One diary contains a record of an immigrant crossing the Atlantic with his family and the hardships with which passengers had to contend. All are copied as they were written. [from "A Treasure of the World's Great Diaries," by Philip Dunaway and Mel Evans, eds.]

Queen Victoria

The name of Queen Victoria [1819-1901] calls up an image of a cross-looking, austere, obstinate, prim old lady who for more than sixty years dominated her era, recast England's hearty past, shaped it to conform to the lines of her own homely tastes, and finally gave the century its label – the Victorian age. There might be little more to the picture, despite the surmises of perceptive biographers, had not the thirteen-year-old princess, probably as an exercise set by her governess, begun the habit of keeping a diary. She continued this daily task through more than a hundred thick volumes of journals that ended only with her death seven decades later. From even the expurgated portions of the diaries which have been published, a somewhat different view of Victoria emerges, tantalizing in its intimate, if incomplete, glimpses of the life the sovereign led beyond the facade of reticence her position imposed upon her.

Not that Victoria's indiscretions were ever more than verbal, unlike the episodes we might have savoured in the journal her distant predecessor, Elizabeth I, was too prudent to write down. The last century's mentor of propriety reveals herself first as a naive young girl, unworldly, with more artless enthusiasm than intellectual gifts, at ease with the domestic skills rather than in the realm of books and ideas. She had been called suddenly from a secluded childhood by a series of unexpected deaths to succeed, at 18, her uncle William IV as monarch of the earth's greatest empire.

Simple and sincere, from the beginning she was sure of her own will and she never doubted her destiny. But she turned readily for guidance to a succession of devoted ministers, among them Lord Melbourne, Lord Beaconsfield (Disraeli), Lord Salisbury. With Lord Melbourne, her first Prime Minister, she was particularly impressed. He combined the roles of father and gallant to teach her politics and bring her reports of the world beyond the palace gates. Lytton Strachey, in his lively life of Victoria, says: "Upon every page [of old diaries] Lord M. is present, Lord M. is speaking, Lord M. is being amusing, instructive, delightful and affectionate at once, while Victoria drinks in the honeyed words, laughs till she shows her gums, tries hard to remember and runs off as soon as she is left alone to put it all down." He even served as a guide and confidant when the young queen, just out of her teens, felt the first stirrings of romantic interest in the consort of his choice, Victoria's dashing cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha.

September 1, 1838.

Spoke of my going to Bushey and Bagshot which I disliked; of my hating morning visits; of the habit I had when a little girl and visited my aunts, of praising everything, in order to get it, which made Lord Melbourne laugh very much...

September 2.

... At a 1/4 to 8 we 13 dined. Lord Melbourne led me in ... Spoke with him of various things; of my tight sleeves which he admired; of some excellent red deer we had at dinner; of being able to manage animals by feeding. Lord M. said "You can do anything almost by feeding, from a man to a goat or a deer," which made us laugh much ...

September 4.

... I said I liked French books; he observed, "They write shortly and clearly, and very concise ... The English books," he continued, "are so very long; they are apt to be prosing, and one gets to read without attending, and not to know what it's all about," which is most true. He added that long books alarm one. I said that I couldn't understand the German books; Lord M. mentioned ... "They are apt to be misty and obscure, the Germans – and cloudy," he said laughing. Spoke of my disliking Ancient History; of my having read many dull books; of my having disliked learning formerly, and particularly Latin, and being naughty at that, and at my Bible lessons; Lord M. said it was a good thing to know a little Latin, on account of the construction of English; Greek he thinks unnecessary for a woman, as there are very many other things more necessary.

September 8.

... We rode round Virginia Water. As I was galloping homewards, before we came to the long Walk, on the grass and not very fast ... something frightened Uxbridge ... so much that I came *off*; *I fell on one side sitting, not a bit hurt or put out or frightened, but astonished and amused* ... Uncle talked much, and praised me for my behaviour during my *feat* of falling! Lord Melbourne said most kindly and anxiously, "Are you *really* not the worst?" He repeated this twice. We spoke of how it happened; he said he didn't *see* me fall, but *heard* me fall ...

September 22.

Spoke for some time of church-going; ... George III, Lord M. believes, never went twice ... wasn't at all for all those Puritanical notions. ... Lord M. said it wasn't well to puzzle myself with controversies, but read the simple truths; the Psalms he thinks very difficult to understand, and he thinks very probably not *rightly* translated.

October 13.

... Lord M. said the expense of fires in this Castle must be very great, for that there must be {several 100 fires"; lighting and warming are the great expenses ... Lord Ashley [spoke of] ... a remonstrance from Queen Elizabeth's Maids of Honour, which had been found amongst some old papers; which showed the uncouthness of those times; they lived all in one room, which was separated from the gentlemen by a partition which didn't reach to the Ceiling, and they begged it might be made to reach the Ceiling, as the gentlemen climbed up and looked over the other side. This made us all laugh very much...

November 21.

I forgot to say that Lord Conyngham's 2 youngest children, Cecilia, 7, and Francis, who they generally call Peacock and sometimes Franky, 5, arrived here yesterday, and I saw them when I came home from riding. Peacock is a beautiful boy, with long black hair; Cecelia has fine eyes but is not otherwise pretty ... Went into the Gallery and played with the children for an hour ... charming, delightful children, quite at home with me and treated me quite like a playfellow, which pleased me much; played at ball with them, and then I sat in the window-seat and looked at picture books of animals with them, and told them the names of the animals. They would hardly let me go.

December 23.

Read in *Eugene Aram* [by Bulwer Lytton] for some time while my hair was doing, and finished it; beautifully written and fearfully interesting as it is, I am glad I have finished it, for I never feel quite at ease or at home

when I am reading a Novel ...

January 1, 1839.

Got up at 9. Most fervently do I beseech Almighty God to preserve me and all those most dear to me safely through this year, and to grant that all may go on as it has hitherto done, and to make me daily more fit for my station ... Talked of my getting on in *Oliver Twist*; of the descriptions of “squalid vice” in it; of the accounts of starvation in the Workhouses and Schools, Mr. Dickens gives in his books, Lord M. says, in many schools they give children the worst things to eat, and bad beer, to save expense; told him Mamma [Victoria, daughter of Francis, Duke of Saxe-Coburg-Saalfeld] admonished me for reading light books...

January 3.

... Lord Alfred brought in his dog; she is a fine large black dog, half Newfoundland, half retriever, called *Diver*, but also sometimes *Mrs. Bumps*; she’s a dear affectionate gentle creature and took a great liking to me and lay near me ...

January 20.

After dinner Lord Melbourne came up to me and said, “I’ve seen Sir James Clark this morning; he’s very anxious about this vaccination [against smallpox].” Lord M. then talked for some time about this, urging me to have it done; I resisted. “You’ll have it done,” he said; if it doesn’t take, why then you’re safe; and if it does, it can do no harm.” ... Said to Lord M. I should resist about this Vaccination; “Oh! No, you’ll do it,” he said kindly; I said No, and that no one could force me to it; he agreed in that, but strongly urged it and said earnestly, *Do*. “Think if you were to have it [the disease]; think of the responsibility, of the scrape you’d get them into; of the scrape you’d get us all into.” ...

February 14.

At 20 m. to 3 I rode out ... and came home at ½ p. 5 ... We saw no less than 4 *trains* pass close to us, and had to wait for one where we have to cross the rail-road; once we were lost ...

February 20.

... Talked of teaching the poor people to cook, and all those sorts of things, and Lord M. said Plato could never bear that sort of useful knowledge ... {You’ll never teach English people to cook,” said Lord M., and he added, “Walter Scott said, ‘Why do you bother the poor? Leave them alone.’” ...

March 13.

... I couldn’t get my gloves on, and Lord M. said, “It’s those consumed rings; I never could bear them.” I said I was fond of them, and that it improved an ugly hand. “Makes it worse,” he replied; I said I didn’t wear them of a morning; “*Much* better,” he said ...

March 18.

... Talked of the sovereign’s great power over the marriages of his relations, being great tyranny in my opinion. But Lord M. said, “No, quite right, it’s much better.” Of its being better in my opinion that they should not be allowed to marry a subject, as they got so mixed up else ...

April 10.

Talked of ... Augusta, who I said was to go out everywhere, like any other girl; Lord M. said that it was the first time a Princess of England did such a thing. "I don't think the King (George III) would have liked that," said Lord M. "If she goes out like any other girl, she runs the risk like other girls of forming attachments," which is very true and very awkward. "She may take a liking to somebody whom she couldn't marry," he added. ...

April 15.

Talked of some people, and Lord Melbourne said, "An Italian and an English makes the finest animal in the world; it's the mixture on nations that makes the finest specimens of the human race." ...

April 18.

Lord M. then said, "Now, Ma'am for this other matter." I felt terrified. ... Well, I mustered up courage, and said that my Uncle's great wish – was – that I should marry my Cousin Albert. ... He said, "Cousins are not very good things," and "Those Coburgs are not popular abroad; the Russians hate them." I then said, who was there else? ... I said I dreaded the thought of marrying; that I was so accustomed to have my own way, that I thought it was 10 to 1 that I shouldn't agree with any body. Lord M. said, "Oh! But you would have it still." ...

May 24.

This day I go out of my *TEENS* and become 20! It sounds so strange to me! ...

May 27.

It was a most beautiful, bright day, yet the 1st impression, I know not why – beautiful as it looked and green and bright – is always a triste one. I saw the Grand-Duke [later Czar Alexander II of Russia] arrive at 20 m. to 7; he bowed up to my window. At a 1/4 to 8 we dined. ... The Grand-Duke led me in and ... I really am quite in love with the Grand-Duke; he is a dear, delightful young man.

At about a little after 10, we went into the red drawing-room, (next the dining room), where ... dancing began. I danced 1st a quadrille with the Grand-Duke, then followed a Valse, during which time I sat down; then a quadrille which I danced with Prince Henry; then again a Valse followed; and I danced after this a quadrille with M. de Tolstoy; this was followed again by a Valse (of course I and also the Grand-Duke sitting down during the Valse); and then I danced a quadrille with Lord Clarence Paget. ...

At a little after 12 we went into the dining-room for supper; after supper they danced a Mazurka for 1/2 an hour, I should think nearly; the Grand-Duke asked me to take a turn, which I did (never having done it before) and which is very pleasant. I also had a turn with Prince Henry; I then danced a quadrille with Patkul, which was followed by a Valse. After this we danced (what I had never even seen before) the "Grossvater" or "Rerreut," and which is excessively amusing; I danced with the Grand-Duke, and we had such fun and laughter; Patkul and the Countess Potoska led the way. It begins with a solemn walk round the room, which also follows each figure; one figure, in which the lady and gentleman run down holding their pocket-handkerchief by each end, and letting the ladies on one side go under it and the gentlemen jump over it, is too funny. I never enjoyed myself more. We were all so merry; I got to bed by a 1/4 to 3, but could not sleep till 5.

May 28.

The Grand-Duke talked of his very fine reception here, and said he ... never would forget these days here, which I'm sure I shall never also, for I really love this amiable and dear young man, who has such a sweet smile. I talked to Lord Melbourne of ... Countess Poloska. ... He observed upon the great length of the petticoats, which he said gave a suspicion that the feet and the ankles are not quite right. He said, "I don't like blue gowns; it's an

unlucky colour; no girl ever marries who wears a blue gown.”

May 29.

... The Grand-Duke took my hand and pressed it warmly; he looked pale and his voice faltered as ... he said how deeply grateful he felt for all the kindness he met with ... pressed and kissed my hand, and I kissed his cheek; upon which he kissed mine (cheek) in a very warm affectionate manner, and we again warmly shook hands. ... I felt so sad to take leave of this dear amiable young man, whom I really think (talking jokingly) I was a little in love with, and certainly attached to; he is so frank, so really young and merry, has such a nice open countenance with a sweet smile, and such a manly fine figure and appearance. ...

May 30.

They played the Grand-Duke's and my favourite quadrilles ... which made me quite melancholy, as it put me so in mind of all, and I felt sadly the change ... and of it being so seldom that I had young people of my own rank with me ... and that now I was so *very very* sorry at his going. ... I said a young person like me must *sometimes* have young people to laugh with. “Nothing so natural,” replied Lord M. with tears in his eyes; and I said that I had *that* so seldom. ...

August 9.

The Band played some of my favourite Quadrilles during dinner, which I said made me quite frantic when I heard them. “Those Quadrilles are dangerous,” said Lord M., “if they produce that effect on you.” ...

October 10.

At ½ p. 7 I went to the top of the staircase and received my 2 dear cousins Ernest and Albert – whom I found grown and changed, and embellished. It was with some emotion that I beheld Albert who is *Beautiful*. I embraced them both and took them to Mamma. ...

October 11.

... Albert really is quite charming, and so excessively handsome, such beautiful blue eyes, an exquisite nose, and such a pretty mouth with delicate moustachios and slight but very slight whiskers; a beautiful figure, broad in the shoulder and a fine waist. At about ½ p. 10 dancing began. I danced 5 quadrilles ... it is quite a pleasure to look at Albert when he gallops and vales, he does it so beautifully, holds himself so well with that beautiful figure of his. ...

October 13.

... I sat on the sofa with dearest Albert; Lord Melbourne sitting near me. Ernest playing at chess. ... I played 2 games at Tactics with dear Albert, and 2 at Fox and Geese. Stayed up till 20 m. p. 11. A delightful evening.

October 14.

... At 1 came Lord Melbourne. ... Talked of my Cousins' having gone out shooting. After a little pause I said to Lord M., that I had made up my mind (about marrying dearest Albert). – “You have?” he said/ “Well then, about the time?” Not for a year, I thought; which he said was too long. ... “I think it is a very good thing, and you'll be much more comfortable; for a woman cannot stand along for long, in whatever situation she is.” ... Then I asked, if I hadn't better tell Albert of my decision soon, in which Lord M. agreed. How? I asked, for that in general such things were done the other way, – which made Lord M. laugh.

October 15.

... At about ½ p. 12 I sent for Albert; he came to the Closet where I was alone, and after a few minutes I said to him, that I thought he must be aware *why* I wished them to come here, –and that it would make me *too happy* if he would consent to what I wished (to marry me). We embraced each other, and he was so kind, *so* affectionate. I told him I was quite unworthy of him, – he ... was so kind, and seemed so happy, that I really felt it was the happiest brightest moment in my life. I told him it was a great sacrifice, – which he wouldn't allow; I then told him of the necessity of keeping it a secret ... and also that it was to be as early as the beginning of February. ...

November 10.

... I sat on the sofa with Albert and we played at that game of letters, out of which you are to make words, and we had great fun about them. ...

November 13.

... Serjeant Talfourd ... Lord M. didn't quite like. "He writes plays," he said, "and I don't think a man who writes plays is ever good for much else; and he is a great friend of Wordsworth's."

January 1, 1840.

... Talked of the danger for us of an alliance between France and Russia, when the former might say Russia might take Constantinople, and Russia would let France go up to the Rhine; on the other hand, Lord M. said, France dreaded an alliance between England and Russia, when *we* might let Russia take Constantinople, and they let us take Egypt and Syria. The *only* country sincerely *friendly* to England, Lord M. says, is Austria. Stayed up till 20 m. p. 11. I feel *most grateful* for all the blessings I have received in the past year. The acquaintance and love of dearest Albert! I only implore Providence to protect me and those most dear to me in *this* and many succeeding years, and to grant that the *true* and *good* cause may prosper for *this year* and *many* years to come, under the guidance of my kind Lord Melbourne!

January 13.

I asked if on the Wedding day, as I should *not drive* in full state, and Albemarle said he did not make a point of going with me, I should take Mamma with me "Yes, I think so," said Lord M. "I think it would be a very right thing to do on that day." ...

January 22.

... Talked of various things, and German being so difficult. "So everybody says," Lord M. Said. "Is it possible to be so difficult?" "Oughtn't to know more than one language," he continued. "You can't *speak* one purely if you know a great many, – you mix them. They say you needn't know more than Latin and French."; Greek, Lady Lyttelton mentioned. "There's no necessity for it," he said; its being difficult."; "a very copious language," he replied. I observed learning much as I did at once, prevented one from learning anything very well, and bewildered one. "That's very true what you say," Lord M. said. "That's the fault now, they teach too much at once." Talked of teaching being a dreadful thing, the poor children being more eager to learn than the higher classes, and Lady Lyttelton saying the Irish children were so very much quicker in learning than the English. "It's that quickness that leads to that disregard of truth," Lord M. said, "for when you ask them anything, they don't think of what you *say*, but of what they think will *please* you." He told me at dinner that he was having a new *full-dress* coat made, for the *great* occasion, which was "like building a 74-gun ship" in point of trouble and work, and that he had had the man with him in the morning, trying it on and pinning and stitching. ...

February 7.

... We were seated as usual, Lord Melbourne sitting near me. Talked of Bull-dogs; of the Marriage Ceremony; my being a little agitated and nervous; "Most natural," Lord M. replied warmly; "how could it be otherwise?" Lord M. was so warm, so kind, and so affectionate, the whole evening, and so much touched in speaking of me and my affairs. Talked of my former resolution of never marrying. "Depend upon it, it's right to marry," he said earnestly; "if ever there was a situation that formed an exception, it was yours; it's in human nature, it's natural to marry; the other is a very unnatural state of things; it's a great *change* – it has its inconveniences; everybody does their best, and depend upon it you've done well; difficulties may arise from it," as they do of course from everything.

February 9.

Received a beautiful Prayer-book from Mamma; breakfasted at 10. Wrote to Lord M. Dearest Albert came in .. Looking so well, with a little of his blue ribbon showing. He brought me 4 beautiful old Fans. At 12 I went down to Prayers with my beloved Albert ... a very fine sermon ... over at 5 m. p. 1. Talked of dearest Albert's being agitated. "That's very natural," Lord M. said, "I don't wonder at it." ... I couldn't believe what was to happen next day, I said. At a 1/4 to 6 my beloved Albert came to me and stayed till 20 m. to 7. We read over the Marriage Service together and tried how to manage the *ring*. Wrote my journal. At 8 we dined. ... Albert led me in ... my last unmarried evening, which made me feel so odd. I sat on the sofa with dearest Albert, Lord Melbourne sitting near me. Talked of ... guessing words; the Lord's Prayer being almost entirely composed of Saxon words, all but 4; of the Cathedral at Canterbury and Bishop Chichley being buried there.

February 10.

got up at 1/4 to 9 – well, and having slept well; and breakfasted at 1/2 p. 9. Mamma came before and brought me a Nosegay of orange flowers. ... Wrote my journal, and to Lord M. Had my hair dressed and the wreath of orange flowers put on. Saw Albert for the *last time alone*, as my *Bridegroom*. Dressed. ... At 1/2 p. 12 I set off, dearest Albert having gone before. I wore a white satin gown with a very deep flounce of Honiton lace, imitation of old. I wore my Turkish diamond necklace and earrings, and Albert's beautiful sapphire brooch. Mamma and the Duchess of Sutherland went in the carriage with me. ... When I arrived at St. James's, I went into the dressing-room where my 12 young Train-bearers were, dressed all in white with white roses, which had a beautiful effect. Here I waited a little till dearest Albert's Procession had moved into the Chapel. I then went with my Train-bearers and ladies into the Throne-room, where the Procession formed; Lord Melbourne in his fine new dress-coat, bearing the Sword of State. ... Queen Anne's room was full of people, ranged on seats one higher than the other, as also in the Guard room, and by the Staircase, – all very friendly; the Procession looked beautiful going downstairs. Part of the Colour Court was also covered in and full of people who were very civil. The Flourish of Trumpets ceased as I entered the Chapel, and the organ began to play, which had a beautiful effect. At the Altar, to my right stood Albert. ...

The Ceremony was very imposing, and fine and simple, and I think OUGHT to make an everlasting impression on every one who promises at the Alter to *keep* what he or she promises. Dearest Albert repeated everything distinctly. I felt so happy when the ring was put on, and by Albert. As soon as the Service was over ... I gave all the Train-bearers as a brooch a small *eagle* of turquoise. I then returned to Buckingham Palace alone with Albert; they cheered us most warmly and heartily; the crowd was immense. ... I went and sat on the sofa in my dressing-room with Albert ... then we went downstairs where all the company was assembled and went into the dining-room – dearest Albert leading me in, and my Train being borne by 3 Pages, Cowell, little Wemyss, and dear little Byng. ... Albert and I drank a glass of wine with Lord Melbourne, who seemed much affected by the whole. I talked to all after the breakfast, and to Lord Melbourne, whose fine coat I praised. ... I went upstairs and undressed and put on a white silk gown trimmed with swansdown, and a bonnet with orange flowers. Albert went downstairs and undressed. ... Dearest Albert came up and fetched me downstairs, where we took leave of Mamma and drove off at near 4; I and Albert alone.

Celia Fiennes

Just nine years before Sarah Kemble Knight began her horseback journey through New England countryside, Celia Fiennes climbed into a sidesaddle and set out in 1695 to wander through Old England. Both were sharply observant and keenly interested in whatever was noteworthy about the places to which their horses trotted them; both often deplored what they discovered (“I was much pleased with my supper,” says Celia Fiennes of a night spent in Cornwall, “tho’ not with the Customs of the Country wch is a universall smoaking, both men, women and children have all their pipes of tobacco in their mouths and soe sit round the fire smoaking was not delightfull to me... “); both had the courage to defy conventions that kept other members of their sex from venturing out to see the world for themselves.

But here resemblance lessens. Madame Knight was of humble origin while Madame Fiennes was a member of one of England’s ancient noble families. she was the sister of the third Viscount Say and Sele; her ancestor, Lord Say, Treasurer of Henry VI, was the first court official Jack Cade beheaded in the rebellion of 1450. Her social position opened all doors to her, even those of the moated castles of William and Mary whose intimate fittings she describes with relish.

Celia Fiennes had a mission. She sought to persuade her contemporaries that there were as interesting sights to be seen in their own country as any to be found on the continent where it was then the fashion to travel. To prove her point she journeyed on horseback as many as 1,500 miles in a single summer, compiling as she went along a sort of running guide book interspersed with reports of road and weather conditions and a shrewd, tart commentary on the follies of man. Her diary was written from day to day as she rode along. However, as with many of the diaries of the time, her entries were not dated.

Celia Fiennes’ account of English life at the end of the seventeenth century, in itself quaint and delightful, provides important information about many things of which there is no other record. She was a good reporter, if not skilled as an author. Aware of this, she warns: “As most I converse with knows both the freedom and Easyness I speak & write as well, as my defect in all, so they will not expect exactness or politeness in this book, tho’ such Embellishments might have adorned the descriptions and suited the neerer taste.”

Summer, 1695. Drawing Room of State, Windsor.

The Cannopy & throne & ye part behind is all green velvet Richly Embroyder’d with silver & Gold, of high Emboss’d work. ... The Cannopy was so rich and curled up & in some places so full it Looked very Glorious, & was newly made to give audience to the French Embassadour to shew ye Grandeur & Magnificence of the British Monarch – some of these fooleries are requisite sometymes to Create admiration & regard to keep up the state of a kingdom and nation.

Lord Exeter’s House, near Stamford.

Very fine paint in pictures, but they were all without Garments or very little, that was the only fault, the immodesty of ye Pictures, Especially in My Lord’s Appartment.

Wilton.

A grottoe is att ye end of the garden just ye middle off ye house – its garnished with many fine figures of ye Goddesses, and about 2 yards off the doore is severall pipes in a line that with a sluice spoutts water up to wett the strangers – in the middle roome is a round table and a large Pipe in the midst, in which they put a Crown of Gun of a branch, and yt spouts the water through ye Carvings and poynts all round ye roome at ye Artists pleasure to set ye Company – There are figures at Each corner of ye roome that Can weep water on the beholders and by a straight pipe on ye table they force up ye water into ye hollow carving of ye rooff like a Crown or Coronet to appearance but is hollow within to retaine ye water fforded into it in great quantetyes yt disperses in ye hollow Cavity over ye roome and descends in a Shower of raine all about ye roome – on each side is two little roomes which by the tuning their wires ye water runnes in ye rockes

– you see and hear it and also it is so contrived in one roome yt makes ye melody of Nightingerrls and all sorts of birds wch engages ye Curiosity of ye Strangers to go in to see, but at ye Engrance off each roome is a line of pipes that appear not fill by a Sluce moved – it washes ye spectators designed for diversion.

Hampton Court.

Thence into a Dressing-roome hung with Divers Coulld flowered sattin, chaires and stooles the same, ffine fflwer'd muslin window curtaines, A fine Little high screen burnt jappan of 4 Leaves, another chimney screen wth 4 leaves of the stone work in ffigures – indian. Out of this was ye Queens closet just over Prince Georges but yt was Locked. The other side was a little waiting roome to Just such marble seates of Easemt wth the sluces of water as that below was in the Queen's bed Chamber. ...

The Bath [in Somerset].

The third bath is called the Cross bathwch is some thing bigger than the former and not so hot; the Cross in the middle has seates round it for ye Gentlemen to sitt, and round the walls are Arches wth seates for the Ladyes, all stone and the seate is stone and if you thinke the seate is too Low they raise it with a Coushon as they call it, another stone, but indeed the water bears you up that ye seate seemes as easy as a down Coushon. Before the Arch the Ladyes use to have a laced toilet hung up on the top of the Arch and so to shelter their heads even to the water if they please. You Generally sit up to the Neck in water, this Cross bath is much the Coolest and it is used mostly in ye heate of summer; there are Gallery's round ye top that ye Company that does not Bathe that day walkes in and lookes over into ye bath on their acquaintance and company – there are such a number of Guides to each bath of women to waite on ye ladyes, and of men to wait on the Gentlemen, and they keepe their due distance. There is a serjeant belonging to ye baths that all the bathing tyme walkes in galleryes and takes notice order is observed and punishes ye rude, and most people of fashion send to him when they begin to bathe, then he takes particular Care of them and Complements you every morning wch deserves its reward at ye end of the Season. ... The Ladyes goes into the bath with Garments made of a fine yellow canvas, wch is stiff and made large with great sleeves like a parsons gown; the water fills it up so that its borne off that your shape is not seen, it does not cling close as other linning, wch lookes sadly in the poorer sort that go in their own linning. The Gentlemen have drawers and wastcoates of the same sort of canvas, this is the best linning, for the bath water will change any other yellow ... the pump is in one of these galleryes at ye King's bath wch ye Company drinks of, its very hot and tastes like ye water yt boyles Eggs, has such a smell, but he nearer ye pumpe you drinke it, ye hotter and less offensive and more spiriteous. ...

Charles Cavendish Fulke Greville

The editor of the Greville diaries chose as a motto for them a remark by the wise Swedish chancellor Oxenstiern. "You do not know yet, my son, with how little wisdom mankind is governed." It is appropriate. Charles C.F. Greville [1794-1863] in the diaries which he kept for forty years relates a tale of dotards thrice on the English throne – pathetic, deranged George III who cost England her American colonies; and his sons – queer George IV ("a more contemptible, cowardly, selfish, unfeeling dog does not exist that this king") and "cracked" William IV, Victoria's uncle, who was popularly known as "Silly billy." To Greville {the divinity that doth hedge a king was not apparent," nor did it ever stay his pen.

Greville, born of a noble family, handsome, and a man of fashion and parts, spent most of his life as clerk to the privy council. This privileged position gave him intimate views of majesty and of all the passing great of his time. He was born in Rulstrode, educated at Eton and Oxford, and first introduced to court circles as a page to George III. His contemporaries, who knew him as something of a fop with a stable of race horses, never seem to have suspected that each night he put down in his diary a frank account of everything that reached his sharp ears and keen eyes. No matter how he may have dissembled during the day, to his journal he entrusted the most uncompromising judgments of what went on around him.

Victoria, born two years before the diary's beginning, was first seen by Greville at a children's ball. He thought her plain looking, but became her liege. Ten years after Greville's death a greatly abridged version of his diary appeared and within a single year five large editions were avidly read by those who long before had guessed that all was not right with the monarchy under George III and his sons. But Victoria thought it improper that his journals were published. Ironically, the disclosure of matters only whispered about before, probably did much to consolidate support for her reign of normalcy. Diarists have left a fascinating gallery of kings and queens painted at close range, but it is safe to say that none has ever been less inhibited than Greville in his depiction of the follies of the royal scene.

February 7, 1821.

The King [George IV] went to the play last night (Drury Lane) for the first time, the Dukes of York and Clarence and a great suite with him. He was received with immense acclamations, the whole pit standing up, hurrahing and waving their hats. ... A few people called "the Queen," but very few. A man in the gallery called out, "Where's your wife, Georgy?"

May 2.

Lady Conyngham [the King's favorite] lives in one of the houses in Marlborough Row. All the members of her family are ... supplied with horses, carriages, etc., from the King's stables. ... They never appear in public together. She dines there every day. ... She comports herself entirely as mistress of the house ... has received magnificent presents ... strings of pearls of enormous value. Madame de Lieven said she had seen the pearls of the Grand Duchess and the Prussian Princesses, but had never seen any nearly so fine as Lady Conyngham's. The other night ... the King seized her arm and said with the greatest tenderness, "... you cannot please me so much as by doing everything you please, everything to show that you are mistress here."

June 24.

The King dined at Devonshire House last Thursday s'nnight. Lady Conyngham had on her head a sapphire which belonged to the Stuarts, and was given by Cardinal York to the King.

December 18.

... I came to town, went to Brighton yesterday s'nnight for a council. I was lodged in the Pavilion and dined with the King. The gaudy splendor of the place amused me for a little and then bored me. The dinner was cold and the evening dull beyond all dullness. They say the King is anxious that form and ceremony should be banished, and if so it not only proves how impossible it is that form and ceremony should not always inhabit a palace. ... The King was in good looks and good spirits, and after dinner cut his jokes with all the coarse merriment which is his characteristic. ... I saw nothing very particular in the King's manner to Lady Conyngham. He sat by her on the couch almost the whole evening playing at patience. ... I was curious to see the Pavilion and the life they lead there, and I now only hope I may never go there again, for the novelty is past and I should be exposed to the whole weight of the bore of it without the stimulus of curiosity.

August 19, 1822.

... The Pavilion is finished. The King has had a subterranean passage made from the house to the stables, which is said to have cost 3,000 L. or 5,000 L.: I forget which. There is also a bath in his apartment with pipes to conduct water from the sea; these pipes cost 600 L. The King has not taken a sea bath for sixteen years.

November 29, 1823.

In the various conversations which I have with the Duke of York [the King's brother] he continually tells me a variety of facts more or less curious ... concerning the affairs of the royal family. ... In all these histories the King acted a part, in which his bad temper, bad judgment, falseness, and duplicity were equally conspicuous. I think it is not possible for any man to have a worse opinion of another than the Duke has of the King. From various instances of eccentricities I am persuaded that the King is subject to occasional impressions which produce effects like insanity; that if they continue to increase he will end by being decidedly mad. ...

June 17, 1827.

I was at the Royal Lodge for one night last Wednesday; about thirty people sat down to dinner, and the company was changed nearly every day. It is a delightful place to live in, but the rooms are too low and too small for very large parties. Nothing can exceed the luxury of the internal arrangements; the King was very well and in excellent spirits, but very weak in his knees and could not walk without difficulty. ... It is clear that nothing would be more insupportable than to live at this court; the dullness must be excessive, and the people who compose his habitual society are the most insipid and uninteresting that can be found. As for Lady Conyngham, she looks bored to death, and she never speaks, never appears to have one word to say to the King, who, however, talks himself without ceasing. ...

January 12, 1829.

Lord Mount Charles came to me this morning and ... talked to me about Knighton [George's private secretary], whom the King abhors with a detestation that could hardly be described. ... He says that his language about Knighton is sometimes of the most unmeasured violence – wished he was dead, and one day when the door was open, so that the pages could hear, he said, "I wish to God somebody would assassinate Knighton." ... Still it appears that there is some secret chain which binds them together, and which compels the King to submit to the presence of a man whom he detests, and induces Knighton to remain in spite of so much hatred and ill-usage. The King's indolence is so great that it is next to impossible to get him to do even the most ordinary business, and Knighton is still the only man who can prevail on him to sign papers, etc. His greatest delight is to make those who have business to transact with him, or to lay papers before him, wait in his anteroom while he is lounging with Mount Charles or anybody, talking of horses or any trivial matter. ... He does it on purpose, and likes it. This account corresponds with all I have before heard, and confirms the opinion I have long had that a more contemptible, cowardly, selfish, unfeeling dog does not exist than this king, on whom such flattery is constantly lavished. ... There have been good and wise kings, but not many of them. Take them one with another they are of an inferior character, and this I believe to be one of the worse of the kind. The littleness of his character prevents his displaying the dangerous faults that belong to great minds, but with vices and weaknesses of the lowest and most contemptible order it would be difficult to find a disposition more abundantly furnished.

March 19.

... The King ... leads a most extraordinary life – never gets up till six in the afternoon. They come to him and open the window curtains at six or seven o'clock in the morning; he breakfasts in bed, does whatever business he can be brought to transact in bed too, he reads every newspaper quite through, dozes three or four hours, gets up in time for dinner, and goes to bed between ten and eleven. He sleeps very ill, and rings his bell forty times in the night; if he wants to know the hour, though a watch hangs close to him, he will have his *valet de chambre* down rather than turn his head to look at it. The same thing if he wants a glass of water; he won't stretch out his hand to get it. His valets are nearly destroyed.

May 14.

... The influence of Knighton and that of Lady Conyngham continues as great as ever; nothing can be done but by their permission, and they understand one another and play into each other's hands. Knighton opposes every kind of expense, except that which is lavished on her. The wealth she has accumulated by savings and presents must be enormous. The King continues to heap all kinds of presents upon her, and she lives at his expense; they do not possess a servant; even Lord Conyngham's *valet de chambre* is not properly their servant. They all have situations in the King's household, from which they receive their pay, while they continue in the service of the Conynghams. They dine every day while in London at St. James's, and when they give a dinner it is cooked at St. James's and brought up to Hamilton Place in hackney coaches and in machines made expressly for the purpose; there is merely a fire lit in their kitchen for such things as must be heated on the spot. At Windsor the King sees very little of her except of an evening; he lies in bed half the day or more, sometimes goes out, and sometimes goes to her room for an hour or so in the afternoon. ... A more despicable scene cannot be exhibited than that which the interior of our court presents – every base, low, and unmanly propensity, with selfishness, avarice, and a life of petty intrigue and mystery.

May 29.

Yesterday the King gave a dinner to the Dukes of Orleans and Chartres, and in the evening there was a child's ball. It was pretty enough, and I saw for the first time the Queen of Portugal and our little Victoria. ... a short, plain looking child, and not near so good looking as the Portuguese. However, if nature has not done so much, fortune is likely to do a great deal more for her. ...

September 16.

The King has nearly lost his eyesight, and is to be couched as soon as his eyes are in a proper state for the operation. He is in a great fright with his father's fate before him, and indeed nothing is more probable than that he will become blind and mad too; he is already a little of both. ...

November 20.

... The expenses of the civil list [funds allowed the King] exceed the allowance in every branch, every quarter; but nobody can guess how the money is spent, for the King makes no show and never has anybody there. My belief is that [certain persons (?) Knighton and Lady Conyngham] ... plunder him, or rather the country, between them, in certain stipulated proportions. Among other expenses his tailor's bill is said to be 4,000 l. or 5,000 l. a year. He is now employed in devising a new dress for the Guards.

May 7, 1830. Rome.

... Everybody here is in great alarm about the King, who I have no doubt is very ill. I am afraid he will die before I get home, and I should like to be in at the death and see all the proceedings of a new reign; but, now I am here, I must stay out my time, let what will happen. I shall probably never see Rome again, and "according to the law of probability, so true in general, so false in particular," I have a good chance of seeing at least one more king leave us.

July 3. Paris.

Got here last night, after a fierce journey of sixty-three hours from Geneva, only stopping for two hours for breakfast. ... It rained torrents. ... We heard of the King's death in the middle of the night.

July 16. London.

... Nobody thinks any more of the late King than if he had been dead fifty years, unless it be to abuse him and to rake up all his vices and misdeeds. Never was elevation like that of King William IV. His life has been hitherto passed in obscurity and neglect, in miserable poverty, surrounded by a numerous progeny of bastards, without consideration of friends, and he was ridiculous from his grotesque ways and little meddling curiosity. Nobody ever invited him into their house, or thought it necessary to honor him with any mark of attention or respect; and so he went on for forty years.

July 18.

... The new King began very well. ... His first speech to the council was well enough given, but his burlesque character began even then to show itself. Nobody expected from him much real grief, and he does not seem to know how to act it consistently; he spoke of his brother with all the semblance of feeling, and in a tone properly softened and subdued, but just afterwards, when they gave him the pen to sign the declaration, he said in his usual tone, "This is a damned bad pen you have given me." ... At the late King's funeral he behaved with great indecency. ... The attendance was not very numerous, and when they had all got together in St. George's Hall a gayer company I never beheld; with the exception of Mount Charles, who was deeply affected, they were all as merry as grigs. The King was chief mourner, and to my astonishment, as he entered the chapel directly behind the body, in a situation in which he should have been apparently, if not really, absorbed in the melancholy duty he was performing, he darted up to Strathaven, who was ranged on one side below the Dean's stall, shook him heartily by the hand, and then went on nodding to the right and left. ... Altogether he seems a kind-hearted, well-meaning, not stupid, burlesque, bustling old fellow, and if he doesn't go mad may make a very decent king, but he exhibits oddities. He would not have his servants in mourning – that is, not those of his own family and household – but he sent the Duke of Sussex to Mrs. Fitzherbert to desire she would put hers in mourning. ... Yesterday morning he sent for the officer on guard, and ordered him to take all the muffles off the drums, the scarfs off the regimentals, and so to appear on parade, where he went himself. ... In the meantime it is said that the bastards [resulting from his long intimacy with the actress Dorothea Jordan] are dissatisfied that more is not done for them, but he cannot do much for them at once and he must have time. He has done all he can; he has made Errol master of the horse, Sidney a Guelph and equerry, George Fitzclarence the same and adjutant-general, and doubtless they will all have their turn. ...

July 20.

Yesterday was a very busy day with his Majesty, who is going much too fast, and begins to alarm his ministers and astonish the world. In the morning he inspected the Coldstream Guards, dressed (for the first time in his life) in a military uniform and with a great pair of gold spurs half-way up his legs like a game cock, although he was not to ride, for having chalkstones in his hands he can't hold the reins. The Queen came to Lady Bathurst's to see the review and hold a sort of drawing-room. ... she is very ugly, with a horrid complexion, but has good manners, and did all this (which she hated) very well. She said the part as if she was acting, and wished the green curtain to drop.

July 24.

... Yesterday, after the House of Lords, he drove all over the town in an open *calèche* with the Queen, Princess Augusta, and the King of Wurtemberg, and coming home he set down the King (*dropped him*, as he calls it) at Grillon's Hotel. The King of England dropping another king at a tavern!

July 25.

... The other night the King had a party, and at eleven o'clock he dismissed them thus: "Now ladies and

gentlemen, I wish you a good-night. I will not detain you any longer from your amusements, and shall go to my own, which is to go to bed; so come along, my Queen.” ...

August 3.

... I went yesterday to the sale of the late King’s wardrobe, which was numerous enough to fill Monmouth Street, and sufficiently various and splendid for the wardrobe of Drury Lane. He hardly ever gave away anything except his linen, which was distributed every year. These clothes are the perquisites of his pages, and will fetch a pretty sum. There are all the coats he has ever had for fifty years, 300 whips, canes without number, every sort of uniform, the costumes of all the orders in Europe, splendid furs, pelisses, hunting-coats and breeches, and among other things a dozen pair of corduroy breeches he had made to hunt in when Don Miguel was here. His profusion in these articles was unbounded, because he never paid for them, and his memory was so accurate that one of his pages told me he recollected every article of dress, no matter how old, and that they were always liable to be called on to produce some particular coat or other article of apparel of years gone by. It is difficult to say whether in great or little things that man was most odious and contemptible.

January 19, 1831.

... The King is supposed to be in a bad state of health. ... He will be a great loss in these times; he knows his business, lets his ministers do as they please, but expects to be informed of everything. He lives a strange life at Brighton, with ragtag and bobtail about him, and always open house. The Queen is a prude, and will not let the ladies come *decollectees* to her parties. George IV, who liked ample expanses of that sort, would not let them be covered.

February 24.

The King went to the play the night before last; was well received in the house, but hooted and pelted coming home, and a stone shivered a window of his coach and fell into Prince George of Cumberland’s lap. The King was excessively annoyed, and sent for Baring, who was the officer riding by his coach, and asked him if he knew who had thrown the stone; he said that it terrified the Queen and “was very disagreeable.” ...

September 8.

After dinner I had much talk with the Duke, who told me a good deal about the late King and the Duchess of Kent; talked of his extravagance and love of spending, provided that it was not his own money that he spent. ... He always had money. When he died, they found 10,000 l. in his boxes and money scattered about everywhere, a great deal of gold. There were above 500 pocketbooks, of different dates, and in every one money – guineas, one pound notes, one, two, or three in each. There never was anything like the quantity of trinkets and trash that they found. He had never given away or parted with anything. There was a prodigious quantity of hair – women’s hair – of all colors and lengths, some locks with the powder and pomatum still sticking to them, heaps of women’s gloves, *gages d’amour* which he had got at balls, and with the perspiration still marked on the fingers. ...

June 18, 1832.

The government and their people have now found out what a fool the King is, and it is very amusing to hear them on the subject. formerly, when they thought they had him fast, he was very honest and rather wise; now they find him rather shuffling and exceedingly silly. When Normanby went to take leave of him on going to Jamaica, he pronounced a harangue in favor of the slave trade, of which he has always been a great

admirer, and expressed sentiments for which his subjects would tear him to pieces if they heard them. It is one of the great evils of the recent convulsion that the King's imbecility has been exposed to the world, and in his person the regal authority has fallen into contempt. ... Walter Scott has arrived here, dying. A great mortality among great men; Goethe, Perier, Champollion, Cuvier, Scott, Grant, Macintosh, all died within a few weeks of each other.

May 23, 1834.

There is a very strong impression abroad that the King is cracked, and I dare say there is some truth in it. He gets so very choleric, and is so indecent in his wrath. ...

November 7, 1836.

... He was very angry at King Leopold's coming here, received him very coldly at Windsor, had no conversation with him on business, and on one occasion exhibited a rudeness even to brutality. It seems he hates water-drinkers; God knows why. One day at dinner Leopold called for water, when the King asked, "What's that you are drinking, sir?" "Water, sir." "God damn it!" rejoined the other King; "why don't you drink wine? I never allow anybody to drink water at my table." Leopold only dined there, and went away in the evening.

June 13, 1837.

Bad accounts of the King yesterday. Melbourne desired I would get everything ready *quietly* for a council. ...

June 16.

On Wednesday the King was desperately bad, yesterday he was better, but not so as to afford any hope. ... What renders ... events uncertain is the absolute ignorance of everybody, without exception, of the character, disposition, and capacity of the Princess [Victoria]. She has been kept in such jealous seclusion by her mother (never having slept out of her bedroom, nor been alone with anybody but herself and the Baroness Lehzen), that not one of her acquaintance, none of the attendants at Kensington, not even the Duchess of Northumberland, her governess, have any idea what she is, or what she promises to be. ...

June 19.

Yesterday the King was sinking fast; the Sacrament was administered to him by the Archbishop of Canterbury. He said, "This is the 18th of June; I should like to live to see the sun of Waterloo set."

June 21.

The King died at twenty minutes after two yesterday morning, and the young Queen met the council at Kensington Palace at eleven. Never was anything like the first impression she produced, or the chorus of praise and admiration which is raised about her manner and behavior, and certainly not without justice. It was very extraordinary, and something far beyond what was looked for. ... The first thing to be done was to teach her her lesson, which for this purpose Melbourne had himself to learn. I gave him the council papers, and explained all that was to be done, and he went and explained all this to her. ... She went through the whole ceremony, occasionally looking at Melbourne for instruction when she had any doubt what to do, which hardly ever occurred, and ... when the business was done she retired as she had entered, and I could see that nobody was in the adjoining room. ... No contrast can be greater than that between the personal demeanor of the present and the late sovereigns at their respective accessions. William IV was a man who, coming to the throne at the mature age of sixty-five, was so excited by the exaltation, that he

nearly went mad, and distinguished himself by a thousand extravagances of language and conduct, to the alarm or amusement of all who witnessed his strange freaks; and though he was shortly afterwards sobered down into more become habits, he always continued to be something of a blackguard and something more of a buffoon. ...

The young Queen, who might well be either dazzled or confounded with the grandeur and novelty of her situation, seems neither the one nor the other, and behaves with a decorum and propriety ... the want of which was so conspicuous in her uncle.

John Halliday

Like Thomas Carlyle, another proud and doughty rebel, John Halliday [1815-1906] was born amidst the fogs of Scotch Puritanism in the border country village of Ecclefechan where grey houses straggle along the main highway to England, a little short of the Highlands and in sight of a less exacting theology.

Bred in hardship, reared in a dimple frugal life in which unyielding Calvinism was opposed to indomitable independence of spirit, the cobbler Halliday met his match in Anne Kilner, a gentleman's daughter from below the border.

A landholder, it was said that William Kilner had never worked a day in his life, except to read the Riot Act. In one sense however, Lord Kilner (a "laird" he was really, and not a Lord) was a Leveler, and this was in his love for music. He was the cellist as well as the patron of an excellent string quartet, and as such he was bound to admit beneath his roof even a cobbler, if that cobbler happened to be the best violinist within fifty miles, as well as the finest maker of stringed instruments in the shire.

And it was these qualities, doubtless, which enabled him to win the hand of the gentleman's daughter.

Life was had for shoemaker Halliday, with a rapidly growing family to feed, and America beckoned. And so, with the high silk hat which he had worn to the coronation of Queen Victoria, with a trunkful of books, with a violin, a violin cello and a bass viol – all of his own craftsmanship – and also with wife and children, he sailed, in August, 1855 for the rich land across the sea. He came first to Canada, then finally, as a farmer, to Pipestone, Minnesota, famous for the quarries where the Indian peace pipes were made.

He died in comfort at the age of ninety-one, surrounded by grandchildren, dozing over his Robert Burns.

Halliday's dairy is filled with the salt and tang of the early days of emigration to the United States. One trembles, as he does, when children die at sea, when a child is born out of wedlock, when rations, on a sailing ship becalmed for days and weeks, dwindle alarmingly, and one shares his delight at the sight of the new land – "It is a beautiful place."

August 28, 1855.

Calm foggy morning but very cold. Making no way. So it has been since we started [from Liverpool], no sooner we get a fair wind than a few hours suffice to blow it out. A nice breeze has again started us on our way. We are in Lat 40' Lon 45'20", and as cold as ever I felt it in December. ... At noon all the second cabin passengers were ordered to take their beds on deck and the berths underwent the same process as those below rendering the place much sweeter. Another row among the sailors which required the captain and both mates to suppress. We are now on the banks of Newfoundland and the captain says we are greatly favoured, with clear weather being a rare circumstance. It is owing to the north wind. Another child committed to the deep. We lose our breeze at 9 p.m. Nothing done all night

August 29.

A beautiful morning for landmen but too quiet for us who are all anxious for a glimpse of terra firma. Many of the passengers who could not eat the oatmeal or biscuits on any account are beginning to alter their tale. And should we be kept here for another fortnight I am of the opinion that the flavour and quality of the ship's provisions will have greatly improved. 11 O clock very hot. The temperature here seems to be very variable, yesterday we could scarcely keep heat walking. Today we can hardly keep cool sitting. Had a look

through the Quadrant and a lesson from the captain as to the mode of using it. He also shewed me the manner of working out the observation which is done in very few figures. We are in Lat 46'12" having just made 18 miles south since yesterday. Heartless work. Today we have done next to nothing. The invalids from seasickness are improving.

August 30.

Awoke at 4 O'clock by the mate dancing his Hornpipe right overhead. One of the comforts of sea life, only a board between your head and the feet of the sailors who are obliged to be on duty all night and the rougher the sea the more work they have got to do. Very wet but a fair wind 12 ½ miles per hour and what is better in the proper course. In the afternoon the wind shifted into all the 4 qrs. but seemed to like none as well as the west and fixed there again about 7 p.m. ...

August 31.

Strong wind dead ahead with a heavy sea. Our course is Northwest obliged to steer south a good prospect of reaching Quebec in that direction must submit to the will of Heaven. ... Had a hunt for lice last night but found none. Very thankful for they are become very common. A few mornings ago one of the Germans or Dutch came on deck pulled off his undergarment and commenced hunting. The sport was excellent, the game proving most abundant. The second mate noticed him and calling to the party who was washing decks (an operation performed by means of a pump hose and pipe out of which the water is ejected with great force) ordered him to turn his pipe on the huntsman, no sooner said than done, and the cold water proved most effectual causing both huntsman and game to disappear as if by magic.

Today one of the grey ones was discovered on a lad's coat. One of the passengers desired him to go down and take it off, the captain who was present ordered him to take off his coat and to do it gently. This was done and then he ordered him to heave it overboard repeating the word 5 or 6 times causing much laughter increasing it by adding that it was large enough to bait a codfish hook. so that with one thing and another the time passes swiftly away with those in health among which thanks be to an all merciful God are me and mine.

September 1.

Fancy yourself lashed to a weigh beam feet to one end head to the other, fancy the beam kept continually up and down, and you will have a pretty clear picture of our condition during the whole of last night, add to this the full consciousness that this fine ride is all given gratis, that is that you are not advancing an inch on your journey and you must confess that our position is a most enviable one. Notwithstanding we would all sleep well were it not for the tremendous noise caused at times by the tumbling about of boxes, rolling of bottles, tin cans etc etc. The captain informed me that we had gained the enormous distance of 5 miles during the last 36 hours. ... This is provision day and we are comforted with the announcement that the sugar is done our butter is nearly done our ham is nearly done and we still 1000 miles from the end of our journey. Glorious position.

All in good health and spirits though. As soon as [young son] Wm made his appearance on deck this morning the captain laid hold of his cap saying now the cap's mine I have seen land, Wm said no not till I'm on't. The captain thought he had cut his teeth early. We have done next to nothing all day the wind is however nearly gone and we have the consolation of knowing that it cannot blow from a more unfavourable quarter. Another child has just died in the Stearage.

September 3.

A strong hot west wind. consequently right ahead. Tossed and tumbled about all day making nothing of it, all night the same. The sailors are of opinion that we have got a Jonas on board. It is indeed strange that out of 31 days we should only have had 2 days of favourable wind. The children are both complaining. Hot and feverish. We had a very sleepless night.

September 4.

... Our water is becoming scarce and ... the children are no better very flushed in the face and hot. Gave them each a pill. 4 O'clock Mary much better and up Wm still in bed bowels a good deal disordered. Afraid of diarrhoea. 24 hours of fair wind would take us to the mouth of the St. Lawrence pity we can't have it. The wind has shifted a little in our favour and as usual fallen to a very gentle breeze if breeze it can be called. Passed very close to a felled tree. another row with the second mate and sailors. A quiet evening.

September 5.

... Cape Breton is in view. The spirits of all on board seem revived. The children are much better Mary particularly. Wm is still hot in his skin and coughs but has been a great deal on deck. We are very thankful for this is a strange place for a sick person and some families have had a sorry time of it particularly in the Stearage, when I went down to it this morning for water the stench was dreadful and the dirt about ½ inch deep many of the passengers being of such filthy habits as to make water on the floor. All the efforts of the captain and officers to improve them are unavailing. On Monday the ship made a very heavy lurch upsetting their *Nosegays* alias *Chamber pots* and the stench that came up would have poisoned a pole cat. ... Last night more robberies were committed. The sailors are still blamed.

September 6.

A heavy sea tossed us up and down all night. And it continues to blow hard. A fishing boat has just crossed our bow the sea dashing over it every few minutes. Had the weather been favourable we would have got some cod. But it was too rough to come alongside. ... A number of whales about but we could only see them blowing. The children still complain it seems to be cold and indeed there is no wonder since the cold is most intense. I pity the inhabitants of Cape Breton. We have tacked and are making for a small island in the north of Cape Breton, called St. Pauls.

September 7.

Astonished on going on deck to find St. Pauls still ahead of us having only gained 1 mile during the whole of the night. ... Just 5 weeks today since we left Liverpool. O for a good breeze from the Southeast ... and we are not steering through the narrows with the Studding sails set.

September 8.

... The doctor who is ... much troubled with the disease called laziness, is much afraid of ship fever and says it is already in the Stearage. I would have been alarmed had he not prophesied measles, scarlatina, small pox etc, as soon as we were in the fogs of Newfoundland none of which has happened as yet. God be thanked for his kindness to us.

September 9.

... Saw the black back of a whale a great monster it was. Began to weary yesterday for the first time. The children are beginning to feel the effects of confinement.

September 10.

the wind arose about 12 O'clock last night blowing very hard. ... We were obliged to change positions in bed 4 times before morning. For it is anything but comfortable to be awaked with your feet considerably higher than your head. In fact as though ... laid on the roof of a house feet to the rigging and head to the eaves. ... Provisions and water are getting scarce and the sailors who swear at anything and everything are beginning to swear about the want of food. The Doctor hold me this morning that they had only cabin

provisions for two days. Another child died this morning making the sixth in all. ...

September 11.

A beautiful morning the Gulph as smooth as a mirror the sky as pure and the air as clear as imagination can conceive. ... Another lovely child died today of inflammation of the lungs. Typhus has at last made its appearance among us and we are all more than ever anxious to reach our destination. ... 7 O'clock p.m. meet a ship from Quebec bound to Bristol. The Pilot had not left her and we took him on board. ... It seems (though strangely to a contemplative mind) that this circumstance has raised the spirits of all on board, as though a Pilot could change the wind.

September 12.

Whether the Pilot has power to change the wind or not I will not pretend to determine. But certain it is that it has changed, and continued to blow though lightly in our favour all day. The Pilot says we shall be alongside Grouse Island tomorrow night with this wind and we are all praying that it may continue as things are really growing very threatening. There is a very pretty child just opposite our berth apparently dying, it is the first serious case in the second cabin. The doctor calls it cholera and many people are much alarmed, though from the symptoms I cannot agree with him.

Provisions are getting scarce all our ham and butter is done and the last of our preserves was finished yesterday but sugar is the most precious article. ... The ships supply run out a fortnight ago and those who could not afford to purchase it from passengers have had a sorry time of it. We bought some salt beef of the captain which did not belie its name being as salt as brine and as tough as leather. but it must be confessed that dry biscuit and sugarless tea are not the most savoury articles of food, but we are all alike and even the captain has been buying sugar of one of the passengers who laid in a good stock at Liverpool.

The children though still suffering from colds are in better spirits and as we are now getting into a warmer climate I hope through the blessing of God that they will be preserved to us. We are now fairly in the [St. Lawrence] river a magnificent river it is. ... Were such a river to run through England it would leave very small parings in the widest of it and across from Whitehaven to Durham it would require to borrow a good deal from the German ocean. A proof of the greatness of the country we are approaching. ...

September 14.

A fine run all night up early to clean and pack up for removal from prison. A splendid morning far exceeding all my ideas of the American climate. I have often read of Italian skies but if they excel these they must be blue glorious indeed. When I went on deck the change of scene seemed perfectly magical. The river had narrowed greatly was as smooth as glass and the banks on each side was literally covered with houses all white with small patches of clearings. ... Among all the beauties of the place and they are not a few I missed the green fields of England the general colour being that of dark pine. And the clearings have all the appearance of stubble fields. But the inhabitants here about don't live by agriculture but by fishing and hunting. We were obliged to anchor as we had no wind and the stream would have carried us down. We are only twelve miles from Grouse Island where the doctor says we shall have to remain a few days on account of the fever that is among us. Weighed anchor at 4 p.m. the tide coming up in our favour and we are again moving through slowly towards our destination. Thanks be to God we are all well again. The eighth child died today. 9 O'clock dropt anchor opposite Grouse Island, the quarantine ground.

September 15.

An anxious morning the officers from the Island came on board about 8 a.m. and condemned us. so we shall be obliged to go on quarantine through only for 2 or 3 days, but the arrangements seem as bad or worse than those on board ship. ... We were completely mystified it was provision day and none were served out. The captain could not tell whether we would be provided for or not. Many had nothing to eat and nothing

to purchase with. consequently there case was anything but enviable. the steamboat was to come from Quebec at 3 O'clock and take us off it was 4 before it arrived and a considerable delay occurred after it did arrive so that darkness found us on a strange land with seemingly no one to direct us where to go. My mate a Scotchman agreed that I should go on shore and look after his family and goods and he would remain on board, and I had to hunt about for a house [at the quarantine detention island] ... one of the long wooden sheds fitted up with berths like a ship. I found one at last but the door was locked and as the officer was at a meal the hungry cattle must wait till his highness had finished. This event actually took place in about half an hour, the shed door was thrown open and we were ushered into it in total darkness and in this pleasant condition we must have remained had we not been able to buy candles ... and when we inquired if there were any provender for hungry bellies he said there was plenty of food in the store for money and that we could please ourselves whether we eat or starved.

Wherever we go *money* is our *friend*. After all our providing before leaving home it has cost us a sovereign of board ship and here and not done yet. Government take great credit to themselves for the protection they give to passengers. But if worse used before the law was enacted than now there case must have been a pitiful one. One of the second passengers child died during the night, the complaint that has been so fatal among young children in inflammation of the lungs.

September 16.

... It is a beautiful place. ...

Thomas Hearne

Thomas Hearne [1678-1735] was born at Littlefield Green, Berkshire, the son of a parish clerk in humble circumstances. When his quickness at learning became evident a wealthy neighbour paid for his schooling. At Oxford he received his degree, became a keeper in the Famous Bodleian Library there, and was appointed to other college posts, which he had to resign as a nonjuror (one who refused to swear allegiance to the King). His voluminous diary was written in 148 notebooks.

March 30, 1712.

A certain barvbarous Sect of People arose lately in London who distinguish themselves by the Name of Mohocks. there are great Numbers of them & their custom is to make themselves Drunk and in the Nighttime go about the Streets in great Drovers to abuse after a most inhumane Manner all Persons they meet, by beating down their Noses, pricking the fleshy Parts of their Bodys with their swords, not sparing even the Women, whom they usually set upon their Heads & committ such indecencies towards them as are not to be mention'd nor indeed shall I descend to any other particulars about these Brutish People, against whom there is a Proclamation issu'd with the Tender of a considerable Reward for Discovery of any of them. Strict Watches are kept every Night. They are found to be young, lewd, debauch'd sparks, all of the Whiggish Gand, & the Whiggs are now so much asham'd of this great Scandal (provided Whiggs can be asham'd) that they publickly give out there have been no such People, nor no such Inhumanities committed, thereby indeavouring to perswade People out of the Senses. But this is only one Instance of their Abominable Lying, & c.

September 20, 1720.

Yesterday was a great Foot-race at Woodstock, between a running Footman of the D. of Wharton's and a running Footman of Mr. Diston's of Woodstock, round the 4 Mile course. Mr. Diston's Man, being about 25 years of Age (& the Duke's about 45) got it with ease, outdistancing the Duke's half a Mile. They ran naked, there being not the least scrap of anything to cover them, not so much as Shoes or Pumps, wch was look'd upon deservedly as ye Height of Impudence, & the greatest Affront to the Ladies, of wch there was a very great Number.

August 15, 1723.

Browne Willis, of Whaddon Hall in Bucks [Buckinghamshire], Esq., being in Oxford told me last Night ... he hath heard it several times said in the Packington Family that Queen Elizabeth lay with one of the Packingtons, a lusty, jolly, tall, proper Man. She happened to see him accidentally at a Meeting where she was, & desired, at breaking up, that he might stay, & an Apartment was provided for him. He was carried to bed. A Lady was brought to bed to him in the dark, & carry'd off again before light, wch he had good reason to think to be the Queen. He said Queen Elizabeth had two daughters.

June 7, 1731.

Lord Colerane married the daughter, a fine Woman, of Mr. Hanger ... but they have not lived together many years; I know not for what reason. Lord Colrane is a very sober, studious, religious Gentleman. He hath no child. He reads Prayers in his own House constantly night and morning, and ... he was so studious that when his Lady and he lived together, he would (as he lay in bed with her) have one come up to him at midnight and read Greek to him.

Francis Kilvert

Francis Kilvert [1840-1879], a young curate and son of a clergyman, was educated at Oxford, began his ministry in central Wales at the age of twenty-five. His position was so obscure and his life so uneventful that he could hardly have expected that he would be remembered beyond his own village and his own time. But Kilvert had a special feeling for life and his fellow men. The commonplace and the astonishing were equally delightful to him and in his journal he lovingly records the day-do-day events of country life as he saw it in early Victorian times. Some twenty notebooks of his diary were recently discovered, and though two-thirds of the material is still unpublished, Kilvert has already been ranked with Dorothy Wordsworth and Pepys among the great diarists.

July 12, 1870.

... Great fun on the lawn, 6 cross games of croquet and balls flying in all directions. High tea at 7:30 and croquet given up. More than 40 people sat down. Plenty of iced claret cup, and unlimited fruit, very fine, especially the strawberries. After tea we all strolled out into the garden and stood on the high terrace to see the eclipse. It had just begun. The shadow was slowly steadily stretching over the large bright moon and had eaten away a small piece at the lower left side. It was very strange and solemn to see the shadow stealing gradually on till half the moon was obscured. As the eclipse went on ... all that was left of the moon was a point of brightness like a large three-cornered star. Then it vanished altogether. ...

July 16.

Today we heard rumours of war and war itself ... by France against Prussia, the wickedest, most unreasonable war that ever was entered into to gratify the ambition of one man. ... After tea Mrs. Bridge took us round into the garden to show us her hives. One bee instantly flew straight at me ... buzzing about entangled in my beard, having left his sting between my eyes. ... then a wild nonsensical game of Croquet in the dark, everyone playing at the same time, and screams of laughter. ...

September 6.

... Saw the reports of Saturday confirmed and that a Republic had been proclaimed in Paris under General Trocher. Crichton sent me 1 ½ brace of partridges. Really people are very kind in sending me game.

October 3.

How odd, all the news and letters we get from Paris now coming by balloons and carrier pigeons.

October 8.

Heavy rain in the night and in the morning the mists had all wept themselves away. In the night the wind had gone round from the cursed East into the blessed West. All evil things have always come from the East, the plague, cholera, and man.

August 19, 1875.

In the newspapers this morning we saw the account of the Royal M yacht ... running down, cutting in two and sinking Mr. Heywood's yacht. the *Mistletoe* in Stokes Bay with a loss of three lives ... the first accident that has ever happened to the Queen in travelling and she is terribly distressed. It is an awkward thing for the Sovereign to destroy her own subjects. ...

May 19, 1878.

Yesterday a new wire bird door (the gift of Miss Newton) was hung at the main door. We have been much troubled by the birds in the Church lately, and have been obliged to close the painted East window to keep out the swallows who were darting in and out with mud and building a nest against the wall just over the altar. I was sorry to interfere with them, but it was necessary for they were scattering mud all over the place.

Sir Walter Scott

Sir Walter Scott [1771-1832] was born in College Wynd, Edinburgh. His widely sold romances brought him fame and success. Unfortunately, he invested a substantial part of his newly gained wealth in publishing companies, and when they were driven to bankruptcy by the depression of 1826, Scott felt himself obliged to assume a staggering debt of L130,000 as his personal responsibility. The rest of Scott's life was devoted to the task of earning the money to repay this debt. Through illness, bereavement, and growing weakness he wrote on and on. When he could no longer hold pen in hand, he called on secretaries to write at his dictation. The first year he earned L400,000, all of which went to the creditors except for the bare expenses of living. His beloved wife died, then his son, and finally his beloved grandson. He suffered apoplectic strokes from which he never recovered. Yet he kept on, and ultimately all of the creditors were paid to the last penny. But the effort cost Scott his life. Tired, sick and prematurely old, he died in his sixty-first year. From 1825 until his death, Scott kept a diary. What he wrote in it was quite unlike anything composed for the readers of his books.

May 19, 1828.

... Dines by command with the Duchess of Kent. I was very kindly recognised by Prince Leopold. I was presented to the little Princess Victoria – I hope they will change her name, – the heir apparent to the Crown as things now stand. How strange that so large and fine a family as that of his late Majesty should have died off and decayed into old age with so few descendants! Prince George of Cumberland is, they say, a fine boy about nine years old – a bit of a ... swears and romps like a brat that has been bred in a barrack yard. This little lady is educated with much care, and watched so closely by the Duchess and the principal governess, that no busy made has a moment to whisper, “You are heir of England.” I suspect if we could dissect the little head, we should find that some pigeon or other bird of the air had carried the matter. She is fair, like the Royal Family, but does not look as if she would be pretty. ...

Andre Hurault de Maisse

In 1597 Henry IV of France and Elizabeth of England were nearing the end of their long struggle with Spain. The Armada had been destroyed, and Henry, with much of his invaded land recovered, was eager

to bring the wars to an end. To discover whether his ally would join him in peace negotiations, he sent a trusted ambassador, Andre Hurault de Maise [1539-16-7] to confer secretly with the 64-year-old Queen.

Keen diplomat and trained observer that he was, de Maise focused his attention on Elizabeth and her court. The meticulous record he kept of his audiences has left us one of the most undiplomatic and startlingly vivid portraits ever made of the Virgin Queen. As the editors of the first English translation dryly point out, "At times his curiosity savours of Peeping Tom, but he has always a lively sense of character," and particularly when writing about the Queen: "of her fantastic dress; her vanity and shrewdness; her scholarly accomplishments and her love of music and dancing; her disgressions."

De Maise could "value a woman's dress and jewels with the eye of a pawnbroker." But in that month in London those same keen eyes saw far deeper than the outward trappings of royalty.

December 2, 1597.

I reached London ... and was lodged in a house that the Queen had commanded for me wherein Drake had formerly lodged. What I learned of the Queen and of the principal of her Council before I had seen either her or any of them is that when a man speaks to her, and especially when he says something displeasing, she interrupts not seldom. ... She is a haughty woman, falling easily into rebuke. ... In her own nature she is very avaricious, and when some expense is necessary her Councillors must deceive her before embarking her on it little by little. she thinks highly of herself and has little regard for her servants and Council, being of opinion that she is far wiser than they; she mocks them and often cries out upon them. ...

December 8.

... About one hour after noon there came a gentleman from the Queen who said to me that her Majesty was much grieved that she had not given me audience sooner, and that she prayed me to come to her that very hour. He brought me in a coach to take me down the river where one of the barges awaited me and we went thence to the gate of the Queen's palace. ... He led me along a passage somewhat dark, into a chamber that they call the Privy Chamber, at the head of which was the Queen, seated in a low chair, by herself, and withdrawn from all the Lords and Ladies that were present, they being in one place and she in another. After I had made her my reverence at the entry of the chamber, she rose and came five or six paces towards me, almost into the middle of the chamber. I kissed the fringe of her robe and she embraced me with both hands. She looked at me kindly, and began to excuse herself that ... the day before she had been very ill with a gathering on the right side of her face, which I should never have thought seeing her eyes and face: but she did not remember ever to have been so ill before.

She excused herself because I found her attired in her nightgown. ... she was strangely attired in a dress of silver cloth, white and crimson, or silver "gauze," as they call it. This dress had slashed sleeves lined with red taffeta, and was girt about with other little sleeves that hung down to the ground, which she was forever twisting and untwisting. She kept the front of her dress open, and one could see the whole of her bosom, and passing low, and often she would open the front of this robe with her hands as if she was too hot. The collar of the robe was very high, and the lining of the inner part all adorned with little pendants of rubies and pearls, very many, but quite small. she had also a chain of rubies and pearls about her neck. On her head she wore a garland of the same material and beneath it a great reddish-coloured wig, with a great number of spangles of gold and silver, and hanging down over her forehead some pearls, but of no great worth. On either side of her ears hung two great curls of hair, almost down to her shoulders and within the collar of her robe, spangled as the top of her head. Her bosom is somewhat wrinkled ... but lower down her flesh is exceedingly white and delicate, so far as one could see.

As for her face, it is and appears to be very aged. It is long and thin, and her teeth are very yellow and unequal. ... Many of them are missing so that one cannot understand her easily when she speaks quickly. Her figure is fair and tall and graceful in whatever she does; so far as may be she keeps her dignity, yet humbly and graciously withal. ...

December 12.

... When the Queen is served, a great table is set in the Presence Chamber near the queen's throne. The cloth being laid, a gentleman and a lady come in, walking from the end of the room with the cover, and make three reverences, the one by the door, the next in the middle of the chamber, the third by the table. Then they set down the cover and the lady tries the food. The guards bring in the meat in the same manner; then the lady tries the food with a piece of bread and gives it to the guards; thence the meat, such as the Queen desires, is carried into the Privy chamber where she dines. Her service is neither very sumptuous nor delicate. ...

December 15.

... Today she sent her coaches and one of her own gentleman servants to conduct me ... to the Privy chamber where the Queen was standing by a window. She looked in better health than before. She was clad in a dress of black taffeta, bound with gold lace, and like a robe in the Italian fashion with open sleeves and lined with crimson taffeta. she had a petticoat of white damask, girdled, and open in front, as was also her chemise, in such a manner that she often opened this dress and one could see all her belly, and even to her navel.

Her head tire was the same as before. She had bracelets of pearls on her hands, six or seven rows of them. On her head tire she wore a coronet of pearls, of which five or six were marvellously fair. When she raises her head she has a brick of putting both hands on her gown and opening it insomuch that all her belly can be seen. ... She often called herself foolish and old, saying she was sorry to see me there, and that, after having seen so many wise men and great princes, I should at length come to see a poor woman and a foolish. I was not without an answer, telling her of the blessings, virtues and perfections that I had heard of her from stranger Princes, but that was nothing compared with what I saw. With that she was well contented, as she is when anyone commends her for her judgment and prudence, and she is very glad to speak slightly of her intelligence and sway of mind, so that she may give occasion to commend her. ... When anyone speaks of her beauty she says that she was never beautiful, although she had that reputation thirey years ago. Nevertheless she speaks of her beauty as often as she can. As for her natural form and proportion, she is very beautiful; and by chance approaching a door and wishing to raise the tapestry that hung before it, she said to me laughing that she was as big as a door, meaning that she was tall. ... I departed from her audience at night, and she retired half dancing to her chamber, where is her spinet. ...

December 24.

... I went to see the Queen, and she sent me her coaches. I found her very well and kindly disposed. She was having the spinet played to her in her chamber, seeming very attentive to it; and because I surprised her, or at least she feigned surprise, I apologised to her for diverting her from her pleasure. she told me that she loved music greatly and that she was having a *pavanne* played. I answered her that she was a very good judge, and had the reputation of being a mistress in the art. She told me that she had meddled with it divers times, and still took great pleasure in it. She was clad in a white robe of cloth of silver, cut very low and her bosom uncovered. ...

My audience was long, during which she told me many tales of all kinds. ... Whilst I was treating with her in the matter of my charge she would often make such digressions, either expressly to gain time and not to feel pressed by that I asked of her, or because it is her natural way. Then would she excuse herself, saying "Master Ambassador, you will say of the tales that I am telling you that they are mere gullery. See what it is to have to do with old women such as I am." Then she returned to the subject of her talk to which I led her back, pressing her for an answer. She said to me, "I am between Scylla and Charybdis." she knows all the ancient histories, and one can say nothing to her on which she will not make some apt comment. ... Having told her at some point that she was well advertised of everything that happened in the world, she replied that her hands were very long by nature ... whereupon she drew off her glove and showed me her hand, which is very long and more than mine by three broad fingers. It was formerly very beautiful, but it is now very thin, although the skin is still most fair. ...

At my departure from the audience I presented to her the secretary Phillips ... at which she was very pleased

and made good cheer to this Phillips, saying that she had seen several of his letters but did not know him. He was on his knees and she began to take him by the hair and made him rise and pretended to give him a box on the ears. It is a strange thing to see how lively she is in body and mind and nimble in everything she does. This day she was in very good humour and gay, and at my departure made me very good cheer, saluting all the gentlemen who were with me altogether. She is a very great princess who knows everything.
...

January 6, 1598.

... After dinner the Queen sent for me ... and being in the Chamber of the Council a gentleman came to say that very soon the Queen would pass by with her ladies on her way to the dancing, and, that if I wished to see her pass, it was she who had sent him. I went there, and straightway she came out; and seeing me from afar she came towards me saying ... that she was going to see the dancing, and demanded whether I did not wish to accompany her. I told her that I would do everything she commanded me, and bore her company. She herself sat in the gallery and made me sit by her. she takes great pleasure in dancing and music. She told me that she entertained at least sixty musicians; in her youth she danced very well, and composed measures and music, and had played them herself and danced them. She takes such pleasure in it that when her Maids dance she follows the cadence with her head, hand and foot. She rebukes them if they do not dance to her liking, and without doubt she is a mistress of the art, having learnt in the Italian manner to dance high. She told me that they called her “the Florentine.” ...

January 10.

... I was conducted to her chamber, where I found her attired after her accustomed manner. She made me sit near her. ... She spoke to me of the languages that she had learned, for she makes digressions very often, telling me that when she came to the Crown, she knew six languages better than her own; and because I told her that it was great virtue in a princess, she said that it was no marvel to teach a woman to talk, it were far harder to teach her to hold her tongue. ... She said several words on the private matters of His Majesty, and then on mine, telling me that she was very well pleased to know me and well knew my merits. She embraced me twice; and then all the gentlemen who were with me made their reverence. she commanded the Admiral who was present to see that a good ship was given me, and then laughing said that I might be made a prisoner of the Spanish. I answered that marching under her banner I had scarcely need to fear them. That is what was done this day.

January 15.

I left London hoping with God’s aid to return to France. I arrived at Dover on the 17th in the evening.

Fanny Burney

Chased round the palace gardens, caught and kissed twice by England’s mad King George III; kissed by Samuel Johnson, too; keeper of Queen Charlotte’s lapdog and snuff-box; wife of a French general; author; playwright, and a friend of genius – Fanny Burney [1752-1840] was a noteworthy woman, who came from a noteworthy family. A major event in Fanny’s life was her designation as one of Queen Charlotte’s court ladies, a post she held for five years until 1791.

Intimate attendance upon the Queen was burdensome and humiliating to her, and she was delighted to be allowed to resign. Not long after, she married an impoverished French military officer, General D’Arblay, former aide to LaFayette, and they lived at first in Paris and then in England, on a small pension she received from the Queen. They had one son. Madame d’Arblay survived the General by twenty-two years.

Fanny’s diaries have delighted many and have irritated some. Certainly they are often long-winded, and almost always strewn with little vanities that may either provoke or amuse.

November 25, 1785. Windsor.

... “I do beg of you,” said dear Mrs. Delany [with whom Fanny stayed when she first went to Windsor Court as Assistant Keeper of the Robes to Queen Charlotte], “when the Queen of the King speaks to you, not to answer with mere monosyllables. The Queen often complains to me of the difficulty with which she can get any conversation, as she not only always has to start the subjects, but commonly, entirely to support them; and she says there is nothing she so much loves as conversation, and nothing she finds so hard to get.” ...

December 17.

... You would never believe – you, who distant from courts and courtiers, know nothing of their ways – the many things to be studied, for appearing with a proper propriety before crowned heads. ... I shall give you those instructions I have received myself, that, should you find yourself in the royal presence, you may know how to comport yourself.

Directions for coughing, sneezing or moving, before the King and Queen.

In the first place, you must not cough. If you find a cough tickling in your throat, you must arrest it from making any sound; if you find yourself choking with the forbearance, you must choke – but not cough. In the second place, you must not sneeze. If you have a vehement cold, you must take no notice of it; if your nose membranes feel a great irritation, you must hold your breath; if a sneeze still insists upon making its way, you must oppose it, by keeping your teeth grinding together; if the violence of the repulse breaks some blood-vessel, you must break the blood vessel – but not sneeze. In the third place, you must not, upon any account, stir either hand or foot. If, by any chance, a black pin runs into your head, you must not take it out. If the pain is very great, you must be sure to bear it without wincing. ... If, however the agony is very great, you may privately, bite the inside of your cheek, or of your lips, for a little relief; taking care, meanwhile to do it so cautiously as to make no apparent dent outwardly. And, with that precaution, if you even gnaw a piece out, it will not be minded, only be sure either to swallow it, or commit it to a corner of the inside of your mouth till they are gone – for you must not spit. ...

July 24, 1786.

... I rise at six o'clock, dress in a morning gown and cap, and wait my first summons, which is at all times from seven to near eight, but commonly in the exact half hour between them. The Queen never sends for me till her hair is dressed. This, in a morning, is always done by her wardrobe woman, Thielky. ... No maid ever enters the room while the Queen is in it. Mrs. Thielky hands the things to me, and I put them on. 'Tis fortunate for me I have not the handling them! I should never know which to take first, embarrassed as I am, and should run a prodigious risk of giving the gown before the hoop, and the fan before the neckerchief. By eight o'clock, or a little after, for she is extremely expeditious, she is dressed. ... I then return to my own room to breakfast. I make this meal the most pleasant part of the day; I have a book for my companion, and I allow myself an hour for it. ... At nine o'clock I send off my breakfast things, and relinquish my book, to make a serious and steady examination of everything I have upon my hands in the way of business – in which preparations for dress are always included, not for the present day alone, but for the court days, which require a particular dress; for the next arriving birthday of any of the Royal Family, every one of which requires new apparel; for Kew, where the dress is plainest. ... These times mentioned call me to the irksome and quick-returning labours of the toilette. The hour advanced on the Wednesdays and Saturdays is for curling and cramping the hair, which it now requires twice a week. A quarter before one is the usual time for the Queen to begin dressing for the day. ... We help her off with her gown, and on with her powdering things, and then the hairdresser is admitted. She generally reads the newspapers during that operation. ... It is commonly three o'clock when I am thus set at large. And I have then two hours quite at my own disposal. ... At five, we have dinner ... my little supper at near eleven. Between eleven and twelve my last summons usually takes place, earlier and later occasionally. Twenty minutes is the customary time then spent with the Queen: half an hour, I believe, is seldom exceeded. I then come back ... and to sleep I fall the moment I have put out my candle and laid down my head. Such is the day. ...

November 1, 1788.

Our King does not advance in amendment; he grows so weak that he walks like a gouty man, yet has such spirits that he has talked away his voice, and is so hoarse it is painful to hear him.

November 3.

The King is better and worse so frequently, and changes so, daily, backwards and forwards, that everything is to be apprehended, if his nerves are not some way quieted. The Queen is almost overpowered with some secret terror. ...

November 5.

Oh, dreadful day! ... At noon the King went out in his chaise, with the Princess Royal, for an airing. I looked from my window; he ... gave so many orders to the postilions, and got in and out of the carriage twice, with such agitation, that again my fear of a great fever hanging over him grew more and more powerful. ... The King, at dinner, had broken forth into positive delirium, which long had been menacing all who saw him most closely; and the Queen was so overpowered as to fall into violent hysterics. All the princesses were in misery, and the Prince of Wales had burst into tears.

November 6.

I rose at six, dressed in haste by candlelight. ... The King, in the middle of the night, had insisted upon seeing if his Queen was not removed from the house; and he had come into her room, with a candle in his hand, opened the bed-curtains, and satisfied himself she was there. ... He stayed a full half hour, and the depth of terror during that time no words can paint. ... "I am nervous," he cried; "I am not ill, but I am nervous; if you would know what is the matter with me, I am nervous."

February 2, 1789.

What an adventure had I this morning! One that has occasioned me the severest personal terror I ever experienced in my life. ... I strolled into the gardens, I had proceeded, in my quick way, nearly half the round, when I perceived, through some trees ... the person of his Majesty! Alarmed past all possible expression, I waited not to know more, but turning back, ran off with all my might. But what was my terror to hear myself pursued! To hear the voice of the King himself loudly and hoarsely calling after me: "Miss Burney! Miss Burney!" I protest I was ready to die. I knew not in what state he might be at the time. ... On I ran, too terrified to stop, and in search of some short passage, for the garden is full of little labyrinths, by which I might escape. The steps still pursued me, and ... Heavens, how I ran! I do not think I should have felt the hot lava from Vesuvius – at least not the hot cinders – had I so run during its eruption. My feet were not sensible that they even touched the ground. ... I fairly believe no one of the whole party could have overtaken me, if these words, from one of the attendants, had not reached me: "Doctor Willis begs you to stop!" ... Then, indeed, I stopped – in a state of fear really amounting to agony. I turned round, I saw the two Doctors had got the King between them, and three attendants of Dr. Willis's were hovering about. ... I fairly think I may reckon it the greatest effort of personal courage I have ever made. The effort answered: I looked up, and met all his wonted benignity of countenance, though something still of wildness in his eyes. Think, however, of my surprise, to feel him put both his hands round my two shoulders, and then kiss my cheek! I wonder I did not really sink, so exquisite was my affright when I saw him spread out his arms! Involuntarily, I concluded he meant to crush me; but ... he now spoke in such terms of his pleasure in seeing me, that I soon lost the whole of my terror. ... What a conversation followed! ... What did he not say! He opened his whole heart to me – expounded all his sentiments, and acquainted me with all his intentions ... but ended it more seriously; he suddenly stopped, and held me to stop too, and putting his hand on my breast, in the most solemn manner, he gravely and slowly said; "I will protect you! – I promise you that – and therefore depend upon me!" ... Finding we now must part, he stopped to take leave, and ... saluted me

again just as at the meeting, and suffered me to go on. ...

February 18.

The King I have seen again – in the Queen’s dressing-room. Once opening the door, there he stood!

He smiled at my start, and saying he had waited on purpose to see me, added: “I am quite wellnow – I was nearly so when I saw you before – but I could overtake you better now!”

May 28, 1790.

... Three hours’ conference with my dearest father – the only conference of that length I have had in four years ... and he repeated sundry speeches of discontent at my seclusion from the world ... I owned the species of life distasteful to me; I was lost to all private comfort, dead to all domestic endearment; I was worn with want of rest, and fatigued with laborious watchfulness and attendance. My time was devoted to official duties; and all that in life was dearest to – my friends, my chosen society, my best affections – lived now in my mind only by recollection, and rested upon that with nothing but bitter regret. ... “I have long,” he cried, “been uneasy, though I have not spoken – but – if you wish to resign – my house, my purse, my arms shall be open to receive you back!”

July 7, 1791.

... I took, for the last time, the cloak of the Queen, and putting it over her shoulders, slightly ventured to press them earnestly, though in a low voice, saying: “God Almighty bless your Majesty!” She turned round, and, putting her hand upon my ungloved arm, pressed it with the greatest kindness, and said: “May you be happy!” Here, therefore, end my Court Annals; after having lived in the service of her Majesty five years within ten days – from July 17, 1786 to July 7, 1791.

John Evelyn

John Evelyn [1620-1706] was, as his friend Samuel Pepys said, “a most excellent person ... a man so much above others.” He was, indeed, one of the most favoured of men – gifted, rich, well-born, long-lived, learned, tolerant and wise.

Evelyn was born near Dorking, Surrey, one of five children of a large estate-owner, the High Sheriff of Surrey and Sussex. He was educated informally, but later attended Oxford and read law. He travelled extensively as a young man and met Mary Browne, daughter of an English diplomat, to whom he was married when she was twelve. He was as fortunate in marriage as in other things. His wife was beautiful, well read, talented, and in time proved to be a good mother. spared the necessity of earning a living, Evelyn devoted himself to public service and to writing on widely varying subjects. He began his journal when he was twenty-one and kept it for almost sixty-five years. His account covers a half century filled with many remarkable scenes and events.

March 11, 1651.

I went to the Chatelet or Prison [in Paris], where a malefactor was to have the question of torture given to him, he refusing to confess the robbery with which he was charged, which was thus: they first bound his wrists with a strong rope or small cable, and one end of it to an iron ring made fast to the wall about 4 foote from the floore, and then his feet with another cable, fastened about 5 foote farther than his utmost length to another ring on the floore of the roome; thus suspended and yet lying but aslant, they slid an horse of wood under the rope which bound his feet, which so exceedingly stiffened it, as severed the fellow’s joints in miserable sort, drawing him out at length in an extraordinary manner, he having onely a paire of linnen drawers on his naked body; then they questioned him of a robbery (the Lieutenant Criminal being present,

and a ckearke that wrote), which not confessing, they put an higher horse under the rope, to increase the torture and extension. In this agonie, confessing nothing, the Executioner with a horne (just such as they drench horses with) stuck the end of it into his mouth, and poured the quantity of two boukettts of water downe his throat and over him, which so prodigiously swelled him, as would have pittied and affrighted any one to see it; for all this, he denied all that was charged to him. They then let him downe, and carried him before a warme fire to bring him to himselfe, being now to all appearance dead with paine. ... There was another Malefactor to succede, but the spectacle was so uncomfortable, that I was not able to stay the sight of another. ...

March 29, 1652.

Was that celebrated eclipse of the sun so much threatened by the astrologers, and which had so exceedingly alarm'd the whole Nation that hardly any one would worke, nor stir out of their houses. So ridiculously were they abus'd by knavish and ignorant star-gazers. ...

June 11.

... The weather being hot, and having sent my man of before, I rod negligently under favour of the shade, till within three miles of Bromley, at a place call'd the Procession Oake, two cut-throates started out, and striking with long staves at the horse and taking hold of the reines threw me down, took my sword, and haled me into a deepe thickett some quarter of a mile from the highway, where they might securely rob me, as they soone did. What they got of money was not considerable, but they took two rings, the one an emerald with diamonds, the other an onyx, and a pair of bouckles set with rubies and diamonds, which were of value, and after all bound my hands behind me, and my feete, having before pull'd off my bootes; then they set me up against an oake, with most bloody threats to cutt my throat if I offer'd to crie out or make any noise, for they should be within hearing; I not being the person they looked for. I told them if they had not basely surpriz'd me they should not have had so easy a prize, and that it would teach me never to ride neere an hedge, since had I ben in the mid-way they durst not have adventur'd on me; at which they cock'd their pistols, and told me they had long guns too, and were 14 companions. I begg'd for my onyx, and told them it being engraven with my armes would betray them, but nothing prevail's. My horse's bridle they slipt, and search'd the saddle, which they pulled off, but let the horse graze, and then turning againe bridl'd him and tied him to a tree, yet so as he might graze, and thus leftme bound. My horse was perhaps not taken because he was mark'd and cropt on both eares, and well known on that roade.

Left in this manner grievously was I tormented with flies, ants, and the sunn, nor was my anxiety little how I should get loose in that solitary place, where I could neither heare or see any creature but my poore horse and a few sheep stragling in the copse. After neare two houres attempting I got my hands to turn palm to palm having been tied back to back, and then it was long before I could slip the cord over my wrists to my thumb, which at last I did, and then soone unbound my feete, and saddling my horse and roaming awhile about I at last perceiv'd dust to rise, and soone after heard the rattling of a cart, towards which I made, and by the help of two country men I got back into the high way. I rode to coll. Blount's, a greate justiciarie of the times, who sent out hue and cry immediately. ...

March 7, 1657.

... This had ben the severest winter that any man alive had known in England. The crowes feete were frozen to their prey. Islands of ice inclos'd both fish and fowl frozen, and some persons in their boates.

September 3.

Died that arch rebell Oliver Cromwell, cal'd Protector.

October 22.

... It was the joyfullest funerall I ever saw, for there were none that cried but dogs, which the soldiers hooted away with a barbarous noise, drinking and taking tobacco in the streetes as they went. ...

April 23, 1661.

Was the Coronation of his Majesty Charles II in the Abby ... in this order: First went the Duke of York's Horse Guards. Messengers of the Chamber. 136 Esquires to the Knights of the Bath, each of whom had two, most richly habited. The Knight Harbinger. Serjeant Porter, Sewers of the Chamber. Quarter Waiters. Sic Clearks of Chancery. Clarke of the Signet. Clarke of the Privy Seale. Clearks of the Council, of the Parliament, and of the Crowne. Chaplains in ordinary having dignitaries 10. Kings Advocats and Remembrancer. Council at Law. Members of the Chancery. Puisne Serjeants. Kings Attorney and Solicitor. Kings eldest Serjeant. Secretaries of the French and Latine tongue. Gent. Ushers, Daily Waiters, Sewers, Carvers, and Cupbearers in ordinary. Esquires of the Body 4. Masters of standing offices being no Councillors, viz. of the Tents, Revels, Ceremonies, Armorie, Wardrobe, Ordnance, Requests. Chamberlaine of the Exchequer. Barons of the Exchequer. Judges. Lord Chiefe Baron. Lord Chiefe Justice of the Common Pleas. Master of the Rolls. Lord Chiefe Justice of England, Trumpets, Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber. Knights of the Bath, 68, in crimson robes exceeding rich. ... Knt. Marshal, Treasurer of the Chamber. Master of the Jewells. Lords of the Privy Council. Comptroller of the Household. Treasurer of the Household. Trumpets. Serjeant Trumpet. Two Pursuivants at Armes. Barons. Two Pursuivants at Armes. Vicounts. Two Heralds. Earles. Lord Chamberlaine of the Household. Two Heralds. Marquisses. Dukes, Heralds Clarencieux and Norroy. Lord Chancellor. Lord High Steward of England. Two persons representing the Dukes of Normandy and Aquitain, viz. Sir Richard Fanshawe and Sir Herbert Price, in fantastiq habits of the time. Gentlemen Ushers. Garter. Lord Major of London. The Duke of York along (the rest by two's). Lord High Constable of England. Lord Great Chamberlaine of England. The Sword borne by the Earle Marshal of England. The KING in royal robes and equipage. Afterwards follow'd Equerries, Footmen, Gent. Pensioners. Master of the Horse leading a horse richly caprison'd. Vice Chamberlaine. Captain of the Pensioners. Captain of the Guard. The Guard. The Horse Guard. The Troope of Volunteers with many other Officers and Gentlemen.

This magnificent traine on horseback, as rich as embroidery, velvet, cloth of gold and silver, and jewells, could make them and their pransing horses, proceed'd thro' the streetes strew'd with flowers, houses hung with rich tapessry, windoes and balconies full of ladies; the London Militia lining the ways, and the severall Companies with their banners and loud musiq rank'd in their orders; the fountaines running wine, bells ringing, with speeches made at the severall triumphal arches; at that of the Temple Barr (neere which I stood). ... Bonfires at night. ...

March 26, 1663.

It pleas'd God to take away my sonn Richard, being now a moneth old, yet without any sicknesse or danger perceivable, being to all appearance a most likely child; we suspected much the nurse had overlayne him; to our extreame sorrow, being now againe reduced to one; but God's will be done!

July 16, 1665.

There died of the plague in London this weeke 1100, and in the weeke following above 2000.

August 8.

... Died this weekd in London 4000.

August 15.

There perished this weeke 5000.

September 7.

Came home, there perishing neere 10,000 poore creatures weekly; however I went all along the City and suburbs from Kent Streete to St. James's, a dismal passage, and dangerous to see so many coffines expos'd in the streetes, now thin of people; the shops shut up, and all in mourneful silence, as not knowing whose turn might be next. I went to the Duke of Albermarle for a pest-ship. ...

March 18, 1669.

I went with Lord Howard of Norfolk to visit Sir William Ducie at Charlton, where we din'd; the servants made our coachmen so drunk that they both fell off their boxes on the heath, where we were fain to leave them, and were driven to London by two servants of my Lord's. This barbarous custom of making the masters welcome by intoxicating the servants had now the second time happen'd to my coachmen. ...

June 16, 1670.

I went with some friends to the Bear Garden, where was cock-fighting, beare and bull baiting, it being a famous day for all these butcherly sports, or rather barbarous cruelties. The bulls did exceeding well, but the Irish wolfe-dog exceeded, which was a tall greyhound, a stately creature indeede, who beate a cruell mastiff. One of the bulls toss'd a dog full into *a lady's lap*, as she sate in one of the boxes at a considerable height from the arena. Two poore dogs were kill'd, and so all ended with the ape on horseback, and I most heartily weary of the rude and dirty pastime. ...

October 9, 1671.

... To Euston, a palace of Lord Arlington's, where ... his Majesty came almost every second day with the Duke, who commonly return'd to Newmarket, but the King often lay here, during which time I had twice the honor to sit at dinner with him, with all freedome. It was universally reported that the faire Lady – was bedded one of these nights, and the stocking flung, after the manner of a married bride; I acknowledge she was for the most part in her undresse all day, and that there was fondnesse and toying with that young wanton. ... 'Twas with confidence believed she was first made a *Miss*, as they call these unhappy creatures, with all solemnity at this time.

August 1, 1671.

I was at the marriage of Lord Arlington's onely daughter (a sweete child if ever there was any [then 5 years old]) to the Duke of Grafton, the King's natural sonn by the Dutchesse of Cleaveland. The Abp. of Canterbury officiating, the King and all the grandees being present. I ... tooke no greate joy at the thing for many reasons.

November 6, 1679.

... Was this evening at the re-marriage of the Dutchesse of Grafton to the Duke (his Majesty's natural sonn) she being now 12 years old. The ceremonie was performed ... at Shite-hall by the Bishop of Rochester, his Majesty being present. ... I was privately invited by my Lady, her mother, to be present. I confesse I could give her little joy, and so I plainly told her, but she said the King would have it so, and there was no going back. This sweetest, hopefullest, most beauifull child, and most vertuous too, was sacrific'd to a boy that had ben rudely bred ... and the sweete child made me behold all this with regret. ...

July 13, 1683.

... The astonishing newes was brought to us of the Earle of Essex having cut his throat, having ben but three days a prisoner in the Tower, and this happening on the very day and instant that Lord Russell was on his trial, and had sentence of death. .. It is certaine the King and Duke were at the Tower, and pass'd by his window about the same time this morning, when my Lord asking for a razor shut himself into a closet and perpetrated the horrid act. Yet it was wondred by some how it was possible he should do it in the manner he was found, for the wound was so deepe and wide, that being cut though the gullet, wind-pipe, and both the jugulars, it reach'd to the very vertebrae of the neck, so that the head held to it by a very little skin as it were; the gapping too of the razor, and cutting his owne fingers, was a little strange; but more, that having pass'd the jugulars he should have strength to proceed so far, that an executioner could hardly have don more with an axe. There were odd reflections upon it. ...

October 4.

... Following his Majesty this morning thro' the gallerie, I went, with the few who attended him, into the Dutchesse of Portsmouth's *dressing roome* within her bed-chamber, where she was in her morning loose garment, her maids combing her, newly out of her bed, his Majesty and the gallants standing about her; but that which engag'd my curiosity was the rich and splendid furniture of this woman's apartment, now twice or thrice pull'd down and rebuilt to satisfie her prodigal and expensive pleasures, whilst her Majestys dos not exceede some gentlemen's ladies in furniture and accomodation. Here I saw the new fabriq of French tapisstry, for designe, tendernesse or worke, and incomparable imitation of the best paintings, beyond any thing I had ever beheld ... purchas'd with vice and dishonour!

January 1, 1684.

The weather continuing intolerable severe, streetes of booths were set upon the Thames; the aire was so very cold and thick, as of many yeares there had not ben the like. The small pox was very mortal.

January 25, 1685.

... I saw this evening such a scene of profuse gaming, and the King in the midst of his three concubines, as I had never before seen. Luxurious dallying and prophaneness.

February 4.

I went to London, hearing his Majesty had ben the Monday before (2 Feb.) Surpriz'd in his bed-chamber with an apoplectic fit, so that if, by God's providence, Dr. King (that excellent chirurgeon as well as physitian) had not ben accidentally present to let him blood (having his lancet in his pocket) his Majesty had certainly died that moment. ... This rescu'd his Majesty for the instant, but it was only a short reprieve. He still complain'd, and was relapsing, often fainting, with sometimes epileptic symptoms, till Wednesday, for which he was cupp'd, let blood in both jugulars, had both vomit and purges, which so reliev'd him that on Thursday hopes of recovery were signified in the publiq Gazette, but that day, about noone, the physitians ... prescrib'd the famous Jesuits powder [quinine]; but it made him worse, and ... the effect of his frequent bleeding and other sharp operations us'd by them about his head, so that probably the powder might stop the cirdulation, and renew his former fits, which now made him very weake.

Thus he pass'd Thursday night with greate difficulty, when complaining of a paine in his side, they drew 12 ounces mor of blood from him ... and after some conflicts, the physitians despairing of him, he gave up the ghost at halfe an houre after eleven in the morning. ...

Thus died King Charles II ... a Prince of many virtues, and many great imperfections; debonnaire, easy of accesse, not bloody nor cruel; his contenance fierce, his voice greate, proper of person, every motion

became him; a lover of the sea, and skillfull in shipping; not affecting other studies, yet he had a laboratory, and knew of many empirical medicines, and the easier mechanical mathematics; he lov'd planting and building, and brought in a politer way of living, which pass'd to luxury and intolerable expense. He had a particular talent in telling a story, and facetious passages, of which he had innumerable; this made some buffoons and vitious wretches too presumptuous and familiar, not worthy the favour they abus'd. He tooke delight in having a number of little spaniels follow him and lie in his bed-chamber, where he often suffer'd the bitches to puppy and give suck, which render'd it very offensive, and indeede made the whole Court nasty and stinking.

He would doubtlesse have ben an excellent Prince, had he ben less addited to women, who made him uneasy, and allways in want to supply their unmeasurable profusion, to the detriment of many indigent persons who had singaly serv'd both him and his father. He frequently and easily chang'd favorites, to his greate prejudice. ... The history of his reigne will certainly be the most wonderfull for the variety of matter and accidents, above any extant in former ages: the sad tragical death of his father, his banishment and hardships, his miraculous restauration, conspiracies against him, parlements, wars, plagues, fires, comets, revolutions abroad happening in his time ... inexpressible luxury and prophanesse, gaming and all dissoluteness, as it were total forgetfullnesse of God ... I was witsse of, the King sitting and toying with his concubines, Portsmouth, Cleaveland, and Mazarine, &c. a French boy singing love songs, in that glorious gallery, whilst about 20 of the great courtiers and other dissolute persons were at Basset round a large table, a bank of at least 2000 in gold before them, upon which two gentlemen who were with me made reflexions with astonishment. Six days after was all in the dust!

~ ~ ~

Appendix I

Highland Tales



Loch-Goil from the Head of the Lake
engraved by J. Cousen after a picture by H. McCulloch, 1837.

The Young King of Easaidh Ruadh

From James Wilson, blind fiddler, Islay

The young king of Easaidh Ruadh, after he got the heirship to himself, was at much merry making, looking out what would suit him., and what would come into his humour. There was a GRUAGACH near his dwelling, who was called Gruagach carsalach donn - (The brown curly long haired one.)

He thought to himself that he would go to play a game with him. He went to the Seanagal (soothsayer) and he said to him - "I am made up that I will go to game with the Gruagach carsalach donn."

"Aha!" said the Seanagal, "art thou such a man? Art thou so insolent that thou art going to play a game against the Gruagach carsalach donn? 'Twere my advice to thee to change thy nature and not to go there." "I wont do that," said he. "Twere my advice to thee, if thou shouldst win of the Gruagach carsalach donn, to get the cropped rough skinned maid that is behind the door for the worth of thy gaming, and many a turn will he put off before thou gettest her." He lay down that night, and if it was early that the day came, 'twas earlier than that that the king arose to hold garrung against the Gruagach. He reached the Gruagach, he blessed the Gruagach, and the Gruagach blessed him. Said the Gruagach to him, "Oh young king of Easaidh Ruadh, what brought thee to me to day? Wilt thou game with me?" They began and they played the game. The king won. "Lift the stake of thy gaming so that I may get (leave) to be moving." "The stake of my gaming is to give me the cropped rough skinned girl thou hast behind the door." "Many a fair woman have I within besides her," said the Gruagach. "I will take none but that one." "Blessing to thee and cursing to thy teacher of learning" They went to the house of the Gruagach, and the Gruagach set in order twenty young girls. "Lift now thy choice from amongst these." One was coming out after another, and every one that would come out she would say, "I am she; art thou not silly that art not taking me with thee?" But the Seanagal had asked him to take none but the last one that would come out. When the last one came out, he said, "This is mine." He went with her, and when they were a bit from the house, her form altered, and she is the loveliest woman that was on earth. The king was going home full of joy at getting such a charming woman.

He reached the house, and he went to rest. If it was early that the day arose, it was earlier than that that the king arose to go to game with the Gruagach. "I must absolutely go to game against the Gruagach to day," said he to his wife. "Oh!" said she, "that's my father, and if thou goest to game with him, take nothing for the stake of thy play but the dun shaggy filly that has the stick saddle on her."

The king went to encounter the Gruagach, and surely the blessing of the two to each other was not beyond what it was before. "Yes!" said the Gruagach, "how did thy young bride please thee yesterday?" "She pleased fully." "Hast thou come to game with me to day?" "I came." They began at the gaming, and the king won from the Gruagach on that day. "Lift the stake of thy gaming, and be sharp about it." "The stake of my gaming is the dun shaggy filly on which is the stick saddle."

They went away together. They reached the dun shaggy filly. He took her out from the stable, and

the king put his leg over her and she was the swift heroine! He went home. His wife had her hands spread before him, and they were cheery together that night. "I would rather myself," said his wife, "that thou shouldst not go to game with the Gruagach any more, for if he wins he will put trouble on thy head." "I won't do that," said he, "I will go to play with him to day."

He went to play with the Gruagach. When he arrived, he thought the Gruagach was seized with joy. "Hast thou come?" he said. "I came." They played the game, and, as a cursed victory for the king, the Gruagach won that day. "Lift the stake of thy game," said the young king of Easaidh Ruadh, "and be not heavy on me, for I cannot stand to it." "The stake of my play is," said he, "that I lay it as crosses and as spells on thee, and as the defect of the year, that the cropped rough skinned creature, more uncouth and unworthy than thou thyself, should take thy head, and thy neck, and thy life's look off, if thou dost not get for me the GLAIVE OF LIGHT of the king of the oak windows." The king went home, heavily, poorly, gloomily. The young queen came meeting him, and she said to him, "Mohrooai! my pity! there is nothing with thee tonight." Her face and her splendour gave some pleasure to the king when he looked on her brow, but when he sat on a chair to draw her towards him, his heart was so heavy that the chair broke under him. "What ails thee, or what should ail thee, that thou mightest not tell it to me?" said the queen. The king told how it happened. "Ha!" said she, "what should'st thou mind, and that thou hast the best wife in Erin, and the second best horse in Erin. If thou takest my advice, thou wilt come (well) out of all these things yet."

If it was early that the day came, it was earlier than that that the queen arose, and she set order in everything, for the king was about to go on his journey. She set in order the dun shaggy filly, on which was the stick saddle, and though he saw it as wood, it was full of sparklings with gold and silver. He got on it; the queen kissed him, and she wished him victory of battlefields. "I need not be telling thee anything. Take thou the advice of thine own she comrade, the filly, and she will tell thee what thou shouldst do." He set out on his journey, and it was not dreary to be on the dun steed.

She would catch the swift March wind that would be before, and the swift March wind would not catch her. They came at the mouth of dusk and lateness, to the court and castle of the king of the oak windows.

Said the dun shaggy filly to him, "We are at the end of the journey, and we have not to go any further; take my advice, and I will take thee where the sword of light of the king of the oak windows is, and if it comes with thee without scrape or creak, it is a good mark on our journey. The king is now at his dinner, and the sword of light is in his own chamber. There is a knob on its end, and when thou catchest the sword, draw it softly out of the window 'case'." He came to the window where the sword was. He caught the sword and it came with him softly till it was at its point, and then it gave a sort of a "sgread." "We will now be going," said the filly. "It is no stopping time for us. I know the king has felt us taking the sword out." He kept his sword in his hand, and they went away, and when they were a bit forward, the filly said, "We will stop now, and look thou whom thou seest behind thee." "I see" said he, "a swarm of brown horses coming madly." "We are swifter

ourselves than these yet," said the filly. They went, and when they were a good distance forward, "Look now," said she; "whom seest thou coming?" "I see a swarm of black horses, and one white-

faced black horse, and he is coming and coming in madness, and a man on him." "That is the best horse in Erin; it is my brother, and he got three months more nursing than I and he will come past

me with a whirr, and try if thou wilt be so ready, that when he comes past me, thou wilt take the head off the man who is on him; for in the time of passing he will look at thee, and there is no sword in his court will take off his head but the very sword that is in thy hand." When this man was going past, he gave his head a turn to look at him, he drew the sword and he took his head off, and the shaggy dun filly caught it in her mouth.

This was the king of the oak windows. "Leap on the black horse," said she, "and leave the carcass there, and be going home as fast as he will take thee home, and I will be coming as best I may after thee." He leaped on the black horse, and, "Moirë!" he was the swift hero, and they reached the house long before day. The queen was without rest till he arrived. They raised music, and they laid down woe. On the morrow, he said, "I am obliged to go to see the Gruagach to day, to try if my spells will be loose." Mind that it is not as usual the Gruagach will meet thee. He will meet thee furiously, wildly, and he will say to thee, didst thou get the sword? and say thou that thou hast got it; he will say, how didst thou get it? and thou shalt say, if it were not the knob that was on its end I had not got it. He will ask thee again, how didst thou get the sword? and thou wilt say, if it were not the knob that was on its end, I had not got it. Then he will give himself a lift to look what knob is on the sword, and thou wilt see a mole on the right side of his neck, and stab the point of the sword in the mole; and if thou dost not hit the mole, thou and I are done. His brother was the king of the oak windows, and he knows that till the other had lost his life, he would not part with the sword. The death of the two is in the sword, but there is no other sword that will touch them but it." The queen kissed him, and she called on victory of battlefields (to be) with him, and he went away.

The Gruagach met him in the very same place where he was before. "Didst thou get the sword?" "I got the sword." "How didst thou get the sword?" "If it were not the knob that was on its end I had not got it," said he. "Let me see the sword." "It was not laid on me to let thee see it." "How didst thou get the sword?" "If it were not the knob that was on its end, I got it not." The Gruagach gave his head a lift to look at the sword; he saw the mole; he was sharp and quick, and he thrust the sword into the mole, and the Gruagach fell down dead.

He returned home, and when he returned home, he found his set of keepers and watchers tied back to back, without wife, or horse, or sweetheart of his, but was taken away.

When he loosed them, they said to him, "A great giant came and he took away thy wife and thy two horses." "Sleep will not come on mine eyes nor rest on mine head till I get my wife and my two horses back." In saying this, he went on his journey. He took the side that the track of the horses was, and he followed them diligently. The dusk and lateness were coming on him, and no stop did he make until he reached the side of the green wood. He saw where there was the forming of the site of a fire, and he thought that he would put fire upon it, and thus he would put the night past there.

He was not long here at the fire, when CU SEANG of the green wood came on him.

He blessed the dog, and the dog blessed him.

“Oov! oov!” said the dog, “Bad was the plight of thy wife and thy two horses here last night with the big giant.” “It is that which has set me so pained and pitiful on their track to night; but there is no help for it.” “Oh! king,” said the dog, “thou must not be without meat.” The dog went into the wood. He brought out creatures, and they made them meat contentedly. “I rather think myself,” said the king, “that I may turn home; that I cannot go near that giant.” “Don't do that,” said the dog. “There's no fear of thee, king. Thy matter will grow with thee. Thou must not be here without sleeping.” “Fear will not let me sleep without a warranty.” “Sleep thou,” said the dog, “and I will warrant thee.” The king let himself down, stretched out at the side of the fire, and he slept. When the watch broke, the dog said to him, “Rise up, king, till thou gettest a morsel of meat that will strengthen thee, till thou wilt be going on thy journey. Now,” said the dog, “if hardship or difficulty comes on thee, ask my aid, and I will be with thee in an instant.” They left a blessing with each other, and he went away. In the time of dusk and lateness, he came to a great precipice of rock, and there was the forming of the site of a fire.

He thought he would gather dry fuel, and that he would set on fire. He began to warm himself, and he was not long thus when the hoary hawk of the grey rock came on him. “Oov! oov!” said she, “Bad was the plight of thy wife and thy two horses last night with the big giant.” “There is no help for it,” said he. “I have got much of their trouble and little of their benefit myself.” “Catch courage,” said she. “Thou wilt get something of their benefit yet. Thou must not be without meat here,” said she. “There is no contrivance for getting meat,” said he. “We will not be long getting meat,” said the falcon. She went, and she was not long when she came with three ducks and eight blackcocks, in her mouth. They set their meat in order, and they took it. “Thou must not be without sleep,” said the falcon. “How shall I sleep without a warranty over me, to keep me from any one evil that is here.” “Sleep thou, king, and I will warrant thee.” He let himself down, stretched out, and he slept.

In the morning, the falcon set him on foot. “Hardship or difficulty that comes on thee, mind, at any time, that thou wilt get my help.” He went swiftly, sturdily. The night was coming, and the little birds of the forest of branching bushy trees, were talking about the briar roots and the twig tops; and if they were, it was stillness, not peace for him, till he came to the side of a great river that was there, and at the bank of the river there was the forming of the site of a fire. The king blew a heavy, little spark of fire. He was not long here when there came as company for him the brown otter of the river. “Och! och!” said the otter, “Bad was the plight of thy wife and thy two horses last night with the giant” “There is no help for it. I got much of their trouble and little of their benefit.” “Catch courage, before mid-day to-morrow thou wilt see thy wife. Oh! King, thou must not be without meat,” said the otter. “How is meat to be got here?” said the king. The otter went through the river, and she came and three salmon with her, that were splendid. They made meat, and they took it. Said the otter to the King, “Thou must sleep.” “How can I sleep without any warranty over me?” “Sleep thou, and I will warrant thee.” The king slept. In the morning, the otter said to him, “Thou wilt be this night in presence of thy wife.” He left blessing with the otter. “Now,” said the otter, “if difficulty be on thee, ask my aid and thou shalt get it.” The king went till he reached a rock, and he looked down into a chasm that was in the rock, and at the bottom he saw his wife and his two

horses, and he did not know how he should get where they were. He went round till he came to the foot of the rock, and there was a fine road for going in. He went in, and if he went it was then she began crying. "Ud! ud!" said he, "this is bad! If thou art crying now when I myself have got so much

trouble coming about thee." "Oo!" said the horses, "set him in front of us., and there is no fear for him, till we leave this." She made meat for him, and she set him to rights, and when they were a while together, she put him in front of the horses. When the giant came, he said, "The smell of the stranger is within." Says she, "My treasure! My joy and my cattle! there is nothing but the smell of the litter of the horses." At the end of a while he went to give meat to the horses, and the horses began at him, and they all but killed him, and he hardly crawled from them. "Dear thing," said she, "they are like to kill thee. "If I myself had my soul to keep, it's long since they had killed me," said he. "Where, dear, is thy soul? By the books I will take care of it." "It is," said he, "in the Bonnach stone." When he went on the morrow, she set the Bonnach stone in order exceedingly. In the time of dusk and lateness, the giant came home. She set her man in front of the horses. The giant went to give the horses meat and they mangled him more and more. "What made thee set the Bonnach stone in order like that?" said he. "Because thy soul is in it." "I perceive that if thou didst know where my soul is, thou wouldst give it much respect." "I would give (that)," said she. "It is not there," said he, "my soul is; it is in the threshold."

She set in order the threshold finely on the morrow. When the giant returned, he went to give meat to the horses, and the horses mangled him more and more. "What brought thee to set the threshold in order like that?" "Because thy soul is in it." "I perceive if thou knewest where my soul is, that thou wouldst take care of it." "I would take that," said she. "It is not there that my soul is," said he. "There is a great flagstone under the threshold. There is a wether under the flag. There is a duck in the wether's belly, and an egg in the belly of the duck, and it is in the egg that my soul is." When the giant went away on the morrow's day, they raised the flagstone and out went the wether. "If I had the slim dog of the greenwood, he would not be long bringing the wether to me." The slim dog of the greenwood came with the wether in his mouth. When they opened the wether, out was the duck on the wing with the other ducks. "If I had the Hoary Hawk of the grey rock, she would not be long bringing the duck to me. " The Hoary Hawk of the grey rock came with the duck in her mouth; when they split the duck to take the egg from her belly, out went the egg into the depth of the ocean. "If I had the brown otter of the river, he would not be long bringing the egg to me." The brown otter came and the egg in her mouth, and the queen caught the egg, and she crushed it between her two hands. The giant was coming in the lateness, and when she crushed the egg, he fell down dead, and he has never yet moved out of that. They took with them a great deal of his gold and silver. They passed a cheery night with the brown otter of the river, a night with the hoary falcon of the grey rock, and a night with the slim dog of the greenwood. They came home and they set in order "a CUIRM CURAIDH CRIDHEIL," a hearty hero's feast, and they were lucky and well pleased after that. [*ElectricScotland.com*]

~ ~ ~

The Tale of the Hoodie

From Ann MacGilvray, Islay - April 1859

There was ere now a farmer, and he had three daughters. They were waulking (*Postadh*. A method of washing clothes practised in the Highlands viz., by dancing on them barefoot in a tub of

water.) clothes at a river. A hoodie (Hoodie – the Royston crow – a very common bird in the Highlands; a sly, familiar, knowing bird, which plays a great part in these stories. He is common in most parts of Europe.) came round and he said to eldest one, “M-POS-U-MI, Wilt thou wed me, farmer's daughter?” “I won't wed thee, thou ugly brute. An ugly brute is the hoodie,” said she. He came to the second one on the morrow, and said to her, “M-POS-U-MI, wilt thou wed me?” “Not I, indeed,” said she; “an ugly brute is the hoodie.” The third day he said to the youngest, M-POS-U-MI, “Wilt thou wed me, farmer's daughter?” “I will wed thee,” said she; “a pretty creature is the hoodie,” and on thje morrow they married.

The hoodie said to her, “Whether wouldst thou rather that I should be a hoodie by day, and a man at night; or be a hoodie at night, and a man by day?” “I would rather that thou wert a man by day and a hoodie at night,” says she. After this he was a splendid fellow by day, and a hoodie at night. A few days after they married he took her with him to his own house.

At the end of three quarters they had a son. In the night there came the very finest music that ever was heard about the house. Every man slept, and the child was taken away. Her father came to the door in the morning, and he asked how were all there. He was sorrowful that the child should be taken away, for fear that he should be blamed for it himself.

At the end of three quarters again they had another son. A watch as set on the house. The finest of music came, as it came before, about the house; every man slept, and the child was taken away. Her father came to the door in the morning. He asked if every thing was safe; but the child was taken away, and he did not know what to do for sorrow.

Again, at the end of three quarters they had another son. A watch was set on the house as usual. Music came about the house as it came before; every one slept, and the child was taken away. When they rose on the morrow they went to another place of rest that they had, himself and his wife, and his sister-in-law. He said to them by the way, “See that you have not forgotten any thing.” The wife said, “I FORGOT MY COARSE COMB.” The coach in which they were fell a withered faggot, and he went away as a hoodie.

Her two sisters returned home, and she followed after him. When he would be on a hill top, she would follow to try and catch him; and when she would reach the top of a hill, he would be in the hollow on the other side. When night came, and she was tired, she had no place of rest or dwelling; she saw a little house of light far from her, and though far from her she was not long in reaching it.

When she reached the house she stood deserted at the door. She saw a little laddie about the house, and she yearned to him exceedingly. The housewife told her to come up, that she knew her cheer and travel. She laid down, and no sooner did the day come than she rose. She went out, and when she was out, she was going from hill to hill to try if she could see a hoodie. She saw a hoodie on a hill, and when she would get on the hill the hoodie would be in the hollow, when she would go to the hollow, the hoodie would be on another hill. When the night came she had no place of rest or dwelling. She saw a little house of light far from her, and if far from her she was not long reaching it. She went to the door. She saw a laddie on the floor to whom she yearned right much. The housewife laid her to rest. No earlier came the day than she took out as she used. She passed this day as the other days. When the night came she reached a house. The housewife told her to come up, that she knew her cheer and travel, that her man had but left the house a little while, that she should be clever, that this was the last night she would see him, and not to sleep, but to strive to seize him. She slept, he came where she was, and he let fall a ring on her right hand. Now when she awoke she tried to catch hold of him, and she caught a feather of his wing. He left the feather with her, and he went away. When she rose in the morning she did not know what she should do.

The housewife said that he had gone over a hill of poison over which she could not go without horseshoes on her hands and feet. She gave her man's clothes, and she told her to go to learn smithying till she should be able to make horse shoes for herself.

She learned smithying so well that she made horseshoes for her hands and feet. She went over the hill of poison. That same day after she had gone over the hill of poison, her man was to be married to the daughter of a great gentleman that was in the town.

There was a race in the town that day, and every one was to be at the race but the stranger that had come over to poison hill. The cook came to her, and he said to her, Would she go in his place

to make the wedding meal, and that he might get to the race.

She said she would go. She was always watching where the bridegroom would be sitting.

She let fall the ring and the feather in the broth that was before him. With the first spoon he took up the ring, with the next he took up the feather. When the minister came to the fore to make the marriage, he would not marry till he should find out who had made ready the meal. They brought up the cook of the gentleman, and he said that this was not the cook who made ready the meal.

They brought up now the one who had made ready the meal. He said, "That now was his married wife." The spells went off him. They turned back over the hill of poison, she throwing the horse shoes behind her to him, as she went a little bit forward, and he following her. When they came back over the hill, they went to the three houses in which she had been. These were the houses of his sisters, and they took with them the three sons, and they came home to their own house, and they were happy.

NOTE: The Tale of the Hoodie was written down by Hector Madean, schoolmaster at Ballygrant, in Islay, from the recitation of "Ann MacGihray, a Cowal woman, married to a farmer at Kilmeny, one Angus Macgeachy from Campbelltown." Sent April 14, 1859. [ElectricScotland.com]

~ ~ ~

Appendix J

Origin of Names



Origin of Names

The names/dynasties listed under particular countries either originated in those countries, or have been entrenched in those countries for nearly a thousand years (particularly the British Isles), some of which arrived with William the Conqueror, where some stayed in England, and others went to Scotland and Ireland.

English

Anglo-Saxons
Astley
Audley
Aylesbury
Badlesmere
Barrett
Bassett
Batte
Beaufort
Beckett
Berkeley
Bluet
Boleyn
Botetourte
Bracy
Browne
Burdet
Bures
Burgh
Burghersh
Calthorpe
Camville
Chaucer
Clavering
Clifton
Dacre
Despenser
Dunn
Duston
Echyngham
FitzGeoffrey
FitzHarding
FitzPiers
FitzWalter
Gresley
Greville
Greystoke
Hales
Harbottle
Harris
Haskell
Hatch
Hobruigg
Holand
Howard
Huntingfield
Jernegan
Knyvet
Lanvallei
Lawn
Lightfoot
Ligon
Longespee
Lound
Mallory
Marshal
Mead
Mercia
Mordaunt
Paulet
Poyntz
Raynsford
Ridel
Sanford
Scrope
Segrave
Smythe

Somery
Soule
Spencer
St. John
Stapleton
Talbot
Tibetot
Tiffany
Townes
Trussel
Ufflete
Valoines
Vivonia
Waldegrave
Walton
Warkworth
Warre
Webb
Wentworth
West
Wheeler
Windsor
Woods

French

Abitot
l'Aigle
Albret
Alsace
Anjou
Aquitaine
Artois
Aubigny
Auvergne
Avesnes
Avranches
Baliol
Bar
Bardolf
Basset
Beauchamp
Beaumont
Bigod
Blois
Blount
Bohun
Bolbec
Boulogne
Bourbon
Brabant
Braose
Breteuil
Brienne
Brittany
Briwere
Burgundy
Butler
Cantelou
Capetian
Carolingian
Chateaudun
Chatellerault
Chatillon
Chaworth
Chesney
Chester
Clare
Clermont

Clifford
Clinton
Courcy
Courtenay
Dammartin
Dampierre
Deincourt
Devereux
Dreux
Drury
East-Saxons
Engaine
Eu
Falaise
Feritate
Ferrers
Fiennes
FitzAlan
FitzHugh
Flanders
Foix
Gatinais
Geneville
Glanville
Gournay
Grantmesnil
Grey
Guines
Guise
Hainault
Harcourt
Hastings
Haye
Ibelin
Lacy
Lorraine
Lusignan
Maine
Malet
Mauduit
Merovingian
Meulan
Mohun
Montagu
Montdidier
Montfort
Montmorency
Mortimer
Mowbray
Muscegros
Nevers
Neville
Noel
Normandy
Paris
Perche
Percy
Plantagenet
Ponthieu
Port
Poynings
Préuilly
Provence
Quincy
Razes
Rethel
Roucy
Savoy

Say
St. Liz
St. Pol
St. Sauveur
St. Valery
Stafford
Strange
Taillebois
Taillefer
Thouars
Toeni
Toulouse
Turenne
Ufford
Umfreville
Valois
Vaux
Vere
Vermandois
Vexin
Vipont
Wake
Warrenne
Wydeville
Zouche

German

Brandenburg
Doerr
German-Saxons
Guelders
Hanover
Hesse
Klem
Kochishan
Saxe-Coburg
Weitz

Irish

Dalriada
FitzGerald
Irish
Leinster
MacMurrough
McCoy
McGarvey
O'Brien
O'Toole

Scottish

Angus
Armstrong
Baillie
Brechin
Bruce
Campbell
Carrick
Cheyne
Cline
Douglas
Drummond
Dunbar
FitzMaldred
Fleming
Galloway
Gordon
Graham
Hamilton

Hanna
Hepburn
Home
Huntingdon
Innes
Isle of Man
Keith
Ker
Leslie
Lindsay
Livingston
Lundie
MacDonald
Menteith
Montgomery
Moray
Mure
Murray
Ros
Ross
Scots
Scott
Seton
Sinclair

Somerville
St. Clair
Stewart
Strathearn
Sutherland
Wallace

Spanish

Aragon
Castile
Navarre
Spain

Welsh

Dennis
Davies
Gamage
Herbert
Pole
Price
Tudor
Wales

Other
Angelus

Austria
Bavaria
Bohemia
Candiano
Comnenus
Denmark
Estrada
Fowler
Foy
Frantz
Gand
Grandison
Greece
Habsburg
Hahnenbaum
Hohenstauffen
Hungary
Italy
Heller
Lascaris
Luxembourg
Millard
Mitchell
Montferrat

Norway
Orseolo
Poland
Portugal
Prussia
Roet
Roman Empire
Romans
Russia
Saxony
Spinks
Sweden
Tanner
Tuscany
Vasto
Visigoths
Welf
West-Saxons
Young

Appendix K

History of Castles
& the ancestors associated with them



Carisbrooke Castle Gateways & Keep
engraved by Charles Cousen after a picture by W.H. Bartlett, 1869.

History of Castles

and the ancestors associated with them

Castles of United Kingdom

Abergavenny Castle

The castle is located in Monmouthshire, Wales. It was raised before 1100 by Hamelin de Ballon, and at his death, the lordship of Abergavenny passed to William de Braose Lord of Brecon.

Aberrehidol Castle

One of several raised by Gilbert de Clare when he invaded Ceredigion (Cardigan) in 1110. His dynasty would play a leading part in the invasions of Wales and Ireland.

Alnwick Castle

Alnwick Castle (pronounced "Annick") is in the north-east of England, very close to the Scottish border, and has been owned by the Percy family, the Earls, later Dukes of Northumberland, since 1309. Prior to that it is believed that William I gave the area to Gilbert de Tesson, his standard bearer at the Battle of Hastings, who may have built a wooden castle on the site. It is the second largest inhabited castle in England after Windsor.

The first mention found of Alnwick Castle was in 1096 when Yves de Vescy became the first Baron of Alnwick after de Tesson's unsuccessful rebellion against William II. His castle was described as "very strongly fortified" and the shape of the castle we see today is virtually the same as the castle he built. He built a circular keep made up of several towers surrounding a courtyard with two outer baileys. Much of the masonry from the time can still be seen in the curtain walls. Yves de Vescy supported Empress Matilda against King Stephen and later joined with David, King of Scotland, surrendering the castle to him in 1138 before defeat in battle against the English later that year. At the end of the war he swore loyalty to Stephen and was given further lands in Yorkshire.

In 1172 and 1174 it was besieged by the Scots but successfully defended on both occasions and, during the latter the Scottish King, William the Lion, was captured. In 1212 the then owner of Alnwick, Eustace de Vescy, was one of the ringleaders in the revolt against King John. He fled to Scotland and John ordered the castle to be destroyed but his orders were not carried out. After a reconciliation, the King stayed at Alnwick several times. However, in 1215, Eustace was one of the twenty-five barons who forced John to sign the Magna Carta. King John's army set fire to the town and part of the castle was destroyed too.

In 1265, during the Civil War between Simon de Montfort and Henry III, the Baron John de Vescy chose the wrong side and had both the castle and Barony removed from him. He seized the castle back but was besieged by Prince Edward and had to surrender. After payment of a fine, the castle was restored to him.

Towards the end of the 13th century the cross-border conflicts between Scotland and England worsened and in 1297 William Wallace invaded Northumberland but was unsuccessful in trying to take the castle. The last de Vescy died that year and the castle was initially placed in the care of the Bishop of Durham until it was sold in 1309 to Henry Percy who became the first Lord of Alnwick.

The Percy family was already powerful and the acquisition of Alnwick made them even more so. Henry immediately started to restore the castle. He left the general shape the same but rebuilt most of it including the reconstruction of the keep as seven semi-circular towers and rebuilding most of the towers in the curtain wall. One of these semi-circular towers remains as does the Middle Gateway between the two baileys, many of the towers and much of the curtain wall. His son continued his work building, in 1350, the two octagonal towers on either side of the entrance to the keep. For the next few years, the castle was once again at the centre of the wars between the Scots and the English.

During the early 15th century, the Percy family had some major disagreements with Henry IV, despite having placed him on the throne. In 1403 the castle was besieged, along with their other castles but when the King threatened to use cannons they surrendered so as not to destroy the building. The next year the Earl again fought against the King who advanced northwards with a large army. He took several of the Earl's castles but Alnwick wouldn't surrender so he continued to Berwick. On his way back Alnwick surrendered to him, again because of the threat of cannons. The estates were returned to the family in 1414.

The battles with the Scots continued and in 1424 the castle was besieged and burnt by them. For the next thirty years the Earl invaded Scotland every so often and, in return, the Scots would invade his castle. In 1440

the Barbican was built, separated from the main gatehouse by a ditch and drawbridge. It contains two heavy doors and a portcullis. In 1448 the castle was once again burned by the Scots.

The estates were confiscated during the Wars of the Roses when the Earl took the Lancastrian side. Possession of the castle went backwards and forwards between the two sides during the 1460s with many sieges and attacks. Finally the Yorkists took it over then surrendered it to Henry VI. In 1469 Edward IV returned the honors and estates to the young son of the 3rd Earl.

At the end of the 17th century the Northumberland line became extinct and the castle was owned by the Duke of Somerset through marriage to the Northumberland heiress. The castle was much decayed and was no longer lived in by the family. In the 1720s parts were restored so that it could be lived in and the family started living there again for the first time in 100 years.

In 1750 when the 1st Duke of Northumberland was created he restored the entire castle to a liveable state. Much of this work was done by the famous Robert Adam and his work is still visible in the Gothic exterior, the fine ceilings and fireplaces and also the life-size stone figures guarding the battlements. At the same time, the grounds were landscaped by Capability Brown.

One further restoration took place about a century later. The 4th Duke decided that the castle would be more imposing with a central high tower in the keep, dominating all the others. He also removed a lot of Adam's alterations in order to restore the original medieval appearance. In 1885, the Record Tower in the Inner Bailey was found to be unsafe so it was restored in the style of the 14th century which sadly meant the destruction of an Adam ceiling. At the beginning of the 20th century, the moat was redug and garages built in the stable yard. During the 2nd World War, Newcastle High School for Girls was evacuated to and occupied part of the castle. Now you can visit the castle and marvel at the forboding Gothic buildings which are furnished comfortably in the Italian Renaissance style with a collection of Meissen china and paintings by van Dyck, Canaletto and Titian.

Anstey Castle

Located in Hertfordshire, England. Though it finds no mention in the Domesday Book, the castle is attributed to Eustace Count of Boulogne who received the manor after the Norman conquest.

Ashby Castle

Ashby-de-la-Zouche, Leicestershire, England, takes its name from the Zouche family, whose line died out in 1399. In 1464 Ashby was one of the estates granted to William, Lord Hastings, as a reward for his services to Edward IV. Hastings held the office of Lord Chamberlain and in 1474 he obtained a license to crenellate his houses at Ashby and Kirby Muxloe. Unfortunately, Lord Hastings did not outlive his royal patron for long, falling victim to the coup organized by Richard, Duke of Gloucester. Hastings was accused of treason and dragged off to summary execution in the tower of London. His family, however, retained possession.

Bamburgh Castle

A more impregnable stronghold could not be imagined, for rugged strength and barbaric grandeur it is the king of Northumbrian castles. From nearly every point of the compass its majestic outlines are visible. To the mariner plying between the Tyne and the Elbe, it is the most conspicuous landmark on the North East Coast of England.

Bamburgh sits proud and imposing on top of an outcrop of the Great Whin Sill, an igneous intrusion of about 300 million years old. The emperor Hadrian used this to his advantage and built Hadrian's Wall on top of the sill to keep the Picts from invading Roman England. Bamburgh has a long recorded history and the site is of great historical importance. Although there is no reference to Bamburgh in any current written history books before the 6th century AD, excavations carried out on the site has led archaeologists to believe there were settlements here before this period. Bamburgh, like Edinburgh, is believed to have been an important regional focus and very probably the chief stronghold of a local king.

The history of Northumbria in the 7th and early 8th centuries was extensively recorded by a monk called Bede, whose History of the Church of England became the equivalent of a medieval best seller. Bamburgh was confirmed a site of foremost importance. In pre-Anglo Saxon times it was known as Dun Guyardi, and was a tribal stronghold of an ancient British tribe called the Votadini. The old name has led some to believe that Bamburgh was in fact the legendary Joyous Guard, the castle of Sir Lancelot and Sir Galahad in the time of King Arthur. Bamburgh's recorded history begins in A.D. 547 when King Ida, also known as The Flamebearer,

established the royal city and capital of Bernicia at Bamburgh. King Ida's people were Angles, a fierce race originating from a region now in Southern Denmark near the border with Germany. As Bernicia expanded it conquered the ancient Celtic speaking tribes of the region including the kingdom of Catraeth (centred on the River Tees) and Rheged, in what is now Cumbria. The rise of Bernicia reached a climax in AD 603 when King Aethelfrith of Bernicia, grandson of King Ida, seized control of the neighboring Angle kingdom of Deira. This resulted in a new powerful kingdom of Northumbria. This mighty kingdom covered almost a third of the whole British mainland and became one of the strongest Anglo Saxon kingdoms of Britain.

Aethelfrith gave the settlement of Bamburgh to his wife, Bebba, and it was then named Bebbanburgh in her honor. In the sixth century Bamburgh resembled nothing like it does today. Bede described Bamburgh as being "fortified by a hedge and timber palisade." It was not until the Norman Conquest that the castle as it appears now began to take shape.

From the 6th century through to the 9th century and the beginning of the Viking attacks along the shores of the North East coast, the castle site was the capital of the royal dynasty of Northumbria. The rule of the Danish kings at York did not mark the end of Bamburgh's importance for the region. By the early 10th century a dynasty of earls based at Bamburgh were ruling an Anglo-Saxon Northumberland, which at that time extended from the river Tees (in what is now North Cleveland and the southern most reaches of Durham) to the Forth in Scotland. This family, who were very likely responsible for the fall of Eric Bloodaxe in A.D. 954 and who fought with the kings of the Scots as equals, remained in power in the region until after the Norman Conquest.

The Anglo-Saxon earls took a major part in the Northern rebellions against William the Conqueror and so subsequently lost their grip in the region, being replaced by the Normans. The immense strength of the castle prevented it from ever falling into obscurity and it appears again and again as a place of defense, refuge and at times of imprisonment.

Bamburgh stood until the end of the Wars of the Roses (1453-1486) and was besieged on a number of occasions, but was never taken during its golden age. At the time of the Wars of the Roses, when the castle was a staunchly Lancastrian stronghold, it was here in 1464 that King Henry VI and his wife, Queen Margaret of Anjou, fled following a defeat by the Yorkists at the Battle of Hexham. For a relatively short time the monarch held court at Bamburgh, during which time the castle encompassed the extent of his kingdom. Eventually Henry was defeated when Bamburgh came under siege from Edward IV. It was the first castle in England to come under cannon fire.

The castle was largely restored during the Victorian period by Lord Armstrong (1810-1900) and the oldest remaining part of the building is the 12th Century keep.

Bampton Castle

Southwest of Banbury, Oxfordshire, England. Aymer de Valence, Earl of Pembroke, erected the castle in 1315.

Barnard Castle

Built by Bernard de Baliol and his son in the second half of the 12th century, it lies above the River Tees in County Durham, England. In 1216, during the Magna Charta war, the castle withstood a siege from the Scottish King Alexander II. John Baliol, Edward I's nominee as puppet King of Scotland, forfeited his estates when he repudiated Edward's overlordship of Scotland. Barnard Castle was then granted to the Beauchamp earls of Warwick. Via them, it passed to Richard Neville, the "Kingmaker," and Richard III while he was still Duke of Gloucester. In the 1630s Sir Henry Vane dismantled the castle to provide building materials for Raby Castle.

Beaumaris Castle

Building work began in 1295 on the castle on the 'fair marsh', 'Beau Mareys' in Norman French. It was the last of the great Welsh castles built for Edward I by his chief military architect, Master James of St George. Construction of the castle began immediately following the quelling of a Welsh uprising under Madog Ap Llewelyn.

At its peak the enterprise employed around 2600 men, but by 1298 the substantial funds required had dried up and work came to a halt. Building resumed between 1306 and 1330, but at a much reduced scale, and the great plans for the castle were never completed. The lavish accommodation planned for the north gatehouse

never acquired its second storey, while the block planned for the south gate never rose above its footings. None of the towers gained their turrets, and it is uncertain whether any of the buildings such as the hall, kitchens and stables were ever built.

The castle has an almost perfect symmetrical concentric layout, with a high inner ring of defenses surrounded by a lower outer circuit of walls, surrounded by a moat. At the southern end was a tidal dock for shipping, protected by the shooting deck on Gunners' Walk. The castle would have been virtually impregnable, but its defenses were never truly put to the test.

Bedford Castle

One of the burghs fortified against the Danes by King Edward the Elder, Alfred the Great's son. It was in existence c. 1130 when it was held by Payn de Beauchamp.

Belvoir Castle

Robert de Toeni raised Belvoir Castle after the Norman Conquest. From 1247 it belonged to the Ros family.

Berkeley Castle

The castle is in Gloucestershire, England, and was begun shortly after 1067 by William FitzOsbern, Earl of Hereford. His sub-tenant adopted the name of de Berkeley, and the Berkeleys have held the castle – with one interruption – ever since. The entire interior, including the Great Hall, was remodeled in the mid-14th century. Edward II was murdered in 1327 at Berkeley Castle.

Berkhamsted Castle

Located in Hertfordshire, England, it was probably founded by Robert, Count of Mortain, Earl of Cornwall (William the Conqueror's half-brother).

Beverston Castle

This castle was another Berkeley seat, located in the Cotswolds west of Tetbury in Gloucestershire, England. Maurice de Berkeley (d. 1281) first raised the castle, Henry III pardoning him for building it without a license. It was remodeled by Thomas, Lord Berkeley in the following century.

Blaenllyfni Castle

This centre of the Fitz Herbert Barony of 1208, was probably constructed in the years 1208 to 1215, after which it fell into the hands of the Braose family. It was returned to the Fitz Herberts in 1217/8 and was sacked by Prince Llywelyn ab Iorwerth and Richard Marshall in the October of 1233. Rebuilt soon afterwards it was apparently taken by Llywelyn ap Gruffydd late in 1262. It was retaken by September 1273 when Reginald fitz Peter fitz Herbert was rebuked for his castle taking activities in Brecknock. The castle was seized by the Crown after the abortive uprisings of 1321-2 and given to the Dispensers until their overthrow late in 1326. The castle by this time was nearly ruinous and an inquisition by jury of 23 January 1337 held at the castle found numerous defects which suggests that the castle had never recovered from the attentions of Llywelyn ap Gruffydd, even if the archaeological evidence does suggest that the castle defenses were improved at this time.

Bolebec Castle

Located near the village of Whitchurch in Buckinghamshire, England. It takes its name from Hugh de Bolebec, whose illegal castle-building attracted criticism from the Pope in 1147. Despite its adulterine origin, the castle survived Henry II's accession, passing to the de Vere earls of Oxford. They rebuilt it in stone, but the castle was destroyed by Parliament after the Civil War.

Bolingbroke Castle

In Lincolnshire, England, it was first raised by William de Roumare (created Earl of Lincoln by King Stephen). It passed via the de Lacys to the earls and dukes of Lancaster. The future Henry IV (Henry of Bolingbroke) was born in the castle in 1367.

Bolton Castle

Bolton Castle is in Wensleydale, North Yorkshire, part of the Yorkshire Dales National Park which is one of the most beautiful parts of England. Today's rolling hills covered with heather and low scrub were, when the castle was built, hidden by an ancient forest. The castle has never been sold and remains the property of Lord Bolton, a direct descendant of the Scrope family who initially built it in the 14th century. The building work started in 1379 for Sir Richard le Scrope who, as Chancellor of England, was granted a licence by Richard II to crenellate his manor house. He felt he needed a home more fitting to his rank and status so he left the house and chose a site half a mile away to build himself a castle. The mason was Johan Lewyn who is also thought to have built Ayton and Warkworth amongst other northern castles.

Like Bodiam, Bolton was built at a time when the castle was a home as well as protection. The courtyard was rectangular surrounded by three storey residential walls, 9 feet thick, with residential towers at each corner. The Great Hall was on the first floor of the north side. Because it was a home, Bolton didn't have elaborate fortifications but what it had were excellent for defense. The gatehouse, on the east side, had a portcullis at each end; past that there were arrowslits in the ground floor rooms which covered every part of the courtyard. The four entrance doors into the castle are in each of the corners of the courtyard in the towers. Each of these had a portcullis and machicolations in the towers overhead. If these doors were breached, access to the upper levels was by narrow staircases.

_____ In 1568 Mary Queen of Scots stayed at Bolton Castle for 6 months, plotting with many of the northern catholic nobles against Elizabeth I. However the Scropes were not involved in her plots, being loyal to the Queen so they persuaded her to move elsewhere.

_____ During the Civil War, John Scrope held the castle for the Royalists. It was besieged and bombarded with mortars in 1645 though, when taken, the garrison was allowed to leave with honor. Two years later Parliament ordered it to be rendered uninhabitable and a new manor house was built 5 miles away.

_____ After this, the castle was plundered for its stone by local people and in 1761 the north-east tower, weakened by artillery fire during the Civil War, collapsed. An extensive conservation project has been undertaken with the assistance of English Heritage. The remaining buildings have been repaired and made safe and the grounds have been improved with a walled herb garden, a vineyard and a maze in the style of medieval times. The castle is open to the public with furnishings and tableaux in some of the rooms.

Brancepeth Castle

Four miles southwest of Durham, England, it was the original seat of the powerful Neville family. It is first mentioned during the Magna Charta way of 1216. Rebuilding in the late 14th century is attributed to Ralph Neville, 1st Earl of Westmorland.

Brecon Castle

Overlooks the confluence of the rivers Usk and Honddu in Breconshire, Wales. Bernard de Newmarch founded the castle in 1093, then it passed to the de Braose dynasty. King John seized the castle in 1207 after driving William de Braose into rebellion, but it was recaptured by his son Reginald de Braose during the Magna Charta War. In 1241 Brecon and its lordship were inherited by the Bohun earls of Hereford, then in 1372 to the Stafford dukes of Buckingham.

Bristol Castle

Sir Bartholomew IV 1st Baron de Badlesmere [1275-1322] was governor of Bristol Castle.

Bronllys Castle

Overlooking the Afon Llynfi, it guarded the route between Hay and Brecon in Wales. It was ounded by Richard FitzPons, founder of the Clifford family. The eastern borders of Wales (the Welsh Marches) contain an unusual density of round keeps, an innovative design developed for its superior ability to repel missiles thrown from siege engines. At least a dozen of these towers were constructed in the region during the 13th century, including not only Bronllys but also the curious cylindrical tower at Tretower, just 15 miles to the south. Here at Bronllys, the stone cylinder replaced an earlier wooden structure when the need for strength and durability became the Norman lord's priority in order to safeguard his feudal lands from the local Welsh malcontents.

____As a reward for loyal service during his incursion into eastern Wales, Bernard de Neufmarche (Newmarch), Lord of Brecon, granted his followers parcels of land to set up their own lordly manors. One of Neufmarche's supporters was Richard FitzPons, then baron of Clifford, a village on the English side of the Welsh Borders not too far from Bronllys. FitzPons probably seized the land of Cantref Selyf in the late 1080's, during Neufmarche's incursion into Brycheiniog (when he became Lord of Brecon). The lordship of Cantref Selyf and its

administrative center at Bronllys remained in the Clifford family (the surname was adopted by Richard's son, Walter) until the early 14th century. As an aside, Walter de Clifford I's daughter was the "Fair Rosamund", Henry II's notorious mistress.

____Richard FitzPons probably built the first castle at Bronllys, a typical Norman motte and bailey stronghold. Situated on a well-appointed site overlooking the junction of two rivers, the Llynfi and Dulais, the castle guarded the main route into Welsh territory. While the castle saw little military action, it did play a role in maintaining Norman dominance in the region. The Cliffords were required to pay knight's fee for the right to own the castle and its surrounding estates, and when necessary, the lord of Cantref Selyf paid the Lord of Brecon the sum of five and a half armored horses (according to Smith and Knight, 1981) plus provided a number of soldiers.

____The motte castle built by FitzPons still dominates the site. The huge mound solidly supports the stone keep, which was added by Richard's great grandson, Walter de Clifford III. The initial stronghold began its existence as a typical motte and bailey fortification, with an additional rectangular outer bailey. Today, a modern home and gardens sit on the site of the inner bailey, however, the basic form of the original castle is clearly visible in the alignment of the trees, the perimeter outline, and the masonry remains.

Builth Castle

The first of Edward I's great Welsh castles, it was reconstructed about 1277. The castle has also been in the hands of the de Braose family (c. 1095), Llywelyn the Great (by marriage), and the Mortimers (from 1242).

Bunratty Castle

Bunratty Castle overlooks the River Shannon. The castle is in excellent condition and well worth the visit, but it's a prime tourist attraction and besieged by tour buses. With the Folk Park and Durty Nelly's pub nearby, the area is starting to resemble a medieval theme park, but the historical reality shouldn't be mistaken for a Disney world creation. Durty Nelly's pub, about 75 feet from the castle, will surely ruin any good photograph of the castle, but it does serve some excellent food in the dining area.

The Vikings built a fortified settlement at this spot, a former island surrounded by a moat. Then the Normans came: Thomas de Clare built the first stone structure on the site in the 1270's. The present castle is the fourth or fifth structure to occupy the location beside the River Ratty. The castle was built in the early 1400's by the McNamara family, but fell shortly afterwards to the O'Briens, kings of Thomond, who controlled the castle until the 17th century. Admiral Penn, father of William Penn, resided here for a short time. Today, the castle's Great Hall hold a very fine collection of 14th to 18th century furniture, paintings, and wall hangings. The Great Hall also hosts "medieval banquets" complete with maids playing the harp, court jesters, food a la the middle ages, and mead (a honey wine favored by the Irish in the middle ages).

Caerphilly Castle

Caerphilly Castle, covering an area of 30 acres, is the largest castle in Wales and one of the biggest in all of Britain. In 1268, Gilbert de Clare, Lord of Glamorgan, began building the castle to defend contested land during his conflict with Llywelyn ap Gruffudd, Prince of Wales.

The castle is a magnificent example of a medieval concentric design, with the curtain wall of the inner central ward surrounded by an outer curtain wall which is surrounded by water defenses and in some places by even more walls.

Caergwrle Castle

The last of the native Welsh castles, it was begun in 1277 by Dafydd ap Gruffudd. The castle stands north of Wrexham, overlooking Caergwrle village.

Caerleon Castle

In Monmouthshire, Wales, the castle is mentioned in the Domesday Book (1086). It had recently been founded by the Norman Turstin FitzRolf. It was taken over by Henry II, then William Marshal the Younger, and in 1245, Caerleon was taken over by the de Clare lords of Glamorgan.

Caernarfon Castle

For sheer majestic elegance, Caernarfon Castle is hard to beat. Regarded as “the fairest that mortal had ever seen” from an old Welsh tale, it was designed to be the seat of power and government in Edward I’s campaign to conquer Wales.

Caernarfon owes its existence to a fascinating, yet bloody and turbulent period of history. It marked a change in castle building design, and combined with the likes of Harlech, Conway, Rhuddlan and Beaumaris, we embark upon a string of castles that were not only the means to control the Welsh, but were state of the art for their time. Edward I (also known as Edward Longshanks) reign lasted from 1272 to his death in 1307, and during this period ordered the construction of some of the finest pieces of architecture ever seen in the United Kingdom. So, the questions should be asked: what drove Edward to build Caernarfon? What makes Caernarfon such a special place in terms of castle design?

Historically, the site on the northern banks of the Seiont River, which flows into the Menai Strait, has long been regarded as strategically important. A Roman fort (80A.D.) and a motte and bailey castle were built here previously, the latter around 1090 by Hugh of Avranches, believed to have accompanied William in his conquest of Britain in 1066. Archaeological evidence suggests that part of the motte exists within the modern Caernarfon today. It lies 8 miles south-west of Bangor and close to the Isle of Anglesey, known as the “garden of Wales” during Edward’s time, providing agriculturally fertile land to the relatively infertile North Wales and western shores. Control of this land would give Edward a massive boost in supplying the likes of Harlech and Aberystwyth with goods and provisions.

When Edward I ascended the throne on 20th November 1272, Wales was an independent and separate country to England. Although split into petty kingdoms, the rulers of Gwynedd in North Wales gradually asserted control over their southern neighbors and saw the beginnings of unification under one man: Llewelyn ap Gruffudd. He saw himself as overall ruler of Wales and over time, anti-English feeling heightened as the English were chased out of the country.

It wasn’t too long into Edward’s reign before he found himself at war with Wales, although largely due to the incompetence of his father, Henry III. Llewelyn was bestowed with the title Prince of Wales after the English lost some of their territories through fighting, and although Henry acknowledged Llewelyn’s territorial gains, those lords who lost land did not. The final straw for Llewelyn could have been the building of Caerphilly Castle by the Earl of Gloucester, one such lord who disputed the Welsh claims to territory, and built right in Llewelyn’s back yard. Edward did not take sides in the dispute, as Llewelyn owed him a substantial amount of money following Edward’s crusade, money he could do without losing. Edward did demand that Llewelyn attend his coronation, but this was snubbed, despite repeated attempts by Edward to force him. Indeed, Edward brought his court to Chester Castle, close to the borders of Wales and England, yet Llewelyn still refused to show. Edward’s temper finally snapped and on 12th November 1276, at Westminster, he declared Llewelyn a rebel, a quarrel to be settled by war.

Building work at Caernarfon commenced in May 1283, within days of the arrival of Edward and his army. Whilst the castle would not have the might of the likes of Harlech and Rhuddlan, it was to be a symbol of conquest and new government in Wales. Not only that, but it was Edward’s plan to create a nucleus in this area,

a self-sufficient settlement that would provide Edward with goods imported from Europe, but the vision of a civilised society was to subdue and offer moral fibre to the natives. This led to a walled town at Caernarfon (large parts of the walled town remain today). In what could be an act of revenge and a clear message to Llewelyn, the existing Welsh fortification here was levelled, and the castle built directly on top.

There are many features to the castle that are both striking and fascinating, none more so than the banded appearance of the stone which looks remarkably like the walls of Constantinople. Edward was impressed by the structure of these walls in his involvement during the Eighth Crusade (1270-1272). To achieve this, he used limestone from quarries in Anglesey, interspersed with brown sandstone from Menai. Upper and lower shooting galleries were built in the South Wall, giving Caernarfon the ability to shower would-be attackers with arrows from three levels and across several angles at once. The King's Gate was perhaps the most elaborate and, frankly, over the top element of building work in the design, despite the fact that it was never finished. Five drawbridges and no fewer than six portcullises were planned. The castle really didn't need that many, one would suffice and two would surely calm the fears of even the most nervous inhabitants. Of course, this doesn't even begin to take into account the number of murder holes, spy holes and arrow loops. Yet this was a reflection of Caernarfon's real role, to impress and impose rather than to defend. This is not to say that Caernarfon was a weak castle, for its defenses were formidable.

Edward employed the services of Master James of St Georges, an experienced and highly regarded mason, to design and build the mighty castle. The irregular appearance reflects the way the walls follow the contours of the underlying rock, similar to Conway but in stark contrast to the likes of Beaumaris which was built on marshland. Yet despite some sophisticated features, Caernarfon remains a simple enclosure with a curtain wall. It does, however, provide a fine example of the move away from the tall towers, or keeps, from earlier castle designs. Built near tidal water ensured it was able to be re-supplied with goods, provisions and troops if need be.

The building work took on two phases. Initially the plan was to ensure the site was defensible, and as a result work on the North Wall wasn't started. The town walls were complete though, which included towers along its length, and it was this that was to protect the castle. The town itself was intended to portray a model of decency to the Welsh, but they weren't permitted to live within the town walls. They were, in fact, encouraged to trade, to buy and sell goods, with laws that made it illegal to trade anywhere else. It seems that this was a position the English could not lose with. Yet the Welsh came to hate these towns, the castles, including Caernarfon, a symbol of a conquered nation. And in 1294, they rose again.

What followed was easily regarded as a true national rebellion. Edward's castles at Harlech, Conway and Caernarfon were all targeted. At Caernarfon, the Welsh scored a major victory, burning parts of the castle, defacing the fabric and destroying parts of the town wall. The town itself was overrun, and Edward, at the time preparing to engage the French in war, was furious. The war with France would have to wait, and he diverted his troops to face the Welsh once more. In some ways, Edward was more than ready, having his troops already equipped. What followed was probably the largest deployment of troops in Wales so far, with some 35,000 men given their orders. The battle that followed was a close affair after the English supply lines were broken and 16,000 men under direct orders of Edward himself faced starvation and disease at Conway. Yet the economic power of England enabled this potentially embarrassing situation to be remedied. When cut off from the land supply line, Edward was able to ship in supplies to feed his men, a result of Conway being built next to the sea and therefore able to re-supply in times such as this.

Caernarfon was repaired and the North Wall built by 1330. Edward spent a total of £25,000 over a period close to fifty years on his beloved castle. It remains unique, though partly incomplete, Edward's dream never fully realised. He died, aged 68, after a period of illness whilst fighting the Scots rebellion.

Cahir Castle

Cahir Castle is a great 15th-century Butler castle near the town centre of Cahir. Cahir Castle and the town lie about 15 km south of the town of Cashel and its impressive fortification, the Rock of Cashel. The Butlers were granted lands in the area in 1192, but they didn't build their first castle until the 13th century. The castle is in remarkable condition and one of the largest in Ireland.

The inhabitants surrendered to Cromwell in 1650 without a struggle -memories were fresh of the battering the place had suffered in 1599 at the hands of the Earl of Essex and his meager two cannons -and it has been extensively restored. Some of John Boorman's movie, *Excalibur*, was filmed in Cahir Castle. The castle sits on a rocky island in the River Suir, and is comprised three sections, surrounded by a thick fortifying wall, with the main structural towers and halls around the innermost section.

Cainhoe Castle

In a field just to the southeast of Clophill in Bedfordshire, England, are the earthworks of a castle probably raised by Nigel d'Aubigny, recorded as the tenant in the Domesday Book.

Cambridge Castle

Cambridge originated as a Roman town on the west bank of the River Cam. A Saxon burgh flourished within the Roman defenses, but William the Conqueror established his castle on the site in 1068 and the townsfolk migrated to the other side of the river. From 1284-1299 Edward I completely rebuilt the castle.

Camlais Castle

High up on the edge of the Brecon Beacons, southeast of Sennybridge, Wales, the castle was held by the lords of Brecon. It may have been built by the last William de Braose or by Humphrey de Bohun who inherited the lordship in 1241.

Cardiff Castle

Most likely, the Romans built earliest settlement at Cardiff in the mid-first century AD. A site of great strategic value along the extensive network of Roman roads in Wales, Cardiff sat along the main link between Caerleon (with its wonderful, virtually intact, amphitheater) and Carmarthen (where another, less well-preserved, amphitheater was built). The Romans constructed a 10-acre fort on the spot where the castle now rests. Inside the walls would have been barracks, workshops, stores and other essential buildings. Apparently, three successive forts were erected by the Romans during their tenure at Cardiff. However, it was not until Lord Bute's building program in the late 1800s that any Roman ruins were uncovered. Much of what does remain from the Roman period is now clearly visible as you approach the main entrance into the castle, at the base of the later Norman walls, separated from later stonework by a narrow layer of red sandstone.

While some of the Roman masonry endured until the Norman invasion it was quickly incorporated into a typically Norman fortress. Indeed, Cardiff's authentic castle is of Norman origins. It is an outstanding example of the classic motte and bailey fortification. Passing through the gatehouse, you are immediately seized by the vision of the motte as it surges upwards from the lush green bailey directly across from the gateway. And, its crowning glory is the remarkably intact shell keep. With the bulky motte and its surrounding water-filled ditch, the marvelous keep gives the visitor a perfect image of the true Norman castle.

The first Norman castle was built on the site in about 1091, by Robert Fitzhamon, Lord of Gloucester and one of the Conqueror's favored followers, an earth and timber fortification, merely a mound and bailey. The motte, erected over a rocky hillock, was some 40 feet tall, and would have been protected by a timber palisade. During the 12th century, the castle's lord, Robert "the Consul" (the natural son of King Henry I), realized the defensive value of reinforcing his fortress with stone and ordered the construction of the shell keep. The 12-sided keep survives in fine condition, the only significant additions being its 15th century gatehouse and the stairway breaching the sloping motte. For a time, the keep was the prison of Robert, 2nd Duke of Normandy (and also Fitzhamon's uncle), on the command of Fitzhamon's father, the king.

Much of Cardiff Castle's history revolves around conflicts with the native populace. In 1183-84 the Welsh revolted, and caused much damage to the castle and its associated town. Even though the powerful de Clare family took hold of the castle (as well as numerous other estates) in the following century, problems persisted

with Welsh insurgency. In the 1270s, when Wales was unified under the leadership of the charismatic Welshman, Llywelyn ap Gruffydd, Gilbert de Clare refortified the castle in anticipation of further Welsh rebellion. The curtain wall was strengthened and construction of the Black Tower and south gateway was initiated. The much awaited assault never occurred and de Clare's work remains in solid repair to this day.

In 1306, the castle passed to Britain's notorious Despenser family and remained their possession for almost 100 years. Conflict (and not just with the Welsh) was the Despenser strong point. In 1317, Llywelyn Bren was imprisoned at Cardiff Castle after instigating a revolt against the English overlords. There, he "suffered a traitor's death in direct violation of the weak king's command, with his body being dragged through the streets", a despicable act so typical of the Despensers. In 1321, the Despenser castle at Cardiff was besieged and captured by neighboring marcher lords who sought to overthrow their pathetic king, Edward II. A vocal supporter of the king, Hugh le Despenser was assessed as an interloper with unfair access to the monarchy. In 1326, the marcher lords attained their goal: Edward II was imprisoned (and brutally murdered the following year), and Hugh le Despenser was hanged at Hereford.

During the infamous rebellions of Owain Glyndwr in the earliest years of the 15th century, the Welsh avenged the murder of Llywelyn Bren, savagely assaulting Cardiff Castle and setting the town on fire. However, the Despensers retained control of the castle until 1414, when the rights to Cardiff's castle passed to the husband of the last Despenser heir, Isabel. Passing shortly thereafter to the widowed Isabel's second husband, the castle became the possession of another influential family, the Beauchamps, earls of Warwick. Richard Beauchamp was responsible for the construction of new buildings at Cardiff Castle, including residential quarters along the western curtain wall and the impressive Octagon Tower.

As tutor to the infant king Henry VI, Richard Beauchamp travelled with his charge to France, and died there in 1445. Richard's daughter, Ann, received Cardiff Castle as part of her inheritance, and her husband, Richard Neville, became its new lord. Neville later became known as "Warwick, the King-Maker" for his extreme influence in the affairs of State. After the King-maker's death in 1471, the fortress at Cardiff passed first to his eldest daughter, another Isabel, and then to her sister, Ann (whose husband, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, became King Richard III in 1483). Upon King Richard's defeat by Henry VII, founder of the formidable Tudor dynasty, Cardiff Castle was granted to the new king's well-respected uncle, Jasper.

With the exception of a brief time when Ann Beauchamp regained possession of the castle, it belonged to the monarchy for the next 75 years. In 1550, William Herbert, member of one of Britain's most powerful medieval families (and brother of Henry VIII's last wife, Catherine Parr), obtained control of Cardiff Castle, which he embellished to some degree. During the English Civil War the Herberts sided with their king, Charles I, offering him refuge at the castle in the summer of 1645.

Cardiff Castle was a prize sought by both sides of the struggle, the Royalists and Parliamentary forces, but it was eventually taken by Oliver Cromwell's army. Interestingly, despite sustaining some damage during the Civil Wars, Cardiff Castle was essentially ignored by Cromwell, who ordered the "sighting" of so many other Welsh castles in 1649. In fact, the Herberts were able to make necessary repairs to the castle and kept it in running order well into the following century.

However, after the Civil War, the Herberts began spending more and more time away from their castle in Cardiff, and, in 1776, the last Herbert heir, Charlotte Jane, passed the estates to her husband John Stuart, soon to become the Earl of Bute. The Butes were to have incredible impact on the development of Cardiff into the city we see today. Extensive modifications were made to the castle's interiors by various Bute earls, and the famous landscape artist "Capability" Brown was brought in to recreate the grounds. Fortunately, the Norman fortress remained little altered, although for a time the ditch was infilled with earth. The castle's ultimate fate was left to the whimsy of the 3rd Marquess of Bute, who assumed the title in 1848 and began the castle's rebirth in 1865. In 1947, Cardiff Castle was turned over to the care and trust of the people of the city, and Cardiff City Council maintains the site in outstanding condition.

Cardigan Castle

The unfortunate condition of Cardigan Castle belies its historical significance, for Cardigan was the site of

frequent conflict, particularly between the Welsh princes of Deheubarth and the ambitious Norman invaders of West Wales. The castle's earliest history is quite confusing. Sources refer to a motte castle built here as early as 1093, probably by the Norman, Roger de Montgomery. More than likely though, the original earth and timber castle was built at a separate location, not at the edge of the modern city, but about 1 mile to the west.

The fact of the motte's existence in the late 11th century is clear, but its fate is clouded with discrepancies. We do know, however, that a second castle was erected in 1110, by Gilbert de Clare, who also founded the adjacent town, relocated to the location where the stone castle was eventually constructed. The next 100 years were tumultuous, and the second castle changed hands frequently between the Welsh and the Normans.

Cardigan Castle's most significant role was as the greatest stronghold in the arsenal of Rhys ap Gruffydd, the Prince of Deheubarth better known as the Lord Rhys. Rhys seized Cardigan from its Norman overlords sometime around 1170 and set about transforming the castle into stone. Interestingly, Cardigan was "the first recorded Welsh masonry castle (Davis)", that is, the first stone castle built by the native princes of Wales. It remained the property of the Lord Rhys until his death in 1197. The Lord Rhys was especially proud of his castle at Cardigan.

In 1176, he put on an elaborate festival, the forerunner of the Eisteddfod, recorded in the *Brut y Tywysogion* as follows: at Christmas in that year, the Lord Rhys ap Gruffydd held court in splendor at Cardigan, in the castle. And he set two kinds of contests there: one between bards and poets, another between harpists and crowders and pipers and various classes of music craft. And he had two chairs set for the victors. And he honored those with ample gifts. And, when Gerald of Wales accompanied Baldwin, the Archbishop of Canterbury, on his mission in 1188 to recruit followers for the Third Crusade, the Lord Rhys warmly welcomed the clerics and their entourage to his fine castle at Cardigan. After Rhys' death, Cardigan Castle fell into another state of chaos. As was typical of the times, two of Rhys' sons, Maelgwyn and Gruffydd, disputed their inheritance. Cardigan Castle became a pawn in their struggles, and Maelgwyn seized the castle (and his brother), surrendered Gruffydd to the Normans, and sold the castle to King John "for a small worthless price."

This sale, however, did not end the battles for control of the castle. Llywelyn the Great next captured Cardigan Castle (and many others in Welsh Wales), followed by the Norman, William Marshal (the younger), then the Welsh again, and, lastly, the Normans took possession. Repairs were made in the 1240s, after this final Norman conquest, and a new keep, the two towers, and town wall were constructed. By the late 1200s, King Edward I had firm control of the castle, which was sporadically maintained until the English Civil War, when it was finally slighted by Cromwell.

Carew Castle

The present structure was begun in the 13th century by Sir Nicholas de Carew, a high ranking officer and frequent campaigner in Ireland. Carew's three towers, the massive west front and the Chapel, were probably built by Sir Nicholas. Historically though, the castle is probably most closely associated with Sir Rhys ap Thomas (1449-1525), the flamboyant and controversial Welsh military leader, who inherited the estates of Dinefwr, including Carew, on his father's death. Thomas was the definition of Welsh chivalry. A brave lord and knight, fierce in battle and love, he played a major role in Henry Tudor's victory over King Richard III at the Battle of Bosworth Field in 1485, a turning point in British history. Rhys was knighted on the battlefield and made Governor of Wales, by the now King Henry VII.

By the time the Tudors came to power though, the age of chivalry was drawing quickly to a close. The last great Welsh tournament of knights was staged by Thomas at Carew in 1507. Spread over five days, the tournament drew over six hundred knights and retainers, with Rhys presiding over and judging the various contests. The sight was a marvel to behold. Chroniclers of the time wrote how the tournament was still the topic of conversation years after its conclusion.

The castle was remodeled by Sir John Perrot during the Tudor period, and it is his styling that transformed the Welsh fortress into a showcase of beauty and elegance. Perrot, the illegitimate son of King Henry VIII, embarked on the great rebuilding of the north front of the castle, including the Long Gallery, famous for its graceful Tudor-style windows. The interior of Carew retains a surprising amount of detail. Henry Tudor's crest is featured above the carved fireplace in the Lesser Hall, and coats of arms adorn the entrance to the Great Hall.

An elegant three-storied porch, once with twenty-three steps, made for a grand entrance into the Hall. The most striking interior view is from the courtyard into Perrot's "North Range," a structure over 150 feet long with its rows of mullioned Tudor windows. The striking north front, exhibiting exterior views of Carew's famous windows, is the view most often associated with the castle.

Celtic Fort at Carew - Recent archaeological excavations have shown that Carew was the site of a major fortification long before the Normans came to Wales. Archaeologists have found the remains of five, possible six defensive ditches to the east of the present castle. The ditches, in parallel lines, were cut into the underlying rock and would have had ramparts of stone and earth behind them. There are also traces of a gate passage, and post-holes suggesting a gateway. The outline of one of the ditches is just visible in the grass in the castle's outer ward, but the centre of the fort must lie underneath the middle and inner wards and has not yet been excavated.

There is no way of putting an exact date on these ditches and ramparts, but this kind of defensive structure is characteristic of the Iron Age Celts, who dominated Britain from the 8th century BC to the 1st century AD. The oldest objects found during the excavations were pottery and brooches from the Roman period (1st-5th centuries AD). Other objects from the 6th and 7th centuries, together with radiocarbon dates obtained from organic material, suggest that the site was continuously occupied up to Norman times. Only then were the ramparts flattened and the ditched filled in. These discoveries pose intriguing questions about Carew before the Normans.

Whose fort was it, and why was it so important? The 11th-century Carew Cross, standing to the east of the castle beside the main road, may provide a vital clue. On a small panel half-way down one side is carved the name of Maredudd ap Edwin, joint ruler of the kingdom of Deheubarth until his death in 1035. If the cross is a memorial stone, then Carew may have been a royal residence of this ancient Celtic kingdom. This would explain why, when Princess Nest - granddaughter of the last king of Deheubarth - married the Anglo-Norman lord Gerald de Windsor, her dowry included the fort and lands of Carew. Against this background, Gerald's decision to flatten the old defenses and build his own castle on this spot takes on a new political significance. It was a display of Norman authority which, at the same time, harnessed many centuries of Celtic tradition.

Carisbrooke Castle

Carisbrooke Castle is on the Isle of Wight off the south coast of England and is probably best known as the castle where Charles I was imprisoned prior to his execution.

Not much is known of its earliest history, although one remaining ruined wall suggests there was some sort of building on the site in late Roman times. The Jutes probably took over the Roman fort and the Saxons would have been there by the late 7th century. The remaining earthworks date back to the end of the 11th and early 12th centuries, including the motte and bailey – a shell keep on a mound and a curtain wall round a courtyard. The chapel dates back to the 13th century and was finally restored during the last century having fallen into ruin and the governor's house, with its medieval Great Hall, now houses the castle museum. The large gatehouse dates from the 14th and 15th centuries.

After the Norman Conquest, William I gave the Isle of Wight to his friend William FitzOsbern who built a wooden castle on top of the Saxon mound. After an unsuccessful uprising against the king by Fitzosbern's son, the castle was taken over by the Crown and William arrested his traitorous half-brother Odo there in 1092. The lordship was then granted to the de Redvers family who built the stone castle. In 1136 Baldwin de Redvers fought for Empress Maud against King Stephen and, after being defeated, was pursued to the castle which was besieged. The water supply ran out and the castle was surrendered. Countess Isabella was the last of the family to own the castle and was the first person in England to use glass for windows. When she died in 1293, it reverted to King Edward I.

During the Hundred Years War, the island and castle were frequently attacked by the French. In 1377 they landed on the island and lay siege to the castle. It was successfully defended after the French Commander was killed, as legend has it by a long distance Bowman. In Elizabethan times the Spanish were heading for the island when they were defeated in a naval battle. Because they had come close to invading, the castle was altered so it could withstand artillery bombardment. An Italian engineer was employed in the 1590s to build an outer wall, enclosing the original castle and the walls, bastions and bulwarks can still be seen today. Landscaped gardens

were also added. Since then the only alterations have been modernisation.

When Charles I escaped from imprisonment at Hampton Court in 1647, he sought refuge on the Isle of Wight. Unfortunately the man he thought would help him, Colonel Hammond who was the governor, imprisoned him in Carisbrooke. He tried unsuccessfully to escape three times, but in 1648 was returned to London where he was executed in 1649. The following year two of his children were put in detention in the castle where 14 year old Princess Elizabeth died of pneumonia. Her brother was set free two years later and sent to Holland.

Another thing for which Carisbrooke is famous is the 49m deep medieval well. Not unusual in itself, but uniquely it was worked by a donkey walking inside a treadwheel and this is still demonstrated to visitors today.

Carlisle Castle

At the west end of the Scottish border in Cumberland, it was built by William II after he captured the citadel there in 1092.

Carrickfergus Castle

Carrickfergus Castle stands in a strategic position on a rocky spur above the harbor on the northern shore of Lough Belfast and is a perfectly preserved Norman castle, probably the earliest stone castle in all Ireland. It is in the small Northern Irish town of Carrickfergus, Co Antrim and the name means “rock of Fergus,” Fergus being a king who was shipwrecked and drowned there in the 6th century. Originally it was almost completely surrounded by sea.

John de Courcy, the Anglo-Norman baron who conquered much of Ulster and governed it from 1177 to 1204 started building the castle in about 1178 to guard the approach to Lough Belfast. It has three wards, the inner ward was the first and dates from this time as does the remains of the great hall. The large square keep which still dominates the castle was also started, incorporating the well. A spiral staircase climbs all the way up the keep although originally the keep’s entrance was on the first floor reached by an outside staircase. De Courcy was ousted by another Norman, Hugh de Lacy in 1204.

King John captured the castle in 1210, expelling de Lacy, and it became an administrative centre for the English government which it remained for over seven centuries. The third floor of the Keep was built during the second building phase between 1216 and 1223 and became the Great Hall. The keep is 27.5 meters high and is about 17.5 meters square. The middle ward was added with a square tower on the edge of the lough. A new curtain wall was built to guard the approach along the rock and the eastern approach over the sand when exposed at low tide. The third building phase between 1226 & 1242 added the outer ward with a twin round towered gatehouse and huge portcullis. The new ward doubled the area of the castle and its curtain wall follows the line of rock below. Hugh de Lacy recovered his Earldom of Ulster in 1227 and lived at Carrickfergus until his death in 1242.

Edward Bruce, brother of Robert the Bruce of Scotland, held all of Ulster in 1315 except for Carrickfergus. Ships carrying food for the castle’s defenders were scattered by a storm, so he laid siege to the castle intending to starve the garrison as he had no heavy siege engines. The position was becoming desperate in the castle with the garrison reduced to chewing hides and eating rats and an attempt to relieve the castle from the sea was defeated. During a parley, the garrison seized thirty of the Scots and put them in the dungeons. Legend states that eight of these prisoners were killed and eaten by the defenders. Finally after a year’s siege, they surrendered in September 1316. It was retaken by the English in 1318 and after the Earldom of Ulster collapsed in 1333, it became the principal administrative centre in the north.

In about 1560 alterations were made for artillery use with the two round towers on the gatehouse being cut in half and lowered.

During the great rebellion of 1641 and the English Civil War (1642-8) it was one of the main places of refuge for protestants in Antrim and in 1642 it was taken over by General Robert Munro for the Scots. In 1648 and 1649 control of the castle changed three times, finally to General Monk on behalf of Parliament after a three month siege. Monk held it until the restoration of Charles II in 1660. In 1688 it was held by the garrison troops

for James II despite the townspeople's sympathy for William III, but in 1689 the Duke of Schomberg besieged the castle and bombarded it with heavy mortars. Seven days later the garrison surrendered. William III landed at Carrickfergus in 1690, taking the castle in passing, on his way to fight the Battle of the Boyne. However, it was already losing its importance.

In 1760 it was captured by the French. They looted the castle and town and then left, only to be caught by the British Navy. In 1778 one of the first battles of the American War of Independence took place on the Lough just by the castle. John Paul Jones attacked a British navy ship and forced her to strike her colors. In 1797 it became a prison and it was heavily defended during the Napoleonic Wars. During the 1st World War it was used as a garrison and ordnance store and during the 2nd World War as an air raid shelter.

It was garrisoned continuously for about 750 years until 1928 when its ownership was transferred to the Government for preservation as an ancient monument and it is open to the public. The banqueting hall has been fully restored and there are many exhibits to show what life was like in medieval times.

Castell y Bere

Castell y Bere lies in the mountainous region of mid Wales on the southern border of Gwynedd, at the foot of Cader Idris. Although in ruins now, it was, for a short while, an outstanding example of a Welsh stronghold. Unlike those built by the English in Wales to intimidate the local population, Castell y Bere was a castle built by a native Welsh prince as a home and stronghold. Welsh-built castles were simpler structures than English castles being built at the time, mainly due to lack of money.

In 1221, Llywelyn Fawr took control of Merionnydd from his son Gruffydd and started to build his castle. He chose to build it on a lozenge shaped flat plateau of rock on the floor of the Dysynni Valley. Although similar to other castles built by Llywelyn with D-shaped towers at the north and south ends, it had a unique south tower which was separated from the main castle buildings by a ditch cut in the rock. The walls were fairly low, but the position and the strong towers made up for this.

In the war of 1282-3 it was besieged by the English army under the Savoyard Sir Otto de Grandison. It fell on 25th April 1283 and a small garrison and some masons and carpenters were left there by King Edward I. A walled yard was built to link the south tower to the rest of the castle. A small town was built close by. The castle was recaptured during Madog ap Llywelyn's revolt in 1294. There seems to be no further mention of it after this time and the conclusion is that it was abandoned along with the town.

The entrance was on the west side and was protected by two ditches & two drawbridges, separated by steep steps, and guarding them were two towers, a small square tower and a large round tower set into the main wall. Just inside the entrance was a well, much larger than usually found in castles of the time. Various treasures such as leatherwork and broken pottery have been found in it.

The large square central tower was probably the main defensive point. The north tower had two staircases leading to the upper floor and it is probable that this housed a royal chapel. The south tower had two storeys as well with a latrine which implies domestic accommodation and this probably housed the prince's private apartments. Access was probably by a wooden walkway from the central tower and a wooden bridge over the ditch. Now there is very little of the castle left and it is hard to work out the original layout, but the stunning scenery of the surrounding area means that it is still visited today.

Castell Blaen Llynfi

Occupies a spur overlooking the village of Bwylch, west of Tretower in Wales. This center of the FitzHerbert Barony of 1208, was probably constructed in the years 1208 to 1215, after which it fell into the hands of the Braose family. It was returned to the FitzHerberts in 1217/8 and was sacked by Prince Llywelyn ap Iorwerth and Richard Marshall in the October of 1233. Rebuilt soon afterwards it was apparently taken by Llywelyn ap Gruffydd late in 1262. It was retaken by September 1273 when Reginald FitzPeter fitz Herbert was rebuked for his castle taking activities in Brecknock. The castle was seized by the Crown after the abortive uprisings of 1321-2 and given to the Despencers until their overthrow late in 1326. The castle by this time was nearly ruinous and an inquisition by jury of 23 January 1337 held at the castle found numerous defects which

suggests that the castle had never recovered from the attentions of Llywelyn ap Gruffydd, even if the archaeological evidence does suggest that the castle defenses were improved at this time. The photograph shows the remains of what was probably the Nursery Tower.

Castell Coch

Northeast of Ystradfelte at the confluence of the rivers Llia and Dringarth in Wales, the castle is first mentioned in 1239 when it was held by the last William de Braose, probably the builder.

Castell Dinas Bran

Towering high above the Dee Valley and the bustling town of Llangollen, home of the International Eisteddfod, Castell Dinas Bran occupies one of Britain's most spectacular sites. A rugged, foreboding pinnacle, the hillock was the ideal spot to erect a castle. It seemed completely impenetrable, commanded views for miles around, and offered quick recognition of an approaching visitor, whether friend or foe. Yet, the native Welsh princes of Powys occupied the hilltop for only a few decades. Today, that same site is open to exploration by the public. Forced to climb to the summit, modern visitors experience the struggle and the exhilaration that the castle's medieval inhabitants - and their Edwardian attackers - must have felt. Without a doubt, the walk is a breathtaking challenge. However, that climb heightens the allure of Dinas Bran. And, it demonstrates the stark reality of medieval castle life.

Castell Ddu

The "Black Castle" overlooks Sennybridge in Wales. It was held by the Welsh lord, Einion Sais, who was an ally of Llywelyn the Last. Appearing to be a native Welsh castle, it was possibly built by Llywelyn himself after he overran the lordship of Brecon in the 1260s.

Castle Acre

The village of Castle Acre in Norfolk, England, adjacent to the River Nar, contains the remains of a priory (said to be the best-preserved Clunaic monastery in England) and a castle, both of which were founded shortly after were closely involved in affairs of state and the crown over the next two centuries. Initially the castle was constructed in the manner of a country house, but was remodeled in the twelfth century into a more formal castle arrangement with a keep and hugely impressive earthworks, which survive to this day. These were necessary because the relatively flat Norfolk landscape offered little protection to the inhabitants of the castle. The castle finally became derelict in the 14th century. the Norman invasion of Britain in 1066, by William de Warenne. He became the first Earl of Surrey and his family

The Lower Ward once contained all that was needed for the operation of the castle, reception and accommodation of visiting kings. This included storehouses, workshops, stables and accommodation for servants of important visitors. There was a great hall, where guests were entertained with a high table at its eastern end, and small side rooms for the pantry and buttery at the western end. Further west was the kitchen, kept separate to reduce the risk of the spread of fire.

The Upper Ward and keep contain the functions that we more usually associate with castles. The transformation from a country house involved doubling the thickness of the walls from the inside and the ground floor level was raised by almost 2 metres. The lower part of the keep lies in a circular hollow, having been surrounded with an earthwork bank, which has been raised on several occasions. What remains of the keep today is the twelfth century ground floor.

The northern half of the keep had its main living accommodation at first floor level, with storage at ground floor level. There are two wells within the keep, one of which, located in the southeast corner, is 19.8 metres deep. The second in the northeast corner is unusual in that it had a shaft constructed in the lining wall to allow access to it from the upper floors only, a precaution against siege if an enemy prevented access to the ground

floor of the keep.

The Upper Ward defenses date from different time periods. Originally a ditch and wooden fencing protected the building, then in the early twelfth century the bank was heightened (by deepening the moat) and a crenulated wall was added. Finally in the late twelfth century, the bank protecting the northern half of the keep was raised and a second surrounding wall of solid flint was built on top of the existing wall, together with pilaster buttresses on the outside and carried down the face of the of the first curtain wall beneath. A small arched opening in this second wall leads to a small tower, probably a latrine. Near this are the "morris board," their domestic pastime activity. remains of the base of set of steps leading to the walk around the walls of the keep. Archaeological excavations have revealed that the occupants had a wide variety of fish, wild and domestic animals for their diet. Large quantities of pottery were found, as well as silver coins from the time of Edward the Confessor to King Stephen. Hunting artifacts, such as spurs and horse harnesses as well as arrows indicate the sporting nature of the occupants.

Castle Marlborough

Ralph de Toeni was from Castle Maud, Radnor and Flamstead, Hertfordshire, England.

Castle Rising

Castle Rising is located near the old port of King's Lynn on the North Norfolk coast, England. Standing on an enormous area of man-made ditches and banks, the inner bailey contains two buildings: the foundations of a Norman chapel of 11th century origin and the great tower, dated at around 1138-1140.

The great tower (keep) is a squat, rectangular donjon some 80ft by 70ft and rising 50ft tall. On the eastern side of the keep lies a staircase behind a sturdy wall, itself decorated by a corbelled frieze and the intricate patterns can still be seen in large areas today. Entrance to the castle was via this staircase at second storey level. The ditches were originally walled, but very little of this stonework remains.

Built by William d'Albini, Earl of Sussex, to celebrate his marriage to the widow of Henry I, it was modeled on the keep at Norwich and the castle covers an area of 12 acres. The Domesday Book of 1086 tells us that before and after 1066, Rising was an outlying member of the great manor of Snettisham. The Saxon archbishop of Canterbury, Stigand, held it from 1052 until the Normans overthrew him in 1070. William the Conqueror then handed it to Odo, Bishop of Bayeux and 1st Earl of Kent, and his half-brother, on whose orders the Bayeux Tapestry was made.

The castle remained in the d'Albini family for nearly 200 years, until eventually it came into the hands of the Crown. Royal ownership until the 16th century led to the castle's brightest period of history, with Kings, Queens and Princes all staying at the castle. 1331 saw Isabella, daughter of King Philip IV of France and wife of Edward II residing there. But in 1327 she was found to be an accomplice in Edward's murder and was held at the castle by her son, Edward III. This part of the castle's history is fascinating, and leads to the myth of the She-Wolf of Rising. Isabella was only 12 when she married Edward II, and his preferences lay with young men rather than women. Despite them raising a child, Isabella was a notoriously passionate woman and took a lover in the form of Roger Mortimer. Edward III discovered this and held her captive, but with all the privileges of a dowager queen. It was initially thought that Isabella died at the castle, but Edward III allowed her to travel to different locations and recent records indicate that she actually died at Hereford in 1358. Legend still speaks of a great white wolf with fiery red eyes that haunts Rising and its battlements.

The castle was granted to Edward, Black Prince of Wales in 1337. Edward strengthened the fortifications in case of a landing from the French at the nearby coast. Rising was put on a state of alert during the Wars of the Roses. In 1461, the Yorkist Edward IV tried to displace Henry VI, a Lancastrian. The King's men of Norfolk were ordered to take over the castle and hold it with men-at-arms. It seems that this was the start of the decline at Rising, as previously the castle, despite its fortifications, was more residential in use, despite its military function.

Rising was partially maintained until 1544 and only small sums of money were spent in repairing the castle.

In 1572 a survey to Queen Elizabeth I outlined the full cost of repair, which indicated that a large sum of money would be required, and also detailed the cost for demolishing the decaying structure, which was considerably less. Luckily, the castle was not pulled down despite its increasingly ruinous condition. It remained in the Howard family until 1968 when it was passed to the state.

Castle Stalker

This castle is on an island in Loch Linnhe in the Scottish Highlands. It was built in the Mid-15th century by the Stewarts of Appin to receive King James IV.

Castlethorpe (Hanslope) Castle

Located by the River Tove in Buckinghamshire, England. King John destroyed the castle to punish Robert Mauduit, one of the Magna Charta barons, but it rose again in 1292 with William de Beauchamp.

Chepstow Castle

Majestically set high upon a cliff overlooking the River Wye, Chepstow Castle still guards one of the main river crossings from England into South Wales. Few castles in Britain tell the story of medieval fortification from beginning to end, as does this mighty stronghold. The castle was constructed in stages, each Lord strengthening and adding their touch to the fortress. As a result, Chepstow is constructed in a long rectangular, terraced fashion as opposed to a concentric layout. This unique construction is one reason that makes this castle special and stone construction can be attributed to its great military importance. Throughout the Middle Ages, Chepstow was the center of military and administrative power in the Marches, the countryside that lies adjacent to and spans the borders of England and Wales.

After the Norman Conquest of England at the Battle of Hastings in 1066, King William set about securing his lands. Although the Welsh kings had paid homage to the Saxons, the country retained a defiant and independent spirit. This posed a serious threat to the plans of William the Conqueror, and he quickly took steps to secure the Marches as a buffer zone between his newly acquired lands and the wild Welshmen. The king realized that simple earth and wooden fortifications would not be a sufficient deterrent to his enemies. Massive stone castles were needed to act as launching points for further Norman Conquest and a safe refuge for his army. He appointed William Fitz-Osbern, Earl of Hertford to undertake this monumental task.

Fitz-Osbern laid the foundations of the magnificent “Great Hall” in 1067, within one year of the Conquest. It is said to be the oldest surviving stone castle of its kind in England. The castle sits on the narrowest part of a long high cliff overlooking the River Wye. With the river on one side and a steep ravine on the other, the castle had great natural defenses. Fitz-Osbern also erected a curtain wall to surround the keep contouring the natural terrain. Directly down over the cliffs is the river harbor where supplies ferried up from Bristol could be hoisted up to the castle. This would have been much safer than delivering supplies by land where the Welsh raiders could ambush them.

At the end of the 12th century, Chepstow passed by marriage to William Marshal, Earl of Pembroke. With experience in military architecture from the continent, he greatly strengthened the defenses of the castle. He rebuilt the east curtain wall adding two outward-projecting round towers. The arrow slits in the towers are some of the earliest examples of that revolutionary technology in England, which became a standard for medieval castles.

Around 1245, William Marshal’s sons continued improving the castle by adding the lower bailey which had an impressive twin towered gatehouse topped by a Meurtriere (murder hole). This was used to pour boiling pitch, water or hot sand on unsuspecting enemies and to douse any fires that attackers set while attempting to burn through the wooden gates. At the upper end of the castle, a strongly fortified barbican was constructed as a final defense in the event the castle was overrun.

Roger Bigod III, Earl of Norfolk took possession of Chepstow around 1270 and made some major renovations to the castle. The changes made included a great hall block on the north side of the lower bailey, elaborate kitchen, vaulted cellar, domestic accommodations, expansion of the keep to include a third story and

of course, the spectacular “D” shaped tower in the south east corner of the castle. This magnificent tower is known as Marten’s Tower because Henry Marten, the Regicide, who signed the death warrant of the king, was imprisoned there for 20 years after the restoration of the monarchy. This tower was equipped for a nobleman of high rank with amenities to include lush apartments and a private chapel. A three-story gatehouse flanked by square towers was also added to the barbican as a “back door” to the castle.

As a military stronghold in medieval times, the castle was virtually impregnable. However, with developments in military tactics and weaponry (most notably gunpowder), the castle lost its advantage. It was twice besieged by troops using cannons during the English Civil Wars, falling both times to the attackers. The breach was repaired and served as a military garrison for the Crown until around 1690. After that, the castle fell into disuse and neglect. It briefly served as a smithy and a glass factory in the early 1800s. Wind, rain and vegetation took their toll over the next two hundred years. Though the roofs and wooden interiors are gone, Chepstow still stands as an exceptional piece of medieval architecture and a monument to days gone by.

Clare Castle

Formed the center of the Honor of Clare, an estate awarded to Richard FitzGilbert after the Norman Conquest. It existed by 1090. FitzGilbert’s descendants took the name de Clare, became earls of Hertford and Gloucester and played a key role in the Norman invasions of Wales and Ireland.

Clifford Castle

Clifford castle stands on an eastward flowing section of the River Wye near to the current boundary between England and Wales. The castle was founded by Earl William Fitz Osbern in the period between his being made earl of Hereford soon after Christmas 1066 and his death at the battle of Cassel in Flanders on 22 February 1071. In that time it is likely that his engineers found the natural knoll lying alongside the steep drop to the River Wye near a ford. This gave the site its later name, the cliff by the ford or Clifford. Fitz Osbern’s men scarpd and ditched the knoll they found into what is today a motte with a secondary platform to the West.

The land of Clifford was at that time waste, but under the earls of Hereford and their successors this waste was brought to blossom with castle, borough and church. After Earl William’s death, his son, Earl Roger, held the castle for four years until his revolt in 1075. Then, on Roger’s imprisonment, the castle passed to his father’s brother-in-law, Ralph Tosny (d.1102), and he and his descendants held the castle until the wars of Stephen and Matilda between 1138 and 1154.

During the years of Tosny lordship the castle was transformed into a great stone structure of which there are some remains today. The caput of the family was the castle of Conches in Normandy. Here the Tosny’s built a great shell keep with five round towers in the enceinte. A similar structure remains at Clifford and the implication is that both structures are the work of the house of Tosny. With the wars of Stephen and Matilda the Tosny’s hold on Clifford castle weakened. Roger Tosny’s steward, Walter fitz Richard, had for a long time been calling himself Walter Clifford and had married Isabel Tosny, Roger’s sister.

In 1144 he still acknowledged Roger as his overlord of Clifford, but by the end of the war he had made himself de facto lord of Clifford and refused to return castle and lordship to their rightful owners. During the reign of King Henry II, Walter Clifford cleverly introduced his daughter, renowned as the Fair Rosamund for her beauty, to Henry. Soon the two became lovers and Walter’s powerful daughter ensured that he never lost control of Clifford to its rightful owners.

In 1233 Walter Clifford’s grandson, another Walter Clifford, rebelled against King Henry III rather than return the castle to the Tosnys. This led to the castle’s only known siege by Henry III. After just a few days the castle surrendered to the king under the threat of death. Walter himself had retreated into Wales and attempted to persuade his father-in-law, Prince Llywelyn Fawr, to join him in rebellion. On failing to achieve this aim Walter met the king at Shrewsbury and made his peace. Within a month Walter was back in the Welsh Marches

leading a royal army against Prince Llywelyn who had finally thrown his power behind the rebels!

Such were the convoluted twists and turns of thirteenth century politics! Twenty years later the king served a writ on the now ancient Walter Clifford, ordering him to observe the king's command in his Marcher barony. This was in breach of Walter's Marcher privileges and in a fit of pique he made the royal messenger eat the writ, seal and all. In those days the king's seal would have consisted of a dinner plate sized piece of wax! Once more a king of England marched against a baron of Clifford, but this time the septuagenarian lord of Clifford surrendered without a fight, losing all his hard won gains of independence. Walter died, having regained the king's favor in 1263. In 1271 Walter's widowed daughter and heiress Matilda was kidnapped from her home by the young John Giffard of Brimpsfield. In terror she managed to get a letter to the king telling of her abduction and rape.

Once more Henry III took to the field, this time for the honor of the baroness of Clifford. However before he had proceeded far he received another letter from Matilda saying everything was alright now and she had married her abductor! The marriage was subsequently blessed by the birth of two daughters before Matilda's death in 1284. By 1311 the castle had passed into the hands of the Mortimers and from that time forth was left to gently decay as just one more castle in the hands of that powerful family. Clifford castle now consists of a great motte as constructed by the men of William Fitz Osbern back in the late 1060s. This was later sub-divided and the eastern part was crowned by an ovoid shell keep with five D-shaped towers in its circuit. Its north wall appears to overlie part of William Fitz Osbern's original hall. To the east of the motte is the castle bailey.

Most of the walls of this structure have disappeared, but centrally are the remains of a great twin-towered gatehouse probably of the mid thirteenth century. To the west of the castle is a broken earthwork dam which would have flooded the valley to the south of the castle. With the River Wye to the north the fortress would have been surrounded by water on all sides except for the east. As such it would have been a very difficult fortress to take by storm. Half a mile to the south are the remains of the castle borough with the church of Clifford. Within lies a wooden monument which probably represents Simon Clifford the son of the first Walter Clifford and brother of Fair Rosamund.

Cockermouth Castle

Located between the rivers Derwent and Cocker in Cumberland, England. William de Fortibus acquired the manor in 1215 and built a castle there, but Henry III ordered its destruction upon his downfall six years later. It survived at the hands of Gilbert, last of the Umfrville barons, and Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, acquired Cockermouth on Gilbert's death in 1381.

Codnor Castle

Overlooking the River Erewash east of codnor town, Derbyshire, England. Sir Richard de Grey inherited the manor after 1200.

Colchester Castle

In Roman Britain, the town of Colchester was the capital of an extensive kingdom covering southeast England. Queen Boudicca razed it to the ground in 61 AD, but a new city soon rose from the ashes. William the Conqueror founded the castle at Colchester c. 1071. William de Lanvallei, Magna Charta Surety, was governor of Colchester Castle.

Conwy Castle

Conwy castle, with its eight towers, is one of the most impressive castles in Wales. It overlooks the Conwy

estuary and one of the finest examples of a medieval walled town in Europe. The castle, and the adjacent town walls, was built for Edward I between 1283 and 1287. It was the most expensive of a chain of castles that Edward built to subjugate the Welsh. The layout of the castle was dictated by the shape of the rock on which it was built.

The interior was divided into two separate wards, the outer ward containing buildings such as the Great Hall and the inner ward housing the Royal apartments. The castle had started to fall into disrepair within a generation of its completion. Repairs and modifications were made by Edward, the Black Prince, in 1346, but this was the last major work carried out at the castle. The castle saw some activity during the Civil War (1642-51), but when it was slighted at the end of the war the castle was stripped of saleable materials leaving an empty shell.

Corfe Castle

Corfe Castle stands on top of a natural steep hill, and for many centuries it guarded the principal route through the central gap in the Purbeck Hills in Dorset, England. Nothing could pass through the area without going past the castle. This dramatic location provided the perfect setting for King John's favorite castle.

The location is so strategic that it may have been a defensive site even in Roman times. The first castle buildings would have been built of wood. The Saxon King Alfred built a castle at Corffe's Gate to halt attacks by Danes. It was at Corfe Castle in 978 AD that the Saxon King Edward (later to be known as Edward the Martyr) was reputedly stabbed to death on the orders of his step-mother Queen Elfrida so that her own son, Ethelred The Unready, could become King of England.

In the latter half of the 11th Century the Castle was rebuilt in stone by William The Conqueror and consisted of a small hall and a curtain wall, which was later to become the inner bailey. Even as early as 1106 the site was a great fortress and state prison, said to have "massively thick walls and steep approaches from all sides - one of the most impregnable in the Kingdom."

A rectangular great tower was constructed adjacent to the southern wall of the inner bailey during the reign of King Henry I, in the early twelfth century.

The 13th century was the time of the castle's greatest history. King John liked staying at Corfe Castle and hunting for pleasure in Purbeck. By 1212 the Castle, because of its relative inaccessibility, had become a fortified depot for holding the Kings treasures and political prisoners, and it was here that he stored 50000 marks prior to his French military campaign. He also kept his niece Eleanor here for most of her life.

King John spent a great deal improving the royal accommodation and defenses. To the east of the Henry I keep he built a fine hall and chapel together with domestic buildings, known as the Gloriette. This comprised residential quarters built for himself, as well as the curtain wall around the west bailey with an octagonal tower to the west point, the ditch to separate the south-east outer bailey from the rest of the castle, and the curtain wall and towers of the outer bailey.

King Henry III constructed additional walls to complete the curtain wall and towers including two gatehouses, the south-east gatehouse and the inner gatehouse. In addition, he had the exterior walls whitewashed (as he also did at the Tower of London). In 1635 the Castle passed into private ownership as an occasional private residence.

During the English Civil War the Parliamentarians occupied most of Dorset and on Mayday 1643 a troop of republican horsemen were repelled by the castle occupants. After a series of poorly organised blockades, late in 1645 Parliamentary forces started a prolonged siege, and infiltrated the garrison with apparently friendly troops. They later treacherously admitted the Parliamentary force into the castle on the 27th February 1646, and the castle fell into the hands of the Parliamentary troops who finally captured and evicted the Royalists

In March 1646 an Act of Parliament ordered the Castle's total destruction; the castle keep was to be blown up and "tilted" so it could not be refortified. Having thoroughly plundered the building, the castle was systematically reduced to a ruin by gunpowder and mines.

The 13th century octagonal Butavant Tower suffered severely from the demolition, as did the North Tower, although it still exhibits a number of interesting architectural features. The Plukenet Tower, situated on the east curtain wall near to the castle ditch, still bears the shield-of-arms of Alan de Plukenet who was the constable of Corfe Castle during the 13th century. Located in the south-east corner of the outer bailey, the Horseshoe Tower survives almost to its original height, and was constructed around the same time as the Outer Gatehouse, which stands to its lower levels only. The demolition took several months, which bears witness to the castle's incredible strength.

The village, named after the castle, has a lovely model that faithfully replicates how the Castle looked before it was blown up by the Parliamentarians.

Craigmillar Castle

Craigmillar Castle is located 4 miles south of Edinburgh, and was one of the favorite residences of Mary Queen of Scots. It was built about 1375, the quadrangular wall with round towers was added about 1425. Craigmillar was one of the earliest castles in Scotland to be built with gun ports for cannon.

Deal Castle

Located in Kent, England, it was built by King Henry VIII in 1539 as an artillery castle that was part of a coastal defense system. It was the largest of all Henry's forts.

Denbigh Castle

Edward I was not the first castle builder to make use of this strategically important site. The Welsh actually had a fortification on the rocky hilltop, at least as early as the start of the 13th century, and it was probably still occupied by the powerful Princes of Gwynedd when Edward stormed Wales and crushed the unruly Welsh in 1282.

Historical records indicate that Dafydd ap Gruffydd, the troublesome brother of Llywelyn ap Gruffydd, Prince of Wales, had a stronghold at Denbigh, which he may have inherited from his famous ancestor, Llywelyn ap Iorwerth (also known as Llywelyn Fawr, or "the Great"). Indeed, Llywelyn the Great apparently met with an abbot who journeyed to Denbigh from a monastery in England for a meeting in 1230.

Unfortunately, nothing of the native-built castle has survived, but, thanks to historical documents, we do know that it contained a hall, private chambers, a bakehouse, and a buttery. The Welsh inhabitants made a brave showing from inside the castle, lasting a month or so against the might of England's army. Inevitably, however, the English seized the site. The name, Denbigh, implies that this stalwart hilltop may have been occupied long before the Middle Ages. The word derives from the Welsh, "Dinbych", or "little fort", and, according to CADW: Welsh Historic Monuments, "incorporates the word "dinas" (a rocky fortress), which suggests that it was long regarded as a natural stronghold; there may have been a fort here in the early Christian period," perhaps, as much as 700 years before the medieval castles were constructed. However, nothing tangible survives to prove this theory.

Almost immediately after Edward I defeated the Welsh freedom fighters, he initiated the second phase of his great castle- building program. The lordship and castle at Denbigh were granted to Henry de Lacy, Earl of Lincoln and one of the king's more successful military leaders. We can credit de Lacy with the establishment of the fortress we see today. Sweeping away any traces of the Welsh castle, de Lacy followed plans probably designed by the great medieval engineer, Master James of St. George (described recently as "the Bill Gates of medieval military construction"), who was working closely with the king at that time. By 1284, Denbigh Castle and its connecting town began to dominate its surroundings. Essentially, Denbigh Castle was assembled during two phases, the first of which included the rapid construction of rather insubstantial outer defenses along the southern and western sides. The building of the town walls also was initiated at this time. Other features probably begun during the first phase include the eastern towers, part of the curtain wall, and perhaps the great gatehouse.

However, these latter structures were not finished until the second phase, which lingered into the 14th

century. The second building period brought the bulk of structures to the site. In response to the short-lived success of the previous year's rebellion led by the fiery Welshman, Madog ap Llywelyn, in 1295 de Lacy began the construction of the splendid gatehouse, the great hall, an extensive residential complex, and massive towers.

Dying in 1311, poor Henry de Lacy did not live to see his masterpiece completed. Evidently, it is possible that the fortress was never a finished product. During the second phase, heavy defenses were added to the castle: the curtain wall was refortified with thicker and higher walls, and huge polygonal towers were constructed on either side of the gatehouse. The gatehouse itself was heavily buttressed with twin towers facing outward and an enormous interior tower, called the Badnes Tower. Together, the three octagonal towers gave the gatehouse incredible strength, and an unusual overall plan. Between the twin towers was a heavily defended gate passage with murder-holes, a series of strategically-placed portcullises, powerful wooden doors, and arrow slits. One of the towers contained the porter's lodgings, while the other served as the prison.

In recent years restoration efforts have greatly upgraded the overall appearance of the gatehouse: a fascinating carved figure towers overhead, said by some to be the great Edward I himself. Individualized carvings like this remarkable piece give Denbigh Castle its distinctive character.

Dolforwyn Castle

Dolforwyn stands on a wooded hill overlooking the fertile Severn Valley in Wales, a scene so peaceful today that it is hard to picture it as one of political animosity or military action. It was built between 1273-77 by Llewelyn as a forward position in his territory, and overlooking the English lordship of Montgomery. This rectangular castle crowns a ridge along the Severn valley, and was obviously designed to act as a sentinel over Llywelyn's south-eastern frontier.

Its initial construction led Edward I to write to Prince Llywelyn in 1273, forbidding him to build the castle. The prince replied, with a masterpiece of ironic politeness, that he did not require the king's permission to raise a stronghold in his own principality. Dolforwyn was, however, taken by Roger Mortimer after a fortnight's siege in 1277, and given to the Mortimers, a powerful marcher family. The castle was kept in repair for some years, but was ruinous by 1398. Llywelyn's fledgling town on the ridge to the west of the castle was suppressed under the English, who did not welcome competition with Montgomery. Instead, Roger Mortimer founded Newtown in 1279 on a more suitable site nearby.

Dover Castle

Standing atop the famous White Cliffs, Dover Castle is an enormous concentric construction with probably the most massive great tower (keep) in Britain. With a long and well-documented history stretching from the Iron Age through the Second World War, it is without doubt the most researched and recorded fortification outside London and the White Tower within.

A fascinating history unfolds when examining this castle. Archaeological evidence points to some sort of settlement here since prehistoric times, or pre-history, with rudimentary rampart defenses. The existing keep and inner bailey sit on top of what was probably the early fortification. In the 10th century the site was re-occupied by the Anglo-Saxons and a burh, or fortified town was established. However, it is not until the Norman Invasion that Dover really came into its own.

On 14th October 1066, Harold Hardrada was defeated by William Duke of Normandy thus ending the Saxon domination of the land. As William's forces marched towards Dover, which was reported as an impregnable fortress at the time, the English within were stricken with fear and were ready to surrender unconditionally. William set alight the fortress regardless and a huge amount of damage was done. He later paid for repairs to the defenses and set about constructing his own castle near the Saxon church of St Mary in Castro. Records show that a motte castle was erected here in only eight days. With Dover secure, he marched toward London and was later crowned William I on Christmas Day, 1066.

Much of Saxon Dover was rebuilt and the town benefited from the increased trade between France and England. Henry II, the great castle-builder and great grandson of William I, appointed master mason Mauricius Ingeniator (Maurice the Engineer) and Dover took shape during the 1180s. A huge keep was built, almost 100 ft cubed, with walls that were between 17-21 ft thick in places. Along with the inner curtain wall and parts of

the outer curtain, Dover became the first concentric castle in England, some 100 years before any other, and the first this side of Western Europe.

During the reign of King John, the outer curtain wall was extended and he added several towers and a north gateway, which is now known as Norfolk Tower. As Dover was sited at the shortest crossing of the English Channel, it was regarded as the Key to England and its strategic importance cannot be underestimated.

In 1216 there was a turbulent period in the castle's history. With the agreement to sign the Magna Carta, there followed a civil war in which the insurgent barons asked Louis, son of the French king, to take the English throne. Louis agreed and arrived at Dover shortly afterwards, laying siege to the castle almost immediately. Louis launched a violent and incessant attack on the walls and, in particular, the King's newly built North Gateway. The barbican fell and sappers dug mines underneath the gate and part of the Eastern tower bringing part of it crashing down. The castle garrison, under the leadership of its constable, Hugh de Burgh, a staunch friend of King John, replied with such ferocity that the French moved their camp and siege engines further away from the castle. Losses for the French were heavy, but as they retreated to a safer distance, news arrived that King John had died at Newark. Louis did not know that Henry III, John's son, had succeeded him. He assumed that the throne was his and called upon the constable to surrender, offering him honors and great riches. Hugh declined, and the siege was raised.

Henry III repaired the gatehouse and the Eastern tower, but the entrance here was blocked solid, regarded as a possible weakness in the defenses.

Dover played a large role during the Napoleonic War periods (1792 - 1815). Many changes were made to the castle during this time most notably; the massive curtain walls of the castle were reduced in size to accommodate heavy gun platforms. The underground tunnels were also extended during this period, and were later used by the British war effort during World War II.

Dublin Castle

Dublin Castle is more of a palace than a castle and is currently used to entertain heads of state. It was originally built on the orders of King John in 1204 and has enjoyed a somewhat quiet history. Silken Thomas Fitzgerald laid siege in 1534, a fire destroyed much of the castle in 1684, and the events of the 1916 Easter Rising. It was lightly defended in 1916 and probably would have fallen if the insurrectionists only realized how light the opposition was they faced. The castle was used as the official residence of the British viceroys of Ireland, until the Viceregal Lodge was built in Phoenix Park. Earlier it had been used as a prison. Red Hugh O'Donnell, one of the last of the great Gaelic leaders, escaped from the Record Tower in 1591, was recaptured, and escaped again in 1592.

Only the Record Tower, built between 1202 and 1258, survives from the original Norman castle. Parts of the castle's foundations remain, and a visit to the excavation is the most interesting part of the castle tour. The castle moats, now completely covered by modern developments, were once filled by the River Poddle.

Duffield Castle

The chief stronghold of the Ferrers, earls of Derby. Henry de Ferrers is said to have founded the castle sometime before his death in 1089. William de Ferrers joined Prince Henry's revolt, as a result of which the castle was dismantled by order of Henry II. It soon rose again, Earl William managing to regain the king's trust. The final destruction took place in 1266 after Robert de Ferrers lost his lands for supporting Simon de Montfort against Henry III.

Dunster Castle

Dunster Castle overlooks the small village of Dunster on the edge of Exmoor in south-west England. It is unusual in that it has only changed hands twice since the Norman conquest of 1066 – the Mohuns until 1376 and the Luttrells from then until 1976 when it was taken over by the National Trust and opened to the public. Originally it stood close to the Bristol Channel, but the sea has slowly receded and it's now several miles away.

The wooded hill it stands on is natural and made the perfect site for William de Mohun to build his castle. The wall round the outer bailey was built on a ledge halfway down; below that the hill was very steep and formed a perfect defense. The initial keep and walls were of wood, but as there was much natural red sandstone in the

area it was soon rebuilt.

The most famous of the Mohun family was the 3rd William de Mohun who was a supporter of Empress Matilda in her civil war against Stephen. He was known as the Scourge of the West because of his reckless plundering and burning. He built the stone shell keep on top of the hill and the earliest stone walls.

In 1376 the male line of the family died out and Lady Elizabeth Luttrell, daughter of the Earl of Devon bought it. The current gatehouse was built by her, well outside the lower ward as an additional defense and joined up to it by walls. It's an imposing 3 storey building without the usual portcullis. The other side of the gatehouse is a smaller inner gateway probably dating back to the 13th century and the oldest surviving structure in the castle.

The residential buildings in the lower ward are mostly Elizabethan, built in the late 16th century to replace those that had been in the shell keep and in 1617 a new house was built within the bailey incorporating part of the wall.

During the Civil War in 1642, the castle was seized and held by a Royalist garrison. In 1646 it was besieged and was battered with guns in the village below. The Governor surrendered and, although it was on a list of castles to be destroyed, nothing seems to have been done about this. The Parliamentarian troops were stationed there for five years, then the castle was returned to the Luttrells after payment of a fine.

During the following years, the owners made the castle more comfortable rather than restoring its military strength. They built a large carriage drive, covering many of the medieval foundations. Windows were cut into the old towers and the shell keep was removed and replaced by a bowling green.

In the 19th century the architect Salvin built two large castellated towers and another in the centre of the south wall and reconstructed the front in the Gothic revival style. He also modernised much of the interior, but left the 17th century carved oak staircase and oak-panelled dining-room.

A huge Victorian conservatory at the back leads on to a sheltered terrace where many semi-tropical plants grow including a famous lemon tree planted in 1842 which still bears fruit. The gardens now stretch down the hill to a stream, the Avill and a deer park. At the bottom of the hill is the Mill. There was a mill there at the time of the Domesday survey in 1086 although the current mill dates back to the 18th century. It's a working mill, producing wholemeal flour for local bakeries.

Durham Castle

Durham Castle was begun in 1072 and has been continuously occupied ever since. It began its life as a border defense against Scotland, later became the palace for the Prince Bishops of Durham and, since Victorian times, has been part of University College at Durham University.

The castle was built on top of a steep and narrow gorge above the River Wear by the Earl of Northumberland to help subjugate the Anglo Saxons after the Norman invasion and to guard the newly built cathedral which contained the remains of St Cuthbert and St Bede from Scottish incursions. Shortly afterwards, William the Conqueror gave the completed castle to the Prince Bishop of Durham and it remained the Bishops' home for the next 750 years. It was built to a motte and bailey design but only the Norman Chapel and part of the Great Hall remain from this first castle. A new large hall was built in the mid 12th century and quite a bit of this remains. In the 13th and 14th centuries the present Great Hall was built and the octagonal keep was rebuilt. During this time the castle was frequently under attack by the Scots but there are no records of its being taken.

The Battle of Neville's Cross in 1346 is the most famous battle to have taken place at the castle. It started when Edward III & his son, the Black Prince, defeated the French at the Battle of Crecy. Philip VI of France appealed to his friend David II of Scotland (son of Robert the Bruce) to launch an attack on northern England to relieve the pressure on him. David led an army of over 12,000 men towards Durham. A small English army of 5,000 moved north from Yorkshire to reinforce the castle. Legend has it that David had a dream when he was warned not to approach St Cuthbert's holy ground at Durham, but he ignored this.

The Scots waited on a ridge just outside the city where they could look down on the castle and cathedral that they hoped would be theirs. They could also see the English army waiting. Because of his vast superiority of numbers, David ordered his soldiers to advance. The west flank of his soldiers found straight away that to advance would involve descending into a steep sided valley & then up the other side. The English had a large force of longbowmen waiting. A third of the Scots army was decimated and retreated in complete confusion. The eastern flank of the Scottish army was doing better. It made an English division retreat, but this exposed them to the English reserve. Being attacked from two sides at once, they started to retreat too. This left the central division led by the king himself under attack from three sides. David was wounded and his standard bearer killed so the remainder of the Scots army turned round and ran.

King David managed to escape, however legend says that whilst hiding under a nearby bridge, some English soldiers saw his reflection in the river. He was captured and imprisoned in the Tower of London where he remained for 11 years until ransomed for the equivalent of £15 million.

By the 15th century, the castle was beginning to be more of a residence than a fortress and the Great Hall was reduced in size and new kitchens and a chapel were built. In 1603, England and Scotland were united and the castle was no longer needed as a fortress against the Scots. From then on, much repair work and additional building took place so that the castle was worthy of the high status and wealth of the office of Bishop of Durham. It is easy to see which Bishop built what as each placed his personal coat of arms on the part he rebuilt.

When Durham University was founded in the early 1830s, the first idea was to demolish the castle and replace it with new buildings. Luckily it was decided to adapt the castle instead. The keep, long unused and dilapidated, was rebuilt and, although University College has greatly expanded so that most of the students live outside, there are still 80 or so living in the castle together with all the administration offices for the College.

It still bears a resemblance to the original castle, with a gatehouse leading to an irregularly shaped three-sided courtyard (the original inner bailey) and is now a World Heritage Site along with the Cathedral.

Eardisley Castle

The Domesday Book records a “fortified house” near Kington, Herefordshire, as opposed to a castle proper. At that time it belonged to Roger de Lacy who is thus the probably founder. The castle, rebuilt in stone under the de Bohuns and Baskervilles, was destroyed in the Civil War and an 18th-century farmhouse now occupies the bailey.

Edinburgh Castle

Edinburgh Castle, a motley collection of buildings from various periods of history, is spreadeagled on Castle Rock, an extinct volcano, 300 feet above the city. The site has been fought over for nearly 3000 years although most of the present castle dates from the 16th century and later. During its life, it has been a palace, a treasury, a refuge for Scottish kings and a prison. Now it provides a magnificent panorama of the city and surroundings.

There is archaeological evidence of a Bronze Age hill fort on the rock, which would have risen from dense forest, in about 1,000 BC. It would have been occupied by the local Celtic tribe, the Votadini. It was a thriving settlement during Roman times. When King Malcolm III expelled the Northumbrians from Scotland in the 11th century, he built a wooden fortress that he used as a hunting lodge. Among the few early buildings left is the small Chapel of St Margaret from the early 12th century. It has been much altered and repaired but still retains a few original features.

In 1174, when the Scottish King was defeated and captured he was forced to hand over four Scottish castles as security for his ransom, one of which was Edinburgh. However, it was recaptured by the Scots in 1186. Edward I of England captured it in 1296 and it was recaptured in 1314 by Robert Bruce’s nephew, the Earl of Moray, in a daring commando raid with only 30 men who scaled the cliffs and walls taking the large garrison by surprise. Robert Bruce was surprised at the ease with which it had been taken and so ordered Moray to destroy the fortifications but left the chapel. Edward III of England retook it and built a new castle in 1335 but only held it for six years when Sir William Douglas won it back for the Scots, tricking the garrison into thinking his men were merchants and decapitating most of the English garrison. The castle remained in Scottish hands after this

until 1603 when the two kingdoms were united.

King David II returned from English captivity in 1356 and started rebuilding, including, in 1368, a new royal residence, David's Tower, of which some remnants remain. It was an L-shaped 60 foot tower with a drawbridge. A new gate tower and Constables Tower were also built as was St Mary's Church.

Crown Square, the main courtyard, came into being in the 15th century when the Great Hall was built with an impressive hammerbeam roof in 1434 and rebuilt in 1445 following a siege.

In the 16th century, Holyrood House was built and this ended the castle's being used as a royal residence, except that in 1566 Mary Queen of Scots gave birth to the future James I of England (James VI of Scotland) in a tiny room in the castle which can still be visited. In 1571 the keeper of the castle, who supported Queen Mary in her bid for the English throne, refused to surrender to other Scots who were supported by the English. Heavy guns were sent and within ten days had completely demolished the eastern front. The keeper had to surrender when fallen masonry blocked the well, whereupon he was hanged for treason. Reconstruction began straight away. The Portcullis Gate replaced the Constables Tower and the Half Moon Battery was built around the remains of David's Tower which had been largely destroyed.

In 1640 the castle was besieged unsuccessfully for three months by the Covenanting Army, but badly damaging the defenses yet again. It was repaired just in time for another three months' siege in 1650 by Oliver Cromwell who then established his Scottish headquarters there, converting the Great Hall into barracks and digging a dry ditch in front of the gatehouse. This led to the royal castle becoming a garrison fortress and in following years much building for the garrison such as barracks, officers' quarters and storehouses which took place without any regard for the history or aesthetics of the castle.

In 1689 the Duke of Gordon held the castle for James II against the forces of William & Mary and in 1715 Jacobite forces broke in through the postern gate. After this, the defenses were reconstructed once again. In 1745 Bonnie Prince Charlie tried to take the castle on his march south. This was the last time the castle saw military action.

In 1753 St Mary's Church was demolished to make way for barracks and about this time the first prisoners of war were held in vaults beneath Crown Square. Initially the prisoners were Jacobites but by 1763 500 Frenchmen were imprisoned there. The vaults later housed prisoners from America, Spain, Holland, Germany and Italy. In 1769 the Great Hall was converted into a military hospital.

A prison was built in 1842, a guardhouse in 1853 and in 1887 the hospital moved to converted storerooms, allowing the restoration of the Great Hall to begin. A new gatehouse and drawbridge were built, giving the castle a slightly more picturesque appearance.

During the 20th century, the North Barracks were remodelled to become the Scottish National War Memorial and another building was converted into a military museum.

It is still a working garrison, being the home of the Scottish Division, the Royal Scots and Royal Scots Dragoon Guards with a guard on the main gate. Members of the garrison have the right to be married in St Margaret's Chapel.

In the Crown Room the crown from the time of Robert Bruce, sceptre and sword of state of Scotland can be seen. Their rediscovery, hidden in a locked chest in 1818, signalled the beginning of the castle's function as a tourist attraction. Now the Stone of Scone (Stone of Destiny) can also be seen, having been returned from Westminster Abbey on St Andrews Day 1996 after 700 years. Edinburgh Castle is the second most visited ancient monument in Britain, after the Tower of London, with over one million visitors every year.

A tradition which is still continued is to fire a 2nd World War 25-pounder gun at exactly one o'clock every day except Sunday as a time check for people in the city. Originally this was so that ships sailing up the Firth of Forth could check their chronometers.

Finally, it is the home of Mons Meg, a huge 15th century cannon, reputed to be able to fire a large stone cannonball two miles. It weighs over 6 tons and was made in Mons in Belgium to be presented to the Scottish king in 1457 by the Duke of Burgundy. It was used to defend the castle against the English and then taken at a rate of 3 miles per day to be part of a siege by the River Tweed. By the mid 1500s it was restricted to firing

ceremonial salutes from the ramparts. It was last fired in 1681 when the barrel burst and it was dumped until taken to the Tower of London in 1754. It was returned to Edinburgh in 1829 and, since 2001, sits on the ramparts next to St Margaret's Chapel.

Elmley Castle

Located in Worcestershire, the castle was probably raised by the d'Abitots before 1100. It passed to the Beauchamps, but they abandoned it after acquiring Warwick Castle in 1268. Walter de Beauchamp was steward of Henry I; he married Emeline, daughter of Urso d'Abitot, Baron of Elmley, high sheriff of Worcester, and constable of Worcester Castle.

Ewloe Castle

The only contemporary reference to the castle at Ewloe is to be found in a documentary source known as the *Chester Plea Rolls*, where in a report made to King Edward II in 1311, Payn Tibotot, justice of Chester, summarizes the history of the manor at Ewloe from the middle of the 12th century. He records that by Llywelyn ap Gruffydd had regained Ewloe from the English and *built a castle in the wood*. In 1311 this was *in great part standing*. The site of the present castle bears some resemblance to that of a motte and bailey, with the so-called Welsh Tower situated on top of the raised area of the motte. This has led to a suggestion that the first castle on the site may have been erected in the middle of the 12th century by Owain Gwynedd (d.1170). But there is a distinct lack of evidence to support this theory, and it seems most unlikely that such a site - where the topography has such a strong natural slope - would have been suitable for the construction of an earthwork castle.

There have also been differences of opinion over the phasing of the construction of the stone castle. The first detailed interpretation of the castle was published in 1928, and was based on evidence that had been revealed during its clearance and consolidation. At that time, Ewloe was considered to have been built entirely by Llywelyn ap Gruffydd, from about 1257 onwards. Twenty years later, a new interpretation was presented.

The Welsh Tower was now seen as the work of Llywelyn ap Iorwerth, dating to around 1210. The tower was thought to be similar to late 12th-century keeps on the English side of the border. One feature of the building is perfectly clear: the curtain wall on the north and south sides of the lower ward abuts that surrounding the upper ward. This suggests that both the lower ward and presumably the west tower, were added as a second phase in the building works.

The earlier interpretation which placed the Welsh Tower as the primary structure on the site considered the upper and lower curtains to be contemporary, and belonging to the second phase. But unless three building phases were involved - first the Welsh Tower, then the upper curtain, and finally the lower ward - the balance of evidence points to all parts of the castle having been built during the same general period. None the less, the building could have been completed in two consecutive phases. The first stage of work would have involved establishing a defensible position on the naturally strongest part of the site, the upper ward. To begin with, the area of the lower ward may have been used as a building compound surrounded by a timber palisade.

In due course the timber defenses could have been replaced by a stone curtain with a round tower included on the west side. From its early beginnings this was an important castle, the headquarters of the Norman lordship of Abergavenny, used for accommodation by kings if they were in the locality. It stands on a spur above the river Usk, in a good position to secure the valley and prevent Welsh incursions into the lowlands. The gatehouse was added about 1400.

To the right of the gatehouse is an impressive stretch of curtain wall standing almost to its full height and retaining most of its facing stone. It's the main remnant of the castle of the second half of the 12th century, built when William de Braose held the lordship. This was a turbulent time, and the castle was the scene of two particularly treacherous incidents. In 1175 William de Braose murdered Seisyllt ap Dyfnwal, lord of Castell Arnallt, a Welsh stronghold a few miles to the south-east, here on Christmas Day. In retaliation the Welsh lord of Caerleon, Hywel ap Iorwerth, burnt the castle in 1182 and went on to destroy Dingestow Castle (now reduced to a grassy mound).

William Camden, the 16th-century antiquary, said that Abergavenny Castle "has been oftner stain'd with the infamy of treachery, than any other castle in Wales." Only fragments of the rest of the curtain wall remain, mainly on the east side where the stub of a rectangular projecting tower is visible. Built into a later cottage, now part of a museum, is the fragment of a tower, and on the north side the curtain wall is much reduced and was landscaped into a rock garden in the late 19th century. Within the walls, the circular mound, on which a rather incongruous Victorian "keep" of 1819 sits, is the oldest part of the castle. It is the motte thrown up by Hamelin de Ballon, Norman conqueror of this area, before 1090.

Early in the 12th century de Ballon founded the Benedictine priory of Abergavenny. Soon afterwards a stone keep was built on the motte, and the present building probably stands on its foundations. During the 12th century the hall, which was between the gatehouse and the tall ruined towers to the west, remained a timber building. There was much building during the 13th and 14th centuries when the castle was held by the Hastings family. The most prominent remains from this period are the towers in the west corner, one circular and one semi-circular. Only their outer walls survive, but these stand to four storeys high in some places. The octagonal tower has large window openings, mostly now without their dressed stone surrounds, and the base of a spiral staircase. Attached to the eastern end of the towers is a cross-wall which divided the castle ward into two. Its northern end was one wall of the hall block, and has a doorway which led into the rooms below the hall. The hall stood where the present ground is sunken, and was a large and rectangular room at first-floor level. Its inner wall has completely gone. In the middle of the lawn is an underground room, thought to have been a dungeon.

Although the description above mentions the castle's notorious lord, William de Braose, it's worth mentioning further that de Braose was quite possibly the cruelest and most hated of all the great Marcher Lords. Practically all the Marcher Lords were forced to deal with a rebellious and resentful Welsh population in violent ways in order to protect their newly-awarded "kingdoms," but de Braose time and time again seems to have gone out of his way to commit acts of cruelty that went beyond his contemporaries. Although some would say his family eventually got what they deserved, the extinction of the male line and a forfeiture of all lands, de Braose stands out as an example of what the native Welsh population were up against, and why they rebelled so ferociously against the Norman invaders.

Gerald of Wales alludes to the horrible event in the history of Abergavenny Castle described above, during his famous journey through Wales of 1188, but refuses to mention the incident specifically, saying *least (the story) serves to encourage other equally infamous men*. Here Gerald is referring to the Massacre of Abergavenny in 1175. Henry, the third son of Milo FitzWalter, earl of Hereford, was killed by Seisyll ap Dyfnwal in 1175. William the fourth son did not live to succeed. Mahel, the fifth son, was killed a little later in 1175 in Bronllys Castle, when a stone fell on his head during a fire. There was no other male heir, and Brecknockshire and Upper Gwent passed to William de Braose through his mother Bertha, a daughter of Milo FitzWalter.

William de Braose decided to avenge the death of his uncle Henry. On the pretext he summoned Seisyll ap Dyfnwal, his son Geoffrey and a number of other Welshmen from Gwent to Abergavenny Castle, and there they were all murdered out of hand. At the same time de Braoses retainers ravaged Seisyll's lands, killed his son Cadwaladr and captured his wife. This is just one incident in the cruel career of de Braose.

The castle was one of many that passed back and forth between Marcher and native control in the turbulent years of the 12th century. Gerald also mentions Abergavenny in a later passage following its recapture from the Welsh by English forces. As the Welsh were besieging the castle "two (Norman) men-at-arms were rushing across a bridge to take refuge in the tower which had been built on a great mound of earth. The Welsh shot at them from behind, and with the arrows which sped from their bows they actually penetrated the oak doorway of the tower, which was almost as thick as a man's palm. As a permanent reminder of the strength of their impact, the arrows have been left sticking in the door just where their iron heads struck." Gerald notes that the men of Gwent "are more skilled with the bow and arrow than those who come from other parts of Wales."

Farney Castle

Farney Castle is the home, design studio and retail outlet of Irish International Designer, Cyril Cullen, and it is the only Round Tower in Ireland occupied as a family home. The first castle was built at Farney in 1185 and

this would have been a timbered structure. The present round tower was built in 1495 by Thomas Butler, 7th Earl of Ormond, and it was part of a defensive system created by the Butlers to protect their land in Tipperary. The Butlers were in Farney Castle for 500 years but in 1536 the castle was confiscated by King Henry VIII of England. He returned the lands again to the Butlers in 1538 when he married Anne Boleyn who was the daughter of James, 3rd Earl of Ormond. Subsequently the castle was occupied for short periods by two other English monarchs namely King James 1st from 1617 - 1625, and King George 1st from 1716 -1721. In 1649 Cromwell landed in Ireland and shortly after 1650 a Cromwellian soldier named Hulett took over the castle.

Then in 1660 Capt. William Armstrong, a Cavalier who supported the Stuarts and who fought against Cromwell, acquired the castle and lands, and there were Armstrongs in the castle for the next 200 years. William Armstrong came from a Scottish Border country family which was famed in the sixteenth century for its ferocity, and in 1677 he purchased large estates in the area including Holy Cross Abbey and Holy Cross lands.

The extension to the castle was built in 1790 by William Armstrong and it was designed by Francis Johnston from Armagh who was one of Ireland's greatest architects at the time. The style is "subdued Gothic Revival" and it has been described as a "successful marriage of Gothic Revival caprice with Regency elegance." The great Baronial stairs rises squarely to the first floor and the elegant Banqueting Room boasts of four large windows facing west... the collection of rare and modern Harps may be seen in this room. The round tower is 58 ft. high and has five stories. It is unusual in being circular whereas the majority of this sort of tower were square or oblong. It possesses a mural staircase (built within the thickness of the walls) off which it appears that secret rooms still exist undiscovered. The main door was opened up by Cyril Cullen having been closed for 200 years. There is a "murdering hole" over the main door and this enabled the castle defenders to shoot from above at any intruders. The tower castles were built to safeguard the Butler lands during the long periods when the family was away in England.

Fonmon Castle

Fonmon is one of the few medieval castles which is still lived in as a home. It was built by the St. John family in the early 13th century and has changed hands only once. Although most of the present castle dates from the post-medieval period, the rectangular keep was built c.1200 and is still the core of the castle. One of Fonmon's surviving towers may also be medieval in date. In later centuries the castle was enlarged by adding wings to the medieval keep. The St John's eventually moved to Bletsoe in Bedfordshire while a cadet branch of the family moved to Highlight in Glamorgan. In 1656, during the English Civil War Fonmon was sold to Colonel Philip Jones, a direct ancestor of Sir Brook Boothby, the present owner.

Fotheringhay Castle

Fotheringhay is a little known, yet somewhat famous castle in Northamptonshire, England. It has substantial royal connections extending from the time of the Norman Conquest to the 1930s and the visit of Queen Mary. In between, there has been the ownership by the King of Scotland, who was also Earl of Huntingdon, to the birth of a future king.

The first written mention of Fotheringhay was in 1060, listed in the Domesday Book but known as "Fodringeia." The village preceded the Norman Conquest by many years though, and it was held by a Saxon, Turchil. The castle was probably begun in about 1100 by Simon de Senlis, then Earl of Northampton and Huntingdon. In 1124 the then Earl became king of Scotland. Whilst he was a monarch of another country, he paid homage to the English king for the Earldom. The title to Fotheringhay, as the property was called, remained with the Scots until 1294, when John Balliol surrendered himself to Edward I, who then granted everything to his nephew, John of Brittany.

In 1377, Edward III gave Fotheringhay manor and castle to his son, Edmund of Langley, 1st Duke of York and founder of the powerful House of York. He was responsible for enlarging and rebuilding the castle. The wooden building was replaced with a stone structure. The church here grew from a small community of secular priests established by Edmund in the castle chapel. He intended to create a Collegiate church, but died in 1402 before the plans were carried out.

Little building work was done until the death of Duke Edward, with the title passing to his three year old nephew, Richard. When Richard was 22 he took up the family interest in building. A contract is known about the proposed plans for the church here and it involved a new collegiate church, adjoining the existing church, and a cloister. Nowadays, Fotheringhay church looks rather odd, as if truncated. The Reformation was responsible for this and the appearance reflects half the body of the church removed.

In 1452, Richard III was born at Fotheringhay. At the time of Richard's birth, Fotheringhay had become one of the principal seats of his parents, Richard Plantagenet and Cecily Neville, Duke and Duchess of York, with Richard III spending his first six years here. Richard Plantagenet was killed during the Battle of Wakefield on 30th December, 1460. "The father of Kings, though never a king himself" is how he was known.

In 1476, the Collegiate Church at Fotheringhay witnessed one of the most spectacular events of the Yorkist age and one that would match any coronation. For approaching fifteen years following the Battle of Wakefield, the bodies of Richard, Duke of York and his son, Edmund of Rutland, had lain in a plain tomb at Pontefract. The bodies were exhumed on the morning of 21st July, 1476 and laid in state in the choir of the church there. The next day the cortège headed for Fotheringhay, taking over a week to reach the castle and church. Met by King Edward, the procession was escorted into the church and the coffins were placed in a vault beneath the chancel, the ceremonies being concluded with the giving of alms to some five thousand people and the serving of dinner to two thousand more.

Following her death in 1495, the Duchess of York joined her husband under the chancel of Fotheringhay. With the death of Cicely, all connection between Fotheringhay, its castle, church and College, and the Royal House of York came to an end.

The property reverted to the crown, although it seems the College remained independent until 1539, when it surrendered its liberties to Henry VIII. The College members continued their duties until 1553.

Mary Queen of Scots was brought to the castle in September 1586 after spending 18 years in captivity across England. Her trial took place in the Great Hall of Fotheringhay on 14th and 15th of October that year, and she was beheaded on 8th February 1587. It took three strokes of the axe to sever Mary's head from her body. To the horror of all those present, her body then started to move. It was revealed that her little terrier, Geddon, who was Mary's companion during her last years in prison, had hidden under her voluminous gown all through the execution. The crucifix, writing book, bloodstained clothes which Mary had taken with her to her execution and even the block on which she lay her head were burned in Fotheringhay Castle's courtyard. There were to be no relics.

The castle seems to have been unused after Mary's execution. It fell into ruins and stone was stripped and used in the village for building. Only one original piece of masonry is found on the site now. Indeed, very little is left, save the motte embankment. The wooden staircase from the Great Hall has been removed and was incorporated into a coaching house in nearby Oundle. It is a sad end to a once important castle.

Framlingham Castle

Framlingham Castle is in Suffolk in East Anglia. Its thirteen massive towers dominate the flat country round it. It was built in the 12th century although there had probably been some sort of castle there since the 6th century. King Edmund is supposed to have fought the Danes nearby and sought protection at Framlingham. After fleeing from the castle, he was captured and murdered in nearby forests.

The first definite records are that the site was given to Roger le Bigod by King Henry I in 1100. A simple motte & bailey castle was built with the outer bailey protected by a palisade and ditch on 3 sides and a lake (possibly artificial, possibly natural) on the fourth. Roger's second son Hugh (the first Earl of Norfolk) reconstructed the castle in stone, but it was dismantled in 1176 by Henry II following Hugh's rebellion against him. The land was returned Hugh's son Roger who built the present curtain wall which may have incorporated earlier domestic buildings. The towers were self-contained so it was un-necessary to have a keep.

Roger was one of the rebel barons who stood against King John and the castle was besieged in 1216 by John's foreign troops. Framlingham's defenders comprised of 26 knights, 20 men-at-arms, 7 crossbowmen and 3 others. The entire garrison was forced to surrender after two days and the Earl waited for King John's death

for the castle to be returned to his family.

For the next 200 years, ownership passed between the Royal family and their favorites, ending up in the possession of the Howard family. Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolk, carried out a lot of modernisation during Henry VII's reign and the Tudor brickwork and chimneys can still be seen today. During Henry VIII's reign, Framlingham was forfeited to the Crown and Edward VI gave it to his half-sister, the future Queen Mary I in 1553. She stayed for the long summer of 1553 whilst waiting to see if Lady Jane Grey's attempt to win the throne was successful or not. Once she became Queen, she restored the castle to the Howard family but they didn't live there any more.

The 4th Duke was executed for treason and the castle was returned to the Crown, in this case Elizabeth I and it was used as a prison for Catholic priests who had defied the new Church of England. It wasn't looked after properly and became dilapidated so in 1613 it was returned to the Howard family who sold it to Sir Robert Hitcham in 1635. He died a year later and left it to Pembroke College, his alma mater. His will stated that the interior of the castle should be demolished and a Poorhouse built in its place. Workmen started to destroy the interior of the castle and the Poorhouse was started 30 years later. In 1665 the Black Death spread round the area and the partly built Poorhouse was used for victims. 40 years later the buildings remaining within the walls were converted into a workhouse and were then rebuilt in 1729.

It was no longer used as a workhouse after 1837 and since then has had many different uses including a court, fire station and drill hall. It was given to the nation by the College in 1913 and is now looked after by English Heritage. Sadly it's now just a shell.

Gloucester Castle

Sir William Beauchamp, 1st Baron Powyke, sheriff of Worcestershire and Gloucester, was constable of Gloucester Castle.

Goodrich Castle

Goodrich castle in Herefordshire is sited on a high rocky spur over the right bank of the River Wye, commanding a crossing of the river. The area was known as the Welsh Marches, an area on the border of Wales. It is protected partly by a natural steep slope and valley, and partly by a dry moat cut out of the rock.

Goodrich was originally an early motte and bailey construction but, as was the case with most of this type of castle, it was relatively small and was used primarily as a military fortification. The development of Goodrich from a fortified site into a home and administrative centre can be approximately dated between 1160 and 1270 and reflects the phases of castle building and improvement that can be seen here.

Godric Castle, named after a local landowner, Godric Mappeston, is first mentioned in a document dated 1101-02. The first stone building was the keep, built between 1160 and 1170. Relatively small in size, having three floors of a basic design, it is thought that the chapel and main hall being sited away from the keep is an indication that the owners at the time were relatively poor nobility. William Fitz Baderon, lord of Monmouth, could not afford to build such facilities into his castle in the initial outlay cost.

The keep stood on its own for some time. In the late 13th century, when the castle was held by William de Valence, half cousin of Henry III, and his son Aymer, it was substantially renovated in a style more common with the Edwardian castles of Wales. It was converted into a substantial quadrangle with massive cylindrical towers on three corners and a vast gatehouse-tower on the fourth corner. The red sandstone was taken from the dry moat and contrasts with the imported grey ashlar used to build the keep. The cylindrical towers were raised on square bases with spurs that clamped the towers to the rock. This design was to limit the possibility of taking the towers down by mining. Within the quadrangle the Great Hall was built and the chapel was incorporated into the gatehouse.

Extending from the gatehouse is a sloping causeway and bridge which crosses over the moat into the barbican, similar in design to that found at the Tower of London. The barbican arrangement was a formidable

defense, combined with the massive main gatehouse and forced the attacker to cross two bridges before assailing the main gate. The barbican and main gatehouse were certainly the main defense of the castle and reflected an arrangement thought to be highly effective in terms of withstanding any attempted siege.

Aymer de Valance died in 1324 and the castle passed into the hands of the Talbot family who were to become the Shrewsbury earls. The castle passed through different families and was largely disused by the time of the English Civil War. It was briefly used as a garrison by the Parliamentary forces in 1643 and later by Royalist forces in 1645. Attacked by the roundheads in 1645, the castle was mined on the river side by June of that year. The garrison inside Goodrich surrendered, even though they still had sufficient supplies, but the King had given up by this point and explosions from the mines were imminent. In common with other castles, it was partly demolished to prevent it being used defensively again and gradually the splendor of Goodrich fell into disrepair.

Greystoke Castle

William Lord Greystoke received a license to crenellate in 1353. The castle fell to ruins in 1648 and was rebuilt as a 17th-century house.

Grosmont Castle

Grosmont Castle is a remarkably well-preserved three phase fortress. It was quite possibly founded by Earl William Fitz Osbern during his invasion of South Wales in 1070. Earl William was killed the next year and his son Roger was stripped of his lands in 1075. The land on which Grosmont Castle was built now passed either under the control of the Ballon family of Abergavenny or the Lacys of Weobley and Longtown.

The powerful Marcher baron Payn Fitz John acquired Grosmont in the reign of King Henry I (1100-35) and converted it into the head of a lordship which stretched from White Castle in the west to Orcop Castle in the east. During the early twelfth century the castle was the centre or caput of what was known as the Honor of Grosmont. The great hall was one of the first features constructed of the castle and this was used as the civil capital of the lordship. Certainly this hall was not the work of Earl Hubert Burgh in the early thirteenth century as is often claimed.

The early hall at Grosmont was most probably built within 40 years either side of 1110. It still stands two stories high and has many features of comfort within its walls. There are many reasons to believe that this hall was built early in the castle's history for the evidence points clearly to Grosmont castle having been fortified in stone from the first. Who actually first built the castle though, is more of a problem. Both the first earls of Hereford and Payn Fitz John had a great deal of wealth and ruled Gwent at a time when the stable rule of the Normans in Wales seemed inevitable. Grosmont hall is certainly not a fortress. It was built as the administrative centre of a barony with both comfort and administration in mind. White Castle to the west, however, was built as a fortress from the first, probably in concert with the foundation of Grosmont. Orcop to the east, a true motte and bailey castle, may be older.

In 1134 rebellion broke out in Wales and in July 1137 Payn Fitz John was killed in action fighting against the Welsh. Immediately before his death Payn granted all his honor of Grosmont to King Stephen in exchange for the province of Archenfield. With the Angevin rebellion of 1139 Brian Fitz Count of Abergavenny took Grosmont Castle from the king and in 1142 granted it by charter to Walter Hereford. This is our first certain historical mention of the fortress. Walter was killed around 1160 fighting in the Holy Land. At this point King Henry II (1154-89) reclaimed the castle and placed royal soldiers within its walls.

The castle, requiring little maintenance, remained a royal fortress for the next forty years. In 1201 it was granted to Hubert Burgh "for his maintenance" in the wars of the period. In 1205 he was wounded almost to death in the Loire valley and the castle passed for a few years to the Braose family while Hubert recovered his health. After the death of King John in 1216 Hubert regained his castles in the Welsh Marches in 1219. It was Hubert who was responsible for turning the administrative castle of Grosmont into a fortress. Royal records from when Hubert was running the government of England, show that he was undertaking building work at Grosmont between 1224 and 1226. His work gave the castle much of its appearance today. His buildings included the gatehouse, which has mostly disappeared in the last 100 years, and the three D-shaped towers in the castle's enceinte.

In 1233 the castle witnessed the rout of King Henry III's army by rebel English and Welsh forces, who included in their midst Earl Hubert Burgh himself! In the aftermath of this victory Hubert was granted back Grosmont Castle and he held it until his final fall from grace in 1239. In 1267 King Henry III granted the castle to his second son Prince Edmund and this man undertook the conversion of the fortress of Earl Hubert Burgh into one of his main residences. He demolished one of Hubert Burgh's D-shaped towers and built accommodation over it and raised the height and extended the South-West tower to make it into a five-storeyed great tower or keep. The living quarters of this massive tower could only be approached via a wooden stairway to the north. To the east was a giant false doorway which only allowed access to the ground and first floors. The steps currently seen rising up to the castle wall walk from this doorway is the work of twentieth century restorers who are also responsible for the creation of much of the double doorway into the early hall. Most of Prince Edmund's rebuilding at Grosmont was carried out probably in the period 1274 to 1294. Part of this reconstruction included the building of the great chimney of which Grosmont is justifiably famous.

Halton Castle

John de Lacy, Magna Charta Surety, Earl of Lincoln, was 7th Baron of Halton Castle.

Hamlake Manor

Robert de Ros, Magna Charta Surety, of Fursam, was 4th Baron of Hamlake Manor. He married Isabel of Scotland, daughter of William the Lion, King of the Scots.

Harlech Castle

Harlech Castle, which overlooks the sea in northwestern Wales, was built by Edward I of England as part of his plan for controlling the Welsh. It was probably begun in 1285 and largely completed by 1290.

Hay Castle

Hay-on-Wye was founded by the Norman lords of Brecon in Wales, probably built by William de Braose, Lord of Brecon and Gower. Hay Castle fell when John invaded the lordship of Brecon in 1207. William escaped to France but his wife Maud was carried off into captivity, eventually starving to death at Windsor Castle. Castle and lordship eventually passed to the Bohun earls of Hereford and the Stafford dukes of Buckingham.

Hertford Castle

Hertford was one of the burghs founded by King Edward the Elder during the English reconquest of the Danelaw. It was no doubt soon after 1066 that William the Conqueror raised the castle beside the River Lea, Hertfordshire. A frequent royal residence up to Henry III's reign, the castle declined in favor thereafter. Edward III granted it to his mother, Queen Isabella, and those trophies of Edward's military successes – David II of Scotland and John II of France – both saw spells of imprisonment here. An equally reluctant royal visitor was England's own Richard II, who was deposed in the castle before moving on to his death at Pontefract. Edward IV revived the castle in 1461-1465.

Holt Castle

In Denbighshire, Wales, the castle was built by John de Warenne, earl of Surrey. He received the lordship of Ial in 1282 after the young Welsh heir drowned at Holt. Since Warenne was his guardian, this may have been no accident.

Huntingdon Castle

William the Conqueror founded a castle in this Saxon burgh in northern England in 1068. The castle belonged to the kings of Scotland who held the earldom of Huntingdon. In 1174 William the Lion invaded England in support of Prince Henry's revolt. He was captured at Alnwick, and Huntingdon Castle was besieged and destroyed by Henry II's forces.

Huntington Castle

In Herefordshire, England. Originated under the de Braose family. It is likely that they first raised the nearby Turret Castle, moving to the present site in the 12th century.

Kenilworth Castle

Few castles in England have made such an impact on both historian and romantic as Kenilworth. Regarded as an “architectural antique” and with a long and extremely fascinating history, Kenilworth is indeed a jewel of a castle. From humble beginnings the fortress has developed over time into an interesting and much-written about place of Kings and Queens.

The earliest mention of Kenilworth dates back to 1086 and the Domesday Book, which describes the site as a modest settlement in the Forest of Arden. Speculation states that there was a fortification on the site earlier in Saxon times, built upon a hill called Hom. Its origin was popularly attributed to a Saxon king of Mercia, of the name Kenulph, and his son Kenelm, and this is countenanced by the name, which the place bears. The structure was probably demolished during the wars between King Edmund and Canute II, King of the Danes. In about 1122, for reasons that are unclear, Geoffrey de Clinton, Chamberlain to Henry I, determined to build what was to become possibly the most magnificent castle in England in this obscure forest clearing. A local

outcrop of good building stone would have been one factor for selecting this spot. Geoffrey de Clinton built an oval enclosure defended by damming streams to create a great lake to the south and west, with a broad moat on the other two sides. The first structure here was a banked enclosure surrounded by a wide ditch, on which was raised a large mound with tower. Later, a substantial rectangular tower with walls 20ft thick and rising to three storeys was added, as well as a stonework curtain along the line of the ditch.

The castle soon became too important to leave in private hands and the Clintons eventually relinquished the castle to the Plantagenet Kings. In 1244, the king appointed Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, to be governor of the castle, and granted it for life to him and his wife Eleanor, who was the king’s sister. This earl is said to have “wonderfully fortified the castle, and stored with many kinds of warlike engines, till that time never seen nor heard of in England.”

Though a Frenchman, de Montfort is remembered as the founder of democracy in England and has a place of honor in the Palace of Westminster. In his parliament of 1265 he promised the common people an opportunity to play a part in governing the nation. This was seen as a cynical attempt at popularity by his political opponents, but he found favor with the country’s barons who were aggrieved by the King’s tax policy.

Although de Montfort achieved great popularity, within a few months he was killed by the King’s army. Involved with the revolt of the Barons, Simon and his eldest son were slain in the Battle of Evesham in 1265. Kenilworth passed to the Earl’s eldest surviving son, also called Simon, and he received those that fled from battle along with friends of those who had died. Buoyed by this, Simon sent out his officers to burn and pillage properties held by his adversaries. This state of affairs continued until the summer of 1266, when the King, Henry III, became concerned over the activities and decided to lay siege to the castle. However, Henry was faced with assailing a castle completely surrounded by water and almost too wide to allow mining tunnels to be dug. The siege began in June though and lasted six months, the longest in English history. Henry deployed stone-throwing siege equipment and wooden belfries; the latter were smashed by stone from within the castle walls. Only when food ran out and a pestilence beset the inhabitants did the siege end, and Simon negotiated terms with the King to allow them 4 days to leave Kenilworth and resettle within the Kingdom.

Many English kings have added to the structure of Kenilworth and in the 14th century, whilst owned by John of Gaunt, the Great Hall was added, along with kitchens and a Great Chamber. John was the son of Edward III, and when Edward died the crown passed to Richard II, aged only 12. John was, in practical terms, the King of England at the time. John’s daughter, Joan, married Ralph Neville, and their son Richard was father of Richard Neville, Earl of Warwick, the Kingmaker.

In 1563 - the fifth year of her reign - Queen Elizabeth I bestowed Kenilworth castle upon Robert Lord Dudley, her favorite. A year later she titled him Baron of Denbigh and Earl of Leicester. He made extensive additions and alterations to the castle to continue John of Gaunt’s transformation of the fortress into a palace. Some of the Norman features were modernised with fashionable Tudor to please Elizabeth. For example, he replaced arrow slits in the Keep with large windows to allow more light into the building.

Queen Elizabeth I visited Robert Dudley at Kenilworth Castle in the years 1566, 1568, and 1575. No expense was spared during this final trip, which lasted for 19 days in mid July and cost Dudley £1000 per day. The splendor of the pageantry eclipsed anything that had been seen before in the whole of England. Water

pageants were provided for Elizabeth's entertainment at the mere, a large defensive lake outside the perimeter walls, and the "Pleasance" was laid out on the North side of the castle as a pleasure garden during her visit.

One historical account records that the Queen arrived at the castle at 8 o'clock in the evening. On approaching it she was accosted by an oracle, "comely clad in a pall of white silk," who in poetic manner expressed the delight her arrival gave, and prophesied that she should enjoy a long and prosperous reign. On arriving at the first castle gate, six massive statues of trumpeters appeared upon the battlements, a fanfare welcomed the Queen, and she was presented with the gate keys. When the queen entered the gate and came into the court, she was met by the legendary Lady of the Lake, who, attended by two nymphs arrayed in silk, floated towards her from the middle of the pool upon a movable island, blazing with torches. According to the report, the sound of drums, fifes, and trumpets, the firing of guns and a grand display of fireworks were heard twenty miles away.

William Shakespeare was just 11 years old and likely among the crowd that witnessed the occasion with its expensive and complex arrangements. 20 years later he wrote *Midsummer Night's Dream* which, according to experts, bears strong evidence of his visit in 1575 to see the festivities.

The Restoration in 1660 revived the monarchy and saw the accession to the throne of King Charles II. He gave the castle to Sir Edward Hyde, whom he created Baron Kenilworth and Earl of Clarendon. The castle remained the property of the Earl of Clarendon until 1937 when it was purchased by Sir John Siddeley, later Lord Kenilworth. The second Lord Kenilworth presented the castle to Kenilworth in 1958, on the 400th anniversary of the accession of Elizabeth I to the throne. English Heritage has looked after the ruins since 1984.

Kilkea Castle

Originally built around 1180, this castle was completely restored in the 19th century. Kilkea Castle is situated in County Kildare, 40 miles southwest of Dublin, Ireland's capital city. It lies on the Athy road five miles northwest of Castledermot and was once the second home of the Maynooth Fitzgeralds. The castle grounds are supposed to be haunted by the son of Silken Fitzgerald, Gerald the Wizard Earl. The legend claims his ghost rises every seven years from the Rath of Mullaghmast to free Ireland from its enemies. This is a neat trick because the Wizard Earl is buried in London.

Among the castle's oddities is an Evil Eye Stone set high up on the exterior wall at the back of the castle. The Evil Eye Stone is thought to date from the 13th or 14th century. It is a depiction of various half-human, animal and birdlike figures engaging an erotic behavior. A great deal of restoration was carried out on the castle in the 19th century. The castle is now a resort hotel and golf club.

Kilkinney Castle

The first structure on this strategic site overlooking the River Nore was a wooden tower built in 1172 by the Anglo-Norman conqueror of Ireland, Richard de Clare, also known as Strongbow. Twenty years later his son in law William Marshall erected a stone castle with four towers, three of which are part of the current structure. The castle was bought by the powerful Butler family in 1391, and their descendents continued to live there until 1935. Maintaining the castle became such an enormous expense and most of the furnishings were sold at an auction. The city bought the castle in 1967 for the huge sum of 50 pounds (now about \$75 US).

The Long Gallery is remarkable because of its vividly painted ceilings and extensive portrait collection of the Butler family members over the centuries. The castle also has art exhibitions in the Butler Gallery. In the basement, the castle kitchen now houses a popular restaurant.

Knepp Castle

In Sussex, England, the castle belonged to the de Braose family. King John ordered its demolition after William de Braose joined the Magna Charta barons.

Lancaster Castle

Overlooks the River Lune, Lancashire, England. Following the arrival of the Normans, Lancaster became part of the vast estate granted to Roger de Poitou, the first castle probably his foundation. Lords of Lancaster in the 12th century included two future kings of England – Stephen and John. However, the dynasty which is most closely associated with Lancaster appeared in 1265 when Henry III granted the earldom of Lancaster to his younger son, Edmund “Crouchback.” The castle became the chief seat of the powerful lords who followed, including Thomas, ringleader of the baronial opposition to Edward II; Henry, the first palatine duke; and John of Gaunt, who married his way into the duchy. After John of Gaunt’s son seized the throne as Henry IV in 1399, and the consequent union of the Duchy of Lancaster with the Crown, the castle fell into decline as a residence, but remained the administrative center of the duchy. It remains very much a “working” castle, still serving as a courthouse and prison.

Langley Castle

14th Century tower house commandingly positioned above the Langley Burn, southwest of Hayden Bridge, Northumberland, England. The castle enters recorded history in 1368 when it was held by Sir Thomas de Lucy, who was probably the builder of the tower house. It passed to the Percy earls of Northumberland and was burnt by Henry IV during Henry Percy’s revolt. Restored from 1882 as a residence.

Leeds Castle

Leeds Castle has been described as “the loveliest castle in the world” and “the most romantic castle in Britain” and, while a debatable point, it is certainly a beautiful building on two islands surrounded by a large lake. Despite its name, Leeds Castle is nowhere near Leeds but is, in fact, near Maidstone in Kent, named after Led, Ethelbert IV’s chief minister. It has been a stronghold, a royal home for six of England’s medieval queens, one of Henry VIII’s palaces and now it is a residence and corporate conference centre with an adjacent golf course.

It was known for some time as “Lady’s Castle” after its royal residents, including Eleanor and Margaret, the wives of Edward I; Philippa of Hainault, wife of Edward III; Catherine de Valois, wife of Henry V; Catherine of Aragon, first wife of Henry VIII and Elizabeth I who was imprisoned there for a while before becoming Queen.

It was originally a manor belonging to the Saxon royal family – probably as early as Ethelbert IV’s reign (856-860). Over the next 100 years or so the castle was a centre of many sieges and much fighting, resulting in frequent changes of ownership. The Saxon castle was an earthwork enclosure with wooden pallisades and it was mentioned in the Domesday Book of the late 11th century.

Robert Crevecoeur started to build a stone castle on the site around 1119 to be an impregnable stronghold against the huge numbers of hostile English after the Norman invasion, although the only visible remains of this castle is the cellar. It is under a late Georgian house of 1822 and used to lead to the great hall. Stephen and Matilda, during their war for the English throne in the mid 12th century contested the castle. After a short siege Stephen took control of the castle and later the English throne.

In 1278 Edward I took possession. He rebuilt much of it and enlarged it, building a curtain wall round the edge of the larger island with two D-shaped towers and a water gate in the south-east of the island. He also enlarged the moat. He built the barbican, still to be seen today, which is unique in that it is made up of three parts, each with its own entrance – drawbridge, gateway and portcullis. A mill that had already existed on the site was fortified and became an important part of the outer defenses. It could be used to flood the river valley via an aqueduct in the basement during invasions. He also built the Gloriette (the medieval keep) named in honor of Queen Eleanor’s influence. In the Gloriette was the great hall and in the centre a courtyard called Fountain Court. In the 14th century a system was devised to bring piped water in from springs in the park to supply the fountain. These springs still supply the castle today. In 1321 the castle was besieged and taken for the last time by Edward II’s troops because his Queen was refused entry.

Henry VIII is the most well-known of all Leeds Castle’s owners. He expended a lot of money enlarging and beautifying the whole castle, giving the work to his great friend Sir Henry Guildford. He retained the defenses, however, as he feared invasion from France or Spain. He left from Leeds for his famous meeting with Francis I of France at the Field of the Cloth of Gold in 1520.

In 1552 the castle was granted to Sir Anthony St Leger, the Lord Deputy of Ireland. It was then bought by

the Smyths who built a Jacobean house on the site and sold to the Culpeper family in 1632. The family were Parliamentarians during the Civil War and used Leeds as a Roundhead arsenal. In the 17th century, the Keep was used to hold French and Dutch prisoners but it fell into ruins after the prisoners set it on fire. From the Culpepers, the castle passed to Lord Fairfax who “Gothicised” the main house and entertained George III in 1778.

It has been constantly inhabited since then, parts of it being rebuilt over the years. Most of what you can see today is the result of 19th century reconstruction and addition and restoration carried out by Lady Baillie, an American heiress, who bought the castle in 1926. This final restoration took over 30 years and in her will the Leeds Castle Foundation was created to maintain the building, garden & park.

During the 2nd World War, Leeds Castle hosted many important meetings including one between Field Marshal Montgomery and Sir Bertram Ramsay. Cinema goers may remember it from *Kind Hearts & Coronets*.

Now it looks like a residence with a fortified barbican and drawbridge. It is a combination of royal palace, manor house and medieval castle with huge fireplaces, tapestries on the walls, much fine furniture and no draughty towers. It also houses Lady Baillie’s fine collection of 18th century Chinese porcelain. An aviary was opened in 1988 as a memorial to Lady Baillie full of many birds including black swans. In the 500 acres of surrounding parkland are a maze, vineyard, grotto and herb garden.

Leicester Castle

Located in Leicestershire, England, it was occupied by the Danes as one of their Five Boroughs, then fortified against them following the English reconquest of the Danelaw. Hugh de Grantmesnil became sheriff of Leicester after the Norman Conquest and he probably founded the castle on the king’s behalf. His grandson, Robert, was one of the ringleaders of Prince Henry’s revolt in 1173. As a consequence, Leicester was sacked by Henry II’s supporters and the castle was demolished. However, the town rose again under the patronage of Simon de Montfort, and following his death, Henry III awarded the earldoms of Leicester and Lancaster to his younger son Edmund “Crouchback.” Leicester thus became a possession of the House of Lancaster and the rebuilt castle emerged as one of the earls’ chief residences.

Lewes Castle

After the Norman Conquest, this Saxon burgh and a large estate around it were granted to William de Warenne, chief justiciar and subsequently earl of Surrey. On the death of John Warenne in 1347, the Honor of Lewes passed to the FitzAlan earls of Arundel.

Linlithgow Palace

Located on a promontory lying immediately to the north of the parish church of St. Michael, and bounded on two sides by the waters of Linlithgow Loch in Scotland, Linlithgow was built in the late 13th or early 14th century. It was a royal residence of Edward I, who did his best to turn it into a castle, although it remained on documents as the king’s house or manor, until a fire destroyed it in 1424. The king took advantage of the situation and ordered the rebuilding of his royal residence, but he was assassinated before its completion.

Littywood

A farmhouse surrounded by a ringwork of unusually large proportions, defended by a strong rampart and ditch. It has been suggested that this was the original castle of Roger de Toeni before his son Robert obtained nearby Stafford Castle. It lies northeast of Bradley on the road to Stafford, England.

Llantilio Castle

Llantilio Castle, also known as White Castle, in Wales is by far the most impressive castles of the Trilateral, the others being Grosmont and Skenfrith. It is also the most important of the three and possibly the oldest. The Castle is built on a nameless low hill. It is now about a mile from the village of Llantilio Crossenny. It is called white castle because of the white rendering which is still visible on parts of the exterior walls.

The earthworks of White Castle comprise three separate enclosures. In the centre is the pear-shaped inner ward, surrounded by a wet moat with stone revetted sides, and containing the walls and towers of the main defenses of the castle. To the south is a crescentic hornwork. On the north - the side from which visitors

approach the castle - is an outer ward with its own stone curtain wall, towers, and a gatehouse surmounting the basic earthworks.

Together with Grosmont and Skenfrith, these so-called “three castles” formed an important strategic triangle controlling this area of the southern March. These castles were the strongholds of the barony of Grosmont. All three were royal castles in the later 12th century, and in 1201 were granted to Hubert de Burgh by King John. Unlike the other two, however, De Burgh didn’t rebuild White Castle in the new defensive style of the early 13th century.

In 1182 King Henry II ordered White Castle refortified. The royal engineer Ralph Grosmont did the job Henry requested and made the castle similar to what it is today. This work was finished in 1187 and the castle remained unaltered until 1229, when royal records show that Hubert Burgh began to alter the site.

The most noticeable feature of the castle is the late 13th-century gate. It was because of this great new work that the castle ceased to be known as Llantilio Castle and took on its modern name of White Castle. The gatehouse was built by Earl Hubert Burgh of Kent. The castle had such great defenses that attackers were always too daunted to attempt a siege.

Longtown Castle

Overlooks the River Monnow in Herefordshire, England. After the Norman Conquest, this area was colonized by Walter de Lacy. Early in the 13th century, another Walter de Lacy, Sheriff of Herefordshire, rebuilt the defenses in stone. The castle was probably abandoned in the 14th century.

Ludlow Castle

Ludlow Castle in Shropshire, on the borders of England and Wales, occupies a good defensive position. It stands on level high ground guarded by two rivers and has its own supply of water from a deep well in the inner bailey. It was mostly built of limestone quarried from its own site and is one of the few castles to be built of stone from the outset.

After the Norman invasion, a string of castles was planned along the English/Welsh border to guard against the unconquered Welsh although strangely Ludlow was never attacked by them. This was possibly because it was the strongest of the castles in the chain. Walter de Lacy was given the lands of South Shropshire and his sons built the earliest surviving parts of the castle probably in the late 11th century. His family retained the lordship until the end of the 13th century. Amongst surviving parts built at this time is the circular chapel in the inner bailey, based on the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem. One of the de Lacys had been very impressed by this when he saw it as a crusader and it is the oldest of its type in Britain. The massive keep also dates from this time as does the curtain wall of the inner bailey and the four flanking towers. Although the castle was surrounded by a deep ditch, this was never filled with water to make a moat and was caused by digging out the stone to build the castle.

The outer bailey was built during the second half of the 12th century to provide a protected area to train troops, hold tournaments and to be used as a safe haven for townspeople. In 1139 during Stephen & Matilda’s civil war, the castle was held by the de Lacy’s enemy, Joyce de Dinan, and was besieged by King Stephen himself. It was the site for the signing of a treaty between Henry III and the Welsh prince Llywelyn ap Iorwerth in 1224.

The castle then passed through various hands until it was refurbished and taken over by the Mortimer family who brought it into prominence and did much building including the Great Hall which is a huge room measuring about 60 feet by 30 feet. In 1425 it was passed, through the female side of the family, to Richard Plantagenet, the leader of the Yorkists in the Wars of the Roses but it was taken and sacked by the Lancastrians in 1459. In 1461 when Richard’s son became Edward IV, the castle became Crown property and remained so for 350 years, except for a brief period during the Civil War and Commonwealth. It became the administrative centre for the Marches and Wales.

The two princes in the Tower (Edward and Richard) spent most of their childhood at Ludlow and Edward was there when he heard of his father’s death and his accession to the throne as Edward V. They went to

London for his coronation but were imprisoned in the Tower of London and shortly afterwards murdered.

Henry VII's eldest son, Prince Arthur and his wife, Catherine of Aragon, were staying at Ludlow when he died in 1502 and his heart is buried there. His death led his younger brother to become Henry VIII on their father's death and to marry Arthur's widow who became the first of Henry's six wives.

In the 1550s a lot of new building took place because of all the administrative work being undertaken there and the castle began to take on the appearance of a Tudor stately home. It was virtually the capital of Wales at this time which saved it from the decay of most of the other castles in the Marches. Its importance in this respect continued until 1689.

During the Civil War, the castle was a Royalist stronghold. In 1646 the town & castle were besieged by a large Parliamentary army. The castle surrendered after negotiation so wholesale demolition didn't take place as happened to many other castles. However, this led to a long period of neglect.

When William & Mary centralized government from London in 1669, the castle was abandoned and was in ruins by early the next century. The townspeople looted the castle for the stone and the roof lead and the government considered demolishing it in the 1760s. However in 1771 it was leased by the Earl of Powis and the family bought it outright in 1811. Its final role took place the same year when it was used as a prison for the captured brother of Napoleon. The Earls' stewardship initially stopped the decline and subsequently, with the help of grants from English Heritage, important repair work has been done. The castle is open to the public.

Lyonshall Castle

Three miles east of Kington, Herefordshire, England, it was probably founded in the 1080s by Roger de Lacy and became the home of the d'Evreux family.

Malahide Castle

Malahide Castle is very unique in Ireland because the Talbot family managed to keep control of the castle for 791 years. The Talbot family began their reign in 1185 and ended in 1976 despite a short interlude, 1649 to 1660, while Cromwell marched through Ireland. The lands and harbor of Malahide were granted to Richard Talbot in 1185, one of the knights who arrived in Ireland with Henry II in 1174. According to Burke's Peerage, Richard Talbot or de Talbot was the common ancestor of the Lords of Malahide and of the Earls of Shrewsbury.

Malahide, which means "on the brow of the sea" is a village nine miles north of Dublin. The castle is close to the village and is built on a small rise which commands a view of the bay. There are many magnificent oaks, chestnuts and sycamores dating to the days of the Tudors. The hall of the castle is one of the purest specimens of Norman architecture but it is not known whether it dates from the reign of Henry IV or from that of Edward IV when the original building was considerably enlarged and embellished. The circular towers flanking the facade were added in 1765.

The Talbot family was in the possession of Malahide Castle from 1174 until 1976 with the exception of a period of eleven years, 1649 to 1660, during the Cromwellian era when it was taken from the Talbots and granted by Cromwell to Miles Corbet. Fortunately for the Talbots, Corbet was one of the murderers who signed the death warrant of Charles I and after the Restoration he was hung, drawn and quartered at Tyburn.

At the heart of the medieval castle is the Oak Room, approached by a winding stone staircase and lit by Gothic windows added in 1820 when the room was enlarged and the front hall below was created. The room is lined with carved oak from floor to ceiling, representing scriptural subjects, now black with age and polishing. Some of the carving is of Flemish origin, including six panels representing biblical scenes opposite the window; their religious theme suggests that the Talbots, who remained Roman Catholics until 1774, used this room as a chapel in penal times. Over the mantelpiece is a fine representation of the coronation of the Blessed Virgin which according to tradition disappeared when Cromwell seized the Castle and miraculously sprang back to its place when the Talbots were reinstated.

The thick walls of the oak room are flanked on the east side by the Great Hall which was added to the castle around 1475. Unique in Ireland, this great hall not only retained its original form but also remained in use as a dining-room until 1976. The National Gallery loaned the huge painting, "Battle of the Boyne," which suits the Great Hall room visually but is historically appropriate; on the morning of the Battle of the Boyne in 1690 fourteen Talbot cousins, all followers of James II, gathered here to dine however none returned from battle.

The west side of the castle is occupied by an early seventeenth-century addition which once contained four tapestry-hung chambers. The wing was burnt around 1760 and these rooms were replaced with two fine drawing-rooms, while externally the architect added round corner turrets, giving the house a Georgian Gothic character. The late Lord Talbot de Malahide died unexpectedly in April 1973 while on a cruise. He was unmarried and left one unmarried sister to inherit the property along with crippling death duties. Unfortunately, the Irish government was unwilling to accept the property in lieu of death duties, and its remarkable collection of portraits and furniture, which uniquely reflected Ireland's historical and culture, had to be sold by auction. Miss Rose Talbot paid the death duties and went to live in Tasmania. Fortunately, Ireland's tourist board, Bord Failte, managed to purchase much of the furniture at the sale together with the castle's carpets and curtains which remain at Malahide Castle. The National Gallery purchased 35 of the family portraits and returned them on loan to Malahide. Further important acquisitions of Irish furniture have been added to the collection so that Malahide's interior still retains much of its history and beauty.

Maynooth Castle

The ancient name of Maynooth 'Magh Nuadhat' means the plain of Nuadhat. Nuadhat is referred to as the maternal grandfather of the legendary Fionn MacCumhail in the "Annals of the Four Masters." In 1426 the sixth Earl of Kildare enlarged and rebuilt the castle. In the latter half of the fifteenth century, Maynooth Castle became the centre of the Geraldine powerbase, as the Earls of Kildare increased their strength of "rule." This was something which the English monarchy disliked. The culmination of the developing friction between the Fitzgeralds and the monarchy was the rebellion of Silken Thomas (so called because of his fine clothes). Silken Thomas alias Lord Offaly was a son of Garret Óg, the ninth Earl of Kildare. Thomas rose up in rebellion against the king who had arrested his father, and held him in the Tower of London. Thomas marched to Dublin Castle and threw down the sword of state, declaring himself an enemy of the king. However, his rebellion was curbed when he and his followers were defeated and the stronghold of Maynooth taken by the English. All those within the castle were put to death and this became known, ironically, as the 'Maynooth Pardon'. Thomas, along with five of his uncles, was later executed in London. Maynooth Castle then became a royal castle and a popular residence for the Lord Deputies of Ireland. By the seventeenth century however, the castle had fallen derelict. It became the property of the Duke of Leinster and today only the ruined keep and the gate-house survive. It provides an impressive entrance for Maynooth College, which was founded in 1795 and is famous for the education of the Irish Catholic priests.

Monmouth Castle

Only a fragment is left of this once important castle; the curtain wall, gatehouse and great round keep, which stood until the Civil War where the Great House now stands, have all completely vanished. All that is left is the ruined Great Tower and Hall. These stand on the edge of a precipitous slope down to the river Monnow, on the west side of what was the castle ward. This was roughly circular, surrounded on the west and north by the river and on the east and south by a wall and ditch, which is still partly apparent in back the gardens behind Agincourt Square.

Half-way along Castle Hill Road was the entrance, consisting of a bridge and strong gatehouse. William FitzOsbern chose this strategic position, guarding crossings of the Wye and Monnow rivers, for one of his marcher castles sometime between 1067 and 1071, when he died. The Great Tower is similar in style to that at Chepstow, and was certainly built by about 1150. What can be seen are parts of its east and south sides. The west side fell in 1647, the north-west side remains but can not be seen from the town side, and a house lies over the rest. This was a fine early Norman rectangular two-storeyed building with the hall and main apartments on the main floor and a cellar or undercroft below.

The east wall displays some Norman features: the small round-headed windows, the fragment of simple string course and the flat pilaster buttress in the south-east corner, one of a series which originally continued all along the wall. The entrance was at first-floor level on the south side.

The castle was held uneventfully by Norman lords as the headquarters of an independent lordship until 1267, when it was granted with the Three Castles (White, Grosmont & Skinfrith) to Henry III's son, Edmund Crouchback, when he became earl of Lancaster. He immediately built the large rectangular building to the south of the Great Tower, known as the hall. It was a single storey building containing one large room used for the holding of courts. It continued in use as such right up to the 17th century. All the walls, except the north, stand almost to their full height. The entrance was the gap in the wall in the north-east corner, on the west side of which a moulded base of a door jamb is visible. The fireplace was in the middle of the north wall, and there were windows, now blocked, in the south wall. A later medieval window, also blocked, was inserted in the east wall. In the mid-14th century, during the lordship of Henry of Grosmont, 1st duke of Lancaster, the upper part of the Great Tower was transformed by the insertion of large decorated windows. The elaborate frame of one of these is visible in the east wall.

The original entrance was replaced by a tall door, and the tower was reroofed. At this stage, 12th-century corbels of carved heads were reset high up in the east hall, where they are still visible. This tower was almost certainly the birthplace of the future King Henry V in 1387. The end came for the castle in the Civil War, when it changed hands three times and was eventually slighted by the Parliamentarians. A local man's diary for 1647 records that on 30 March the townsmen and soldiers began pulling down the great round tower, which stood where Great Castle House now stands, and that on 22 December "about 12 o'clock, the Tower in the castle of Monmouth fell down, upon its side, whilst we were at sermon."

The Great Castle House, built in 1673 by Henry Somerset, later the duke of Beaufort, was to replace Raglan as his family's residence in the country following the Civil War. In 1875 the house became the headquarters of the Royal Monmouthshire Royal Engineers (Militia), and as such it remains one of the few British castles still in military occupation.

Mortemer-en-Brai Castle

Roger de Mortimer, 2nd Earl of March, was named from his castle, Mortemer-en-Brai. Roger de Mortimer was a relative of William the conqueror, who gave him estates on the Welsh borders, including Wigmore, the future chief center of the family's power. They fortified a number of great strongholds and played a dominant part in English history, particularly in the 14th and 15th centuries.

Newport Castle

Located in Monmouthshire, Wales, the first castle stood near the Norman church of St. Woolos. It existed by 1172 and endured several sieges, the last of which took place in 1321 when Hugh de Audley briefly seized Newport during the baronial rising against Hugh le Despenser the Younger. De Audley assumed full possession in 1326.

Norham Castle

Standing on one side of the River Tweed in Northumberland, Norham Castle is the northernmost fortification in England, and another castle with a turbulent history. The ruins of the keep and surrounding walls are all that remains of the former chief border stronghold of the Prince Bishops of Durham.

The site guarded the main fording point over the river and as a result of its elevated position, the view from the top of the keep allowed an impressive view. Sir Walter Scott described it in his poem as "the most dangerous place in Britain." The legacy of the Border Wars in particular supports this, with frequent and bloody skirmishes between the English and the Scots resulting in Northumberland having more fortifications built than any other English county.

The castle today comprises of a walled oval ringwork separated by a ditch 9 metres deep and 23 metres

wide. The site was isolated from the adjoining ground to the south and east by a ditch 30 metres wide, but only the southeast part survives. The curtain wall is between 2.3 –3.4 metres thick and up to 9.1 metres high.

Ranulph Flambard, then Bishop of Durham, originally raised a motte and bailey-style construction here in 1121, the wooden tower and palisade walling more or less where the newer stone structure lies today. Norham was to be a link in the chain of defenses known as the “Border Fortresses.” Fifteen years after it was built though, David, King of Scotland took the castle. It was eventually returned to its owner, but it wasn’t long before war broke out once more and this time David razed the castle to the ground. 1157 saw Henry II retake all the lands in England previously granted to the Scots, with Northumberland being the principle county. Bamburgh, Newcastle and Wark-Upon-Tweed were remodeled in stone, and Norham followed suit in 1158 with Richard of Wolviston, a local builder, designing and overseeing the construction of the keep and curtain walls.

Over the following 400 years, Norham changed hands a number of times and witnessed some of the most intense warfare of the time. In 1215 the castle was besieged (without success) for forty days by Alexander, King of Scotland. In 1318 the Scots blockaded Norham for a whole year and a second siege of seven months in the following year was equally unsuccessful. In 1497 Norham saw its first assault by artillery when the Scots, led by King James IV, an enthusiastic artilleryman, pounded the castle without success. Then, in 1513, James IV invaded England in the campaign which led to the disaster of Flodden. Armed with the cannon known as “Mon’s Meg” (now on permanent display at Edinburgh Castle), Norham was soon in ruins. Mon’s Meg was just too much for Norham, or any other castle, to withstand.

The advent of heavy artillery such as Mon’s Meg saw a radical change in the use of castles across England, Wales and Scotland. It became evident that the once mighty structures were finally succumbed. Cannon like these were able to smash through walls and roofs with huge cannonballs never seen before. Mon’s Meg weighed in at over 6 tonnes and was able to launch cannonballs weighing up to 330 lbs (150kg).

After the defeat of the Scots at the Battle of Flodden, an immediate start was made to rebuild the castle once more by Bishop Thomas Ruthall, who in fact dismantled his castle at Middleham, Yorkshire, to provide materials for the job. By 1521 Norham was regarded as “impregnable” yet the glory era of Norham only lasted some twenty years. It fell into decay and by 1559 it was taken over by the Crown. Whilst one part of the keep still carried cannon, the other half had collapsed and in 1571 and 1580 respectively, the captain of the castle wrote that “no man can dwell here” and “if speedy remedy be not had it will fall flat to the ground.” No remedy was forthcoming, the castle once more changing hands many times but no repair work was carried out. Norham remains to this day, in the eyes of many, as the “Queen of Border Fortresses,” despite the ruinous state.

Northampton Castle

Simon de Senlis, a Norman and the 1st Earl of Northampton, was the builder of Northampton Castle.

Nottingham Castle

Situated above the River Leen in Nottinghamshire, England, William the Conqueror established the castle in 1068 and it remained an important royal stronghold throughout the Middle Ages. Several parliaments met there. The underlying rock is honeycombed with caves and passages. One of them, known as Mortimer’s Hole, is said to have been Edward III’s means of entry in 1330 when he seized his mother’s lover, Roger Mortimer.

Oakham Castle

Built in 1190-1200 in the county town of England’s smallest county, with a noble church and the fine hall or courthouse. The castle was held by the Ferrers family.

Oakhampton Castle

In County Devon, England, probably founded by Baldwin de Brionne, who was made sheriff of Devon

following the Norman Conquest. It is mentioned in the Domesday Book. It passed to the Courtenay family who were emerging as major landholders in the county. Hugh de Courtenay rebuilt the castle in its present form sometime after his coming of age in 1297. He was created Earl of Devon in 1335. The castle remained a popular retreat with his successors until the execution of Henry de Courtenay, who fell victim to the intrigues of Henry VIII's court. It was then abandoned and drifted into ruin.

Odiham Castle

Very little is left of Odiham Castle, just some earthworks and the rubble fill of part of an octagonal keep, but the pleasant walk along the Basingstoke Canal makes it worth a visit. It was built by King John between 1207-14, and was said to be one of his favourite castles. It was from this castle that he set out to Runnymede to sign the Magna Carta. In 1216 it was captured by Louis, Dauphin of France, after a 15 day siege. In 1236, King Henry III gave the castle to his sister, Eleanor. It became home to the de Montfort family when Eleanor married Simon de Montfort in 1238. David II, King of Scotland, spent much of his eleven year imprisonment here following his capture at the Battle of Neville's Cross in 1346. The castle was an abandoned ruin by the end of the 16th century.

Oswestry Castle

Oswestry's origins date to around 1086, when a castle L'oeuvre was recorded in William I's Domesday Book as being built by Rainald, Sheriff of Shropshire in the Hundred of Meresberie. Before the Norman Conquest the region surrounding the castle is thought to have been a frontier outpost that saw both Welsh and Anglo Saxon mix together. No town however, was recorded until around 1272 when references appear to the settlement of Blancminster, which derives from its white stone church. Interestingly though, the Welsh were already acknowledging a "Creos Oswallt" in 1254, a name that partly invokes a link with St. Oswald, the Northumbrian King who was killed at the Battle of Maeserfelth (a location reputed to be near the town) in 641 AD.

Similarly, Domesday lists the tenant of nearby Brogynton as Madoc, possibly the son of Bleyddn ap Cynfyn, the Prince of Powys. Further to this the Hundred of Maersete does record fifty three Welsh tenants. This does leave the origins of the town as a settlement, open to debate, it could be the case that Oswestry was once a strong Welsh settlement. What is certain is that role of the Castle was an act of domination to subdue Welsh resistance, whether this resistance was because of a threat to settlements over the border or the colonisation of "Creos Oswallt" by the Normans, cannot be certain.

After the conquest the region was granted to Roger de Montgomerie by William I. In turn it passed to Rainald who is thought to have built the first castle (unless of course, he was settling on existing Welsh fortifications). After Rainald the castle passed to Alan Fitzlaad, descendant to the mighty Fitzalans, later to become the Lords of Arundel and Clun. The Civil War however, between Stephen and Matilda saw William Fitzalan I join forces with Matilda. Thus he was forced to give up the castle and its area.

The Welsh were now given a chance to reclaim what they once may have lost, and this appears evident in the occupation of the castle by Madoc ap Maerdudd the Prince of Powys, between 1149 and 1157, along with the Lordship of the area. This was short lived however, since the accession of Henry II saw the Fitzalan's recover their estate, but they failed to establish a peaceful reign during this time. Indeed they faced their most troubled times as rulers, mirroring the national situation for the Plantagenets.

There was significant conflict between the Welsh and the English, which saw the area and its castle sacked numerous times. This highlights the importance of the castle at this period as a military outpost, since in 1165, Henry himself adopted it as a base for his albeit disastrous campaign against Owain Gwynedd. Similarly the year 1211 saw King John move against Llywelyn Fawr and North Wales and once more the castle came under attack.

It is no surprise then that by 1270 the castle's walls had been extended to embrace the town. Arguably it is this which further provoked Welsh resistance to English rule. In the 14th Century Owain Glyndwr emulated earlier patterns of hostility against symbols of English dominance as he attempted to establish himself as the

rightful Prince of Wales. Ironically it was during such conflicts that the settlement began to be seen as a potential trading establishment. It had its first Siarter Gwtta or Short Charter granted by William III at the end of the 12th Century. This awarded the area similar customs and liberties as the larger and already prosperous Shrewsbury.

A second charter in 1263 saw this confirmed and culminated in 1399 with the granting of a Royal Charter. It has been suggested that this new found commercial status began to transform its status from an outpost to a neutral gateway. This idea can be reinforced with the offer in 1276, from Llywelyn ap Gruffyd to meet Edward I at the castle, rather than pay homage to him in London. Yet it remains that because Oswestry still required a fully fortified military base, it was some considerable time before it was able to shake off its original function.

Documentary evidence underlines the importance of the castle in the 12th century, as between 1160 and 1175 over £2,000 was lavished on alterations, such as pallsides and a well. Two towers are thought to have stood at the North East and North West regions of the castle. Although no real record exists to support this, other than an 18th Century painting which clearly shows one such turret. If one walks around the middle section of the motte and looks up to the summit where the tower are thought to have stood, it is possible to get a general impression of their locations. The evidence that does exist gives us an indication of its once resplendent features.

A survey carried out in 1395 talks of the great, middle and high chambers, the Constables Hall, the buttery, the chapel, kitchen and larder. It is sad that none of these are visible today and as far as this author is aware, no archaeological study has been carried out to actually point out such positioning. It is largely left to the discerning visitor to establish their own opinions.

The decline of the castle began around the late 15th century as it was noted of being in a state of disrepair. We can look to the results of the Glyndwr rising and then the town's solid status as a market town as contributory factors, which meant less need for fortification. Although in 1530 the historian John Leyland noted that despite its state, the castle still had visible its famous Madoc's Tower.

The year 1662 saw a thorough survey of the castle being carried out for Thomas Howard, The Earl of Suffolk by John Norden. His findings attributed the castle's worsening state to one thing; that although £20 a year was granted to maintain defenses, the town's Burgesses preferred to use the castle walls as a source of stone facing for buildings elsewhere in the town. Further to this, its main tower had now been dismantled of timber, iron and lead, as were the castle gates.

The outbreak of the Civil War in 1642 revived its fledgling status as a military stronghold, albeit temporarily. It was once more strengthened to some degree, following the town's declaration of support for Charles I, and prepared for hostility. In June 1644 the castle was under the control of Colonel Edward Lloyd of Llanforda, but it was subsequently laid to siege by Thomas Mytton of Halston Hall (near Whittington) who was soon joined by the earl of Denbigh. Any romantic notions of a long and bitter siege can easily be dispelled. The town was surrounded by cannon and its principal gates battered into submission. This was quickly followed by an infiltration of troops who rapidly descended upon the castle, surrounding it and after one or two minor skirmishes the walls were mined just before nightfall. The following day "Buttars," a kind of early grenade, were used to storm the gates. Subsequently, the royalist troops surrendered and the castle fell. However, attempts to recapture it by the royalists do point to the castle's military significance even at this late stage.

It was following the Civil War that strongholds such as Oswestry Castle were rendered uninhabitable, part of a campaign to quash notions of resistance. And in the case of Oswestry no sentiment was spared, it being totally eradicated of any visible evidence aside from a simple collection of stones. A poignant reminder of the tempestuous past that once enveloped it. The castle was handed to the control of the local council this century and the motte and surrounding grounds were turned into a public park. The fragments of walling that are visible today are all the remains.

Oystermouth Castle

Oystermouth Castle was founded by William de Londres of Ogmores Castle early in the 12th century. Of this first castle, which was probably a ringwork and bailey on the highest part of the hill, there is now no trace. The castle later came to be the chief residence of the lords of Gower, and its history became intimately

connected with that of Swansea Castle.

The earliest stone building of the castle, the keep, dates from the 12th century. It has been much altered and incorporated into a later block, of which it now forms the southern half. Originally it was a free-standing, rectangular building, entered through an arched doorway, now blocked to the right of the present entrance porch. The great hall would have been on the first floor. Twice the Welsh burnt this early castle, first in 1116 and later in 1215.

In the 13th century the de Braoses were lords of Gower and held the castle, and towards the end of the century Oystermouth rather than Swansea became their principal residence. Edward I paid a brief visit here in December 1284. The de Braoses rebuilt the castle in stone, and most of what remains today is from that period. The castle entrance on the south side is an arched passage flanked by what were originally two half-round towers. These have had their fronts hacked off, and the remainder patched and tidied up. Inside the castle the southern part is an open courtyard, with remains of two long, rectangular buildings against the curtain walls on either side of the entrance.

The rest of the castle buildings fill the northern end. Behind the keep is a rectangular room with small windows and a fireplace in the south wall. Above this was the lord's private apartment, or solar, and below is a basement. A narrow passage leads through the top floor of the north-west block, thought to be the earliest stone addition to the castle after the keep. It is a high, three storey block with a barrel-vaulted basement, and similar middle floor, now held up by a modern pillar. In the south-east corner there is a fascinating narrow passage, dimly lit by narrow slits, which leads back to the keep. It skirts round a spiral staircase which can be glimpsed through its slits.

To the west of the keep is a small guardroom. The north end of the west range is a three-storey residential building with fireplaces and garderobes on each floor. To the south is a range with steps leading down to two barrel-vaulted basements and steps up to a large, once well-lit room, with the remains of a large fireplace in its west wall. Apparently the de Braoses lived in some comfort here. There remains the chapel block on the east side, architecturally the high point of the castle. It was added in the early 14th century, and is usually attributed to Lady Alenora de Mowbray, wife of lord John Mowbray who held the castle then. It blends in well with the rest of the castle, but its detail suggest a much greater level of refinement.

On the ground floor are a large fireplace, narrow trefoil-headed splayed windows and a garderobe in the south-east corner. Above is a similar floor. But on the top floor was a large chapel, the great glory of which is its east window. This and the other chapel windows, retain their fine tracery, the finest of the period of any window in south-east Wales. The chapel use was short-lived, for by 1331 the lords of Gower lived elsewhere. A gradual decline set in, and by the 16th century the castle was ruined.

Pembroke Castle

The unsurpassed strength of this mighty Norman castle, sited on a high ridge between two tidal inlets, gave it the distinction of never having fallen to the Welsh. The strategic position, on a major routeway, was chosen early in the first Norman incursions into south-west Wales, when the castle was founded by Roger of Montgomery in 1093, and it stood firm against Welsh counter-attacks in subsequent years. Pembroke's strategic importance soon increased, as it was from here that the Normans embarked upon their Irish campaigns. In 1189 the castle came into the hands of William Marshal, who, over the next 30 years transformed the earth-and-timber castle into a mighty stone fortification.

First to be built was the inner ward with its magnificent round keep, deservedly famous for its early date, height of over 22m and remarkable domed roof. The original entrance was on the first floor, approached by an external stair, the present ground-floor entrance being a later insertion. The keep had four floors, connected by a spiral stair which also led to the battlements. The large square holes on the top of the outside were to hold a timber hoard, or fighting platform.

When the castle was attacked, the hoard could be erected as an extra defence, outside the battlements but way above the heads of the attackers. Enclosing the keep was the inner ward curtain wall, to the south-west stood the large horseshoe-shaped gate, which only survives at footings level, and to the east was a strong round

tower with a basement prison. Only a thin wall was required along the cliff edge; it had a small observation turret at the point and the square stone platform on the north supported a huge medieval catapult for defence against attack from the sea.

The domestic buildings on the west and east of the inner ward included William Marshal's hall and private apartments. These were improved and further buildings added in the later 13th century, when the new Great Hall was built with a towering mass of walling projecting over its south-east corner to enclose the mouth of a large cavern in the rock below, which may have served as a boathouse. At the same period, a large single-storey building was added near the keep to serve as the county court. By this time, the castle had passed to the de Valence family; the Hastings family then held it from 1324 to 1389, after which the castle passed into the hands of the crown. Much of the building work in the outer ward may also belong to the early 13th-century work of William Marshal, and the main plan of the present defenses remains as originally constructed. However, the apparently almost perfect preservation of this work is largely an illusion, as there was at the castle a systematic programme of restoration in the 19th and early 20th century. The castle was granted out by the crown with a series of short-lived tenancies, and fell into considerable disrepair. In 1405 Francis Court was hastily given munitions to hold the castle against Owain Gwynwr's uprising.

The castle later passed into the hands of Jasper Tewdwr, earl of Pembroke, and was apparently the birthplace of his nephew Henry, later King Henry VII. The room in the Henry VII tower, in which tradition states that the future king was born, is a most unlikely birthplace, and is to be hoped that his mother, the widowed Lady Margaret Beaufort, was given more consideration. Pembroke declared its support for Parliament at the beginning of the Civil War, but in 1648 the town's mayor, John Poyer, disgruntled at his lack of reward, joined a disaffected group of Roundheads unwilling to be demobilized. Cromwell himself came to besiege the castle which only fell after seven weeks when the water supply was cut off and a train of siege cannon arrived to start a bombardment. After this defiance, Cromwell blew up the barbican and the fronts of all the towers to prevent the castle ever again being used militarily.

Pendragon Castle

By the River Eden in the Vale of Mallerstand, it was probably built by Hugh de Moreville, one of the four knights who murdered Thomas Becket in Canterbury Cathedral in 1170. In spite of this deed, he managed to keep hold of Pendragon. Robert de Clifford refortified the castle, a license to crenellate being granted in 1309. It was sacked by the Scots in 1341. Lady Ann Clifford restored the keep in 1660 but it fell back into ruins after her death.

Pevensy Castle

As well as having one of the most complete Roman Walls in England there is an enormous amount of history associated with the site of Pevensy Castle, now in East Sussex. The ruins of the medieval castle at Pevensy stand in one corner of a Roman fort, on what was once a peninsula surrounded by the sea and salt marshes.

It was built by the Romans between 250 and 300AD to defend the coast against the Franks and Alemanni who were attacking the Roman Empire in northern Europe. It was built on a small island, and was known as Anderida. When the Roman Legions withdrew from Britain in 408AD, the castle was occupied by the Anglo-Saxons until it was seized in 491AD by Aella the Saxon.

The irregular oval shape of Pevensy Castle dates from Roman times and follows the shape of the peninsular. Evidence of this period can still be seen in the remains of the rectangular gatehouse and a small postern in the north west wall. The walls of the castle have remained in a relatively good state of preservation, providing a good indication of the layout and structure of the castle buildings. Although some of the early earthwork defenses were subsequently replaced by structural fortifications, the old Roman ditches and mounds around the site can still be seen.

In 1042 and 1049, the castle was raided by Earl Godwine, soon to become Harold II, and during the Spring and Summer of 1066 the castle was occupied by Harold's army who were expecting the forces of William the

Conqueror. At this time the castle stood on a spit of land jutting out in to the bay. Now the sea is 3 miles away.

In September 1066, William, Duke of Normandy, landed his invading army at Pevensey, and immediately set up a defensive camp within the walls of the old Roman fort, before marching on to Hastings. Ditches were dug to provide extra protection against attack. However, when no attack came he hastily moved his army to Hastings where he heard King Harold and his army were camped nearby and erected his first castle. It is probable that William brought the ready-cut wood and nuts and bolts with him.

Having beaten the English at the Battle of Hastings, William needed to consolidate his position and set about building castles which would dominate the areas surrounding them. Following his victory at Hastings, William gave Pevensey to his half-brother, Robert of Mortain, who built a stronghold inside the old Roman fort.

Robert found Roman walls 20 to 30 feet high, and 10 feet in thickness. It was situated within the south eastern quarter of the Roman enclosure, and at first can only have been a simple earthen castle defended by a palisaded bank and ditch. The castle was repaired and improved and later, in around 1100, work started on building a large stone keep.

The castle developed gradually over the centuries with phases of building interspersed by periods of decline, including the slighting of the castle by King John in 1216. The castle was rebuilt and remained occupied into the 15th century, by which time it served as a state prison.

The castle's strategic location as a possible landing point for foreign invaders gave it an importance that led to several sieges over the course of its history, and even after it had fallen into ruin it was put to use for the defense of the country.

A gun emplacement was built at the time of the Spanish Armada, and during the Second World War machine-gun posts and billets for troops were created within the remains of the castle. The pillboxes can still be seen at the castle, camouflaged to look like the rest of the building.

Pleshey Castle

In Essex, England. One of the adulterine castles raised by Geoffrey de Mandeville, Earl of Essex, during the Anarchy. They were destroyed after Henry II came to the throne, but Henry later allowed William de Mandeville to refortify Pleshey. The castle passed to the Bohun earls of Hereford and from them to Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester, who was leader of the opposition to his nephew, Richard II. In 1397 the king's men quietly seized him there and took him to Calais for summary execution. Henry VI's unpopular queen, Margaret of Anjou, gave the castle a new lease on life in the 1450s, but after that it fell into decay.

Portchester Castle

Portchester Castle is in Hampshire, England. The site has been one of military occupation since the third century when the Romans established a fort there, as one of a series of forts protecting the south eastern shores of England.

The Romans probably built the fort as a strong defensive base for their fleet to repel sea borne barbarian attacks. They built a fortified perimeter wall with 20 bastions (defensive towers) and two main gates, the Land Gate and the Water Gate. The area enclosed is 3.4 hectares. There is much evidence of the Roman occupation; coins, pottery, jewellery and shoes.

After the Romans left Britain in the fifth century AD, the level of protection afforded by the walls was recognised by the native Saxons. They used the walls as a safe haven to establish a small town. There is evidence of timber buildings having been constructed, and of domestic and craft activities (whetstones, worked bone, and turned wood). Saxon occupation continued until the Norman invasion in 1066.

The Normans, following their invasion of England in 1066, recognised the site for its strategic importance in defending the calm waters of what is now Portsmouth harbor. They established themselves in the walled town in about 1080. The outer walls formed the bailey (outer courtyard) and they built a castle and a priory within the

existing Roman walls.

The Norman castle was built in the northwest corner of the Roman fort. The walls enclosed the inner bailey and the castle was separately defended by a moat and gatehouse. The keep was in the north west corner of the castle, access to the upper rooms was via a spiral staircase built within the thickness of the wall itself. The keep was doubled in height during the 12th century and was also maintained as a royal castle and was therefore a place for English nobility to visit.

The other buildings in the castle were rebuilt over the years. The gatehouse was extended outward from the castle from the 12th century onward to increase protection for the occupants. Each successive move resulted in the portcullis being resited and new drawbridge arrangements being constructed. In the early and mid-14th century the royal accommodation was extended and completely refurbished with a new kitchen. As such it became a self-contained unit within the castle.

The outbreak of the Hundred Years War with France in 1337 required all the southern coastal defenses to be fortified. At Portchester the castle gates were extended (for the final time) and an additional wall built between the Watergate and the extended earthworks to the seaward approach. These defenses proved to be sound as the castle survived attacks by the French, whereas the city of Portsmouth was heavily burned.

Finally the Hundred Years War was over in 1396 and King Richard was able to divert funds into improving the royal quarters to palace status. Once again the whole of the western side of the courtyard was rebuilt as a two-storey building with royal apartments and the King's private chamber, a kitchen, a huge meeting/dining hall and three further chambers. The castle received royal visits from Queen Elizabeth I in the early years of the 17th century and there is some evidence of minor improvements being made for her stay there.

What can be seen today at Portchester Castle are largely the final 14th century building modifications to the Norman castle, and the 16th century improvements to the palace block.

Portencross Castle

Portencross Castle dates from the 14th century and was the traditional place of departure from the mainland for the funeral barges carrying the kings of Scotland to burial on the holy island of Iona. It originally belonged to the Ross family who, in the dispute between the Bruces and Comyns, unfortunately backed the wrong side. It already stood when the victorious King gave it to Sir Robert Boyd, and it played an important part in the history of the region. Several of the Stewart kings stayed in the keep on their travels through the area, recorded on Royal Charters signed at Portencross.

At present the barrel-vaulted stone ceiling of the castle's great hall is in danger of collapse after 550 years of resisting the elements, and the FOPC is seeking £800,000 for its restoration and to open it to the public.

Powderham Castle

Sir Philip Courtenay, Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, and one of the younger sons of the Earl of Devon, inherited Powderham in 1390. He built the original castle there on the River Exe in County Devon. Powderham became the chief seat of the Courtenay earls. During the 18th century it was transformed into a stately home.

Powys Castle

Most of the great Welsh castles were allowed to decay when the medieval wars ended, but Powis survives as a captivating example of a military stronghold which was preserved and renewed by continual occupation. Its fabric contains architecture of many different periods, beginning with a medieval square keep and stone hall. The most fleeting glimpse of Powis' mellow red gritstone walls tells us that this stately country house is a place rich in history.

The castle crowns a rocky ridge, with a particularly steep slope to the south-east, now occupied by formal gardens. A similarly steep slope on the north-west may have been partially infilled to support buildings. The castle is within easy reach of Welshpool, although, as at Montgomery direct control of the natural route focus has been sacrificed for strength and siting. The structural history of the castle is difficult to unravel, largely because of alterations and additions during over 700 years of virtually continuous occupation.

Recent work suggests that its development may be more complex than previously believed. The historic sources are little help, since it is not always clear whether they refer to the motte near Welshpool station (Domen Castell), the Lady's Mound, in the park 300m west of Powis Castle, or the present site. Some or all of these may have worked in conjunction in the period before 1277. The plan visible today consists of an inner ward, surrounding a tiny courtyard with an outer ward on the south-west, through which the visitor now enters. The oldest part of the structure, possibly dating to about 1200, is probably the tower at the north-east end of the inner ward, while the curving masonry at the south end of the south-east wall suggests the presence of a shell keep at a similar date. The north-east tower may have formed a gateway for this. This hypothetical stronghold, which probably had a north-east bailey, seems to have been demolished and replaced by a sub-rectangular structure, containing a hall on the north-west and possibly a second tower on the north-east.

Later still, probably after 1277, the imposing south-west gateway was built, apparently incorporating some reused stone. The outline of the original crenellations can be seen on the western tower a little below the existing (19th-century) ones. The present outer ward was completed in stone at much the same time. The historical sources refer to the area as Pool or Pole, from which comes the modern Welshpool. "Pool" was the stronghold of the Welsh princes of Powys, who held an ambivalent position between the Welsh and the English. Their rivalry with the house of Gwynedd, coupled with a practical appreciation of their situation, tended to drive them towards the English, although expediency could persuade them the other way.

In 1196, Gwenwynwyn ap Owain Cyfeilog was driven out of his castle (Domen Castell?) by a combined force of English and Welsh, but recovered it during the following year. Llywelyn ap Iorwerth of Gwynedd conquered Powys in 1218, forcing Gwenwynwyn into English exile, where he died, but his son Gruffydd returned on Llywelyn's death in 1240. Gruffydd fled when Llywelyn ap Gruffydd recaptured the area for Gwynedd in 1257, but the success of Simon de Montfort, whom Llywelyn supported against Henry III, persuaded him to change his allegiance in 1264. His new loyalty was short-lived, however; he was discovered plotting against Llywelyn in 1274. His castle (probably this one) was reportedly razed to the ground, and Gruffydd again fled. He returned with Edward I's victorious army in the first Welsh campaign of 1277, and subsequently held his regained lands from the English crown. He was succeeded in 1286 by his son Owain, better known as Baron de la Pole.

The lordship passed via Owain's daughter Hawys to the Cherleton family, and in 1578 came into the hands of Sir Edward Herbert, in whose family it has remained. The castle Sir Edward took over was probably in serious need of repair and modernisation, and he undertook extensive work between 1587 and 1595, of which only the long gallery survives. His wife Mary brought Catholicism into the family. The Herberts remained staunchly Royalist during the Civil War, but Powis Castle was captured by Parliamentarian forces under Sir Thomas Myddelton in 1644. It seems to have been garrisoned during the remainder of the war, necessitating extensive rebuilding and refurbishment after the Restoration in 1660.

The main surviving features of this work are the grand staircase and the state ballroom, together with the gateway and most of the range in the outer ward. The steps to the main south-west entrance were also added at this time, suggesting that the rise of 1.3m in the level of the courtyard, which excavation showed to be made of rubble, resulted from damage during the Civil War. The first servants' quarters may have been built in the angle between the old hall and the northern end of the outer ward range at this time. This area was largely gutted by fire in about 1725.

Further extensive building was carried out from 1772 by the young George Herbert, the second earl. A ballroom was built in the outer ward range, and the core of the present servants' quarters constructed on the earlier site. Other rooms were redecorated in the fashionable classical style. George Herbert died in 1801, deeply in debt, but happily for the castle, his sister had married Clive of India's son. Their son was heir to both the castle and the Clive fortune, which allowed it to be properly maintained. A collection of Clive mementoes from India is on display in part of the old ballroom. The castle underwent further extensive refurbishment in 1815-18, and again from 1902. Although bequeathed to the National Trust in 1952, it remained in part a private home until 1988.

Raby Castle

Raby Castle is another from the north-east of England. It was built by the Nevills (the most powerful family

in the north) in the 14th century on land that had been held by their ancestor, King Canute, in the early 11th century.

They built the castle as a fortified manor house in 1360 and fortifications were added after John Nevill received a licence to add crenellations. It comprised eight huge towers connected by a curtain wall with a central keep in a small courtyard. It was built only one entrance, a fortified gateway which was reached by a narrow path across a moat. Its appearance was of soaring towers and impregnable walls.

The Nevilles held the castle until 1569 when it went to the crown as punishment for their supporting the failed Rising of the North in support of Mary Queen of Scots and the Catholic faith. They had decided against a rebellion when Charles Neville's wife stormed into the hall and accused them of being cowards, so they fought Queen Elizabeth's men and lost. He fled firstly to Scotland and then to Holland. His ghost is the first of the three said to haunt Raby where he can be seen pacing the Baron's Hall.

In 1626 Sir Henry Vane, Treasurer to Charles I, bought Raby from the crown and it still belongs to his descendants. Sir Henry didn't think much of the castle itself and was more interested in the land although he did entertain the king twice. He fell from favor and supported Parliament in the Civil War, the castle being attacked and besieged five times.

When the Stuarts returned, he was imprisoned and executed after a trumped up treason charge. He wasn't allowed to speak at his execution and trumpeters played loudly to drown his voice. His ghost is the third said to haunt the castle. He sits writing in the library with his separated head on the desk, lips moving, still trying to be heard.

Sir Henry's grandson caused more damage than the Civil War did. He was so annoyed at his son's marriage that he started to demolish the castle so it couldn't be inherited. He pulled up the floors, stripped the lead from the roof and sold most of the furniture. His wife, the first Lady Barnard, is the second ghost and is said to stalk round the castle with wild glowing eyes, knitting with white-hot needles. Gilbert (their son) had to take him to court to stop him damaging it further although, while the court case was going on, Henry still managed to kill all the deer and cut down most of the trees in the park. Gilbert succeeded eventually in 1723 and set about repairing his father's damage. However it was his son, the 1st Earl of Darlington, who repaired the castle, transforming the interior into comfortable rooms for living in. In the 1840s more interior alterations were made including an octagonal drawing room. The south front was faced with masonry which looked strange against the medieval stones. They tried to dye it unsuccessfully until, in the 1870s, an old mason suggested bullock's blood which worked.

Raby Castle is open to the public, furnished in a mixture of 18th and 19th century styles. The oldest parts that can still be seen are the kitchens which date back to 1360 and the medieval baron's hall with the original minstrels' gallery. It is surrounded by a 200 acre deer park together with walled gardens and 18th century stables, now converted to a tea room.

Richard's Castle

The castle which gave its name to this small ancient borough pre-dates the Conquest by about 16 years, though it was thoroughly Norman. Edward the Confessor, more Norman than English, encouraged the settlement of Norman kinsmen and friends in Herefordshire, and gave them lavish gifts of land. This plot, a few miles south-west of Ludlow, was a grant to Richard FitzScrob, who built himself a strong castle on it about 1050, further elevating the hilltop and bedrock with earth on which to site his keep. The castle continued in his line for several generations before it passed by marriage to the family of Talbot, under the overlordship of the Mortimers. By Leland's survey of 1540 the castle is reported as still mainly standing, but ruinous, and later it housed a farm and its buildings, with a dovecote in one of the towers. The property passed through several hands before coming finally into the possession of the Salwey family, which continued to hold it for 370 years.

Richmond Castle

Richmond Castle in North Yorkshire is a striking sight. The keep stands 100 feet high and one side of the castle is perched on the edge of a 100 foot escarpment down to the River Swale. It is the oldest surviving stone

built castle in England.

In 1069 William I laid waste to much of north-eastern England after rebels slaughtered the Norman garrison at York. He then divided the land between some of his barons of whom one, Alan Rufus of Brittany, was given Richmond. He started to build the castle in 1071, completing it in 1091, in order to protect Swaledale from border raids and the local dispossessed English and most of his curtain walls still survive. There was a triangular inner bailey with the massive walls on two sides and the steep drop on the third. It was the first stone castle in England to have projecting mural towers. There was a large outer bailey beyond the walls so that attackers would have no cover.

The keep was started by the first Earl of Richmond towards the end of the 12th century over the original gatehouse and was finished by Henry II. It was built on rock rather than an earth motte so that it, too, has survived almost unscathed. As it was built for military use rather than residential it is fairly austere and also means that it is located next to the gatehouse rather than in the middle of the castle. His idea was that the castle should be equally strong all round, a principle which was later adopted by Edward I in his Welsh castles. The living quarters had already been built in the south-eastern corner of the bailey; known as Scolland's Hall, this is the earliest example of a two-storey four-roomed castle hall in England and would have been a magnificent sight. It makes Richmond unusual in that it had two keeps

The knights to guard the castle were provided by all the local tenants, the number of knights provided depending on the size of their holding. However it was such a strongly built castle that it was rarely attacked directly, only having a few skirmishes with Scottish raiding parties which explains the large amount of Norman stonework that survives.

After the Hundred Years War, the line of the Dukes of Richmond died out and ownership changed frequently until the early 16th century when it was no longer inhabited and began to fall into ruins. In the mid 1800s it was leased by the North York Militia who built a detention block of eight cells just inside the entrance. Lord Baden-Powell, founder of the Scout movement, lived there between 1908 and 1910.

During the two World Wars it was used as a prison for Conscientious Objectors who covered the walls with graffiti and drawings which are being preserved, although they are not open to the public due to their fragility.

There are two legends told about Richmond Castle. One is that King Arthur and his Knights are sleeping deep in a crypt below the keep waiting for the day when England needs them once again.

The other is the legend of the ghostly drummer boy. There is supposed to be a secret underground passage leading from under the keep to Easby Abbey, about 3 miles away down the River Swale, possibly built in medieval times as an escape route to the castle for the monks at the Abbey when the Scots raided. One day in the late 18th century, some soldiers discovered the entrance to the tunnel. As they were too large to crawl down it, they chose a small drummer boy to find out where it led. They followed the sound of his drum about halfway to the Abbey, when suddenly the drumming stopped. He was never seen again but his ghost haunts the tunnel from where a slow drumbeat can sometimes be heard.

Rochester Castle

There has been a fortification at the important defensive site of Rochester since pre-Roman times. Under Emperor Claudius, the invading legions won a major battle here in 43 AD, by means of a courageous river crossing and encircling the encamped local tribes. During the Roman occupation, Rochester became a thriving town. The Romans strengthened the existing fortifications to command the major import/export route along the London-Dover Road and constructed a bridge slightly down river from the site of the present crossing.

Rochester Castle was one of the first English castles to be rebuilt in stone, carried out by William the Conqueror's architect Gundolf, Bishop of Rochester, during the late 11th century. Renowned as a very able builder of stone structures, Gundolf was responsible for the old Rochester Cathedral, as well as the Tower of London.

In 1127, responsibility for the castle was given to the Archbishop of Canterbury, William de Corbell. During this time, the huge, square keep was built from Kentish ragstone. He also added the four squared towers. Access to the keep was, traditionally, through a first floor forebuilding, an additional defense measure to protect the

main part of the keep.

Still standing and in good condition the keep, some 35m high, is the tallest in England, and is 22m square. The walls of the Castle are between 3.5m and 4m thick. It consists of a basement and three floors, the second floor rising through two storeys. A circular staircase leads up to the battlements.

The basement, a dark room used for storing goods, is lit only through small ventilation holes. On the first floor, fireplaces and garderobes indicate that this was an important area for conducting the business of the castle. A much grander and more open aspect is apparent on the second floor of the keep, where the Great Hall was situated, with the Great Chamber beyond - formerly believed to have been the state apartment of the archbishop. On the third floor is another fine room which gives wonderful views across the river. The site was jealously guarded by the see of Canterbury until the end of the 12th century.

In October 1215 Archbishop Langton failed to follow King John's order to hand over the castle to the Bishop of Winchester, a close supporter of the King. The result was one of the best-recorded sieges of the Middle Ages. Within days King John attacked, first breaking the bridge to prevent any relief reaching the rebels from London. King John, who set up camp on Boley Hill nearby, personally supervised the siege of the castle, summoning every siege engine at his disposal.

He kept up a furious assault on the castle, a barrage which was almost continuous for the next seven weeks. Again and again, the King's soldiers attacked, finally managing to breach the outer defenses in early November.

However, the defenders rallied, and drove them back out. Yet more savage fighting led by King John in person saw the outer walls back in Royal hands, but the keep remained impregnable. The King attempted to negotiate a settlement, but failed. Although food was running out, the defenders were confident that they could hold out longer than the King's finances, and refused to surrender.

King John was forced to resort to undermining the walls using pig fat from 40 pigs as fuel. Although a whole section of the wall collapsed the inhabitants retreated behind a great cross-wall and again refused to surrender. Eventually, on 30 November, the garrison capitulated. The attackers were astonished to discover that only 100 or so knights had kept them at bay for all that time.

Shortly afterwards, the castle was given the status of a major royal stronghold, and the shattered corner of the keep was reconstructed in a cylindrical style, and further protected by the addition of a drum tower

Further destruction was suffered in a siege in 1264, but repairs were not carried out until Edward III undertook a major rebuilding and restoration programme and by 1400 the castle was, once again, a viable fortress.

The Rock of Cashel

The Rock of Cashel is one of the most spectacular archeological sites in Ireland. It sits on the outskirts of Cashel on a large mound of limestone bristling with ancient fortifications. Mighty stone walls encircle a complete round tower, a roofless abbey, a 12th century Romanesque chapel, and numerous other buildings and high crosses. The Rock of Cashel is composed four structures which are the Hall of the Vicars Choral, the cathedral, the round tower, and Cormac's Chapel. Hore Abbey is about one kilometer north at the base of the rock.

The word Cashel is an anglicized version of the Irish word *Caiseal*. The translations means "fortress" which is exactly what it was used for.

In the 4th century, the Rock of Cashel was chosen as a base of power by the Eoghanachta clan from Wales. They eventually conquered much of the Munster region and became kings of the region. The clan's links to the church started early; St. Patrick converted their leader in the 5th century in a ceremony in which the saint accidentally stabbed the king in the foot with his crozier (a large walking staff). The king, thinking this was a painful initiation rite, bore the pain. Considering the actions taken by St. Patrick on other occasions against nonbelievers, possibly he was afraid to react.

The clan lost possession of the Rock in the 10th century to the O'Brien tribe under the leadership of Brian Boru. In the first year of the 12th century, King Muirheartach O'Brien gave the Rock to the church. This move

prevented the Eoghanachta clan from retaking the Rock. So the the Eoghanachta clan, by now the McCarthys, moved to Cork. As a sign of goodwill, Cormac McCarthy built Cormac's Chapel in 1169 before leaving. In 1647, the Rock fell to a Cromwellian army under Lord Inchiquin which sacked and burned its way to the top. Early in the 18th century the Protestant church took it for 20 years, and this was the last time the Rock was officially used as a place of worship. The Cathedral, a 13th century Gothic structure, overshadows the other ruins. Soaring above the center of the cathedral is a huge, square tower with a turret on one corner. Scattered throughout, are panels from the 16th century alter tombs and coats of arms from the Butlers. The cathedral is the large structure on the left side in the picture to the right. Cormac's Chapel is the small structure on the right side in the picture.

The Hall of the Vicars Choral is a 15th century house. The exhibits downstairs include some rare silverware and St. Patrick's Cross, a 12th century crutched cross with a crucifixion scene on one side and animals on the other. Tradition held that the kings of Cashel and Munster, including Brian Boru, were inaugurated at the base of the cross.

The Round Tower is located at the corner of the cathedral. A sandstone tower that is about 28 meters tall dating from the 11th or 12th century.

Cormac's Chapel, built in 1127, is a small, solid, stone roofed chapel of cruciform shape. Inside the main door to the left is a stone sarcophagus, dating from 1125 - 1150, said to house the body of King Cormac. Snakes are carved in the stone in a figure "8" on its side to represent infinity or eternity. The interior is dark, but you will easily recognize the stone head carvings around the ceiling. The builders carved a likeness of their head and incorporated them into the building to signify their involvement in the building of the chapel. Restoration work is underway to remove the whitewash on the ceiling. Underneath the whitewash is beautiful and brightly painted fresco.

Rockingham Castle

Alan la Zouche (1267-1314) was governor of Rockingham Castle, County Northampton, England.

Ruthin Castle

Ruthin Castle is built on a red sandstone ridge 100 feet above the Clwyd valley, overlooking a strategic river crossing. Judging by the curving moat to the west of the upper bailey, the earliest castle here may have been a motte and bailey. However, the first documented castle was given to Prince Dafydd ap Gruffydd by King Edward in 1277. It was known as Castell Coch yn yr Gwernfor - the red castle in the great marsh - and the redness of its sandstone walls can be seen to this day. Ruthin was improved by its next owner, Reginald de Grey, perhaps when he first took over in 1282 and again in 1295 when the castle was further strengthened and extended.

Reginald employed the famous military architect Master James of St. George to provide the castle with a twin-towered gatehouse and six round towers, the northern tower incorporating a smaller Welsh one. The walls above the revetments of the upper bailey were 7 to 9 feet thick and rose to a height of 100 feet above the bottom of the moat. The lower bailey had a drum tower at each corner and its own gate, which had a portcullis, a rounded fighting platform above the entrance and a bridge across the moat towards the river. This outer court was around 240 feet wide by 160 feet long and was overlooked by the main court. The baileys were separated by another deep moat that may have been spanned by a bridge.

The current wooden bridge across this moat is not original. There was a sally port between the two baileys from which defenders could rush into the moat to counterattack their foes at the base of the walls. A spiral stairway leads from this doorway up the side of the adjacent drum tower at the southwestern corner of the upper bailey. A second flight of steps curves around the outside of the tower towards a gateway into the upper bailey. A similar doorway exists at the base of the northern tower and steps lead from it up through the tower into the apex of the upper bailey.

There are also signs that yet another sally port was situated on the opposite side of the castle to the south of the main gate, the remains now hidden in the thick undergrowth against the revetment wall of the eastern moat.

In 1826 a fine house was built over the southeastern quarter of the castle, within both baileys, and it was rebuilt and extended in 1849-52. The house hid many details of the castle's internal buildings but some details of the main hall survive. It was 100 feet long by 40 feet wide and looked out over the Clwyd valley from the west side of the upper bailey.

Shrewsbury Castle

Shrewsbury Castle was originally an Anglo-Saxon timber fortification, guarding the only dry-shod approach to the town. The Norman castle, built of red sandstone, was founded by Roger de Montgomery in c1070. During Summer 1138 King Stephen laid siege and captured the fortress, which was held by William FitzAlan for the Empress Maud. Apart from the gateway, very little of the Norman building survives. Much of it was demolished during the rebuilding and strengthening of the castle by Edward I in c1300, when an outer bailey was also added. It was never used as a fortress after this date, and over the centuries was allowed to fall into disrepair.

Elizabeth I gave the castle to the bailiffs and burgesses of Shrewsbury in 1586, and little was done to the building until the Civil War when further alterations were made. It was captured by the Parliamentarians in 1645, and it was not until 1660, when Charles II was restored to the throne, that it was surrendered to the Crown. The king granted the castle to Sir Francis Newport of High Ercall, Shropshire in 1663, and it remained in private hands until 1924, when it was acquired by the Corporation of Shrewsbury. It was restored as much as possible to its Edwardian condition and opened to the public in 1926. It now houses the Shropshire Regimental Museum.

Sinclair Girnigoe Castle

The dramatic ruins of Castle Sinclair Girnigoe are gradually falling into the sea. Its perilous condition and steep cliffs make it a castle that should be visited with care. The castle was the home of the Sinclair family, Earls of Caithness.

Girnigoe Castle was built around the late 14th to early 15th centuries on a rocky promontory, and was defended on the landward side by great ditches, spanned by drawbridges. The main feature of this castle is a three or four storey tower house, probably completed towards the end of the 16th century although there are the remains of 15th century buildings beneath it. During a period of redevelopment at the castle in the early 17th century, George Sinclair (4th Earl) obtained an Act of Parliament to change the name from Castle Girnigoe to Castle Sinclair. However it appears that the name became associated with the newly remodelled part of the castle leading to the impression that there were two castles on the site.

The Campbells of Glenorchy briefly occupied the castle after emerging victorious from a battle with the Sinclairs. In 1690, George Sinclair of Keiss, who later became the 7th Earl, removed the Campbells by force, partially destroying the castle by cannon fire in the process.

In recent years the ownership of the castle has been returned to the Earls of Caithness, and is listed as the official seat of the Earldom. The castle is currently maintained by the Clan Sinclair Trust who are trying to preserve the castle.

Skenfrith Castle

Skenfrith Castle is the only low-lying fortress of the three castles of Skenfrith, Grosmont and White Castle, now known as the castles of the Trilateral. Like the other two castles Skenfrith is remarkably well-preserved, standing mostly to wall walk height. Again we have no early reference as to the foundation of the fortress, though a castle certainly existed here by 1160 when it came into the king's hands with Grosmont and White Castle.

In 1187 the engineer Ralph Grosmont was instructed by King Henry II to rebuild the castle in stone. The eastern wall and possibly north-eastern tower of the castle, built in a totally different style to the rest of the fortress, was constructed by Ralph. However this work proved abortive and Henry II cancelled the building work in 1188 as unnecessary. In 1193, Sheriff William Braose pushed the unfinished castle into rapid service by

placing a palisade around the other three sides of the ditch. A prison was later built within the stockade.

From this time on Skenfrith Castle has largely the same history as Grosmont castle. In 1219 Hubert Burgh began to build the other three sides of the unfinished castle enceinte in stone. His work is characterized by the fine and high batter on the north, south and west sides of the castle. However before a year was out this castle was devastated by heavy flooding in the Monnow valley. Hubert therefore filled the interior of the first castle with river gravel and built a new castle on top of the first one! The hall of this first castle still remains, having been buried in gravel from 1220 until the 1950s excavations. This hall is remarkably well-preserved with the jambs of doors and windows in as good a condition as when they were first cut nearly 800 years ago. Even the original iron door hinges and window bars have survived from this era.

In 1239 the castle was seized by King Henry III, who in 1244 placed a lead roof on top of the king's tower or central keep. This round tower in the middle of the castle was the last part of the fortress constructed by Hubert Burgh, and is not, as is often stated, built on the old castle motte. The recent excavations conclusively proved that this tower was built on top of the thirteenth century gravel used to infill the first castle of 1219.

Another dating feature of this tower can be found in the collapsed stairway built into a buttress in its western wall. This is not a standard spiral stair, but a series of semi-circular stairways. Although much damaged it can be seen to have been similar to the stairs that still exist in the gatehouse of White Castle. This work, with its unusual stairs, was also undertaken by Earl Hubert Burgh. It may have been King Henry's eldest son, the Lord Edward, later Edward I (1272-1307), who when he owned the castle between 1254 and 1267, built the solid half round tower in the castle's vulnerable west wall. The fortress was once surrounded by a twenty feet deep paved moat which fed a mill to the south. Today the castle stands mostly to wall walk height and is in much the same state as it was in 1538 when the antiquarian Leyland noted that Skenfrith Castle "yet standith."

Skipton Castle

The original Skipton Castle was built in 1090 to stop the rampaging Scots in their frequent incursions into northern England -- mostly unsuccessfully. It has been the centre of several battles during its history and still stands in the middle of the town, one of the most complete and well preserved medieval castles in England. The castle was built on top of a rocky bluff with rising ground to the front and a sheer 100 foot precipice down to a beck behind. The very first castle was a primitive palisaded wooden fort but this was soon replaced by a stone structure.

The earliest remains are from the beginning of the 1200s, namely a Norman archway and the inner gatehouse. At this time there would have been a bigger moat and a drawbridge, and there are still traces of a portcullis in the gateway. Water came into the castle by means of wooden pipes, but when under siege there was a cistern which collected the rainwater dripping off the roof.

Skipton Castle was granted to the Clifford family by Edward II in 1310 and they remained lords of the castle until 1676. Robert de Clifford, first Lord of Skipton, started enlarging and rebuilding the castle in a concentric style as soon as it came into his possession. The outer gatehouse dates from this time. He was killed at Bannockburn in 1314 and, after the battle, the Scots over-ran the north of England, sacking the town of Skipton in 1318 although the castle was ignored.

In 1485 Henry, the 10th Lord of Skipton, rebuilt the living quarters in the Tudor Conduit Court and the Tudor entrance to the castle and in 1536 his son, a good friend of Henry VIII, built the Tudor wing in honor of his son's marriage to the King's niece. In the same year, the castle was besieged by a large army of rebels under the command of Robert Aske during the Pilgrimage of Grace. The lord remained loyal to the king and defended the castle after most other northern castles had surrendered.

During the Civil War, the castle, with a garrison of 300 men, was a Royalist stronghold (the only one left in the north) and was besieged for three years. Finally a surrender was negotiated in 1645 with immense damage having been done and Oliver Cromwell subsequently ordered the roof to be removed so it could not be used to garrison troops as he considered it one of the most serious obstacles to his northern campaign.

Lady Anne Clifford oversaw the extensive repairs following the war, with the proviso that it should no longer

be defensible, and in 1659 she planted the yew tree in the central courtyard which is still there today to mark the end of repairs. There is also an inscription above the main entrance commemorating the restoration. She was the last Clifford to own the castle and when she died without an heir in 1676, it passed to the Earls of Thanet.

In 1956 it was acquired by the present owners and can be visited. The entrance is through a gatehouse between two huge drum towers with the motto of the Clifford family – Desormais (henceforth) above the entrance. The outer bailey is surrounded by a curtain wall and a moat on three sides. Inside are the residential buildings of the castle which are slightly raised and surrounded by a semi-circular curtain wall with six large round towers.

Stafford Castle

William the Conqueror raised the castle in 1070. It did not stay with the Crown for long and by the end of the century had passed to Robert de Stafford, whose descendants gradually rose to prominence. Ralph, Lord Stafford, first built the tower house on receipt of a license to crenellate in 1348.

Stirling Castle

Located in southern Scotland, between Glasgow and Edinburgh, Stirling Castle is built high on a basalt outcrop above what was in medieval times the main crossing point across the Forth and the surrounding marshes, a strategic position which made the castle one of the most important fortresses in Scotland. The rock had probably been used defensively since the Iron Age, but the first record of a castle comes from the early 12th century when Alexander I had a castle chapel dedicated and endowed. The castle's most famous period in history was during the late 13th and early 14th century when it played a prominent part in the conflict between England and Scotland. The castle fell into the hands of the English on several occasions and the famous Scottish victories at the Battle of Stirling Bridge in 1297 and the Battle of Bannockburn in 1314 were made to regain control of Stirling Castle. It is not possible to see what this earlier castle would have looked like because all traces have been lost under later building work. Most of what can now be seen at the castle dates from the early 16th century onwards. During the reign of the Stewarts the castle was turned into an impressive royal residence. King James IV built the King's Old Building and the Great Hall, and his son, James V, built the magnificent Palace of Stirling to house his French queen, Mary of Guise. The young King James VI spent much of his childhood at the castle and his contribution to the development of the castle was to rebuild the Chapel Royal. On the death of Queen Elizabeth, James succeeded to the English throne and moved south to make his home in England. This marked the end of Stirling's role as a royal residence. The defences of the castle were strengthened to counter a potential Jacobite threat, and these defences were put to the test in 1746 when Prince Charles Edward Stewart (Bonnie Prince Charlie) unsuccessfully laid siege to the castle. This was the last military action the castle saw, but it remained in use by the army until 1964. Since then there has been an effort to strip away many of the more recent modifications and restore much of the castle to its earlier splendour.

Swansea Castle

Swansea Castle is now so hemmed in by modern buildings and roads that it is hard to imagine its original surroundings, or indeed its original form. It stands on a cliff-top, below which the river Tawe originally flowed, and its position was strategic: it commanded the lowest crossing of the river, the main east-west route in south Wales, and a good harbor. What is visible now is only a small part of the latest castle on the site, which in its heyday in the late 13th century stretched from Welcome Lane in the north to Caer Street in the south, and from the cliff-top in the east, almost to Princess Way in the West. Swansea Castle's history was a turbulent one: it suffered in many Welsh raids, and changed hands many times.

It was a Norman castle first mentioned in 1116 as being attacked by the Welsh. It was established by Henry I's friend Henry de Beaumont, first earl of Warwick, as the seat of administration of the marcher lordship of Gower, which Henry bestowed on him in about 1106. This first castle was of motte and bailey type, and nothing of it remains above ground. The west side of its deep ditch has been excavated to the north of the present remains. It was rebuilt in stone on the same site, probably after being razed by the Welsh in 1217.

Nothing remains above ground of this stage either, but the west side of the curtain wall has been found, together with a mural tower. To the south-west of this small castle, called the "Old Castle," a large roughly rectangular outer bailey was walled in stone late in the 13th century. The "New Castle," of which the present-day remains were part, lay in its south-east corner, built on the site of an earlier graveyard. This castle dates from the late 13th to early 14th century, by which time Edward I's pacification of Wales had deprived it of any military importance.

It continued as an administrative center, but at a reduced level. Its holders, then the de Braoses, preferred to live at Oystermouth Castle, and inevitably decline set in. Stripped of their usefulness, the various gates and towers of the bailey were sold off in the early 14th century. The visible remains consist of the north and south blocks, probably the work of William de Braose III, connected by a short stretch of much-altered curtain wall. The curtain wall originally continued up Castle Bailey Street on the west, and west from the north block to enclose a roughly rectangular area, with an entrance on the west side. The well-preserved south block, which occupied most of the south side of the castle, is the most spectacular part, with its picturesque arcaded parapet on top of the outside walls. This was almost certainly the work of Henry de Gower, bishop of St. Davids (1328-47), and recalls similar features in his palaces at Lamphey and St. Davids itself.

Swansea may thus have served as an episcopal palace for some time. This view has, however, recently been challenged. Some authorities now believe it is the work of the de Mowbray lord of Gower, using the bishop's masons, employed at that time elsewhere in Swansea. Two large windows on the south side are the windows of the first floor hall, and below them are the narrow windows of three barrel-vaulted chambers. In the angled wing to the east was a sub-basement with great battered walls, from which there was access to the river.

On the first floor was a solar, or private chamber, reached by steps on the west side. At the west end of the block is a spectacular circular garderobe tower standing to its full height, and in the south-east angle is a small turret with an arrowslit. The small rectangular tower to the north has been much altered in post-medieval times, but retains a few original features, such as cross arrowslits. On the ground floor are three vaulted chambers, with four rooms above them inserted in the late 18th century when the block was turned into a debtor's prison. It had probably been used as a prison for a long time before, and still has grim air. Other usable parts of the castle had very heterogeneous uses at the beginning of the 19th century - as a town hall, poor-house, a new market house, store cellars, a blacksmith's and other shops, a Roman Catholic chapel (in the hall) and a dovecote.

Thetford Castle

Norfolk, England. Excavations have shown a ringwork site around a church soon after the Norman Conquest, so this was probably the original castle, raised by William de Warenne before his death in 1088. By 1100, Thetford was in the hands of Roger Bigod, who founded the priory, and perhaps also transferred his castle to the stronger site further east on Castle Hill. Bigod, Earl of Norfolk, joined Prince Henry's revolt of 1173-74. Henry II's supporters captured and destroyed the castle.

Thornbury Castle

In Gloucestershire, England, built by Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham, c. 1511. Ten years later Henry VIII had him executed on a charge of treason. It was alleged that the duke had raised a private army in the Welsh Marches in defiance of the Tudor laws against such practices. No license was obtained for the castle's construction and it seems to have been inspired by a nostalgia for the "good old days" of baronial autonomy.

Threave Castle

Built in the 1360s by Archibald "the Grim" Douglas, it is beautifully situated on an island in the River Dee. The locally forged and nationally famous Mons Meg cannon was used by James II to overcome the rebellious Douglas family in 1445. It can now be seen in Edinburgh Castle. In 1640 the stronghold was captured, sacked and vandalized by the Covenanters.

Tintagel

Without a doubt there were Iron Age hillforts and cliff castles built in Cornwall. Whether there was a fortress at such an early date as Tintagel is doubtful but no work about this castle would be complete without at least a mention of the clouded and legend swathed beginnings of this, the most romantic ruin in the British Isles.

Though what survives today is mainly of Norman origin, there was certainly a monastic settlement here in the early years of the Christian era, and almost certainly some form of fortification when the 5th century prince, upon which the legends of Arthur were founded, ruled those lands. And the castle is no typical Norman stronghold. It has been properly called a “Dark Age defensive position surviving into feudal times, almost in defiance of the principles of medieval architecture.”

Tintagel is set among the cliffs of the north Cornish coast. Derelict since the 16th century, the fortress remains and is an impressive sight. What gives it its special appeal is not the documented history of those who built it and lived there, but its long association with the story of King Arthur. It was the middle of the 12th century that Geoffrey of Monmouth wrote his *History of the Kings of Britain*, which first told at length the story of the British hero and linked Tintagel forever with his name.

Geoffrey of Monmouth tells of Tintagel in the tale of Uther and Igera. Uther Pendragon, King of the Britons, fell in love with the beautiful Igera who was married to Gorlois, Duke of Cornwall. Gorlois objected to the attentions that the king paid his wife and returned to Cornwall with her. Uther demanded that Igera should be returned to court, and when Gorlois refused the king invaded Cornwall. Igera was locked away in the town of Tintagel, which Geoffrey of Monmouth describes as “situated upon the sea and on every side surrounded by it, and there is but one entrance to it, and that through a rock which three men shall be able to defend against the whole power of the kingdom.” Tintagel was in fact so impregnable that it was only with the aid of the magician Merlin that Uther was able to enter the place in disguise. Merlin effected a transformation that made the king so like Gorlois that he was able to seduce the innocent Igera. Gorlois was then killed in battle, Uther and Igera married and their son Arthur was born. Geoffrey of Monmouth does not specifically say that Tintagel was King Arthur’s birthplace but the association had been formed. It does not feature prominently in the Arthurian romances but it plays an important part in another medieval romance, that of Tristan, where it figures as King Mark’s Castle.

In the 19th century the great revival of interest in the code of medieval chivalry in general, and the story of Arthur in particular, brought new fame to Tintagel. Tennyson’s Arthurian poems made the legendary king’s story one of the most famous and popular of the time and it was inevitable that new interest should focus on these remote cliff top ruins. It was this that led to the repair of those ruins and the creation of a new path to the site in 1852. Further interest led to further investigation, and during the last 50 years, since the ruin has been in the care of the state, careful preservation and exploration of the site has been undertaken.

Whatever the facts behind the story of King Arthur, it is now certain that there was, at least, a Celtic monastery at Tintagel by the end of the 5th century and it was doubtless a visit to, or tales of, this remotely sited outpost of the missionary St Juliot that inspired Geoffrey of Monmouth. Traces of the monastic ruins have been found though not of any Saxon fortress, which would certainly have been of mainly wooded construction.

The ruins we can see today date from the 12th century. This castle was begun by Reginald, an illegitimate son of Henry I. He was created Earl of Cornwall and held Tintagel until his death in 1175. He had no heir and at his death the castle passed to Prince John. When John became king in 1199 the Tintagel estates were united with the crown, and various sub-tenants held the castle until just before his death in 1216, when he granted the lands of the earldom of Cornwall to Henry, the illegitimate son of Reginald. They reverted to the crown 5 years later, and in 1224 were granted to Richard, the younger brother of Henry III, who decided to take over Tintagel. He built most of the castle we see today. He was a prince of some power and influence in Europe and was elected King of the Romans, crowned with a silver crown at Aachen.

Among those who held the title Earl of Cornwall in the 13th century was Piers Gaveston, the notorious favorite of Edward II, and John of Eltham, brother of Edward III. Both of them neglected the castle and it was already partly in ruins before the death of Earl John. In 1337 Edward III created his eldest son, Edward (later known as the black prince), Duke of Cornwall, and since his day Tintagel has been among the possessions of that duchy. Towards the end of the 14th century, in the face of an invasion scare, the crumbling castle was

refortified. It was used for a time as a prison but by the middle of the 15th century it was deserted again, and the long process of continuing decay had begun.

Access to the castle is still difficult for part of it is on an island and part on the mainland. The entrance is by a path beneath a towering 82-metre (270-foot) cliff which forms the base of the upper ward. There are traces of the outer defenses that protected this path and significant remains too of the main gate to the castle, above which was a chamber that was entered from the wall walk and that led to the upper ward.

The lower ward is rectangular and is enclosed on the north-east and south-east is a five foot thick curtain wall. The south-west is protected by the cliff. The upper ward is approached by steps cut into the rock, the top ones following the original gate. In this ward there are traces of guard rooms and two garderobes opening over the cliff face. We know from Geoffrey of Monmouth's description of the causeway, which could be defended by 3 men, that there was once a narrow neck of land connecting the island with the mainland. Today the only means of getting to the island is by a path on the landward side, reached by a flight of steps down the cliff face, or by one of the paths leading from the outer gate of the castle to the road.

Through a door made in 1852 when the island was opened to visitors, one passes into the inner ward, dominated by the remains of the massive great hall. The southern end has fallen over the cliff but there are significant traces of the rest and of the series of buildings that succeeded each other on the site. At the foot of the cliff, on the north-east of the island, is a landing place guarded by a curtain wall whose gateway is still known as the Iron Gate.

On the island too are the scattered remains of St Juliot's monastery. There are traces of a primitive cell, perhaps the missionary's own, and among the monastic ruins are the remains of a Roman-style hypocaust system of under floor heating, and of sweat houses in which the interior was heated and the steam produced by pouring water onto the floor. This was thought to be a cure of rheumatic ailments.

The deep misty past of Tintagel is all around you there. It is an historical remoteness underlined by the fact that by the time of the Doomsday Book in 1086 there was apparently no trace of the monastery recorded. The knowledge of its presence was to be woven into the legendary history written by Geoffrey of Monmouth about half a century later.

Tonbridge Castle

Located in Kent, England. Guarding a crossing over the River Medway, the important castle of Tonbridge was founded by Richard FitzGilbert. It existed by 1088, when William Rufus stormed the castle with the help of a native English army raised to quell the rebellion of Bishop Odo of Bayeux. Despite his involvement in this revolt, FitzGilbert retained possession. His descendants adopted the name of de Clare from their estates in Suffolk, acquired the earldoms of Hertford and Gloucester and played a major part in the Anglo-Norman invasions of Wales and Ireland. The castle was captured by royal forces again in 1215, when Gilbert de Clare was prominent among the Magna Charta barons. His grandson, Gilbert, was the most formidable of this powerful line. The "Red Earl" championed the interests of the barons in their clashes with Edward I, and at Caerphilly he erected a fortress which even that castle-building monarch could not outdo. It was this Gilbert who erected the mighty gatehouse at Tonbridge Castle. The de Clare line came to an end with his son, who fell at Bannockburn. Tonbridge passed to the Stafford family, later dukes of Buckingham.

Totney Castle

Robert Vipont was 3rd Baron of Totney Castle and High Sheriff of Westmorland.

Triermain Castle

Overlooks King Water west of Gilsland, Cumberland, England. It was erected by Roland de Vaux in 1340.

Trim Castle

Three years after the Norman invasion of Ireland, a Norman, Hugh de Lacy, founded Trim Castle in 1173 by building a motte with a timber tower as the first step towards the conquest of County Meath. Roderic (Rory) O'Connor, King of Connaught and said to have been the last high king of Ireland, believed he was threatened by its presence and equipped an army to destroy it. Hugh Tyrell, the constable in charge, set fire to the wooden castle which he then deserted before the Irish King reached it. King John visited Trim in 1210 to bring the de Lacy family into line, giving the castle its alternative name of King John's Castle. King John never actually slept in the castle because on the eve of his arrival Walter de Lacy locked it up and left town, forcing the king to camp in the nearby meadow. By the time that King John visited Trim in 1210 it had begun to take on its present formidable appearance as the first and largest stone castle in Ireland. De Lacy did not live to see the original wooden castle's replacement, and the building you see was begun around 1200. It was completed in 1224.

Geoffrey de Geneville, De Lacy's grandson-in-law, was responsible for the second stage of the castle's construction in the mid to late 13th century. De Geneville was a crusader who later became a monk at the Dominican abbey which he founded in 1263, just outside the northern wall of the town near the Athboy Gate.

Henry of Lancaster, later Henry IV, was once imprisoned in the Dublin Gate at the southern part of the outer wall. A road just outside the gate provided passage to Dublin which gives the gate its name.

Trim was conquered by Silken Thomas in 1536, and in 1647 by Catholic Confederate forces, opponents of the English parliamentarians. It was taken by Cromwellian forces in 1649 under Charles Coote, and the castle, town walls and Yellow Steeple were badly damaged.

The grassy three-acre enclosure is dominated by a massive stone keep, 25 meters tall and mounted on a Norman motte. Inside are three levels, the lowest one divided in two by a central wall. Just outside the central keep are the remains of the earlier wall. The principal outer wall, some 500 meters long and largely standing today, dates from around 1250 and includes eight towers and the gatehouse. The best example of the outer wall is from the River Boyne through Dublin Gate to Castle St. The outer wall has a number of gates from which defenders could rally to meet the enemy.

Within the north corner was a church and facing the river was the Royal Mint. The mint produced Irish coins called "Patricks" and "Irelands" into the 15th century. The Russian cannon in the car park is a trophy from the Crimean War and bears the imperial double-headed eagle.

Excavations on the castle grounds in 1971 near a depression south of the keep revealed the remains of 10 headless men - most likely criminals. King Edward IV, in 1465, ordered that anyone who had robbed or "was going to rob" be beheaded and their heads mounted on spikes and publicly displayed as a warning to other thieves. Trim Castle is currently undergoing a renovation and excavations program which will last for several years to come.

Turnberry Castle

This is probably the oldest building in Carrick, and dates back as far as the twelfth century-perhaps earlier. It was the seat of the ancient Earls of Carrick, and was the home of Robert the Bruce's mother, and possibly Robert's birthplace. It was at Turnberry that a meeting of the Scottish nobles was held in 1286 to take steps towards promoting Bruce's claim to the Scottish throne.

Usk Castle

The Norman castle and town are thought to have been founded by 1120. The town was rectangular with four gateways and a ditch and bank, the western side of which was excavated in 1974. It lies upon the site of a Roman fort. The castle lies on a hill on the northernmost sector. It is first mentioned as being captured in 1138. The Welsh took it again in 1174 in spite of strengthening by Richard de Clare which may have included the building of the tower keep. It was recaptured in 1184. The palisade of the bailey was replaced by a masonry wall with round towers in c1212-19 by William Marshal, earl of Pembroke. The castle was again captured during the war of 1233 between Richard Marshal and Henry III. The NE round tower is said to have been erected by Gilbert

de Clare in the 1260s when this district was threatened by Llywelyn ap Gruffydd.

When Gilbert V de Clare was killed at Bannockburn in 1314, Usk passed to Elizabeth de Burgh who erected the hall block, chapel and solar on the northeast side. The castle later passed to the Mortimers, who walled in the outer bailey on the south with one round SW tower and a rectangular gatehouse. Owain Gwynndwr burnt the town in 1402 and 1405, but the castle may have held out. Later it became part of the Duchy of Lancaster and was allowed to decay apart from the outer gatehouse which was incorporated into a house built in the 1680s to accommodate Thomas Herbert, steward of the lordship under the then owner the Duke of Beaufort.

Warkworth Castle

Lies within a loop of the River Coquet, Northumberland, England. Possibly founded by the Scots during the anarchy, Henry II granted the castle to the lords of Clavering, who held it until 1332. Warkworth was then granted to Henry Percy, Lord of Alnwick, as a reward for his services in the Scottish wars. It became one of the chief Percy seats. Warkworth Castle is sited on raised ground in a loop of the River Coquet. The original motte and bailey castle was built in the mid 12th century by Earl Henry of Northumberland, son of David I, King of Scots. In 1157, Henry II recovered Northumberland from the Scots, and in the following year gave Warkworth Castle to Roger FitzRichard. But the castle is most famously associated with the Percy family, who acquired the castle in 1332.

The Percy family were one of the most powerful in the country, controlling much of Northern England. Despite having a major castle nearby at Alnwick, they frequently resided at Warkworth and made big improvements to the castle, most notably with the addition of the great keep in the late 14th century. The keep is one of the finest in the country, with an advanced design that would have provided impressive accommodation as well as a status symbol worthy of such a powerful family.

The Percy's power struggles brought them into frequent conflict with the monarchy, with the castle returned to royal control on several occasions, but with their influence so great, a Percy was normally soon reinstated. The sixth Percy earl, Henry, on his death in 1537, left the castle and all his possessions to Henry VIII. Subsequent attempts to reinstate a Percy brought misfortune on the castle as the catholic Percy's came into conflict with the protestant Queen Elizabeth. A failed uprising of the Northern Earls against the queen, led to the execution of the 7th earl in 1572, and to the pillaging of the castle by the Queen's servants. The castle was subsequently allowed to fall into decay.

Warwick Castle

The castle, in Warwickshire, England, was founded in 1068 by William the Conqueror. It was rebuilt and updated a number of times. William granted the castle to Henry de Newburgh (Beaumont), first Norman Earl of Warwick. In 1268, the castle and earldom passed to the Beauchamps. Thomas Beauchamp became earl in 1331 and began a general reconstruction which was continued by his son, another Thomas, who joined the baronial opposition to Richard II and endured a period of imprisonment in the Tower of London. He was succeeded by Richard Beauchamp, then Richard Neville. After Neville's fall at the Battle of Barnet in 1471, Warwick was granted to Richard, Duke of Gloucester, subsequently Richard III.

Whittington Castle

Although not recorded in the Domesday Book, local legend claims that a series of primitive castles has existed here since the 9th century. The present castle ruins date from 1221 when the fitz Warren family applied to King Henry III for permission to build a stone fortress. Originally, the castle had 7 towers, each about 18 metres high, with walls 3.7 metres thick and a drawbridge over 12 metres long. The fitz Warrens had a remarkable love/hate relationship with the English monarchy. Fulk fitz Warren is reputed to have quarrelled with Prince John, the future ill-fated king. The feud eventually caused fitz Warren to flee to France to avoid certain death. After years of exile, Fulk was granted a pardon and was able to return and repossess Whittington Castle. The castle fell into decay after the Civil War and it recorded that one of the towers collapsed into the

moat after a severe frost in 1760. The ruins were subsequently plundered for stone to surface roads and build houses. The present condition of the castle is a result of restoration and clearance work dating from 1967.

To give an idea of the timeline of Whittington Castle:

Approximately 500 BC - The site was surrounded by triple banks and ditches, and those remaining to the north and west have recently been ascribed to the Iron Age. They can be seen in the aerial photographs at the Whittington Castle website.

600 - Whittington was possibly the site of Llys Pengwern (Head of the Marsh), a capital of the Welsh kingdom of Powys. The description and presumed location of Llys Pengwern match this site in contrast to the more traditional Shrewsbury, which was not surrounded by a formidable marsh.

656 - The Northumbrian Saxons destroyed Llys Pengwern, home of King Cynddylan of Powys, who was buried at nearby Eglwys Bassa (Baschurch). The manor of Whittington was granted to William of Peveril and a Norman motte and bailey earthwork castle was built within the northern end of the Iron Age fort.

1138 - The castle was fortified for the empress Matilda against King Stephen.

1173 - The Norman leader Roger de Powys was given a grant towards the cost of repairing the castle by Henry II.

1204 - King John granted the castle and manor to the Fitz-Warin family.

1221 - The castle was rebuilt in stone by the Fitz-Warins under licence from King Henry III.

1223 - The castle was besieged by Llywelyn ap Iorwerth of Gwynedd who was expanding his empire into Powys and the Welsh marches.

1265 - Granted by Henry III to Llewelyn ap Gruffudd along with several other border strongholds.

1282 - Restored to the Fulk-Warins after the final defeat of Llewelyn ap Gruffudd.

1643 - The dilapidated castle was held for the King during the English civil war and was partially destroyed by the cannons of the opposing parliamentary forces. The damage was not repaired.

1960s onwards. Clearance and preservation by the Whittington Castle Preservation Trust.

Wigmore Castle

Wigmore Castle lies in a northern corner of Herefordshire, together with the ancient village bearing the same name. Its topographical prospect is one of straddling the south-eastern edge of a spur, with marshland to its diagonal north and having a backdrop of thick forest. By toady, this marsh, together with its accompanying lake, lies well-drained, the result of the need of later generations of owners and tenants to extend land suitable for cultivation.

In the castle's hey-day, however, this wetland provided the castle's inhabitants with ample supplies of fish and game, as did the forest on the remote side of the spur. Centuries of decay, neglect and attackers' efforts have now left the castle as a scattering of ruins with features such as towers, curtain walls and a gatehouse barely discernable (above left), jointly due to their deterioration and the growth of heavy vegetation. In historical terms we can go back to the Domesday Book for the first clear reference to Wigmore Castle.

The relevant entry read "*Ralph de Mortimer holds Wigmore Castle*", but he was not the nobleman to whom we can attribute the building of the stronghold. That honor goes to William FitzOsbern, but this Norman, one of the Conqueror's captains, incurred William's wrath in 1075 with an act of treachery and he was replaced as castellan by Mortimer. Thus started the Mortimer association with Wigmore which was to last the best part of four centuries. Adopting the name of the Normandy castle and village of Mortemer en Brai, the House of Mortimer was to become one of the most powerful families in England. Indeed, at one time, early in the reign of Edward III, it's head, Roger, was for a while the *de facto* ruler of the country.

The Mortimers were archetypal marcher lords. The latter were a class of noblemen established by the Norman kings of England to police The Marches, which were their Welsh, and to a lesser degree, Scottish border. In return for this service the lords were allotted vast tracts of territory in these regions. More than that,

though, they were afforded wide ranging powers not available in English-based counterparts - these in return for providing a defensive cushion between the rebellious Welsh and the shires adjacent to Wales. For example, they were allowed to raise their own armies, exact taxes and build castles without the sovereign's consent.

Marcher Lords were acquisitive by nature and took every opportunity to enlarge upon their dominions. This process took the form of either taking possession by force or by engaging themselves or their offspring in marriages made profitable by handsome dowries of land and property. The names given to successive male members of the Mortimer family were somewhat repetitive, as was the custom in those times, with Roger, Ralph and Hugh dominating. Later the name Edmund came to be featured.

Although there were a couple of setbacks in the family's fortunes during the 12th and 13th centuries, overall it was a story of gradual expansion of territory and power. Some of the inter-marrying overlapped the border, with links being forged between the House of Mortimer and that of Gwynedd. Inevitably, this brought a spread of territorial gain to a more westward extent than before. The most significant dowry gain came to Roger who married in 1301. His bride was Joan Geneville whose family owned Ludlow and its castle in neighboring Shropshire.

The fortress and half the borough now came within the Mortimer ambit and as a result of this acquisition Roger became a true magnate. Mortimer lordships were now to be found in a swathe across southern England and Wales, from Essex to Pembrokeshire. In 1328 Roger's barony was raised to an earldom, with its title, Earl of March indicative of its significance. No mere county, this, but a whole border region. "Ulster" was later added to the title, a measure of the extent of the family's Irish interests and possessions.

While Ludlow now assumed the role of the administrative centre of Mortimer affairs, it was the smaller castle eight miles to the west that was the real hub of the house's activities. Wigmore was the family seat, a role reinforced by the endowment of Wigmore Abbey across the lake and less than two miles from the castle. Although now absorbed into the structure of a large farmhouse, the outline of the abbey is still delineated. That it remained a vital component of the affairs of the Mortimers almost to the end of their dynasty is evidenced by the fact that it was the resting place of the third Earl of March, Edmund, and his wife Philippa, they joining many earlier principals of the family.

The aforementioned Roger, though, was not one to stand still where his amorous advances and extension of power were concerned. He successfully set his cap at Queen Isabella, the consort of the weak Edward II. The pair then set about disposing of the king, eventually causing him to be cruelly put to death at Berkeley Castle in Gloucestershire. Thus, the head of the House of Mortimer became ruler of England, albeit briefly and not formally as king. The devious duo acted as regents for the young Edward III but this was not to last very long. A seemingly ungrateful Edward, acting in tandem with barons envious and nervous of Roger's power, conspired to execute the earl and banish his paramour (the queen) from the land.

However, as on previous occasions when the Mortimers had incurred the wrath of their masters and had lost influence and property, virtually all of their original lordships were restored to the house in the name of its new head, Roger's grandson of the same name - this between 1342 and 1346 with Wigmore coming to him in 1343. This latest Roger was also recognized as the second Earl of March by King Edward. Between this decade and the last one of the 14th century, the house of mortimer prospered. By then the Earl of March was the fourth, in the person of yet another Roger. This incumbent became a favorite of Richard II but he was more than a sycophant - he was also conscientious in his service to the throne. His chief involvement as the sovereign's representative was in Irish affairs, and it was during this engagement that he died in 1399.

Well before his demise he had been named by the childless Richard as his heir, the Mortimer lineage making this a realistic designation. On Roger's death the heirloom passed to his youngest son, Edmund, who affairs were to be managed by his uncle, also an Edmund. By this time though, Henry Bolingbroke had usurped the Crown from Richard and had plans of succession centered around his own son, Prince Hal, the Future Henry V. Thus, the younger Edmund was secreted at Windsor under royal wardship and, by this means, was kept out of circulation where succession was concerned.

Meanwhile, Edmund the uncle, was commissioned to police the March against the forces of Owain Gwynndwr, who, since 1400, had been in rebellion against the Crown seeking Welsh independence. In attempting to counter a summer campaign by Owain in mid-Wales, the elder Edmund was captured by the Welsh prince.

The knight would have probably called at Wigmore for reinforcements to his force on his way from Ludlow, where he was currently stationed. As the only one who could realistically promote any future claim by his nephew to the English throne, Edmund was considered by Henry to be well out of the way as a Welsh captive. To reinforce his position, the king confiscated all of the Mortimer plate and jewellery and prohibited anyone from acting as Edmund's agent in procuring a ransom.

Understandably, the young man was aggrieved by this neglect by his king, and in the summer of 1402, he declared his alliance with Glyndwr. As if to consolidate this stance, on the last day of November of that year, he married Owain's daughter, Catrin. He served the Glyndwr cause faithfully until he died at the fall of Harlech Castle, which was the precursor to the end of resistance by the Welsh. Edmund's nephew lived to serve Henry V as his king, for which he was rewarded with the return of the earldom of March. He was to demise without issue and with him formally died the House of Mortimer, all of its possessions reverting to the Crown. Despite not being in a premier league in terms of size where medieval castles are concerned, Wigmore was an edifice graced with a significant degree of splendor for those years of Mortimer ascendancy, particularly in its latter two centuries.

This importance was not diminished by its distance from royal courts. Its barbican saw a whole aristocracy pass through it, and not just that of England. Welsh, Scottish and Irish nobles would have variously have been visitors, probably combining political business with pleasure. Guests would also have included the envoys of many a Western European court, engaged in similar duties and celebration.

Wilton Castle

On the River Wye between Ross-on-Wye and Bridstow, Herefordshire, England. Attributed to Roger de Grey, c. 1300. His descendants styled themselves "Lords Grey of Wilton" to be distinguished from other branches of the Grey family.

Windsor Castle

Windsor Castle in Berkshire, England, has been an official residence of the Royal Family for the last 900 years and is the only royal castle that has been in continuous occupation since the middle ages. It is the largest inhabited castle in the world covering nearly 13 acres. Various sovereigns have added to it over the years and its curtain wall with towers and gates extends over half a mile in a rough figure-of-eight pattern. In 1917 George V declared that his family and descendants would take the surname Windsor as he was so fond of it.

In 1070, William the Conqueror started to build the castle. The site was chosen with great care; on a chalk outcrop rising about 100 feet above the river Thames on the edge of Saxon hunting grounds. It was a day's march from the Tower of London and one of a ring of nine castles that he built around London, Windsor guarding the western approaches to the capital. It was a motte with two baileys, one on each side, and an aerial view still shows this under the more recent stonework. It was almost certainly built of wood and earth. This is the castle which is in the game – the information here covers its whole history.

Henry I began to convert the castle to stone by erecting a stone shell round the top of the mound. Henry II liked Windsor and treated it as his home, planting a herb garden and possibly a vineyard. However he also extended and strengthened it to improve its defenses. He built a large oval great tower inside the shell wall with walls about 5 foot thick and about 35 feet high. Inside the tower wooden buildings leant up against the walls leaving a square courtyard in the middle and some of this original timberwork can still be seen today. He began the basic curtain wall and also built two separate blocks of royal apartments, one in the lower ward to entertain his court and the other in the upper ward for his family's private use.

King John took over the castle in 1194 when he was rebelling against his brother, Richard I, absent while fighting the Crusades. Nobles loyal to the king besieged the castle but failed to take it. It was also besieged in 1216 when John was fighting the barons. The castle withstood the siege but it was extensively damaged.

The castle was revamped by Edward the III in the 14th century, spending more than £50,000. He transformed the lower ward into the new college of St George and began work on the new gothic palace in the upper ward. By this time the castle was a palace rather than a military structure. Little more was altered during

the medieval period and, despite later alterations, this is basically the castle that can be seen today.

St. George's Chapel was started by Edward IV in 1475 and completed by Henry VII in 1528 when the beautiful fan vaulted ceiling was finished. It is one of the finest examples of late medieval architecture and is more than 230 feet long. On the outside there are hundreds of gargoyles, pinnacles and buttresses, and on the inside two tiers of huge windows. Many royal weddings have taken place here and it is the burial place of 10 monarchs including Henry VIII, Charles I, Victoria and George VI. It is also the home of the Order of the Garter, England's highest Order of Chivalry.

Henry VII and his grand-daughter, Elizabeth I remodelled the state apartments, Henry VIII built the entrance gate to the lower ward which still bears his name and Mary I built the lodgings at the south of the lower ward.

The castle was taken by Parliament during the English Civil War in the mid 17th Century and was used as a prison. The restoration of Charles II in 1660 brought Windsor Castle back as a Royal Palace. In 1673 the interior of the castle was refitted with rich Baroque trimmings while leaving the castellated exterior virtually unchanged. He employed Grinling Gibbons to make many wood carvings and Antonio Verrio for ceiling paintings.

The early Hanoverian kings preferred Hampton Court Palace to Windsor. George III came back to Windsor and opened the upper ward State Apartments to the public for the first time. During George IV's reign, the castle's outline was enhanced by raising the Round Tower to 65 feet, constructing additional towers and battlements and building the King George IV Gateway at a cost of a million pounds.

When Queen Victoria came to the throne, Windsor Castle once again became the principal palace. Heads of State from throughout Europe, many of whom were the Queen's relations, often visited Windsor and the State Rooms were again used for their original purpose. Her beloved Prince Albert died there in 1861.

The castle has more recently been in the news for the fire on 20 November 1992. It began in the Private Chapel after a spotlight had been in contact with a curtain for a long period and it ignited the material. It quickly spread through the wooden ceiling panels and raged out of control for hours. It took 15 hours and a million and a half gallons of water to put out the blaze. Nine principal rooms and over 100 other rooms over an area of 9,000 square metres were damaged or destroyed by the fire, approximately one-fifth of the castle area. The next five years were spent restoring the castle to its former glory using the finest craftsmen, resulting in the greatest historic building project to have been undertaken in England in the 20th century.

It was decided that the damaged rooms would be completely restored while the destroyed rooms would be rebuilt to new designs. After five years' intensive work the restoration of Windsor Castle was completed six months ahead of schedule on 20 November 1997 at a cost of £37 million (US \$59.2 million), £3 million below budget. To mark the completion The Queen and The Duke of Edinburgh held a "thank you" reception in the restored rooms on 14 November 1997 for 1,500 contractors and on 20 November they celebrated their Golden Wedding Anniversary with a ball.

Today, Windsor Castle can still be visited with many highlights including the State Apartments and Queen Mary's Dolls' House.

The State Apartments are extensive suites of rooms at the heart of the palace, furnished with treasures from the Royal Collection including paintings by Holbein, Rubens, Van Dyck and Lawrence, fine tapestries and porcelain, sculpture and armor. St. George's Hall is the room in which the Queen holds State Banquets and receptions. There are small intimate rooms such as Charles II's Apartments & the vast Waterloo Chamber which was built to commemorate the 1815 victory.

Queen Mary's Dolls' House is a palace in miniature, possibly the most famous dolls' house in the world. Designed by the architect Sir Edwin Lutyens in 1921 for Queen Mary, the wife of George V, and built to a scale of 1:12 by master craftsmen, everything in the house is a perfect copy of its full-size equivalent including the working lights illuminating the finely decorated state rooms, the servants' quarters and the garages, running water, a working lift and miniature books in the library written by authors of the day; not to mention the genuine vintage wine in miniature bottles in the wine cellar. Most of the miniature contents were made by the manufacturers of the full sized article. It took 3 years to complete.

Worcester Castle

Urso d'Abitot was high sheriff of Worcester, constable of Worcester Castle, and Baron of Elmley.

Castles of Austria

Burg Hochosterwitz

Burg Hochosterwitz is in Carinthia, Austria, perched on a 160m high rock rising from the plains. It can be seen from 20 miles away on a clear day and is considered to be one of the most impressive castles in the country.

The castle was first mentioned in 860AD when it was called Astorwiza. In 1209 the Duke of Carinthia appointed the Osterwitz family to be hereditary royal cupbearers and gave them the castle, which at that time was only very small, as a fiefdom. The family remodeled and extended it until it covered the entire top of the hill. When the last member of the family died whilst being imprisoned by the Turks in 1475, the castle reverted to Emperor Frederick III. Emperor Ferdinand I mortgaged the castle to the area's governor, Christof Khevenhüller to raise some money.

In 1571 Baron Georg von Khevenhüller bought the castle outright and it was enlarged and further fortified due to the threat of Turkish invasions, being completed in 1586. He built a rectangular keep and three round towers on the corners of the curtain walls. An armory was built and also its famous 14 fortified gates together with five drawbridges. Once these were built, to gain access to the castle, the only access for an attacker was a walk up a 620m path going through all the gates, a type of construction unique among castles.

During its long history the castle was never taken. The closest it came was in about 1360 during the time of Margarethe of Tirol. It was one of the few castles in Carinthia that she did not manage to take which was one of the main reasons she gave up her campaign to take Carinthia.

Keeping to the request of the builder, Georg, on a marble slab in the courtyard that states that the castle should be kept in the possession of his descendants who would always care for it, the castle is still owned by the von Khevenhüller family. It can be visited during the summer.

Castles of Belgium

Chateau Bouillon

Bouillon Castle in the Luxembourg province of Belgium guards the natural route of all north-south invasions through the Ardennes. It is about 10km north of the French border and 200km south of Brussels and is the earliest and best preserved medieval fortress in Belgium.

The castle is built in three main parts linked together by bridges on a steep bluff overlooking the town and the Semois valley. The Duke's house was in the main courtyard where the only trace now of the original keep is a scrap of wall.

The first fortified castle was built around 1050, probably on the site of an 8th century stronghold. It was owned by the Dukes of Ardennes until 1096 when Godfrey of Bouillon sold it for a huge amount of money to Otbert, the prince-bishop of Liege, to pay for the First Crusade which he led. Otbert desperately wanted to own the castle and plundered the churches and monasteries of his diocese to pay for it. Godfrey conquered Jerusalem in 1099 and died there in 1100 having been given the title of Protector of the Holy Sepulchre as he refused to be crowned King of Jerusalem where Jesus had worn a crown of thorns.

In 1551 the Austrian Tower at the end of the guard walk was built which gives a marvellous view of the whole castle.

The castle was given to the La Marck family by Louis XIV of France after he conducted a 20 day siege in 1676. Parts of the castle were rebuilt at that time by Vauban, the great French military architect.

During the 18th century Bouillon was an oasis of liberty, being proclaimed a republic, until 1795 when France annexed the area. In the 2nd treaty of Paris after the Battle of Waterloo in 1815 it was given to the Netherlands. The Dutch demolished the chapel, the main tower and the Governor's house and built an arsenal

and barracks.

In 1830 it was integrated into Belgium after its final siege during the Belgian revolution and was no longer used as a military base so it started to fall into disrepair. Luckily people wanted to visit it so it was saved from further destruction and it is now owned by the Belgian state.

Gravensteen

Belgium has over 3,000 castles, about 300 of which are open to the public. Gravensteen, a medieval castle in the middle of the city, is one of the best-known and most popular. The original castle was built around 868 by Count Baldwin I, rebuilt and expanded by the Count of Flanders around 1180. The Gravensteen was the seat of the Council of Flanders. Inside, you can visit the torture chambers.

The Gravensteen is the Dutch name for the “castle of the count.” In the Middle Ages, Flanders was a very rich region, world famous because of its fine flaxen linens. It was also a very restless area; it was part of France, but an ally of England, as it needed their wool. And if there’s commotion, there are fortifications.

Around the year 867, Baldwin *Iron Arm*, the first Count of Flanders, decided to build a (wooden) castle at the meeting of the Leie and Lieve rivers in order to thwart the raiding Norsemen. A town soon grew up around the Gravensteen Castle (castle of the Counts of Flanders). Around 1000, the castle was almost entirely made out of stone. You can still see traces of this in the castle. By the 12th century, the castle had been enlarged and the town of Ghent was rapidly growing into a prosperous city with no less than three castles to protect it.

Gravensteen as we know it now is the work of Filip van den Elzas (Filip of Alsasse) who was Count of Flanders from 1157 until 1191. He took part in one of the crusades and died during the siege of Akko in the Holy Land. He modelled it after crusader castles that he saw in Syria during his time at the Crusades. The opening in the form of a cross, right above the main entrance gate, proves that he already had taken part in a crusade when the Castle was built around 1177-1178. Filip started his building campaign to impress the inhabitants of Ghent and to keep them between the lines. But the city became bigger and bigger and the castle lost its military purpose so the castle was furnished as a residence for the Counts. These Counts left the building in 1353 and went to more luxurious housing.

From then on the castle got all kind of functions. It was used as the Mint and later as the main prison of Ghent. The castle became private property in the 19th century and was turned into a textile factory. The little houses in the inner court are still a remainder of that era. The city bought the castle back in 1887 and started to restore it. Today the castle is a tourist magnet and the historical halls are often used as a backdrop for concerts and theatrical plays.

Today, the Gravensteen has been beautifully restored. It is still partially surrounded by the medieval moat. It can be visited all through the year. Inside is a museum about the history of prison life and organization. Check out the castle’s crypt, its underground dungeon, a museum of old weapons like crossbows, rifles, etc... and armor.... and its instruments of torture.

The Museum of Instruments of Torture opened in 1922 and in 1935 was expanded considerably with a collection of instruments of coercion from the now vanished Central Prison (Rasphuis) on the Coupure. These objects were also accompanied by a few remarkable items from the mental asylum for men which was formerly in the Castle of Gerard the Devil. The collection was completed with several implements used by Ghent’s last executioner (1861). The collection is now divided into four main sections: imprisonment, the insane, torture and interrogation and execution and punishment.

Castles of the Czech Republic

Prague Castle

Prague Castle can be found in the middle of the capital of the Czech Republic on a sprawling site on top of a rocky ridge above the Vltava River. It gives the impression of being a small walled town rather than a castle and at 570 meters long and 128 meters wide it is the largest ancient castle in the world according to the Guinness Book of Records.

The first castle, of timber with earth and stone ramparts and a moat, was built in about 870 by the ruling dynasty of Bohemia, princes from the Premyslid family. From the beginning, churches and houses were built inside the walls and by the end of the 10th century there were three churches, together with a convent. By this time, the castle was the seat of both the King of Bohemia and the Bishop of Prague.

In 1041 and again in 1142 the Castle was besieged & burnt down. The second conflagration resulted in its being rebuilt in stone and strongly fortified with roofed walls, towers and ditches. In 1346 it became an imperial residence, the seat of the Holy Roman Emperor King Charles IV of Bohemia. The royal palace was rebuilt magnificently with golden roofs as a symbol of wealth and power and the fortifications were strengthened. Building continued, including the cathedral of St Vitus started in 1344 and modeled on French cathedrals although it wasn't finally completed until 1929. However in 1421 the castle was captured by the Hussites during the Hussite wars. Under Jan Hus, they were simple people from the countryside, using farming tools as weapons, fighting for their religious beliefs. After the Hussite rebellion was quelled, the castle started to fall into disrepair and it was no longer inhabited.

In 1483 King Vladislav decided to make the castle his home so it was refortified with three towers on the northern side. The royal palace was also rebuilt with the huge Vladislav Hall being the biggest secular vaulted hall in Europe at the time.

The Habsburg family became the royal house in 1526 and they started rebuilding the castle in a renaissance style with formal Italian style gardens and entertainment buildings such as a summer palace, a shooting range and a ball games hall. In 1541 there was a huge fire and much of the castle was burnt down. After the fire, Rudolph II began to turn it into a suitable place to be the centre of his empire, building a new wing onto the palace to house his art and science collections. The best equipped stables in Europe were built with about 300 horses in residence; there were also lions and leopards.

During the 17th and first part of the 18th century there was a long period of war during which the castle was besieged, damaged and looted. In 1631 it was occupied by the Saxons, in 1648 it was the turn of the Swedes and in 1757 it was besieged by the Prussians and badly damaged.

The last great rebuilding was carried out during the second half of the 18th century under the Empress Maria Theresa and was in the baroque style that can be seen today. However, the capital of the empire had moved to Vienna and as Prague was no longer considered so important the castle gradually became dilapidated once again and most of Rudolph's art collection was sold.

In 1918 the Czechoslovak Republic became independent after the collapse of the Austro-Hungarian Empire and the castle once again became home to a head of state with alterations being begun in 1920. During this rebuilding, they found walls of much older buildings including those of timber houses from the first castle, so an archaeological excavation took place finding many items from the castle's earliest days. Originally the dig was open to the public, but unfortunately damage was being done so now it is walled in.

In 1939 Hitler's armies occupied Prague and Hitler himself stayed in the castle for a few days that year.

The castle is still the seat of the head of state, the president of the Czech Republic. The crown jewels are kept there, as are precious Christian relics, relics of the Bohemian kings and art treasures.

Castles of France

Aigues-Mortes

Founded by King Louis IX in 1246 as port of embarkation for his first Crusade (1248-50). Aigues-Mortes is a French walled town on the Mediterranean, in the Rhone Delta. The city was first defended by the 90-foot high Tower of Constance, but Louis' son Philip III began the town wall in 1272. The walls remain intact.

Bruis Castle

Robert de Bruis, a Norman knight who followed William the Conqueror from Normandy, was from Bruis Castle, near Brix, Manche, Normandy, France.

Carcassonne

The Medieval Cité of Carcassonne is the largest fortified town in Europe still in existence today. It has been inhabited for more than 2000 years. Early cultures represented are:

Earliest times	Neolithic
6th century BC	Celtic; the Volques Tectosages
118 BC	the Romans
5th century	the Visigoths from Aquitaine, then the Franks
725 AD	the Arabs (Saracens) come north from Gaul, possessing Languedoc and occupying Carcassonne
759 AD	King Pépin le Bref routs the Arabs
1067 AD	Ermengarde, viscountess of Agde and Béziers, wife of Raimond Roger Trencavel, viscount of Albi and Nîmes, obtains the city

The city was important to the Romans as an administrative trade center and known as “Colonia Julia Carcaso.” It was in that era that the foundations of the city were laid which can still be seen today, as the main part of the north rampart still has the Gallo-Roman architecture.

The Counts’ castle is overpowering because of its immense size. The Trencavel dynasty of viscounts built their new houses on the highest point of the Cité. In 1150 Bernard Anton Trencavel constructed the castle on remains from Roman times; Roman mosaics are still visible under the basement of the Counts’ castle.

The Castle reached its current size only after the French conquest in the 13th century. The highest and oldest parts of the castle are to be seen in the courtyard. Two buildings, the western and southern wings and the ground floor of the Pinte Tower, go back to the Trencavels’ period. The Pinte Tower, a watchtower, is the highest in Carcassonne. This tower, more than 30 metres high (90 ft), dominates the area. It is hard to say what the castle looked like in medieval times as it has been added to and remodeled many times over the centuries.

Chateau of Chinon

Located in central France, this castle is actually three separate castles separated by moats. It was begun by the counts of Blois at the end of the 10th century. The oldest surviving section dates from the 12th century, when King Henry II of England built the easternmost castle, Fort St. Georges. Joan of Arc first met the Dauphin, later Charles VII of France, at Chinon.

Chateau Gaillard

In Les Andelys (Eure), France, it was built by Richard I *Lionheart*, King of England, between 1196 and 1198.

Chateau of Gisors

In Normandy, France, was begun by King William II of England in 1097. In the second half of the 12th century, Henry II, King of England and Duke of Normandy, expanded Gisors, surrounding the keep with a polygonal wall with nine flanking towers.

Chateau of Haut-Königsburg

Haut-Königsburg is in Alsace which is part of eastern France close to the border with Germany. It is situated on a forested hill overlooking the village of St Hippolyte, about halfway between Strasbourg and Colmar. From the top of the castle, there are wonderful views towards the Rhine and the Black Forest and, on a really clear day, Switzerland, from the castle which towers over the wine-growing Alsace plains.

In 1114, Friedrich of Hohenstaufen recognised the strategic importance of Staufenberg, the hill on which the castle is built. He had become Duke of Swabia in 1105 and, to make himself secure, he built a whole series of castles. The site contained a Roman ruin originally built to protect a high pass. He named it Chateau Staufen and by 1147 there were already towers on the two extremities of the hilltop. In 1192 it took the name of Königsburg. In the first half of the 13th century, the Dukes of Lorraine took over the castle, profiting from the weakened state of the Hohenstaufens, and bestowed it to the Lord of Ratsamhausen and later to the Lord of Hohenstein who stayed there until the 15th century although the ownership passed to the bishopric of Strasbourg. In 1453 its name became Haut-Königsburg to distinguish it from a castle at the bottom of the hill and it was lost in 1454 after a short battle with Frederick the Victorious.

In 1633 the Swedes, who were fighting the Thirty Years War against Austria, besieged the castle which, by this time, had become fairly dilapidated. Despite this, its stubborn garrison withstood the bombardment for 52 days, refusing dire surrender ultimatums. Finally, out of food and ammunition, the Swedes took the castle although the garrison disappeared and, shortly afterwards, the castle was destroyed by fire. In 1865, the ruin and surrounding forests were acquired by the nearby town of Selestat.

In 1871, Alsace became German and, in 1899, Selestat gave the ruins and surrounding land to Kaiser Wilhelm II of Germany. He wanted it to be a symbol of the western frontier of his empire and decided to restore it to its 12th century glory but as a medieval museum rather than a royal residence. The architect was Bodo Ebhardt and the work took 8 years starting in 1900. Although the architect consulted historical documents, his restoration is often criticised. Many people had found the ruins romantic, but the restoration was considered pretentious by many.

In November 1918, the castle was occupied by French soldiers and in 1919 Alsace became part of France again under the Treaty of Versailles and the castle became known as Haut-Koenigsbourg.

During the occupation of France by the Germans in the 2nd World War, the castle housed collections from Colmar Museum and also tapestries from the Cathedral, Town Hall and museums of Strasbourg. In November 1944, a corps of American troops arrived and relieved the castle, using it as an observation post.

The walls are 4 metres thick on average, 8 metres in places, and were the principal defense as they could withstand artillery attack. The steep sides of the hill, 757m (2498 feet) high, made it very difficult for heavily armed attacking soldiers and, particularly, artillery. Additionally the top of the hill was rocky which gave the castle very solid foundations and made it impossible for any tunnelling to take place. From the top of the keep, it's possible to see any movement on the plains below. If besieging armies managed to get inside, they still had problems. All the internal buildings and towers were built strongly; the slope up to the main keep was protected by murder holes and the stairways were narrow spiral staircases with irregular treads. The closer the invaders got to the centre of the castle, the more difficult the advance became.

Nowadays it is open to the public, fully restored and furnished, as an example of everyday castle life in centuries ago France. There are also many weapons on display from huge swords to cannons.

Mont St Michel

While Mont St Michel is not, strictly speaking, a castle, it is surrounded by fortifications and is a great monument to medieval building. It is built on a small (1km diameter) rocky island in a vast sandy bay between Brittany and is connected to the mainland by a 1km causeway which is covered at high tide. The traffic-free road winds its way up past small houses and shops to the 13th century monastic buildings and the Benedictine abbey at the summit, 80m above sea level.

Legend says that Aubert, Bishop of Avranches, had a dream when the Archangel Michael appeared to him and told him to build a church on top of the rock. The Bishop founded the first chapel, holding about 100, on

the site in 708 and gave it St Michael's name. Further buildings were put up in the next few years and it was inhabited by a small community of canons.

The buildings fell into disrepair after a severe fire in 922 and had been too small even before the fire, so in 966 Richard, Duke of Normandy, established an order of Benedictine monks there who started to reconstruct the church. They brought in craftsmen from Italy and started work in 1017. The abbey was finished in 1080 and pilgrims flocked to the island to worship St Michael.

At the beginning of the 13th century, Normandy was annexed to France. During the battles preceding this, part of the abbey burnt down and when peace returned, the King of France agreed to provide funds to help gain favor by building an even more magnificent abbey. Work began in 1204 and was finished in 1221. Much of this building is what can still be seen today.

When the first chapel was built, instead of flattening the pointed top of the rock, the Bishop had built up masonry round the peak. Unfortunately this was not strong enough to bear the later granite buildings and in 1300 one of the towers collapsed, followed by the nave in 1421.

Fortified walls and watchtowers were added in 1420 during the Hundred Years War when it acted as a fortress to protect the Normans from the invading English. Despite many attacks, it was never taken. The reconstruction of the collapsed areas didn't start until after the war in 1450 and finished in 1521.

The King recognised its usefulness as a prison and it was first used for political prisoners in 1472 but the monks remained until the Revolution of 1789 when it was dissolved. It continued to be used as a prison holding many of France's most famous citizens at various times.

There was a bad fire in 1856 and restoration took place in 1874 when Napoleon III declared it a national monument and the French government assumed responsibility for the repairs and upkeep. The causeway was built in 1879. Prior to that, the only access was across the sands at low tide which was dangerous as the sea sweeps in with very little warning.

Church services were revived in the 1920s and a very small community of Benedictine monks returned in 1969. Today there are only a handful left. It was listed by UNESCO as a World Heritage site in 1979.

Pierrefonds Castle

Near Compiègne (Oise), in northern France, was built by Louis of Orleans, the brother of King Charles VI of France, shortly before the end of the 14th century. Pierrefonds is best known today because of its restoration, beginning in 1858, for Emperor Napoleon III by the French architect Viollet-le-Duc. For the emperor, the Middle Ages represented a period in French history characterized by the king of glory he was trying to restore.

Castles of Germany

Bentheim Castle

Bentheim is the largest fortification in the state of Lower Saxony. The location now occupied by the Bentheim castle has a long history as a defended community as far back as the glory days of the Holy Roman Empire. With a history mentioned at least as far back as the 8th century and a state of restoration that is the envy of many other sites, Bentheim can, in one visit to one castle tell you much about the Middle Ages, at least as lived by nobles. The Magazine Keep (Donjon) is one of the most impressive in Germany, with a base wall of 16.4 feet thick. Bentheim is one of the few castles that housed an actual torture chamber.

Burghausen Castle

Castle Burghausen is located in Bavaria in southern Germany about 110 kilometers (66 miles) east of Munich. It lies on the west bank of the Salzach River which is the border between Germany and Austria. It is the longest existing castle in Europe. The castle is built atop a ridge and its length is stretched out over a full kilometer (1034 m). Parts of the defensive structure reached down to the village and are integrated into its town walls. The

complex is divided into six courtyards.

It is thought that there was a Celtic settlement on the Burghausen ridge in 100 BC. In 600 AD the first building on the castle site was a wooden fortified house built by Bavarian Dukes and used the court of the Palatinate. It served for general administration as well as for the protection of the salt trade, shipped on the Salzach River.

The city of Burghausen was first mentioned in 1025 in a document as being a royal court (Reichshof). The German King Konrad II made Burghausen and the surrounding districts into an Earldom and appointed Bailiffs to administer it. The first expansion of the castle was made by Count Sieghart X in 1090, but most of the buildings have disappeared. It stayed the seat of the counts of Burghausen until 1163. In that year Heinrich the Lion, the famous opponent of the German Emperor Friedrich Barbarossa, took possession of the castle and the Earldom until 1180.

Until 1918 the Bavarian Dukes of Wittelsbach ruled Bavaria and extended the castle further through the centuries. Duke Heinrich XIII built the main castle (foundation wall, cellars, chapel) in 1255, and much of it stands still today. The most important building periods however were under the rule of the last three Dukes (Heinrich, Ludwig and Georg) of Lower Bavaria. They expanded and reinforced the castle to its present appearance under the impression of the Turk danger (1480 - 1490).

After the Landshuter succession wars (1503 - 1505) the castle lost its residential status but still had great military importance and was fortified again in the 17th century because of the advancing Swedes in the Thirty Year's War. In the 18th century the castle underwent massive conversions and, as result of the succession wars in the first half of the 18th century and the loss of parts of the country to Austria, Burghausen became a border town.

Salt played an important role in the construction and evolution of Burghausen Castle. Burghausen grew and became important and rich due to the salt trade during the Middle Ages. Since all the salt from Salzburg, Hallein and the Alps had to travel north on the Salzach River by Burghausen to get to the rest of Europe, Burghausen charged a toll whether the salt travelled by water or land. However in 1594 the government took over the regulation of all salt trade and Burghausen lost its main source of income.

Because of losing its main source of income and with the loss of the land on the other side of the Salzach to Austria in 1779, Burghausen had to struggle to stay a town during the 1600s - 1800s. At that time the decay of Castle Burghausen began. During the war against the Austro-Hungarian Empire, Napoleon stayed at Burghausen in 1809 and declared the castle as obsolete for use as a fortress.

In 1896 began a thorough renovation of the main castle and since 1960 there are current renovation measures in progress for the whole castle.

Glücksburg

Glücksburg is in Schleswig-Holstein, a German state, just below the border with Denmark. The castle was built in a lake by Nikel Karies, a master builder from nearby Flensburg, between 1583 and 1587 for Duke Johann the Younger of Schleswig-Holstein-Sonderburg. It was considered really modern architecture at the time with its French style and luxurious living quarters and is still thought of as one of the finest Renaissance castles in Germany.

The castle was the home of the Dukes of Schleswig-Holstein-Sonderburg until 1848 when it was devastated by the Danes during the Schleswig-Holstein uprising against Danish rule. It was refitted by King Friedrich VII of Denmark who chose it as his summer residence. Between 1853 and 1863 the Prussian army used it and in 1864 it was used as a head-quarters during the German/Danish war. King Christian IX of Denmark was the first King to live there full-time. He has been called the father-in-law of Europe, as four of his children married into the Royal houses of Sweden, England and Russia. A son and grandson became kings of Greece and Norway respectively. In more recent times Albert Speer was interrogated at the castle after the 2nd World War.

The lake was man-made some time prior to the 16th century for fishing and the castle is built on a 2.5 metre granite base sunk into the lake. It is almost symmetrical, with four corner towers and sides made up of 3 tall

house-like buildings. Until the 19th century, the towers were open with crenellated tops; the slate roofs were added during the rebuilding. It is surrounded on three sides by water, with a causeway connecting it to the shore. The chapel is one of the earliest Protestant churches in Schleswig-Holstein and, unusually, has the pulpit over the altar. Above the entrance gate is a tablet with the Duke's motto inscribed on it - Gott gebe Glück mit Frieden (God grant happiness with peace).

Heidelberg Castle

Heidelberg Castle, which is also known as the Red Walled Castle, is built on a 195m (640 feet) high hill called Jettenbühl which overlooks the eastern side of the city in south west Germany. It has beautiful views down into the Altstadt and along the Neckar River. Although now mostly in ruins, it is still possible to see the grandeur of the original buildings, home for five centuries of the Palatine Electors. They were powerful princes who ruled this area of Germany during the period of the Holy Roman Empire. The castle was built between the 14th and 17th centuries, each Elector adding buildings and fortifications so there is no common building style. The west and south mainly consists of plain Gothic structures and the north and east has massive walls from the Renaissance palace decorated with sculptured statues of the Electors. Most of the structure was built of red sandstone which gave it its nickname.

The first castle was built by the Romans in AD40 and occupied by the 24th Roman and 2nd Cyrenaican Cohorts. It was over-run by the Alemans in 260. There are no records of the building after that until the early 15th century.

The Elector Ruprecht III started the building with an unpretentious royal residence and inner courtyard for his own use. Fountain Hall, another royal residence, was built next to this first building by Elector Philipp at the end of the same century. Legend has it that the four granite columns still standing in the courtyard were brought by him from a ruined castle of Charlemagne's. In the 16th and 17th centuries the palace was enlarged and fortified with barracks, a library, gatetower, thick tower, bell tower, the west wall, ramparts and a prison.

The main building on the west side, a theatre which saw the first Shakespeare performances in Germany, was called the English Building and was constructed a few years later by Friedrich V in honor of his wife who was from England. He also created the world-famous palace gardens. His buildings were among the most original built in Germany at that time, but to have room for the new buildings & garden he reduced the fortifications and had the defensive ditches filled in. The court was one of the most sumptuous in Germany although he was known as the Winter King as he only reigned for one winter. He lost a battle near Prague and, with it, the electorship which passed to Duke Maximilian of Bavaria. This was the beginning of the Thirty Years' War.

In 1622 the castle (as well as the gardens and city) were destroyed by General Tilly after two months' siege. The famous Bibliotheca Palatina (3,500 manuscripts and 5,000 prints) was transported over the Alps and presented to the Pope by Maximilian as plunder. In 1649 Elector Karl-Ludwig (Friedrich's son) could at last return to the castle and he started to rebuild it.

Hardly had it been finished, when Louis XIV laid claim to the castle. The claim was rejected and the War of Succession began. In 1689 the castle was captured and plundered by the French and in 1693 it was almost totally destroyed by them. Elector Karl Theodor started to restore the castle on the old Gothic layout but in a Baroque style so that he could live in it. He built the Old Bridge and Karl's Gate and his initials (CT) are inscribed on a giant vat called the Heidelberg Tun which can still be seen in the cellars. The wine barrel, which holds 58,124 gallons (220,017 litres), was made in 1751 from 130 oak tree trunks and is 8.5m across and 7m high with a dance floor on top. Almost restored once again, the castle caught fire after a lightning strike in 1764 and almost burned to the ground.

During the next few decades, stones from the ruins were used to build new houses in Heidelberg but this was stopped in 1800 by Count Charles de Gramberg who wanted to preserve what was still left.

In 1848 a German National Assembly was convened at the castle and in 1849, during the Palatinate-Baden rebellion, a revolutionary army was stationed there until they were defeated by the Prussians.

The buildings were partly restored in 1900 and since then the state of Baden-Württemberg has spent about DM40 million on the upkeep of the remains. In 1934 the King's Hall was built in a Gothic style and is now used

for banquets, weddings, concerts and balls. In summer the courtyard is used for theatrical and operatic performances.

Now it's largely in ruins but still has examples of medieval, Renaissance and baroque German architecture. One wing houses a pharmaceutical museum and there are often firework displays when all the windows are lit up with red flares to recreate the burning of the castle.

Burg Hohenzollern

The Hohenzollern dynasty, from which German kings and emperors arose, originated as a family of counts in Swabia in the 11th or 12th century. They ruled Prussia and eventually united and ruled Germany until the end of World War I. Their strong, rigidly disciplined armies gave Prussia a reputation for military excellence. The Hohenzollerns were named for their ancestral castle, Zollern (later Hohenzollern). The castle Hohenzollern is situated near the city of Hechingen at an altitude of 855m on a high, conical hill (called the "Zollern") in the Swabian Alb region of Baden-Württemberg, a state in Germany.

In 1227 the Hohenzollern count Conrad III was made burgrave of Nuremberg by Friedrich II, Holy Roman Emperor, and the Hohenzollerns of Nuremberg formed a new branch of the family, called the Franconian; the original line remained in Swabia. The Hohenzollern-Hechingen line of the Swabian branch became extinct in 1869. The Hohenzollern family was first mentioned documentarily in 1061, the family-castle (Castro Zolre) in 1267, although the oldest castle must have been built in the first half of the 11th century. The appearance, size and structure of this first castle are unknown, but according to a Strasbourg chronicle it was the "crown of all castles in Swabia" and "the most solid residence in the German realm".

Described as the strongest castle in Swabia, it nevertheless was conquered and completely destroyed in 1423 after a 10 month siege caused by a family dispute through a union of 18 Swabian imperial cities. The king of that time, Sigmund, forbade the castle ever to be reconstructed. His successor, Emperor Friedrich III, however, annulled this interdiction thirty years later.

Count Jos Niklas of Zollern began to build the second considerably larger castle in 1454 and it was finished by his son, Eitel Friedrich II around 1500.

The Hohenzollern counts had expensive tastes and caused their subjects much need and poverty. The bitterness finally culminated in a series of revolts and rebellions starting at the end of the 16th century that were suppressed with military force. Nevertheless the unrest continued after the Thirty Years' war.

During the Thirty Years' War (1618 - 1648) the castle was extended into a fortification by the construction of bastions and thus was considered to be impregnable. Despite that, the castle changed hands several times and armies from Baden-Württemberg and Sweden managed to occupy the castle in 1634 after a 9 months' siege by starving the garrison. Although they did not destroy the castle, none of the subsequent owners felt responsible for preserving the buildings, so it fell into ruins. This was also due to the fact that it lost its military importance after 1744.

Crown Prince Friedrich Wilhelm of Prussia, later King Friedrich Wilhelm IV, from the Nuremberg branch of the family, decided in 1819 that he would rebuild the old Hohenzollern seat. The new Hohenzollern castle was built in romantic Neo-Gothic style after 1850. The chapel of St Michael built in the 15th century is the only remaining building from the old castle. The newly built castle consists of two parts: the palace, with its many towers, and the fortifications.

After World War II, Prince Louis Ferdinand of Prussia started to furnish the castle with exquisite pieces of art from the 17th to 19th centuries showing the history of Prussia and of the Hohenzollern family. The castle still is private property belonging to the Hohenzollern (Prussian) family. Until 1991, the protestant chapel of Christ the Lord housed the coffins of King Friedrich Wilhelm I (1688-1740) and King Friedrich II (the Great) (1712-1786) who originally had been buried in the Garrison church of Potsdam. In 1991 the coffins were returned to Potsdam. The Royal Prussian Crown is the central piece of the treasury of the castle.

The castle was almost destroyed a third time. During an earthquake on 3rd September 1978 it suffered major damage, with the repairs costing about ten million German D-Marks.

Lichtenstein Castle

Lichtenstein castle has been a very popular castle because of its fairytale appearance, but in its original shape it was rather plain, though fortified. There is a throat ditch separating the peak on which it was built from the rest of the hill top. Its primary purpose was to provide a haven to the owners during times of turmoil. The beautiful tower was added only about a hundred years ago. The castle was turned into a hunting lodge in 1802 for its royal owners, the dukes of Wurttemberg. The castle has been successfully defeated at least twice in its early history despite the difficult terrain that had to be overcome by its adversaries. The lower rooms of the castle were carved directly into the rock formation that supports it.

Neuenburg Castle

One of the real gems to emerge recently is Neuenburg above the town of Freyburg in Saxony-Anhalt. I had visited this castle several years ago and it was just then beginning the long and intricate task of restoration. The results today, though not totally restored, is a pearl of white crowning the high elevation above town, as it has since the late 11th century when first built. Fat Wilhelm, the tower above, as it has been lovingly dubbed, survives from about 1200, and marks the approach to castle proper. Schloss Neuenburg has a commanding view over the Unstrut river, the river that witnessed the defeat of the Magyars by Henry I in 933. Though prior to the appearance of this castle, it was Henry's policy of building numerous castles in this area that led to his successful defense against the invading Hungarians. The castle was built beginning in about 1062 by landgrave Ludwig the Leaper to defend his territories. It continued to expand and the fortifications strengthened under Ludwig's descendants for almost 200 years to become the strongest in Saxony-Anhalt.

Nuremberg

Nuremberg was founded in the year 1040, primarily as a castle by Emperor Heinrich III and used to secure and expand the surrounding imperial estates. As it was the custom for Teutonic (Germanic) people in medieval Europe to set up a castle around which a town would develop, so a city quickly followed. "*Nouremberg*" was first mentioned in documents in 1050 and, after 1070, the grave of the miracle-working Sebaldus led a stream of visitors to Nuremberg, which then became an important trade center.

In 1332 Nuremberg was declared an imperial city (Kaiserstadt) or city state by King Ludwig of Bavaria; it remained an imperial free city, with its local government answering only to the King, until 1806 when it was incorporated into the Kingdom of Bavaria, now the German state of Bavaria. Nuremberg was the place where the imperial Reichstag (Parliament) met until 1543.

From 1424 to 1796 Nuremberg was one of the three so called "Kaiserstädte" (Emperor cities). Every new king was elected in Frankfurt and crowned in Aachen. These cities were called "Kaiserstädte" (Emperor cities), but the Kaiser himself was proclaimed in Rome by the pope. In the Emperor cities only the king was crowned. Nuremberg was the third Emperor city, the repository of the so called "Reichskleinodien", a collection of several holy things, which were very important for ceremonies in the German Empire. From 1485 to 1796 the Imperial crown jewels were kept in the Church of the Holy Ghost in the castle. In 1938 they were returned to Nuremberg and 1945 returned to the "Hofburg" in Vienna, where they are still today. The only part of the treasure that is still in Nuremberg is the empty shrine in which the crown jewels were kept.

Nuremberg was also the unofficial capital of the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation which began when the Pope of the Roman Catholic Church crowned the first Emperor on Christmas Day in the year 800 AD. The first Holy Roman Emperor was from the Teutonic tribe called the Franks; to most of the world, he is known as Charlemagne or Charles the Great, but he has always been known as Karl der Grosse to the Germans. He was chosen as the Emperor by the Pope because he was Roman Catholic at a time when there were several other Christian sects in Europe. The original city of Nuremberg was established inside a defensive stone wall guarded by 46 fortified towers, surrounded by a moat filled with water and then another outside wall. There were five main gates into the city, four of which are still standing, including the Königstor (Kings's Gate).

Burggrafenveste and Kaiserburg

The Burggrafenveste was leased, first of all, to the burgraves as fiefs but it soon became hereditary however

and withdrew from the Emperor's sphere of influence more and more. For the protection of his interests, the newly-elected Emperor Konrad III allowed a second castle to be constructed as an extension to the old Burggrafenveste on the western part of the castle rock, called the Kaiserburg (Emperor's castle). While German emperors never had an actual capital or home base as such but moved around the country, Nuremberg came as close to one as possible since the Emperor and his suite were frequently there. It is one of the very few castles to have had the official privilege of housing the imperial regalia and bear the symbol of the empire on its walls. The government of Nuremberg had to maintain the castle, however they had the right to inhabit it during the absence of the Emperor.

After Kaiser Konrad III built the original Kaiserburg, it was reshaped later many times and greatly expanded by the next emperor, Friedrich *Barbarossa* (Friedrich I, 1152 - 1190). The sandstone-building with its double chapel (Doppelkapelle) from the 12th century is the most important monument in the castle and was built by Friedrich *Barbarossa* in the second building phase. The chapel has a bright upstairs room and a dark downstairs room connected by an open space in the center. The upper room was for the Kaiser and members of the royal family while the lower room was for the common people. This arrangement is a good example of the hierarchical structure of the Teutonic peoples. The concept of a fortified castle, designed to protect the King from his people, was a Teutonic invention; during the same period in history, the Irish and Scottish Kings lived among their people and did not have castles for protection until this idea was introduced by the Teutonic Normans.

During the reign of Emperor Friedrich III in the 15th century (1440 - 1493) the old Staufer Palas and the ladies' apartments were replaced by new late-gothic buildings. Also the Knights' Hall and the powerful Simwellturm (round tower) come from this time. The Emperor stables (Kaiserstallung) were constructed in 1495. This grain storage building served for keeping the horses, when the emperor visited Nuremberg and the Reichstag (parliament) met. Emperor Charles V had a loaf of bread baked from grain in storage there for over 180 years. Today it serves as a youth hostel.

A framework wellhouse (Brunnenhaus) encloses the Deep Well (Tiefer Brunnen). This well was vital during sieges and in the 12th century had already been dug 50 meters deep into the sandstone rock to protect the drinking-water supply. Today it still holds up to 3m of water. The wellhouse is situated in the inner ward of the Emperor castle.

The Hohenzollern family, a family of European rulers, were counts of the Burggrafenveste from 1192. By using their court- and sovereign-rights, they were able to extend their sphere of influence around Nuremberg in the 13th century. This way the power of the emperor in Nuremberg weakened, although the sovereignty over the Emperor Castle remained in the hands of the Emperor. The building of a watchtower in front of the Burggrafenveste led to a war that ended with an occupation of the Burggrafenveste. In 1420 the Burggrafenveste was destroyed by a fire assault. From the Burggrafenveste only the keep, the so-called pentagon tower (Fünfeckturm), stands today and is the oldest building in the city.

By 1427, the Hohenzollerns moved their main residence from Nuremberg to the "Mark Brandenburg" and the ruin of the Burggrafenveste was sold by Count Friedrich I to the city of Nuremberg. This is where the Emperor Stables were build.

Between 1495 and 1525, a period of prosperity, political power and the atmosphere of intellectual and artistical advance made Nuremberg one of Europe's leading metropolis. The Reformation in 1525 marked an important point in Nuremberg's history. A dispute between the catholic "Kaiserhaus" and the now reformed city of Nuremberg erupted.

During the Thirty Year's War two military commanders, Wallenstein and the Swedish Gustav Adolf fought in 1632 one of the bloodiest battles at Nuremberg. The war left Nuremberg highly in debt and with a decimated population. In the 18th century the pressure of high taxes and the many customs barriers of the surrounding territories paralysed the economic development and, additionally, Prussia and Bavaria occupied rural areas of the city. After 1796 French troops occupied Nuremberg several times. In 1806 Nuremberg was annexed by the kingdom of Bavaria. Nuremberg was deprived of all its political powers and became a meaningless city.

The increasing interest in the romanticism of German castles led, in the year 1834, firstly to repair and then reconstruction of the decaying castle by Karl Alexander Heideloff. A thorough restoration through the Bavarian Castle Administration by Rudolf Esterer started in 1934. In 1933 Nuremberg became the city of the so called "Reichsparteitage", meetings that were held by the Nazi-regime under Adolf Hitler with the intention of reviving the Imperial days but in a modern form.

Thirty-eight air attacks on Nuremberg in the Second World War destroyed 90% of the historical buildings

and 40% of the whole city and made Nuremberg one of the most badly damaged cities in Germany.

The castle was heavily damaged, with only the chapel, parts of the Palas as well as the most important towers surviving. It was rebuilt to the previous plans and houses today a branch of the German National Museum. By 1950 most of the war damage to the castle was removed.

Thurant Castle

Thurant reigns over vineyards on the south side of the Mosel river. I have only seen it from this angle and distance so can not give you a personal account of the castle and its present condition or the amenities available. It was built by royalty and is considered a double castle with twin towers. Built by the son of King Henry the Lion to defend his brother king Otto IV.

Burg Trifels

The Emperor's castle of Trifels is the most formal of the forts from the Staufer period and is situated on the highest of three mountains - all with castles - above the small town of Annweiler (this is near Landau in the Palatinate). The mountain, Sonnenberg, (sun mountain) is 494m above sea level and 310m above Annweiler and the castle is built on a rock which has two clefts, and therefore looks like three rocks, hence the name: Trifels. The mountain is 145 m long, 40 m broad and 50 m high. Sonnenberg had already been used as a site by the Celts and the Romans for defense works. Trifels was built upon the remains of a wooden castle from the 10th century. It was documentarily named for the first time in the year 1081, when the Knight Diemar von Trifels presented the castle to the king before becoming a monk. In the 12th and 13th centuries, the castle was in the possession of the Salic and Staufer emperors.

In the Middle Ages the castle had two functions. From 1125 to 1298 it was the temporary depository of the Imperial crown jewels of the Holy Roman Empire. In 1125 Emperor Heinrich V had determined that the empire insignia should go to Trifels after his death. The treasury consisted of the Emperor's crown, Imperial orb, two empire swords, emperor's coat and other items, together with a piece of the holy cross and a nail with which Jesus was nailed to the cross.

The blossoming of the castle began in the 12th century with the accession of the Staufer to power. In the high Middle Ages, the imperial castle of Trifels was regarded as a cornerstone of imperial power - "he who holds the Trifels, holds the empire."

During this time Trifels castle protected the country around Annweiler and of course the city of Annweiler itself (Annweiler received their first city rights at this time from Friedrich II). Particularly under the Emperors of the Staufer period it was one of the most important castles of the Holy Roman Empire. Friedrich I (Friedrich Barbarossa) was there in 1155, 1184 and 1186. In the year of 1194 the Staufer Emperor Heinrich VI (son of Barbarossa) started his second campaign against the Normans in Sicily from Trifels and conquered the Norman Empire, transferring the Norman Royal Treasure to Trifels together with some Sicilian noblemen who were held as hostages. Friedrich II enlarged the castle.

Trifels castle also served as a prison and became famous through its important prisoners. Archbishop Adalbert from Mainz was imprisoned there in 1113 and also the English king Richard the Lionheart in 1193 and possibly also in 1194 as a prisoner of Emperor Heinrich VI. After the payment of a high ransom and after Heinrich VI extracted the fief oath from him, Richard was set free. The end of the house of Staufer signalled the start of the downfall of Trifels castle.

Ludwig the Bavarian pawned the castle in 1330 to the Count Palatines Rudolf II and Ruprecht I and finally the castle came into the possession of the Dukes of Pfalz-Zweibruecken through succession in 1410.

Trifels castle survived the farmer revolts (1524 –1526), caused by the Reformation on the one hand and increasing legal, political and social pressure on the other hand, undamaged although the farmers were allowed into Trifels.

On 28th March 1602 the castle was struck by lightning. The Palas and some adjacent buildings were heavily damaged by the ensuing fire. In the Thirty Year's War (1618 – 1648) Trifels castle served as a haven for the surrounding villages. In 1635 a plague epidemic broke out and after this date Trifels castle remained uninhabited and was not built up anymore.

In the 17th and 18th century Trifels was used as a quarry by the surrounding villages. During this time the castle suffered its greatest destruction. In 1866 the Trifels Association was founded and prevented any further theft of stone.

In the Third Reich, Trifels Castle was designated as an “empire monument” to new dignity (questionable) and was reconstructed from 1938 – 1966 mainly by Professor Rudolf Esterer, especially the Palas. The reconstruction occurred, however, not to original plans but according to models of castles of Friedrich II in Italy.

The contemporary castle has little in common with the original buildings because of former structural freedoms. The massive castle keep is the original building from the early 13th century as is the gate-tower, with the chapel housed in its upper storey. The adjoining great hall was built completely new from 1938 on in the style of the 13th century. The well tower, standing outside the ring wall and linked to the castle by a bridge, is also an original medieval structure. The chapel served as the depository for the imperial crown jewels. Today the empire insignias are once again in the castle, but as copies as the originals have been in Vienna since the year 1800.

Castles of Hungary

Miskolc Diosgyor

Rising high above the valley floor, the four massive towers of Miskolc Diosgyor have stood as a landmark and symbol of power for nearly seven centuries. Located in Northeast Hungary, the castle is one of the most prominent medieval structures in the country today. It is situated atop a rocky knoll in the valley at the foot of Avas Hill, between the brooks Szinva and Pece which flow into the river Sajó. Evidence of human settlement in the valley dates back thousands of years to the Stone Age.

The first written record of the settlement was recorded in the 12th Century in the chronicles of Anonymus, who lived and wrote in the court of King Bela III of Hungary. Medieval Miskolc Diosgyor consisted of a castle (probably a motte and bailey), monastery and a peasant village. The settlement was located at the meeting point between the wine producing Hungarian Plain and the iron producing hill country. It controlled the vital trade routes between central and upper Hungary and into Poland. The castle belonged to the Bors family until the Tartar (or Mongol) invasion of 1241-42, when the entire settlement was destroyed and burned.

In 1271 a fortified stone keep was built on the previous site as the private residence of Ban Ernye, a man of local prominence. The new castle was given to Dozsa Debreczeni, the Prince of Transylvania as a royal donation in 1319. The castle then passed to the crown in 1340 and over the next several years it underwent major renovations.

Four massive towers were added to the keep to protect the outer ring of the castle. A deep and wide moat was constructed along the castle’s perimeter. Other defenses included a thick curtain wall and four strong gatehouses. King Louis the Great of Hungary loved the place so much that in 1364 he attached a large estate to Diosgyor and transformed it into a royal castle. It then joined Buda, Visegrad and Zolyom to become one of the four official residences of the king.

This transformation greatly increased the castle’s historical significance. As a result of becoming a royal residence, the king’s court spent several months out of the year at Miskolc Diosgyor. One of the most prominent events that occurred at the castle was the ratification of the Peace of Turin in 1381, which ended a long bloody war between Venice and Genoa and shaped the future of trade in the Mediterranean. Diosgyor has direct ties to the Hungarian, Polish, Bohemian and German thrones as well as the Holy Roman Empire. The Hungarian Crown Jewels at some point would have been at Miskolc Diosgyor with the king. They consist of the crown, orb, scepter, state sword and coronation robe. The Hungarian Crown Jewels are the oldest collection of crown jewels in Europe.

When the first Hungarian king, Stephen I (who was later sainted) was crowned, the fate of the Hungarian nation was forever tied to Christian Europe. Hungary became the “Shield of Christianity” against the Muslims. The crown was the mightiest symbol of power and played a significant role in Hungarian history. According to terms of being a king, the validity of the coronation depended on whether the sainted crown had covered the king’s head or not. The nation refused to accept the king as monarch if his coronation was not done with the crown of St Stephen. The crown has such importance that even if the king was of foreign origin, the people

accepted and respected him if the Hungarian coronation rules were applied. The crown of St Stephen is still used today on the Hungarian coat of Arms.

King Sigismund, King of Hungary, Bohemia and Holy Roman Emperor, gave Miskolc Diosgyor to his queen as a present. It subsequently became the endowment of the Hungarian Queens for years to come. It was the wedding present and the country residence of six queens between 1424 and 1526. The last queen to live at the castle was Maria Habsburg of Austria who was wife of Louis II, King of Hungary and Bohemia. The marriage of Louis and Maria drew the kingdom closer to the Habsburgs of Austria and the Ottomans saw this as a threat. They decided to use force to break this alliance and prepared for war.

In the summer of 1526, the Ottoman invasion of Hungary began. The decisive battle of the war occurred on August 29 1526 along the banks of the Danube at Mohacs where an out-numbered Hungarian force led by King Louis II awaited the Turkish invaders. The battle only lasted for two hours as the forces of Suleiman overran the Hungarian defenders. Among the 30,000+ Hungarian and Ottoman casualties was King Louis II who was drowned when thrown from his horse crossing a river fleeing the battle.

After the defeat at Mohacs, the kingdom disintegrated. Hungary was divided between the advancing Turks and the Austrians who annexed the western part of the country. The first wave of Turks reached Miskolc Diosgyor in 1544. The castle had been abandoned and did not put up a fight. Most of the town was burned, the livestock stolen and every able-bodied man carried away. For the next 150 years the Ottomans oppressively occupied Miskolc Diosgyor.

Before chasing the Turks out of the country, Kuruc troops (Hungarian Insurrectionists) took possession of the castle in 1674. Losing its strategic significance, the castle was partially blown up by Austrian troops in 1678. It was another eight years until the Austrians finally drove the Turks completely out of Hungary (1686). For a brief time in 1702, the castle was transformed into a treasury and mint. It was in 1703 that Prince Rakoczi led an uprising against the Austrian Habsburgs for Hungarian independence. The prince used Miskolc Diosgyor as his headquarters during the rebellion. As a result, on September 25th 1706, the town was sacked and burned by imperial forces. The castle was never re-occupied and decayed into ruin over the next 250 years.

Today, part of Miskolc Diosgyor has been rebuilt and serves as a cultural and historic symbol of Hungary. The castle houses a museum, which features the largest historical wax-works in central Europe. Scenes depicted range from medieval life to the signing of the Peace of Turin. Other exhibits include a gallery of weapons and armor from the 14th – 16th centuries, a coin or minting press and a 16th century parade cannon. The castle is also host to many festivals featuring art, song and dance. In fact, the central courtyard of the keep has been transformed into a theater. You may even see scenes reminiscent of William Tell as an international archery competition is held yearly in the castle grounds with competitors dressing and using period weapons.

Castles of Israel

Beaufort Castle

Of the dozen-odd Crusader castles in Lebanon none can compare in size, scenic grandeur, or close connection with Lebanese history down to modern times, with isolated Beaufort, perched on its cliff a thousand feet above the rushing Litani river. It controls the main route from southern Bejaa to Damascus.

Interestingly, there is no direct evidence on the building of Beaufort. William of Tyre claimed that it was indeed constructed by Crusader forces, yet some scholars suggest that it is older. One line of thought is that work first commenced in fortifying the site during the late-Roman or Byzantine period, restored and enlarged by the Arabs some years later. What is known is that the Crusaders did restructure and refortify the site in the early to mid 12th century.

In characteristic fashion of mountain Crusader castles, the site is protected on the east by a sheer precipice, which falls to the river some 300 metres below. On the west side the ground slopes more gently to the village of Arnun (the castle is known as Shquif Arnun to Arab travellers, Shquif being a Syrian term for “high rock”) and it was here that the original builders concentrated their defenses. To the north, a vast rock-cut basin protects the castle. The fortress lies on two main levels. A lower court lay to the east overlooking the river valley,

however nothing of this earliest phase in construction exists today. There are areas of 12th century Frankish work that do remain in the upper bailey, the main feature being a donjon or keep, placed in the middle of the western wall (the curtain wall) where the castle was most vulnerable. A considerable length of the western wall remains today, protected at the foot by a small glacis of dressed stone. Also evident today is the entrance from the lower bailey to the inner fortification. The northern and southern ends of the castle are badly damaged due to siege engines in the 1190 campaign and were rebuilt by the Muslims.

In 1138 King Fulk of Anjou captured the fortified site known as Qal' at Al-Shaqif from the rulers of Damascus, which the Franks later called Beaufort. It was handed to the Crusader rulers of Sidon and Beaufort became arguably the most important castle in South Lebanon, seeing a turbulent history and changing hands many times during the process. It was the scene of Reynaud of Sidon's resistance to Saladin, Reynaud surviving the massacre of the Crusader army at Hattin in 1187. Arabian records tell us that Saladin encamped at Marjayun, near Beaufort, in 1189. With Saladin preparing to siege the castle, Reynaud met with him, became friendly with the Muslim leader and even suggested that he was a Muslim sympathiser. He negotiated a three-month grace period, during which he repaired damage to the castle walls and brought in more supplies. Saladin lost patience with Reynaud when he duly approached Beaufort again, expecting Reynaud to leave the castle and travel to Damascus with his family. Reynaud wished for more time, his family trapped in Tyre by the crusading army. He did order his men to surrender; yet they refused, the garrison only finally capitulating in April 1190.

The castle passed into Muslim hands in 1190, back into Frankish hands in 1240 and then again into Muslim hands in 1268. At each stage the defenses and accommodation were altered so it is not easy to reconstruct the 12th century work.

Belvoir Castle - 'Star of the Jordan'

The Hospitaller castle of Belvoir ("Fair View" in French), a few miles south of Lake Tiberias (Sea of Galilee), is the first datable true concentric castle, built shortly after 1168. Atop a basalt plateau, twelfth century Muslim historians refer to it as a "nest of eagles and the dwelling place of the moon." In Hebrew it is known as Kochav Hayarden – Star of the Jordan – which preserves the name of Kochav, the Jewish village which existed nearby during the Roman and Byzantine periods. The Muslims called it Kaukab Al-Hawa – Star of the Winds. It remains one of the most complete Crusader castles in Israel.

The first structure here overlooking Jordan valley was modest; it was part of the feudal estate of a French nobleman who lived in Tiberias, a small fortified agricultural settlement. He sold it to the Order of the Hospitallers in 1168; the Hospitallers understood the strategic importance of the site early on. Due to the possibilities of protecting and controlling trade routes in the area, in keeping with so many of the Crusader castles under the Religious Orders, they erected a huge fortress with impenetrable defenses. It took in the region of 5 years to complete and hundreds of workers were involved in the construction. From Belvoir, the garrison within could closely watch the bridge over the Jordan, which served as the eastern entryway from Gilead into their Kingdom, as well as the roads in the valley leading to Galilee.

In terms of architecture, Belvoir was about as complete a fortress as you could imagine. Whilst not the largest of castles, the outer walls covering 110 x 110 metres, it was built in such a way that it could cover attacks from all sides. It is this feature above all else that makes concentric design so effective. An external tower surrounded by a low wall (a barbican) was built on the eastern side, which controlled the dead space on the slope of the hill, both visually and with firepower. The main entrance to the fortress was via an outer gateway from the south-eastern corner. From here, one proceeded up a paved ramp to the top of the external tower, turned back and continued to the inner gate of the fortress. A secondary entrance to the fortress was from the west, via a bridge suspended over the man-made moat, 14 metres deep and 20 metres wide, which could be raised or destroyed when the fortress came under attack. The moat was dry, and prevented siege engines from coming close to the fortifications.

Within the inner walls lies the inner fortress (the Keep or Donjon). Another square design, measuring approximately 50 x 50 metres, this could also sustain a siege should the outer walls fail. Well-protected cisterns allowed a plentiful supply of rainwater for those within the walls in times of siege. Standing two storeys high, there was an open courtyard at the centre, as well as a chapel within the walls themselves. The main entrance through the outer walls lies on the eastern side, but the entrance to the Keep lies on the Western edge, forcing

attackers to battle through heavy fire through the castle.

The security of the Crusader Kingdom of Jerusalem was dependent on a network of fortifications, mainly along its eastern border, themselves vulnerable to Muslim attack. One day in 1187 saw such an attack develop. Following the crushing defeat of the Crusaders at Hattin, 12,000 Muslim soldiers led by Saladin marched across the Yarmuk River (which joins the Jordan River south of Galilee), heading into the hills and approaching Belvoir. The network of fortifications that the Crusaders so depended on was already in collapse; Sidon, Beirut, Acco, Jaffa, Nazareth and Jerusalem were all captured or surrendered. The Crusaders retained control only over Tyre, Safed, and Belvoir. And, after Safed fell, the isolated fortress of Belvoir became the only spot in Israel where a Christian banner waved.

Saladin's forces attacked, attempting to undermine the barbican and walls with tunnels. Whilst some of the walls did collapse, the strength within the masonry held, due to a clever ploy when the stonework was laid. The joints were filled with iron or lead, linking the basalt stones together and increasing the structural strength of the walls as a result. Saladin's losses were heavy, and the siege went on for an incredible year and a half. Even after this time, the fortress was never taken or overrun. Belvoir did fall, though only by surrender. The knights were granted free passage to Tyre and Saladin ordered that the fortress gates were pulled down, for fear that the Crusaders might return. The Crusaders did return to the area in force a few years later under Richard the Lionheart, albeit briefly. But the Crusaders never recovered from the stunning blow of the Horns of Hattin and its aftermath. The knights of Belvoir had held out bravely as the lone outpost of a kingdom that was already a phantom.

Belvoir was dismantled in 1217, by Muslim rulers who feared the reclamation of the fortress. In 1240 it was ceded to the Crusaders by agreement, although lack of funds did not permit them to restore the castle and it returned to Muslim hands shortly afterwards.

Caesarea

Caesarea has a long and fascinating history and was a settler town, captured by the Frankish army under King Baldwin I in May 1101, its walls only enclosing one tenth of the old town's 6th century area. Under the crusaders it became the seat of a secular Lord and of an archbishop. The new occupants drove out the Muslim population but did little to alter the existing streets, fortifications, water supply and houses. The mosques were hastily turned into churches and it wasn't until the middle of the 12th century that the Great Mosque was demolished and replaced with a new Latin cathedral.

It was a relatively prosperous town, although not matching the scale of Acre or Tyre. The castle stood on the south side of the harbor, cut off from the town by a sea-filled moat, on a natural rock promontory. It has been identified as the site of Herod's palace following extensive archaeological excavations.

The city walls in the 12th century were essentially those built by the Muslims, fortified by numerous square towers. Many of the houses were Muslim and built in the oriental fashion, looking inwards on to a central court. Water was supplied from the Crocodile River, 9 miles to the north, along one of the Roman aqueducts. Outside the city walls, orchards to the north and east spread as far as the ever encroaching dunes permitted.

Saladin captured the town in 1187 after only a short siege, but it was retaken by Richard the Lion Heart in 1191. The Muslim inhabitants were once again exiled from the town.

Caesarea was founded by King Herod in the first century BC on the site of a Phoenician and Greek trade post. Named after Augustus Caesar, it became a walled city with the largest harbor on the eastern Mediterranean coast. It was conquered by the Arabs in 639 AD and its importance, as well as population, dwindled.

The end of the Crusader era came in 1265, when the Mamluks attacked the city. After another short siege, the crusader defenders gave up hope and evacuated the site. The Mamluks razed the fortifications to the ground, fearing another return of the crusaders.

Chastel Pelerin

Built in 1218, Chastel Pelerin was an imposing and extremely well defended stronghold that commanded the

coastal pass between Acre to the north and the deserts of Egypt further south. Mount Carmel brings the rocky spine of inland Palestine to within a short distance of the Mediterranean and the natural defensiveness of the site is echoed by a convenient isolated promontory, some 270 yards long and 160 wide, jutting into the sea. The site is in effect defended on three sides by the Mediterranean and it was here that a visiting lord of Flanders, Gautier d'Avesnes, gathered knights from the Templars and Teutonic Order as well as a substantial number of pilgrims and constructed the castle. With the Muslim forces opting to fortify nearby Mount Tabor, a real threat to all the Christian communities existed and the coastal road left very much exposed.

Pelerin's many defensive features include a ditch cut across the promontory, some 80 feet wide and 20 feet deep, and completed in approximately six weeks. Moreover, the sea at each end could be used to flood the ditch. Beyond, the first curtain wall rose 50 feet high and was 20 feet thick, stretching the whole length of the promontory. A huge inner wall housed two massive bastions and records indicate that a much earlier wall existed here, probably Phoenician, with the masonry being incorporated into the castle, masonry that dwarfs even the stonework found at Krak des Chevaliers. The frontal fire from this twin line of defenses was impressive and well calculated; with the towers and walls fully manned, the castle was exceptionally powerful. An attacking force would have faced a double line of fire and the great towers commanded a clear sight to beyond the plain that lay in front of them. In the dry climate of the Levant, a cloud of dust would have given those on watch within the castle an early indication of an approaching force from some miles away.

Also known as Atlit, Chastel Peregrinorum (whose name relates to the labors of the pilgrims who built it) was never taken by siege. After completion the castle was entrusted to the Templars who held it whilst it remained in Crusader hands and asserting itself as their most important base in the Kingdom of Jerusalem. Two years later, Sultan Malik al Mu'azzam launched an attack and brought forward several siege engines to aid the assault. They never reached their target, with one engine destroyed by the artillery of the defenders. The attack was a fiasco, largely due to Pelerin having a heavy garrison of its own. This is unlike the majority of Crusader castles, and in addition to this reinforcements were brought in from Acre and Cyprus. Months of fruitless labor and costly endeavor amounted to nothing and the Sultan abandoned the siege.

The Emperor Frederick II, when in Palestine, approved the strength of Pelerin, coveted the place and tried in 1229 to wrest it from the Templars. The monks within, no doubt aware of the Emperor's reputation, were perhaps forewarned. When Frederick entered the castle, they closed the gate behind him and held him a virtual prisoner until he renounced all pretensions to the stronghold.

During the decline of Frankish power, the Saracens razed the considerable town that had grown up outside the castle walls to the ground. The castle remained impervious to attack. Then came at last the fatal spring and summer of 1291. Tyre fell on May 19, and Acre on May 23. Beirut and the Chateau de Mer at Sidon capitulated in July. Eventually Pelerin remained the sole Christian territory in the Holy Land. With the loss of the Kingdom, the reason for such a bastion was gone. On August 14 the Templars evacuated the castle and embarked for Cyprus. It is fair to say that when the last Latin vessel drew anchor, it marked the true end of the Crusades. It was an inevitable end as the Franks had lost not only the strategic initiative, but also the morale.

Pelerin was only slightly damaged in the subsequent years and it wasn't until 1838 that Ibrahim Pasha used the castle as a quarry, removing much of the masonry to rebuild the walls of Acre. What remains to this day is still impressive, though not nearly as imposing as the stronghold that stood the test of time until almost 170 years ago.

Castles of Italy

Monteriggione

Monteriggione is slightly different from other castles as it is a medieval walled town. It is in Tuscany, Italy, about 10km north of the city of Siena and its "round enclosure" is referred to in Dante's Divine Comedy.

It was built between 1213 and 1219 on a natural low hill overlooking the Cassia Road and subsequently strengthened in 1260. Its position enabled it to control the valleys towards Florence, the traditional enemy of the Sienese, which was trying to expand its boundaries at the time. Although the hill is natural, it looks like an artificial motte. The walls are almost perfectly circular, using the hill's contours. The housing is well separated

from the walls by a “territory of respect” although when the fortifications were built the town was more densely populated so the separation band was much narrower. In the 14th century there were at least 150 families living there with a total of about 600 inhabitants.

The only major change over the years was at the beginning of the 16th century when the towers were lowered and earth banked up at the base of the walls because of the advent of cannons and guns. Legend has it that the villagers themselves destroyed the tops of the towers to prevent debris falling on their houses if they were attacked. The castle changed hands many times between Florence & Siena until 1554 when Giovanni Zeti of Florence sold it without a fight to the Marquis of Maragliano from the Medici family. Zeti is still referred to as “the traitor Zeti” by people from the oldest families still living there today.

Nowadays the walls are nearly intact and are about 570 metres long and 20 meters high with 14 towers and two gates. The Romea gate on the Siena side is in a tower and the St Giovanni gate on the Florence side in the curtain wall. There are also traces of a third gate. The tops of the towers have been rebuilt this century, but just as a façade to recreate the original view of the town from outside and the walls are floodlit at night. Inside is a well preserved medieval town. Just inside the walls are vegetable gardens belonging to the villagers. These were much used in medieval times during sieges when they grew potatoes and onions. They also had chickens and rabbits. Next are the houses and in the middle a small square and a Gothic Romanesque church dating from the end of the 14th century. The church has a belfry which, as well as calling villagers to their devotions three times a day, was rung to advise of attacks. There are now many wine shops selling the local Chianti wine and antique shops.

Castles of Jordan

Kerak

Kerak in Jordan is situated about 3,500 feet above sea-level on the King’s Highway, the ancient route for caravans travelling from Egypt to Syria. It towers over the surrounding plains on an isolated hilltop with magnificent views all around, particularly towards the Dead Sea 10 miles away.

The earliest evidence of habitation on the site is from the Iron Age in about 1200 BCE and it has been known by many names in its past including Kir Hareseth, Kir Heres and Kir of Moab. During the crusading period it was known as Crak des Moabites or Le Pierre du Desert and was the capital of Oultre Jourdain.

The castle was built in the 1130s for Baldwin I, king of Jerusalem, one of the great line of Crusader castles from the Egyptian border to Turkey. It had five strong square towers linked by a thick curtain wall and stood on top of a stone glacis with a large artificial dry moat on two sides which separated it from the town. The original access was from below through two man-made tunnels in the rock, although nowadays entrance is easier up a winding path. The only thing that could have made it less impregnable was the water supply. There are springs immediately outside the city, but for a siege huge cisterns were constructed.

Most of what can be seen now is from the Mamluke period of Sultan Baibars in the late 13th century, when a lot of the Crusader castle was rebuilt, shortly after which three towers collapsed in an earthquake. The ruined Crusader chapel is still there but the three-storey keep is Mamluke. The keep is at the southern end of the courtyard opposite high ground across the valley from where Saladin would have attacked the castle with siege engines. It passed down through the family until the death of Baldwin III. His heir was only 13 so a regent was appointed. The regent died and was replaced by his widow, Stephanie. Not long after, Reynaud de Chatillon, who had arrived in the Holy Land with the 2nd Crusade, heard about this powerful and wealthy woman and married her.

De Chatillon was a cruel man, known for such behavior as throwing his enemies off the battlements so his castle was a prime target of Saladin. He besieged it twice in 1183 and 1184 and there are several legends about these sieges. One is that Saladin stopped firing on the keep as it was occupied by his stepson and his new bride, Isabelle; another is that the defenders “sold” their wives and children in exchange for food. Baldwin IV relieved both sieges by marching with soldiers from Jerusalem. The castle finally was taken in 1188 after a year’s siege and Saladin was so impressed by the courage shown by the defenders that he freed them without asking for ransoms, except for Reynaud who was executed.

The Muslims were followed by the Mamlukes who, in their turn, were replaced by the Ottomans. The castle continued to be used as a home and administrative centre until 1840 when Ibrahim Pasha of Egypt took it, greatly damaging the defenses.

As with so many other castles, the government of its country (in this case Jordan) is trying to prevent any further decay and sympathetically restoring it where feasible.

Castles of Luxembourg

Vianden

Le Chateau de Vianden (or Vianden Castle) in Luxembourg is situated on a rocky spur overlooking the Our Valley in a spectacular situation. There has been a castle there since Roman times but the one that can now be seen has been restored to its 18th century glory.

Much archaeological work has taken place in the castle and traces of a 4th century Roman fortification have been found. There was a tower about 10.5m high at the southern end of the spur with two walls extending from it following the contours of the hill. The northern end of the rock was protected by a deep ditch cut in the rock. Despite much digging, nothing has been found of what was inside the walls. Towards the middle of the 5th century it is known that most of the castle was destroyed by fire.

During the early middle ages the Roman fortifications were extended behind a wooden pallisade. The castle protected the valley below from Norman invasions but was also used in an administrative capacity as the centre for tax collecting. From the 11th to the 13th century much building took place under the stewardship of the Counts of Vianden. A palace, a keep, a magnificent new chapel to replace one in the Roman tower, towers, a grand gateway and massive stone walls were all added. The courtyard below the top of the spur was enclosed by walls too.

In the middle of the 13th century, Count Henry I transformed the buildings into the gothic style with the addition of stepped gables and high gothic roofs. The castle was luxurious as befitted the powerful Counts of Vianden who wanted to show that they were at least the equals of the Counts of Luxembourg, their closest rivals. The town beneath the castle was the capital of Vianden county, an area the same size as present-day Luxembourg. It was fortified whilst being dominated and protected by the castle and was known for its artists and craftsmen.

This was the high point for the Castle. By the end of the 13th century, sovereignty had passed to the Counts of Luxembourg and its importance began to wane. In 1417 the last of the line died, and ownership passed to the House of Nassau (which in 1530 was joined to the principality of Orange). The castle was only of minor importance to them and was no longer lived in. By the beginning of the 15th century most of the grand buildings were being used for storage and the fortunes of the town similarly started to decline.

In 1794, the French, who were occupying Luxembourg, abolished the county of Vianden. Most of the former county was surrendered to Prussia at the Congress of Vienna in 1815 and the rest to William I, King of the Netherlands and Grand Duke of Luxembourg. He sold the castle to the highest bidder and so in August 1820 it was bought by a merchant from the town, Wenceslas Coster, who dismantled and sold much of the building materials particularly the wooden beams holding up the roofs and the lead and copper of the roofs themselves. William I tried to calm the inhabitants by buying back what was left but by that stage it wasn't much.

In 1977 it was bequeathed to the state as a pile of rubble and has been fully restored to its 18th century appearance. The restored halls have exhibitions of weapons and suits of armor, archaeological finds and pictures and once again the Chateau Vianden looks down on the medieval town at its foot.

Castles of the Netherlands

Muiderslot

The Muiderslot is located at the mouth of the river Vecht, some 15 kilometers southeast of Amsterdam, where it flows into what used to be the Zuiderzee. It's one of the better known castles in Holland and featured in many a television show set in the Middle Ages. The most famous of these must be Floris, tales about a Dutch

knight and his saracen friend Sindela.

The history of the Muiderslot (Castle Muiden, where “muiden” means rivermouth) begins with Count Floris V who built a stone castle at the mouth of the river back in 1280, when he gained command over an area that used to be part of the See of Utrecht. The River Vecht was the trade route to Utrecht, one of the most important tradetowns of that age. It’s a small wonder the castle was used to enforce a toll on the traders. It’s a relatively small castle, measuring only 32 by 35 metres with brick walls well over 1.5 metres thick. A large moat surrounds the castle.

Count Floris was captured whilst hunting by some of his lords who possibly intended to deliver him to his rival, the Prince-Bishop of Utrecht. He was killed when it seemed loyal troops might free him. Several days after his death the castle was razed to the ground by Willem van Mechelen, the Bishop-Prince of Utrecht.

A hundred years later, in 1370, the castle was rebuilt on the same spot according to the same plan, by Albrecht, Duke of Bavaria, who at that time was also the Count of Holland and Zeeland.

The next famous owner of the castle shows up in the 16th century, when P.C. Hooft (1581-1647), a famous author, poet and historian took over sheriff and bailiff duties for the area (Het Gooiland). For 39 years he spent his summers in the castle and invited friends, scholars, poets and painters such as Vondel, Huygens, Bredero and Maria Tesselschade, over for visits. This group became known as the Muiderkring. He also extended the garden and the (plum-) orchard, while at the same time an outer earthworks defense system was put into place.

At the end of the 18th century, the castle was first used as a prison, then abandoned and became derelict. Further neglect caused it to be offered for sale in 1825, with the purpose of it being demolished. Only intervention by King Willem I prevented this. Another 70 years went by until enough money was gathered to restore the castle in its former glory.

The Muiderslot is currently a national museum (Rijksmuseum). The insides of the castle, its rooms and kitchens, have been restored to look like they did in the 17th century and several of the rooms now house a nice collection of arms and armor. During summer falcons are kept in the castle and the tour offers some wonderful insights into medieval life and the origin of quite a few of our more popular sayings.

Castles of Russia

St. Petersburg

In the early 18th century, Russia was fighting Sweden and Tsar Peter the Great needed a fortress to guard his newly conquered lands along the Neva river. He chose the island of Enisaari (Hare’s Island) which the Russians called Zayachii Ostrov which was in a very important strategic position. The Peter & Paul Fortress was begun on 16th May (27th May in the modern calendar) and that day is celebrated as the official birthday of the city.

The fortress was built by soldiers and peasants in very poor conditions under the close scrutiny of Peter. Many died, but as the war was still continuing the construction was urgent. It originally had clay walls which were later rebuilt in stone. The war was already won before the fortress was finished so the city garrison was housed there and, in 1718, part of it was converted into a political prison, its first inmate being Peter’s son, Alexei who was tortured to death. Over the years many well known political rebels were imprisoned in the fortress including Dostoyevsky, Gorky, Trotsky and Lenin’s elder brother. It was known as the Russian Bastille and was a place to be feared until the Soviet era when, in 1924, it was turned into a museum. Nowadays the Mint is also housed there.

In the centre of the fortress is the Peter and Paul Cathedral where all the Tsars and Tsarinas from Peter the Great onwards are buried, their tombs around the nave and their coffins in the crypt below. On 17th July 1998 the last Tsar, Nicholas II, and his family were buried there on the 80th anniversary of their murder. It was the first stone church in the city and is still the tallest (and oldest) building there.

Although really unsuitable for a town because of recurring floods and swamps, people started to settle around the fortress. Amazingly, within nine years, St Petersburg became the capital of Russia. Other military establishments were set up although Peter himself lived in a small cabin until 1714 when Summer and Winter

Palaces were built for him a little way down the River Neva. The Winter Palace is probably the most famous landmark in the city and now houses the Hermitage Museum, one of the most famous art collections in the world. The palace is huge with 1,057 rooms and was mostly rebuilt in 1837 after a massive fire. The Menshikov Palace was built for the city's governor.

Tsars changed and, with them, the fortunes of the city fluctuated. Between the late 1720s and 1741 the capital moved back to Moscow but the city was irrepressible. More great buildings were constructed over the years such as the Smolny Cathedral and Royal residences such as Peterhof and the Yekaterinsky Palace at Tsarskoye Selo.

Catherine the Great was the first ruler to live in the Winter Palace. The city flourished with public libraries, academies and the Gostiny Dvor store being opened. She started the Hermitage art collection in 1764 when she bought 255 paintings from Berlin. It now contains about 2.7 million exhibits from the Ancient Egyptians to early last century including most of the "Old Masters," Impressionists and sculptures.

The other castle in the city is the Mikhailovsky Castle. Catherine's son, Paul, followed her but was deeply unpopular. He was terrified of being assassinated so built a fortified palace surrounded by deep ditches to hide in. Legend has it that a soldier guarding the castle had a vision of the Archangel Michael guarding it with him and when he was told of this, Paul named the castle after the angel. Despite his precautions, it didn't work as, five years later, he was assassinated in his bedroom in the castle by a group of officers inspired by his own son Alexander. Later it became an army engineers' school and was renamed the Engineer's Castle. Now it's a museum.

Castles of Spain

Almodovar del Rio

In Cordoba Province, southern Spain, was built by the Moors in 740. Captured by Ferdinand III of Castile in the 13th century after a four-year siege, the castle later fell into ruins. It was restored at the beginning of the 20th century.

Alhambra Palace

In Granada, southern Spain, has been the site of a royal residence since the 11th century. The oldest surviving part of the Alhambra is the Alcazaba, a 13th-century fortress, built when Granada was the capital of a Moorish kingdom. After the fall of Granada in 1492, the Catholic kings of Spain built additional palaces, churches and other structures onto the complex.

Castillo de Guadamur

Guadamur is very close to the Moorish city of Toledo in central Spain. It was built on a hill overlooking the town in the late 15th century by Don Pedro Lopez de Ayala (who became the Count of Fuensalida in 1470) and was much beloved by members of the Castilian Royal Family. Philip the Fair and Princess Joanna spent their honeymoon there and Charles V retired there to mourn his wife, the Empress Isabella.

It was burned down by French invaders in 1809 and remained a ruin until 1887 when it was restored by the Count of Asalto, a member of an old Catalan family remaining true to its original 15th century design. It was plundered during the Spanish Civil War of 1936 but has, once again, been restored and was declared a historical monument in 1964.

The castle is square but stepped with round towers at each corner and is surrounded by a wide moat with a drawbridge. There are 4 steps with a low outer wall, then the main body and towers, then the keep, then the principal tower on one corner of the keep with more turrets sitting on decorative arches. It's likely that the different levels were built at different times as, because of the constraint of the outer walls, the only expansion could be upwards. The square keep has 6 round towers on the top and the outer wall alternates round corner towers and triangular buttresses. There are huge coats of arms along the walls and many windows with square arches.

Fuensaldana Castle

In Valladolid Province, north central Spain, was built in the mid-15th century by the treasurer of King John II of Castile.

Javier Castle

Javier Castle is in the province of Navarre in the Basque region of Spain about 30km from Pamplona. It was originally constructed on a rocky hill in the 10th century as an Arab Fortress. However, there is virtually none of the original Arab buildings left. It had the double mission of being a bastion to protect the frontier and also a home for noblemen and knights. In later years it became a place of pilgrimage as it is possibly most famous as the birthplace on 7th April 1506 of St Francis Xavier (one of the founders of the Society of Jesus or Jesuits) who is the patron saint of Navarre and the missionary church.

The keep is the oldest known fortification in Navarre and was built at the end of the 10th century. The rest of the castle evolved around it in a semi-circular shape with 2 side towers in the 11th century and completed by the early 16th century with trenches and walls. It was restored in the 1950s and converted into a museum in 1986.

You enter through the main gate with the Javier family's coat of arms on the wall. In the courtyard are the jail and well. In the Santo Cristo Chapel is a 14th Century carved wooden figure of Christ which, as legend has it, is said to have sweated blood on the day St Francis Xavier died. A medieval "dance of death" is painted on the walls of the chapel – the only remaining example in Spain. It also contains a 16th century multi-colored alabaster altar-piece of the Adoration of the Magi.

In the Chaplain's Room there's a permanent exhibition of religious art, historical documents & objects from the castle's history including a collection of 14th century Japanese kimonos. The castle is now maintained by Jesuit priests.

Castles of Switzerland

Chateau l'Aigle

Located in southeastern Switzerland near the French border, it was built in either the 11th or 12th century. It belonged to the House of Savoy (Counts of Maurienne) until its capture in the late 15th century by the soldiers of the Swiss town of Bern.

Chillon Castle

Built near the eastern shore of Lake Geneva (Lac Lemman), Switzerland. There was a castle there as early as the 9th century, built to protect one of the main roads to the Great St. Bernard pass to Italy. The present castle was, for the most part, built by the counts of Savoy in the late 12th and 13th centuries.

Habsburg Castle

Located southeast of Brugg in northern Switzerland, it was the original home of the imperial Habsburg dynasty, which later ruled Austria and Spain. The castle was begun in the early 11th century. The original stone keep still stands.

Castles of Syria

Aleppo Citadel

Aleppo Citadel stands on a 50 metre high hill and habitation on its top is thought to date back to the 16th century BC although the earliest remains found so far are Roman and Byzantine from the 9th century BC when there was known to be a temple on the site. There is a legend that Abraham camped on the hill and milked his cow there.

The Sultan Seif Al-Dawla Al-Hamadani built the first fortress on the hill and used it as his military headquarters. It was later further fortified but captured in 1117 and 1128. During the Crusades, the Franc prince of Antioch, Renaud de Chatillon, spent sixteen years in the Citadel as a prisoner. Saladin's son, Ghazi,

rebuilt it between 1193 and 1215 and, although rebuilt and restored many times since, what you can see today is based on his rebuilding. He used it as a residence and fortress and it evolved into a palatial city with everything that could be needed from palaces and baths, mosques and shrines to an arsenal, training ground, water cisterns and granaries.

In 1259 the Mongols destroyed the walls and buildings after a false promise to the people inside. They attacked again several times during the early 1300s but did not succeed in capturing it. In 1400 Tamerlaine managed to take it by filling in the moat with his fallen soldiers and he destroyed it. Finally the Mamluk governor of Aleppo, Sayf Al-Din Jakam was given permission to rebuild and he built a new palace that was taller than the entrance towers and the Ayyubid palace built by Ghazi was almost abandoned.

In 1516 it was captured by the Ottomans and during the period of their occupation, the Citadel's defensive role diminished and it declined and fell into neglect. In 1828 it was badly damaged in an earthquake which finished what time had been doing. It was a massive collection of derelict buildings, cracked walls and piles of stones.

The only entrance is through a tower in the south wall built in 1213 which defends the huge stone 8-arched bridge over the 20 metre deep and 30 metre wide moat. The gateway is like a mini-castle in itself with five huge iron-plated doors, each on a corner of the zig-zagged passageway and which was pitch dark to slow down invaders. The doors could be shut to enable arrows fire and boiling oil to descend on their heads.

Despite the formidable defenses there is also great beauty to be found. Lintels have carvings on them, nail heads are beautifully worked. There are two mosques (the Mosque of Abraham built in the 1140s and the Great Mosque built in 1214). The latter is built on the highest point of the Citadel and has a 21m high minaret (which played both a religious and military role) and has a stone paved court and fountain. The 13th century Ayyubid palace has a patterned entrance porch inlaid with white marble. The 15th century throne room was restored in the 1970s in a sympathetic manner to the original and the amphitheatre was completely renovated in the 1980s.

It became a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1986 and in 2000 a major restoration project was started. The tower walls were strengthened and preserved and missing stones in walls and arches were replaced. This year (2002), the Ayyubid palace is being restored, particularly the marble floor. Erosion of the Citadel slope is being dealt with and the moat's drainage system is being improved. They are also aiming to make the road round the base of the hill traffic-free so that once again the Citadel will appear isolated and impregnable as it was when it was first built.

Krak des Chevaliers (Kerak)

Krak des Chevaliers is in the mountains of northwest Syria. It was described by TE Lawrence (Lawrence of Arabia) as "the best preserved and most wholly admirable castle in the world" and by Paul Theroux as "the perfect storybook castle that you have always known existed somewhere." It is the furthest east of a chain of five castles built to defend the Homs Gap, which was the route between the Mediterranean & inland cities. It stands on a hill of about 2300 feet with a sheer drop on three sides. It was never taken by siege or storm and is considered to be the strongest and greatest castle built by the Crusaders.

It's not known when the first castle on the site was built except that it was many centuries BC. There was certainly a castle which was given to the Kurds under the Emir of Homs by the Emir of Aleppo in the early 11th century. It was then called Husn Al Akrad (Castle of the Kurds). In 1110 it was captured by the Crusaders under Tancred, Prince of Antioch. The garrison numbered 2,000 soldiers and extra fortifications were built as and when necessary. In 1142 it was given to the Knights Hospitallers, a military and religious chivalrous order, who held it until 1271. Within the strong fortifications they rebuilt and extended it into a home with stables, warehouses and a windmill. The internal buildings were built to be beautiful and this helps make it a wonderful example of castle architecture.

In 1163 it was attacked by Nur ed-Din, Sultan of Damascus and a battle was fought in the Buqai'ah valley below. Saladin (Salah ad-Din Yusuf) was going to besiege it in 1188 but, after looking at the defenses, decided to march on north believing it to be invincible. It was rebuilt in its final form in the 13th century.

During the spring of 1271, King Al-Zaher Baibars with an Egyptian army besieged it for a month. The

castle was undermanned with only 300 knights instead of the former 2,000+, but when it finally fell, it was only by trickery. Baibars forged a letter, supposedly from the Crusader commander, that no reinforcements were available and they should surrender. He rebuilt the damaged parts and built some new towers, including a strong bastion on the vulnerable southern side, which meant that it kept its importance as an Arab castle.

The Kurdish castle had a single ward and surrounding wall. This wall became the inner wall of the Crusader concentric castle. There was only a small gap between the outer and dominant inner walls, with a moat all the way round it. The outer curtain wall has eight round towers on the north and west sides and machicolations to drop rocks on invaders. The inner wall was sloped at 80 degrees and was 80 feet high.

Two square towers frame the northern barbican. The entrance has a ramp and a vaulted passageway that leads to the outer wall and then a bridge to the inner part. The passages were built in a zigzag which would make invaders very vulnerable to defenders' fire. There was a small chapel to the east of the entrance which was changed into a mosque by Baibars. Opposite are 3 large towers in the south wall, with a spiral staircase in one which leads to the Grand Master's elegant room. The strongest of the three towers was linked to the keep by a thick heavy wall on which much defensive equipment was placed. There was enough space to store food to feed the whole garrison for a year and an aqueduct which brought water to caves under the castle during sieges.

Margat Castle

Lying on the site of an extinct volcano, Margat overlooks the Mediterranean Sea and commanded an important trade route at the southern edge of the Principality of Antioch. It was the sister castle of Krak des Chevaliers and, similar to Krak, it took on the role of an administrative centre, covering vast areas of land in the process. One of the most imposing aspects of Margat is its size, giving an air of rugged domination across the surrounding lands.

Founded in 1062 by Muslim Arabs, it was taken over by the Byzantines at a later point, although the exact date is unknown. However, in 1186 the Hospitallers bought the castle along with the small seaside town of Valenia and some patchwork lands. Margat was rebuilt to the latest Frankish standards of architecture and incorporated many of the features that saw Krak des Chevaliers gain its reputation as an impregnable fortress. Standing on a hill commanding extensive views of the Mediterranean and the narrow coastal plain to the North and South, the architects saw Margat as a site with enormous potential. The long walls that run around the edge of the plateau where Margat stands are flanked with numerous towers, predominantly round, and date from the Hospitaller takeover. It was split into two separate sections, the fortress and the "castletown." The defenses of the castletown aren't as formidable as that of the fortress, but the main entrance to the castle area shadows that of Krak, with passages allowing access to various sections, but with numerous 90 degree turns that offered no advantage to the attacker. What is noticeable about Margat is that the architecture reflects the continuous building by the Franks, rather than specific periods of construction and explains the somewhat erratic layout of the castle.

The fortress of Margat, known as Qalaat Al Marqab in Arabic and meaning "Castle of the Watchtower," wasn't just a military stronghold. By the beginning of the 13th century the bishop of Valenia had abandoned the village and transferred to the castle, where the chapel doubled as his modest cathedral. The knights ensured revenue not only from the surrounding lands, but also by blocking off the route near the coast with a tower and wall that extended from the castle. Documents indicate that everyone had to pay to pass through the gate and this proved to be quite profitable for the Hospitallers.

Margat saw some significant military action, none more so than that attack by the Sultan Kalaoun in 1285. The siege engines employed by the Sultan were quickly destroyed by the garrison within the castle walls and many of the Muslims were killed by the defenders' arrows and siege engines mounted on a grassy plateau within the castle. The battle was ferocious and recent investigations have found arrowheads still stuck in the mortar around the arrow slits, showing where the attackers had tried to shoot in at their stubborn opponents. At this point, the Sultan opted to mine the outwork defenses, which succeeded in bringing down sections of wall. The main attack on the stronghold failed miserably though and it was evident that an unconventional

approach may be required. Continuing with the efforts on mining, sappers spent eight days below ground and completely undermined the circular tower-keep at the southern end of the castle. Wisely, the Sultan didn't wish

to destroy the remarkable defenses of the castle and invited the Hospitallers to view the extent of their work. They did so, and at once realised that further resistance was useless. With further mines suspected, the castle capitulated and the knights retired to Acre, armed with their belongings and a sum of gold.

Margat was the last crusader castle to endure a major siege and the fall of the mighty fortress is a reflection that for all the ingenious defensive work, excellence in craftsmanship and courage in defense, nothing would eventually compensate for lack of men and money.

Saladin's Castle

Qalaat Saladin also known as Saladin's Castle or Saone is in an almost impregnable position on a wedge-shaped 150m high ridge between two deep valleys, about 25km from Latakia in Syria. The third side of the wedge was protected by a 28m man-made ditch, cut into the rock. It sprawls along the top of the ridge, covering 12 acres and, in Saladin's time, had room for 10,000 men to live. It was an important castle as it guarded the trade route between Latakia and Aleppo.

The strategic position was first used by the Phoenicians a thousand years BCE and they were still there when Alexander the Great from Macedon in Greece invaded in 333 BCE. It's known that the Romans also had a presence there but there are no remaining signs of their occupation. There is then a gap in our knowledge until the Byzantines returned in the 10th century AD and the basis of the castle we can see now was built.

At the beginning of the 12th century it was taken by the Crusaders and in 1119 was given by Roger, Prince of Antioch, to Robert of Saone although it remained under Byzantine jurisdiction rather than the Templars or Hospitallers. In 1188 Saladin succeeded in taking it after a 4 month siege when he was encamped on a nearby and overlooking hill. He bombarded it with huge boulders and eventually wore down the Crusaders' resistance. The family of emir Nasr Al-Don Manguwiris controlled the castle until 1272 when they ceded it to the Mamluk Sultan Baibars. In 1280 Sonquor Al-Ashgar, the ex-governor of Damascus, occupied the castle but seven years later the Mamluk sultan took it back after a siege. As peace returned, the castle fell into disuse and is now in ruins, much of it overgrown with vegetation.

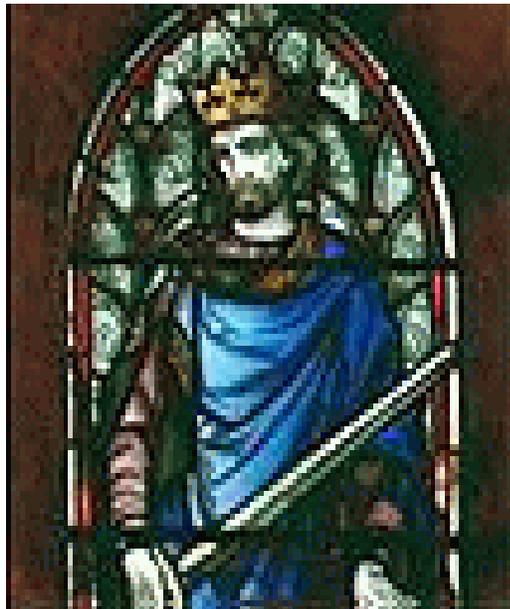
The hand dug ditch was probably started by the Byzantines and finished by the Crusaders. It runs for 156m on the eastern side, is about 20m wide and was full of fast-running water after rain. It contains a 28m high "needle" left when the stone was being cut which supported the drawbridge. The top of this pillar was cut down and built up with a temporary top which could be collapsed when under siege.

There is a crusader bastion on one side of the entry and another a little further in. The rectangular keep has 5m thick walls and covers nearly 24m² with the entrance on the second floor up 208 steps on the outside. Other ruins of buildings still visible are a crusader church, 2 Byzantine chapels, stables and 2 huge water cisterns cut from the rock with terracotta pipes which drew water from the valley below. Arab additions included a mosque and a palace. The "Arab Baths," a domed courtyard surrounded by marble paved vaulted rooms, had separate ducts for cold water and steam and were added by the Mamluks. One of the towers can be climbed and it's possible to walk around the ramparts. In 1957 it was renamed Saladin's Castle in memory of his feat of taking it.

~ ~ ~

Appendix L

Notes on King Arthur



Notes on King Arthur

The Arthur legend has been mostly legend for 1500 years. Many philosophers have tried to interpret the “ILLES OF ARTURUS.” Geoffrey of Monmouth was somewhat successful in translating some of the old manuscripts. Modern times offer higher educated doctorates to interpret the manuscripts. The Ancient Knights Templar has excellent records on the genealogy of Arthur, Lancelot, Galahad and Perceval.

These new interpretations open the gates to a complete new theory that the great knights and kings spoken about in the Legend of Arthur are really Scots.

In 1952, Mr. R L Graeme Ritchie found and identified Caerlaverock Castle on the north shore of the Solway Firth, near the modern Day City of Carlisle. Caerlaverock is the legendary birthplace of Arthur Pendragon. The son of Uther (the bad) Pendragon, a Roman Commander stationed at Hadrian’s Wall. The years are during the Dark Ages when written documentation was very scarce. Geoffrey of Monmouth was a good resource to the written records of Arthur. The only problem with Geoffrey was his lack of geographical knowledge of Britain. Certain names of towns sounded much like the names of Welsh towns, therefore he concluded his theory of Arthur being from Wales.

The twelve battles that Arthur was in are as follows:

- Ostium fluminis Glein = mouth of the River Glein
- allied flumen Dubglas in reione Linnuis = another River, the Dubglas in the Linnuis area
- same
- same
- same
- Flumen. Basses = River Bassas
- in silva Celidonis, Cat Coit Celidon = in the Celidon Wood, Battle of Celidon
- in castello Guinnion = in Fort Guinnon
- in urbe Legionis = in the city of the Legion
- in litore fluminis Tribruit = on the banks of the River Tribruit
- in monte Agned = on Mount Agned
- in monte Badonis = on Mount Badon

The study seems to connect Arthur to the areas of North York near Hadrian’s Wall, no further north than the Antonine Wall, on the west to what is now Glasgow and to the East to what is now Edinburgh. This also connects to the Firth of Clyde and the Firth of Forth.

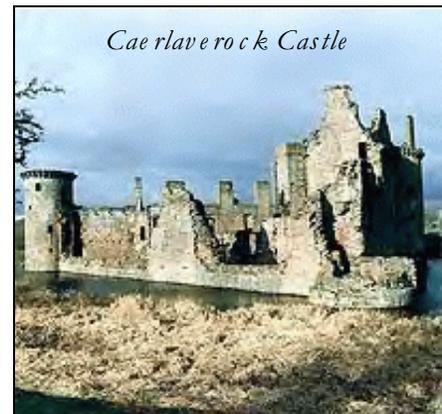
There were three Legion cities during the Roman times; York, Chester and Caerleon. Carlisle is mentioned as the headquarters for Arthur in many manuscripts.

The same area that King Arthur was born in. So, Carlisle is very important in the history of Britain but also in the role that Arthur led in becoming the peacemaker of the people.

Arthur was born in 559 AD. When Columba ordained King Aedan of Dalriada in 574, records show Arthur being Aedan’s eldest son. Arthur’s mother was Ygern del Acqs, the High Queen of the Celtic kingdoms. Ygern was married to Gwyr-Llew, Dux of Carlisle. The Duke of Carlisle had been sent south to become Gorlois, Duke of Cornwall. During this time is when Aedan of Dalriada became totally enthralled with the beauty of Ygern or better known as Igrain. Later on in years, after Cornwall had died, Igraine married Aedan making Arthur a legitimate heir to the throne.

Briton was being invaded by the Anglo- Saxons during the rein of King Aedan. He was not successful in defeating the Angles. All sides including the original Scots who are now the Irish and Scandinavians were threatening Dalriada. The Picts and Alba were fighting over their rights in what is now Scotland. The Christian Church was growing stronger each day and the Old Celtic ways were being forgotten.

Pendragon and Merlin are both titles, Pendragon meaning



Head Dragon of the Island, King of Kings and Guardian of the Celtic Island. Merlin meant Seer to the King. Merlin's real name was Emrys of Powys, the son of Aurelius. The Merlin was also an elder cousin to King Aedan.

Merlin was a Celt Priest and Vivien del Acqs, the grandmother of Arthur was the Queen of Avalon and High Priestess of the Ancient Celtic Religion. Arthur was supposed to unite the two religions but his conscience to be loyal to ONE religion swayed him to make Christianity the dominating religion of Britain.

Aedan was the son of King Gabran and Lluan of Brecknock. Lluan was a direct descendent of Joseph of Arimathea, therefore entitling King Aedan mac Gabran of Scots to receive the title of Pendragon and the first to be ordained by Columba, a Catholic priest.

In 575 AD, at the age of sixteen, Arthur was appointed sovereign Guletic (commander). Arthur did have brothers. Their names were Eochaid Find, Domingart and Eochaid Buide. He was not an only child. Merlin was appointed to Arthur because he was the eldest. One may conclude that Merlin did raise and protect Arthur.

There was a relationship between Arthur and his half-sister Morganna or Morgan le Faye the wife of King Urien of Rheged and Gowrie (Goure). Many people frowned on this act of incest but to the Celtic Britain, it was perceived as the dual nature of God, the ancient principle of the 'sacred sister-bride.' A son named Modred was born from this union.

Modred plays a significant roll in the destruction of Arthur's realm that will be discussed later on in this series. The old transcripts were confusing to many scholars because of the Welsh-Scottish resemblance of the Gaelic language. Wales and Scotland were very close allies and friends throughout this time frame. The remainder of the story shall prove a theory of Lancelot, Galahad and Perceval also being Scots.

Lancelot the Angus

Sir Lancelot is a fairy tale to most. The brave gallant knight that rescued Queen Guinevere from an abduction by her strongest enemy. The Lady of the Lake plays a large roll in the up-bringing of Lancelot and Guinevere. Lancelot states, "I come from across the Lake," when he introduces himself to Arthur. The reason being that he was raised by the dynamic, Lady of the Lake. Guinevere was also raised by the same Lady of the Lake. The Lady sent Lancelot to Guinevere's service when he reached manhood.

Lancelot was sent by the Lady to kill three kings and learn his real name. Who was Lancelot and where does his name stem from? Lancelot conquered three kingdoms, "Patrick of the Hill Fort," "Lymors" and "Der Kal." These lands entailed parts of Edinburgh, Tantallon, Berwick and Melrose. The last kingdom he won was "Der Kal," which translates from King Ulrich's Welsh *dwr* meaning river and *cal* or *Kal* meaning winding. *Cal* (winding) + *Der* (river) = *Calder*. There are two *Calders* on the Southwest side of Edinburgh both on the sandy shores of the Almond River.



The Lady of the Lake wanted Lancelot to win his rightful fortress named "Dodone." Lancelot first had to fight Prince Meleagant whom held the mighty fortress. There had been two previous matches between Meleagant and Lancelot in which Lancelot won but King Ulrich allowed Meleagant to live. The third and final battle, Guinevere was there to witness the defeat of Meleagant. Guinevere gave the order for Lancelot to behead Meleagant.

Once Meleagant was beheaded, he heard a woman's voice cry out to him, "You are Gallahad." The name of Lancelot was after his grandfather Galahad or Angulus which translates to Angus. Lancelot by birth was The Angus. King Anguselus, King Loth and King Hoel (Howell) were all three present at the coronation of King Arthur. The lands of Dodone was in Guinevere's dowry to Arthur. Arthur gave the old lands of King Orge to Ulrich upon Arthur's marriage to Guinevere to prevent a war. These are the lands that Lancelot won.

The modern position of these lands is Stirlingshire. Stirling Castle is built on the ruins of Dodone. Lancelot is derived from the Old French; l'Ancelet, in Gaelic is pronounced Aguselus.

King Ban or Braidan was Lancelot's father and his mother was Vivien Del Acqs. Viviane's mother was Viviane Del Acqs, The Dynasty Queen of Avalon. These ladies were of direct descent of Joseph of Arimathea. They were also the Queens of the ancient Celtic Christianity.



Other great men of Arthur's

The mystic of Arthur continues with the people surrounding him before, during and after his reign. The revered names of King Arthur's knights represent a time of loyalty and chivalry to our modern era. The legends are now considered a very real part of Britain's history.

Merlin, Lancelot, King Lot, King Uriens, Gawain, Gallahad and Perceval are the figures remembered so dearly in the legend of Arthur. Who were Gawain, Perceval and Gallahad? What were their stations in Arthur's Kingdom?

Sir Gawain, remembered through out the years as a loyal friend to Arthur. The new theory has found documentation that Gawain was the son of Morgan Le Faye and King Lot. Actually making Gawain the nephew of King Arthur and might explain the favoritism that Arthur showed the young man. Arthur took Gawain to the Grail Castle to worship. Gawain remained close to Arthur even until Arthur was killed. Sir Gawain became the protecting Knight of the Grail Castle. While Arthur was alive, Gawain did get to wield Excalibur in Arthur's place.

Perceval was a cousin to Lancelot and Gawain. He was a bit younger than them. King Percival of the Waste Lands was Perceval's father and his mother, the widow lady of Camelot, Lufamour. Lufamour seems to be the daughter of Morgan Le Faye and King Lot. This would make Perceval Arthur's nephew. Perceval became the King of Grail Castle after completing his Holy Quest. He married Blanchefleur the daughter of King Clamadex.

Here was a true battle for the love of one's religion. Morgan Le Faye's eldest son by Arthur was made the High Priest of the Celtic Church. Perceval the youngest son of Morgan's was made the Grail King. Again, old against new, Older against younger. What a time of turmoil for Arthur's Kingdom! Perceval was the last Grail King.

Sir Gallahad was the son of Lancelot and Lady Elaine. He too descends from the Grail Kings on his maternal side. He was the last of the Grail Lords that assigned twelve men to the "Order of the Saynt Graall." The Grail Castle was destroyed after Perceval. What was the Grail? What was the Round Table? All of these famous men served both.

Avalon's location

Scholars have interpreted the ancient manuscripts that were originally Celtic languages as Old French therefore causing certain words to have different meanings than those languages that were of Old German origins. Bard Taliesin gave a description of Avalon as "insula pororum Fortunata" which in Old French translates to island of apples. The Bard spoke Celtic which is a form of Old German therefore the description he offered means island by the sea that has profuse vegetation and the inhabitants lived very long lives, in German.

King Orry was Guinevere's father. Old French had his name spelt Gorre (Gorray). Gorray would have been the lands in Brittany. Another pronunciation was found by Chretien de Troyes and Marie de France. The two poets stated that Guinevere was from the lands of Gorry-Gorree. This changed the land mass from Brittany to the Isle of Man. This location would explain the strange spelling of Guinevere. Her name was pictish. The Picts were ruling the Isle of Man at the time of Arthur.

This opens a new door or possibly a very old one to the legend of Arthur. Why the Isle of Man and not Glastonbury? What supporting documents are available on the location of Avalon? The King of Norway, Marie de France and the Perceval manuscripts all coincide with Lancelot's description of his trip to Avalon.

Perceval's coronation and marriage is recorded as so:

Several vessels then transported the wedding party to a small island, which stood off shore, about a mile away (from Galoches). This island was the loveliest in the world. It was perfectly square nobody could tell which side was longest. Named for a pagan King Tadas, who built it's walls before he became converted, it was ruled by his son Bademagus, the most courteous man of his time.

The walls about the island were very high and cut of red sandstone, entirely surrounded by the sea but laid upon bedrock. They were crenellated and wide enough for two chariots side by side. There were four towers at the four corners supported upon



pilings and sustained by vaults. There was a massive drawbridge operated by pulleys. An Arm of the sea came almost up to the walls, over which was the famous sword bridge where many a head was cut off when Meleagant was lord. On the island was a cemetery where lay many dead under tomb slabs covered in writing giving the names of the barans. There were many rare trees on the island, and they gave off lovely perfumes, which please immensely, and in their midst was a fountain where the water issued from a copper horn. It was sweet and cold, none better anywhere. There was only one entrance to the isle, which was closed otherwise, and the entrance was through one most elaborately constructed portal.

The abbot had just ordered dinner for the king when suddenly the heavens split. Nobody could even see anyone else. The thunder followed the lightening so closely that each bolt seemed to fall on each man's head. The torment raged so fierce that the trees were uprooted and hurled against the walls. The ocean was so whipped that the waves leaped the ramparts, flooding the isle until everything was afloat and everyone would have drowned if each had not instantly leaped to the walls. Then the weather worsened, causing such suffering as our ancestors have never before experienced. The king huddled upon the stone wall and the queen beside him, both struck by such floods of sea water that they were nearly swept away. There they clung, day and night, for three days and three nights, without food or drink, or sleep, or rest. The Queen mother died.

When the weather cleared, they saw that all their ships had been lost. When the waters drained away, a horrible stench arose from the cemetery. Those across in Galoches saw the storm and sent boats and barges and galleys from Galoches to the island, but most of them could not endure the stench. Survivors of the storm hid in the forest and ate game. When the king returned later to the island, he was able to report the stench had come from the corpse of Joseph of Arimathea's wife. She had been pagan.

Joseph of Arimathea needed a grand place to store the Holy Grail. When he had arrived at the Peel castle owned by a Pictish pagan king, Joseph knew this was the chosen place. It took many years for Joseph to convert this King. The Old King finally accepted Christianity and the Order of the Holy Grail.

This little island is St. Patrick's island off the west side of the Isle of Man. The ruins of Peel Castle remains even today. This small island was a very important place of worship in the early Catholic Church. So important that the pope actually sent Saint Germanus there in the 5th century. St. Patrick preached there in 444. St. Germanus was there to convert the pagans to Christianity and he did accomplish what he was sent there to do. St. Germanus was also a very fair man, he allowed the Grail ceremony, Easter and All Saints day to be incorporated into the Christian teachings.

Sir John Rhys and other scholars had translated the old languages with supporting documentation that Avalon, the Grail Castle and Arthur's third castle Galoches was indeed on the Isle of Man. Garvase of Tilbury painted King Arthur in a royal establishment, claiming that the palace was in the three-sided, three-legged Island of Sicily.

The mystery still remains why the legend was moved to Glastonbury and Wales. A hypothesis is; King Henry II was so obsessed over the predictions of Merlin, that King Arthur would come back again that Henry actually had the evidence moved to Glastonbury so he could have the Bishops keep a very close watch. When Glastonbury burned, Henry II had it completely rebuilt. It was not completed at his death so Richard the Lion heart finished the task.

The New theory had been fully documented through out the past 1500 years. The information stating that Arthur was a real king, Guinevere being a Celtic Princess, Camelot being a real place and all the other people mentioned as once living and fighting for their beloved religions, exists. The Grail Castle and Avalon has now been translated from old documentation.

This new theory maybe just a legend to some but to one who believes, Arthur, his realm, his castles and Avalon was once a reality, some fifteen hundred years ago.



Guinevere - warrior queen

The dark ages held many myths. King Arthur's wife Guinevere is one of those myths. Every scholar, historian and poet have recognized Guinevere but with reluctance. One reason for the apprehension is the lack of supporting documentation. Some historians claim there were 3 Guineveres who were married to Arthur. The Guinevere that is told in this part of the New Theory is his first wife Guinevere of Orrge.

Guinevere, a Celtic Priestess, due to inherit most of Briton upon her marriage. She was the daughter of King Orrge of the Douglas River. His father had been defeated by King Urien of Gorre. Guinevere's father wanted her to be well trained to defend her large estates so he sent her to the Roman training camp at Caerlaverock on the east bank of the Nith. She received full training to become a commander in an army. While she attended the training, she met Arthur.

Legend speaks of Guinevere's beauty. She was very handsome in her strange ways. Imagine a stout built woman of average height with long dark golden hair and dark blue eyes that is a trait of her Scandinavian blood. A fair skinned warrior that was one of the richest women of all times. Many men pined for her.

Guinevere did something UN-heard of in her time, she chose to marry Arthur. This broke the earlier arrangement made by her father to King Urien. Guinevere took with her to Sterlingshire, The Round Table. This was along with all the lands of Briton she possessed.

Urien was extremely angry at Guinevere's decision. He chose revenge on Guinevere and Arthur. Urien began by waging war on Arthur. They fought four battles. Arthur was the victor in all four. Urien did not give up. He was more determined than ever before to take what was promised to him. Urien changed his strategy to concentrate on Guinevere.

Urien abducted Guinevere on two separate occasions. Guinevere was held captive for a year on the first kidnapping. Lancelot and Sir Gawain came to Guinevere's rescue. Lancelot faced Meleagent, the son of Urien in a battle. Lancelot won but let Meleagent live. Meleagent wounded Lancelot as Lancelot turned to leave with Guinevere. Lancelot promised to finish it by arranging a meeting one year from that day with Meleagent.

Guinevere holds to her strange ways by keeping heads of her enemies in jars. These jars went with her every place she went. Guinevere's Coat of Arms bore 3 doves. These doves represented her religious beliefs of St. Julien. Through out the next 15 years or so, Guinevere is held as a ruthless Queen, she feared nothing or no one. Many people of ancient Briton compare her to Queen Bodicca. She never gave Arthur any children but she did have a son Lohot before she married Arthur. The father of Lohot is not mentioned.

King Arthur made Modred co-regent of Briton with Guinevere. Guinevere married Modred in an ancient Celtic ceremony. This was not understood by many. The purpose of the marriage was for religious reasons. Modred was the High Priest of the Celtic realm. Guinevere was a High Priestess, therefore the union was excepted. Guinevere was older than Modred but by the amount of years is not known.

The second abduction of Guinevere has been refereed to a "Sleeping Beauty" scenario. King Urien has kidnapped Guinevere again. This time Guinevere gave in to the demands of the King. His demands were for all her properties she owned. Once she had agreed to his demands, Urien threw her in a snake pit. Guinevere is bitten on the finger by a viper. Lohot rushes to defend his mother. He tries to save her but only to arrive and find her already dead. This is when Lohot is killed. His head is entered into the tomb of his mother's along with her body.

This happened before Arthur went to the Continent to search for the Holy Grail. Guinevere was buried at Avalon. Modred was left as regent of Briton. Before Arthur left, he did remarry another Guinevere. Guinevere, the first wife of Arthur was buried in her home, Avalon.

The sacred tables of Arthur

The Round Table and Grail Lore is a significant part of the Arthur legend. These two items are representation of fairness, equality, justice and faith. These were Holy relics in a time of turmoil.

The legend handed down for 150 centuries states that Arthur sat at a circular table that had no head position so all men where equal that sat at it. Thirteen men sat at the Round Table. These thirteen were equal to each other.

The group at the Round Table were the reigning Lords of the Isle of Britain. The name of these Kings were; Anguselus, Vrianus, Cadvallo laurh venedotorum, Strater or Eddelin demetorum, Cador cornubie, Gillamaurus Hibernia, Meluasius Isslont, Doldavius Ysogottlont, Gunuuvasius Orcadum, Loth Llychlyn and Aschilllus



Dacorum. These eleven kings sat in high counsel with Arthur and Perceval.

The number 13 represents Christ and his twelve apostles. This made Arthur's Round Table Holy according to ancient beliefs. This is compared to the Grail Lore. Thirteen men sat on the counsel for the Sacred Holy Grail. People from all nations have been searching for the Round Table for hundreds of years. Modern scholars have been able to translate the old languages used by William of Malmesbury, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Chretien of Troyes, Gildas, Aneirin and Nennius into our modern languages. The translation is able to describe the Round Table more accurately.

Wace's adaptation of Monmouth states: "Fist Artus la Roonde Table" = "Arthur made a tabled rotunda." Rontundas represented early Christianity by duplicating the Tomb of Christ.

Reverend Dr. William Stukely published a flyer about an ancient building he found in 1720. He found it on the Caron River bank near Falkirk. The local folks called this unusual structure "Arthur's O'on." The people believed it to be a giant oven to bake bread for Arthur's army. The funny shaped building made from stones looked like a huge beehive from the exterior. This structure was a circular, beehive type, built of forty courses of ashlar blocks. These blocks were placed upon an elevated square platform without the use of mortar.

Arthur's O'on aligned with the midsummer sunrise, very similar to Stonehenge. Dr. Stukely published a book in 1743 called *Abury*. This is the year Arthur's O'on was demolished to use the stones to build a dam. The drawings of Stukely were near perfect measurements. The flyer can still be seen at Glastonbury to this day.

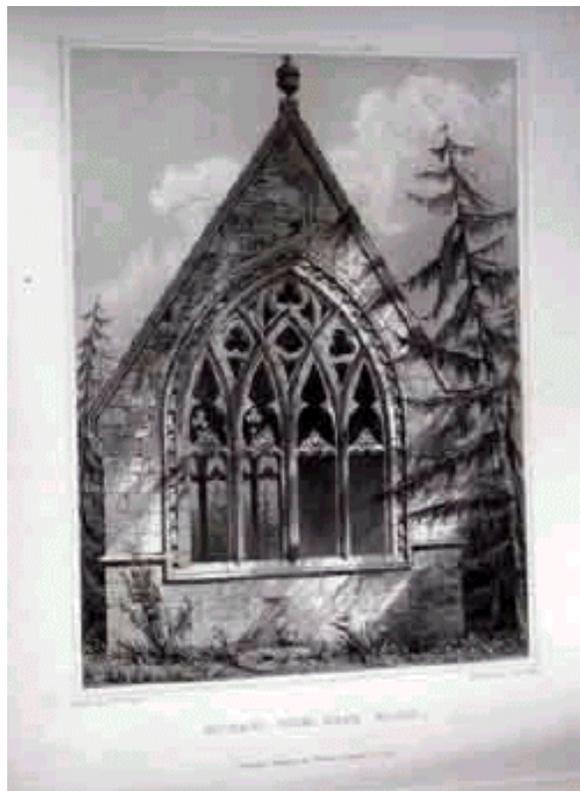
Linguistic evidence plainly shows that Arthur's O'on is the origin of the Round Table. The O'on was used to house Holy relics and a place of worship. The Round Table branched into the Order of the Round Table. This was a religious military order compared to the Knights of the Thistle.

Joseph of Arimathea, Mary Magdalen with her children and a few other early Christians came to the Isle of Britain to build a special place to hold the Grail. Joseph wanted a secret fortress to hold the Holy relic so he built the Grail Castle. The patrons of the Grail Castle formed the Order of the Holy Grail. The organization is structured on the basis of the Round Table. It consists of thirteen men to sit on the high counsel. The Order of the Grail is the only ancient Christian organization from Britain that exists now, and is the foundation for the Knights Templar. [*Kelly D. Whittaker, ElectricScotland.com*]

~ ~ ~

Appendix M

Bloodline of the Holy Grail



Michael Kirk, near Elgin
engraved by J.H. LeKeux after a picture by R.W. Billings, 1850.

Bloodline Of The Holy Grail

by Sir Laurence Gardner

This unique lecture gives a detailed genealogical account of the authentic line of succession of the "Blood Royal" from the sons of Jesus and his brother James down to the present day. It casts a penetrating new light on the Bible story, and onto the enigmatic figures of Joseph of Arimathea and Mary Magdalene, and on the real truth behind the Arthurian legends and the Holy Grail. There is also a fascinating history of the Knights Templars of Jerusalem.

Laurence Gardner, Prior of the Celtic Church's Sacred Kindred of St Columba, is an internationally known sovereign and chivalric genealogist. Distinguished as the Chevalier Labbrán de Saint Germain, he is Presidential Attaché to the European Council of Princes – a constitutional advisory body established in 1946. He is formally attached to the Noble Household Guard of the Royal House of Stewart, founded at St German-en-Laye in 1692, and is the Jacobite Historiographer Royal. Following is one of his lectures.

Today we shall embark upon the time-honoured Quest for the Holy Grail. Some have called it the Ultimate Quest, but the Christian Church has condemned it as a heresy.

A Christian heresy is described as "an opinion which is contrary to the orthodox dogma of the Christian bishops" and, in this regard, those other quests which comprise much of today's scientific and medical research are equally heretical. The word "heresy" is, in essence, nothing more than a derogatory label -- a tag used by a fearful Church establishment that has long sought to maintain control of society through fear of the unknown. A heresy can therefore define those aspects of philosophy and research which quest into the realms of the unknown and which, from time to time, provide answers and solutions that are quite contrary to Church doctrine.

In Christian terms, most of the world's population is heretical, because the Christian Church (which defines its own heresies) represents little more than a quarter of that population. As for the remaining three-quarters – the Jews, Muslims, Buddhists, Hindus and others – they are all, by definition, heretics and infidel.

Only 365 years ago, the Italian scientist Galileo announced that the Earth was in motion around the sun (a discovery by the Polish astronomer, Copernicus) and for this the Church proclaimed him a heretic. As a result, Galileo was hauled before the Catholic Inquisition and kept under house arrest for ten years until he died.

Soon afterwards, Isaac Newton pursued the concept of orbital force, but he too was condemned and it was not until recently, in 1992, that the Church finally admitted that the Earth was in solar orbit. Indeed, it was not until the summer of 1996 that the notion of Hell was abolished by the General Synod of the Anglican Church, and it was this very notion which had caused such problems for Galileo, Newton and others. The Catholic Church, on the other hand, maintains the notion of Hell -- and so, in the eyes of Rome, the Anglican Protestants have now become heretics in this regard.

Historically, as far as the Christian Church was concerned, the Earth was flat and at the centre of the Universe. Heaven was above the Earth and Hell was below. Consequently, the Earth had to be motionless and could not possibly be in orbital motion unless Heaven and Hell moved as well -- which, it was maintained, they did not. 1996 was also the year when Pope John Paul formally acknowledged Charles Darwin's Theory of Evolution -- proclaiming it to be "quite compatible" with the Christian faith. But, hitherto, all scientists and scholars who upheld the principles of evolution were classified as heretics.

Additionally, the Vatican has now established a Miracles Council, consisting of scientists, medical men and theologians. Their brief is straightforward: to investigate ancient and modern miracles so as to determine what does and what does not fall into the category. If a plausible and acceptable reasoning can be found for a said miracle, then it is taken off the miracles list. If not, then it stays on the list until such time as a logical explanation is put forward by the Council.

And so, one by one, yesterday's heresies (for which so many have been persecuted and executed) are being accepted by the Church's more rational members. But there is, nevertheless, a significant element that prefers to retain the old dogma -- creating a modern schism in the very structure of the Church itself.

As the years progress, it is evident that scientific and medical discovery must overturn much of the medieval religious dogma that has persisted to modern times. And, in this regard, some previously cited heresies are already being taken on board by a Church that has little option to do otherwise. But there are also other forms of heresy: heresies with an essentially spiritual base – the heresies which may be called pagan or occult and those which form the very roots of religions other than Christianity.

Then there are the historical heresies: those which do not immediately fall within the realms of science, medicine or philosophy, but whose testing and questing fall mainly to historians, linguists and theologians. It is in this particular category that we find the Quest for the Holy Grail and, in pursuing the Quest, it becomes increasingly ap

parent why the Church pronounced Grail lore to be a heresy when society at large perceives the Grail to be a thoroughly Christian relic.

Quests are, by their very nature, intriguing and historical research is enlightening, but the findings from neither are of any use whatever unless there are present-day applications which, like science and medicine, can sow the seeds of a better future.

History is no more than recorded experience – generally the experience of its winners – and it is common sense to learn from the experience of yesterday. Indeed, it is that very experience which holds the moral, cultural, political and social keys of tomorrow -- and it is in this context that the Holy Grail supports its own Messianic code. This is the code of social practice instituted by Jesus when he washed his apostles' feet at the Last Supper. It pertains to the obligations of giving and receiving "service." It determines that those in positions of elected authority and influence should always be aware of their duties as "representatives" of society, obligated to Serve society, not to presume authority over society. The Grail Code is the essential key to democratic government. This is defined as government BY the people FOR the people. Without the implementation of the Code, we experience the only too familiar government OF the people. This is not democratic government.

In the course of our journey, we shall discuss many items which are thoroughly familiar, but we shall be looking at them from a different perspective to that normally conveyed. In this regard it will appear that we are often treading wholly new ground, but it was, in fact, only the ground that existed before it was carpeted and concealed by those with otherwise vested interests. Only by rolling back this carpet of purposeful concealment can we succeed in our quest for the Holy Grail.

Our quest will begin in the Holy Land of Judaea in the time of Jesus, and we shall spend a good while there so as to set the emergent scene. We shall then progress through 2000 years of history to the present day -- travelling through the Dark Ages to spend some time in medieval Europe. The Grail mystery will then be followed into King Arthur's Britain and, eventually, even to the United States, where the American fathers were among the greatest exponents of the Grail Code. Eminent Americans such as George Washington, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Charles Thompson and Thomas Jefferson were as much champions of the Holy Grail as were King Arthur, Sir Lancelot and Galahad.

Bloodline of the Holy Grail has been described as *The Book of Messianic Descent* and it carries the subtitle *The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed*. This of course indicates that Jesus had children and, by implication therefore, that he was married. So was he married? Did he have children? If so, do we know what became of them? Are their descendants alive today? The answer to each of these questions is "yes."

We shall be looking at the emergent family in some detail, following their story, century by century -- the story of a resolute royal dynasty: the descendant heirs of Jesus, who struggled against all odds to preserve the Messianic initiative of the Holy Grail.

Our story is one of conspiracy; of usurped crowns, persecutions, assassinations and the unwarranted concealment of information from the people of the Christian world. It is an account of good government and bad government; about how the patriarchal kingship of people was supplanted by dogmatic tyranny and the dictatorial lordship of lands. It is a compelling journey of discovery: a view of past ages, but with its eye firmly set upon the future. This is history as it was once written, but has never been told.

Let us begin with the most obvious of all questions: What is the Holy Grail? How is the Holy Grail connected with the descendant heirs of Jesus? The fact that Jesus had descendants might come as a surprise to some, but it was widely known in Britain and Europe until the late Middle Ages.

In medieval times, the line of Messianic descent was defined by the French word *Sangréal* -- deriving from the two words *Sang Réal*, meaning "Blood Royal." This was the Blood Royal of Judah: the kingly line of David which progressed through Jesus and his heirs. In English translation, the definition *Sangréal* became "San Graal" (as in San Francisco). When written more fully it was "Saint Grail" -- the word "saint," of course, relating to "holy." Then, by a natural linguistic process, came the more romantically familiar term, "Holy Grail."

From the Middle Ages there were a number of chivalric and military orders specifically attached to the Messianic Blood Royal in Britain and Europe. They included the Order of the Realm of Sion and the Order of the Sacred Sepulchre. But the most prestigious of all was the Sovereign Order of the *Sangréal* – the Knights of

the Holy Grail. This was a dynastic Order of Scotland's Royal House of Stewart.

In symbolic terms the Grail is often portrayed as a chalice that contains the blood of Jesus; alternatively as a vine of grapes. The product of grapes is wine, and it is the chalice and the wine of Grail tradition that sit at the very heart of the Holy Communion (the Eucharist). In this sacrament, the sacred chalice contains the wine that represents the perpetual blood of Jesus.

It is quite apparent that, although maintaining the ancient Communion custom, the Christian Church has conveniently ignored and elected not to teach the true meaning and origin of the custom. Few people even think to enquire about the ultimate symbolism of the Chalice and Wine sacrament, believing that it comes simply from some Gospel entries relating to the Last Supper.

What is the significance of the perpetual blood of Jesus? How is the blood of Jesus (or of anyone else for that matter) perpetuated? It is perpetuated through family and lineage. So why was it that the Church authorities elected to ignore the "bloodline" significance of the Grail sacrament? Indeed, why was it that they went so far as to denounce Grail lore and Grail symbolism as heretical?

The fact is that every Government and every Church teaches the form of history or dogma most conducive to its own vested interest. In this regard we are all conditioned to receiving a very selective form of teaching. We are taught what we are supposed to know, and we are told what we're supposed to believe. But, for the most part, we learn both political and religious history by way of national or clerical propaganda, and this often becomes absolute dogma: teachings which may not be challenged for fear of reprisals.

With regard to the Church's attitude towards the chalice and the wine, it is blatantly apparent that the original symbolism had to be reinterpreted by the bishops because it denoted that Jesus had offspring and, therefore, that he must have united with a woman.

But it was not only sacraments and customary ritual that were reinterpreted; the very Gospels themselves were corrupted to comply with the "male-only" establishment of the Church of Rome -- much like a modern film editor will adjust and select the takes to achieve the desired result.

We are all familiar with the Gospels of Matthew, Mark, Luke and John -- but what about the other Gospels: those of Philip, of Thomas, of Mary and of Mary Magdalene? What of all the numerous Gospels, Acts and Epistles that were not approved by the Church councils when the New Testament was compiled? Why were they excluded when the choices were made?

There were actually two main criteria for selection, and these (from an earlier short-list prepared by Bishop Athanasius of Alexandria) were originally determined at the Council of Carthage in the year AD 397, to be finally ratified in the later Renaissance era. The first criterion was that the New Testament Gospels must be written in the names of Jesus's own apostles. Matthew was, of course, an apostle, as was John -- but Mark was not an apostle of Jesus as far as we know; neither was Luke; they were both colleagues of the later St Paul.

Thomas, on the other hand, was one of the original twelve, and yet the Gospel in his name was excluded. Not only that but, along with various other texts, it was sentenced to be destroyed. And so, throughout the Mediterranean world, numerous unapproved books were buried and hidden in the 5th century. Only in recent times have some of these early manuscripts been unearthed, with the greatest of all discoveries made (after 1500 years) in 1945 at Nag Hammadi in Egypt.

Although these books were not rediscovered until this present century, they were used openly by the early Christians. Certain of them, including the Gospels mentioned, along with the Gospel of Truth, the Gospel of the Egyptians and others, were actually mentioned in the 2nd-century writings of early churchmen such as Clement of Alexandria, Irenaeus of Lyon and Origen of Alexandria.

So, why were these and other apostolic Gospels not selected? Because there was a second, far more important criterion to consider -- the criterion by which, in truth, the Gospel selection was really made. It was, in fact, a wholly sexist regulation which precluded anything that upheld the status of women in Church or community society. Indeed, the Church's own Apostolic Constitutions were formulated on this basis. They state, "We do not permit our women to teach in the Church, only to pray and to hear those who teach. Our master, when he sent us the twelve, did nowhere send out a woman; for the head of the woman is the man, and it is not reasonable that the body should govern the head."

This was an outrageous statement with no apparent foundation, but it was for this very reason that dozens of Gospels were not selected, because they made it quite clear that there were many active women in the ministry of Jesus: women such as Mary Magdalene, Martha, Helena-Salome, Mary-Jacob Cleophas and Joanna. These were not only ministering disciples, but priestesses in their own right, running exemplary schools of

worship in the Nazarene tradition.

In his Epistle to the Romans, St Paul makes specific mention of his own female helpers: Phoebe, for example, whom he called a “sister of the Church” -- along with Julia, and Priscilla who “laid down her neck for the Cause.” Writings of the Gospel era are simply alive with women disciples, but the Church ignored them all. When the Precepts of Ecclesiastical Discipline were drawn up, they stated, “It is not permitted for a woman to speak in Church, nor to claim for herself a share in any masculine function.”

The Church of Rome was so frightened of women that it implemented a rule of celibacy for its priests -- a rule that became a law in 1138: a rule that persists today. But this rule has never been quite what it appears on the surface, for it was never sexual activity as such that bothered the Church. The more specific problem was priestly intimacy with women. Why? Because women become wives and mothers -- and the very nature of motherhood is a perpetuation of bloodlines. It was this that bothered the Church: a taboo subject which, at all costs, had to be separated from the necessary image of Jesus.

However, it was not as if the Bible had said any such thing. In fact, quite the reverse was the case. St Paul had actually said in his first Epistle to Timothy that a bishop should be married to one wife and that he should have children, for a man with experience in his own family household is actually far better qualified to take care of the Church.

But, even though the Roman Church authorities claimed to uphold the teaching of St Paul in particular, they chose completely to disregard this explicit directive to suit their own ends, so that Jesus’s marital status could be strategically ignored.

Notwithstanding this, the Church’s celibate, unmarried image of Jesus was at variance with other writings of the Gospel era, and it was openly contradicted in the public domain until the perpetuation of the truth was proclaimed a punishable heresy (only 450 years ago) at the Italian Council of Trento in 1547 (the year that Henry VIII Tudor died in England).

It is, however, not just the Christian New Testament which suffers from these sexist restrictions. A similar editing process was applied to the Hebrew Old Testament, making it conveniently suitable to be added to the Christian Bible. This is made particularly apparent by a couple of entries that bypassed the editors’ scrutiny. The books of Joshua and 2-Samuel both refer to the importance of the more ancient book of Jasher. But where is this book? Like so many others of equal importance, it is not to be found in the Bible!

Does the book of Jasher still exist? It certainly does. The nine-foot Hebrew scroll was a jewel of the Court of Emperor Charlemagne and the translation of the book of Jasher was the very reason that the University of Paris was founded in the year 800 -- more than a century before the now familiar version of the Old Testament was compiled.

Jasher was the personal staff-bearer to Moses, and the writings attributed to him are of enormous significance. The accounts relate to the Israelite sojourn in Egypt and tell of their exodus into Canaan. But they differ considerably from the version of the story that we know today. They explain that it was not Moses, but Miriam who was the spiritual leader of the tribes who crossed the Red Sea to Mount Sinai.

At that time, the Jews had never heard of Jehovah; they worshipped the goddess Asherah and their spiritual leaders were largely female. Indeed, Miriam posed such a problem for Moses in his attempt to create a new environment of male dominance that he imprisoned her, whereupon the Israelites rose up against Moses to secure Miriam’s release. This is in the book of Jasher, but it is not in the Bible.

Let us now move to where the Christian story began -- to the Gospels themselves. And, in doing this, let us first consider what the Gospels actually tell us, against what we perhaps think they tell us.

We have all learned to go along with what we are taught about the Gospels in schoolrooms and churches. But is the teaching correctly related? Does it always conform with the written scriptures? It is actually quite surprising how much we learn from pulpits or picture-books without checking the biblical text. The Nativity story itself provides a good example.

It is widely accepted (as the Christmas cards keep reminding us) that Jesus was born in a stable -- but the Gospels do not say that. In fact, there is no “stable” mentioned in any authorised Gospel. The Nativity is not mentioned at all in Mark or John, and Matthew makes it quite plain that Jesus was born “in a house.”

So where did the stable idea come from? It came from a misinterpretation of the Gospel of Luke which relates that Jesus was “laid in a manger” (not “born,” as often misquoted, but “laid”) and a manger was, and still is, nothing more than an animal feeding-box. In practice, it was perfectly common for mangers to be used as emergency cradles and they were often brought indoors for that very purpose.

So why has it been presumed that this particular manger was in a stable? Because the English translations of Luke tell us that there was “no room in the inn.” But the old manuscript of Luke did not say that. In fact, there were no inns in the region -- travellers lodged in private houses and family hospitality was a normal way of life in those days.

In fact, if we are really going to be precise, there were no stables in the region either. “Stable” is an English word that specifically defines a place for keeping horses. But few (apart from some Roman officers) ever used horses in 1st-century Judaea -- they mainly used mules and oxen which, if kept under cover at all, would have been in some type of outhouse -- certainly not a stable.

As for the mythical inn, the original Greek text of Luke does not relate that there was “no room in the inn.” By the best translation it actually states that there was “no provision in the room” (i.e. “no topos in the kataluma”). As previously mentioned, Matthew states that Jesus was born in a house and, when correctly translated, Luke reveals that Jesus was laid in a manger (an animal feeding box) because there was no cradle provided in the room.

While on the subject of Jesus’s birth, we ought to look at the chronology here, because the two Gospels which deal with the Nativity actually give different dates for the event. According to Matthew, Jesus was born in the reign of Herod the Great, who debated the event with the Magi and apparently ordered the slaying of the infants. King Herod died in the notional year 4 BC -- so we know from Matthew that Jesus was born before that. Indeed, because of this, most standard concordance Bibles give 5 BC as Jesus’s date of birth.

In Luke, however, a completely different date is given. This Gospel states that Jesus was born while Cyrenius was Governor of Syria -- the same year that Emperor Augustus implemented the national taxing census which caused Joseph and Mary to go to Bethlehem.

There are two relevant points to mention here, both of which are recorded in the 1st-century Jewish annals (such as *The Antiquities of the Jews*). Cyrenius was not appointed Governor of Syria until AD 6, and this was the very year that Emperor Augustus implemented the census, which was supervised by Cyrenius himself.

So Jesus appears to have been born on two separate occasions: “before 4 BC” and again “in AD 6.” Is there a mistake in one of the Gospels? Not necessarily -- at least not in the way things were originally portrayed. We are actually looking at two quite specific births: Jesus’s “physical” birth and his “community” birth. These were defined as the “first” and “second” births -- the second being an initiation into society by way of a ritual ceremony of rebirth.

Second births for boys took place at the age of twelve (a ceremony in which they were ritualistically born again from their mother's womb). And so we know from Luke that Jesus was twelve in AD 6. Unfortunately, the latter-day Gospel translators and transcribers completely missed the significance of this, while subsequent Church teachings combined the Matthew and Luke accounts into one, giving rise to the spurious nonsense about a Nativity scene in a stable.

Since Jesus was twelve in AD 6 (as given in Luke), then he was actually born in 7 BC, which was indeed during the late reign of Herod the Great as related in Matthew. But we now discover what appears to be another anomaly. The Luke Gospel then says that when Jesus was twelve years old, his parents, Mary and Joseph, took him to Jerusalem for the day -- only to walk homewards for a full day’s journey with their friends before they realised that Jesus was not in their party. Then they returned to Jerusalem to find him at the temple discussing his father’s business with the doctors.

In reality, what sort of parents would wander for a whole day in the desert, without knowing their twelve-year-old son was not with them? The fact is that the whole point of the passage has been lost in the translation, for there was a wealth of difference between a twelve-year-old son and a son in his twelfth year. When a son, on completing his initial twelve years (that is to say, on reaching his thirteenth birthday) was initiated into the community at the ceremony of his Second Birth, he was regarded as commencing his first year. It was the original root of the modern bar mitzvah. His next initiation -- the initiation of manhood in the community -- took place in his ninth year, when he was twenty-one (the root of the age-twenty-one privilege). Various “degrees” then followed and the next major test was at the end of his twelfth year: at the age of twenty-four.

It is, therefore, apparent that when Jesus remained at the temple in his twelfth year, he was actually twenty-four years old, not twelve. As for his discussion with the doctors, this would have related to his next degree, the degree set by his spiritual father, whose business he discussed. At that time, his spiritual father (the overall patriarch) was Simeon the Essene -- and we see, in Luke, that it was precisely this man (the “just and devout Simeon”) who had legitimated Jesus under the law.

So, can we trust the Gospels? The answer to this question is “yes,” we can trust them to a point, but we cannot trust the convoluted and distorted versions which are published and presented to us today. Subsequent to the original apostolic writings, the Gospels of the early Church were written in 2nd and 3rd century Greek. Along with the Bible as a whole, they were translated into Church Latin in the 4th century, but it was then to be more than a thousand years before any English translation was made.

The present English-language Gospels date back to the Authorized Bible compiled for King James VI Stuart of Scots (James I of England) in the early 17th century. This was published and set into print no more than 165 years before America’s Declaration of Independence -- only a few years before the first Pilgrim Fathers set sail from England.

Bible translation was, however, a risky business in those days. For daring to translate the Bible into English, the 14th -century reformer John Wycliffe was denounced as a heretic and his books were burned. In the early 16th century William Tyndale was executed by strangulation in Belgium, and then burned just to ensure his death, for translating the Bible into English. A little later, Miles Coverdale (a Tyndale disciple) made another translation but, at that stage, the Church had split into two main factions. As a result, Coverdale’s version was accepted by the Protestant Church, although he remained a heretic in the eyes of Rome.

The problem was that, for as long as the printed text remained in an obscure form of Church Latin which only the bishops could understand or interpret, they could teach whatever they wanted. But if it were translated into popular languages that people could read for themselves, the Church teachings would doubtless be open to question.

It is the Bible translated for King James upon which the majority of subsequent English-language editions have been based. But, in practice, this 17th -century Authorized Version was not a direct translation from anything; it was mostly translated from the Greek, partly from the Latin and, to some extent, from the works of others who had made previous illegitimate translations.

In their rendering of the New Testament, King James’s linguists endeavoured to appease both the Protestants and the Catholics. This was the only way to produce a generally acceptable text, but their ambition was not entirely successful. The Catholics thought the translators were siding with the Protestants and tried to blow up King James in the Houses of Parliament (the famous Gunpowder Plot), while the Protestants maintained that the King was in league with the Catholics!

The translators were not only concerned with denominational appeasement; they also tried for something that we would today call “political correctness.” In one instance the direct translation referred to a group of people called “heavenly soldiers,” but this was crossed out and “heavenly army” was inserted instead. This, however, was deleted yet again (since the concept of an armed unit was not acceptable) to be replaced with “heavenly host.” The problem was that no one knew precisely what a “host” was; the word had been resurrected after centuries of obscurity to enter the dictionaries of the era with the vague description: “a lot of people.”

It is actually quite surprising how many ambiguous words were brought back into use to facilitate political correctness for the King James Bible while, at the same time, William Shakespeare was doing likewise in his plays. Indeed, the English-language vocabulary was increased by more than fifty percent as a result of words invented or brought back from the mists of time by the writers of the period.

So, although eminently poetic, the language of the Authorized English Bible is quite unlike that ever spoken by anyone in England or anywhere else but, from this approved canonical interpretation, all other English-language Bibles have emerged in their various forms. However, for all its faults and its beautifully designed verse pattern, it remains the closest of all translations from the original Greek manuscripts. All other Anglicised versions (Standard, New English, Revised, Modern, Good News, etc.) have been significantly corrupted and they are quite unsuitable for serious study because they each have their own specific agenda. An extreme version of how this works in practice is found in a Bible presently issued in Papua, Pacific New Guinea, where there are tribes who experience familiarity on a daily basis with no other animal but the pig. In the current edition of their Bible, every animal mentioned in the text, whether originally an ox, lion, ass, sheep or whatever, is now a pig. Even Jesus, the traditional “lamb of God,” in this Bible is “the pig of God”!

To facilitate the best possible trust in the Gospels, we must go back to the original Greek manuscripts with their often used Hebrew and Aramaic words and phrases. In this respect, we discover that (just as with the Nativity story) a good deal of relevant content has been misrepresented, misunderstood, mistranslated, or simply just lost in the telling. Sometimes this has happened because original words have no direct counterpart in other languages.

Christians are taught that Jesus's father Joseph was a carpenter, as explained in the English-language Gospels. But it did not say that in the original Gospels. By the best translation, it actually said that Joseph was a Master of the Craft or Master Craftsman. The word "carpenter" was simply a translator's concept of a craftsman. Anyone associated with modern Freemasonry will recognise the term "the Craft" and it has nothing whatever to do with woodwork. The text simply denoted that Joseph was a masterly, learned and scholarly man, and the description was especially concerned with matters of scientific metallurgy.

Another example is the concept of the Virgin Birth. English-language Gospels tell us that Jesus's mother Mary was a "virgin" and, as we understand the word, it denotes a woman with no experience of sexual union. But this was translated not from the Greek initially but from the Latin, which referred to her as being a *virgo*, meaning nothing more than a "young woman." To have meant the same thing as "virgin" does today, the Latin would have been *virgo intacta* -- that is to say, a "young woman intact."

Looking back beyond the Latin text we discover that the word translated to *virgo* (a young woman) was the old Semitic word *almah* which meant the very same: a "young woman," and it had no sexual connotation whatever. Had Mary actually been physically *virgo intacta*, the Semitic word used would have been *bethulah*, not *almah*.

So, have we been completely misguided by the Gospels? No; we have been misguided by the English translations of the Gospels. Also by a Church establishment that has done everything in its power to deny women any normal lifestyle in the Gospel story. Hence, the New Testament's key women are portrayed as virgins, whores and sometimes widows -- but never everyday girlfriends, wives or mothers, and certainly never priestesses or holy sisters.

Notwithstanding the Virgin Birth dogma, the Gospels tell us time and time again that Jesus was descended from King David through his father Joseph. Even St Paul explains this in his Epistle to the Hebrews. But Christians are taught that Jesus's father was a lowly carpenter, while his mother was a virgin -- neither of which descriptions can be found in any original text. It follows, therefore, that to get the best out of the Gospels we have to read them as they were written, not as they have been interpreted according to Church doctrine and modern language.

Precisely when the four main Gospels were written is uncertain. What we do know is that they were first published at various stages in the second half of the first century. They were unanimous initially in revealing that Jesus was a Nazarene. This is actually upheld in the Roman annals. Additionally, the 1st-century Jewish chronicles, along with the Bible's Acts of the Apostles, confirms that both Jesus's brother James and St Paul were leaders of the sect of the Nazarenes.

This Nazarene definition is very important to the Grail story because it has been so often misrepresented to suggest that Jesus came from the town of Nazareth. For the past 400 years, English-language Gospels have perpetuated the error by wrongly translating "Jesus the Nazarene" as "Jesus of Nazareth," albeit there was no historical connection between Nazareth and the Nazarenes. In fact, the settlement at Nazareth was established in the AD 60s, thirty years or so after the Crucifixion. Nobody in Jesus's early life came from Nazareth -- it was not there!

The Nazarenes were a liberal Jewish sect opposed to the strict Hebrew regime of the Pharisees and Sadducees. The Nazarene culture and language were heavily influenced by the philosophers of ancient Greece and their community supported the concept of equal opportunity for men and women. Documents of the time referred not to Nazareth but to the Nazarene community, wherein priestesses coexisted in equal status with priests. It has to be remembered, therefore, that Jesus was not a Christian: he was a Nazarene -- a radical, westernised Jew. The Christian movement was founded by others in the wake of his own mission, with the word "Christian" first recorded in AD 44 in Antioch, Syria.

In the Arab world, the word used to describe Jesus and his followers is *nazara*. This is confirmed in the Islamic Koran and the word means "keepers" or "guardians." The full definition is *Nazara ha--Brit*: "Keepers of the Covenant."

In the time of Jesus, the Nazarenes lived in Galilee and in that mystical realm which the Bible calls the "wilderness," which was actually a very defined place. It was essentially the land around the main settlement at Qumrân which spread out to Mird and other places near the Dead Sea. It was, of course, at Qumrân that the Dead Sea Scrolls were discovered in 1948.

Some time after the Crucifixion, Peter and his friend Paul went to Antioch, then on to Rome, beginning the movement that became Christianity. But Jesus, along with his brother James and the majority of apostles,

continued the Nazarene teachings, progressing them into Europe, where they were associated with the Celtic Church. This Church had been formally implemented as the church of Jesus in AD 37, while the Roman Church was itself formed 300 years later.

Through many centuries the Celtic Church, with its Nazarene culture, was directly opposed to the Church of Rome -- the main difference being that the Celtic faith was based upon the teachings, codes and practices of Jesus himself. Roman Christianity, on the other hand, turned Jesus into the object of its religious veneration, forsaking his teachings to create an Imperial "hybrid" faith for the benefit of the emperors and popes. It exists, in fact, not as Christianity, but as "churchianity."

Apart from straightforward misunderstandings, misinterpretations and mistranslations, the canonical Gospels suffer from numerous purposeful amendments. Some original entries have been changed or deleted, while other entries have been added to suit the Church's vested interest. The majority of these edits and amendments were made in the 4th century, when the texts were translated into Latin from their original Greek and Semitic tongues.

Even earlier, in about AD 195, Bishop Clement of Alexandria made the first known amendment to the Gospel texts. He deleted a substantial section from the Gospel of Mark (written more than a hundred years before that time) and justified his action in a letter, stating: "For even if they should say something true, one who loves the truth should not, even so, agree with them -- for not all true things are to be said to all men." What he meant was that, even at that very early stage, there was already a discrepancy between what the Gospel writers had written and what the bishops wanted to teach.

Today, this section deleted by St Clement is still missing from the Gospel of Mark. But when Mark is compared with the Gospel that we know today, we find that today's Gospel is a good deal longer than the original, having had spurious additions made. One of these additional sections comprises the whole of the Resurrection sequence -- amounting to twelve full verses at the end of Mark, chapter 16. It is now known that everything told here about the events after the Crucifixion was added by Church scribes sometime in the late 4th century.

But what exactly was in this section of Mark that Clement saw fit to remove? It was the item which dealt with the raising of Lazarus. In the context of the original Mark text, however, Lazarus was portrayed in a state of excommunication: spiritual death by decree, not in a state of physical death. The account even had Lazarus and Jesus calling to each other before the tomb was opened. This, of course, defeated the bishops' desire to portray the raising of Lazarus as a spiritual "miracle," not as a straightforward release from excommunication. More importantly, it set the scene for the story of the Crucifixion of Jesus himself, whose own subsequent raising from spiritual death was determined by the same three-day rule that applied to Lazarus.

Jesus was raised (released or resurrected) from death by decree on the statutory third day but, in the case of Lazarus, Jesus flouted the rules by raising his friend after the three-day period of symbolic sickness. At that point, civil death would have become absolute in the eyes of the legal elders of the Sanhedrin Council, whereupon Lazarus would have been wrapped in sacking and buried alive. His crime was that he had led a violent people's revolt to safeguard the public water supply which had been diverted through a new Roman aqueduct in Jerusalem. What made the Lazarus raising special was that Jesus performed the release while not holding any priestly entitlement to do so -- subsequent to which Herod-Antipas of Galilee compelled the High Priest of Jerusalem to acknowledge the unprecedented event.

There was, however, rather more to the removed section of Mark because, in telling the story of Lazarus, the account made it perfectly clear that Jesus and Mary Magdalene were man and wife. The Lazarus story now appears only in the Gospel of John, but contains a strange sequence which has Martha coming from the Lazarus house to greet Jesus, whereas her sister, Mary Magdalene, remains inside until summoned by Jesus. In contrast to this, the original Mark account related that Mary did come out of the house with Martha, but was then chastised by the disciples and sent back indoors to await Jesus's instruction. This was a specific requirement of Judaic law, whereby a wife in ritual mourning was not allowed to emerge from the property until instructed by her husband.

There is a good deal of information outside the Bible to confirm that Jesus and Mary Magdalene were married. But is there anything relevant in the Gospels today -- anything which perhaps the editors missed? Indeed there is.

There are seven lists given in the Gospels of the women who were Jesus's regular companions. These lists all include his mother, but in six of these seven lists the first name given (even ahead of Jesus's mother) is that of Mary Magdalene, making it plain that she was, in fact, the First Lady: the Messianic Queen.

But is the marriage itself detailed in the Gospels? Actually, it is. Many have suggested that the wedding

at Cana was the marriage of Jesus and Mary Magdalene -- but this was not the wedding ceremony as such, being simply the pre-marital betrothal feast. The marriage is defined by the quite separate anointings of Jesus by Mary at Bethany. Chronologically, these anointings (as given in the Gospels) were two-and-a-half years apart.

Readers of the 1st century would have been fully conversant with the two-part ritual of the sacred marriage of a dynastic heir. Jesus, as we know, was a Messiah, which means quite simply an "Anointed One." In fact, all anointed senior priests and Davidic kings were Messiahs; Jesus was not unique in this regard. Although not an ordained priest, he gained his right to Messiah status by way of descent from King David and the kingly line, but he did not achieve that status until he was ritually anointed by Mary Magdalene in her capacity as a bridal high priestess.

The word "Messiah" comes from the Hebrew verb *mashiach*: "to anoint," which derives from the Egyptian *messeh*: "the holy crocodile." It was with the fat of the *messeh* that the Pharaoh's sister-brides anointed their husbands on marriage, and the Egyptian custom sprang from kingly practice in old Mesopotamia. In the Old Testament's Song of Solomon we learn of the bridal anointing of the king. It is detailed that the oil used in Judah was the fragrant ointment of spikenard (an expensive root oil from the Himalayas) and it is explained that this ritual was performed while the kingly husband sat at the table.

In the New Testament, the anointing of Jesus by Mary Magdalene was indeed performed while he sat at the table, and specifically with the bridal ointment of spikenard. Afterwards, Mary wiped Jesus's feet with her hair and, on the first occasion of the two-part ceremony, she wept. All of these things signify the marital anointing of a dynastic heir.

Other anointings of Messiahs (whether on coronation or admission to the senior priesthood) were always conducted by men: by the High Zadok or the High Priest. The oil used was olive oil, mixed with cinnamon and other spices, but never spikenard. This oil was the express prerogative of a Messianic bride who had to be a "Mary" -- a sister of a sacred order. Jesus's mother was a Mary; so too would his wife have been a Mary, by title at least if not by baptismal name. Some conventual orders still maintain the tradition by adding the title "Mary" to the baptismal names of their nuns: Sister Mary Theresa, Sister Mary Louise, for example.

Messianic marriages were always conducted in two stages. The first (the anointing in Luke) was the legal commitment to wedlock, while the second (the later anointing in Matthew, Mark and John) was the cementing of the contract. In Jesus and Mary's case the second anointing was of particular significance for, as explained by Flavius Josephus in the 1st-century Antiquities of the Jews, the second part of the marriage ceremony was never conducted until the wife was three months pregnant.

Dynastic heirs such as Jesus were expressly required to perpetuate their lines. Marriage was essential, but community law protected the dynasts against marriage to women who proved barren or kept miscarrying. This protection was provided by the three-month pregnancy rule. Miscarriages would not often happen after that term, subsequent to which it was considered safe enough to complete the marriage contract.

When anointing her husband at that stage, the Messianic bride was said to be anointing him for burial, as confirmed in the Gospels. From that day she would carry a vial of spikenard around her neck, throughout her husband's life, to be used again on his entombment. It was for this very purpose that Mary Magdalene would have gone to Jesus's tomb, as she did on the Sabbath after the Crucifixion.

After the second Bethany anointing, the Gospels relate that Jesus said: "Whosoever this Gospel shall be preached throughout the whole world, this also that she hath done shall be spoken of for a memorial of her." But did the Christian Church authorities honour Mary Magdalene and speak of this act as a memorial? No they did not; they completely ignored Jesus's own directive and denounced Mary as a whore.

To the esoteric Grail Church and the Knights Templars, however, Mary Magdalene was always regarded as a saint. She is still revered as such by many today, but the interesting fact of this sainthood is that Mary is the recognized patron saint of wine-growers: the guardian of the Vine. Hence, she is the guardian of the sacred Bloodline of the Holy Grail.

There is much in the Gospels that we do not presume to be there because we are never encouraged to look beyond a superficial level. However, we have been aided greatly in this regard in recent years by the Dead Sea Scrolls and by the extraordinary research of Australian theologian Dr Barbara Thiering. The Scrolls not only explain the offices of the Messiah of Israel; they tell about the council of twelve delegate apostles appointed to preside over specific aspects of government and ritual. In turn, this leads to a greater awareness of the apostles themselves through understanding their duties and community standing.

We now know that there are allegories within the Gospels: the use of words that have hitherto been

misunderstood. We know that baptismal priests were called “fishers,” while those who aided them by hauling the baptismal candidates into the boats in large nets were called “fishermen,” with the candidates themselves being called “fishes.” The apostles James and John were both ordained “fishers,” but the brothers Peter and Andrew were lay “fishermen,” to whom Jesus promised ministerial status, saying, “I will make you to become fishers of men.”

Also, we now know there was a particular jargon of the Gospel era, a jargon that would have been readily understood by readers of the time, embodying words that have been lost to later interpretation. Today, for example, we call our theatre investors “angels” and our top entertainers “stars,” but what would a reader from some distant culture in two thousand years’ time make of a statement such as “The angel went to talk to the stars”? The Gospels are full of such jargonistic words: the “poor,” the “lepers,” the “multitude,” the “blind” -- but none of these was what we presume it to mean today. Definitions such as “clouds,” “sheep,” “fishes,” “loaves” and a variety of others were all related (just like our modern “stars”) to people.

When the Gospels were written in the 1st century they were issued into a Roman-controlled environment and their content had to be disguised against Imperial scrutiny. The information was often political, so it was coded and veiled. Where such relevant sections appear, we see them often heralded by the words, “for those with ears to hear” -- for those who understand the code. It was, in practice, no different to the coded information passed between members of oppressed groups throughout history, such as the documentation issued by latter-day Jews in Germany in the 1930s and 1940s.

Through our knowledge of this scribal cryptology, we can now determine dates and locations with very great accuracy. We can uncover many hidden meanings in the Gospels, to the extent that the miracles themselves take on a whole new context. This does not in any way deny the fact that Jesus might have had special powers, but the Gospel “miracles” were not in themselves supernatural events. They gained prominence because, in the prevailing political arena, they were thoroughly unprecedented actions which successfully flouted the law.

Let us consider the water and wine at Cana by following the story as it is told in the Bible, in contrast to its common pulpit portrayal. Of all the four Gospels, only John records the wedding feast at Cana -- an event which embodies the said “miracle” of the water and wine transformation. Actually, if this was such an important miracle (as Church teaching promotes) one would rightly expect the account to appear in the other Gospels as well. However, in the context of this story, Christians are generally taught that the party “ran out of wine” -- even though the Bible text does not say that. What it says is: “When they wanted wine, the mother of Jesus said, They have no wine.”

In practice, wine taken at betrothal feasts was only available to priests and celibate Jews, not to married men, novices or any others who were regarded as being unsanctified. They were allowed only water -- a purification ritual, as stated in John. When the time came for this ritual, Jesus’s mother (clearly not happy about the discrimination and directing Jesus’s attention to the unsanctified guests) said: “They have no wine.”

Having not yet been anointed to Messiah status, Jesus responded, “Mine hour is not yet come,” at which Mary forced the issue and Jesus then flouted convention, abandoning the water to provide wine for everyone. The Ruler of the Feast made no comment whatsoever about any miracle; he simply expressed his amazement that the wine had turned up at that stage of the proceedings.

It has often been suggested that the feast at Cana was Jesus’s own wedding ceremony because he and his mother displayed a right of command that would not be associated with ordinary guests. However, this event can be dated to the summer of AD 30, in the month equivalent to our modern June. First weddings were always held in the month of Atonement (modern September) and betrothal feasts were held three months before that. In this particular instance, we find that the first marital anointing of Jesus by Mary Magdalene was at the Atonement of AD 30, three months after the Cana ceremony which appears to have been their own betrothal feast.

Aspects of the Gospels (though not always in agreement with each other) can actually be followed outside the Bible; even the trial and crucifixion of Jesus are mentioned in the Annals of Imperial Rome. We can now determine from chronological survey that the Crucifixion took place at the March Passover of AD 33, while the Bethany second marriage anointing was in the week prior to that. We also know that, at that stage, Mary Magdalene had to have been three months pregnant -- which means she should have given birth in September of AD 33.

If the Gospels are read as they are written, Jesus appears as a liberating dynast, endeavouring to unite the people of the region against the oppression of the Roman Empire. Judaea at the time was just like France

under German occupation in World War II. The authorities were controlled by the military occupational force and resistance movements were a part of everyday life. Jesus was awaited, expected and, by the end of the Gospel story, had become an anointed Messiah. Interestingly, in the Antiquities of the Jews, Jesus is called a “wise man,” a “teacher” and the “King,” but there is no mention whatever about his being divine, as contrived in later “churchianity.”

While the Dead Sea Scrolls identify the Messiah as the supreme Military commander of Israel, the New Testament also makes it clear that the apostles were armed. From the time of recruitment, Jesus checked that they all had swords and, at Jesus’s arrest, Peter drew his sword against Malchus. Even Jesus himself said, “I came not to send peace but a sword.”

Many of the high-ranking Jews in Jerusalem were quite content to hold positions of power backed by a foreign military regime. Apart from that, the Hebrew groups were sectarian and did not want to share their God Jehovah with anybody else, certainly not with unclean Gentiles (Arabs and other non-Jews). To the Pharisees and Sadducees, the Jews were God’s “chosen people”: he belonged to them; they belonged to him. But there were other Jews -- in particular the Nazarenes and Essenes, who were influenced by a more liberal, western doctrine. In the event, Jesus’s mission failed because the sectarian rift was insurmountable -- and the rift is still there today.

The sentencing of Jesus was by the Roman Governor, Pontius Pilate, but Jesus had actually been condemned and excommunicated prior to that by the Sanhedrin Council of Jewish elders. It was decided, however, to contrive a punishment whereby Jesus would be formally sentenced by Pilate, who was already trying other prisoners for leading insurrections against himself. As recently confirmed by the Supreme Judge and Attorney General of Israel, it was quite illegal for the Sanhedrin Council to sit at night or to operate during the Passover -- so the timing for committing Jesus to Roman law was perfect.

As for Jesus’s death on the cross, it is perfectly clear this was spiritual death, not physical death, as determined by the three-day rule that everybody in the 1st century would have understood.

In civil and legal terms, Jesus was already dead when he was placed on the cross, prior to which he was denounced, scourged and prepared for death by decree (excommunication). For three days Jesus would have been nominally “sick,” with absolute death coming on the fourth day. On that day he would be entombed (buried alive), but during the first three days he could, in fact, be raised or resurrected, as he had predicted would be the case.

Raisings and resurrections (apart from the fact that Jesus once flouted the rule with Lazarus) could only be performed by the High Priest or by the Father of the Community. The High Priest at that time was Joseph Caiaphas (the very man who condemned Jesus), therefore the raising had to be performed by the patriarchal Father. There are Gospel accounts of Jesus talking to the Father from the cross, culminating in “Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit,” and the appointed Father of the day was the Magian apostle Simon Zelotes.

Christians are taught that Jesus’s physical death was proved by the blood and water that flowed when he was pierced by the spear, but this has been very badly translated. The original word does not translate to “pierced”; it translates to “pricked” or “scratched.” This in turn was mistranslated into the Latin verb “to open,” and then into the English word “pierced.” Indeed, just like today, a common test for reflex action was scratching, prodding or pricking the skin with a sharp instrument.

A surgeon of the British Medical Association recently stated: “Medically, the outflow of water is impossible to explain. Blood flowing from a stab wound is evidence of life, not death. It would take a large, gaping laceration for any drop of blood to flow from a dead body because there is no vascular action.” In the event, it is blatantly apparent that Jesus survived. This is explicitly maintained in non-canonical Gospels and even the Islamic Koran confirms the fact in no uncertain terms.

During that Friday afternoon when Jesus was on the Cross, there was a three-hour-forward time change. Time was recorded then by sundials and by priests who marked the hours by a sequence of measured prayer sessions. In essence, there were daytime hours and there were night-time hours. Today we have a twenty-four-hour day but, in John, Jesus is recorded as saying, “Are there not twelve hours in a day?” There were, in practice, twelve hours in a day and another twelve hours in the night -- with the daytime hours beginning at sunrise. From time to time, the beginning of daytime changed, as a result of which the beginning of night-time changed. At Passover time (modern March), the beginning of daytime would have been somewhere around six o’clock in the morning as we know it.

We know from the Gospels that Joseph of Arimathea negotiated with Pontius Pilate to have Jesus removed from the cross after only a few hours of hanging, but the Gospels do not actually agree on the precise

timing of events. This is because of the notional time change, when three hours disappeared from the day, to be replaced with three night-time hours (that is to say, daylight hours were substituted with hours of darkness). The Gospels explain that the land fell into darkness for three hours, which relates to our own split-second changing of clocks for daylight saving. However, these three hours were the crux of everything that followed. The Hebrew lunarists made their change during the daytime, but the solarists (of which the Essenes and the Magi were factions) did not make their change until midnight. This actually means that, according to the Mark Gospel (which relates to Hebrew time), Jesus was crucified at the third hour, but in John (which uses solar time) he was crucified at the sixth hour.

On that evening the Hebrews began their Sabbath at the old nine o'clock, but the Essenes and Magians still had three hours to go before their Sabbath. It was those extra three hours which enabled them to work with Jesus during a period of time wherein others were not allowed to undertake any physical activity.

And so we come to one of the most misunderstood events in the Bible -- the Ascension. And in consideration of this, the births of Jesus and Mary Magdalene's three children become apparent.

We know from Gospel chronology that the Bethany second-marriage anointing of Jesus by Mary Magdalene was in the week before the Crucifixion (at the time of the March Passover). Also that, at that stage, Mary was three-months pregnant and should, therefore, have given birth six months later. So, what do the Gospels tell us about events in the notional month of September AD 33? In fact, they tell us nothing, but the story is taken up in the Acts of the Apostles, which detail for that month the event which we have come to know as the Ascension.

One thing which the Acts do not do, however, is to call the event the "Ascension." This was a tag established by way of a Roman Church doctrine more than three centuries later. What the Bible text actually says is: "And when he had spoken these things ... he was taken up, and a cloud received him out of their sight." It then continues, relating that a man in white said to the disciples: "Why stand ye gazing up into heaven? This same Jesus ... shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go." Then, a little later in the Acts, it says that heaven must receive Jesus until "the time of restitution."

Given that this was the very month in which Mary Magdalene's child was due, is there perhaps some connection between Mary's confinement and the so-called Ascension? There certainly is -- and the connection is made by virtue of the said "time of restitution." Not only were there rules to govern the marriage ceremony of a Messianic heir, but so too were there rules to govern the marriage itself. The rules of dynastic wedlock were quite unlike the Jewish family norm, and Messianic parents were formally separated at the birth of a child. Even prior to this, intimacy between a dynastic husband and wife was only allowed in December, so that births of heirs would always fall in the month of September -- the month of Atonement, the holiest month of the calendar.

Indeed, it was this very rule which Jesus's own parents (Joseph and Mary) had themselves broken. And this was the reason why the Jews were split in opinion as to whether Jesus was, in fact, their true Messiah. When a dynastic child was conceived at the wrong time of year, the mother was generally placed in monastic custody for the birth so as to avoid public embarrassment. This was called being "put away privily" and Matthew states quite plainly that, when Mary's pregnancy was discovered, "Joseph, her husband, being a just man and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily."

In this instance, special dispensation for the birth was granted by the angelic priest Simeon who, at that time, held the distinction of "Gabriel," being the archangel in charge. The Dead Sea Scrolls detail that the archangels (or chief ambassadors) were the senior priests at Qumrân who retained the traditional Old Testament titles of Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, Sariel, etc. In the case of Jesus and Mary Magdalene, however, the rules of wedlock had been obeyed to the letter, and their first child was properly conceived in December AD 32, to be born in September AD 33.

From the moment of a dynastic birth, the parents were physically separated -- for six years if the child was a boy and for three years if the child was a girl. Their marriage would only be recommenced at the designated "time of restitution." Meanwhile, the mother and child would enter the equivalent of a convent and the father would enter the "kingdom of heaven." This kingdom was actually the Essene high monastery at Mird, by the Dead Sea, and the ceremony of entry was conducted by the angelic priests under the supervision of the appointed Leader of the Pilgrims. In the Old Testament book of Exodus, the Israelite pilgrims were led into the Holy Land by a cloud and, in accordance with this continued Exodus imagery, the priestly Leader of the Pilgrims was designated with the title "Cloud."

So, if we now read the Acts verses as they were intended to be understood, we see that Jesus was taken

up by the Cloud (the Leader of the Pilgrims) to the kingdom of heaven (the high monastery), whereupon the man in white (an angelic priest) said that Jesus would return at the time of restitution (when his earthly marriage was restored).

If we now look at St Paul's Epistle to the Hebrews we discover that he explains the said Ascension event in some greater detail. Paul actually tells of how Jesus was admitted to the priesthood of heaven when he actually had no entitlement to such a sacred office. He explains that Jesus was born (through his father Joseph) into the Davidic line of Judah -- a line which held the right of kingship but had no right to priesthood, for this was the sole prerogative of the line of Aaron and Levi. However, says Paul, a special dispensation was granted, and that "for the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law." As a result of this express change of the law, it is explained that Jesus was enabled to enter the kingdom of heaven in the priestly Order of Melchizedek.

In September AD 33, therefore, the first child of Jesus and Mary Magdalene was born, and Jesus duly entered the kingdom of heaven. There is no reference to this child being a son (as there is for the two subsequent births) and, given that Jesus returned three years later (in AD 36), we know that Mary must have had a daughter on this occasion.

By following the chronology of the Acts, we see that in September AD 37 a second child was born, followed by another in AD 44. The period from the first of these two births to the second restitution in AD 43 was six years, which denotes that the AD 37 child was a son. This fact is also conveyed by the use of cryptic wording -- the same cryptic wording afforded to the AD 44 child -- so we know that this third child was also a son.

In accordance with the scribal codes interpreted from the Dead Sea Scrolls, everything cryptic within the New Testament is set up beforehand by some other entry which explains that the inherent message is "for those with ears to hear." Once these codes and allegories are understood, they never ever vary. As Dr Thiering has pointed out, they mean the same thing every time they are used, and they are used every time that same meaning is required. For example, the Gospel of John explains that Jesus was called the "Word of God": "And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us." John goes to great lengths to explain the relevance of this definition and subsequent entries give details such as "the Word of God stood by the lake" and "the Word of God was in Samaria."

Messages conveying information about fertility and new life are established in the Parable of the Sower, whose seed "bore fruit and increased." Thus, when it is said that "the Word of God increased," those "with ears to hear" would recognise at once that Jesus increased -- that is to say, he had a son. There are two such entries in the Acts, and they fall precisely on cue in AD 37 and AD 44.

Probably the most misrepresented book of the New Testament is the book of The Revelation of St John the Divine -- misrepresented by the Church, that is, not by the book itself. This book is quite unlike any other in the Bible. It is dubbed with terrible supernatural overtones and its straightforward imagery has been savagely corrupted by the Church to present the text as some form of foreboding or prophecy of warning. But the book is not called The Prophecy or The Warning"; it is called The Revelation.

So, what does the book reveal? Chronologically, its story follows the Acts of the Apostles and the book of The Revelation is, in fact, the continuing story of Jesus, Mary Magdalene and their sons -- particularly the elder son, Jesus Justus. It follows his life and details his marriage, along with the birth of his own son. This much misunderstood New Testament book is not a foreboding or a warning as the fearful Church would have us believe. It is precisely what it says it is: a revelation.

As we saw earlier, ordained priests of the era were called "fishers"; their helpers were called "fishermen" and baptismal candidates were called "fishes." Jesus became an ordained fisher when he entered the Kingdom of Heaven, but until that time (as explained by St Paul) he held no priestly office. In the rite of ordination, the officiating Levite priests of the Sanctuary would administer five loaves of bread and two fish to the candidates, but the law was very firm in that such candidates had to be circumcised Jews. Gentiles and uncircumcised Samaritans were on no account afforded any such privilege. Indeed, it was this particular custom which Jesus had flouted at the so-called Feeding of the Five-thousand, when he presumed entitlement to his own liberal ministry by offering the loaves and fish to an unsanctified gathering.

Apart from eventually becoming a fisher, Jesus was also referred to as the Christ -- a Greek definition (from Khristos) which meant the King. In saying the name Jesus Christ, we are actually saying King Jesus, and his kingly heritage was of the Royal House of Judah (the House of David), as mentioned numerous times in the

Gospels and in the Epistles of St Paul.

From AD 33, therefore, Jesus emerged with the dual status of a Priest Christ or, as is more commonly cited in Grail lore, a Fisher King. This definition, as we shall see, was to become the hereditary and dynastic office of Jesus's heirs, and the succeeding Fisher Kings were paramount in the continuing Bloodline of the Holy Grail.

Prior to the birth of her second son in AD 44, Mary Magdalene was exiled from Judaea following a political uprising in which she was implicated. Along with Philip, Lazarus and a few retainers, she travelled (by arrangement with King Herod-Agrippa II) to live at the Herodian estate near Lyon, in Gaul (which later became France).

From the earliest times, through the medieval era, to the great Renaissance, Mary's flight was portrayed in illuminated manuscripts and great artworks alike. Her life and work in France, especially in Provence and the Languedoc region, appeared not only in works of European history but also in the Roman Church liturgy -- until her story was suppressed by the Vatican.

Mary Magdalene's exile is related in the book of The Revelation, which describes that she was pregnant at the time. It tells also of how the Roman authorities subsequently persecuted Mary, her son and his heirs: "And she, being with child, cried and pained to be delivered. And behold, a great red dragon, having seven heads and seven crowns stood before the woman for to devour her child. And she brought forth a man-child. And the woman fled into the wilderness. And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war forever with the remnant of her seed -- which have the testimony of Jesus Christ."

It was to Gaul that Mary was said to have carried the Sangréal (the Blood Royal: the Holy Grail), and it was in Gaul that the famous line of Jesus and Mary's immediate descendant heirs, the Fisher Kings, flourished for 300 years. The eternal motto of the Fisher Kings was "In Strength" -- inspired by the name of their ancestor, Boaz (the great-grandfather of King David), whose name similarly meant "In Strength." When translated into Latin, this became In Fortis, which was subsequently corrupted to Anfortas, the name of the key Fisher King in Grail romance.

We can now return to the Grail's traditional symbolism as a chalice containing the blood of Jesus. We can also consider graphic designs dating back well beyond the Dark Ages to about 3500 BC and, in doing this, we discover that a chalice or a cup was the longest-standing symbol of the female. Its representation was that of the Sacred Vessel -- the vas uterus: the womb.

And so, when fleeing into France, Mary Magdalene carried the Sangréal in the sacred chalice of her womb -- just as the book of The Revelation explains. And the name of this second son was Joseph.

The equivalent traditional symbol of the male was a blade or a horn, usually represented by a sword or a unicorn. In the Old Testament's Song of Solomon and in the Psalms of David, the fertile unicorn is associated with the kingly line of Judah -- and it was for this very reason that the Cathars of Provence used the mystical beast to symbolise the Grail bloodline.

Mary Magdalene died in Provence in AD 63 and, in that very year, Joseph of Arimathea built the famous chapel at Glastonbury in England as a memorial to the Messianic Queen. This was the first above-ground Christian chapel in the world, and in the following year Mary's son Jesus Justus dedicated it to his mother. Jesus the younger had previously been to England with Joseph of Arimathea at the age of twelve, in AD 49. It was this event which inspired William Blake's famous song Jerusalem: "And did those feet in ancient time, walk upon England's mountains green."

But who was Joseph of Arimathea -- the man who assumed full control of affairs at the Crucifixion? And why was it that Jesus's mother, his wife and the rest of the family accepted Joseph's intervention without question?

As late as the year 900, the Byzantine Church (which had split from the Church of Rome) decided to announce that Joseph of Arimathea was the uncle of Jesus's mother Mary. And from that time, portrayals of Joseph have shown him as being rather elderly at the Crucifixion, when Mother Mary was herself in her fifties. Prior to the Church announcement, however, the historical records of Joseph depicted a much younger man. He was recorded to have died at the age of 80 on 27 July AD 82, and would therefore have been aged 32 at the time of the Crucifixion.

In fact, Joseph of Arimathea was none other than Jesus Christ's own brother James, and his title had nothing whatever to do with a place-name. In fact (like Nazareth), the place later dubbed Arimathea never existed in those times. It therefore comes as no surprise that Joseph negotiated with Pilate to place Jesus in his own family tomb.

The hereditary “Arimathea” title was an English corruption of the Graeco-Hebrew style ha-Rama-Theo, meaning “of the Divine Highness,” or “Royal Highness” as we use the term today. Since Jesus was the senior Messianic heir (the Christ, or King), then his younger brother was the Crown Prince -- the Divine (Royal) Highness, Rama-Theo. In the Nazarene hierarchy, the Crown Prince always held the patriarchal title of “Joseph” -- just as Jesus was a titular “David” and his wife was a conventual “Mary.”

In the early 5th century, Jesus and Mary’s descendent Fisher Kings became united by marriage to the Sicambrian Franks, and from them emerged a whole new reigning dynasty. They were the noted Merovingian Kings who founded the French monarchy and introduced the well-known fleur-de-llys (the ancient gladiolus symbol of circumcision) as the royal emblem of France.

From the Merovingian succession, another strain of the family established a wholly independent Jewish kingdom in southern France: the kingdom of Septimania, which we now know as Languedoc. Also, the early princes of Toulouse, Aquitaine and Provence were all descended in the Messianic bloodline. Septimania was specifically granted to the Royal House of David in 768, and Prince Bernard of Septimania later married a daughter of Emperor Charlemagne.

Also from the Fisher Kings came another important parallel line of succession in Gaul. Whereas the Merovingian Kings continued the patrilinear heritage of Jesus, this other line perpetuated the matrilinear heritage of Mary Magdalene. They were the dynastic Queens of Avallon in Burgundy: the House del Acqs -- meaning “of the waters,” a style granted to Mary Magdalene in the early days when she voyaged on the sea to Provence.

Those familiar with Arthurian and Grail lore will by now have recognised the ultimate significance of this Messianic family: the Fisher Kings, the Queens of Avallon and the House del Acqs (corrupted in Arthurian romance to du Lac).

The descendant heirs of Jesus posed an enormous threat to the Roman High Church because they were the dynastic leaders of the true Nazarene Church. In real terms, the Roman Church should never have existed at all, for it was no more than a strategically designed hybrid movement comprised of various pagan doctrines attached to a fundamentally Judaeo-Christian base.

Jesus was born in 7 BC and his birthday was on the equivalent of 1 March, with an official royal birthday on 15 September to comply with dynastic regulation and the month of Atonement. But, when establishing the Roman Church in the 4th century, Emperor Constantine ignored both of these dates and supplemented 25 December as the new Christ’s Mass Day to coincide with the pagan Sun Festival with which his Imperial subjects were familiar. Later, at the Synod of Whitby held in England in 664, the bishops also expropriated the Celtic festival of Easter (Eostre), the Goddess of Spring and Fertility, and attached a wholly new Christian significance by aligning it with the Resurrection of Jesus. In so doing, they actually changed the date of the old festival to sever its traditional association with the Jewish Passover.

Hence, today’s two main Christian festivals (Christmas and Easter) are spurious Roman inventions and, historically, they have nothing whatever to do with Jesus. Christianity, as we know it, has evolved as a composite religion quite unlike any other. If Jesus was its living catalyst, then Christianity should rightly be based on the teachings of Jesus himself -- the moral and social codes of a fair-minded, tolerant ministry, with the people as its benefactors. But orthodox Christianity (“churchianity”) is not based on the teachings of Jesus: it centres upon the teachings of the bishops, which are entirely different.

There are a number of reasons for this, the foremost of which is that Jesus was deliberately sidestepped in favour of the alternative teachings of Peter and Paul: teachings which were thoroughly denounced by the Nazarene Church of Jesus and his brother James -- teachings which the Nazarenes called “the faith of fools.”

Only by removing Jesus from the front-line could the popes and cardinals reign supreme. When formally instituting Christianity as the State religion of Rome, Constantine declared that he alone was the true Saviour Messiah -- not Jesus! As for the Bishops of Rome (the popes), they were granted a fabricated Apostolic descent from St Peter, since the legitimate Messianic descent from Jesus and his brothers was retained within the parallel Nazarene Church.

The only way for the Roman Church to restrain the heirs of Mary Magdalene was to discredit Mary herself and to deny her bridal relationship with Jesus. But what of Jesus’s brother James? He too had heirs, as did their other brothers, Simon, Joses and Jude. For all its effort to forge a new scriptural history, the Church could not escape the Gospels, which state quite clearly that Jesus was the Blessed Mary’s “firstborn son,” and so Mary’s own motherhood also had to be repressed.

As a result, the bishops portrayed Mother Mary as a virgin and Mary Magdalene as a whore -- neither

of which description was mentioned in any original Gospel. Then, just to cement Mother Mary's position outside the natural domain, her own mother, Anna, was eventually said to have borne her daughter by way of immaculate conception!

Over the course of time, these contrived doctrines have had widespread effect. But in the early days it took rather more to cement the ideas because the original women of the Nazarene mission had a significant following in the Celtic Church. These included Mary Magdalene, Martha, Mary-Jacob Cleophas and Helena-Salome, each of whom had run schools and social missions throughout the Mediterranean world. These women had all been disciples of Jesus and close friends of his mother, accompanying her to the Crucifixion, as confirmed in the Gospels.

In the face of such records, the Church's only salvation was to denigrate women altogether; to deny them not only rights to ecclesiastical office, but to deny them rights to any status in society. Hence, the Church declared that women were all heretics and sorceresses!

In this, the bishops were aided by the words of Peter and Paul, and on the basis of their teachings the Roman Church was enabled to become wholly sexist. In his first Epistle to Timothy, Paul wrote: "I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp any authority over the man, but to be in silence." In the Gospel of Philip, Peter is quoted as saying that "Women are not worthy of life." The bishops even quoted the words of Genesis, wherein God apparently spoke to Eve about Adam, saying "He shall rule over thee."

The Church Father Tertullian summed up the whole Roman attitude when writing about the emergent disciples of Mary Magdalene: "These heretical woman! How dare they! They are brazen enough to teach, to engage in argument, to baptise. It is not permitted for a woman to speak in church, nor to claim a share in any masculine function -- least of all in priestly office."

Then, to cap it all, came the Roman Church's most amazing document, The Apostolic Order. This was compiled as an imaginary conversation between the apostles after the Last Supper. Contrary to the Gospels, it supposed that Mary Magdalene had been present at the event, and it was agreed that the reason why Jesus had not passed any wine to Mary at the table was because he had seen her laughing! On the basis of this extraordinary, fictitious document, the bishops ruled that, even though Mary might have been a close companion of Jesus, women were not to be afforded any place within the Church because they were not serious! But why has this sexist attitude persisted within the Church to the present day? Because Mary Magdalene had to be discredited and removed from the reckoning so that her heirs could be ignored.

Notwithstanding the avid sexist movement, the Messianic heirs retained their social positions outside the Roman Church establishment. They progressed their own Nazarene and Celtic Church movements and founded Desposynic (Heirs of the Lord) kingdoms in Britain and Europe. They were a constant threat to the Roman High Church and to the figurehead monarchs and governments empowered by that Church. In fact, they were the very reason for the brutal Catholic Inquisition because they upheld a moral and social code which was contrary to High Church requirement.

This was especially apparent during the Age of Chivalry, which embraced a respect for womanhood, as exemplified by the Knights Templars whose constitutional oath supported a veneration of the Grail Mother, Queen Mary Magdalene.

Prior to the Middle Ages, the individual stories of the Grail family were historically well known, but when the Church began its reign of fanatical persecution, the whole Nazarene and Desposynic heritage was forced underground. But why did the vengeful persecutions begin at that particular time? Because the Knights Templars had not only returned from the Holy Land with documents that undermined the Church's teachings, they also established their own Cistercian churches in opposition to Rome. These were, however, not just any churches -- they were the greatest religious monuments ever to grace the skylines of the western world: the Notre Dame cathedrals of France.

Despite their present-day image, these impressive Gothic cathedrals had nothing whatever to do with the established Christian Church. They were funded and built by the Knights Templars in collaboration with their Cistercian allies, and they were dedicated to Mary Magdalene -- Notre Dame (Our Lady) -- whom they called "the Grail of the world."

This, of course, defeated every dogma that the High Church had encouraged, and the bishops retaliated

by re-dedicating numerous other churches to Mary, the mother of Jesus. But, in so doing, they made a strict decree that all artistic portrayals of Mother Mary (the Madonna) must henceforth show her dressed in "blue and white only" -- so as not to grant her any rights to ecclesiastical office in the male-only priesthood.

Mary Magdalene, on the other hand, was being portrayed by the world's greatest artists wearing the red mantle of cardinal status, the black robe of a Nazarite High Priestess, or the green cloak of fertility, and there was nothing the Church could do about it. The bishops' only option was to proclaim the practice sinful and heretical because, in having previously elected to ignore Mary Magdalene and her heirs, she was for all practical purposes outside their jurisdiction.

It was at that time that Grail lore was itself denounced as a heresy by the Vatican. The 6th -century prophecies of Merlin were expressly banned by the Ecumenical Council, and the original Nazarene Church of Jesus became an underground stream, aided by such notable sponsors as Leonardo da Vinci and Sandro Botticelli. In those days, the Church policed and controlled most literature in the public domain and so, in order to avoid outright censorship, the Grail tradition became allegorical and its message was communicated by way of secret watermarks, esoteric writings, Tarot cards and symbolic artwork.

But why should Grail lore and the prophecies of Merlin have posed such a problem for the Roman Church? Because, within the context of their adventurous texts, they told the descendant story of the Grail bloodline -- a bloodline which had been ousted from its dynastic position by the Bishops of Rome who had elected to reign supreme by way of a contrived apostolic succession.

This succession was said to have been handed down from the first bishop, St Peter (indeed, this is still the promoted view), but one only has to consult the Church's own Apostolic Constitutions to discover that this is simply not true. Peter was never a Bishop of Rome -- nor of anywhere else for that matter! The Vatican's Constitutions record that the first Bishop of Rome was Prince Linus of Britain (the son of Caractacus the Pendragon), who was installed by St Paul in AD 58, during Peter's own lifetime.

From the 1100s, the powerful Knights Templars and their cathedrals posed an enormous threat to the male-only Church by bringing the heritage of Jesus and Mary Magdalene to the fore in the public domain. The cardinals knew that their whole establishment would tumble if the Messianic descendants gained the upper hand. They had to be crushed -- and so the brutal Inquisition was implemented: a hideous persecution of all who dissented from the rule of the bishops.

It all began in 1209, when Pope Innocent III sent 30,000 soldiers into the Languedoc region of southern France. This was the home of the Cathars (the Pure Ones), who were said to be the guardians of a great and sacred treasure -- a mysterious secret which could overturn orthodox Christianity. The Pope's so-called Albigensian Crusade lasted for thirty-six years, during which time tens of thousands of innocent people were slaughtered -- but the treasure was never found. In 1231, the main thrust of the Inquisition (or Holy Office as it was called) was instituted by Pope Gregory IX during the course of the Languedoc massacre, and it was set against anyone who supported the Grail heresy. By 1252 the torture of victims was formally authorised, along with execution by burning.

Heresy was a wonderful charge to level against captives, because only the Church could define it. The victims were tortured until they confessed and, having confessed, they were executed. If they did not confess, then the torture continued until they died anyway.

One recorded form of torture was to spread the victim with fat, and then to roast him alive (upwards from the feet) over an open fire. These savage persecutions and tortures were openly waged for more than 400 years, to be extended against Jews, Muslims and Protestant dissenters. But the Catholic Inquisition was never formally terminated. As recently as 1965 it was renamed the Sacred Congregation and its powers are theoretically still in force today.

Undaunted by the Inquisition, the Nazarene movement pursued its own course, and the story of the bloodline was perpetuated in literature such as the *Grand Saint Grail* and the *High History of the Holy Grail*. These writings were largely sponsored by the Grail courts of France (the courts of Champagne, Anjou and others) and also by the Knights Templars and the Desposyni. In the course of this, Arthurian romance became a popular vehicle for the Grail tradition. Consequently, the Templars became a specific target of the Inquisition in 1307,

when the henchmen of Pope Clement V and King Philip IV of France were set in their direction. The papal armies scoured Europe for the Templar documents and treasure but, like the Cathar inheritance, nothing was found. Nevertheless, many Knights were tortured and executed in the process.

In all this, however, the Templar hoard was not lost and, while the Vatican emissaries were searching, the treasure and documents were locked away in the Chapter House Treasury vaults of Paris. They were under the protection of the Templar Grand Knights -- those styled the Guardian Princes of the Royal Secret -- who loaded the hoard one night onto 18 galleys of the Templar fleet at La Rochelle. By daybreak, the ships had set sail for various destinations -- notably Portugal and Scotland. The latter were welcomed, upon their arrival, by King Robert the Bruce who, along with the whole Scottish nation, had been excommunicated by the Pope for challenging the Catholic King Edward of England. The Templars and their treasure remained in Scotland, and the Knights fought with Bruce at Bannockburn in 1314 to regain Scotland's independence from Plantagenet England.

Subsequent to the Battle of Bannockburn, Bruce and the Guardian Princes founded the new Order of the Elder Brothers of the Rosy Cross in 1317 -- from which time the Kings of Scots became hereditary Grand Masters, with each successive Stewart King holding the honoured title of Prince Saint Germain.

But, why was it that King Arthur, a Celtic commander of the 6th century, was so important to the Knights Templars and the Grail courts of Europe? Quite simply, because Arthur had been unique, with a dual heritage in the Messianic line. King Arthur was by no means mythical, as many have supposed, but he has generally been looked for in the wrong places. Researchers, misguided by the fictional locations of the romances, have searched in vain through the chronicles of Brittany, Wales and the West of England. But the details of Arthur are to be found in the Scots' and Irish annals. He was indeed the High King of the Celtic Isle and was the sovereign commander of the British troops in the late 6th century.

Arthur was born in 559 and died in battle in 603. His mother was Ygerna del Acqs, the daughter of Queen Viviane of Avallon, in descent from Jesus and Mary Magdalene. His father was High King Aedàn of Dalriada (the Western Highlands of Scotland, now called Argyll), and Aedàn was the British Pendragon (Head Dragon or King of Kings) in descent from Jesus's brother James. It is for this reason that the stories of Arthur and Joseph of Arimathea are so closely entwined in the Grail romances. Indeed, the coronation records of Scotland's King Kenneth MacAlpin (a descendant of Aedàn the Pendragon) specifically refer to his own descent from the dynastic Queens of Avallon. King Aedàn's paternal legacy emerged through the most ancient House of Camu-lot (England's Royal Court of Colchester) in a line from the first appointed Pendragon, King Cymbeline, who is well-known to students of Shakespeare.

By the 6th century, Messianic descendants had founded Desposynic kingdoms in Wales and across the Strathclyde and Cambrian regions of Britain. Arthur's father, King Aedàn of Scots, was the first British monarch to be installed by priestly ordination when he was anointed by Saint Columba of the Celtic Church in 574. This, of course, infuriated the Roman bishops because they claimed the sole right to appoint kings who, according to them, were supposed to be crowned by the Pope!

As a direct result of this coronation, Saint Augustine was eventually sent from Rome to dismantle the Celtic Church when St Columba died in 597. He proclaimed himself Archbishop of Canterbury three years later, but his overall mission failed and the Nazarene tradition persisted in Scotland, Ireland, Wales and across the breadth of northern England.

An important fact to remember is that the Grail dynasts were never territorial governors of lands. Like Jesus himself, they were designated guardians of the people. The Merovingians in Gaul, for example, were Kings of the Franks -- never Kings of France. King Aedàn, Robert the Bruce and their Stewart successors were Kings of the Scots -- never Kings of Scotland. It was this implicitly social concept which the High Church found so difficult to overcome, for the bishops preferred to have dominion over territorial kings who were authorized by the Pope. Only by maintaining ultimate spiritual control over individuals could the Church reign supreme, and so whenever a Grail dynast came to the fore he was met by the wrath of the papal machine.

In 751 the bishops managed to depose the Merovingian succession in Gaul, and they established a new tradition whereby kings of the Carolingian succession (that of Charlemagne) had to be approved and crowned by the Pope. But the Church could never topple the Desposynic lines in Scotland, even though the old Celtic

kingdoms of England had been dismantled by Germanic Anglo-Saxons from the 6th century. Even into the Middle Ages, long after the Norman Conquest of England, the Nazarene Church and the long prevailing cult of Mary Magdalene were prominent in Europe. Women's rights of equality were upheld throughout the Celtic structure, and this was an enormous problem for the male-only priesthood of orthodox "churchianity."

The underlying principle of the Grail monarchs was always one of Service, in accordance with the Messianic code. Hence, they were kings and common fathers of their realms, but they were never rulers. This key aspect of the Grail Code was perpetuated at the very heart of nursery tale and folklore. Never did a valiant cardinal or bishop ride to the aid of an oppressed subject or a damsel in distress, for this has always been the social realm of Grail princes and their appointed knights.

The Grail Code recognises advancement by merit and acknowledges community structure, but above all it is entirely democratic. Whether apprehended in its physical or spiritual dimension, the Grail belongs to leaders and followers alike. It also belongs to the land and the environment, requiring that all should be as one in a mutually unified Service.

Throughout the ages, parliaments and governments have had as much trouble as the Church in confronting the Messianic social code, and the position is no different today. Presidents and prime ministers are elected by the people. They are supposed to represent the people -- but do they? In actual fact, they do not. They are always affiliated to a political party and they achieve their positions by way of majority party vote. But not everybody takes the trouble to vote and sometimes there are more than two parties to vote for. Consequently, at any given time, more than half the people of a nation may not be represented by the political party in power. In this regard, even though a majority vote has been applied, the democratic principle fails. What emerges is not "government BY the people FOR the people," but "government OF the people."

Jesus confronted a very similar situation in the 1st century. At that time, Jerusalem and Judaea were under Roman occupation, with King Herod and the Governor, Pontius Pilate, both appointed by Rome. But who represented the people? The people were not Romans; they were Holy Land Jews: Pharisees, Sadducees, Essenes and the like. Apart from that, there were large numbers of Samaritans and Gentiles (non-Jews; the Arab races). Who represented them? The answer is "no one" -- until Jesus made it his mission to do so. This was the beginning of the Grail code of non-affiliated princely service: a code perpetuated by the Messianic dynasts in their continuing role as people's guardians. The Grail code is based on the principles of liberty, fraternity and equality, and it was particularly apparent in the American and French Revolutions, both of which discarded the lordship of despotic aristocracy. But what has replaced it? It has been replaced by party politics and largely non-representative government.

Many people have asked me why the hitherto suppressed information in *Bloodline of the Holy Grail* is coming to light at this particular time. The fact is that the information has never been suppressed by those whom it concerns. It has been suppressed by outside power-seekers who have sought to serve their own interests, rather than serve the communities they are supposed to represent. Today, however, we are in a new age of questing as many people grow more disillusioned with the establishment dogmas that prevail. We live in an age of satellite communications, sound-barrier travel, computers and the Internet -- so the world is effectively much smaller than before. In such an environment, news travels very quickly and the truth is far more difficult to restrain.

Also, the very fabric of the male-dominated Church and governmental structures is being questioned, and it is generally perceived that the old doctrines of spiritual control and territorial management are not working. More and more people are searching for the original, uncluttered roots of their faith and for their purpose in society. They are seeking more effective forms of administration to combat the all too apparent slide into social and moral decline. They are, in fact, questing for the Holy Grail. This quest for new enlightenment is considerably heightened by the coming new millennium and there is a widespread feeling that this should also present a new Renaissance: an era of rebirth wherein the precepts of the Grail Code are acknowledged and practised -- the precepts of liberty, fraternity and equality. Indeed, Grail lore spells out loud and clear that the wound of the Fisher King must first be healed if the wasteland is to return to fertility.

~ ~ ~

Appendix N

Ancestral Popes & Saints



Nuns' Prayer Book

Germany, Cologne, c. 1450

This small prayer book was used by nuns of the Order of Saint Mary Magdalene, probably in Cologne. Mary Magdalene reaches toward an angel in the opening initial of the book.

Ancestral Popes

Pope Stephen X

Frederick of Lorraine [1010-1058] was the son of Gonzelon I Duke of Lower Lorraine, Count of Verdun, and Urracca of Italy (daughter of Berengarius II King of Italy and Willa of Tuscany). Frederick's sister, Oda of Lorraine, married Lambert II *Baudry* Count of Louvain, and Frederick's brother was Godfrey, Duke of Upper Lorraine, Marquis of Tuscany. Frederick became Pope Stephen X in 1057. (*See BRABANT*)

Odo (Eudes) de Chatillon [1042-1099] was the son of Gui I Sire de Chatillon [1010-1076] and Ermengarde de Chevier [1010-]. He was born in Lagery, Chatillon-sur-Marne, Champagne, France. He was church educated, was the archdeacon of Reims, then prior of Cluny, in 1078, Gregory VII summoned him to Italy and made him cardinal-bishop of Ostia. Odo became Pope Urban II in 1088. He is best known for starting the first Crusade. (*See CHATILLON*)

Pope Callixtus II

Guido de Vienne Comte de Bourgogne [-1124] was the son of William I the Great Comte de Macon & Burgundy and Stephanie (Etiennette) de Longwy. In 1088, he became the archbishop of Vienne. He was elected Pope Callixtus II on February 2, 1119. (*See BURGUNDY*)

Pope Celestine III

Giacinto Bobone Orsini [1106-1198] was the son of Bobone des Ursins (Orsini) of Rome. Giacinto became Pope Celestine III March 30, 1191. One of the first events of his papacy was to crown Heinrich VI of Sicily Holy Roman Emperor. (*See ORSINI*)

Pope Nicholas III

Giovanni Gaetani Orsini [1210-1280] was born in Rome, the son of Matteo (Rosso) des Ursins Senator of Rome and Gemma di Monticelli, was elected Pope Nicholas III in 1277. His father, Matteo, had defended Rome against Frederick II and saved it to the papacy, He was a friend of St. Francis of Assisi and belonged to his third order, facts not without influence on Giovanni, for both as cardinal and pope he was ever kindly disposed toward the Franciscans. (*See ORSINI*)

NOTE: The Orsini family (Orsini-Gravina branch) also produced a pope: Pietro Francesco Orsini [1649-1730] became Pope Benedict XIII in 1724. He was the son of Ferdinando Orsini and Giovanna Frangepani of Tolpha.

Pope Clement VII

Giulio di Giuliano de Medici [1478-1534] was an illegitimate son of Giuliano de Medici who was assassinated in the Pazzi Conspiracy against the Medici. Giulio was the nephew of Lorenzo de Medici and a first cousin of Pope Leo X. He was Pope from 1523-1534. (*See MEDICI*)

NOTE: The Medici family produced two other popes: Giovanni Angelo de Medici [1499-1565] the second son of Bernardino de Medici. He became Pope Pius IV in 1559; and Alessandro Ottaviano de Medici [1535-1605] became Pope Leo XI in 1605. His mother was Francesca Salviati, daughter of Giacomo Salviati and Lucrezia de Medici (sister of Pope Leo X).

~ ~ ~

Ancestral Saints

St. Helena of the Cross

St. Helena (Augusta) of the Cross [248-328] was the daughter of Coilus II of Gloucester, England, and Strada *the Fair* of Combria. She married Flavius Valerius Constantius I {Chlorus} Emperor of Roman Empire [242-306], the son of Flavius Eutropious of the Gordiani and Claudia Crispina. St. Helena was the mother of Constantine *the Great*.

In the year 292 Constantius, having become co-Regent of the West, gave himself up to considerations of a political nature and forsook Helena in order to marry Theodora, the step-daughter of Emperor Maximianus Herculeus, his patron, and well-wisher. But her son remained faithful and loyal to her. On the death of Constantius Chlorus in 308, Constantine, who succeeded him, summoned his mother to the imperial court, conferred on her the title of Augusta, ordered that all honour should be paid her as the mother of the sovereign, and had coins struck bearing her effigy.

Her son's influence caused her to embrace Christianity after his victory over Maxentius. This is directly attested by Eusebius (*Vita Constantini*, III, xlvi): "She (his mother) became under his (Constantine's) influence such a devout servant of God, that one might believe her to have been from her very childhood a disciple of the Redeemer of mankind." It is also clear from the declaration of the contemporary historian of the Church that Helena, from the time of her conversion had an earnestly Christian life and by her influence and liberality favoured the wider spread of Christianity. Tradition links her name with the building of Christian churches in the cities of the West, where the imperial court resided, notably at Rome and Trier, and there is no reason for rejecting this tradition, for we know positively through Eusebius that Helena erected churches on the hallowed spots of Palestine.

Despite her advanced age she undertook a journey to Palestine when Constantine, through his victory over Licinius, had become sole master of the Roman Empire, subsequently, therefore, to the year 324. It was in Palestine that she had resolved to bring to God the homage and tribute of her devotion. She lavished on that land her bounties and good deeds, she "explored it with remarkable discernment," and "visited it with the care and solicitude of the emperor himself." Then, when she "had shown due veneration to the footsteps of the Saviour," she had two churches erected for the worship of God: one was raised in Bethlehem near the Grotto of the Nativity, the other on the Mount of the Ascension, near Jerusalem. She also embellished the sacred grotto with rich ornaments. This sojourn in Jerusalem proved the starting-point of the legend first recorded by Rufinus as to the discovery of the Cross of Christ.

Her princely munificence was such that, according to Eusebius, she assisted not only individuals but entire communities. The poor and destitute were the special objects of her charity. She visited the churches everywhere with pious zeal and made them rich donations. It was thus that, in fulfilment of the Saviour's precept, she brought forth abundant fruit in word and deed. If Helena conducted herself in this manner while in the Holy Land, which is indeed testified to by Eusebius, Bishop of Caesarea in Palestine, we should not doubt that she manifested the same piety and benevolence in those other cities of the empire in which she resided after her conversion. Her memory in Rome is chiefly identified with the church of S. Croce in Gerusalemme. On the present location of this church formerly stood the *Palatium Sessorianum*, and near by were the *Thermae Helenianae*, which baths derived their name from the empress. Here two inscriptions were found composed in honour of Helena. The *Sessorium*, which was near the site of the Lateran, probably served as Helena's residence when she stayed in Rome; so that it is quite possible for a Christian basilica to have been erected on this spot by Constantine, at her suggestion and in honour of the true Cross.

Helena was still living in the year 326, when Constantine in 327 improved Drepanum, his mother's native town, and decreed that it should be called Helenopolis. Constantine was with her when she died at the advanced age of eighty years or thereabouts (Eusebius, "Vita Const.", III, xlvi). This must have been about the year 330, for the last coins which are known to have been stamped with her name bore this date. Her body was brought to Constantinople and laid to rest in the imperial vault of the church of the Apostles. It is presumed that her remains were transferred in 849 to the Abbey of Hautvillers, in the French Archdiocese of Reims, as recorded by the monk Altmann in his "Translatio." She was revered as a saint, and the veneration spread, early in the ninth

century, even to Western countries. Her feast day the 18th of August. (*See ROMAN EMPIRE*)

St. Brychan

St. Brychan ap Anlach, Brecon King of Brycheiniog [419-450] of Eire (Ireland), died in Wales, son of Marchell verch Tewdrig and Anlach MacCormaic, married Prawst verch Tudwal, daughter of Tudwal ap Gwrfawr and Gratianna. According to the Catholic Encyclopedia, Brychan is credited with having 24 children, all saints. His feast day is the 6th of April. (*See ROMAN EMPIRE / WALES*)

St. Gondolfus

St. Gondolfus Bishop of Tongres [545-607] of Aquitaine, the son of Cloderic I the Parricide King of Cologne and Arthemina of Perthois, married Palatina of Troyes [547-] the daughter of Maurilion Gallo, Patrician of Roman Empire. St. Gondolfus is commonly called “Gondulphus of Maastricht” because his predecessor, Bishop Monulphus, transferred the seat of the bishopric from Tongres to Maastricht, which thenceforth was the actual residence of the bishops of Tongres. However, the official title of the Bishop of Tongres, *episcopus Tungrorum*, was retained until the eleventh century, even when the episcopal see had been transferred from Maastricht to Liège.

Bishop Gondulphus is a somewhat enigmatic figure indeed, one is inclined to question whether he be not identical with Monulphus. But the two saints must nevertheless be distinguished. Monulphus must have occupied the See of Tongres until the end of the sixth or the beginning of the seventh century, while at the Council of Paris in 614 the presence is discovered of a Bishop of Maastricht named Betulphus. Gondulphus, then, probably comes between Monulphus and Betulphus, at least if this Betulphus must not be identified with Gondulphus on the grounds that the case is analogous to that of the episcopal list of Mainz, where Bertulfus and Crotoldus must be reckoned identical. Furthermore, the episcopal lists of the eleventh and twelfth centuries, whose value is, however, not very great, ignore Betulphus, and make Gondulphus the immediate successor of Monulphus.

The biographies of Gondulphus, which are handed down to us from the Middle Ages, are merely an extract from the “Vita Servatii” of the priest Jocundus. They are quite without value and are full of legends. If they are to be believed, Gondulphus endeavoured to rebuild the town of Tongres, which had been destroyed by the barbarian invasions. But heaven opposed his scheme, and miraculously manifested its desire to the saint. Furious wolves fell upon the pagan colonists of this region, and devoured them before the eyes of the horrified bishop. Thus has legend quite obscured the authentic history of St. Gondulphus, the fact of his episcopacy at Maastricht being the only one that is authentic. According to local tradition he occupied the episcopal see for seven years and died about 607. This last statement does not tally with his presence at Paris in 614, if he is to be considered identical with the Betulphus who assisted at that council. In any case he was buried in the nave of the church of Saint-Servais at Maastricht, which had been magnificently restored by his predecessor, St. Monulphus.

The bodies of Monulphus and Gondulphus were solemnly exhumed in 1039 by the Bishops Nithard of Liège and Gérard of Cambrai. An epitaph commemorating this event was afterwards misinterpreted, and gave rise to a legend according to which the two saints arose from their tomb in 1039 in order to assist at the dedication of the church of Aachen (Aix-la-Chapelle), and at the conclusion of the ceremony returned to their tomb to resume their eternal sleep. Together with St. Monulphus, St. Gondulphus is secondary patron of the city and church of Maastricht. His feast is kept on the 16th of July, and the commemoration of the exhumation of 1039 is celebrated on to August. (*See ROMANS*)

St. Clothilde

St. Clothilde of Burgundy [466-548] the daughter (or niece) of Chilperic King of Burgundy and Agrippine of Bourgogne married in 492 Clovis I *the Great* King of the Franks [456-511] son of Childeric I King of the Franks and Basina of Thuringia. Her feast day is the 3rd of June. (*See MEROVINGLAN*)

St. Arnulf

St. Arnulf Bishop of Metz [582-640] Mayor of the Palace of Austrasia, of Heristal, Liege (Belgium), son of Bodegisel II, Governor of Aquitaine, and Oda of Suevia, married Dode (Clothilde) de Heristal [583-650] of Saxony, the daughter of Arnoldus Bishop of Metz & Bertha of Heristal. He retired from public life in 629 and lived out his life at the monastic community at Habend, later called Remiremont. His feast day is the 19th of August. (*See CAROLINGIAN*)

St. Bathildis

St. Bathildis [635-679] married in 648 Clovis II King of Neustria & Bourgogne [627-656] the son of Dagobert I King of Austrasia, King of the Franks, and Nanthildis of Neustria. Seven years after their marriage, Clovis II died, leaving Bathildis as the regent for Clothaire III, who was only 5 years old when he was proclaimed king. Bathildis abolished the trade in Christian slaves, and firmly repressed simony among the clergy. She also led the way in founding charitable and religious institutions, such as hospitals and monasteries. Through her generosity the Abbey of Corbey was founded for men, and the Abbey of Chelles near Paris for women. After her children were well-established in their respective territories – Childeric IV in Austrasia and Thierry in Burgundy – she returned to her wish for a secluded life and withdrew to her favorite Abbey of Chelles. She was buried in the Abbey of Chelles and was canonized by Pope Nicholas I. Her feast day in France is celebrated the 30th of January (Roman martyrology places her feast day on the 26th of January). (*See MEROVINGIAN*)

St. Ludmilla

St. Ludmilla ze Psova [853-921] of Psov Melnik, Czechoslovakia, daughter of Slavibor Psov, Zupan of Melnik married Borijov (Borziwas) I Duke of Bohemia [842-910]. She was grandmother of Prince Wenceslas of Bohemia, and both of them were killed and became martyrs. St. Wenceslas became the great Bohemian hero and is the patron saint of modern Czechoslovakia. St. Ludmill's feast day is also observed on the 16th of September. (*See BOHEMIA*)

St. Olga

St. Olga [881-969] of Pskov, Russia, married in 903 Igor I Duke of Kiev [877-947] son of Rurik I Grand Duke of Kiev and Efenda. St. Olga was a meek, retiring wife until a rival Drevlianian chief murdered her husband. Acting as regent for her young son Sviatoslav, Olga's first priority was to exact revenge. The opportunity unexpectedly presented itself when the Drevlianian chief dispatched 20 envoys to ask Olga to marry him and unite their rival people.

Olga agreed to receive the envoys only if they arrived at the palace by boat. The envoys agreed to this strange request, and upon arriving, they were easily surrounded, thrown into a specially-dug pit, and buried alive. Insisting she now sought peace, Olga convinced the Drevlianians to send 20 more men, "the best governing the land," to discuss the marriage proposal, offering them luxurious baths before greeting her. Once the envoys were inside the bathhouse, her troops nailed the doors shut, set the building ablaze and burned the enemy alive. With the Drevlianians seriously weakened, Olga sent her troops to conquer their main city, slay its most important citizens, and enslave the rest.

Having avenged her husband's murder, Princess Olga began grooming her son to rule. To set an example of just rule, she abolished the corrupt system of tribute that encouraged exploitation of minority tribes and levied taxes on everyone in the realm.

Olga eventually proved herself to be one of the most skilled of all Kievan rulers, but her greatest legacy came from her conversion to Christianity in AD 957. She campaigned tirelessly to deliver Kievans from paganism, and although Sviatoslav refused to accept his mother's new faith, Olga scored a far greater coup after the murder of Sviatoslav brought her grandson Vladimir to the throne.

As Grand Prince of Kiev, Vladimir I controlled the first Russian state, a powerful federation of five million

people, second in area only to the Holy Roman Empire. He pleased his grandmother not only by converting to Christianity but also by proclaiming it the state religion. In her odyssey from avenging wife and regent to Christian missionary, Princess Olga had helped alter the course of Russian history. (*See RUSSIA*)

St. Edith

St. Edith of Ireland [901-] is the daughter of Edward *the Elder* West Saxon King of England and Ecgwyn. On July 30, 925, in Tamworth, Staffordshire, England, she married Sitric Caoch King of York & Dublin [894-927] the son of Sitric I King of Dublin. (*See ANGLO-SAXONS*)

St. Adelaide

St. Adelaide Princess of Burgundy [931-999] was the daughter of Rudolph II and Bertha von Swabia. She married Lothair II King of Italy [930-] son of Hughes d'Arles King of Italy and Willa of Vienne. She was one of the conspicuous characters in the struggle of Otho *the Great* to obtain the imperial crown from the Roman Pontiffs. Her father, Rudolph II, was at war with Hugh of Provence for the crown of Italy. The rivals concluded a peace in 933, by which it was stipulated that Adelaide should marry Hugh's son Lothaire. The marriage took place, however, only fourteen years later; Adelaide's mother meantime married Hugh.

By this time Berengarius, the Marquis of Ivrea, came upon the scene, claiming the Kingdom of Italy for himself. He forced Hugh to abdicate in favour of Lothaire, and is supposed to have afterwards put Lothaire to death by poison. He then proposed to unite Adelaide in marriage with his son, Adalbert. Refusing the offer, Adelaide was kept in almost solitary captivity, in the Castle of Garda, on the lake of that name. From it she was rescued by a priest named Martin, who dug a subterraneous passage, by which she escaped, and remained concealed in the woods, her rescuer supporting her, meantime, by the fish he caught in the lake. Soon, however, the Duke of Canossa, Alberto Uzzo, who had been advised of the rescue, arrived and carried her off to his castle. While this was going on the Italian nobles, weary of Berengarius, had invited Otho to invade Italy. He met with little resistance, and betook himself to Canossa where he met Adelaide, and married her on Christmas day, 951, at Pavia.

This marriage gave Otho no new rights over Italy, but the enthusiasm of the people for Adelaide, whose career had been so romantic, appealed to them and made Otho's work of subjugating the peninsula easy. In Germany she was the idol of her subjects, while her husband lived. During the reign of her son Otho II, her troubles began, chiefly owing to the jealousy of her daughter-in-law, Theophano, and possibly also because of her excessive liberality in her works of charity. It resulted in her withdrawing from court and fixing her residence at Pavia, but a reconciliation was effected by the Abbot of Cluny, St. Mayeul. The same troubles broke out when her grandson came to the throne, the jealous daughter-in-law being yet unreconciled, and Adelaide was again forced into seclusion. But Theophano dying suddenly, Adelaide was recalled to assume the burden of a Regency.

Her administration was characterized by the greatest wisdom. She took no revenge upon her enemies; her court was like a religious house; she multiplied monasteries and churches in the various provinces, and was incessant in her efforts to convert the pagans of the North. In the last year of her reign she undertook a journey to Burgundy to reconcile her nephew Rudolph with his subjects, but died on the way at Seltz, in Alsace. She is not mentioned in the Roman martyrology, but her name appears in several calendars of Germany, and her relics are enshrined in Hanover. St. Odilo of Cluny wrote her life. (*See BURGUNDY*)

St. Pietro

St. Pietro I Orseolo Doge of Venice [935-987] the son of Pietro Orseolo, married in 946 Felicita di Malpiero [940-] of Malpiero, Italy, daughter of the Count di Malpiero. On 11 Aug., 976, the Doge Pietro Candiano fell a victim to a conspiracy, whose members, in their anxiety to obtain possession of him, set fire to his palace, thereby destroying not only this building, but also the churches of San Marco, San Teodoro, and Santa Maria di Zobenigo, as well as about three hundred houses. On the following day Pietro Orseolo was chosen doge in San Pietro di Castello, but it was only out of regard for his obligations towards his native land that he allowed himself

to be prevailed upon to accept the office.

As one might expect from his personal piety, the new doge showed himself a zealous patron of churches and monasteries as well as an able ruler. He had the doge's palace and the church of San Marco rebuilt at his own expense, procuring in Constantinople for the latter the first golden altar-covering (*Pala d'oro*), and bequeathed one thousand pounds to persons injured by the fire and a similar sum to the poor.

About this time, through the influence of Abbot Guarinus of Cuxa (a Benedictine monastery at the foot of the Pyrenees, in the territory of Roussillon), he decided to enter a monastery, leaving Venice secretly with the abbot and two companions in the night of 1-2 September, 987. As a monk in the abbey of Cuxa, he presented to his spiritual brothers a model of humility, zeal for prayer, and charity. For a period he was under the spiritual guidance of St. Romuald. As early as the eleventh century the veneration of Peter Urseolus as a saint was approved by the Bishop of Elné. In 1731 Clement XII ratified this cult, and appointed the 14th of January as his feast day. (*See ORSEOLO*)

St. Vladimir

St. Vladimir the Great Duke of Kiev [955-1015] was the son of Svatislav I Grand Duke of Kiev and Maloucha of Lubech, and the grandson of St. Olga (see above). Though Christianity had won many converts since Olga's rule, Vladimir had remained thoroughgoing pagan, taking eight hundred concubines (besides numerous wives) and erecting pagan statues and shrines to gods. It is argued that he attempted to reform Slavic paganism by establishing thunder-god Perun as a supreme deity. It is probable that he instituted the practice of human sacrifices as well.

In the year 987, as the result of a consultation with his boyars, Vladimir sent envoys to study the religions of the various neighboring nations whose representatives had been urging him to embrace their respective faiths. The result is amusingly described by the chronicler Nestor. Of the Muslim Bulgarians of the Volga the envoys reported there is no gladness among them; only sorrow and a great stench; their religion is not a good one, as they don't drink wine and eat pork. In the temples of the Germans they saw no beauty; but at Constantinople, where the full festival ritual of the Orthodox Church was set in motion to impress them, they found their ideal: *We no longer knew whether we were in heaven or on earth, nor such beauty, and we know not how to tell of it.* If Vladimir was impressed by this account of his envoys, he was yet more so by political gains of the Byzantine alliance.

In 988 Vladimir was baptized at Chersones, taking the Christian name of Basil out of compliment to his imperial brother-in-law; the sacrament was followed by his marriage with the Roman princess. Returning to Kiev in triumph, he destroyed pagan monuments and established many churches, starting with the splendid Church of the Tithes (989) and monasteries on Mt. Athos. He now formed a great council out of his boyars, and set his twelve sons over his subject principalities. With his neighbors he lived in peace, the incursions of the savage Pechenegs alone disturbing his tranquility. After Anna's death, he married again, most likely to a granddaughter of Otto *the Great*.

He died at Berestovo, near Kiev, while on his way to chastise the insolence of his son, Prince Yaroslav of Novgorod. The various parts of his dismembered body were distributed among his numerous sacred foundations and were venerated as relics. The University of Kiev has rightly been named after the man who both civilized and Christianized Kievan Rus. Saint Vladimir's Orthodox Theological Seminary in Crestwood, New York, is named in his honor. His memory was also kept alive by innumerable folk ballads and legends, which refer to him as *Krasno Solnyshko*, the "Fair Sun." With him the Varangian period of Eastern Slavic history ceases and the Christian period begins. Eastern Orthodox churches celebrate the feast day of St. Vladimir on the 15th of July. (*See RUSSIA*)

St. Stephen

St. Stephen I King of Hungary [975-1038] married in 996 Gisela of Bavaria [985-1042] the daughter of Henry II *the Wrangler* Duke of Bavaria and Gisela of Burgundy. St. Stephen I was crowned king in 1001 with crown sent by the Pope. He was given the title of "Apostolic King," held thereafter (to 1918) by sovereigns of

Hungary. He continued the Christianizing policy of his father and suppressed Paganism, calling in foreign priests, endowing abbeys and forming a council of nobles and high churchmen. Stephen encouraged agriculture and trade. He became the patron saint of Hungary, canonized in 1987. (*See HUNGARY*)

St. Olaf

St. Olaf II *the Stout* King of Norway [995-1030] son of Harald the Greenlander, Under-King of Vestfold and Estrid of Uplands. He married in 1017 his second wife Astrid of Sweden [1000-] daughter of Olaf III Eriksson King of Sweden and Astrid of Obotrites. As king, he made it his object to extirpate heathenism and make the Christian religion the basis of his kingdom. He made frequent severe attacks on the old faith and customs, demolishing the temples and building Christian churches in their place. He brought many bishops and priests from England. But the mighty clans rose in rebellion against him and he was expelled and Cnut was elected King of Norway.

He eventually won back his kingship. Many miraculous occurrences are related in connection with his death and his disinterment a year later, after belief in his sanctity had spread widely. His friends, Bishop Grimkel and Earl Einar Tambeskjelver, laid the corpse in a coffin and set it on the high-altar in the church of St. Clement in Nidaros (now Trondhjem). Olaf has since been held as a saint, not only by the people of Norway, but also by Rome. His cult spread widely in the Middle Ages, not only in Norway, but also in Denmark and Sweden; even in London, there is on Hart Street a St. Olave's Church, long dedicated to the canonized King of Norway.

In 1856 a St. Olave's Church was erected in Christiania, the capital of Norway, where a larger relic of St. Olaf (a donation from the Danish Royal Museum) is preserved and venerated. The arms of Norway are a lion with the battle-axe of St. Olaf in the forepaws. St. Olaf's feast day is the 29th of July. (*See NORWAY*)

St. Margaret of Scotland

St. Margaret Aetheling of Scotland [1045-1093] of Hungary, died at Edinburgh Castle, Scotland and is buried at Dunfermline Abbey. She married in 1068 Malcolm III *Caennmor* King of the Scots [1031-1093] of Atholl, Perthshire, Scotland, son of Duncan I MacCrinan King of Scotland and Sibyl Sywardsdottir of Northumbria. She was canonized in 1250, her feast day in Scotland is the 16th of November (according to the Catholic Encyclopedia, the whole church celebrates her feast day as June 10). (*See ANGLO-SAXONS*)

St. Ladislaus

St. Ladislaus I King of Hungary [1050-1095] was the son of Bela I King of Hungary and Rixa of Poland. He married 1079 Adelaide von Rheinfelden [1065-1092] of Rheinfelden, Baden-Suerttemberg, Germany, daughter of Rudolf von Rheinfelden Duke of Swabia and Adelaide de Maurienne. He followed in the footsteps of St. Stephen I of Hungary. He developed the power of his young kingdom, extended its boundaries by the annexation of Croatia and Dalmatia, repulsed Cuman invaders from the east and fostered Christianity within his dominions. He was distinguished personally for the justness of his rule and the virtue of his life. Ladislaus was the ideal national hero, and in 1192 his relics were enshrined as those of a saint in the cathedral he had founded at Nagyvarad. His feast day is the 27th of June. (*See HUNGARY*)

St. Irene

St. Irene (Pyrisca) of Hungary [1088-1134] was the daughter of St. Ladislaus I King of Hungary (see above). She married 1105 John II Comnenus Emperor of Byzantine Empire [1088-1143] of Constantinople, Turkey, son of Alerius I Comnenus Emperor of Byzantine Empire and Irene Ducas. (*See HUNGARY*)

St. Louis

Louis IX *St. Louis* King of France [1214-1270] married in 1234 Margaret of Provence [1221-1285] the daughter of Raymond V Berenger Count of Provence and Beatrice of Savoy. As king, Louis was sincerely religious. He was impartial and merciful in administering justice, insisting on each man's rights, from king to peasant. It is said he detested the use of profane or blasphemous language and never used it himself. St. Louis was canonized in 1297. His feast day is the 25th of August. (*See CAPETLAN*)

St. Thomas Aquinas

St. Thomas Aquinas [1226-1274] was the 6th son of Landolfo V Conte d'Aquino, Lord of Loreto, and Teodora di Caracciola Contessa di Teano. The Italian family of Aquino traced its ancestry back to the Lombard kings and was linked with several of the royal houses of Europe. St. Thomas was nephew of Emperor Frederick *Barbarossa* and also connected to the family of King Louis IX of France (see above); his mother was descended from the Norman barons who had conquered Sicily some two centuries earlier.

Thomas himself, at maturity, was a man of imposing stature, massive build, and fair complexion, and appeared more of a Norseman than a south Italian. The place and date of his birth are not definitely known, but it is assumed that he was born in 1226 at his father's castle of Roccasecca, whose craggy ruins are still visible on a mountain which rises above the plain lying between Rome and Naples.

While Thomas was still a child, his little sister, who slept in the same room with him and their nurse, was instantly killed one night by a bolt of lightning. This shocking experience caused Thomas to be extremely nervous during thunderstorms all his life long, and while a storm raged he often took refuge in a church. After his death, there arose a popular devotion to him as a protector from thunderstorms and sudden death.

A few miles to the south of Roccasecca, on a high plateau, stands the most famous of Italian monasteries, Monte Cassino, the abbot of which, at the time, was Thomas' uncle. When he was about nine years old the boy was sent to Cassino, in care of a tutor, to be educated in the Benedictine school which adjoined the cloister. In later years, when Thomas had achieved renown, the aged monks liked to recall the grave and studious child who had pored over their manuscripts, and who would ask them questions that revealed his lively intelligence and his deeply religious bent. Thomas was popular too with his companions, though he seldom took part in their games. He spent five happy years in the school at Cassino, returning home now and again to see his parents.

The book "St. Thomas Aquinas" by G. K. Chesterton states that *Red Barbarossa* (Frederick I *Barbarossa*, HRE) was Thomas' great uncle and Frederick II HRE was his 2nd cousin. This book is online at www.dur.ac.uk/martin.ward/gkc/books/aquinas.html. The website entitled "St. Thomas of Aquino, Doctor of the Church and Confessor-1225-1274 A.D.", citing as sources: [from his life written by Bartholomew of Lucca, some time the saint's confessor; also another life compiled for his canonization by William of Tocco, Prior of Benevento, who had been personally acquainted with the saint]. St. Thomas Aquinas died March 7, 1274. He was canonized July 18, 1323. (*See AQUINO*)

~ ~ ~

Bibliography

- Allmand, Christopher – *Henry V*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1992.
- Altschul, Michael – *A Baronial Family in Medieval England: The Clares, 1217-1314*. John Hopkins Press, 1965.
- Andersen, Christopher – *Diana's Boys: William and Harry and the Mother They Loved*. Harper Collins, Inc., New York, 2001.
- Alexander, John T. – *Catherine the Great Life and Legend*. Oxford University Press, New York, 1989.
- Anderson, William – *The Scottish Nation of the Surnames, Families, Literature, Honours, and Biographical History of the People of Scotland*. A. Fullarton & Co., Edinburgh, 1863.
- Asbridge, Thomas – *The First Crusade: A New History*. Oxford University Press, New York, 2004.
- Ashley, Mike – *British Monarchs*. Robinson Publishing, 1998.
- Ashley, Mike – *Mammouth Book of British Kings and Queens*. Carroll & Graf Publishers, Inc., New York, 1998.
- Ashley, Mike – *Brittish Kings and Queens*. Carroll & Graf Publishers, Inc., New York, 1999.
- Asprey, Robert B. – *Frederick the Great the Magnificent Enigma*. Ticknor & Fields, New York, 1986.
- Aston, Margaret – *Thomas Arundel – A Study of Church Life in the Reign of Richard II*. Oxford University Press, 1967.
- Ballard, Michael B. – *Vicksburg: The Campaign That Opened the Mississippi*. University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill & London, 2004.
- Barber, Richard – *Edward, Prince of Wales and Aquitaine*. The Boydell Press, Suffolk, 1978.
- Barber, Richard – *Life and Campaigns of the Black Prince*. Boydell Press, 2002.
- Barber, Richard – *The Reign of Chivalry*. The Boydell Press, Woodbridge, 2005.
- Barracough, Geoffrey – *The Crucible of Europe*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1976.
- Barron, C., and N. Saul – *England and the Low Countries in the Middle Ages*. Allan Sutton Publishing, 1995.
- Bartlett, Robert – *England Under the Norman and Angevin Kings 1075-1225*. Clarendon Press, Oxford, 2000.
- Barton, Simon – *The Aristocracy in Twelfth-Century Leon and Castile*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997.
- Barton, Simon – *The Lara Family: Crown and Nobility in Medieval Spain*. Doubleday, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Mass., 2001.
- Bates, David – *William The Conqueror*. Tempus Publishing Inc., S. Carolina, 2001.
- Bede – *The Ecclesiastical History of the English People*. Roger Collins and Judith McClure, eds., Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Bentley, James – *A Calendar of Saints. The lives of the Principal Saints of the Christian Year*. Orbis Publishing 1986. (Republished by Little, Brown and Co 1993 & 1994)
- Bingham, Caroline – *The Stewart Kingdom of Scotland 1371-1603*. Weidenfeld & Nicholson, 1974.
- Bosworth, Clifford E. – *Islamic Surveys 5: The Islamic Dynasties. A Chronological and Genealogical Handbook*. Edinburgh University Press, 1967.
- Boyle, David – *The Troubadour's Song*. Walker & Co., New York, 2005.

- Brady, Ciaran, ed. – *The Encyclopedia of Ireland*. Oxford University Press, Inc., New York, 2000.
- Brenan, Gerald – *A History of the House of Percy*. Freemantle, 1902.
- Brewer, Derek – *The World of Chaucer*. Boydell & Brewer Ltd., Suffolk, 2000.
- Brigden, Susan – *New Worlds, Lost Worlds: The Rule of the Tudors 1485-1603*. Penguin Putnam Inc., New York, 2000.
- Bruce, Duncan A. – *The Scottish 100: Portraits of History's Most Influential Scots*. Carroll & Graf Publishers, Inc., New York, 2000.
- Burke, Sir Bernard – *A Genealogical and Heraldic Dictionary of the Peerage and Baronetage of the British Empire, 18th Edition*. 1856.
- Burney, Gene – *Kingdoms of Europe: An Illustrated Encyclopedia of Ruling Monarchs from Ancient Times to the Present*. Crown Publishers, Inc., New York, 1982.
- Burns, Robert I., ed. – *The Worlds of Alfonso the Learned & James the Conqueror: Intellect & Force in the Middle Ages*. Princeton University Press, 1985.
- Burns, Thomas – *A History of the Ostrogoths*. Indiana University Press, Indianapolis, 1991.
- Byrne, Martin, ed. – *A New History of Ireland, Vol. IX. Maps, Genealogies, Lists*. Oxford University Press, 1984.
- Byrne, Muriel St. Clare, and Bridget Boland – *The Lisle Letters. An Abridgement*. The University of Chicago Press, 1983.
- Cahill, Thomas – *How The Irish Saved Civilization*. Doubleday, New York, 1995.
- Calmette, Joseph, translated by Doreen Weightman – *The Golden Age of Burgundy*. Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1963.
- Cantor, Norman F. – *The Civilization of the Middle Ages*. HarperCollins Publishers, New York, 1993.
- Cantor, Norman F. – *The Medieval Reader*. HarperCollins Publishers, New York, 1994.
- Cantor, Norman F. – *The Encyclopedia of the Middle Ages*. Penguin Books, Ltd., London, 1999.
- Cantor, Norman F. – *The Last Knight, The Twilight of the Middle Ages and the Birth of the Modern Era*. Harper Collins Publishing, New York, 2004.
- Cheine, Anwar G. – *Muslim Spain*. University of Minnesota Press, 1974.
- Clayton, Hugh – *Royal Faces: 900 Years of British Monarchy*. Thames & Hudson, New York, 1977.
- Clifford of Chudleigh, Hugh – *The House of Clifford from before the Conquest*. Phillimore, 1987.
- Cokayne, G.E. – *The Complete Peerage, or a History of the House of Lords and all its Members from the Earliest Times*. Revised by G.H. White, 1953.
- The siblings of William the Conqueror, and details of the de la Poles, Dukes of Suffolk, Volume XII, The bastards of Henry I, Volume XI, The bastards of Charles II, Volume VI, The Earls of Pembroke and the Earls of Orkney, Volume X, The Earls of Thomond, Volume XII pt 1, The Earls of Huntingdon, Volume VI, The Dukes of Norfolk, Volume IX, The Earls of Oxford, Volume X, The Dukes of York, Volume XII pt 2.*
- Collis, Louise – *Memoirs of a Medieval Woman: The Life & Times of Margery Kemp*. Harper & Row, New York, 1964.
- Crook, Cornelia English – *A Family Chronicle I: Ligon & Some Related Families*.
- Crook, Cornelia English – *A Family Chronicle II: Barrett & Some Related Families*.
- Crowley, Roger – *1453: The Holy War for Constantinople and the Clash of Islam and the West*. Hyperion, New York, 2005.
- Custine, the Marquis de – *Empire of the Czar A Journey Through Eternal Russia*. Doubleday, New York, 1989.

- Danziger, Danny & John Gillingham – *1215: The Year of Magna Carta*. Touchstone, New York, 2004.
- Delderfield, Eric R., ed. – *Kings and Queens of England*. Weathervale Books, New York, 1978.
- Donne, W. Bodham, ed. – *The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North, from 1768 to 1783*. John Murray, London, 1867.
- Douglas, Hugh – *Jacobite Spy Wars: Moles, Rogues and Treachery*. Sutton Publishing Ltd., Gloucestershire, 1999.
- Doulton, C.G., ed. – *Life in the Middle Ages*. Macmillan, New York, c. 1910.
- Duby, Georges – *William Marshal: The Flower of Chivalry*. Pantheon Books, New York, 1985.
- Duby, Georges, ed. – *A History of Private Life: Revelations of the Medieval World*. The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1988.
- Dunaway, Philip and Mel Evans, eds. – *A Treasury of the World's Great Diaries*. Doubleday & Company, Inc., New York, 1957.
- Dunbar, John G. – *Scottish Royal Palaces*. Tuckwell Press, Ltd., Scotland, 1999.
- Eilers, Marlene A. – *Queen Victoria's Descendants*. Rosval Royal Books, 1997.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford, and Seumas Mac A'Ghobhainn – *The Scottish Insurrection of 1820*. Victor Gollancz Ltd., London, 1970.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *The Boyne Water: The Battle of the Boyne, 1690*. St. Martin's Press, New York, 1976.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *Macbeth: High King of Scotland 1040-57 AD*. Frederick Muller Limited, London, 1980.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *Celt and Saxon: The Struggle for Britain AD 410-937*. Constable & Co., London, 1993.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *The Chronicles of the Celts*. Carroll & Graf Publishers, Inc., New York, 1999.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *Erin's Blood Royal: The Gaelic Noble Dynasties of Ireland*. Palgrave, New York, 2002.
- Ellis, Peter Beresford – *Eyewitness to Irish History*. John Wiley & Sons, New Jersey, 2004.
- English, Barbara – *The Lords of Holderness 1086-1260: A Study in Feudal Society*. Hull University Press, 1991.
- Escobar, Jose, and Shelby G. Thacker, translators – *Chronicle of Alfonso X*. University Press of Kentucky, 2002.
- Evans, Michael – *The Death of Kings: Royal Deaths in Medieval England*. Hambledon Continuum, London
- Fanthorpe, Lionel & Patricia – *Mysteries of Templar Treasure & The Holy Grail*. Weiser Books, Boston, 1992.
- Faris, David – *Plantagenet Ancestry of Seventeenth-Century Colonists: The Descent from the Later Plantagenet Kings of England, Henry III, Edward I, and Edward III, of Emigrants from England and Wales to the North American Colonies before 1701*. English Ancestry Series, Volume 1, Second Edition, New England Historic Genealogical Society, Boston, Mass., 1999.
- FitzGerald, Brian – *The Geraldines. An experiment in Irish Government 1169-1601*. Staples Press, 1951.
- Fletcher, Richard – *The Quest for El Cid*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 1990.
- Foreman, Amanda – *Georgiana Duchess of Devonshire*. Random House, Inc., New York, 1998.
- Fraser, Antonia – *Mary Queen of Scots*. Dell Publishing Co., Inc., New York, 1969.
- Fraser, Antonia – *Faith and Treason: The Story of the Gunpowder Plot*. Doubleday, New York, 1996.

- Fraser, Antonia – *The Lives of the Kings and Queens of England*. University of California Press, Ltd., London, 1998.
- Galt, John – *George The Third, His Court, and Family*. 2 vols., printed for Henry Colburn and Co., Public Library, Conduit Street, Hanover Square, London, 1820.
- Gardner, Laurence – *Bloodline of the Hooy Grail: The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed*. Element Books, Great Britain, 1996-99, illustrated edition 2000; republished in Gloucester, Massachusetts 2002.
- Geoffrey of Monmouth – *The History of the Kings of Britain*. Penguin Books, Ltd., London, 1966.
- Gibb, H.A.R. – *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades: Extracted & Translated from the Chronicle of Ibn Al-Qalanisi*. Dover Publications, 2003.
- Gies, Joseph and Frances Gies – *Life in a Medieval Castle*. Harper & Row, New York, 1974.
- Gies, Frances and Joseph Gies – *Women in the Middle Ages*. Harper & Row, New York, 1978.
- Giles, J.A. – *William of Malmesbury's Chronicle of the Kings of England, From the Earliest Period to the Reign of King Stephen*. Wipf & Stock Publishers, 2004.
- Gregory Bishop of Tours – *History of the Franks*. Columbia University Records of Civilization, W.W. Norton & Co., Inc., New York, 1969.
- Grehan, Ida – *The Dictionary of Irish Family Names*. Robert Rinehart Publishers, Colorado, 1997.
- Grun, Bernard – *The Timetables of History*. Simon & Schuster, New York, 1975.
- Guy, John – *Queen of Scots: The True Life of Mary Stuart*. Houghton Mifflin Co., New York, 2004.
- Hallam, Elizabeth, ed. – *The Plantagenet Chronicles*. Weidenfeld & Nicolson, New York, 1986.
- Hallam, Edith and Andrew Prescott, eds. – *The Brititish Inheritance: A Treasury of Historic Documents*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1999.
- Hamilton, Lady Anne – *A Secret History of the Court of England from the Accession of George the Third to the Death of George the Fourth*. London, 1823 (reprint 1867).
- Harvey, A.S. – *The de la Pole Family of Kingston upon Hull*. East Yorkshire Local History Society, 1957.
- Hay, Fr. Richard Augustin – *Genealogie of the Sainteclaires of Roslyn*. Grand Lodge of Scotland Museum & Library, Edinburgh, 2002.
- Haywood, John – *Atlas of the Celtic World*. Thames & Hudson Ltd., London, 2001.
- Henderson, Ernest F. – *Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages*. George Bell & Sons, London, 1896.
- Herm, Gerhard – *The Celts: The People Who Came Out of the Darkness*. St. Martin's Press, New York, 1977.
- Hibbert, Christopher – *George III: A Personal History*. Viking of Penguin Books, Ltd., Great Britain, 1998.
- Holt, P.M. – *The Age of the Crusades. The Near East from the Eleventh Century to 1517*. Longmans, 1986.
- Horne, Alistair – *Seven Ages of Paris*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 2002.
- Hutton, Ronald – *Charles II: King of England, Scotland and Ireland*. Claredon Press, Oxford, 1989.
- James, Simon – *The World of the Celts*. Thames & Hudson, Inc., New York, 1993.
- Jenks, Edward – *Edward Plantagenet (Edward I) The English Justinian or The Making of the Common Law*. Putnam, 1902.
- Jesse, John Heneage – *Memoirs of the Life and Reign of King George the Third*. 5 vols., Francis A. Niccolls & Co., Boston, 1867.

- Joinville, Jean de, and Geoffroy de Villehardouin, translated by M.R.B. Shaw – *Chronicles of The Crusades*. Penguin Books, London, 1963.
- Jones, Gwyn – *A History of the Vikings*. Oxford University Press, New York, 1984.
- Jones, Terry and Alan Ereira – *Terry Jones' Medieval Lives*. BBC Books, London, 2004.
- Keen, Maurice, ed. – *Medieval Warfare: A History*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1999.
- Kelly, Amy – *Eleanor of Aquitaine and the Four Kings*. Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Knecht, R.J. – *Catherine d' Medici*. Addison Wesley Longman, 1998.
- Konstam, Angus – *Historical Atlas of the Crusades*. Checkmark Books, New York, 2002.
- Laing, Lloyd and Jennifer Laing – *Celtic Britain and Ireland AD 200-800: The Myth of the Dark Ages*. St. Martin's Press, New York, 1990.
- Lamb, Harold – *The Crusades: Iron Men and Saints*. Garden City Publishing Company, Inc., Garden City, New York, 1930.
- Lane-Poole, Stanley – *Saladin and the Fall of the Kingdom of Jerusalem*. Khayats, Beirut, 1964 (Reprint).
- Larousse, M. Lee & M. Kelly, eds. – *Larousse Pocket Guide to Kings & Queens of Britain and Europe*. 1995.
- Lawson, M.D. – *The Battle of Hastings 1066*. Tempus Publishing Limited, Gloucestershire, England, 2003.
- Lee, Christopher – *This Sceptred Isle: The Dynasties*. BBC Worldwide Limited, London, 2002.
- Ligon, Cornelia Barrett – *From Jackson to Vicksburg 1861-1865: Memories of the War Between the States*. Barrett Plantation, Hinds County, Mississippi.
- Lomax, Derek W. – *The Reconquest of Spain*. Longman, 1978.
- Longford, Elizabeth – *Queen Victoria: Born to Succeed*. Pyramid Books, New York, 1965.
- Longford, Elizabeth, ed. – *The Oxford Book of Royal Anecdotes*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1989.
- Loud, G. A. – *The Age of Robert Guiscard: Southern Italy and the Norman Conquest*. Pearson Education Limited, England, 2000.
- McCaffrey, Carmel and Leo Eaton – *In Search of Ancient Ireland: The Origins of the Irish From Neolithic Times to the Coming of the English*. New Amsterdam Books, Ivan R. Dee, Publisher, Chicago, 2002.
- McCullough, David Willis, ed. – *Wars of the Irish Kings: A Thousand Years of Struggle from the Age of Myth Through the Reign of Queen Elizabeth I*. History Book Club, New York, 2000.
- McKitterick, Rosamond – *Atlas of the Medieval World*. Oxford University Press, New York, 2004.
- McKitterick, Rosamond – *The Frankish Kingdoms under the Carolingians 751-987*. Longman, 1983.
- McLynn, Frank – *1066 The Year of the Three Battles*. Pimlico, Random House, London, 1999.
- Macleod, John – *Dynasty: The Stuarts 1560-1807*. St. Martin's Press, New York, 1999.
- MacDougall, Norman – *James IV*. Tuckwell Press, Scotland, 1997.
- Mackenzie, Agnes Mure – *The Foundations of Scotland*. Oliver & Boyd, 1937.
- Magnusson, Magnus – *Scotland: The Story of a Nation*. Atlantic Monthly Press, New York, 2000.
- Mann, William F. – *The Knights Templar in the New World*. Destiny Books, Rochester, Vermont, 2004.
- Martines, Lauro – *April Blood: Florence and the Plot Against the Medici*. Oxford University Press, New York, 2003.
- Mathew, David – *The Courtiers of Henry VIII*. Eyre & Spottiswood, 1970.

- Maund, Kari – *the Welsh Kings: Warriors, Warlords and Princes*. Tempus Publishing, Gloucestershire, 2006.
- Mondadori, Arnaldo – *Grandi Dinastie*. 1979. *Great Dynasties*, (translation of “Grandi Dinastie,” by Arnaldo Mondadori, 1979), Mayflower Books, 1980.
- Mons, Gilbert of (Gislebertus) – *Chronicle of Hainaut*. Boydell Press, 2005.
- Montague-Smith, Patrick W. – *The Royal Line of Succession - The British Monarchy from Cerdic AD 534 to Queen Elizabeth*. Pitkin Pictorials, 1986.
- Morby, John E. – *Dynasties of the World*. Oxford University Press, 1989. Republished as *The Wordsworth Handbook of Kings & Queens*. Wordsworth, 1994.
- Morgan, Prys, ed. – *The Tempus History of Wales: 25,000 B.C. - AD. 2000*. Tempus Publishing, Charleston, S.C. 2001.
- Moss, H. St. L.B. – *The Birth of the Middle Ages 395-814*. Oxford University Press, London, 1964.
- Murray, James – *An Account of the Chapel of Roslin 1778*. (reprint of original work by Dr. Robert Forbes, 1774) Grand Lodge of Scotland, Edinburgh, 2004.
- Murray, Venetia – *An Elegant Madness: High Society in Regency England*. Penguin Putnam Inc., New York, 1999.
- Nelson, Janet L. – *Charles the Bald*, Longmans, 1992.
- Newton, Michael – *A Handbook of the Scottish Gaelic World*. Four Courts Press, Portland, Oregon, 2000.
- Nusbacher, Aryeh – *1314 Bannockburn*. Tempus Publishing Ltd., Gloucestershire, 2005.
- O'Brien, Hon. Donough – *History of the O'Briens from Brian Borimhe*. Batsford, 1949.
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F. – *A History of Medieval Spain*. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, New York, 1975.
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F. – *The Learned King: The Reign of Alfonso X of Castile*. University of Pennsylvania Press, 1993.
- Ogg, Frederic Austin, ed. – *A Source Book of Medieval History*. New York, 1907.
- Oggins, Robin S. – *Castles and Fortresses*. MetroBooks, Michael Friedman Publishing Group, Inc., New York, 1995.
- Oldenbourg, Zoe – *The Crusades*. Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1998.
- Oram, Richard – *The Kings & Queens of Scotland*. Tempus Publishing, Ltd., Gloucestershire, 2006.
- Palmer, Alan – *Kings and Queens of England*. Octopus Books, Ltd., London, 1976.
- Palsson, Herman, and Paul Edwards, translators – *Orkneying a Saga: The History of the Earls of Orkney*. Penguin 1981.
- Parsons, John Carmi – *The Court and Household of Eleanor of Castile in 1290*, An edition of the British Library Additional Manuscript 35294 with introduction and Notes. 1977.
- Pedro – *The Chronicle of San Juan de la Peña*. Translated by Lynn H. Nelson, University of Pennsylvania Press, 1991.
- Pettifer, Adrian – *English Castles: A Guide by Counties*. The Boydell Press, Woodbridge, Suffolk, 1995.
- Pettifer, Adrian – *Welsh Castles: A Guide by Counties*. The Boydell Press, Woodbridge, Suffolk, 2000.
- Phillips, J.R.S. – *Aymer de Valence, Earl of Pembroke 1307-1324: Baronial Politics in the Reign of Edward II*. 1972.
- Phillips, Jonathan – *The Fourth Crusade and the Sack of Constantinople*. Viking Penguin, New York, 2004.

- Pine, L.G. – *Heraldry, Ancestry and Titles: Questions & Answers*. Gramercy Publishing Co., New York, 1965.
- Potter, David – *A History of France, 1460-1560 The emergence of a Nation State*. New Studies in Medieval History, Macmillan, 1995.
- Prestwich, Michael – *Edward I*. Yale University Press, London, 1988.
- Radice, Betty, ed. – *Two Lives of Charlemagne*. Translated by Lewis Thorpe, Penguin Group, London, 1969.
- Ramsay, James – *Genesis of Lancaster or The Three Reigns of Edward II, Edward III, Richard II 1307-1399*. Oxford, 1913.
- Ramsey, Sir James H. – *Lancaster and York - A Century of English History (AD 1399 - 1485)*. 2 vols., Oxford University Press, 1892.
- Read, Piers Paul – *The Templars*. St. Martin's Press, New York, 1999.
- Roberts, Gary Boyd – *The Royal Descents of 500 Immigrants*. Genealogical Publishing, 1993.
- Robinson, James Harvey – *Readings in European History: Vol. I*. Ginn and Co., Boston, 1904.
- Robinson, John J. – *Dungeon, Fire and Sword: The Knights Templar in the Crusades*. M. Evans & Company, Inc., New York, 1991.
- Rowell, S.C. – *Lithuania Ascending: A Pagan Empire Within East-central Europe 1295- 1345*. Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Rowley, Trevor – *The Norman Heritage 1066-1200*. Routledge & Kegan Paul, London, 1983.
- Ruvigny and Raineval, Marquis of – *The Blood Royal of Britain: Being a Roll of the Living Descendants of Edward IV and Henry VII, Kings of England, and James III, King of Scotland*. London, 1903, reprinted by Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1994.
- Ruvigny and Raineval, Marquis of – *The Plantagenet Roll of the Blood Royal: The Clarence Volume*. London, 1905, reprinted by Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1994.
- Ruvigny and Raineval, Marquis of – *The Plantagenet Roll of the Blood Royal: The Anne of Exeter Volume*. London, 1907, reprinted by Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1994.
- Ruvigny and Raineval, Marquis of – *The Plantagenet Roll of the Blood Royal: The Isabel of Essex Volume*. London, 1908, reprinted by Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1994.
- Ruvigny and Raineval, Marquis of – *The Plantagenet Roll of the Blood Royal: The Mortimer-Percy Volume*. London, 1911, reprinted by Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1994.
- Saul, Nigel, ed. -- *Historical Atlas of Britain: Prehistoric to Medieval*. Sutton Publishing, Ltd., London, 1997.
- Saul, Nigel – *Richard II*. Yale University Press, London, 1997.
- Sawyer, Birgit & Peter – *Medieval Scandinavia. From conversion to reformation circa 800-1500*. University of Minnesota Press, 1993.
- Schama, Simon – *A History of Britain: At the Edge of the World? 3000 BC - AD 1603*. 3 vols. Hyperion, New York, 2000.
- Scott, Ronald McNair – *Robert the Bruce: King of Scots*. Peter Bedrick Books, New York, 1989.
- Seymour, William – *Sovereign Legacy: A Historical Guide to the British Monarchy*. Doubleday & Company, Inc., New York, 1980.
- Simon, Linda – *Of Virtue Rare: Margaret Beaufort, Matriarch of the House of Tudor*. Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1982.
- Sinclair, Andrew – *Rosslyn*. Birlinn, Ltd., Edinburgh, 2005.

- Skene, William F. – *The Highlanders of Scotland*. John Murray, London, 1836 (reprint 1902).
- Smart, George – *The Knights Templar Chronology: Tracking History's Most Intriguing Monks*. AuthorHouse, Bloomington, Indiana, 2005.
- Somerset, Anne – *Ladies in Waiting: From the Tudors to the Present Day*. Phoenix Press, New York, 1984.
- Speed, John – *The Counties of Britain: A Tudor Atlas*. Thames & Hudson, New York, 1989.
- Starkey, David – *Elizabeth: The Struggle for the Throne*. Harper Collins Publishing, New York, 2001.
- Steegmuller, Francis – *The Grand Mademoiselle*. Farrar, Straus & Cudahy, New York, 1956.
- Sturlason, Snorre – *The Heimskringla, (The Stories of the Kings of Norway called the Round of the World)*, translated by William Morris and Eirikir Magnússon. Volume 4. Bernard Quaritch, 1905.
- Sturlason, Snorre – *Heimskringla, Or the Lives of the Norse Kings*. Dover Publications, Inc., New York, 1990.
- Swanton, Michael, ed. – *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. Routledge, New York, 1998.
- Sweetman, David – *The Medieval Castles of Ireland*. The Boydell Press, Woodbridge, Suffolk, 1999.
- Tabraham, Chris – *The Illustrated History of Scotland*. Oyster Press, Anacortes, Washington, 2004.
- Thatcher, Oliver J., and Edgar Holmes McNeal, eds. – *A Source Book for Medieval History*. Scribners, New York, 1905.
- Tomkeieff, O.G. – *Life in Norman England*. Capricorn Books, New York, 1967.
- Turner, Ralph V. – *King John*. Longman, 1994.
- Turvey, Roger – *The Welsh Princes 1063-1283*. Pearson Education Limited, London, 2002.
- Uden, Grant – *A Dictionary of Chivalry*. Thomas Y. Crowell Company, New York, 1968.
- Upton-Ward, J.M., translator – *The Rule of the Templars*. The French Text of the Rule of the Order of the Knights Templar, from *Studies in the History of Medieval Religion*, Vol. IV. The Boydell Press, Woodbridge, 2005.
- Vale, Malcolm – *The Angevin Legacy and the Hundred Years War 1250-1340*. Blackwell, 1990.
- Wallace-Murphy, Tim & Marilyn Hopkins – *Roslyn: Guardian of the Secrets of the Holy Grail*. Harper Collins, London, 2000.
- Wallace-Murphy, Tim & Marilyn Hopkins – *Templars in America: From the Crusades to the New World*. Weiser Books, Boston, 2004.
- Wallace-Murphy, Tim & Marilyn Hopkins – *Templars in America*. Weiser Books, Boston, 2004.
- Wallace-Murphy, Tim & Marilyn Hopkins – *Custodians of Truth*. Weiser Books, Boston, 2005.
- Weir, Alison – *The Princes in the Tower*. Ballantine Books, New York, 1992.
- Weir, Alison – *Britain's Royal Families, The Complete Genealogy*. Pimlico, 1996.
- Weir, Alison – *The Life of Elizabeth I*. Ballantine Books, New York, 1998.
- Weir, Alison – *Eleanor of Aquitaine*. Ballantine Books, New York, 1999.
- Weir, Alison – *Henry VIII, The King and His Court*. Ballantine Books, New York, 2001.
- Weir, Alison – *Mary Queen of Scots and the Murder of Lord Darnley*. Random House Ballantine Publishing Co., New York, 2003.
- Weir, Alison – *Queen Isabella*. Ballantine Books, New York, 2005.
- Weil, Frederick Lewis – *The Magna Charta Sureties, 1215*. With additions and corrections by Walter Lee Sheppard Jr. & William R. Beall. Genealogical Publishing Co., 1999.

- Weis, Frank W. – *Lifelines of History: Famous Men and Women of the Ages*. Bonanza Books, New York, 1982.
- Weis, Frederick Lewis – *Ancestral Roots of Certain American Colonists Who Came to America before 1700*. 7th Edition, Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., Baltimore, 1992.
- Wells, Colin – *Sailing from byzantium: How a Lost Empire Shaped the World*. A Delacorte Press Book, published by Bantam Dell, New York 2006.
- Wheatcroft, Andrew – *The Habsburgs*. Penguin Books, Ltd., London, 1995.
- Wheeler, Daniel and Elisabeth Ingles, eds. – *The Last Courts of Europe: A Royal Family Album 1860-1914*. The Vendome Press, New York, 1981.
- Whitlock, Ralph – *Warrior Kings of Saxon England*. Barnes & Noble, Inc., 1993.
- Williamson, David – *Kings & Queens of Britain*. The Promotional Reprint Company (originally Webb & Bower), 1991.
- Wilson, Alan J. – *St. Margaret Queen of Scotland*. John Donald Publishers Ltd., Edinburgh, 2001.
- Wilson, Derek – *Charlemagne*. Doubleday, New York, 2006.
- Wolfram, Herwig – *History of the Goths*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1988.
- Young, Alan and Michael J. Stead – *In the Footsteps of Robert Bruce*. Sutton Publishing Ltd., Gloucestershire, 1999.

Reference

- Burke's Peerage: Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Baronage and Knighthood*. Burke's Peerage, Ltd., and Shaw Publishing Co., Ltd., London, 99th Edition, 1949, 101st Edition, 1956, and 102nd Edition, 1959.
- Complete Peerage of England Scotland Ireland Great Britain and the United Kingdom*, by G.E. Cokayne. Sutton Publishing Ltd., 2000.
- Historical Atlas of the World*. Barnes & Noble Inc., New York, and W. & R. Chambers Ltd., Edinburgh, 1970 (Original Norwegian edition was prepared by Oddvar Bjorklund, Haakon Holmboe and Anders Rohr, with maps by Berit Lie, Oslo, 1962.)
- Holy Bible, Authorized King James Version*. Tyndale House Publishers, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois, 1982.
- The Kings and Queens of Great Britain, Genealogical Chart*. Edited by John Brooke-Little, illustrated by Don Pottinger, compiled by Anne Taute, Elm Tree Hamilton, Ltd., London, 1982.
- Kings and Queens of Europe, Genealogical Chart*. Edited by Andrea Duncan, illustrated by Romilly Squire, compiled by Anne Taute, University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, 1989.
- Orkneyinga Saga: The History of the Earls of Orkney*. Translated by Hermann Palsson and Paul Edwards, Penguin Books Ltd., London, 1981.
- The Penguin Atlas of Ancient History*. Maps devised by Colin McEvedy, drawn by John Woodcock, Penguin Books, Ltd., Harmondsworth, Middlesex, England, and Penguin Books, New York, 1981.
- Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History*, Dept. of History, University of Pennsylvania Press, Philadelphia, 1897?/1907?.
- Webster's Biographical Dictionary*. G. & C. Merriam Co., Publishers, Springfield, Mass., 1943.
- Webster's Millennium 2001 CD-ROM Encyclopedia*. MK 2000 Multimedia 2001, Seattle, Wash., 2001.

From the Journal of William Bowman McGarvey, Nov. 9, 1951.

Annals of the Four Masters, Royal Genealogy, by Anderson.
Authentic Records of the Court of England, 1932.
Biography of American Congress: Letters of Members of Continental Congress, Vol. 1-55.
Buxton Lawn and Mary Dawson, List of Their Descendants and of Members of the Families With Which They are Allied and Connected. by Thomas Layton, New Orleans, 1875.
Chancery Court, London, re. Est. of Geo. Webb.
Columbian Museum and Savannah Advertiser. Feb. 11, 1804.
Compendium of American Genealogy, Vol. V. 1939.
Georgia Bench and Bar, Vol. 1. 1931.
History collections of Georgia Chapters of the D.A.R., Vol. II. 1929.
History Collections of the Joseph Habersham Chapter, D.A.R. Vol. I & II. 1902.
History of Galveston County, Texas. 1931.
History of Pike County, Mississippi. 1909.
Irish Pedigrees, by O'Hart.
Ligon Family & Connections. 1947.
Memoranda in re Walton Families, by L.B. Anders, 1933.
Newspaper & magazine articles.
Numerous family records.
Records of U.S. War Department.
Records of City of Galveston, Engineer Department.
Revolutionary Records of State of Georgia, 3 vols. 1908.
Scholastic records of Ball High School & Texas University.
United States Census, 1850 & 1880.
Vital Statistics Bureaus of Texas, Mississippi, Pennsylvania.

Specific Internet Sites:

Josephine Lindsay Bass/Becky Bonner.

<http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.com>

BettyLou Boysen.

<http://worldconnect.rootsweb.com>

Ray Gurganus. <http://209.190.235.73>

Paul Halsall's Internet Medieval Sourcebook, Fordham University Center for Medieval Studies.

<http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/sbook1.html>

Brigitte Gastel Lloyd. <http://worldroots.clicktron.com>

Darren McCathern. <http://www.rootsweb.com> or

<http://www.scotlandroyalty.org>

Paul B. McBride <http://homepages.rootsweb.com>

Alastair McIntyre. <http://www.electricscotland.com>

John Pritchett. <http://www.virginians.com>

Paul Theroff. <http://pages.prodigy.net>

Brian Tompsett. <http://www3.dcs.hull.ac.uk/public/genealogy/GEDCOM.html>

Dave Utzinger. <http://www.medievalgenealogy.org.uk/about.shtml>

Greg Vaut. <http://worldconnect.rootsweb.com>

Jim Weber. <http://worldconnect.rootsweb.com/cgi-bin/igm.cgi?db=jweber>

Jim is a Medieval (and some later) genealogy specialist, has a wealth of reference material, and updates his information on a regular basis. He is very good at answering emails regarding genealogical and/or historical questions.

Ancient Milesian Genealogy. <http://www.rootsweb.com/~fianna/history/milesian.html>

Ancient Celtic Genealogy. <http://www.genpc.com/gen/files/d0053/f0000014.html#I15430>

Ancient Irish Kings. <http://www.rootsweb.com/~irllkik/ihm/leinst3.htm>

~ ~ ~



Index

Volume II

Ancestral Links to the Ancient Past	19	Biographies of Magna Charta Barons	
Anglo-Saxon Ancestry	30	Eustace de Vesci Lord of Alnwick, Northumberland	147
Celtic - French Ancestry	28	Geoffrey de Mandeville Earl of Essex and Gloucester	141
Celtic-French	27	Geoffrey de Saye, a feudal baron in Sussex	146
Hebrew Ancestry	33	Gilbert de Clare Earl of Hertford's Heir	137
Hohenstauffen - English Ancestry	32	Henry de Bohun Earl of Hereford	136
Mayflower - Barrett Ancestry	31	Hugh Bigod Earl of Norfolk's Heir	136
Norman-English	21	John de Lacie Lord of Halton Castle, Cheshire	140
Norman-Scots Ancestry	25	John FitzRobert Lord of Warkworth Castle, Northumberland	137
Ancestral Popes & Saints	447	Richard de Clare Earl of Hertford	137
Pope Callixtus II	449	Richard De Montfichet, a feudal baron in Essex	143
Pope Celestine III	449	Richard de Percy, a feudal baron of Yorkshire	145
Pope Clement VII	449	Robert de Ros Lord of Hamlake Castle, Yorkshire	145
Pope Nicholas III	449	Robert de Vere Earl of Oxford	146
Pope Stephen X	449	Robert FitzWalter Lord of Dunmow Castle, Essexshire	138
St. Adelaide	453	Roger Bigod Earl of Norfolk (and Suffolk)	136
St. Arnulf	452	Roger de Montbegon Lord of Norneby, Lancashire	142
St. Bathildis	452	Roger de Mowbray, a feudal baron in Northumberland	143
St. Brychan	451	Saire de Quincy Earl of Winchester	144
St. Clothilde	451	William de Fortibus Earl of Albemarle	139
St. Edith	453	William de Hardell Mayor of London	139
St. Gondolfus	451	William de Huntingfield, a feudal baron in Suffolk	139
St. Helena of the Cross	450	William de Lanvallei Lord of Stanway Castle, Essex	140
St. Irene	455	William de Mowbray Lord of Axholme Castle, Lincolnshire	143
St. Ladislaus	455	William d'Albini (Aubigny)	135
St. Louis	456	William Malet Lord of Curry-Malet, Somersetshire	141
St. Ludmilla	452	William Marshal Jr. Earl of Pembroke's Heir	142
St. Margaret of Scotland	455	Bloodline of the Holy Grail	425
St. Olaf	455	Diaries	275
St. Olga	452	Andre Hurault de Maisse	298
St. Pietro	453		
St. Stephen	454		
St. Thomas Aquinas	456		
St. Vladimir	454		
Stephen X	454		
Ancient Branches			
Britons	1		
Franks	3		
Hebrews	4		
Scandinavian	13		
Scythian	15		
Secambrian	17		

Celia Fiennes	284	Edmund of Langley, Duke of York	226
Charles Cavendish Fulke Greville	285	Edward I	227
Fanny Burney	301	Edward II	228
Francis Kilvert	297	Edward III	228
John Evelyn	304	Edward IV	229
John Halliday	292	Edward Prince of Wales	229
Queen Victoria	277	Edward, Duke of York	227
Sir Walter Scott	298	Eleanor of Castile	229
Thomas Hearne	296	Franks	229
Documents	149	Frederick I Barbarossa	229
Declaration of Arbroath	169	Garter, Order of the	230
Declaration of Arbroath in original Latin	171	George III of England	230
Elizabeth Armstrong's 100th birthday celebration	174	Grey, Thomas	232
Laws of Richard I (Coeur de Lion) Concerning Crusaders Who Were	161	Henry II of France	232
The Magna Charta	162	Henry V of England	233
Mayflower Compact 1620	173	Holand, Thomas	233
Peace of the Land Established by Frederick Barbarossa	159	Irish Kings	233
Ragman Rolls of 1296 and 1291	176	James I of England, VI of Scotland	233
Statute of Edward 1 Concerning the Buying and Selling of Land	169	Jamnia	234
Statutes of William The Conqueror	158	Joan of Kent	234
The Salic Law	151	Marshal, Sir William KT	235
Treaty at Aix	157	Medieval Beginnings of Sheriffs	256
Early Knights of the Garter	254	Middle Ages	251
Reign of Edward III: Founders	254	Chivalry	251
Reign of Edward III Successive Knights ...	254	Barons & Knights	252
Reign of Richard II	255	Lords	253
French Titles of Nobility	265	Montfort, Simon de	235
Highland Tales	311	Mortimer, Roger de	235
The Tale of the Hoodie	313	Mottoes	235
The Young King of Easaidh Ruadh	318	Neville, Charles, 6th Earl of Westmorland	236
Historical Tidbits	215	Neville, Ralph, 1st Earl of Westmorland	236
Alfred the Great	217	Neville, Richard, Earl of Warwick	236
Audley, Sir James KG	218	Northumberland, Earls of	237
Baldwin of Flanders	218	Percy, Sir Henry Harry Hotspur	237
Baliol, Edward de	218	Percy, Thomas, Earl of Worcester	237
Baliol, John de	218	Queen Anne	218
Barrett, Don Carlos	219	Robert I "The Bruce"	237
Beauchamp, Guy de, Earl of Warwick	225	Rose	238
Beauchamp, Sir Richard de, Earl of Warwick KG	225	Saracens	238
Beauchamp, Thomas de, Earl of Warwick	225	Stephen, King of England	238
Boleyn, Anne	226	Tiptoft (Tibetot), John, Earl of Worcester	238
Despenser, Hugh le	226	Tostig, Earl of Northumbria	239
Douglas, Sir James the Good	226	Tudor	239
		Wallace, Sir William	239
		William I "the Conqueror"	239
		William II "Rufus"	240
		William III	241

William the Lion	242	The sacred tables of Arthur	423
Windsor	242	Old Irish Kingdoms & Clans	268
Woodville (Wydeville), Elizabeth	242	Airgialla (Oriel)	269
History of Castles	325	Cenel Conaill	273
Austria	392	Cenel nEoghain	273
Belgium	392	Ciannachta	270
Czech Republic	393	Cineal Chonaill	274
France	394	Cineal Cuallachta	272
Germany	397	Cineal Fógartaigh - (Kinelarty)	269
Hungary	404	Clann Chuileainn	272
Israel	405	Corca Bhaiscinn	273
Italy	408	Corca Luighe	271
Jordan	409	Corca Modhruadh	273
Luxembourg	410	Corcu Duibhne	276
Netherlands	410	Dal Fiatach and Dal nAraide	268
Russia	411	Dal gCais	272
Spain	412	Dal Riata	269
Switzerland	413	Decies	270
Syria	413	Deise	270
United Kingdom	327	Desmond	270
History of the Celts	242	Éile	270
Ligons of Virginia	55	Eoghanacht	271
Thomas Ligon III	71	Erainn	270
Blackman Ligon	63, 73	Fir Manach	269
Capt. Joseph Ligon	63	Four Tribes of Tara	274
Cicely (Lygon) Gorges Vivian	72	Mide (Meath)	274
Col. Richard Ligon	64	Muintear Ifearnain	272
Col. Thomas Ligon	57, 83	Southern Ui Neill	274
European notables	73	Thomond	272
Hugh Ligon	70	Ui Bloid	272
Maj. William Ligon I	60	Ui Caisin	272
Margaret (Lygon) Russell Berkeley	71	Ui Cearnaigh	272
Mary (Ligon) Farrar	71	Ui Cormaic	273
Soldiers of Colonial and American wars	73	Ui Cremthainne	269
Thomas Lygon III	73	Uí Néill	273
William Ligon II	62	Ui Ronghaile	273
Members of Congress - U.S. & Confederate	73	Ui Toirdealbhaigh	273
From Jackson to Vicksburg, by Cornelia Barrett Ligon	75	Ulster	268
Notes on King Arthur	417	Origin of Names	321
Avalon's location	421	English	322
Guinevere - warrior queen	422	French	322
Lancelot the Angus	420	German	322
Other great men of Arthur's	421	Irish	322
		Other	323
		Scottish	322

Spanish	323	Keith	99
Welsh	323	Ker	100
Ranks and File in England	258	Knights Templar Dress	128
Scale of General Precedence in Scotland	260	Knights Templar Hunting	128
Scale of Precedence for Ladies in Scotland	263	Leslie	101
Scottish Clan Connections	85	Lindsay	102
Angus	127	Livingston	122
Appin Stewarts	126	Lundin	123
Armstrong	117	Lyon	103
Baillie	118	MacDonald	104
Barclay	128	Montgomery	105
Bruce	87	Muir	123
Campbell	88	Murray	107
Douglas	119	Ross	108
Drummond	90	Rosslyn Chapel	129
Dunbar	91	Royal Stewart	129
Fleming	120	Scott	110
Galloway	128	Sempill	111
Gordon	90	Seton	124
Graham	93	Sinclair	112
Hamilton	94	Somerville	125
Hanna	95	Stewart - Royal	126
Hay	96	Stuart of Bute	114
Haye	128	Sutherland	115
Hepburn	121	Wallace	116
Home	97		

